

World Journal of *Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics*

World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther 2015 February 6; 6(1): 1-9





Editorial Board

2011-2015

The *World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics* Editorial Board consists of 411 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in surgery research. They are from 47 countries, including Argentina (3), Australia (13), Austria (4), Belarus (1), Belgium (3), Brazil (10), Canada (10), China (41), Czech Republic (1), Denmark (1), Egypt (3), Estonia (1), Finland (1), France (5), Germany (21), Greece (6), Hungary (4), India (18), Iran (6), Ireland (1), Israel (4), Italy (35), Japan (34), Lebanon (1), Lithuania (3), Mexico (2), Netherlands (10), New Zealand (2), Norway (2), Pakistan (2), Philippines (1), Poland (3), Portugal (2), Romania (1), Russia (1), Saudi Arabia (2), Singapore (3), Slovenia (1), South Africa (1), South Korea (16), Spain (13), Sweden (3), Switzerland (1), Thailand (4), Turkey (7), United Kingdom (20), and United States (84).

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF

Hugh J Freeman, *Vancouver*

STRATEGY ASSOCIATE

EDITORS-IN-CHIEF

Antonio Picardi, *Rome*

Elham Rahme, *Quebec*

Douglas Kevin Rex, *Indianapolis*

Angelo Zullo, *Rome*

GUEST EDITORIAL BOARD

MEMBERS

Full-Young Chang, *Taipei*

Mei-Chi Chang, *Taoyuan*

Ming-Jen Chen, *Taipei*

Chia-Yen Dai, *Kaohsiung*

Jiiang-Huei Jeng, *Taipei*

Wun-Chang Ko, *Taipei*

Hwai Jeng Lin, *Changhua*

Ming-Yie Liu, *Tainan*

Frank C Mao, *Taichung*

Tzu-Ming Pan, *Taipei*

Bor-Shyang Sheu, *Tainan*

Li Hsueh Tsai, *Taipei*

Keng-Liang Wu, *Kaohsiung*

Being-Sun Wung, *Chiayi*

Hsu-Heng Yen, *Changhua*

MEMBERS OF THE EDITORIAL BOARD



Argentina

Viviana Alicia Catania, *Rosario*

Guillermo Daniel Mazzolini, *Derqui-Pilar*

Valeria Paula Tripodi, *Buenos Aires*



Australia

Noor Al-Dasooqi, *Adelaide*

Thomas J Borody, *Sydney*

Rachel Jane Gibson, *Adelaide*

Xu-Feng Huang, *Wollongong*

Eline Suzanne Klaassens, *St Lucia*

Natasha A Koloski, *Brisbane*

Ian Lawrance, *Fremantle*

John Martin Mariadason, *Victoria*

Antonina Mikocka-Walus, *Melbourne*

Tim Murphy, *Adelaide*

Nam Quoc Nguyen, *Adelaide*

Samir Samman, *Sydney*

Neville D Yeomans, *Penrith South*



Austria

Martin Brunner, *Vienna*

Sonja Fruhwald, *Graz*

Michael Trauner, *Graz*

Viktoria Weber, *Krems*



Belarus

Sergey I Pimanov, *Vitebsk*



Belgium

Monika Schöller-Gyüre, *Mechelen*

Kristin Verbeke, *Leuven*

Vandenplas Yvan, *Alsemberg*



Brazil

Andréia Buffon, *Porto Alegre*

Gabriela Villaçá Chaves, *Rio de Janeiro*

Percília Cardoso Gaiquinto, *Botucatu*

Clelia Akiko Hiruma-Lima, *Botucatu*

Andre Castro Lyra, *Bahia*

Edson Marchiori, *Rio de Janeiro*

Ricardo de Souza Pereira, *Macapá*

Rafael Roesler, *Porto Alegre*

Leonardo Lucca Schiavon, *Florianópolis*

Francisca Cléa Florenço Sousa, *Fortaleza*



Canada

Brian Bressler, *Vancouver*

Yuewen Gong, *Manitoba*

Hien Quoc Huynh, *Edmonton*

Grigorios I Leontiadis, *Hamilton*

Sharon Marsh, *Québec*

Jean Sévigny, *Québec*

Martin Alexander Storr, *Alberta*

John Thomas Weber, *St. John's*



China

Zhao-Xiang Bian, *Hong Kong*

Xin-Jing Chen, *Nanjing*

Chi-Hin Cho, *Hong Kong*

Yong-Song Guan, *Chengdu*

Zhi-Li Huang, *Shanghai*

Bo Li, *Beijing*

Duo Li, *Hangzhou*

Yu-Yuan Li, *Guangzhou*

Xiong Ma, *Shanghai*
 Pan Qin, *Shanghai*
 Guo-Ping Sun, *Hefei*
 Xue-Ying Sun, *Harbin*
 Ming-Fu Wang, *Hong Kong*
 Che-Yuen Justin Wu, *Hong Kong*
 De-Xiang Xu, *Hefei*
 Rui-An Xu, *Xiamen*
 Ming-Xian Yan, *Jinan*
 Yong-Feng Yang, *Nanjing*
 Thomas Yau, *Hong Kong*
 Win-Nei Yeo, *Hong Kong*
 Long Yu, *Guangzhou*
 Jian-Ping Yuan, *Guangzhou*
 Man-Fung Yuen, *Hong Kong*
 Jian-Fu Zhang, *Xuzhou*
 Li-Qun Zhang, *Beijing*
 Min-Sheng Zhu, *Nanjing*



Czech Republic

Rene Kizek, *Brno*



Denmark

Ole Haagen Nielsen, *Herlev*



Egypt

Omar Mohamed Abdel-Salam, *Cairo*
 Ahmed Osman Abdel-Zaher, *Assiut*
 Osama Ahmed Badary, *Cairo*



Estonia

Riin Tamm, *Tartu*



Finland

Riitta Korpela, *Helsinki*



France

Ferrand Audrey, *Toulouse*
 Frederic Batteux, *Paris*
 Thierry Capiod, *Paris*
 Frederic Lagarce, *Angers*
 Hang Thi Thu Nguyen, *Clermont-Ferrand*



Germany

Susanne Beckebaum, *Essen*
 Jürgen Borlak, *Hannover*
 Güralp Onur Ceyhan, *Munich*
 Walee Chamulitrat, *Heidelberg*
 Anton Gillessen, *Muenster*
 Dirk Heitzmann, *Muenster*
 Jens Michael Heyn, *München*
 Joachim Labenz, *Siegen*
 Florian Lang, *Tübingen*
 Klaus Mönkemüller, *Bottrop*
 Thomas Müller, *Berlin*
 Belal Naser, *Salzgitter*

Beate Niesler, *Heidelberg*
 Matthias Ocker, *Marburg*
 Andreas Marc Palmer, *Konstanz*
 Dirk Rades, *Lubeck*
 Fuat Hakan Saner, *Essen*
 Manfred V Singer, *Mannheim*
 Konrad Ludwig Streetz, *Aachen*
 Frank Tacke, *Aachen*
 Gerhard Treiber, *Balingen*



Greece

Moses Elisaf, *Ioannina*
 Anastasios Koulaouzidis, *Greek*
 Ioannis E Koutroubakis, *Crete*
 Spilios Manolakopoulos, *Athens*
 Konstantinos C Mountzouris, *Athens*
 George Papatheodoridis, *Athens*



Hungary

Zsolt Barta, *Debrecen*
 László Czakó, *Szeged*
 Béla Molnár, *Budapest*
 Gyula Mózsik, *Pecs*



India

Anil Kumar Agarwal, *New Delhi*
 Sandip Basu, *Bombay*
 Chiranjib Chakraborty, *Vellore*
 Rukhsana Chowdhury, *Kolkata*
 Santosh Darisetty, *Hyderabad*
 C M Habibullah, *Andhra Pradesh*
 Mohammad Sultan Khuroo, *Kashmir*
 Mohandas K Mallath, *Mumbai*
 Balraj Mittal, *Lucknow*
 Rama Devi Mittal, *Lucknow*
 Asish Kumar Mukhopadhyay, *Kolkata*
 Lekha Saha, *Chandigarh*
 Shiv Kumar Sarin, *New Delhi*
 Jayshri Ankur Shah, *Mumbai*
 Sonu Sundd Singh, *Gurgaon*
 Sikta Swarnakar, *Kolkata*
 Rakesh Tandon, *New Delhi*
 Asna Urooj, *Mysore*



Iran

Seyed Mohsen Dehghani, *Shiraz*
 Ahmad Reza Dehpour, *Tehran*
 Sara Farhang, *Tabriz*
 Ali Gholamrezaei, *Isfahan*
 Parisa Hasanein, *Hamadan*
 Amir Mohammad Mortazavian, *Tehran*



Ireland

Zaid Heetun, *Kilkenny*



Israel

Nimer Najib Assy, *Safed*

Rami Eliakim, *Haifa*
 Simon Bar Meir, *Hashomer*
 Haim Shmuel Odes, *Beer Sheba*



Italy

Giovanni C Actis, *Torino*
 Pietro Andreone, *Bologna*
 Bruno Annibale, *Rome*
 Leonardo Baiocchi, *Rome*
 Giovanni Barbara, *Bologna*
 Gabrio Bassotti, *Perugia*
 Francesca Borrelli, *Naples*
 Giuseppe Brisinda, *Rome*
 Renzo Caprilli, *Rome*
 Mauro Antonio Maria Carai, *Cagliari*
 Renato Caviglia, *Rome*
 Carolina Ciacci, *Naples*
 Mario Cottone, *Trabucco*
 Roberto De Giorgio, *Bologna*
 Luca Elli, *Milano*
 Alessandro Granito, *Bologna*
 Francesco William Guglielmi, *Trani*
 Mario Guslandi, *Milan*
 Pietro Invernizzi, *Rozzano*
 Mariano Malaguarnera, *Catania*
 Gianpiero Manes, *Milano*
 Massimo C Mauri, *Milan*
 Massimo Montalto, *Rome*
 Giovanni Monteleone, *Rome*
 Gerardo Nardone, *Napoli*
 Fabio Pace, *Milano*
 Raffaele Pezzilli, *Bologna*
 Rita Rezzani, *Brescia*
 Carmelo Scarpignato, *Parma*
 Generoso Uomo, *Napoli*
 Paolo Usai-Satta, *Cagliari*
 Maurizio Vecchi, *Milano*
 Massimiliano Veroux, *Catania*



Japan

Akira Andoh, *Otsu*
 Yuichiro Eguchi, *Saga*
 Munechika Enjoji, *Fukuoka*
 Norihiro Furusyo, *Fukuoka*
 Naoki Hotta, *Aichi*
 Shigeo Ikegawa, *Higashi-Osaka*
 Susumu Ito, *Okinawa*
 Satoru Kakizaki, *Gunma*
 Terumi Kamisawa, *Tokyo*
 Motoyori Kanazawa, *Sendai*
 Takuma Kato, *Mie*
 Takashi Kawai, *Tokyo*
 Shirao Kuniaki, *Oita*
 Nobuyuki Matsushashi, *Tokyo*
 Tatsuya Matsura, *Yonago*
 Teruo Murakami, *Hiroshima*
 Yuji Naito, *Kyoto*
 Katsuyuki Nakajima, *Maebashi Gunma*
 Hiroshi Nakase, *Kyoto*
 Nobuhiro Ohkohchi, *Tsukuba*
 Shogo Ohkoshi, *Niigata City*
 Tomohiko Shimatani, *Hiroshima*
 Yasuhiko Sugawara, *Tokyo*
 Yoshitaka Takuma, *Okayama*
 Tatsuhiro Tsujimoto, *Nara*
 Takato Ueno, *Kurume*
 Kenji Watanabe, *Osaka*

Toshiaki Watanabe, *Tokyo*
 Jiro Watari, *Nishinomiya*
 Satoshi Yamagiwa, *Niigata*
 Takayuki Yamamoto, *Mie*
 Norimasa Yoshida, *Kyoto*
 Hitoshi Yoshiji, *Nara*
 Katsutoshi Yoshizato, *Hiroshima*



Lebanon

Ala Sharara, *Beirut*



Lithuania

Dalia Adukauskienė, *Kaunas*
 Giedrius Barauskas, *Kaunas*
 Laimas Virginijus Jonaitis, *Kaunas*



Mexico

Pablo Muriel, *Mexico City*
 Guillermo B Robles-Díaz, *Mexico City*



Netherlands

Judith Elisabeth Baars, *Rotterdam*
 Albert J Bredenoord, *Nieuwegein*
 Nanne KH de Boer, *Amsterdam*
 Pieter Jan Floris de Jonge, *Rotterdam*
 Wouter J de Jonge, *Amsterdam*
 Mireille A Edens, *Groningen*
 Chris Mulder, *Amsterdam*
 Godefridus Johannes Peters, *Amsterdam*
 Paul E Sijens, *Groningen*
 Vera Esther Valkhoff, *Rotterdam*



New Zealand

Momir M Mikov, *Dunedin*
 Maxim Petrov, *Auckland*



Norway

Guanglin Cui, *Tromsø*
 Reidar Fossmark, *Trondheim*



Pakistan

Furqaan Ahmed, *Karachi*
 Anwar Hassan Gilani, *Karachi*



Philippines

Mark Anthony De Lusong, *Quezon City*



Poland

Halina Cichoz-Lach, *Lublin*
 Jarosław Czyż, *Cracow*
 Julian Teodor Swierczynski, *Gdansk*



Portugal

Cristina Freire, *Hull*
 Ana Isabel Gouveia Lopes, *Lisbon*



Romania

Dan Lucian Dumitrascu, *Cluj*



Russia

Tatyana A Korolenko, *Novosibirsk*



Saudi Arabia

Moamen Salah Refat, *Taif*
 Shahab Uddin, *Riyadh*



Singapore

Kok-Ann Gwee, *Singapore*
 Khok-Yu Ho, *Singapore*
 Kok-Yuen Ho, *Singapore*



Slovenia

Rok Orel, *Ljubljana*



South Africa

C Johannes van Rensburg, *Tygerberg*



South Korea

Chong-Su Cho, *Seoul*
 Ki Baik Hahm, *Incheon*
 Seok Joo Han, *Seoul*
 Jeong Won Jang, *Incheon*
 Dong Joon Kim, *Chuncheon*
 Jae J Kim, *Seoul*
 Kyoung Mee Kim, *Seoul*
 Nayoung Kim, *Gyeonggi-do*
 Sung-Bae Kim, *Seoul*
 Byung-Hoon Lee, *Seoul*
 Kwan Sik Lee, *Seoul*
 Sang-Han Lee, *Daegu*
 Yun Jeong Lim, *Kyunggi-do*
 Ji-Young Park, *Seoul*
 Uy Dong Sohn, *Seoul*
 Young-Joon Surh, *Seoul*



Spain

Matias Antonio Avila, *Pamplona*
 Luis Bujanda, *San Sebastián*
 Maria Carmen Collado, *Paterna*
 Conrado M Fernandez-Rodriguez, *Madrid*
 Ángel Lanas, *Zaragoza*
 Juan-R Malagelada, *Barcelona*
 Jose JG Marin, *Salamanca*

Antonio Ruiz Medina, *Jaén*
 Maria J Monte, *Salamanca*
 Miguel Muñoz, *Seville*
 Jesus Prieto, *Pamplona*
 Victor Manuel Victor, *Valencia*
 Maria D Yago, *Granada*



Sweden

Bodil Ohlsson, *Malmö*
 Henrik Thorlacius, *Malmö*
 Curt Tysk, *Örebro*



Switzerland

Carsten Alexander Wagner, *Zurich*



Thailand

Weekitt Kittisupamongkol, *Bangkok*
 Abhasnee Sobhonslidsuk, *Bangkok*
 Suporn Treepongkaruna, *Bangkok*
 Sombat Treeprasertsuk, *Bangkok*



Turkey

Fusun Acarturk, *Etiler-Ankara*
 Engin Altintas, *Mersin*
 Güldeniz Karadeniz Cakmak, *Zonguldak*
 Hayrullah Derici, *Balıkesir*
 Mukaddes Eşrefoğlu, *Malatya*
 Ilker Tasci, *Etilik*
 Berrak Çağlayan Yeğen, *Haydarpasa*



United Kingdom

Nadeem Ahmad Afzal, *Hampshire*
 Qasim Aziz, *London*
 Hugh BARR, *Gloucester*
 Ian Leonard Phillip Beales, *Norwich*
 Barbara Braden, *Oxford*
 Susan J Duthie, *Aberdeen*
 Eyad Elkord, *Manchester*
 Anton Vignaraj Emmanuel, *London*
 Konstantinos C Fragkos, *London*
 Nusrat Husain, *Cheshire*
 Jin-Yong Kang, *London*
 Mariusz Madalinski, *Ipswich*
 Srinivasan Madhusudan, *Nottingham*
 Subramanian Mahadevan, *Birmingham*
 John Francis Mayberry, *Leicester*
 Chuka Uche Nwokolo, *Coventry*
 Ajith Kumar Siriwardena, *Manchester*
 Her-Hsin Tsai, *Cottingham*
 Konstantinos Tziomalos, *London*
 Craig LC Williams, *Glasgow*



United States

Zubair H Aghai, *Camden*
 Shrikant Anant, *Oklahoma City*
 Kondala R Atkuri, *Stanford*
 Cheryl Hunt Baker, *Orlando*
 James M Becker, *Boston*

Qiang Cai, *Atlanta*
 Jiande Chen, *Galveston*
 Liang Cheng, *Indianapolis*
 Joan Clària, *Boston*
 Seth D Crockett, *Chapel Hill*
 Joseph John Cullen, *Iowa*
 Brian J Day, *Colorado*
 Cataldo Doria, *Philadelphia*
 Craig Stephen Dorrell, *Portland*
 Douglas Arnold Drossman, *Chapel Hill*
 Eli D Ehrenpreis, *Illinois*
 Bing-Liang Fang, *Houston*
 Ronnie Fass, *Arizona*
 S Hossein Fatem, *Minneapolis*
 Linda A Feagins, *Dallas*
 Mitchell P Fink, *Los Angeles*
 Lori Fischbach, *Fort Worth*
 Craig Alan Friesen, *Kansas City*
 Fie Gao, *Bethesda*
 M Eric Gershwin, *Davis*
 Shannon Stroud Glaser, *Temple*
 Stephen A Harrison, *Fort Sam Houston*
 Hendrik Heinz, *Ohio*
 Tiberiu Hershcovici, *Tucson*
 Weihong Hou, *Charlotte*
 Peng Huang, *Houston*

William Moses Huang, *New York*
 William Jeffrey Hurst, *Hershey*
 Hartmut Jaeschke, *Kansas City*
 Robert T Jensen, *Bethesda*
 David A Johnson, *Norfolk*
 Pramodini B Kale-Pradhan, *Detroit*
 Vik Khoshoo, *Marrero*
 Tammy L Kindel, *Cincinnati*
 Nils Lambrecht, *California*
 Joel Edward Lavine, *New York*
 Lorenzo Leggio, *Providence*
 Felix W Leung, *North Hills*
 Josh Levitsky, *Chicago*
 Robert W Li, *Washington*
 Allen W Mangel, *Research Triangle Park*
 Richard A Marlar, *Oklahoma City*
 Craig J McClain, *Louisville*
 Murielle Mimeault, *Omaha*
 Smruti R Mohanty, *Chicago*
 John Edward Morley, *St. Louis*
 Sandeep Mukherjee, *Omaha*
 Michael Foster Olive, *Charleston*
 Keith M Olsen, *Omaha*
 Virendra N Pandey, *Newark*
 Narasimham Laxmi Parinandi, *Columbus*
 William Parker, *Durham*

Paul J Pockros, *La Jolla*
 Suofu Qin, *Irvine*
 P Hemachandra Reddy, *Oregon*
 Randolph Eldon Regal, *Ann Arbor*
 Jean-François Rossignol, *Tampa*
 Leonard P Rybak, *Springfield*
 George Sachs, *Los Angeles*
 M Wasif Saif, *New Haven*
 Bimaljit Singh Sandhu, *Richmond*
 Bo Shen, *Cleveland*
 Ashwani Kumar Singal, *Rochester*
 Biographical Sketch, *Hershey*
 Bronislaw Slomiany, *Newark*
 Charles Jeffrey Smith, *Columbia*
 Shi-Yong Sun, *Atlanta*
 Kenneth J Vega, *Oklahoma City*
 Yu-Jui Yvonne Wan, *Kansas*
 Lixin Wang, *Los Angeles*
 Horst Christian Weber, *Boston*
 Brian Wigdahl, *Philadelphia*
 Guang-Yin Xu, *League City*
 Yoshio Yamaoka, *Houston*
 Yutao Yan, *Atlanta*
 Jieyun Yin, *Galveston*
 Jian-Min Yuan, *Minnesota*
 Jian-Ying Zhang, *El Paso*



MINIREVIEWS

- 1 Prevention of pelvic radiation disease

Fuccio L, Frazzoni L, Guido A

Contents

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics Volume 6 Number 1 February 6, 2015

ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, Jürgen Borlak, Professor, Hannover Medical School, Center for Pharmacology and Toxicology, Institute of Pharmaco-and Toxikogenomikforschung, OE 9646, Carl-Neuberg-Str.1, Hannover 30625, Germany

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics (*World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther*, *WJGPT*, online ISSN 2150-5349, DOI: 10.4292), is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJGPT covers topics concerning: (1) Clinical pharmacological research articles on specific drugs, concerning with pharmacodynamics, pharmacokinetics, toxicology, clinical trial, drug reactions, drug metabolism and adverse reaction monitoring, *etc.*; (2) Research progress of clinical pharmacology; (3) Introduction and evaluation of new drugs; (4) Experiences and problems in applied therapeutics; (5) Research and introductions of methodology in clinical pharmacology; and (6) Guidelines of clinical trial.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJGPT*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

INDEXING/ ABSTRACTING

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics is now indexed in PubMed Central, PubMed, Digital Object Identifier, and Directory of Open Access Journals.

FLYLEAF

I-IV Editorial Board

EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

Responsible Assistant Editor: *Xiang Li*
Responsible Electronic Editor: *Ya-Jing Lu*
Proofing Editor-in-Chief: *Lian-Sheng Ma*

Responsible Science Editor: *Xue-Mei Gong*
Proofing Editorial Office Director: *Xin-Xia Song*

NAME OF JOURNAL

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics

ISSN

ISSN 2150-5349 (online)

LAUNCH DATE

May 6, 2010

FREQUENCY

Quarterly

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF

Hugh J Freeman, MD, FRCPC, FACP, Professor,
Department of Medicine (Gastroenterology), University of British Columbia, Hospital, 2211 Wesbrook Mall, Vancouver, BC V6T1W5, Canada

EDITORIAL OFFICE

Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics

Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: <http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>
<http://www.wjgnet.com>

PUBLISHER

Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: <http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>
<http://www.wjgnet.com>

PUBLICATION DATE

February 6, 2015

COPYRIGHT

© 2015 Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. Articles published by this Open-Access journal are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-commercial License, which permits use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited, the use is non commercial and is otherwise in compliance with the license.

SPECIAL STATEMENT

All articles published in journals owned by the Baishideng Publishing Group (BPG) represent the views and opinions of their authors, and not the views, opinions or policies of the BPG, except where otherwise explicitly indicated.

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS

Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/g_info_20100315084234.htm

ONLINE SUBMISSION

<http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/>

Prevention of pelvic radiation disease

Lorenzo Fuccio, Leonardo Frazzoni, Alessandra Guido

Lorenzo Fuccio, Leonardo Frazzoni, Department of Medical and Surgical Sciences, S.Orsola-Malpighi Hospital, University of Bologna, 40136 Bologna, Italy.

Alessandra Guido, Division of Radiation Oncology, S.Orsola-Malpighi Hospital, University of Bologna, 40136 Bologna, Italy

Author contributions: All the authors equally contributed to the paper and approved the final version of the article.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Lorenzo Fuccio, MD, Department of Medical and Surgical Sciences, S.Orsola-Malpighi Hospital, University of Bologna, Via Massarenti 9, 40136 Bologna, Italy. lorenzofuccio@gmail.com

Telephone: +39-51-6363338

Fax: +39-51-6363338

Received: June 6, 2014

Peer-review started: June 8, 2014

First decision: July 10, 2014

Revised: September 2, 2014

Accepted: November 7, 2014

Article in press: November 10, 2014

Published online: February 6, 2015

Abstract

Pelvic cancers are among the most frequently diagnosed cancers worldwide. Treatment of patients requires a multidisciplinary approach that frequently includes radiotherapy. Gastrointestinal (GI) radiation-induced toxicity is a major complication and the transient or long-term problems, ranging from mild to very severe, arising in non-cancerous tissues resulting from radiation treatment to a tumor of pelvic origin, are actually called as pelvic radiation disease. The incidence of pelvic radiation disease changes according to the radiation technique, the length of follow up, the assessment

method, the type and stage of cancer and several other variables. Notably, even with the most recent radiation techniques, *i.e.*, intensity-modulated radiotherapy, the incidence of radiation-induced GI side effects is overall reduced but still not negligible. In addition, radiation-induced GI side effects can develop even after several decades; therefore, the improvement of patient life expectancy will unavoidably increase the risk of developing radiation-induced complications. Once developed, the management of pelvic radiation disease may be challenging. Therefore, the prevention of radiation-induced toxicity represents a reasonable way to avoid a dramatic drop of the quality of life of these patients. In the current manuscript we provide an updated and practical review on the best available evidences in the field of the prevention of pelvic radiation disease.

Key words: Pelvic radiation disease; Radiotherapy; Gastrointestinal toxicity; Amifostine; Aminosaliclates; Sucralfate; Beclomethasone dipropionate; Probiotics supplementation; Misoprostol; Mesalazine

© **The Author(s) 2015.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Radiotherapy is a treatment of choice in the management of several pelvic cancers. Acute and late-onset radiation-induced gastrointestinal toxicity, also known as pelvic radiation disease, is still frequently observed, despite recent improvements in radiation techniques. In the current review we provide an updated overview on the medical therapies that have been investigated with preventive intents, focusing our attention on the best available evidences, primarily randomized controlled studies.

Fuccio L, Frazzoni L, Guido A. Prevention of pelvic radiation disease. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(1): 1-9 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i1/1.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i1.1>

INTRODUCTION

Pelvic cancers are among the most frequently diagnosed cancers worldwide^[1]. Treatment of patients requires a multidisciplinary approach that frequently includes radiotherapy. Healthy intestinal tissue, mainly from distal large bowel and loops of the small intestine, is usually encompassed in the radiation field during radiotherapy for pelvic and abdominal tumors. Gastrointestinal (GI) radiation-induced toxicity is a major complication and the transient or long-term problems, ranging from mild to very severe, arising in non-cancerous tissues resulting from radiation treatment to a tumor of pelvic origin, are actually called as pelvic radiation disease (PRD)^[2]. The incidence of PRD changes according to the radiation technique, the length of follow up, the assessment method, the type and stage of cancer and several other variables^[3]. Notably, even with the most recent radiation techniques, *i.e.*, intensity-modulated radiotherapy, the incidence of radiation-induced GI side effects is overall reduced but still not negligible. In the last decade, the implementation of radiation techniques able to deliver higher radiation dose to the tumour mass and sparing the surrounding normal tissue have reduced the incidence of acute radiation-induced toxicities^[4]. However, larger volumes of normal tissues receive low doses of radiation compared to conventional treatment, *i.e.*, 3D conformal radiotherapy, and the effect of combined chemotherapy and radiotherapy in sensitizing normal tissues to long-term effects are yet largely unknown. In addition, radiation-induced gastrointestinal side effects can develop even after several decades; therefore, the improvement of patient life expectancy will unavoidably increase the risk of developing radiation-induced complications.

Several patient-related risk factors have been identified: diabetes, inflammatory bowel diseases (Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis) and collagen vascular diseases (scleroderma, systemic lupus erythematosus)^[3]. All these risk factors represent independent predictor of both acute and late-onset pelvic radiation disease^[3]. Tobacco smoking and a body mass index less than 18.5 kg/m² increase the risk of developing radiation-induced side effects^[3].

Once developed, the management of pelvic radiation disease may be challenging, due to the scarce treatment options and the almost lack of robust and well-performed interventional prospective studies^[3]. Radiation toxicity is defined as acute when it occurs during radiotherapy or within 3 mo after treatment, while it is defined as chronic when it develops after longer time periods. The most frequent radiation-related side effects are diarrhea, urgency, rectal bleeding, and fecal incontinence, reported in about 5%-50% of patients^[3,5,6]. Therefore, the prevention of radiation-induced toxicity represents a reasonable way to avoid a dramatic drop of the

quality of life of these patients.

Aim of the current manuscript is to provide an updated and practical review on the best available evidences in the field of the prevention of pelvic radiation disease.

PATHOGENESIS

The pathogenesis of pelvic radiation disease is complex and includes changes in most sections of the colo-rectal wall. In the acute phase, during and soon after irradiation, mucosal injuries become clear and are primarily the result of apoptotic processes in the crypt epithelium, breakdown of the mucosal barriers and inflammation, thus altering the mucosal permeability. When the mucosal barrier becomes interrupt, bacterial products and other activating and potentially toxic agents, gain access to sub-epithelial intestinal tissue, where they stimulate a variety of immune cells to produce cytokines and other pro- and anti-inflammatory mediators^[7,8]. In the late-onset phase, prominent structural changes include atrophy of the mucosa, fibrosis of the intestinal wall, and vascular sclerosis. Radiation-induced endothelial dysfunction leads to loss of thrombo-resistance, resulting in thrombin formation, neutrophil recruitment and activation, and stimulation of mesenchymal cells^[7-10]. Thus, the typical chronic aspects are represented by diffuse connective tissue fibrosis, obliterative endoarteritis and following neo-angiogenesis with telangiectasias development. Therefore, the development of late-onset, chronic radiation-induced symptoms are strictly related to the fibrotic and ischemic process and to the chronic state of inflammation and alteration of the gut permeability and barrier function.

DRUGS FOR PREVENTING PRD

In the last decades several drugs have been investigated as potential chemopreventive agents (Table 1); in the next paragraphs we will provide a brief overview on these drugs, focusing on the best available evidences and on the effects on both acute and late-onset radiation-induced side effects.

Amifostine

Amifostine is an organic thiophosphate cytoprotective agent^[11]. The rationale for the use of amifostine as a radioprotective agent is its capability of detoxifying the reactive metabolites and scavenging reactive oxygen species generated by tissue irradiation. The selective action of amifostine on normal instead of tumoural tissue is attributed to the higher capillary alkaline phosphatase activity, higher pH and better vascularity of normal tissues compared to tumour tissue, resulting in a more rapid generation of the active thiol metabolite^[12].

Table 1 Efficacy of drugs as possible preventive agents of pelvic radiation disease

Drug	Route of administration	Type of evidence	Prevention		Comments
			Acute PRD	Chronic PRD	
Amifostine	IV or SC	RCTs	Yes	No	A dose of 340 mg/m ² IV or 500 SC administered during the whole period of treatment may prevent acute but not late-onset symptoms Nausea and vomiting are common side effects
Amifostine	Rectal	RCTs	Yes	?	Intrarectal administration is feasible and seems safe A dose of 1–2 g/d administered during the whole period of treatment may prevent acute symptoms A dose of 2 g/d seems more effective than 1 g/d No systemic side effects reported No definitive data on long-term effect Large multicenter RCTs are warranted
Sulfasalazine	Oral	RCT	Yes	?	A dose of 1000 mg/d significantly reduces the risk of developing diarrhea during radiation treatment
Balsalazide	Oral	RCT	Yes	No	Daily dose of 6 capsules may reduce compliance to the preventive treatment in clinical practice Possible beneficial effect Large multicenter RCTs are warranted
Mesalazine	Oral or rectal	RCTs	No	?	No beneficial or even harmful effects on acute symptoms
Beclomethasone	Rectal	RCT	No	Yes	Possible preventive effect on late-onset rectal bleeding and cost-effective preventive strategy
Sucralfate	Oral	RCTs	No	No	No beneficial or even harmful effect as preventive agents on both acute and late-onset symptoms
Probiotics	Oral	RCTs Meta-analysis	Yes	?	Useful for treating rectal bleeding Large multicenter RCTs are warranted

IV: Intravenous; SC: Subcutaneous; RCT: Randomized controlled trial; PRD: Pelvic radiation disease.

Amifostine can be administered intravenously, subcutaneously or intrarectally. Several randomized controlled trials have investigated the efficacy of amifostine treatment for the prevention of pelvic radiation disease^[13–19].

Effect on acute PRD: Overall, amifostine preventive treatment has shown to be effective in the prevention of acute, early-onset radiation-induced disease, particularly when administered intrarectally^[13].

Athanassiou *et al.*^[14] enrolled 205 patients with pelvic cancer, 110 treated with daily intravenous amifostine (340 mg/m² in 3–5 min, 15–30 min before RT) and 95 controls. Grade 2–3 acute toxicity, according to the EORTC/RTOG clinical scale, was reported in 5.5% of patients in the amifostine group against 22.1% in the control group ($P = 0.001$). Katsanos *et al.*^[15] demonstrated in a randomized controlled trial that the subcutaneous administration of amifostine was feasible and effective. Forty-four patients with either rectal or uterine cancer were enrolled: 21 patients were assigned to the active arm (daily s.c. amifostine at a dose of 500 mg, 20–30 min before radiotherapy) and 23 were randomized to the control group. Four patients (17.4%) in the control group developed acute colitis whilst none of the patients in the active group developed acute colitis ($P = 0.05$)^[15].

In order to increase patient compliance and acceptance, the intrarectal route has been

investigated as an alternative to the intravenous or subcutaneous routes. Kouloulis *et al.*^[16] in a randomized controlled trial evaluated 67 patients, 33 of whom were treated with daily intrarectal amifostine at a dose of 1.5 g administered as an aqueous solution in a 40-mL enema vs 34 controls and found that amifostine treatment significantly reduced acute rectal toxicity from 44% (Grades I–II) to 15% (Grade I) ($P = 0.026$). Singh *et al.*^[17] investigated in a non-randomized comparative study the efficacy of a higher dosage of intrarectal amifostine (2 g) vs a lower dosage (1 g). After assigning 18 patients to 1 g and 12 patients to 2 g, the authors found that patients treated with higher dosage did not experience radiation-related toxicity, while 33% of patients in the 1-g group reported Grade 2 toxicity; however, the difference was not statistically significant ($P = 0.06$)^[17].

The intrarectal route of administration of amifostine turned out to be more effective than the subcutaneous one^[13]. Kouloulis *et al.*^[13] investigated in a randomized comparative study 27 patients treated with daily intrarectal amifostine at a dose of 1.5 g vs 26 patients treated with daily subcutaneous amifostine at a dose of 500 mg and found a lower incidence of Grades I–II rectal radiation morbidity in the intrarectal group (11% vs 42%, $P = 0.04$)^[13].

Effect on chronic PRD: The efficacy of amifostine preventive treatment on late-onset, chronic pelvic

radiation disease is still unclear and data conflicting. One pilot study, based on 29 patients with localized prostate cancer, showed a significant reduction of late rectal bleeding after daily intrarectal high-dosage amifostine (1.5-2.5 g) vs low-dosage amifostine (0.5-1 g) ($P = 0.0325$)^[18]. Singh *et al*^[17] in a non-randomized, controlled study considered 30 patients with pelvic cancer, 18 of whom received low-dosage intrarectal amifostine (1 g daily) vs 12 patients receiving high-dosage intrarectal amifostine (2 g daily) and found that the higher dosage significantly reduced late-onset, chronic pelvic radiation disease at 12 mo ($P = 0.04$). On the other hand, Katsanos *et al*^[15] in the previously mentioned randomized controlled trial did not report any efficacy for subcutaneous amifostine to prevent late-onset toxicity. Based on the available data, it is not clear whether the administration route influences the efficacy of amifostine-based preventive treatment. Well-performed, prospective, large sample trials, comparing different routes of administration should be performed to clarify the effect on late-onset radiation-induced toxicity.

Amifostine can be considered as a safe drug and side effects have been described only when the intravenous and subcutaneous routes of administration were performed. Nausea, vomiting, severe asthenia, transient hypotension and local erythema and pruritus have been the most frequently reported side effects (5.5%-27.8%)^[15,19]. Infrequently, severe hypotension and systemic allergic reaction with cutaneous rash and dyspnea have been described^[14]. No life-threatening adverse events have ever been reported. Notably, intrarectal amifostine seems to be safer and systemic side effects have not been reported since now.

Aminosalicylates

Aminosalicylates are compounds that contain 5-aminosalicylic acid (5-ASA), which is a potent inhibitor of the synthesis and release of pro-inflammatory mediators (e.g., nitric oxide, leukotrienes, thromboxanes, and platelet activating factor) and also inhibits the function of several cells implicated in the acute inflammatory and immune response (e.g., natural killer cells, mast cells, neutrophils, mucosal lymphocytes, and macrophages)^[20]. As the pathophysiology of early pelvic radiation disease is mainly mediated by eicosanoid inflammatory mediators^[21], the administration of aminosalicylates in order to prevent acute radiation-induced rectal injury has been investigated.

The available aminosalicylates can be distinguished into pro-drugs (sulfasalazine and balsalazide) and active compound (mesalazine).

Sulfasalazine

Sulfasalazine is a pro-drug that is metabolized to its active component, 5-ASA, by intestinal microflora,

therefore ensuring a high concentration of the active drug to the distal colon.

Kiliç *et al*^[22] considered in a randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind trial, 87 patients, 44 of whom were assigned to the active group (two tablets of 500 mg of sulfasalazine twice a day) against 43 patients allocated in the control group. During irradiation, diarrhea occurred in 55% of the sulfasalazine and 86% of the placebo group, and this difference was found to be statistically significant ($P < 0.001$)^[22]. Additionally, sulfasalazine significantly decreased the severity of radiation-induced symptoms as evaluated by LENT-SOMA score after the first week of radiotherapy: precisely, in the second ($P = 0.003$), third ($P < 0.001$), fourth ($P < 0.001$) and fifth ($P < 0.001$) weeks.

Pal *et al*^[23] enrolled in a randomized, placebo-controlled trial 98 patients with carcinoma of the cervix, 49 of whom were assigned to the active arm (oral sulfasalazine 1 g twice daily from the day of starting of radiotherapy to 1 wk after completion of treatment) vs 49 patients allocated to the placebo group. Sulfasalazine showed to significantly reduce the occurrence of acute radiation-induced toxicity as evaluated by Common Toxicity Criteria (CTC); the incidence of grade II or higher gastrointestinal toxicity was 19.1% (9/47) in the active arm vs 41.7% (20/48) in the control group ($P = 0.017$). None of the previously cited trials reported any considerable side effect due to sulfasalazine.

Most of the existing evidence supports the role of sulfasalazine as a preventive treatment of acute, early-onset PRD. The Mucositis Study Group of Multinational Association of Supportive Care in Cancer (MASCC), an international multidisciplinary organization dedicated to research, policy and programs to improve the quality of life of patients and caregivers touched by cancer^[24], suggests the use of sulfasalazine orally twice daily to reduce the incidence and severity of radiation-induced enteropathy in patients receiving external-beam radiotherapy to the pelvis^[25]. However, there are no definitive data on its long-term efficacy in the prevention of chronic PRD.

Balsalazide

Balsalazide is a pro-drug of mesalazine chemically similar to sulfasalazine but lacking the sulfapyridine moiety in favor of a less antigenic carrier, 4-aminobenzoyl- β -alanine, which yields a high concentration of active drug (5-ASA) to the distal colon being metabolized by colonic microflora^[20].

Jahraus *et al*^[26] performed the only randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind trial aiming to evaluate the preventive effect of balsalazide on acute radiation-induced side effects. Twenty five patients were enrolled and randomized to active treatment (3 capsules of 750 mg of balsalazide 2 times a day) or to identical-looking placebo. Patients started drugs

or placebo intake 5 d before the beginning of the radiation treatment and continued it until 14 d after the completion of RT. After a follow-up conducted throughout RT and concluded 2 wk after the end of radiation treatment, balsalazide significantly reduced the frequency of acute radiation-induced pelvic disease ($P = 0.04$) according to the CTC scale, in particular of proctopathy symptoms, when compared to placebo. Of note, 3 patients in the balsalazide group and 1 patient in the placebo group withdrew from the trial, because of the high number of pills to intake, thus the proposed way of administration might affect patient compliance in the clinical practice. Nausea and limited vomiting are the only adverse reactions to balsalazide reported so far^[26].

Up to now, these data have not been confirmed by further investigational trials, and the efficacy of balsalazide for the prevention of late-onset pelvic radiation disease has not yet been evaluated.

Mesalazine

Mesalazine (5-ASA) is the active compound of aminosalicylates. Freund *et al*^[27] considered in a randomized, placebo-controlled trial 16 patients with prostate cancer, 8 of whom received mesalazine as rectal suppositories (250 mg three times a day) vs 8 patients assigned to the placebo arm. The study was prematurely stopped because of severe side effects in the 5-ASA group: 75% of patients treated with 5-ASA reported symptoms of severe proctopathy while only one patient in the placebo group. Additionally, Baughan *et al*^[28] enrolled in a randomized controlled trial 73 patients with pelvic cancer and found that diarrhea occurred in a higher proportion of patients in the 5-ASA arm than the placebo arm (91.2% vs 73.7%, $P = 0.01$). Resbeut *et al*^[29] considered in a randomized, placebo-controlled trial 153 patients, 74 of whom receiving two tablets four times a day of mesalazine 500 mg (daily dose 4 g) vs 79 patients assigned to the placebo arm throughout the pelvic irradiation period. No significant difference regarding either the occurrence and the duration of diarrhea was observed, while the severity of diarrhea considered after two weeks from the beginning of radiation therapy was significantly higher in the 5-ASA group ($P = 0.006$).

Based on the available evidences, there is no evidence supporting the administration of mesalazine in the prevention of acute, early-onset PRD. Moreover mesalazine has repeatedly shown in RCTs to worsen symptoms in comparison with placebo and thus mesalazine should be avoided as a preventive agent.

Beclomethasone dipropionate

The inflammatory process plays a pivotal role in the early phases of radiation-induced damages^[3]. Therefore, reducing or abolishing the initial infl-

ammatory process could be a reasonable preventive strategy of radiation-induced alterations. Glucocorticosteroids are the most effective anti-inflammatory agents available for several inflammatory diseases, but their prolonged use is limited by the development of severe side effects. Beclomethasone dipropionate (BDP) is a nonsystemic glucocorticoid with a different and safer pharmacokinetic profile.

In 2011, the preventive efficacy of BDP has been investigated in a double-blind, placebo-controlled randomized trial^[30]. Patients with a diagnosis of prostate cancer and scheduled for radiation treatment were treated with a 3-mg BDP enema or identical-looking placebo the evening before each radiation session, for the entire duration of radiotherapy. Immediately after the end of radiotherapy, patients stopped the enema formulation and received two 3-mg BDP suppositories, or identical placebo, for 4 more weeks. Between June 2007 and October 2008, 120 patients were randomized, 60 patients in the BDP arm and 60 patients in the placebo arm. After 12 mo of follow-up, patients treated with BDP presented a significant reduction of the post-radiation risk of bleeding (OR = 0.38; 95%CI: 0.17-0.86) and of rectal mucosal changes. In particular, actively treated patients presented fewer rectal angiectasias in comparison to non-treated patients. Most importantly, at the end of follow-up, patients on BDP presented a higher Quality of Life score, in particular BDP preventive treatment seemed to better preserve the patient's emotional status (e.g., anger, depression, irritability), which was less frequently altered.

At the moment, this represents the only available RCT showing a beneficial effect of BDP treatment as chemopreventive agent. Further studies are warranted to confirm these encouraging results.

Misoprostol

Misoprostol is a methylester analog of prostaglandin E1 that is used to prevent gastric ulcers, to treat missed miscarriage, to induce labor and to induce abortion. The rationale for its use as a radioprotective agent lies on its capability to stimulate mucus production, to prevent cellular shedding and lysosomal enzyme release^[31]. Additionally, misoprostol seems to induce the production of sulfhydryl compounds, which may act as free radical scavengers^[32].

Few randomized trials have investigated the efficacy of intrarectal misoprostol in preventing PRD and overall the results are contrasting. Khan *et al*^[33] enrolled in a randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind trial, 16 patients who underwent pelvic irradiation, 9 of whom received one rectal suppository of 400 µg of misoprostol one hour before each radiotherapy session, vs 7 patients taking placebo. According to a non-validated clinical scale-considering bowel movements per day, rectal tenesmus, rectal bleeding and general well-being-misoprostol significantly reduced the occurrence and

severity of acute, early-onset PRD ($P < 0.01$) and also decreased the incidence and severity of chronic rectal toxicity ($P < 0.01$). On the other hand, Hille *et al* randomized 100 patients with prostatic cancer, 50 of whom received one rectal suppository of 400 µg of misoprostol one hour before each radiotherapy session, vs 50 patients taking placebo^[34,35]. As assessed by the validated RTOG and LENT/SOMA clinical scales, misoprostol did not reduce the incidence and severity of radiation-induced acute PRD nor the occurrence and gravity of chronic, late-onset PRD. Furthermore, misoprostol increased the incidence of grade 1 and 2 acute rectal bleeding ($P = 0.03$) and also favored late rectal bleeding.

In conclusion, as the existing evidence concerning the efficacy of misoprostol in the prevention of PRD is conflicting, misoprostol should not be considered as a treatment of choice in the clinical setting, as also discouraged by the MASCC panel^[25].

Sucralfate

Sucralfate is an alkaline aluminum hydroxide of sulfated sucrose. The rationale for the administration of sucralfate in the prevention of PRD lies on its supposed property to protect mucosa by forming a viscous superficial coating and to stimulate mucosal healing by its angiogenic effect^[36,37]. Sucralfate can be administered either orally or as a rectal enema.

Effect on acute PRD: The efficacy of sucralfate in the prevention of acute, early-onset PRD has been investigated by several randomized, controlled trials^[38-42]. Overall, sucralfate as a preventive treatment on acute radiation-induced toxicity seems not to be effective.

In 1991, Henriksson *et al*^[38] published a randomized, double-blind placebo-controlled trial based on 66 patients with localized pelvic cancer and found encouraging results; indeed, 1 g of sucralfate taken 6 times a day significantly improved diarrhea ($P = 0.003$), frequency of defecation ($P = 0.04$), stool consistency ($P = 0.04$) and loperamide consumption ($P = 0.003$) as evaluated by patient diary. However, these data were not subsequently confirmed by several RCTs. Martenson *et al*^[39] enrolled in a randomized double-blind placebo-controlled trial 123 patients with pelvic cancer, 62 receiving oral sucralfate 1.5 g four times a day vs 61 receiving placebo, and found that sucralfate did not decrease acute pelvic RT-related bowel toxicity and even seemed to worsen some gastrointestinal symptoms. Indeed, patients receiving sucralfate had an increased frequency of fecal incontinence (34% vs 16%, $P = 0.04$), need for protective clothing (23% vs 8%, $P = 0.04$), and an increased occurrence and severity of nausea ($P = 0.03$). Similarly, Stellamans *et al*^[40] evaluated in a randomized double-blind placebo-controlled trial 80 patients, 38 of whom received oral sucralfate four times a day, twice 1 g and twice 2 g

vs 42 patients taking placebo, and did not find any significant difference in the incidence and severity of acute radiotherapy-induced discomfort, diarrhea and in the number of stools per day. Moreover, Hovdenak *et al*^[41] enrolled in a randomized, placebo-controlled trial 51 patients with localized pelvic tumor during 7-wk radiotherapy, 24 of whom were randomized to oral sucralfate 2 g three times a day vs 27 receiving placebo, and found in an interim analysis that sucralfate significantly increased acute RT-induced diarrhea ($P = 0.033$) so that the trial was stopped. The finding of the above mentioned RCTs was further confirmed by a meta-analysis that showed no significant beneficial effect of sucralfate on the prevention of acute radiation-induced symptoms^[41]. The rectal administration of sucralfate was tested too. In a randomized, placebo-controlled trial, O'Brien *et al*^[42] enrolled 86 patients with localized prostate cancer and assigned 43 of them to receive once daily enema of 3 g of sucralfate in 15 mL suspension, given during and for 2 wk after the end of radiotherapy vs 43 patients receiving placebo, and found that sucralfate did not substantially reduce the incidence of symptoms associated with irradiation.

Based on the available evidences, the MASCC panel recommends oral sucralfate not to be used to prevent acute rectal side effects induced by radiotherapy^[25].

Effect on chronic PRD: As far as chronic, late-onset PRD is concerned, its prevention with oral sucralfate has been investigated in several randomized controlled trials with conflicting results. In the previously reported trial, Henriksson *et al*^[43] found that 1 g of sucralfate taken 6 times a day was again significantly effective in reducing the frequency of defecation ($P = 0.01$), of mucus discharge ($P = 0.01$) and weight loss ($P = 0.04$) in comparison to the placebo group, and also observed a trend in diminishing the occurrence of blood in the stools ($P = 0.11$) and loperamide consumption ($P = 0.11$). At opposite, Kneebone *et al*^[44] evaluated in a randomized, double-blind placebo-controlled trial 298 patients with localized prostate cancer, 143 of whom received 3 g of oral sucralfate twice a day vs 155 patients taking placebo, and found no significant reduction in the incidence of late rectal toxicity in patients receiving sucralfate; indeed, the cumulative incidence of RTOG Grade 2 or worse late rectal toxicity at 2 years, was 28% for placebo and 22% for the sucralfate arm ($P = 0.23$) and there were no differences concerning bowel frequency ($P = 0.99$), mucus discharge ($P = 0.64$), or fecal incontinence ($P = 0.90$)^[44].

O'Brien *et al*^[45] enrolled in a randomized, placebo-controlled trial 86 patients with localized prostate cancer and assigned 43 of them to receive once daily enema of 3 g of sucralfate in 15 mL suspension vs 43 receiving placebo and found that rectal

sucralfate did not reduce the occurrence of chronic PRD, as the occurrence of late Grade 2 RTOG/EORTC toxicity was 5% in the sucralfate arm vs 12% in the placebo group ($P = 0.26$), and the incidence of late rectal bleeding was not different between the two arms of randomization (54% for sucralfate vs 59% for placebo).

Concerning the existing evidence, sucralfate seems to be safe and no serious adverse events have been reported. Fecal incontinence, nausea and constipation are the only side effects reported so far, in about 15%-34% of patients^[39,41].

Probiotic supplementation

After pelvic radiation treatment it has been observed a change in the microbial ecosystem of the large intestine, which can contribute to the development of radiation-induced GI side effects^[46,47]. Therefore, it has been suggested that probiotics supplementation during radiation treatment might reduce the development of radiation-induced side effects, in particular of diarrhea. Indeed, probiotics might have a role in the prevention and treatment of radiation-induced diarrhea, because their mechanisms of action include modification of composition of indigenous intestinal flora, enhancement of mucosal barrier function, prevention of bacterial overgrowth, and colonization of pathogens, and stimulation of hosts immune defenses^[48].

Up to now, only few studies have been performed with the intent to ascertain the preventive effect of probiotics supplementation during radiation-treatment^[49,50]. Overall, these studies have concluded for a possible preventive effect. In particular Fuccio *et al.*^[50] performed a double-blinded, placebo-controlled trial to investigate whether a preparation of probiotics, VSL#3, could reduce the incidence and severity of radiation-induced diarrhea. Each sachet of VSL#3 administered during the trial contained 450 billions/g of viable lyophilized bacteria, including several different strains of lactobacilli (*L. casei*, *L. plantarum*, *L. acidophilus*, *L. delbruekii* subsp. *bulgaricus*), 3 strains of bifidobacteria (*B. longum*, *B. breve* and *B. infantis*) and 1 strain of *Streptococcus salivarius* subsp. *thermophilus*. During a 6-year period of enrollment, 482 patients who underwent adjuvant postoperative radiation therapy for sigmoid, rectal or cervical cancers were evaluated; 243 patients were randomized to receive probiotic supplementation and 239 patients were randomized in the placebo group. Radiation-induced diarrhea was less frequent in the active group (31.6% of patients) than in the placebo group (51.8%) ($P < 0.001$); furthermore, diarrhea was also consistently less severe in the probiotic supplementation group. Indeed, in the placebo group, 55.4% of patients that developed diarrhea presented a grade 3 severity (requiring treatment) or 4 (presence of hemorrhage or dehydration), compared with only 1.4% of patients in the active group (P

< 0.001). Finally, the mean daily number of bowel movements was significantly lower in the active group compared with the placebo group ($P < 0.001$), whereas the mean time of use of rescue medication (loperamide) was significantly longer ($P < 0.001$). Finally, probiotic supplementation was well tolerated without reporting moderate or severe side effects.

These encouraging results, however, have not yet been confirmed and further well-performed, high-quality studies should be performed on this highly interesting issue.

CONCLUSION

Pelvic radiation disease is a multifactorial disease with a wide range of clinical spectrum. Several risk factors and subgroups of patients at increased risk of developing radiation-induced toxicity have been identified. Since endothelial dysfunction, inflammation, and connective tissue alterations have an important role in the pathogenesis of pelvic radiation disease^[3], patients with diabetes, inflammatory bowel diseases (Crohn's disease or ulcerative colitis), and collagen vascular disease (scleroderma, systemic lupus erythematosus) have an increased risk of developing severe acute and late toxicities. Patients with these clinical conditions might have the maximum beneficial effect from a preventive treatment with several agents (e.g., intrarectal amifostine, beclomethasone dipropionate and oral probiotics), for which well-performed RCTs have showed a beneficial effect for the prevention of acute and/or late-onset radiation-induced toxicities. Further studies should be performed to increase the literature concerning this issue, focusing on the identification of subgroups of patients for which a preventive strategy should be advised.

REFERENCES

- 1 Jemal A, Bray F, Center MM, Ferlay J, Ward E, Forman D. Global cancer statistics. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2011; **61**: 69-90 [PMID: 21296855 DOI: 10.3322/caac.20107]
- 2 Andreyev HJ, Wotherspoon A, Denham JW, Hauer-Jensen M. Defining pelvic-radiation disease for the survivorship era. *Lancet Oncol* 2010; **11**: 310-312 [PMID: 20149738 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(10)70026-7]
- 3 Fuccio L, Guido A, Andreyev HJ. Management of intestinal complications in patients with pelvic radiation disease. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **10**: 1326-1334.e4 [PMID: 22858731 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2012.07.017]
- 4 Staffurth J. A review of the clinical evidence for intensity-modulated radiotherapy. *Clin Oncol (R Coll Radiol)* 2010; **22**: 643-657 [PMID: 20673708 DOI: 10.1016/j.clon.2010.06.013]
- 5 Dearnaley DP, Khoo VS, Norman AR, Meyer L, Nahum A, Tait D, Yarnold J, Horwich A. Comparison of radiation side-effects of conformal and conventional radiotherapy in prostate cancer: a randomised trial. *Lancet* 1999; **353**: 267-272 [PMID: 9929018 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(98)05180-0]
- 6 Putta S, Andreyev HJ. Faecal incontinence: A late side-effect of pelvic radiotherapy. *Clin Oncol (R Coll Radiol)* 2005; **17**: 469-477 [PMID: 16149292 DOI: 10.1016/j.clon.2005.02.008]
- 7 Denham JW, Hauer-Jensen M. The radiotherapeutic injury--a

- complex 'wound'. *Radiother Oncol* 2002; **63**: 129-145 [PMID: 12063002 DOI: 10.1016/S0167-8140(02)00060-9]
- 8 **Brenn T**, Fletcher CD. Postirradiation vascular proliferations: an increasing problem. *Histopathology* 2006; **48**: 106-114 [PMID: 16359542 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2559.2005.02293.x]
- 9 **Dörr W**, Hendry JH. Consequential late effects in normal tissues. *Radiother Oncol* 2001; **61**: 223-231 [PMID: 11730991 DOI: 10.1016/S0167-8140(01)00429-7]
- 10 **Wedlake LJ**, Thomas K, Lalji A, Blake P, Khoo VS, Tait D, Andreyev HJ. Predicting late effects of pelvic radiotherapy: is there a better approach? *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2010; **78**: 1163-1170 [PMID: 20231077 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijrobp.2009.09.011]
- 11 **Schumacher C**, Paul K, Robbe Y, Sicart MT, Chanal JL, Delard R, Dubois JB. Mice's rectum radioprotection: comparative efficacy of a series of aminothiols and aminothiol precursors. *Farmaco* 1997; **52**: 729-731 [PMID: 9648277]
- 12 **Keshavarzian A**, Haydek J, Zabihi R, Doria M, D'Astice M, Sorenson JR. Agents capable of eliminating reactive oxygen species. Catalase, WR-2721, or Cu(II)2(3,5-DIPS)4 decrease experimental colitis. *Dig Dis Sci* 1992; **37**: 1866-1873 [PMID: 1335406 DOI: 10.1007/BF01308081]
- 13 **Kouloulis VE**, Kouvaris JR, Pissakas G, Mallas E, Antypas C, Kokakis JD, Matsopoulos G, Michopoulos S, Mystakidou K, Vlahos LJ. Phase II multicenter randomized study of amifostine for prevention of acute radiation rectal toxicity: topical intrarectal versus subcutaneous application. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2005; **62**: 486-493 [PMID: 15890591 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijrobp.2004.10.043]
- 14 **Athanassiou H**, Antonadou D, Coliarakis N, Kouveli A, Synodinou M, Paraskevaidis M, Sarris G, Georgakopoulos GR, Panousaki K, Karageorgis P, Throuvalas N. Protective effect of amifostine during fractionated radiotherapy in patients with pelvic carcinomas: results of a randomized trial. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2003; **56**: 1154-1160 [PMID: 12829154 DOI: 10.1016/S0360-3016(03)00187-1]
- 15 **Katsanos KH**, Briassoulis E, Tsekeris P, Batistatou A, Bai M, Tolis C, Capizzello A, Pangelos I, Karavasilis V, Christodoulou D, Tsianos EV. Randomized phase II exploratory study of prophylactic amifostine in cancer patients who receive radical radiotherapy to the pelvis. *J Exp Clin Cancer Res* 2010; **29**: 68 [PMID: 20537164 DOI: 10.1186/1756-9966-29-68]
- 16 **Kouloulis VE**, Kouvaris JR, Pissakas G, Kokakis JD, Antypas C, Mallas E, Matsopoulos G, Michopoulos S, Vosdoganis SP, Kostakopoulos A, Vlahos LJ. A phase II randomized study of topical intrarectal administration of amifostine for the prevention of acute radiation-induced rectal toxicity. *Strahlenther Onkol* 2004; **180**: 557-562 [PMID: 15378186 DOI: 10.1007/s00066-004-1226-1]
- 17 **Singh AK**, Ménard C, Guion P, Simone NL, Smith S, Crouse NS, Godette DJ, Cooley-Zgela T, Sciuto LC, Coleman J, Pinto P, Albert PS, Camphausen K, Coleman CN. Intrarectal amifostine suspension may protect against acute proctitis during radiation therapy for prostate cancer: a pilot study. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2006; **65**: 1008-1013 [PMID: 16730138 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijrobp.2006.02.030]
- 18 **Ben-Josef E**, Han S, Tobin M, Shaw LM, Bonner HS, Vargas BJ, Prokop S, Stamos B, Kelly L, Biggar S, Kaplan I. A pilot study of topical intrarectal application of amifostine for prevention of late radiation rectal injury. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2002; **53**: 1160-1164 [PMID: 12128116 DOI: 10.1016/S0360-3016(02)02883-3]
- 19 **Kouvaris J**, Kouloulis V, Malas E, Antypas C, Kokakis J, Michopoulos S, Matsopoulos G, Vlahos L. Amifostine as radioprotective agent for the rectal mucosa during irradiation of pelvic tumors. A phase II randomized study using various toxicity scales and rectosigmoidoscopy. *Strahlenther Onkol* 2003; **179**: 167-174 [PMID: 12627259 DOI: 10.1007/s00066-003-0970-y]
- 20 **Prakash A**, Spencer CM. Balsalazide. *Drugs* 1998; **56**: 83-89; discussion 90 [PMID: 9664201 DOI: 10.2165/00003495-199856010-00008]
- 21 **Cole AT**, Slater K, Sokal M, Hawkey CJ. In vivo rectal inflammatory mediator changes with radiotherapy to the pelvis. *Gut* 1993; **34**: 1210-1214 [PMID: 8406156 DOI: 10.1136/gut.34.9.1210]
- 22 **Kiliç D**, Egehan I, Ozenirler S, Dursun A. Double-blinded, randomized, placebo-controlled study to evaluate the effectiveness of sulphasalazine in preventing acute gastrointestinal complications due to radiotherapy. *Radiother Oncol* 2000; **57**: 125-129 [PMID: 11054515 DOI: 10.1016/S0167-8140(00)00254-1]
- 23 **Pal S**, Adhikary SS, Bhattacharya B, Basu J, Ghosh T, Patra NB. A prospective randomized controlled trial to study the role of sulfasalazine in prevention of acute gastrointestinal toxicity associated with concurrent chemoradiation in carcinoma cervix. *Clin Cancer Investig J* 2013; **2**: 118-121 [DOI: 10.4103/2278-0513.113633]
- 24 **Rittenberg CN**, Johnson JL, Kuncio GM. An oral history of MASCC, its origin and development from MASCC's beginnings to 2009. *Support Care Cancer* 2010; **18**: 775-784 [PMID: 20221642]
- 25 **Gibson RJ**, Keefe DM, Lalla RV, Bateman E, Blijlevens N, Fijlstra M, King EE, Stringer AM, van der Velden WJ, Yazbeck R, Elad S, Bowen JM. Systematic review of agents for the management of gastrointestinal mucositis in cancer patients. *Support Care Cancer* 2013; **21**: 313-326 [PMID: 23142924 DOI: 10.1007/s00520-012-1644-z]
- 26 **Jahraus CD**, Bettenhausen D, Malik U, Sellitti M, St Clair WH. Prevention of acute radiation-induced proctosigmoiditis by balsalazide: a randomized, double-blind, placebo controlled trial in prostate cancer patients. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2005; **63**: 1483-1487 [PMID: 16099600 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijrobp.2005.04.032]
- 27 **Freund U**, Schölmerich J, Siems H, Kluge F, Schäfer HE, Wannenmacher M. [Unwanted side-effects in using mesalazine (5-aminosalicylic acid) during radiotherapy]. *Strahlenther Onkol* 1987; **163**: 678-680 [PMID: 3313776]
- 28 **Baughan CA**, Canney PA, Buchanan RB, Pickering RM. A randomized trial to assess the efficacy of 5-aminosalicylic acid for the prevention of radiation enteritis. *Clin Oncol (R Coll Radiol)* 1993; **5**: 19-24 [PMID: 8424910 DOI: 10.1016/S0936-6555(05)80689-2]
- 29 **Resbeut M**, Marteau P, Cowen D, Richaud P, Bourdin S, Dubois JB, Mere P, N'Guyen TD. A randomized double blind placebo controlled multicenter study of mesalazine for the prevention of acute radiation enteritis. *Radiother Oncol* 1997; **44**: 59-63 [PMID: 9288859]
- 30 **Fuccio L**, Guido A, Laterza L, Eusebi LH, Busutti L, Bunkheila F, Barbieri E, Bazzoli F. Randomised clinical trial: preventive treatment with topical rectal beclomethasone dipropionate reduces post-radiation risk of bleeding in patients irradiated for prostate cancer. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **34**: 628-637 [PMID: 21790680 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2011.04780.x]
- 31 **Hanson WR**, Houseman KA, Collins PW. Radiation protection in vivo by prostaglandins and related compounds of the arachidonic acid cascade. *Pharmacol Ther* 1988; **39**: 347-356 [PMID: 2849133 DOI: 10.1016/0163-7258(88)90082-4]
- 32 **Gal D**, Strickland DM, Lifshitz S, Buchsbaum HJ, Mitchell MD. Effect of radiation on prostaglandin production by human bowel in vitro. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 1984; **10**: 653-657 [PMID: 6588048]
- 33 **Khan AM**, Birk JW, Anderson JC, Georgsson M, Park TL, Smith CJ, Comer GM. A prospective randomized placebo-controlled double-blinded pilot study of misoprostol rectal suppositories in the prevention of acute and chronic radiation proctitis symptoms in prostate cancer patients. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2000; **95**: 1961-1966 [PMID: 10950043 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2000.02260.x]
- 34 **Hille A**, Schmidberger H, Hermann RM, Christiansen H, Saile B, Pradier O, Hess CF. A phase III randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind study of misoprostol rectal suppositories to prevent acute radiation proctitis in patients with prostate cancer. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2005; **63**: 1488-1493 [PMID: 16137837 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijrobp.2005.05.063]
- 35 **Kertesz T**, Herrmann MK, Zapf A, Christiansen H, Hermann RM, Pradier O, Schmidberger H, Hess CF, Hille A. Effect of a prostaglandin--given rectally for prevention of radiation-induced acute proctitis--on late rectal toxicity. Results of a phase III randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind study. *Strahlenther Onkol* 2009; **185**: 596-602 [PMID: 19756426 DOI: 10.1007/s00066-009-1978-8]
- 36 **Folkman J**, Shing Y. Control of angiogenesis by heparin and other sulfated polysaccharides. *Adv Exp Med Biol* 1992; **313**: 355-364

- [PMID: 1279952]
- 37 **Szabo S**, Vattay P, Scarbrough E, Folkman J. Role of vascular factors, including angiogenesis, in the mechanisms of action of sucralfate. *Am J Med* 1991; **91**: 158S-160S [PMID: 1715670 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9343(91)90469-E]
 - 38 **Henriksson R**, Franzén L, Littbrand B. Prevention of irradiation-induced bowel discomfort by sucralfate: a double-blind, placebo-controlled study when treating localized pelvic cancer. *Am J Med* 1991; **91**: 151S-157S [PMID: 1882903 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9343(91)90468-D]
 - 39 **Martenson JA**, Bollinger JW, Sloan JA, Novotny PJ, Urias RE, Michalak JC, Shanahan TG, Mailliard JA, Levitt R. Sucralfate in the prevention of treatment-induced diarrhea in patients receiving pelvic radiation therapy: A North Central Cancer Treatment Group phase III double-blind placebo-controlled trial. *J Clin Oncol* 2000; **18**: 1239-1245 [PMID: 10715293]
 - 40 **Stellamans K**, Lievens Y, Lambin P, Van den Weyngaert D, Van den Bogaert W, Scalliet P, Hutsebaut L, Haustermans K. Does sucralfate reduce early side effects of pelvic radiation? A double-blind randomized trial. *Radiother Oncol* 2002; **65**: 105-108 [PMID: 12443806 DOI: 10.1016/S0167-8140(02)00281-5]
 - 41 **Hovdenak N**, Sørbye H, Dahl O. Sucralfate does not ameliorate acute radiation proctitis: randomised study and meta-analysis. *Clin Oncol (R Coll Radiol)* 2005; **17**: 485-491 [PMID: 16149294 DOI: 10.1016/j.clon.2005.04.011]
 - 42 **O'Brien PC**, Franklin CI, Dear KB, Hamilton CC, Poulsen M, Joseph DJ, Spry N, Denham JW. A phase III double-blind randomised study of rectal sucralfate suspension in the prevention of acute radiation proctitis. *Radiother Oncol* 1997; **45**: 117-123 [PMID: 9424000 DOI: 10.1016/S0167-8140(97)00146-1]
 - 43 **Henriksson R**, Franzén L, Littbrand B. Effects of sucralfate on acute and late bowel discomfort following radiotherapy of pelvic cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 1992; **10**: 969-975 [PMID: 1588377]
 - 44 **Kneebone A**, Mameghan H, Bolin T, Berry M, Turner S, Kearsley J, Graham P, Fisher R, Delaney G. Effect of oral sucralfate on late rectal injury associated with radiotherapy for prostate cancer: A double-blind, randomized trial. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2004; **60**: 1088-1097 [PMID: 15519779 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijrobp.2004.04.033]
 - 45 **O'Brien PC**, Franklin CI, Poulsen MG, Joseph DJ, Spry NS, Denham JW. Acute symptoms, not rectally administered sucralfate, predict for late radiation proctitis: longer term follow-up of a phase III trial--Trans-Tasman Radiation Oncology Group. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2002; **54**: 442-449 [PMID: 12243820 DOI: 10.1016/S0360-3016(02)02931-0]
 - 46 **Husebye E**, Skar V, Høverstad T, Iversen T, Melby K. Abnormal intestinal motor patterns explain enteric colonization with gram-negative bacilli in late radiation enteropathy. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **109**: 1078-1089 [PMID: 7557072 DOI: 10.1016/0016-5085(95)90565-0]
 - 47 **Manichanh C**, Varela E, Martinez C, Antolin M, Llopis M, Doré J, Giral J, Guarner F, Malagelada JR. The gut microbiota predispose to the pathophysiology of acute postradiotherapy diarrhea. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2008; **103**: 1754-1761 [PMID: 18564125 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2008.01868.x]
 - 48 **Guarner F**, Malagelada JR. Gut flora in health and disease. *Lancet* 2003; **361**: 512-519 [PMID: 12583961]
 - 49 **Delia P**, Sansotta G, Donato V, Frosina P, Messina G, De Renzis C, Famularo G. Use of probiotics for prevention of radiation-induced diarrhea. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 912-915 [PMID: 17352022]
 - 50 **Fuccio L**, Guido A, Eusebi LH, Laterza L, Grilli D, Cennamo V, Ceroni L, Barbieri E, Bazzoli F. Effects of probiotics for the prevention and treatment of radiation-induced diarrhea. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2009; **43**: 506-513 [PMID: 19398930 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e3181a1f59c]

P- Reviewer: Jain S S- Editor: Song XX L- Editor: A
E- Editor: Lu YJ





Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**

8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA

Telephone: +1-925-223-8242

Fax: +1-925-223-8243

E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com

Help Desk: <http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>

<http://www.wjgnet.com>



World Journal of *Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics*

World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther 2015 May 6; 6(2): 10-27





Editorial Board

2011-2015

The *World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics* Editorial Board consists of 411 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in surgery research. They are from 47 countries, including Argentina (3), Australia (13), Austria (4), Belarus (1), Belgium (3), Brazil (10), Canada (10), China (41), Czech Republic (1), Denmark (1), Egypt (3), Estonia (1), Finland (1), France (5), Germany (21), Greece (6), Hungary (4), India (18), Iran (6), Ireland (1), Israel (4), Italy (35), Japan (34), Lebanon (1), Lithuania (3), Mexico (2), Netherlands (10), New Zealand (2), Norway (2), Pakistan (2), Philippines (1), Poland (3), Portugal (2), Romania (1), Russia (1), Saudi Arabia (2), Singapore (3), Slovenia (1), South Africa (1), South Korea (16), Spain (13), Sweden (3), Switzerland (1), Thailand (4), Turkey (7), United Kingdom (20), and United States (84).

EDITOR-INCHIEF

Hugh J Freeman, *Vancouver*

STRATEGY ASSOCIATE

EDITORS-IN-CHIEF

Antonio Picardi, *Rome*

Elham Rahme, *Quebec*

Douglas Kevin Rex, *Indianapolis*

Angelo Zullo, *Rome*

GUEST EDITORIAL BOARD

MEMBERS

Full-Young Chang, *Taipei*

Mei-Chi Chang, *Taoyuan*

Ming-Jen Chen, *Taipei*

Chia-Yen Dai, *Kaohsiung*

Jiiang-Huei Jeng, *Taipei*

Wun-Chang Ko, *Taipei*

Hwai Jeng Lin, *Changhua*

Ming-Yie Liu, *Tainan*

Frank C Mao, *Taichung*

Tzu-Ming Pan, *Taipei*

Bor-Shyang Sheu, *Tainan*

Li Hsueh Tsai, *Taipei*

Keng-Liang Wu, *Kaohsiung*

Being-Sun Wung, *Chiayi*

Hsu-Heng Yen, *Changhua*

MEMBERS OF THE EDITORIAL BOARD



Argentina

Viviana Alicia Catania, *Rosario*

Guillermo Daniel Mazzolini, *Derqui-Pilar*

Valeria Paula Tripodi, *Buenos Aires*



Australia

Noor Al-Dasooqi, *Adelaide*

Thomas J Borody, *Sydney*

Rachel Jane Gibson, *Adelaide*

Xu-Feng Huang, *Wollongong*

Eline Suzanne Klaassens, *St Lucia*

Natasha A Koloski, *Brisbane*

Ian Lawrance, *Fremantle*

John Martin Mariadason, *Victoria*

Antonina Mikocka-Walus, *Melbourne*

Tim Murphy, *Adelaide*

Nam Quoc Nguyen, *Adelaide*

Samir Samman, *Sydney*

Neville D Yeomans, *Penrith South*



Austria

Martin Brunner, *Vienna*

Sonja Fruhwald, *Graz*

Michael Trauner, *Graz*

Viktoria Weber, *Krems*



Belarus

Sergey I Pimanov, *Vitebsk*



Belgium

Monika Schöller-Gyüre, *Mechelen*

Kristin Verbeke, *Leuven*

Vandenplas Yvan, *Alsemberg*



Brazil

Andréia Buffon, *Porto Alegre*

Gabriela Villaça Chaves, *Rio de Janeiro*

Percilia Cardoso Giaquinto, *Botucatu*

Clelia Akiko Hiruma-Lima, *Botucatu*

Andre Castro Lyra, *Bahia*

Edson Marchiori, *Rio de Janeiro*

Ricardo de Souza Pereira, *Macapá*

Rafael Roesler, *Porto Alegre*

Leonardo Lucca Schiavon, *Florianópolis*

Francisca Cléa Florenço Sousa, *Fortaleza*



Canada

Brian Bressler, *Vancouver*

Yuewen Gong, *Manitoba*

Hien Quoc Huynh, *Edmonton*

Grigorios I Leontiadis, *Hamilton*

Sharon Marsh, *Québec*

Jean Sévigny, *Québec*

Martin Alexander Storr, *Alberta*

John Thomas Weber, *St. John's*



China

Zhao-Xiang Bian, *Hong Kong*

Xin-Jing Chen, *Nanjing*

Chi-Hin Cho, *Hong Kong*

Yong-Song Guan, *Chengdu*

Zhi-Li Huang, *Shanghai*

Bo Li, *Beijing*

Duo Li, *Hangzhou*

Yu-Yuan Li, *Guangzhou*

Xiong Ma, *Shanghai*
 Pan Qin, *Shanghai*
 Guo-Ping Sun, *Hefei*
 Xue-Ying Sun, *Harbin*
 Ming-Fu Wang, *Hong Kong*
 Che-Yuen Justin Wu, *Hong Kong*
 De-Xiang Xu, *Hefei*
 Rui-An Xu, *Xiamen*
 Ming-Xian Yan, *Jinan*
 Yong-Feng Yang, *Nanjing*
 Thomas Yau, *Hong Kong*
 Win-Nei Yeo, *Hong Kong*
 Long Yu, *Guangzhou*
 Jian-Ping Yuan, *Guangzhou*
 Man-Fung Yuen, *Hong Kong*
 Jian-Fu Zhang, *Xuzhou*
 Li-Qun Zhang, *Beijing*
 Min-Sheng Zhu, *Nanjing*



Czech Republic

Rene Kizek, *Brno*



Denmark

Ole Haagen Nielsen, *Herlev*



Egypt

Omar Mohamed Abdel-Salam, *Cairo*
 Ahmed Osman Abdel-Zaher, *Assiut*
 Osama Ahmed Badary, *Cairo*



Estonia

Riin Tamm, *Tartu*



Finland

Riitta Korpela, *Helsinki*



France

Ferrand Audrey, *Toulouse*
 Frederic Batteux, *Paris*
 Thierry Capiod, *Paris*
 Frederic Lagarce, *Angers*
 Hang Thi Thu Nguyen, *Clermont-Ferrand*



Germany

Susanne Beckebaum, *Essen*
 Jürgen Borlak, *Hannover*
 Güralp Onur Ceyhan, *Munich*
 Walee Chamulitrat, *Heidelberg*
 Anton Gillessen, *Muenster*
 Dirk Heitzmann, *Muenster*
 Jens Michael Heyn, *München*
 Joachim Labenz, *Siegen*
 Florian Lang, *Tübingen*
 Klaus Mönkemüller, *Bottrop*
 Thomas Müller, *Berlin*
 Belal Naser, *Salzgitter*

Beate Niesler, *Heidelberg*
 Matthias Ocker, *Marburg*
 Andreas Marc Palmer, *Konstanz*
 Dirk Rades, *Lubeck*
 Fuat Hakan Saner, *Essen*
 Manfred V Singer, *Mannheim*
 Konrad Ludwig Streetz, *Aachen*
 Frank Tacke, *Aachen*
 Gerhard Treiber, *Balingen*



Greece

Moses Elisaf, *Ioannina*
 Anastasios Koulaouzidis, *Greek*
 Ioannis E Koutroubakis, *Crete*
 Spilios Manolakopoulos, *Athens*
 Konstantinos C Mountzouris, *Athens*
 George Papatheodoridis, *Athens*



Hungary

Zsolt Barta, *Debrecen*
 László Czakó, *Szeged*
 Béla Molnár, *Budapest*
 Gyula Mózsik, *Pecs*



India

Anil Kumar Agarwal, *New Delhi*
 Sandip Basu, *Bombay*
 Chiranjib Chakraborty, *Vellore*
 Rukhsana Chowdhury, *Kolkata*
 Santosh Darisetty, *Hyderabad*
 C M Habibullah, *Andhra Pradesh*
 Mohammad Sultan Khuroo, *Kashmir*
 Mohandas K Mallath, *Mumbai*
 Balraj Mittal, *Lucknow*
 Rama Devi Mittal, *Lucknow*
 Asish Kumar Mukhopadhyay, *Kolkata*
 Lekha Saha, *Chandigarh*
 Shiv Kumar Sarin, *New Delhi*
 Jayshri Ankur Shah, *Mumbai*
 Sonu Sundd Singh, *Gurgaon*
 Sikta Swarnakar, *Kolkata*
 Rakesh Tandon, *New Delhi*
 Asna Urooj, *Mysore*



Iran

Seyed Mohsen Dehghani, *Shiraz*
 Ahmad Reza Dehpour, *Tehran*
 Sara Farhang, *Tabriz*
 Ali Gholamrezaei, *Isfahan*
 Parisa Hasanein, *Hamadan*
 Amir Mohammad Mortazavian, *Tehran*



Ireland

Zaid Heetun, *Kilkenny*



Israel

Nimer Najib Assy, *Safed*

Rami Eliakim, *Haifa*
 Simon Bar Meir, *Hashomer*
 Haim Shmuel Odes, *Beer Sheba*



Italy

Giovanni C Actis, *Torino*
 Pietro Andreone, *Bologna*
 Bruno Annibale, *Rome*
 Leonardo Baiocchi, *Rome*
 Giovanni Barbara, *Bologna*
 Gabrio Bassotti, *Perugia*
 Francesca Borrelli, *Naples*
 Giuseppe Brisinda, *Rome*
 Renzo Caprilli, *Rome*
 Mauro Antonio Maria Carai, *Cagliari*
 Renato Caviglia, *Rome*
 Carolina Ciacci, *Naples*
 Mario Cottone, *Trabucco*
 Roberto De Giorgio, *Bologna*
 Luca Elli, *Milano*
 Alessandro Granito, *Bologna*
 Francesco William Guglielmi, *Trani*
 Mario Guslandi, *Milan*
 Pietro Invernizzi, *Rozzano*
 Mariano Malaguarnera, *Catania*
 Gianpiero Manes, *Milano*
 Massimo C Mauri, *Milan*
 Massimo Montalto, *Rome*
 Giovanni Monteleone, *Rome*
 Gerardo Nardone, *Napoli*
 Fabio Pace, *Milano*
 Raffaele Pezzilli, *Bologna*
 Rita Rezzani, *Brescia*
 Carmelo Scarpignato, *Parma*
 Generoso Uomo, *Napoli*
 Paolo Usai-Satta, *Cagliari*
 Maurizio Vecchi, *Milano*
 Massimiliano Veroux, *Catania*



Japan

Akira Andoh, *Otsu*
 Yuichiro Eguchi, *Saga*
 Munechika Enjoji, *Fukuoka*
 Norihiro Furusyo, *Fukuoka*
 Naoki Hotta, *Aichi*
 Shigeo Ikegawa, *Higashi-Osaka*
 Susumu Ito, *Okinawa*
 Satoru Kakizaki, *Gunma*
 Terumi Kamisawa, *Tokyo*
 Motoyori Kanazawa, *Sendai*
 Takuma Kato, *Mie*
 Takashi Kawai, *Tokyo*
 Shirao Kuniaki, *Oita*
 Nobuyuki Matsushashi, *Tokyo*
 Tatsuya Matsura, *Yonago*
 Teruo Murakami, *Hiroshima*
 Yuji Naito, *Kyoto*
 Katsuyuki Nakajima, *Maebashi Gunma*
 Hiroshi Nakase, *Kyoto*
 Nobuhiro Ohkohchi, *Tsukuba*
 Shogo Ohkoshi, *Niigata City*
 Tomohiko Shimatani, *Hiroshima*
 Yasuhiko Sugawara, *Tokyo*
 Yoshitaka Takuma, *Okayama*
 Tatsuhiro Tsujimoto, *Nara*
 Takato Ueno, *Kurume*
 Kenji Watanabe, *Osaka*

Toshiaki Watanabe, *Tokyo*
 Jiro Watari, *Nishinomiya*
 Satoshi Yamagiwa, *Niigata*
 Takayuki Yamamoto, *Mie*
 Norimasa Yoshida, *Kyoto*
 Hitoshi Yoshiji, *Nara*
 Katsutoshi Yoshizato, *Hiroshima*



Lebanon

Ala Sharara, *Beirut*



Lithuania

Dalia Adukauskienė, *Kaunas*
 Giedrius Barauskas, *Kaunas*
 Laimas Virginijus Jonaitis, *Kaunas*



Mexico

Pablo Muriel, *Mexico City*
 Guillermo B Robles-Díaz, *Mexico City*



Netherlands

Judith Elisabeth Baars, *Rotterdam*
 Albert J Bredenoord, *Nieuwegein*
 Nanne KH de Boer, *Amsterdam*
 Pieter Jan Floris de Jonge, *Rotterdam*
 Wouter J de Jonge, *Amsterdam*
 Mireille A Edens, *Groningen*
 Chris Mulder, *Amsterdam*
 Godefridus Johannes Peters, *Amsterdam*
 Paul E Sijens, *Groningen*
 Vera Esther Valkhoff, *Rotterdam*



New Zealand

Momir M Mikov, *Dunedin*
 Maxim Petrov, *Auckland*



Norway

Guanglin Cui, *Tromsø*
 Reidar Fossmark, *Trondheim*



Pakistan

Furqaan Ahmed, *Karachi*
 Anwar Hassan Gilani, *Karachi*



Philippines

Mark Anthony De Lusong, *Quezon City*



Poland

Halina Cichoz-Lach, *Lublin*
 Jarosław Czyż, *Cracow*
 Julian Teodor Swierczynski, *Gdansk*



Portugal

Cristina Freire, *Hull*
 Ana Isabel Gouveia Lopes, *Lisbon*



Romania

Dan Lucian Dumitrascu, *Cluj*



Russia

Tatyana A Korolenko, *Novosibirsk*



Saudi Arabia

Moamen Salah Refat, *Taif*
 Shahab Uddin, *Riyadh*



Singapore

Kok-Ann Gwee, *Singapore*
 Khok-Yu Ho, *Singapore*
 Kok-Yuen Ho, *Singapore*



Slovenia

Rok Orel, *Ljubljana*



South Africa

C Johannes van Rensburg, *Tygerberg*



South Korea

Chong-Su Cho, *Seoul*
 Ki Baik Hahm, *Incheon*
 Seok Joo Han, *Seoul*
 Jeong Won Jang, *Incheon*
 Dong Joon Kim, *Chuncheon*
 Jae J Kim, *Seoul*
 Kyoung Mee Kim, *Seoul*
 Nayoung Kim, *Gyeonggi-do*
 Sung-Bae Kim, *Seoul*
 Byung-Hoon Lee, *Seoul*
 Kwan Sik Lee, *Seoul*
 Sang-Han Lee, *Daegu*
 Yun Jeong Lim, *Kyunggi-do*
 Ji-Young Park, *Seoul*
 Uy Dong Sohn, *Seoul*
 Young-Joon Surh, *Seoul*



Spain

Matias Antonio Avila, *Pamplona*
 Luis Bujanda, *San Sebastián*
 Maria Carmen Collado, *Paterna*
 Conrado M Fernandez-Rodriguez, *Madrid*
 Ángel Lanas, *Zaragoza*
 Juan-R Malagelada, *Barcelona*
 Jose JG Marin, *Salamanca*

Antonio Ruiz Medina, *Jaén*
 Maria J Monte, *Salamanca*
 Miguel Muñoz, *Seville*
 Jesus Prieto, *Pamplona*
 Victor Manuel Victor, *Valencia*
 Maria D Yago, *Granada*



Sweden

Bodil Ohlsson, *Malmö*
 Henrik Thorlacius, *Malmö*
 Curt Tysk, *Örebro*



Switzerland

Carsten Alexander Wagner, *Zurich*



Thailand

Weekitt Kittisupamongkol, *Bangkok*
 Abhasnee Sobhonslidsuk, *Bangkok*
 Suporn Treepongkaruna, *Bangkok*
 Sombat Treeprasertsuk, *Bangkok*



Turkey

Fusun Acarturk, *Etiler-Ankara*
 Engin Altintas, *Mersin*
 Güldeniz Karadeniz Cakmak, *Zonguldak*
 Hayrullah Derici, *Balıkesir*
 Mukaddes Eşrefoğlu, *Malatya*
 Ilker Tasci, *Etilik*
 Berrak Çağlayan Yeğen, *Haydarpaşa*



United Kingdom

Nadeem Ahmad Afzal, *Hampshire*
 Qasim Aziz, *London*
 Hugh BARR, *Gloucester*
 Ian Leonard Phillip Beales, *Norwich*
 Barbara Braden, *Oxford*
 Susan J Duthie, *Aberdeen*
 Eyad Elkord, *Manchester*
 Anton Vignaraj Emmanuel, *London*
 Konstantinos C Fragkos, *London*
 Nusrat Husain, *Cheshire*
 Jin-Yong Kang, *London*
 Mariusz Madalinski, *Ipswich*
 Srinivasan Madhusudan, *Nottingham*
 Subramanian Mahadevan, *Birmingham*
 John Francis Mayberry, *Leicester*
 Chuka Uche Nwokolo, *Coventry*
 Ajith Kumar Siriwardena, *Manchester*
 Her-Hsin Tsai, *Cottingham*
 Konstantinos Tziomalos, *London*
 Craig LC Williams, *Glasgow*



United States

Zubair H Aghai, *Camden*
 Shrikant Anant, *Oklahoma City*
 Kondala R Atkuri, *Stanford*
 Cheryl Hunt Baker, *Orlando*
 James M Becker, *Boston*

Qiang Cai, *Atlanta*
 Jiande Chen, *Galveston*
 Liang Cheng, *Indianapolis*
 Joan Clària, *Boston*
 Seth D Crockett, *Chapel Hill*
 Joseph John Cullen, *Iowa*
 Brian J Day, *Colorado*
 Cataldo Doria, *Philadelphia*
 Craig Stephen Dorrell, *Portland*
 Douglas Arnold Drossman, *Chapel Hill*
 Eli D Ehrenpreis, *Illinois*
 Bing-Liang Fang, *Houston*
 Ronnie Fass, *Arizona*
 S Hossein Fatem, *Minneapolis*
 Linda A Feagins, *Dallas*
 Mitchell P Fink, *Los Angeles*
 Lori Fischbach, *Fort Worth*
 Craig Alan Friesen, *Kansas City*
 Fie Gao, *Bethesda*
 M Eric Gershwin, *Davis*
 Shannon Stroud Glaser, *Temple*
 Stephen A Harrison, *Fort Sam Houston*
 Hendrik Heinz, *Ohio*
 Tiberiu Hershcovici, *Tucson*
 Weihong Hou, *Charlotte*
 Peng Huang, *Houston*

William Moses Huang, *New York*
 William Jeffrey Hurst, *Hershey*
 Hartmut Jaeschke, *Kansas City*
 Robert T Jensen, *Bethesda*
 David A Johnson, *Norfolk*
 Pramodini B Kale-Pradhan, *Detroit*
 Vik Khoshoo, *Marrero*
 Tammy L Kindel, *Cincinnati*
 Nils Lambrecht, *California*
 Joel Edward Lavine, *New York*
 Lorenzo Leggio, *Providence*
 Felix W Leung, *North Hills*
 Josh Levitsky, *Chicago*
 Robert W Li, *Washington*
 Allen W Mangel, *Research Triangle Park*
 Richard A Marlar, *Oklahoma City*
 Craig J McClain, *Louisville*
 Murielle Mimeault, *Omaha*
 Smruti R Mohanty, *Chicago*
 John Edward Morley, *St. Louis*
 Sandeep Mukherjee, *Omaha*
 Michael Foster Olive, *Charleston*
 Keith M Olsen, *Omaha*
 Virendra N Pandey, *Newark*
 Narasimham Laxmi Parinandi, *Columbus*
 William Parker, *Durham*

Paul J Pockros, *La Jolla*
 Suofu Qin, *Irvine*
 P Hemachandra Reddy, *Oregon*
 Randolph Eldon Regal, *Ann Arbor*
 Jean-François Rossignol, *Tampa*
 Leonard P Rybak, *Springfield*
 George Sachs, *Los Angeles*
 M Wasif Saif, *New Haven*
 Bimaljit Singh Sandhu, *Richmond*
 Bo Shen, *Cleveland*
 Ashwani Kumar Singal, *Rochester*
 Biographical Sketch, *Hershey*
 Bronislaw Slomiany, *Newark*
 Charles Jeffrey Smith, *Columbia*
 Shi-Yong Sun, *Atlanta*
 Kenneth J Vega, *Oklahoma City*
 Yu-Jui Yvonne Wan, *Kansas*
 Lixin Wang, *Los Angeles*
 Horst Christian Weber, *Boston*
 Brian Wigdahl, *Philadelphia*
 Guang-Yin Xu, *League City*
 Yoshio Yamaoka, *Houston*
 Yutao Yan, *Atlanta*
 Jieyun Yin, *Galveston*
 Jian-Min Yuan, *Minnesota*
 Jian-Ying Zhang, *El Paso*



Contents

Quarterly Volume 6 Number 2 May 6, 2015

EDITORIAL

- 10 Inflammatory bowel disease: Traditional knowledge holds the seeds for the future
Actis GC, Pellicano R, Rosina F

MINIREVIEWS

- 17 Clinical relevance of clopidogrel-proton pump inhibitors interaction
Bouziaina SD, Tziomalos K

SYSTEMATIC REVIEWS

- 22 Clinical relevance of intestinal peptide uptake
Freeman HJ

Contents

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics

Volume 6 Number 2 May 6, 2015

ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, Rachel Jane Gibson, PhD, Senior Lecturer, Head Gut Microbiome Group, School of Medical Sciences, University of Adelaide, North Terrace, Adelaide, SA 5005, Australia

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics (*World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther*, *WJGPT*, online ISSN 2150-5349, DOI: 10.4292), is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJGPT covers topics concerning: (1) Clinical pharmacological research articles on specific drugs, concerning with pharmacodynamics, pharmacokinetics, toxicology, clinical trial, drug reactions, drug metabolism and adverse reaction monitoring, etc.; (2) Research progress of clinical pharmacology; (3) Introduction and evaluation of new drugs; (4) Experiences and problems in applied therapeutics; (5) Research and introductions of methodology in clinical pharmacology; and (6) Guidelines of clinical trial.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJGPT*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

INDEXING/ ABSTRACTING

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics is now indexed in PubMed Central, PubMed, Digital Object Identifier, and Directory of Open Access Journals.

FLYLEAF

I-IV Editorial Board

EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

Responsible Assistant Editor: *Xiang Li*
Responsible Electronic Editor: *Ya-Jing Lu*
Proofing Editor-in-Chief: *Lian-Sheng Ma*

Responsible Science Editor: *Fang-Fang Ji*
Proofing Editorial Office Director: *Xin-Xia Song*

NAME OF JOURNAL

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics

ISSN

ISSN 2150-5349 (online)

LAUNCH DATE

May 6, 2010

FREQUENCY

Quarterly

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF

Hugh J Freeman, MD, FRCPC, FACP, Professor,
Department of Medicine (Gastroenterology), University of British Columbia, Hospital, 2211 Wesbrook Mall, Vancouver, BC V6T1W5, Canada

EDITORIAL OFFICE

Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics

Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: <http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>
<http://www.wjgnet.com>

PUBLISHER

Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: <http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>
<http://www.wjgnet.com>

PUBLICATION DATE

May 6, 2015

COPYRIGHT

© 2015 Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. Articles published by this Open-Access journal are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-commercial License, which permits use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited, the use is non commercial and is otherwise in compliance with the license.

SPECIAL STATEMENT

All articles published in journals owned by the Baishideng Publishing Group (BPG) represent the views and opinions of their authors, and not the views, opinions or policies of the BPG, except where otherwise explicitly indicated.

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS

Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/g_info_20100315084234.htm

ONLINE SUBMISSION

<http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/>

Inflammatory bowel disease: Traditional knowledge holds the seeds for the future

Giovanni C Actis, Rinaldo Pellicano, Floriano Rosina

Giovanni C Actis, Floriano Rosina, Hepatogastroenterology Division, Ospedale Gradenigo, 10153 Torino, Italy

Rinaldo Pellicano, Division of Gastroenterology, Ospedale Molinette, 10126 Torino, Italy

Author contributions: All authors contributed to this manuscript.
Conflict-of-interest: We hereby deny any conflict of interest with regard to the present paper.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Giovanni C Actis, MD, Hepatogastroenterology Division, Ospedale Gradenigo, Corso Regina Margherita, 8, 10153 Torino, Italy. segreteria.gel@h-gradenigo.it

Telephone: +39-011-8151211

Fax: +39-011-8151388

Received: January 16, 2015

Peer-review started: January 18, 2015

First decision: February 7, 2015

Revised: March 2, 2015

Accepted: April 1, 2015

Article in press: April 7, 2015

Published online: May 6, 2015

Abstract

Despite the level of sophistication they have reached nowadays, the available tools for treatment of inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) can at best chronicize the disease but not cure it. Chances to make leap forward from this hold-back may include designs to reach personalized treatment strategies taking advantage of modern genome associated studies, and shift resources towards unfolding inciting pathogenetic steps rather than continuing to develop drugs that address down-stream phenomena. We have arbitrarily chosen to scrutinize a few projects that may make their way in 2015 and mark

the history of IBD research. The list includes: the role of appendix as a regulating factor in pathogenesis of ulcerative colitis/proctitis; the reappraisal of (auto)immune phenomena in the era of microbiome; projects to treat IBD by stem cell infusion; recognition of the crucial pathogenetic role of gut microbiome, and attempts to modify it to treat enteric diseases, from clostridium difficile infection to IBD.

Key words: Inflammatory bowel disease; Microbiome; Stem cells; Future treatments; Curative appendectomy

© **The Author(s) 2015.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: The inflammatory diseases of the gut (inflammatory bowel disease) continue to both constitute a medical challenge, and a formidable intellectual stimulus. The latter statement is based on the accumulating evidence that the IBDS are indeed syndromes whereby a few poorly penetrating polymorphic genes can affect at once the inflammatory balance in the barrier systems of the gut, the skin, and the airways. The former statement reflects the very fact that, though described in the 19th century, IBD continues to defeat our struggle to cure it, invading yet the hitherto unaffected landscapes of the Eastern World, almost as it was a response to our efforts. We deem that the address of the initiating factors, rather than the downstream phenomena, may be a strategy to wriggle out of the hold-up. The description of interventions such as appendectomy or microbiome replacement, among other options, witnesses our own way to interpret this need in the present editorial.

Actis GC, Pellicano R, Rosina F. Inflammatory bowel disease: Traditional knowledge holds the seeds for the future. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(2): 10-16 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i2/10.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i2.10>

INTRODUCTION

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) is now understood as a dysfunction of a barrier organ, whereby the antigenic gut luminal contents (from diet and autochthonous flora) come in an undue contact with the reactive sub-mucosal tissue. The players in this event include: polymorphisms of the genes governing cytokine networks; passive defense devices (defensins and epithelial sealings); inborn errors of functional structures of innate immunity (the NOD system *e.g.*); inborn knock-out of genes coding for down-regulatory circuits [es interleukin (IL)10^{-/-}]; the polyfunctional microbiome. From a general prospective, this universe is ruled by a plethora of low-penetrance genes, needing to come about in a critical mass to induce disease phenotypically. Needless to say, various treatment attempts at impacting this scenario have often proven deceptive, calling for a shifted frame of mind bound to overcome the simple search for the next biological formulation following failure of the former. We have arbitrarily chosen to describe a few examples whereby the authors have essayed to see the matters from a different angle.

In one of these attempts, the authors were inspired by the observation that the gut inflammation that develops in IL-10 knock-out mice seems to have an appendiceal origin; based on this, they pursued the study of the consequences of appendectomy, finding that appendectomy tends to exert a prevalent down-regulatory modulation. Back in 2009, a large clinical study enrolled humans to receive appendectomy for their ulcerative proctitis, achieving at least clinical remission in a patient subset. It is hoped that basic and clinical research in this field will march at the same pace to identify a revolutionary strategy to tackle the problem of gut inflammation and proctitis specifically.

Cutting edge research has recently confirmed that tissues and body fluids can no longer be considered "conventionally" sterile, insofar as containing a myriad of genomic (bacterial and virologic) messages. Since these determinants are reasonably able to elicit strong immune reactions against themselves inciting inflammation, the authors argue that a few chronically inflamed patients (including Crohn's) should be immune stimulated to wipe out the indwellers, rather than immune suppress them.

Some years ago, the early claim of "cure" of a few cases of Crohn's disease after bone marrow transplant had paved the way towards the strategy of reprogramming progenitor cell lineage to terminate IBD. Programs of stem cell transplant are now very active and the clinical harvest seems promising so far.

The rapidly growing understanding of the microbiome could not avoid to bear significant impact on our clinical address on IBD. There is now consistent evidence that microbiome composition is profoundly altered in IBD, lending rationale to the use of fecal transplant as a treatment option. This is a rapidly growing matter that will not fail to produce results in the near future.

Conclusively, there are at least two added values attached to this novel mindframe. Firstly, it may take

us even closer to the now legendary promised land of personalized medicine; Secondly, we are finally driving the coach towards understanding the roots of the disease, rather than blindly aiming at its epiphenomena.

IBD: TRADITIONAL KNOWLEDGE HOLDS THE SEEDS FOR THE FUTURE

Certain anatomic/functional structures have evolved to discern between the inner "sterile" milieu and the outer "polluted" environment. The pivotal components in such "barrier organs"^[1] (the gut, skin, the airways, urinary tract) consist of a mucosal immune system (biased to tolerance) and an underneath lymphoid tissue (primed to react).

Owing to their functions, inflammation in barrier organs is constitutive; it may grow to be induced if the balance between pro- and anti-inflammatory forces is breached. Specifically, the players in this balance at the colonic level are the diet constituents, the local immune system, and the microbiome^[2,3].

In 2009, we compiled a scrutiny of the elements that factor in colon pathophysiology (unpublished data). In the lines to follow, we reappraise this rather outdated paper, with the bias to uncover current and future links to research in colonic physiology and disease.

THE MAIN COMPONENTS IN THE SYSTEM

Barrier alterations

Insofar as preventing the rise of inflammation by avoiding contact between luminal antigens and the overreactive lymphoid tissue underneath the mucosa, epithelial integrity, inter-cell sealing, and production of defensive substances are essential. Chimeric mice for a defective cadherin^[4] (a crucial factor in the sealing properties of tight junctions) exhibited unchecked intestinal inflammation; patients with active Crohn's disease showed a 50% reduction of secretion of defensins^[5], that are Paneth cell-derived cationic peptides endowed with antibacterial activity. Noteworthy, updated research is now showing that correct production and release of beta-defensins is under the control of the vitamin D receptor (see below)^[6].

Alteration of gut flora

This topic has largely been treated by others^[7] and ourselves^[8]. Such trillion-individual metagenomic world in our digestive tract has been shown to affect a range of conditions including diabetes^[9,10], obesity^[11], inflammatory disease^[12], and behavioral changes^[13]. Just two examples showing that microbiome components might influence inflammatory circuits are the following. Microbiome-derived free-fatty-acids might regulate size and function of regulatory T-cells (T-regs), activating SMAD 3 and 4^[14,15], and ameliorating experimental

colitis; Prevotella Copri can educate T-lymphocytes to secrete IL17, a key cytokine in rheumatoid arthritis^[16]. Evidence that microbiome composition can be modified by diet, has prompted intensive study programs aiming at determining the therapeutic role of fecal flora transplantation in treatment of both IBD and Clostridium difficile infection (CDI)^[17].

Alteration of innate immunity

Evolution has endowed us with a number of sensors to check the outer environment for invaders^[18]. The toll-like receptors (TLR)^[19] are membrane confined elements, the nucleotide oligomerization domains are cytoplasmic. The NODs^[20] comprise a leucine-rich repeat, a central NOD structure facilitating oligomerization, and a terminal caspase-recruitment domain. Essentially, the final common action of both TLRs and NODs leads to activation of cytoplasmic NF- κ B^[21], which, upon nuclear translocation, will induce the genes of pro-inflammatory cytokines, as part of a defensive program. As a key-stone discovery by two independent teams in 2001, a loss-of-function NOD mutation was described in a significant proportion of Western Crohn's patients, but not in those of an oriental descent^[22].

Alteration of adaptive immunity

These may encompass both B-cells and T-cells misfunctions. The B-cell products ASCA and ANCA antibodies are well-studied markers of Crohn's^[23] and UC^[24] respectively. On the other hand, anomalous T-cell clones may arise in IBD as a consequence of a changed dendritic cell antigen presentation, or presentation by non-professional cells^[25]. Among such T-cell phenotype variants, the Th17 cells have received most of the attention recently.

The Th-17 lymphocytes^[26]. We wish to devote a deal of attention to these cells as they are destined to be further discussed below. Derived from TCD4⁺ lymphocytes, and CD4⁺CD25⁺Foxp3 lymphocytes, can mainly release IL17, as driven by IL-23 dependent STAT-3 activation^[27].

Physiologic roles

Rise of Th17 cells was initially demonstrated in fungi and bacteria infected milieus, suggesting a protective mission for these cells; klebsiella pneumonitis, Candida infection, and mycoplasma invasions were all demonstrated to constitute an arena for Th17 cells^[28].

Pathophysiologic roles

In the unstable milieu of the sub-clinical intestinal inflammation, Th17 cells can easily be traced to the lamina propria; in full-blown pathologic conditions, they can easily be shown to migrate to inflamed areas^[29]. The chemokine-ligand interaction CCR6-CCL20 has been found to be crucial for the homing of Th17 cells to the distal colon^[29] (see below). Arthritis has long been recognized as a co-morbidity of IBD and Th17

cells have recently been reckoned to be effectors in this pathologic events^[30]. Interaction of the chemokine CCR6 with its homologous synovial chemokine CCL20 have been shown to allow Th17 homing to arthritic sites, thus initiating bone resorption.

FUTURE RESEARCH SEEDS

The chain of evolution and function of Th17 cells as summarized above allows us to open the list of future endeavors with this topic. This list will therefore comprise: (1) The appendicitis/appendectomy model; (2) Metagenome and autoimmunity; (3) Bone marrow transplants; and (4) Microbiome modulation.

The T-cell receptor- α mutant mice (TCR- $\alpha^{-/-}$), obtained by gene targeting of the TCR-alpha gene in embryonic stem cells, is a popular mouse model that spontaneously develop ulcerative colitis-like inflammation of the colon^[31]. In 1996, the team of Bhan published the results of experiments aiming to define the reciprocal roles of appendix associated lymphoid follicles (ALF) vs that of Peyer's patches (PP) in such diseased mice. They found that: (1) the proliferative index in ALF was twice that of PP; and (2) The frequency of IgG secreting B cells in ALF of mutant mice largely exceeded that of non-mutant animals. Early appendectomy in mutant strains had two orders of consequences: (1) the number of mesenteric lymph nodes got significantly reduced; and (2) appendix ablation at 1 mo of age suppressed the development of IBD^[31]. The tenet that appendicectomy humans might be protected from ulcerative colitis in fact relies on these basic data of the 1990's. Specifically, a clinical paper issued in 2009^[32], followed in 2011 by a short communication in a letter format^[33], have shown that appendectomy might ameliorate symptoms in a limited group of patients with ulcerative proctitis. The team of Cheluvappa *et al.*^[34] in Sydney has recently reappraised the basic information on Th17 cells we collected above, to design an animal model. BALB/c mice were subjected to experimental appendicitis and appendectomy (AA), then distal colon samples were harvested. Results were validated using reverse-transcription-polymerase chain reaction. The authors mainly found that prior AA ameliorated experimental colitis. CCL20 expression was suppressed in the most distal colon 3 and 28 d after the AA was done at the proximal colon^[34]. Another piece of study from the same group^[35] has suggested that suppression of a few endothelin genes may be a mechanism in these findings. The authors conclude by wishing that this expanded knowledge on the Th17 system and CCR6/CCL20 interaction can be transferred to clinical grounds before long.

The team of Amy Proall has conducted extensive basic research on the human microbiome, pushing her findings to somewhat extreme consequences^[36]. The author starts out by stressing that modern techniques are now demonstrating that not only the usual sites such as the colon are dwelled by abundant

microbiome species, but virtually all tissues or fluids within our bodies harbor trillions of yet unknown bacterial and viral phyla. The authors list a few of the implications of these revolutionary findings: (1) The inner milieu can no longer be considered sterile; (2) The concept itself of autoimmunity might be reduced to a concept of a reaction against antigenic determinants of this overwhelming microbiome, or against modified self-antigens; (3) Given these premises, the correct approach to treatment of inflammatory disease would be immunostimulation to get rid of the indwellers, rather than immune suppression. The latter will obviously lend symptom relief but will promote persistence of the inciting causes, whether bacterial, viral or else^[37]; and (4) Worth of note, this overriding antigenemia might also be fueled by the action of active transport systems. A recent paper^[38] dealing with peptide transport from the intestine, has described a carrier, pepT1, which, belonging to the superfamily of proton-coupled oligopeptide transporters, can transport oligopeptides through the cells to the bloodstream thanks to coupling with hydrogen ion. Interestingly, the authors pin-point that the activity of pep T1, can turn out to be heightened during intestinal disease such as IBD, wherein in this case bacterial flora (metagenomic) by-products may become the transported antigenic material. As a consequence of this shift, mounting of inflammatory and auto-inflammatory responses can easily be predicted. Thus, the findings of such independent work seems to lend fuel to Proall's speculation.

The authors conduct an interesting focus on the vit D receptor (VDR). Of the two recognized classes of VDR, the first, segregating to the cell nucleus, belongs to the family of the class 2 steroidal hormones receptors, and is closely linked with the retinoic acid and thyroid hormone receptors. As a protein of 427 aminoacids, the human VDR couples DNA, links the ligand, and self-activates through its three respective domains. Functionally, VDR heterodimerizes with retinoid X receptor (RXR), activating gene transcription (vit Response Elements) and protein synthesis. The other VDR is a membrane element, and as a non-genomic action, catalyzes release of cellular messengers. Noteworthy, the VDR complex conditions release of a huge number of protective molecules. When thwarted by a load of bacterial ligands it may cease producing crucial protective compounds from cathelicidine to defensins^[39], thus fully impacting on IBD pathophysiology; in addition also Vit D handling might be damaged, and a receptor leaking 1,25 vit D has been described in inflammatory conditions including Crohn's. Vit D itself, on the other hand, bears the structure of a secosteroid. Because exerting in fact a down-regulatory effect on various immunologic steps, it should be considered an immune suppressor. Based on this, the authors express doubts as to the indication for vit D in a few inflammatory conditions, including IBD.

Coherently with these premises, the authors declare to have studied the possibility of alternative

non-suppressive regimes for immune-inflammatory conditions, including satanic derivatives.

C STEM CELL THERAPY FOR IBD

The issue has recently been addressed in an exhaustive review^[40]. Stem cells characteristically undergo a process of asymmetrical cell division, giving birth to a cell with the same properties as the original cell, and another cell of multilineage differentiation potency, depending on environmental conditions. The comprehensive term "stem cells"^[41] includes: (1) embryonic stem cells, *e.g.*, pluripotent cells obtained from embryos; (2) multipotent adult stem cells including hematopoietic stem cells (HSC) and mesenchymal stem cells (MSC) found in all body tissues; and (3) induced pluripotent stem cells, defined as artificial pluripotent stem cells generated from somatic cells by the introduction of reprogramming factors.

HSC and MSC are currently used and evaluated to treat therapy - resistant Crohn's disease. The only protocol that is officially accepted requires infusion of autologous HSC^[42] following a program of cell mobilization and myeloablation^[43]. Briefly, the patient first receives cyclophosphamide and granulocyte colony stimulating factor to stimulate production and release of stem cells from blood marrow; these cells are then collected from peripheral blood and then cryopreserved until re-infusion. The therapeutic objective of autologous HSCT^[44] is the resetting of the patient's immune system thanks to the myeloablation program, which effects T-lymphocyte and memory T-cells elimination.

The first case reporting the efficacy of HSCT in the control of CD was published in 1993^[45]. It is difficult to firmly evaluate the effectiveness of this technique in CD, given the relatively low number of published cases. In the series published by Burt *et al*^[46] in 2010, the most updated series, all of the 24 patients entered remission after transplantation.

Most clinical studies have shown that MSCs can be obtained from bone marrow, adipose tissue, and umbilical cord. Being not significantly immunogenic, MSCs can be administered without a conditioning phase^[47-49].

Systemic administration of MSCs for treatment of IBD. The results of phase 1 studies have recently been published. In 2012, Liang *et al*^[50] reported the results obtained in 7 patients with IBD (4 CD and 3 UC). Remission was achieved in 5 subjects and maintained for over 24 mo in 2 of them; endoscopic improvement was demonstrated in 3 subjects. Side effects were mild.

Local MSCs therapy in fistulizing CD. The initial study dates back to 2008^[51] and reported remission in 7 of 9 CD patients with complex peri-anal fistula. At present, a phase 3 study is under way, involving the use of expanded MSCs from adipose tissue to treat complicated fistula.

D MICROBIOME MODULATION

The bacterial cells pertaining to the human microbiome

are estimated to attain the notable number of 10^{14} , dwarfing the few thousands of indwelling somatic cells. The protean characteristics and functions of the microbiome have been addressed in a number of reviews from others and ourselves^[7,8]. Results from various studies are now accumulating to point to the astonishing variety of targets that are touched by the microbiome, including effects on immunity, determination of diabetic and overweight statuses, up to influence behavior and mental health. No wonder that a deal of efforts has concentrated onto the endeavor to modulate microbiome composition and function. The array of means and strategies that have been assayed include pre-biotics, pro-biotics, antibiotics, and fecal transplant (FT). The latter technique has received a special deal of attention, and to challenge the feasibility of its translation to clinical practice, two questions may be particularly relevant: (1) Is it effective? (2) How long does its action last.

As to the former question, FT has been convincingly shown to treat CDI^[52]. A recent meta-analysis^[53] has examined the role of FT as a therapy for IBD. Elaboration of the data from 18 studies including 122 patients led this study to conclude that FT may be safe and effective, but controlled trials, donor selection and standardization of microbiome analysis are strongly needed.

As to the length of effect, studies on CDI have reported encouraging results. The diseased microbiome of IBD, by contrast, has shown a deal of resiliency against the actions of FT. Most of the authors have concluded that prolonged and repeated treatments are probably needed to achieve some consistent results in these premises^[54]. Last but not least, cutting-edge data from current research work^[55] are showing that a number of host genes, some with known involvement with microbial handling, exhibited consistent effects on the taxonomic structure of the microbiome across multiple cohorts. Specifically, NOD mapping work showed links between NOD polymorphisms and gut colonization with Enterobacteriaceae, allowing for the first time to envisage the chance of genetic transmission of IBD strains along with innate immunity sensors such as the NODs.

CONCLUDING REMARKS

The succinct lines above, stress the need to progressively move towards a mindset that sees IBD as a contextualized polyfactorial syndrome of outer environment misrecognition, whereby innumerable comorbidities recognize shared roots and immunological circuits, the microbiome being the crucial but not the only player. Against this background, traditional immune suppression, including the novel biologics, has revealed its inadequacy to eradicate the disease. Having set this, we arbitrarily chose to gain more insight into the projects put forward by a few world leading teams in basic and clinical IBD research. Based on previously encouraging clinical hints, Cheluvappa's

team has studied the immune-regulatory consequences of appendectomy in IBD patients and is actively pursuing a pathway to render the idea amenable to clinical application. Programs of stem cell infusion are probably bound to be the most rewarding ones in the future, yet intrinsic risks continue to require balance against the clinical gains. Facing this sometime chaotic wealth of evidence, Proall and her team see immune-inflamed patients including the IBD subjects as immune-depressed individuals which deserve immune reconstitution far more than immune suppression. Already successfully applied to the treatment of hepatitis B^[56], this proposition is less fanciful than it appears. Despite this, the gap between conceptual refinements of these approaches, and their clinical transition is still significantly wide. FT has already shown exciting promise in the treatment of CDI. Its transition to clinical treatment of IBD will depend on the availability of pharmacological strategies to overcome the resilience of microbiome in the inflammatory intestinal states.

In terms of world-wide epidemiology, one can identify at least two opposite driving forces. Rapid "occidentalization" is providing IBD with unprecedentedly wide areas of expansion in huge landscapes like China^[57]. On the other hand, one knows that life and evolution may sometimes reveal their complexity presenting as "erase-and-rewind" processes. On this line, poor or regressing life standards in certain world areas tend to make violent infection agents prevail over "sophisticated" immune inflammatory condition, threatening to absorb mental and financial energies in the future^[58], perhaps distracting commitment from the programs illustrated above.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This is dedicated to O Della Casa-Alberighi, MD, who profoundly influenced my career with continuous friendship, advice, and support.

REFERENCES

- 1 **Schreiber S**, Rosenstiel P, Albrecht M, Hampe J, Krawczak M. Genetics of Crohn disease, an archetypal inflammatory barrier disease. *Nat Rev Genet* 2005; **6**: 376-388 [PMID: 15861209]
- 2 **Danese S**, Fiocchi C. Ulcerative colitis. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **365**: 1713-1725 [PMID: 22047562]
- 3 **Baumgart DC**, Sandborn WJ. Crohn's disease. *Lancet* 2012; **380**: 1590-1605 [PMID: 22914295]
- 4 **Hermiston ML**, Gordon JI. Inflammatory bowel disease and adenomas in mice expressing a dominant negative N-cadherin. *Science* 1995; **270**: 1203-1207 [PMID: 7502046]
- 5 **Wehkamp J**, Salzman NH, Porter E, Nuding S, Weichenthal M, Petras RE, Shen B, Schaeffeler E, Schwab M, Linzmeier R, Feathers RW, Chu H, Lima H, Fellermann K, Ganz T, Stange EF, Bevins CL. Reduced Paneth cell alpha-defensins in ileal Crohn's disease. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2005; **102**: 18129-18134 [PMID: 16330776]
- 6 **Froicu M**, Cantorna MT. Vitamin D and the vitamin D receptor are critical for control of the innate immune response to colonic injury. *BMC Immunol* 2007; **8**: 5 [PMID: 17397543]
- 7 **Seksik P**. [Gut microbiota and IBD]. *Gastroenterol Clin Biol* 2010; **34** Suppl 1: S44-S51 [PMID: 20889004]

- 8 **Actis GC.** The gut microbiome. *Inflamm Allergy Drug Targets* 2014; **13**: 217-223 [PMID: 24953716]
- 9 **Hotamisligil GS.** Inflammation and metabolic disorders. *Nature* 2006; **444**: 860-867 [PMID: 17167474]
- 10 **Shoelson SE, Lee J, Goldfine AB.** Inflammation and insulin resistance. *J Clin Invest* 2006; **116**: 1793-1801 [PMID: 16823477]
- 11 **Ley RE, Turnbaugh PJ, Klein S, Gordon JI.** Microbial ecology: human gut microbes associated with obesity. *Nature* 2006; **444**: 1022-1023 [PMID: 17183309]
- 12 **Martinez C, Antolin M, Santos J, Torrejon A, Casellas F, Borruel N, Guarner F, Malagelada JR.** Unstable composition of the fecal microbiota in ulcerative colitis during clinical remission. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2008; **103**: 643-648 [PMID: 18341488]
- 13 **Crumeyrolle-Arias M, Jaglin M, Bruneau A, Vancassel S, Cardona A, Dauge V, Naudon L, Rabot S.** Absence of the gut microbiota enhances anxiety-like behavior and neuroendocrine response to acute stress in rats. *Psychoneuroendocrinology* 2014; **42**: 207-217 [PMID: 24636517]
- 14 **Monteleone G, Kumberova A, Croft NM, McKenzie C, Steer HW, MacDonald TT.** Blocking Smad7 restores TGF-beta1 signaling in chronic inflammatory bowel disease. *J Clin Invest* 2001; **108**: 601-609 [PMID: 11518734]
- 15 **Fantini MC, Rizzo A, Fina D, Caruso R, Sarra M, Stolfi C, Becker C, Macdonald TT, Pallone F, Neurath MF, Monteleone G.** Smad7 controls resistance of colitogenic T cells to regulatory T cell-mediated suppression. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **136**: 1308-1316, 1308-1316 [PMID: 19192480]
- 16 **Scher JU, Sczesnak A, Longman RS, Segata N, Ubeda C, Bielski C, Rostron T, Cerundolo V, Pamer EG, Abramson SB, Huttenhower C, Littman DR.** Expansion of intestinal Prevotella copri correlates with enhanced susceptibility to arthritis. *Elife* 2013; **2**: e01202 [PMID: 24192039]
- 17 **Flint HJ.** The impact of nutrition on the human microbiome. *Nutr Rev* 2012; **70** Suppl 1: S10-S13 [PMID: 22861801]
- 18 **Davies JM, Abreu MT.** The innate immune system and inflammatory bowel disease. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2015; **50**: 24-33 [PMID: 25523553]
- 19 **Iwasaki A, Medzhitov R.** Toll-like receptor control of the adaptive immune responses. *Nat Immunol* 2004; **5**: 987-995 [PMID: 15454922]
- 20 **Hugot JP, Chamaillard M, Zouali H, Lesage S, Cézard JP, Belaiche J, Almer S, Tysk C, O'Morain CA, Gassull M, Binder V, Finkel Y, Cortot A, Modigliani R, Laurent-Puig P, Gower-Rousseau C, Macry J, Colombel JF, Sahbatou M, Thomas G.** Association of NOD2 leucine-rich repeat variants with susceptibility to Crohn's disease. *Nature* 2001; **411**: 599-603 [PMID: 11385576]
- 21 **Wei J, Feng J.** Signaling pathways associated with inflammatory bowel disease. *Recent Pat Inflamm Allergy Drug Discov* 2010; **4**: 105-117 [PMID: 20001899]
- 22 **Yamazaki K, Takazoe M, Tanaka T, Kazumori T, Nakamura Y.** Absence of mutation in the NOD2/CARD15 gene among 483 Japanese patients with Crohn's disease. *J Hum Genet* 2002; **47**: 469-472 [PMID: 12202985]
- 23 **Kaul A, Hutfless S, Liu L, Bayless TM, Marohn MR, Li X.** Serum anti-glycan antibody biomarkers for inflammatory bowel disease diagnosis and progression: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2012; **18**: 1872-1884 [PMID: 22294465]
- 24 **Kuna AT.** Serological markers of inflammatory bowel disease. *Biochem Med (Zagreb)* 2013; **23**: 28-42 [PMID: 23457764]
- 25 **Roda G, Sartini A, Zambon E, Calafiore A, Marocchi M, Caponi A, Belluzzi A, Roda E.** Intestinal epithelial cells in inflammatory bowel diseases. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 4264-4271 [PMID: 20818809]
- 26 **Kim CH.** Migration and function of Th17 cells. *Inflamm Allergy Drug Targets* 2009; **8**: 221-228 [PMID: 19601882]
- 27 **Mathur AN, Chang HC, Zisoulis DG, Stritesky GL, Yu Q, O'Malley JT, Kapur R, Levy DE, Kansas GS, Kaplan MH.** Stat3 and Stat4 direct development of IL-17-secreting Th cells. *J Immunol* 2007; **178**: 4901-4907 [PMID: 17404271]
- 28 **Ye P, Garvey PB, Zhang P, Nelson S, Bagby G, Summer WR, Schwarzenberger P, Shellito JE, Kolls JK.** Interleukin-17 and lung host defense against Klebsiella pneumoniae infection. *Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol* 2001; **25**: 335-340 [PMID: 11588011]
- 29 **Wang C, Kang SG, Lee J, Sun Z, Kim CH.** The roles of CCR6 in migration of Th17 cells and regulation of effector T-cell balance in the gut. *Mucosal Immunol* 2009; **2**: 173-183 [PMID: 19129757]
- 30 **Hirota K, Yoshitomi H, Hashimoto M, Maeda S, Teradaira S, Sugimoto N, Yamaguchi T, Nomura T, Ito H, Nakamura T, Sakaguchi N, Sakaguchi S.** Preferential recruitment of CCR6-expressing Th17 cells to inflamed joints via CCL20 in rheumatoid arthritis and its animal model. *J Exp Med* 2007; **204**: 2803-2812 [PMID: 18025126]
- 31 **Mizoguchi A, Mizoguchi E, Chiba C, Bhan AK.** Role of appendix in the development of inflammatory bowel disease in TCR-alpha mutant mice. *J Exp Med* 1996; **184**: 707-715 [PMID: 8760824]
- 32 **Bolin TD, Wong S, Crouch R, Engelman JL, Riordan SM.** Appendectomy as a therapy for ulcerative proctitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2009; **104**: 2476-2482 [PMID: 19584834]
- 33 **Bageacu S, Coatmeur O, Lemaître JP, Lointier P, Del Tedesco E, Phelip JM, Roblin X.** Appendectomy as a potential therapy for refractory ulcerative proctitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **34**: 257-258 [PMID: 21679209]
- 34 **Cheluvappa R.** Experimental appendicitis and appendectomy modulate the CCL20-CCR6 axis to limit inflammatory colitis pathology. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2014; **29**: 1181-1188 [PMID: 24980688]
- 35 **Cheluvappa R, Eri R, Luo AS, Grimm MC.** Endothelin and vascular remodelling in colitis pathogenesis--appendicitis and appendectomy limit colitis by suppressing endothelin pathways. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2014; **29**: 1321-1328 [PMID: 25085204]
- 36 **Proal AD, Albert PJ, Blaney GP, Lindseth IA, Benediktsson C, Marshall TG.** Immunostimulation in the era of the metagenome. *Cell Mol Immunol* 2011; **8**: 213-225 [PMID: 21278764]
- 37 **Proal AD, Albert PJ, Marshall TG.** Inflammatory disease and the human microbiome. *Discov Med* 2014; **17**: 257-265 [PMID: 24882717]
- 38 **Freeman HJ.** Clinical relevance of intestinal peptide uptake. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; In press
- 39 **Auvynet C, Rosenstein Y.** Multifunctional host defense peptides: antimicrobial peptides, the small yet big players in innate and adaptive immunity. *FEBS J* 2009; **276**: 6497-6508 [PMID: 19817855]
- 40 **Martínez-Montiel Mdel P, Gómez-Gómez GJ, Flores AI.** Therapy with stem cells in inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 1211-1227 [PMID: 24574796]
- 41 **Kolios G, Moodley Y.** Introduction to stem cells and regenerative medicine. *Respiration* 2013; **85**: 3-10 [PMID: 23257690]
- 42 **Tyndall A, Gratwohl A.** Blood and marrow stem cell transplants in auto-immune disease: a consensus report written on behalf of the European League against Rheumatism (EULAR) and the European Group for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT) *Bone Marrow Transplant* 1997; **19**: 643-645 [PMID: 9156239]
- 43 **Oyama Y, Craig RM, Traynor AE, Quigley K, Statkute L, Halverson A, Brush M, Verda L, Kowalska B, Krosnjak N, Kletzel M, Whittington PF, Burt RK.** Autologous hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in patients with refractory Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: 552-563 [PMID: 15765390]
- 44 **Leung Y, Geddes M, Storek J, Panaccione R, Beck PL.** Hematopoietic cell transplantation for Crohn's disease; is it time? *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 6665-6673 [PMID: 17075981]
- 45 **Drakos PE, Nagler A, Or R.** Case of Crohn's disease in bone marrow transplantation. *Am J Hematol* 1993; **43**: 157-158 [PMID: 8342550]
- 46 **Burt RK, Craig RM, Milanetti F, Quigley K, Gozdzik P, Bucha J, Testori A, Halverson A, Verda L, de Villiers WJ, Jovanovic B, Oyama Y.** Autologous nonmyeloablative hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in patients with severe anti-TNF refractory Crohn disease: long-term follow-up. *Blood* 2010; **116**: 6123-6132 [PMID: 20837778]
- 47 **Puissant B, Barreau C, Bourin P, Clavel C, Corre J, Bousquet C, Taureau C, Cousin B, Abbal M, Laharrague P, Penicaud L, Casteilla L, Blancher A.** Immunomodulatory effect of human adipose tissue-derived adult stem cells: comparison with bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells. *Br J Haematol* 2005; **129**: 118-129 [PMID: 15765390]

- 15801964]
- 48 **Najar M**, Raicevic G, Boufker HI, Fayyad Kazan H, De Bruyn C, Meuleman N, Bron D, Toungouz M, Lagneaux L. Mesenchymal stromal cells use PGE2 to modulate activation and proliferation of lymphocyte subsets: Combined comparison of adipose tissue, Wharton's Jelly and bone marrow sources. *Cell Immunol* 2010; **264**: 171-179 [PMID: 20619400]
 - 49 **Yoo KH**, Jang IK, Lee MW, Kim HE, Yang MS, Eom Y, Lee JE, Kim YJ, Yang SK, Jung HL, Sung KW, Kim CW, Koo HH. Comparison of immunomodulatory properties of mesenchymal stem cells derived from adult human tissues. *Cell Immunol* 2009; **259**: 150-156 [PMID: 19608159]
 - 50 **Liang J**, Zhang H, Wang D, Feng X, Wang H, Hua B, Liu B, Sun L. Allogeneic mesenchymal stem cell transplantation in seven patients with refractory inflammatory bowel disease. *Gut* 2012; **61**: 468-469 [PMID: 21617158]
 - 51 **Ciccocioppo R**, Bernardo ME, Sgarella A, Maccario R, Avanzini MA, Ubezio C, Minelli A, Alvisi C, Vanoli A, Calliada F, Dionigi P, Perotti C, Locatelli F, Corazza GR. Autologous bone marrow-derived mesenchymal stromal cells in the treatment of fistulising Crohn's disease. *Gut* 2011; **60**: 788-798 [PMID: 21257987]
 - 52 **Brandt LJ**, Aroniadis OC. An overview of fecal microbiota transplantation: techniques, indications, and outcomes. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **78**: 240-249 [PMID: 23642791]
 - 53 **Colman RJ**, Rubin DT. Fecal microbiota transplantation as therapy for inflammatory bowel disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Crohns Colitis* 2014; **8**: 1569-1581 [PMID: 25223604]
 - 54 **Xu Z**, Knight R. Dietary effects on human gut microbiome diversity. *Br J Nutr* 2015; **113** Suppl: S1-S5 [PMID: 25498959]
 - 55 **Knights D**, Silverberg MS, Weersma RK, Gevers D, Dijkstra G, Huang H, Tyler AD, van Sommeren S, Imhann F, Stempak JM, Huang H, Vangay P, Al-Ghalith GA, Russell C, Sauk J, Knight J, Daly MJ, Huttenhower C, Xavier RJ. Complex host genetics influence the microbiome in inflammatory bowel disease. *Genome Med* 2014; **6**: 107 [PMID: 25587358 DOI: 10.1186/s13073-014-0107-1]
 - 56 **Han Q**, Lan P, Zhang J, Zhang C, Tian Z. Reversal of hepatitis B virus-induced systemic immune tolerance by intrinsic innate immune stimulation. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **28** Suppl 1: 132-137 [PMID: 23855309]
 - 57 **Ng SC**. Emerging leadership lecture: Inflammatory bowel disease in Asia: Emergence of a "Western" disease. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **30**: 440-445 [PMID: 25469874]
 - 58 **Boulton J**. Ebola: where did it come from and where might it go? *Br J Nurs* 2014; **23**: 988-991 [PMID: 25302838]

P- Reviewer: Akiho H, Blonski W, Naser SA **S- Editor:** Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor:** Lu YJ



Clinical relevance of clopidogrel-proton pump inhibitors interaction

Stella D Bouziana, Konstantinos Tziomalos

Stella D Bouziana, Konstantinos Tziomalos, First Propedeutic Department of Internal Medicine, Medical School, Aristotle University of Thessaloniki, AHEPA Hospital, 54636 Thessaloniki, Greece

Author contributions: Bouziana SD drafted the paper; Tziomalos K revised the draft critically for important intellectual content.

Conflict-of-interest: We have no conflict of interest to declare.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Konstantinos Tziomalos, MD, PhD, Assistant Professor of Internal Medicine, First Propedeutic Department of Internal Medicine, Medical School, Aristotle University of Thessaloniki, AHEPA Hospital, Kiriakidi 1, 54636 Thessaloniki, Greece. ktziomalos@yahoo.com

Telephone: +30-2310-994621

Fax: +30-2310-994773

Received: January 13, 2015

Peer-review started: January 15, 2015

First decision: March 6, 2015

Revised: March 24, 2015

Accepted: April 16, 2015

Article in press: April 20, 2015

Published online: May 6, 2015

when treated with clopidogrel. Accordingly, proton pump inhibitors are frequently administered in combination with clopidogrel to reduce the risk for GI bleeding. Nevertheless, pharmacodynamic studies suggest that omeprazole might attenuate the antiplatelet effect of clopidogrel. However, in observational studies, this interaction does not appear to translate into increased cardiovascular risk in patients treated with this combination. Moreover, in the only randomized, double-blind study that assessed the cardiovascular implications of combining clopidogrel and omeprazole, patients treated with clopidogrel/omeprazole combination had reduced risk for GI events and similar risk for cardiovascular events than patients treated with clopidogrel and placebo. However, the premature interruption of the study and the lack of power analysis in terms of the cardiovascular endpoint do not allow definite conclusions regarding the cardiovascular safety of clopidogrel/omeprazole combination. Other proton pump inhibitors do not appear to interact with clopidogrel. Nevertheless, given the limitations of existing observational and interventional studies, the decision to administer proton pump inhibitors to patients treated with clopidogrel should be individualized based on the patient's bleeding and cardiovascular risk.

Key words: Clopidogrel; Esomeprazole; Lansoprazole; Pantoprazole; Rabeprazole; Omeprazole; Cardiovascular risk; Proton pump inhibitors

© **The Author(s) 2015.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Abstract

Clopidogrel is a widely used antiplatelet agent for the secondary prevention of cardiovascular events in patients with stable coronary heart disease, acute coronary syndromes and ischemic stroke. Even though clopidogrel is safer than aspirin in terms of risk for gastrointestinal (GI) bleeding, the elderly, and patients with a history of prior GI bleeding, with *Helicobacter pylori* infection or those who are also treated with aspirin, anticoagulants, corticosteroids or nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs are at high risk for GI complications

Core tip: Even though pharmacodynamic studies suggest that omeprazole can attenuate the antiplatelet effect of clopidogrel, this interaction does not appear to translate into increased cardiovascular risk in patients treated with this combination in observational studies. In the only randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study that assessed the cardiovascular implications of combining clopidogrel and omeprazole, patients treated with clopidogrel/omeprazole combination had reduced risk for

gastrointestinal events and similar risk for cardiovascular events. Other proton pump inhibitors also do not appear to interact with clopidogrel. However, given the limitations of existing studies, the decision to administer proton pump inhibitors to patients treated with clopidogrel should be individualized based on the patient's bleeding and cardiovascular risk.

Bouziana SD, Tziomalos K. Clinical relevance of clopidogrel-proton pump inhibitors interaction. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(2): 17-21 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i2/17.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i2.17>

INTRODUCTION

Clopidogrel is a first-line antiplatelet agent for the secondary prevention of cardiovascular events in patients with stable coronary heart disease or with a history of non-cardioembolic ischemic stroke^[1,2]. In addition, clopidogrel is recommended in combination with aspirin for up to 12 mo in patients with acute coronary syndrome (ACS) treated either medically or invasively^[3,4]. Even though clopidogrel is safer than aspirin in terms of risk for gastrointestinal (GI) bleeding, the risk of GI bleeding is not negligible in patients treated with this agent^[5,6]. Moreover, the risk of GI bleeding further increases in patients who receive clopidogrel in combination with aspirin as well as in the elderly, in patients with a history of prior GI bleeding or with *Helicobacter pylori* infection, and in those who are also treated with anticoagulants, corticosteroids or nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)^[7,8]. In these patients, administration of proton pump inhibitors (PPIs) significantly reduces the risk of GI bleeding associated with clopidogrel treatment^[9,10]. Accordingly, PPIs are commonly prescribed in patients treated with clopidogrel to reduce the risk of GI bleeding^[11,12].

Even though the administration of PPIs in patients treated with clopidogrel reduces the risk for GI bleeding, some pharmacodynamic studies suggested that the antiplatelet effect of clopidogrel is also attenuated by PPIs^[13-15]. This interaction is due to the inhibition by PPIs of the cytochrome (CYP) P450 isoenzyme 2C19, which converts clopidogrel to its active metabolite^[16]. Notably, PPIs differ in their ability to inhibit CYP2C19, omeprazole being a more potent inhibitor than the other members of the class^[17,18]. Accordingly, some studies showed that omeprazole attenuates the antiplatelet effect of clopidogrel^[13-15] but others did not confirm these findings^[19,20]. In contrast, esomeprazole, lansoprazole, pantoprazole and rabeprazole did not affect platelet function in patients treated with clopidogrel^[13,15,19-22].

However, it is unclear whether these *ex vivo* findings have clinical importance, *i.e.*, if the co-administration of clopidogrel with omeprazole or other PPIs will result

in reduced protection against cardiovascular events. Notably, earlier studies suggested that atorvastatin attenuates the antiplatelet effects of clopidogrel *ex vivo* but this interaction did not translate into higher cardiovascular morbidity in patients receiving this combination^[23-25]. Indeed, observational studies that evaluated the effect of administering PPIs in combination with clopidogrel on cardiovascular events in patients who suffered an ACS or underwent percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI) reported conflicting results. In two early retrospective studies, patients treated with clopidogrel and either omeprazole or pantoprazole had higher risk of recurrent cardiovascular events than those who were given clopidogrel alone^[11,26] (Table 1). In contrast, several other retrospective studies reported that neither omeprazole nor pantoprazole increase cardiovascular morbidity when combined with clopidogrel^[10,12,27-30] (Table 1). A post-hoc analysis of the randomized controlled Trial to Assess Improvement in Therapeutic Outcomes by Optimizing Platelet Inhibition with Prasugrel-Thrombolysis in Myocardial Infarction 38 also reported similar findings^[31] (Table 1). In the same post-hoc analysis and in more recent observational studies, treatment with esomeprazole or lansoprazole was also not associated with increased cardiovascular risk when combined with clopidogrel^[29-31] (Table 1).

Given the well-known limitations of observational studies, these results should be interpreted with caution. Patients who are given PPIs are frequently older and have more comorbidities and despite the adjustment for these differences there is always potential for residual confounding^[10-12,26-31]. Indeed, some studies reported that PPI use is associated with increased risk for cardiovascular events regardless of the use of clopidogrel and in patients treated with ticagrelor, which does require activation by CYP2C19, suggesting that PPI use is a marker of increased cardiovascular risk and frailty^[12,30,32,33]. Moreover, none of the above-mentioned studies could adjust for over-the-counter use of PPIs and adherence to treatment^[10-12,26-31]. Many patients used PPIs intermittently, a parameter which was not considered in most studies^[10-12,26-31]. Finally, most studies evaluated very-high risk patients, *i.e.*, with a recent ACS or PCI, and it is unclear whether these results are applicable to lower-risk patients, *e.g.*, those with stable angina or history of ischemic stroke^[10-12,26-31]. Finally, the antiplatelet activity of clopidogrel is affected by several polymorphisms (Table 2)^[34] and none of these studies evaluated this parameter^[10-12,26-31]. However, both pharmacodynamic and clinical studies suggest that there is no association between CYP2C19 genotype and the impact of PPIs on the antiplatelet effect of clopidogrel^[35-37].

The only randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study that assessed the cardiovascular implications of combining clopidogrel and omeprazole is the Clopidogrel and the Optimization of Gastrointestinal Events Trial^[9]. In this trial, 3761 patients with an indication for dual antiplatelet treatment with aspirin and clopidogrel were randomly assigned to a fixed-dose combination of

Table 1 Major observational studies that evaluated the effects of coadministration of clopidogrel and proton pump inhibitors on cardiovascular events

Ref.	Population	n	Hazard ratio in patients who received clopidogrel and proton pump inhibitors vs patients treated with clopidogrel alone
[10]	Patients hospitalized for ACS or coronary revascularization	20596	0.99 (95%CI: 0.82-1.19, <i>P</i> = NS)
[11]	Patients hospitalized for ACS	8205	1.25 (95%CI: 1.11-1.41, <i>P</i> = NR)
[12]	Patients hospitalized for ACS	56406	0.98 (95%CI: 0.88-1.10, <i>P</i> = NS)
[26]	Patients hospitalized for ACS or coronary stent placement	2066	1.64 (95%CI: 1.16-2.32, <i>P</i> = 0.005)
[27]	Patients hospitalized for ACS or coronary stent placement	18565	1.22 (95%CI: 0.99-1.51 <i>P</i> = NS)
[28]	Patients hospitalized for ACS	13636	1.27 (95%CI: 1.03-1.57, <i>P</i> = NR)
[29]	Patients hospitalized for ACS	24471	0.75 (95%CI: 0.55-1.01, <i>P</i> = NS)
[30]	Patients who underwent coronary stent placement	13001	1.20 (95%CI: 0.91-1.58, <i>P</i> = NS)
[31]	Patients with ACS undergoing coronary stent placement	6795	0.94 (95%CI: 0.80-1.11, <i>P</i> = NS)

ACS: Acute coronary syndrome; NS: Non-significant; NR: Not reported.

Table 2 Polymorphisms that potentially affect the antiplatelet effect of clopidogrel

Polymorphism	Mechanism of reduced antiplatelet effect of clopidogrel
CYP2C19*2, CYP2C19*3, CYP2C19*4, CYP2C19*5, CYP2C19*6, CYP2C19*7, CYP2C19*8	Reduced metabolism of clopidogrel to its active metabolite
C3435T polymorphism of the <i>ABCB1</i> gene	Overexpression of the drug efflux pump P-glycoprotein leading to reduced intestinal absorption of clopidogrel
Q192R polymorphism of the <i>paraoxonase-1</i> gene	Reduced metabolism of clopidogrel to its active metabolite

clopidogrel/omeprazole (75/20 mg) or clopidogrel plus placebo^[9]. The study was designed to end once 143 GI events (primarily bleeding) had occurred but ended prematurely due to interruption of funding after only 55 GI events had occurred^[9]. Sample size calculation was not performed for the cardiovascular endpoint (nonfatal myocardial infarction, ischemic stroke, coronary revascularization or cardiovascular death)^[9]. Patients treated with clopidogrel/omeprazole combination had reduced risk for GI events (1.1% vs 2.9% in patients treated with clopidogrel plus placebo; *P* < 0.001) and similar risk for cardiovascular events (4.9% vs 5.7%, respectively; *P* = 0.98)^[9]. Unfortunately, the premature interruption of the study and the lack of power analysis in terms of the cardiovascular endpoint do not allow definite conclusions regarding the cardiovascular safety of clopidogrel/omeprazole combination^[9]. In addition, the pharmacokinetics of the combined omeprazole-clopidogrel pill might be different from free combinations, even though data suggest that spacing the two medications does not affect the inhibitory effect of omeprazole on the antiplatelet action of clopidogrel^[9,15,38].

In light of these conflicting data, the American Heart Association, American College of Cardiology and the American College of Gastroenterology issued an expert consensus document recommending that PPIs should be considered only in those patients treated with clopidogrel who are at high-risk for GI bleeding, including those with a previous history of GI bleeding, with *Helicobacter pylori* infection, who are treated with NSAIDs, corticosteroids or anticoagulants, and the elderly^[16]. On the other hand, the United States Food

and Drug Administration and the European Medicines Agency revised the labelling of clopidogrel, which now mentions that omeprazole and esomeprazole should be avoided in patients treated with clopidogrel, that other acid-lowering agents with minimal or no inhibitory effects on CYP2C19 should be considered and that lansoprazole and pantoprazole have less inhibitory effect on the antiplatelet action of clopidogrel than omeprazole and esomeprazole^[39,40].

In conclusion, even though pharmacodynamic studies suggest that omeprazole can attenuate the antiplatelet effect of clopidogrel, this interaction does not appear to translate into increased cardiovascular risk in patients treated with this combination. Other PPIs also do not appear to interact with clopidogrel. However, given the limitations of existing studies, the decision to administer PPIs to patients treated with clopidogrel should be individualized based on the patient's bleeding and cardiovascular risk.

REFERENCES

- 1 **Fihn SD**, Gardin JM, Abrams J, Berra K, Blankenship JC, Dallas AP, Douglas PS, Foody JM, Gerber TC, Hinderliter AL, King SB, Kligfield PD, Krumholz HM, Kwong RY, Lim MJ, Linderbaum JA, Mack MJ, Munger MA, Prager RL, Sabik JF, Shaw LJ, Sikkema JD, Smith CR, Smith SC, Spertus JA, Williams SV, Anderson JL. 2012 ACCF/AHA/ACP/AATS/PCNA/SCAI/STS guideline for the diagnosis and management of patients with stable ischemic heart disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association task force on practice guidelines, and the American College of Physicians, American Association for Thoracic Surgery, Preventive Cardiovascular Nurses Association, Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions, and

- Society of Thoracic Surgeons. *Circulation* 2012; **126**: e354-e471 [PMID: 23166211 DOI: 10.1161/CIR.0b013e318277d6a0]
- 2 **Kernan WN**, Ovbiagele B, Black HR, Bravata DM, Chimowitz MI, Ezekowitz MD, Fang MC, Fisher M, Furie KL, Heck DV, Johnston SC, Kasner SE, Kittner SJ, Mitchell PH, Rich MW, Richardson D, Schwamm LH, Wilson JA. Guidelines for the prevention of stroke in patients with stroke and transient ischemic attack: a guideline for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association/American Stroke Association. *Stroke* 2014; **45**: 2160-2236 [PMID: 24788967 DOI: 10.1161/STR.0000000000000024]
- 3 **O'Gara PT**, Kushner FG, Ascheim DD, Casey DE, Chung MK, de Lemos JA, Ettinger SM, Fang JC, Fesmire FM, Franklin BA, Granger CB, Krumholz HM, Linderbaum JA, Morrow DA, Newby LK, Ornato JP, Ou N, Radford MJ, Tamis-Holland JE, Tommaso CL, Tracy CM, Woo YJ, Zhao DX, Anderson JL, Jacobs AK, Halperin JL, Albert NM, Brindis RG, Creager MA, DeMets D, Guyton RA, Hochman JS, Kovacs RJ, Kushner FG, Ohman EM, Stevenson WG, Yancy CW. 2013 ACCF/AHA guideline for the management of ST-elevation myocardial infarction: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *Circulation* 2013; **127**: e362-e425 [PMID: 23247304 DOI: 10.1161/CIR.0b013e3182742cf6]
- 4 **Amsterdam EA**, Wenger NK, Brindis RG, Casey DE, Ganiats TG, Holmes DR, Jaffe AS, Jneid H, Kelly RF, Kontos MC, Levine GN, Liebson PR, Mukherjee D, Peterson ED, Sabatine MS, Smalling RW, Zieman SJ. 2014 AHA/ACC guideline for the management of patients with non-ST-elevation acute coronary syndromes: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *Circulation* 2014; **130**: e344-e426 [PMID: 25249585 DOI: 10.1161/CIR.0000000000000134]
- 5 **CAPRIE Steering Committee**. A randomised, blinded, trial of clopidogrel versus aspirin in patients at risk of ischaemic events (CAPRIE). *Lancet* 1996; **348**: 1329-1339 [PMID: 8918275 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(96)09457-3]
- 6 **Yusuf S**, Zhao F, Mehta SR, Chrolavicius S, Tognoni G, Fox KK. Effects of clopidogrel in addition to aspirin in patients with acute coronary syndromes without ST-segment elevation. *N Engl J Med* 2001; **345**: 494-502 [PMID: 11519503 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa010746]
- 7 **Diener HC**, Bogousslavsky J, Brass LM, Cimminiello C, Csiba L, Kaste M, Leys D, Matias-Guiu J, Rupprecht HJ. Aspirin and clopidogrel compared with clopidogrel alone after recent ischaemic stroke or transient ischaemic attack in high-risk patients (MATCH): randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet* 2004; **364**: 331-337 [PMID: 15276392 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(04)16721-4]
- 8 **Barada K**, Karrowni W, Abdallah M, Shamseddeen W, Sharara AI, Dakik HA. Upper gastrointestinal bleeding in patients with acute coronary syndromes: clinical predictors and prophylactic role of proton pump inhibitors. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2008; **42**: 368-372 [PMID: 18277903 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e31802e63ff]
- 9 **Bhatt DL**, Cryer BL, Contant CF, Cohen M, Lanis A, Schnitzer TJ, Shook TL, Lapuerta P, Goldsmith MA, Laine L, Scirica BM, Murphy SA, Cannon CP. Clopidogrel with or without omeprazole in coronary artery disease. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **363**: 1909-1917 [PMID: 20925534 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1007964]
- 10 **Ray WA**, Murray KT, Griffin MR, Chung CP, Smalley WE, Hall K, Daugherty JR, Kaltenbach LA, Stein CM. Outcomes with concurrent use of clopidogrel and proton-pump inhibitors: a cohort study. *Ann Intern Med* 2010; **152**: 337-345 [PMID: 20231564 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-152-6-201003160-00003]
- 11 **Ho PM**, Maddox TM, Wang L, Fihn SD, Jesse RL, Peterson ED, Rumsfeld JS. Risk of adverse outcomes associated with concomitant use of clopidogrel and proton pump inhibitors following acute coronary syndrome. *JAMA* 2009; **301**: 937-944 [PMID: 19258584 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2009.261]
- 12 **Charlot M**, Ahlehoff O, Norgaard ML, Jørgensen CH, Sørensen R, Abildstrøm SZ, Hansen PR, Madsen JK, Køber L, Torp-Pedersen C, Gislason G. Proton-pump inhibitors are associated with increased cardiovascular risk independent of clopidogrel use: a nationwide cohort study. *Ann Intern Med* 2010; **153**: 378-386 [PMID: 20855802 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-153-6-201009210-00005]
- 13 **Sibbing D**, Morath T, Stegherr J, Braun S, Vogt W, Hadamitzky M, Schömig A, Kastrati A, von Beckerath N. Impact of proton pump inhibitors on the antiplatelet effects of clopidogrel. *Thromb Haemost* 2009; **101**: 714-719 [PMID: 19350116]
- 14 **Gilard M**, Arnaud B, Cornily JC, Le Gal G, Lacut K, Le Calvez G, Mansourati J, Mottier D, Abgrall JF, Bosch J. Influence of omeprazole on the antiplatelet action of clopidogrel associated with aspirin: the randomized, double-blind OCLA (Omeprazole CLopidogrel Aspirin) study. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2008; **51**: 256-260 [PMID: 18206732 DOI: 10.1016/j.jacc.2007.06.064]
- 15 **Angiolillo DJ**, Gibson CM, Cheng S, Ollier C, Nicolas O, Bergougnan L, Perrin L, LaCreta FP, Hurlin F, Dubar M. Differential effects of omeprazole and pantoprazole on the pharmacodynamics and pharmacokinetics of clopidogrel in healthy subjects: randomized, placebo-controlled, crossover comparison studies. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **89**: 65-74 [PMID: 20844485 DOI: 10.1038/clpt.2010.219]
- 16 **Abraham NS**, Hlatky MA, Antman EM, Bhatt DL, Bjorkman DJ, Clark CB, Furberg CD, Johnson DA, Kahi CJ, Laine L, Mahaffey KW, Quigley EM, Scheiman J, Sperling LS, Tomaselli GF. ACCF/ACG/AHA 2010 Expert Consensus Document on the concomitant use of proton pump inhibitors and thienopyridines: a focused update of the ACCF/ACG/AHA 2008 expert consensus document on reducing the gastrointestinal risks of antiplatelet therapy and NSAID use: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation Task Force on Expert Consensus Documents. *Circulation* 2010; **122**: 2619-2633 [PMID: 21060077 DOI: 10.1161/CIR.0b013e318202f701]
- 17 **Ogilvie BW**, Yerino P, Kazmi F, Buckley DB, Rostami-Hodjegan A, Paris BL, Toren P, Parkinson A. The proton pump inhibitor, omeprazole, but not lansoprazole or pantoprazole, is a metabolism-dependent inhibitor of CYP2C19: implications for coadministration with clopidogrel. *Drug Metab Dispos* 2011; **39**: 2020-2033 [PMID: 21795468 DOI: 10.1124/dmd.111.041293]
- 18 **Zvyaga T**, Chang SY, Chen C, Yang Z, Vuppugalla R, Hurley J, Thorndike D, Wagner A, Chimalakonda A, Rodrigues AD. Evaluation of six proton pump inhibitors as inhibitors of various human cytochromes P450: focus on cytochrome P450 2C19. *Drug Metab Dispos* 2012; **40**: 1698-1711 [PMID: 22648560 DOI: 10.1124/dmd.112.045575]
- 19 **Gremmel T**, Steiner S, Seidinger D, Koppensteiner R, Panzer S, Kopp CW. The influence of proton pump inhibitors on the antiplatelet potency of clopidogrel evaluated by 5 different platelet function tests. *J Cardiovasc Pharmacol* 2010; **56**: 532-539 [PMID: 20729752 DOI: 10.1097/FJC.0b013e3181f68209]
- 20 **Kwok CS**, Loke YK. Effects of proton pump inhibitors on platelet function in patients receiving clopidogrel: a systematic review. *Drug Saf* 2012; **35**: 127-139 [PMID: 22204719 DOI: 10.2165/11594900-000000000-00000]
- 21 **Siller-Matula JM**, Spiel AO, Lang IM, Kreiner G, Christ G, Jilma B. Effects of pantoprazole and esomeprazole on platelet inhibition by clopidogrel. *Am Heart J* 2009; **157**: 148.e1-148.e5 [PMID: 19081411 DOI: 10.1016/j.ahj.2008.09.017]
- 22 **Yamane K**, Kato Y, Tazaki J, Tada T, Makiyama T, Imai M, Jinnai T, Ikeda T, Shirakawa R, Kimura T, Horiuchi H. Effects of PPIs and an H2 blocker on the antiplatelet function of clopidogrel in Japanese patients under dual antiplatelet therapy. *J Atheroscler Thromb* 2012; **19**: 559-569 [PMID: 22472213 DOI: 10.5551/jat.11601]
- 23 **Lau WC**, Waskell LA, Watkins PB, Neer CJ, Horowitz K, Hopp AS, Tait AR, Carville DG, Guyer KE, Bates ER. Atorvastatin reduces the ability of clopidogrel to inhibit platelet aggregation: a new drug-drug interaction. *Circulation* 2003; **107**: 32-37 [PMID: 12515739 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.0000047060.60595.CC]
- 24 **Saw J**, Steinhubl SR, Berger PB, Kereiakes DJ, Serebruany VL, Brennan D, Topol EJ. Lack of adverse clopidogrel-atorvastatin clinical interaction from secondary analysis of a randomized, placebo-controlled clopidogrel trial. *Circulation* 2003; **108**: 921-924 [PMID: 12925453 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.0000088780.57432.43]

- 25 **Saw J**, Brennan DM, Steinhubl SR, Bhatt DL, Mak KH, Fox K, Topol EJ. Lack of evidence of a clopidogrel-statin interaction in the CHARISMA trial. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2007; **50**: 291-295 [PMID: 17659194 DOI: 10.1016/j.jacc.2007.01.097]
- 26 **Stockl KM**, Le L, Zakharyan A, Harada AS, Solow BK, Addiego JE, Ramsey S. Risk of rehospitalization for patients using clopidogrel with a proton pump inhibitor. *Arch Intern Med* 2010; **170**: 704-710 [PMID: 20421557 DOI: 10.1001/archinternmed.2010.34]
- 27 **Rassen JA**, Choudhry NK, Avorn J, Schneeweiss S. Cardiovascular outcomes and mortality in patients using clopidogrel with proton pump inhibitors after percutaneous coronary intervention or acute coronary syndrome. *Circulation* 2009; **120**: 2322-2329 [PMID: 19933932 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.109.873497]
- 28 **Juurlink DN**, Gomes T, Ko DT, Szmisko PE, Austin PC, Tu JV, Henry DA, Kopp A, Mamdani MM. A population-based study of the drug interaction between proton pump inhibitors and clopidogrel. *CMAJ* 2009; **180**: 713-718 [PMID: 19176635 DOI: 10.1503/cmaj.082001]
- 29 **Douglas IJ**, Evans SJ, Hingorani AD, Grosso AM, Timmis A, Hemingway H, Smeeth L. Clopidogrel and interaction with proton pump inhibitors: comparison between cohort and within person study designs. *BMJ* 2012; **345**: e4388 [PMID: 22782731 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.e4388]
- 30 **Schmidt M**, Johansen MB, Robertson DJ, Maeng M, Kaltoft A, Jensen LO, Tilsted HH, Botker HE, Sørensen HT, Baron JA. Concomitant use of clopidogrel and proton pump inhibitors is not associated with major adverse cardiovascular events following coronary stent implantation. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2012; **35**: 165-174 [PMID: 22050009 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2011.04890.x]
- 31 **O'Donoghue ML**, Braunwald E, Antman EM, Murphy SA, Bates ER, Rozenman Y, Michelson AD, Hautvast RW, Ver Lee PN, Close SL, Shen L, Mega JL, Sabatine MS, Wiviott SD. Pharmacodynamic effect and clinical efficacy of clopidogrel and prasugrel with or without a proton-pump inhibitor: an analysis of two randomised trials. *Lancet* 2009; **374**: 989-997 [PMID: 19726078 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(09)61525-7]
- 32 **Goodman SG**, Clare R, Pieper KS, Nicolau JC, Storey RF, Cantor WJ, Mahaffey KW, Angiolillo DJ, Husted S, Cannon CP, James SK, Kilhamn J, Steg PG, Harrington RA, Wallentin L. Association of proton pump inhibitor use on cardiovascular outcomes with clopidogrel and ticagrelor: insights from the platelet inhibition and patient outcomes trial. *Circulation* 2012; **125**: 978-986 [PMID: 22261200 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.111.032912]
- 33 **Valkhoff VE**, 't Jong GW, Van Soest EM, Kuipers EJ, Sturkenboom MC. Risk of recurrent myocardial infarction with the concomitant use of clopidogrel and proton pump inhibitors. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **33**: 77-88 [PMID: 21083580 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2010.04485.x]
- 34 **Notarangelo MF**, Bontardelli F, Merlini PA. Genetic and nongenetic factors influencing the response to clopidogrel. *J Cardiovasc Med (Hagerstown)* 2013; **14** Suppl 1: S1-S7 [PMID: 24378836 DOI: 10.2459/JCM.0b013e328364bb04]
- 35 **Simon T**, Verstuyft C, Mary-Krause M, Quteineh L, Drouet E, Méneveau N, Steg PG, Ferrières J, Danchin N, Becquemont L. Genetic determinants of response to clopidogrel and cardiovascular events. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **360**: 363-375 [PMID: 19106083 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0808227]
- 36 **Sibbing D**, Gebhard D, Koch W, Braun S, Stegherr J, Morath T, Von Beckerath N, Mehilli J, Schömig A, Schuster T, Kastrati A. Isolated and interactive impact of common CYP2C19 genetic variants on the antiplatelet effect of chronic clopidogrel therapy. *J Thromb Haemost* 2010; **8**: 1685-1693 [PMID: 20492469 DOI: 10.1111/j.1538-7836.2010.03921.x]
- 37 **Wallentin L**, James S, Storey RF, Armstrong M, Barratt BJ, Horrow J, Husted S, Katus H, Steg PG, Shah SH, Becker RC. Effect of CYP2C19 and ABCB1 single nucleotide polymorphisms on outcomes of treatment with ticagrelor versus clopidogrel for acute coronary syndromes: a genetic substudy of the PLATO trial. *Lancet* 2010; **376**: 1320-1328 [PMID: 20801498 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(10)61274-3]
- 38 **Ferreiro JL**, Ueno M, Capodanno D, Desai B, Dharmashankar K, Darlington A, Charlton RK, Bass TA, Angiolillo DJ. Pharmacodynamic effects of concomitant versus staggered clopidogrel and omeprazole intake: results of a prospective randomized crossover study. *Circ Cardiovasc Interv* 2010; **3**: 436-441 [PMID: 20858862 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCINTERVENTIONS.110.957829]
- 39 **US Food and Drug Administration**. Available from: URL: http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/applletter/2011/020839s055ltr.pdf
- 40 **European Medicines Association**. Available from: URL: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_-_Product_Information/human/000174/WC500042189.pdf

P- Reviewer: Chiu CT, Cosmi E, Leone A, Vassalle C **S- Editor:** Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor:** Lu YJ



Clinical relevance of intestinal peptide uptake

Hugh James Freeman

Hugh James Freeman, Department of Medicine, University of British Columbia, Vancouver V6T 1W5, Canada

Author contributions: Freeman HJ contributed all to this paper.

Conflict-of-interest: No conflict of interest declared.

Data sharing: No data sharing.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Dr. Hugh James Freeman, MD, CM, FRCPC, FACP, Department of Medicine, University of British Columbia, 2211 Wesbrook Mall, Vancouver V6T 1W5, Canada. hugfree@shaw.ca

Telephone: +1-604-8227216

Fax: +1-604-8227236

Received: October 9, 2014

Peer-review started: October 9, 2014

First decision: November 14, 2014

Revised: November 22, 2014

Accepted: March 30, 2015

Article in press: April 2, 2015

Published online: May 6, 2015

Abstract

AIM: To determine available information on an independent peptide transporter 1 (PepT1) and its potential relevance to treatment, this evaluation was completed.

METHODS: Fully published English language literature articles sourced through PubMed related to protein digestion and absorption, specifically human peptide and amino acid transport, were accessed and reviewed. Papers from 1970 to the present, with particular emphasis on the past decade, were examined. In addition, abstracted information translated to English in PubMed was also included. Finally, studies and reviews relevant to nutrient or drug uptake, particularly in human intestine

were included for evaluation. This work represents a summary of all of these studies with particular reference to peptide transporter mediated assimilation of nutrients and pharmacologically active medications.

RESULTS: Assimilation of dietary protein in humans involves gastric and pancreatic enzyme hydrolysis to luminal oligopeptides and free amino acids. During the ensuing intestinal phase, these hydrolytic products are transported into the epithelial cell and, eventually, the portal vein. A critical component of this process is the uptake of intact di-peptides and tri-peptides by an independent PepT1. A number of "peptide-mimetic" pharmaceutical agents may also be transported through this carrier, important for uptake of different antibiotics, antiviral agents and angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors. In addition, specific peptide products of intestinal bacteria may also be transported by PepT1, with initiation and persistence of an immune response including increased cytokine production and associated intestinal inflammatory changes. Interestingly, these inflammatory changes may also be attenuated with orally-administered anti-inflammatory tripeptides administered as site-specific nanoparticles and taken up by this PepT1 transport protein.

CONCLUSION: Further evaluation of the role of this transporter in treatment of intestinal disorders, including inflammatory bowel disease is needed.

Key words: Dietary peptides; Peptide transport; Peptide transporter 1; Intestinal inflammation; Drug absorption; Bacterial peptides

© **The Author(s) 2015.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Intestinal uptake of intact di-peptides and tri-peptides occurs by an independent epithelial transport process for protein assimilation. This carrier may also be used to absorb specific drugs and bacterial peptide products that may result in inflammatory disease.

Freeman HJ. Clinical relevance of intestinal peptide uptake. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(2): 22-27 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i2/22.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i2.22>

INTRODUCTION

Protein digestion and absorption in humans depends on initial enzymatic hydrolysis in the stomach and proximal small intestine. The hydrolytic products include oligopeptides and amino acids that ultimately undergo small intestinal uptake into the portal vein. A critical step in this overall uptake process involves a transmembrane protein [peptide transporter 1 (PepT1)], located in the brush border that can transport nutrient peptides into the enterocyte^[1-3]. In addition, studies have also demonstrated that PepT1 is able to transport some pharmaceutical agents along with bacterial by-products from the intestinal lumen that may trigger an ongoing and persistent inflammatory intestinal mucosal response.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Fully published English language literature articles sourced through PubMed related to protein digestion and absorption, specifically human peptide and amino acid transport, were accessed and reviewed. Papers from 1970 to the present, with particular emphasis on the past decade, were examined. In addition, abstracted information translated to English in PubMed was also included. Finally, studies and reviews relevant to nutrient or drug uptake, particularly in human intestine were included for evaluation. This work represents a summary of all of these studies with particular reference to peptide transporter mediated assimilation of nutrients and pharmacologically active medications.

RESULTS

Assimilation of dietary protein in humans involves gastric and pancreatic enzyme hydrolysis to luminal oligopeptides and free amino acids. During the ensuing intestinal phase, these hydrolytic products are transported into the epithelial cell and, eventually, the portal vein. A critical component of this process is the uptake of intact di-peptides and tri-peptides by an independent PepT1. A number of "peptide-mimetic" pharmaceutical agents may also be transported through this carrier, important for uptake of different antibiotics, antiviral agents and angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors. In addition, specific peptide products of intestinal bacteria may also be transported by PepT1, with initiation and persistence of an immune response including increased cytokine production and associated intestinal inflammatory changes. Interestingly, these inflammatory changes may also be

attenuated with orally-administered anti-inflammatory tripeptides administered as site-specific nanoparticles and taken up by this PepT1 transport protein.

DISCUSSION

Gastric and pancreatic phases

Critical nutrients derived from digested protein are absorbed in the intestinal tract, specifically amino acids and peptides, during health as well as during disease. Normally, gastric and pancreatic enzymes initiate hydrolysis of dietary and other luminal proteins from endogenous sources. As a result of this initial hydrolytic phase, an array of free amino acids and different oligopeptides of variable length appear in the small intestinal lumen. Information on human protein digestion and absorption has been previously reviewed and updated^[1-3].

Intestinal phase

Protein digestion studied in human volunteers using long intestinal tubes showed that infused bovine serum albumin appeared to be completely hydrolyzed before the distal ileum^[4]. A host of brush border microvillus membrane transport proteins are located in the intestinal epithelial cell resulting in the uptake of specific substrates into the enterocyte. These transporters are specialized membrane proteins that can recognize, bind and translocate a specific substrate or multiple different substrates across the brush border membrane into the epithelial cell. In addition, other transport proteins involved in this process have been detected and characterized to a limited extent on the basolateral membrane. Most free amino acids that present on the luminal or apical surface of the epithelial cell are transported by both brush border and basolateral membranes into the portal venous blood. A number of brush border membrane amino acid carriers, linked to different ions, have been defined that result in transport of basic, neutral and anionic amino acids. For oligopeptides, however, different cellular transport routes are evident.

Peptide uptake

For both di-peptides and tri-peptides, a separate membrane protein, PepT1, is present that appears to have very broad substrate capacity and, theoretically, it is believed, could transport all possible di-peptides and tri-peptides into the epithelial cell^[5]. For 20 different amino acids, a total of 400 di-peptides and 8000 tri-peptides have been enumerated. For those peptides that consist of 4 or more amino acids, brush border enzymes must first hydrolyze each of these to free amino acids, di-peptides and tri-peptides. Then, substrate uptake into the epithelial cell follows. Once inside the epithelial cell, cytoplasmic enzymes hydrolyze these di-peptides and tri-peptides further into free amino acids for transport into the portal venous blood. Most oligopeptidases are aminopeptidases, acting to

remove an amino acid residue from the amino-terminus of the peptide. Peptide chain length determines the location of hydrolysis with longer peptides hydrolyzed at the brush border and di-peptides and tri-peptides mainly in the cytoplasm^[6]. A number of other brush border and cytoplasmic peptidases are present. In particular, proline-containing oligopeptides are poorly hydrolyzed by most peptidases, yet are very important for assimilation of many normal dietary proteins with a high proline content (e.g., gliadin). Proline-specific dipeptidases are also located in the brush border membrane and cytoplasmic portion of the cell and these serve to hydrolyze most proline-containing peptides (e.g., dipeptidyl aminopeptidase IV)^[7]. Particularly important was the early observation that amino acids infused into human intestine in peptide form are more readily absorbed than if infused into the intestinal lumen as free amino acids^[8]. Some peptides, particularly in other non-human mammalian species, are incompletely hydrolyzed and may be transported out of enterocytes into the circulation, likely by a novel peptide transporter located in the baso-lateral membrane of the epithelial cell^[9,10]. Other routes of uptake into the enterocyte have been hypothesized to exist^[5]. For example, so-called "cell penetrating peptides" may carry peptides into the cell, either by direct penetration through the apical membrane or associated with endocytosis. Finally, enhanced permeability of the tight junctions between epithelial cells may result in increased paracellular uptake.

PepT1

The peptide transporters are part of a proton-coupled oligopeptide transporter superfamily, or peptide transporter family^[10,11]. PepT1 (or SLC15) has several transmembrane domains and acts as a cotransporter with hydrogen ions (H^{+ion})^[12]. After uptake of di-peptides or tri-peptides along with H^{+ion} into the enterocyte, H^{+ion} is then removed from the cell through the sodium-hydrogen (Na^{+ion}/H^{+ion}) exchanger on the brush border membrane in exchange for Na^{+ion} . The Na^{+ion} is then moved out of the cell by a Na^{+ion}/K^{+ion} ATPase pump on the basolateral membrane where 3 Na^{+ion} are transported out of the cell and 2 K^{+ion} are transported into the cell causing the epithelial intra-cellular electrochemical gradient to normalize.

Tissue and cellular distribution studies have also located this carrier protein in intestinal and renal brush border membranes along with lysosomal membranes. Interestingly, most PepT1 activity is located in the proximal small intestine (specifically, duodenum and jejunum), but some activity exists in other intestinal sites, including the ileum and colon. As little dietary protein actually normally reaches the distal portions of the intestine, some investigators have suggested that endogenous proteins might serve as proteolytic substrates for intestinal microflora, particularly in the colon. In addition, a transcription factor, CDX2,

that appears to play important roles in proliferation, differentiation and maturation of epithelial cells, has been shown to specifically regulate this enterocyte brush border membrane transporter, PepT1^[13].

The transporter has been cloned from several mammalian species, including humans, with a size estimated to be about 708 amino acids^[14]. Of particular clinical importance, PepT1 may accept other non-nutrients for uptake, including pharmaceutical agents that have similar structural characteristics and actually mimic peptide substrates. These "peptide-mimetic" therapeutic agents include some antibiotics like cephalosporins and penicillins, some anti-viral agents (e.g., acyclovir, ganciclovir) and inhibitors of angiotensin-converting enzyme. Each may undergo uptake across the intestinal epithelial cell through the PepT1 transporter^[15-17]. Important molecular insights into proton coupled peptide transporters have resulted from evaluation of crystal structures of bacterial transporters combined with some biochemical studies of transport, including use of genetically modified animals have recently been reviewed^[18,19].

Peptide transporter regulation

A number of factors may serve to regulate PepT1, including altered dietary intake^[20,21]. For example, increased expression of PepT1 may be caused by an increased quantity of dietary protein, as well as the specific amino acid composition of the dietary protein. Behavioral changes may also affect expression of the transporter. In particular, a diurnal rhythm in PepT1 expression may occur due to feeding behavior, increasing at night in some mammalian species that tend to be nocturnal feeders^[22,23], a pattern abolished by fasting or imposed daytime feeding^[24]. Increased expression of PepT1 during food deprivation or starvation may also occur, particularly with mucosal changes and reduced intestinal surface area associated with long-term parenteral feeding. Developmental factors also play a role in alteration of transporter expression, especially at the time following birth with suckling of a high protein milk diet and then the post-weaning phase with a shift from milk to solid food^[25].

Peptide transporter in disease

PepT1 expression persists with intestinal disease, even with severe mucosal damage. Normally, PepT1 is expressed to only a limited extent in the colon compared to the small intestine^[26]. In the short bowel syndrome, PepT1 expression is increased in the colon, possibly serving to conserve amino acids^[27]. Similar changes have been reported in the colon of patients with inflammatory bowel diseases^[28]. As a result of PepT1 up-regulation associated with the inflammatory process, dipeptides and tripeptides from bacteria in the colonic lumen may be transported by PepT1 into epithelial cells. Some of these bacterial peptides include N-formylmethionyl-leucyl-phenylalanine, a

tripeptide from *Escherichia coli*, muramyl dipeptide (MDP), found in the cell walls of gram negative and gram positive bacteria, and L-Ala-(γ)-D-Glu-meso-diaminopimelic acid (Tri-DAP), a cell wall byproduct of gram negative bacteria. After uptake into the intestinal cell, the NF- κ B pathway is activated while downstream pro-inflammatory cytokine and chemokine production are enhanced. Some bacterial peptides probably also gain access by a paracellular pathway. Added studies demonstrate that Tri-DAP transport is mediated by PepT1 expressed intestinal epithelial cells, but not in cells that did not express PepT1^[29]. In the lamina propria of intestinal mucosa, these bacterial peptides may then be taken up by macrophages causing up-regulation of major histocompatibility class I molecules and increased cytokine and chemokine production, further contributing to the inflammatory process^[30]. Others have reported that colonic expression of the PepT1 was down-regulated during intestinal inflammation^[31]. Interestingly, PepT1 may play an important interactive role with receptors of the innate immune system to eliminate pathogens^[32]. For example, ligands specific for members of the nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain (NOD) family of receptors, specifically NOD 1 and NOD 2 present in cytoplasm, may be transported by PepT1. Activation of NOD leads to NF- κ B activation. A linkage with NOD mutations and risk of Crohn's disease has been reported^[33-35]. In addition, recent studies suggest that PepT1 polymorphisms may be associated with development of inflammatory bowel disease in some Scandinavian populations^[36]. Recently, cellular and molecular mechanism underlying NOD 2 risk-associated polymorphisms in Crohn's disease have been reviewed^[37]. Finally, a specific tri-peptide (Lys-Pro-Val) or KPV has anti-inflammatory activities that may be transported by PepT1 and cause inhibition of NF- κ B activation^[38]. KPV encapsulated in polysaccharide for release primarily in the colon may reduce inflammatory mucosal changes^[39]. Similarly, a PepT1-transportable soy tripeptide VPY reduced intestinal inflammation, suggesting its use as a possible treatment for inflammatory bowel disease^[40].

Recently, it has been hypothesized that different microbial genomes within the intestinal tract may play a role in the immune response in several inflammatory diseases^[41]. Further clinically-relevant studies focused on the human intestinal microbiome and the potential role of PepT1 are needed.

COMMENTS

Background

Assimilation of dietary protein in humans involves gastric and pancreatic enzyme hydrolysis to luminal oligopeptides and free amino acids. During the ensuing intestinal phase, these hydrolytic products are transported into the epithelial cell and, eventually, the portal vein.

Research frontiers

A critical component of this process is the uptake of intact di-peptides and tri-peptides by an independent peptide transporter transmembrane protein, peptide transporter 1 (PepT1). In recent years, a number of "peptide-mimetic"

pharmaceutical agents may also be transported through this carrier, important for uptake of different antibiotics, antiviral agents and angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors. In addition, specific peptide products of intestinal bacteria may also be transported by PepT1, with initiation and persistence of an immune response including increased cytokine production and associated intestinal inflammatory changes. Interestingly, these inflammatory changes may also be attenuated with orally-administered anti-inflammatory tri-peptides administered as site-specific nanoparticles and taken up by this PepT1 transport protein.

Innovations and breakthroughs

Further evaluation of the role of this transmembrane transport protein, PepT1, in transport of pharmaceutical agents is needed. This may provide novel approaches to treatment, particularly for intestinal disorders. In particular, use of agents that employ this peptide transporter to permit access into intestinal cells may have a special role in inflammatory bowel disease treatment.

Applications

From a practical perspective, use of agents that particularly localize to the intestinal mucosal cells might have an important role in localization of treatment regimens rather than use of current systemically-applied pharmaceutical or biological agents.

Terminology

The PepT1 transporter is a special transmembrane intestinal transport protein located in the microvillus membrane. Its role as a nutrient transporter, specifically for di-peptides and tri-peptides is well established. However, in recent years, its role in uptake of several pharmaceutical agents has become apparent, including its potential relevance for management of inflammatory intestinal disorders.

Peer-review

Conceptually, the peer reviewers have raised the important linkage of this peptide transporter and the modern "metagenomic revolution" that should further our understanding of intestinal, particularly inflammatory, disorders. Added studies are also needed that explore these intestinal uptake processes and role of this PepT1 transporter in the developing human intestinal tract, particularly in fetal and neonatal settings.

REFERENCES

- Freeman HJ, Kim YS, Sleisenger MH. Protein digestion and absorption in man. Normal mechanisms and protein-energy malnutrition. *Am J Med* 1979; **67**: 1030-1036 [PMID: 117704 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9343(79)90645-4]
- Thomson AB, Chopra A, Clandinin MT, Freeman H. Recent advances in small bowel diseases: Part I. *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 3336-3352 [PMID: 22807604 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i26.3336]
- Thomson AB, Chopra A, Clandinin MT, Freeman H. Recent advances in small bowel diseases: Part II. *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 3353-3374 [PMID: 22807605 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i26.3353]
- Chung YC, Kim YS, Shadchehr A, Garrido A, Macgregor IL, Sleisenger MH. Protein digestion and absorption in human small intestine. *Gastroenterology* 1979; **76**: 1415-1421 [PMID: 437440]
- Gilbert ER, Wong EA, Webb KE. Board-invited review: Peptide absorption and utilization: Implications for animal nutrition and health. *J Anim Sci* 2008; **86**: 2135-2155 [PMID: 18441086 DOI: 10.2527/jas.2007-0826]
- Kim YS, Birtwhistle W, Kim YW. Peptide hydrolases in the brush border and soluble fractions of small intestinal mucosa of rat and man. *J Clin Invest* 1972; **51**: 1419-1430 [PMID: 5024039 DOI: 10.1172/JCI106938]
- Morita A, Chung YC, Freeman HJ, Erickson RH, Sleisenger MH, Kim YS. Intestinal assimilation of a proline-containing tetrapeptide. Role of a brush border membrane postproline dipeptidyl aminopeptidase IV. *J Clin Invest* 1983; **72**: 610-616 [PMID: 6135710 DOI: 10.1172/JCI111009]
- Adibi SA, Morse EL, Masilamani SS, Amin PM. Evidence for two different modes of tripeptide disappearance in human intestine. Uptake by peptide carrier systems and hydrolysis by peptide hydrolases. *J Clin Invest* 1975; **56**: 1355-1363 [PMID: 1202077 DOI: 10.1172/JCI108215]

- 9 **Terada T**, Sawada K, Saito H, Hashimoto Y, Inui K. Functional characteristics of basolateral peptide transporter in the human intestinal cell line Caco-2. *Am J Physiol* 1999; **276**: G1435-G1441 [PMID: 10362647]
- 10 **Irie M**, Terada T, Okuda M, Inui K. Efflux properties of basolateral peptide transporter in human intestinal cell line Caco-2. *Pflugers Arch* 2004; **449**: 186-194 [PMID: 15340850 DOI: 10.1007/s00424-004-1326-x]
- 11 **Daniel H**. Molecular and integrative physiology of intestinal peptide transport. *Annu Rev Physiol* 2004; **66**: 361-384 [PMID: 14977407 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.physiol.66.032102.144149]
- 12 **Daniel H**, Kottra G. The proton oligopeptide cotransporter family SLC15 in physiology and pharmacology. *Pflugers Arch* 2004; **447**: 610-618 [PMID: 12905028 DOI: 10.1007/s00424-003-1101-4]
- 13 **Shimakura J**, Terada T, Shimada Y, Katsura T, Inui K. The transcription factor Cdx2 regulates the intestine-specific expression of human peptide transporter 1 through functional interaction with Sp1. *Biochem Pharmacol* 2006; **71**: 1581-1588 [PMID: 16616718 DOI: 10.1016/j.bcp.2006.03.001]
- 14 **Liang R**, Fei YJ, Prasad PD, Ramamoorthy S, Han H, Yang-Feng TL, Hediger MA, Ganapathy V, Leibach FH. Human intestinal H⁺/peptide cotransporter. Cloning, functional expression, and chromosomal localization. *J Biol Chem* 1995; **270**: 6456-6463 [PMID: 7896779]
- 15 **Brodin B**, Nielsen CU, Steffansen B, Frøkjaer S. Transport of peptidomimetic drugs by the intestinal Di/tri-peptide transporter, PepT1. *Pharmacol Toxicol* 2002; **90**: 285-296 [PMID: 12403049 DOI: 10.1034/j.1600-0773.2002.900601.x]
- 16 **Steffansen B**, Nielsen CU, Brodin B, Eriksson AH, Andersen R, Frøkjaer S. Intestinal solute carriers: an overview of trends and strategies for improving oral drug absorption. *Eur J Pharm Sci* 2004; **21**: 3-16 [PMID: 14706808 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejps.2003.10.010]
- 17 **Brandsch M**. Drug transport via the intestinal peptide transporter PepT1. *Curr Opin Pharmacol* 2013; **13**: 881-887 [PMID: 24007794 DOI: 10.1016/j.coph.2013.08.004]
- 18 **Smith DE**, Cléménçon B, Hediger MA. Proton-coupled oligopeptide transporter family SLC15: physiological, pharmacological and pathological implications. *Mol Aspects Med* 2013; **34**: 323-336 [PMID: 23506874 DOI: 10.1016/j.mam.2012.11.003]
- 19 **Newstead S**. Molecular insights into proton coupled peptide transport in the PTR family of oligopeptide transporters. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2015; **1850**: 488-499 [PMID: 24859687 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbagen.2014.05.011]
- 20 **Ferraris RP**, Diamond JM. Specific regulation of intestinal nutrient transporters by their dietary substrates. *Annu Rev Physiol* 1989; **51**: 125-141 [PMID: 2653177 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.ph.51.030189.001013]
- 21 **Ferraris RP**, Carey HV. Intestinal transport during fasting and malnutrition. *Annu Rev Nutr* 2000; **20**: 195-219 [PMID: 10940332 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.nutr.20.1.195]
- 22 **Pan X**, Terada T, Irie M, Saito H, Inui K. Diurnal rhythm of H⁺-peptide cotransporter in rat small intestine. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2002; **283**: G57-G64 [PMID: 12065292]
- 23 **Pan X**, Terada T, Okuda M, Inui K. Altered diurnal rhythm of intestinal peptide transporter by fasting and its effects on the pharmacokinetics of cefibuten. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 2003; **307**: 626-632 [PMID: 12970381 DOI: 10.1124/jpet.103.055939]
- 24 **Pan X**, Terada T, Okuda M, Inui K. The diurnal rhythm of the intestinal transporters SGLT1 and PEPT1 is regulated by the feeding conditions in rats. *J Nutr* 2004; **134**: 2211-2215 [PMID: 15333706]
- 25 **Pácha J**. Development of intestinal transport function in mammals. *Physiol Rev* 2000; **80**: 1633-1667 [PMID: 11015621]
- 26 **Ford D**, Howard A, Hirst BH. Expression of the peptide transporter hPepT1 in human colon: a potential route for colonic protein nitrogen and drug absorption. *Histochem Cell Biol* 2003; **119**: 37-43 [PMID: 12548404]
- 27 **Ziegler TR**, Fernández-Estívariz C, Gu LH, Bazargan N, Umeakunne K, Wallace TM, Diaz EE, Rosado KE, Pascal RR, Galloway JR, Wilcox JN, Leader LM. Distribution of the H⁺/peptide transporter PepT1 in human intestine: up-regulated expression in the colonic mucosa of patients with short-bowel syndrome. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2002; **75**: 922-930 [PMID: 11976168]
- 28 **Merlin D**, Si-Tahar M, Sitaraman SV, Eastburn K, Williams I, Liu X, Hediger MA, Madara JL. Colonic epithelial hPepT1 expression occurs in inflammatory bowel disease: transport of bacterial peptides influences expression of MHC class I molecules. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **120**: 1666-1679 [PMID: 11375948 DOI: 10.1053/gast.2001.24845]
- 29 **Dalmaso G**, Nguyen HT, Charrier-Hisamuddin L, Yan Y, Laroui H, Demoulin B, Sitaraman SV, Merlin D. PepT1 mediates transport of the proinflammatory bacterial tripeptide L-Ala- $\{\gamma\}$ -D-Glu-meso-DAP in intestinal epithelial cells. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2010; **299**: G687-G696 [PMID: 20558765 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00527.2009]
- 30 **Ingersoll SA**, Ayyadurai S, Charania MA, Laroui H, Yan Y, Merlin D. The role and pathophysiological relevance of membrane transporter PepT1 in intestinal inflammation and inflammatory bowel disease. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2012; **302**: G484-G492 [PMID: 22194420 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00477.2011]
- 31 **Wuensch T**, Ullrich S, Schulz S, Chamaillard M, Schaltenberg N, Rath E, Goebel U, Sartor RB, Prager M, Büning C, Bugert P, Witt H, Haller D, Daniel H. Colonic expression of the peptide transporter PEPT1 is downregulated during intestinal inflammation and is not required for NOD2-dependent immune activation. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2014; **20**: 671-684 [PMID: 24583477 DOI: 10.1097/01.MIB.000044336]
- 32 **Kanneganti TD**, Lamkanfi M, Núñez G. Intracellular NOD-like receptors in host defense and disease. *Immunity* 2007; **27**: 549-559 [PMID: 17967410 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2007.10.002]
- 33 **Cuthbert AP**, Fisher SA, Mirza MM, King K, Hampe J, Croucher PJ, Mascheretti S, Sanderson J, Forbes A, Mansfield J, Schreiber S, Lewis CM, Mathew CG. The contribution of NOD2 gene mutations to the risk and site of disease in inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: 867-874 [PMID: 11910337 DOI: 10.1053/gast.2002.32415]
- 34 **Hugot JP**, Chamaillard M, Zouali H, Lesage S, Cézard JP, Belaiche J, Almer S, Tysk C, O'Morain CA, Gassull M, Binder V, Finkel Y, Cortot A, Modigliani R, Laurent-Puig P, Gower-Rousseau C, Macry J, Colombel JF, Sahbatou M, Thomas G. Association of NOD2 leucine-rich repeat variants with susceptibility to Crohn's disease. *Nature* 2001; **411**: 599-603 [PMID: 11385576 DOI: 10.1038/35079107]
- 35 **Ogura Y**, Bonen DK, Inohara N, Nicolae DL, Chen FF, Ramos R, Britton H, Moran T, Karaliuskas R, Duerr RH, Achkar JP, Brant SR, Bayless TM, Kirschner BS, Hanauer SB, Núñez G, Cho JH. A frameshift mutation in NOD2 associated with susceptibility to Crohn's disease. *Nature* 2001; **411**: 603-606 [PMID: 11385577 DOI: 10.1038/35079114]
- 36 **Strober W**, Asano N, Fuss I, Kitani A, Watanabe T. Cellular and molecular mechanisms underlying NOD2 risk-associated polymorphisms in Crohn's disease. *Immunol Rev* 2014; **260**: 249-260 [PMID: 24942694 DOI: 10.1111/immr.12193]
- 37 **Zucchelli M**, Torkvist L, Bresso F, Halfvarson J, Hellquist A, Anedda F, Assadi G, Lindgren GB, Svanfeldt M, Janson M, Noble CL, Pettersson S, Lappalainen M, Paavola-Sakki P, Halme L, Färkkilä M, Turunen U, Satsangi J, Kontula K, Löfberg R, Kere J, D'Amato M. PepT1 oligopeptide transporter (SLC15A1) gene polymorphism in inflammatory bowel disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2009; **15**: 1562-1569 [PMID: 19462432 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.20963]
- 38 **Dalmaso G**, Charrier-Hisamuddin L, Nguyen HT, Yan Y, Sitaraman S, Merlin D. PepT1-mediated tripeptide KPV uptake reduces intestinal inflammation. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **134**: 166-178 [PMID: 18061177 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.10.026]
- 39 **Laroui H**, Dalmaso G, Nguyen HT, Yan Y, Sitaraman SV, Merlin D. Drug-loaded nanoparticles targeted to the colon with polysaccharide hydrogel reduce colitis in a mouse model. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **138**: 843-853.e1-2 [PMID: 19909746]
- 40 **Kovacs-Nolan J**, Zhang H, Ibuki M, Nakamori T, Yoshiura K, Turner PV, Matsui T, Mine Y. The PepT1-transportable soy tripeptide VPY reduces intestinal inflammation. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2012; **1820**: 1753-1763 [PMID: 22842481 DOI: 10.1016/

j.bbagen.2012.07.007]

41 **Proal AD**, Albert PJ, Marshall TG. Inflammatory disease and

the human microbiome. *Discov Med* 2014; **17**: 257-265 [PMID: 24882717]

P- Reviewer: Actis GC, Catania VA **S- Editor:** Tian YL
L- Editor: A **E- Editor:** Lu YJ





Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**

8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA

Telephone: +1-925-223-8242

Fax: +1-925-223-8243

E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com

Help Desk: <http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>

<http://www.wjgnet.com>



World Journal of *Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics*

World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther 2015 August 6; 6(3): 28-95





Editorial Board

2011-2015

The *World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics* Editorial Board consists of 411 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in surgery research. They are from 47 countries, including Argentina (3), Australia (13), Austria (4), Belarus (1), Belgium (3), Brazil (10), Canada (10), China (41), Czech Republic (1), Denmark (1), Egypt (3), Estonia (1), Finland (1), France (5), Germany (21), Greece (6), Hungary (4), India (18), Iran (6), Ireland (1), Israel (4), Italy (35), Japan (34), Lebanon (1), Lithuania (3), Mexico (2), Netherlands (10), New Zealand (2), Norway (2), Pakistan (2), Philippines (1), Poland (3), Portugal (2), Romania (1), Russia (1), Saudi Arabia (2), Singapore (3), Slovenia (1), South Africa (1), South Korea (16), Spain (13), Sweden (3), Switzerland (1), Thailand (4), Turkey (7), United Kingdom (20), and United States (84).

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF

Hugh J Freeman, *Vancouver*

STRATEGY ASSOCIATE

EDITORS-IN-CHIEF

Antonio Picardi, *Rome*

Elham Rahme, *Quebec*

Douglas Kevin Rex, *Indianapolis*

Angelo Zullo, *Rome*

GUEST EDITORIAL BOARD

MEMBERS

Full-Young Chang, *Taipei*

Mei-Chi Chang, *Taoyuan*

Ming-Jen Chen, *Taipei*

Chia-Yen Dai, *Kaohsiung*

Jiiang-Huei Jeng, *Taipei*

Wun-Chang Ko, *Taipei*

Hwai Jeng Lin, *Changhua*

Ming-Yie Liu, *Tainan*

Frank C Mao, *Taichung*

Tzu-Ming Pan, *Taipei*

Bor-Shyang Sheu, *Tainan*

Li Hsueh Tsai, *Taipei*

Keng-Liang Wu, *Kaohsiung*

Being-Sun Wung, *Chiayi*

Hsu-Heng Yen, *Changhua*

MEMBERS OF THE EDITORIAL BOARD



Argentina

Viviana Alicia Catania, *Rosario*

Guillermo Daniel Mazzolini, *Derqui-Pilar*

Valeria Paula Tripodi, *Buenos Aires*



Australia

Noor Al-Dasooqi, *Adelaide*

Thomas J Borody, *Sydney*

Rachel Jane Gibson, *Adelaide*

Xu-Feng Huang, *Wollongong*

Eline Suzanne Klaassens, *St Lucia*

Natasha A Koloski, *Brisbane*

Ian Lawrance, *Fremantle*

John Martin Mariadason, *Victoria*

Antonina Mikocka-Walus, *Melbourne*

Tim Murphy, *Adelaide*

Nam Quoc Nguyen, *Adelaide*

Samir Samman, *Sydney*

Neville D Yeomans, *Penrith South*



Austria

Martin Brunner, *Vienna*

Sonja Fruhwald, *Graz*

Michael Trauner, *Graz*

Viktoria Weber, *Krems*



Belarus

Sergey I Pimanov, *Vitebsk*



Belgium

Monika Schöller-Gyüre, *Mechelen*

Kristin Verbeke, *Leuven*

Vandenplas Yvan, *Alsemberg*



Brazil

Andréia Buffon, *Porto Alegre*

Gabriela Villaçá Chaves, *Rio de Janeiro*

Percília Cardoso Gaiquinto, *Botucatu*

Clelia Akiko Hiruma-Lima, *Botucatu*

Andre Castro Lyra, *Bahia*

Edson Marchiori, *Rio de Janeiro*

Ricardo de Souza Pereira, *Macapá*

Rafael Roesler, *Porto Alegre*

Leonardo Lucca Schiavon, *Florianópolis*

Francisca Cléa Florenço Sousa, *Fortaleza*



Canada

Brian Bressler, *Vancouver*

Yuewen Gong, *Manitoba*

Hien Quoc Huynh, *Edmonton*

Grigorios I Leontiadis, *Hamilton*

Sharon Marsh, *Québec*

Jean Sévigny, *Québec*

Martin Alexander Storr, *Alberta*

John Thomas Weber, *St. John's*



China

Zhao-Xiang Bian, *Hong Kong*

Xin-Jing Chen, *Nanjing*

Chi-Hin Cho, *Hong Kong*

Yong-Song Guan, *Chengdu*

Zhi-Li Huang, *Shanghai*

Bo Li, *Beijing*

Duo Li, *Hangzhou*

Yu-Yuan Li, *Guangzhou*

Xiong Ma, *Shanghai*
 Pan Qin, *Shanghai*
 Guo-Ping Sun, *Hefei*
 Xue-Ying Sun, *Harbin*
 Ming-Fu Wang, *Hong Kong*
 Che-Yuen Justin Wu, *Hong Kong*
 De-Xiang Xu, *Hefei*
 Rui-An Xu, *Xiamen*
 Ming-Xian Yan, *Jinan*
 Yong-Feng Yang, *Nanjing*
 Thomas Yau, *Hong Kong*
 Win-Nei Yeo, *Hong Kong*
 Long Yu, *Guangzhou*
 Jian-Ping Yuan, *Guangzhou*
 Man-Fung Yuen, *Hong Kong*
 Jian-Fu Zhang, *Xuzhou*
 Li-Qun Zhang, *Beijing*
 Min-Sheng Zhu, *Nanjing*



Czech Republic

Rene Kizek, *Brno*



Denmark

Ole Haagen Nielsen, *Herlev*



Egypt

Omar Mohamed Abdel-Salam, *Cairo*
 Ahmed Osman Abdel-Zaher, *Assiut*
 Osama Ahmed Badary, *Cairo*



Estonia

Riin Tamm, *Tartu*



Finland

Riitta Korpela, *Helsinki*



France

Ferrand Audrey, *Toulouse*
 Frederic Batteux, *Paris*
 Thierry Capiod, *Paris*
 Frederic Lagarce, *Angers*
 Hang Thi Thu Nguyen, *Clermont-Ferrand*



Germany

Susanne Beckebaum, *Essen*
 Jürgen Borlak, *Hannover*
 Güralp Onur Ceyhan, *Munich*
 Walee Chamulitrat, *Heidelberg*
 Anton Gillessen, *Muenster*
 Dirk Heitzmann, *Muenster*
 Jens Michael Heyn, *München*
 Joachim Labenz, *Siegen*
 Florian Lang, *Tübingen*
 Klaus Mönkemüller, *Bottrop*
 Thomas Müller, *Berlin*
 Belal Naser, *Salzgitter*

Beate Niesler, *Heidelberg*
 Matthias Ocker, *Marburg*
 Andreas Marc Palmer, *Konstanz*
 Dirk Rades, *Lubeck*
 Fuat Hakan Saner, *Essen*
 Manfred V Singer, *Mannheim*
 Konrad Ludwig Streetz, *Aachen*
 Frank Tacke, *Aachen*
 Gerhard Treiber, *Balingen*



Greece

Moses Elisaf, *Ioannina*
 Anastasios Koulaouzidis, *Greek*
 Ioannis E Koutroubakis, *Crete*
 Spilios Manolakopoulos, *Athens*
 Konstantinos C Mountzouris, *Athens*
 George Papatheodoridis, *Athens*



Hungary

Zsolt Barta, *Debrecen*
 László Czakó, *Szeged*
 Béla Molnár, *Budapest*
 Gyula Mózsik, *Pecs*



India

Anil Kumar Agarwal, *New Delhi*
 Sandip Basu, *Bombay*
 Chiranjib Chakraborty, *Vellore*
 Rukhsana Chowdhury, *Kolkata*
 Santosh Darisetty, *Hyderabad*
 C M Habibullah, *Andhra Pradesh*
 Mohammad Sultan Khuroo, *Kashmir*
 Mohandas K Mallath, *Mumbai*
 Balraj Mittal, *Lucknow*
 Rama Devi Mittal, *Lucknow*
 Asish Kumar Mukhopadhyay, *Kolkata*
 Lekha Saha, *Chandigarh*
 Shiv Kumar Sarin, *New Delhi*
 Jayshri Ankur Shah, *Mumbai*
 Sonu Sundd Singh, *Gurgaon*
 Sikta Swarnakar, *Kolkata*
 Rakesh Tandon, *New Delhi*
 Asna Urooj, *Mysore*



Iran

Seyed Mohsen Dehghani, *Shiraz*
 Ahmad Reza Dehpour, *Tehran*
 Sara Farhang, *Tabriz*
 Ali Gholamrezaei, *Isfahan*
 Parisa Hasanein, *Hamadan*
 Amir Mohammad Mortazavian, *Tehran*



Ireland

Zaid Heetun, *Kilkenny*



Israel

Nimer Najib Assy, *Safed*

Rami Eliakim, *Haifa*
 Simon Bar Meir, *Hashomer*
 Haim Shmuel Odes, *Beer Sheba*



Italy

Giovanni C Actis, *Torino*
 Pietro Andreone, *Bologna*
 Bruno Annibale, *Rome*
 Leonardo Baiocchi, *Rome*
 Giovanni Barbara, *Bologna*
 Gabrio Bassotti, *Perugia*
 Francesca Borrelli, *Naples*
 Giuseppe Brisinda, *Rome*
 Renzo Caprilli, *Rome*
 Mauro Antonio Maria Carai, *Cagliari*
 Renato Caviglia, *Rome*
 Carolina Ciacci, *Naples*
 Mario Cottone, *Trabucco*
 Roberto De Giorgio, *Bologna*
 Luca Elli, *Milano*
 Alessandro Granito, *Bologna*
 Francesco William Guglielmi, *Trani*
 Mario Guslandi, *Milan*
 Pietro Invernizzi, *Rozzano*
 Mariano Malaguarnera, *Catania*
 Gianpiero Manes, *Milano*
 Massimo C Mauri, *Milan*
 Massimo Montalto, *Rome*
 Giovanni Monteleone, *Rome*
 Gerardo Nardone, *Napoli*
 Fabio Pace, *Milano*
 Raffaele Pezzilli, *Bologna*
 Rita Rezzani, *Brescia*
 Carmelo Scarpignato, *Parma*
 Generoso Uomo, *Napoli*
 Paolo Usai-Satta, *Cagliari*
 Maurizio Vecchi, *Milano*
 Massimiliano Veroux, *Catania*



Japan

Akira Andoh, *Otsu*
 Yuichiro Eguchi, *Saga*
 Munechika Enjoji, *Fukuoka*
 Norihiro Furusyo, *Fukuoka*
 Naoki Hotta, *Aichi*
 Shigeo Ikegawa, *Higashi-Osaka*
 Susumu Ito, *Okinawa*
 Satoru Kakizaki, *Gunma*
 Terumi Kamisawa, *Tokyo*
 Motoyori Kanazawa, *Sendai*
 Takuma Kato, *Mie*
 Takashi Kawai, *Tokyo*
 Shirao Kuniaki, *Oita*
 Nobuyuki Matsushashi, *Tokyo*
 Tatsuya Matsura, *Yonago*
 Teruo Murakami, *Hiroshima*
 Yuji Naito, *Kyoto*
 Katsuyuki Nakajima, *Maebashi Gunma*
 Hiroshi Nakase, *Kyoto*
 Nobuhiro Ohkohchi, *Tsukuba*
 Shogo Ohkoshi, *Niigata City*
 Tomohiko Shimatani, *Hiroshima*
 Yasuhiko Sugawara, *Tokyo*
 Yoshitaka Takuma, *Okayama*
 Tatsuhiro Tsujimoto, *Nara*
 Takato Ueno, *Kurume*
 Kenji Watanabe, *Osaka*

Toshiaki Watanabe, *Tokyo*
 Jiro Watari, *Nishinomiya*
 Satoshi Yamagiwa, *Niigata*
 Takayuki Yamamoto, *Mie*
 Norimasa Yoshida, *Kyoto*
 Hitoshi Yoshiji, *Nara*
 Katsutoshi Yoshizato, *Hiroshima*



Lebanon

Ala Sharara, *Beirut*



Lithuania

Dalia Adukauskienė, *Kaunas*
 Giedrius Barauskas, *Kaunas*
 Laimas Virginijus Jonaitis, *Kaunas*



Mexico

Pablo Muriel, *Mexico City*
 Guillermo B Robles-Díaz, *Mexico City*



Netherlands

Judith Elisabeth Baars, *Rotterdam*
 Albert J Bredenoord, *Nieuwegein*
 Nanne KH de Boer, *Amsterdam*
 Pieter Jan Floris de Jonge, *Rotterdam*
 Wouter J de Jonge, *Amsterdam*
 Mireille A Edens, *Groningen*
 Chris Mulder, *Amsterdam*
 Godefridus Johannes Peters, *Amsterdam*
 Paul E Sijens, *Groningen*
 Vera Esther Valkhoff, *Rotterdam*



New Zealand

Momir M Mikov, *Dunedin*
 Maxim Petrov, *Auckland*



Norway

Guanglin Cui, *Tromsø*
 Reidar Fossmark, *Trondheim*



Pakistan

Furqaan Ahmed, *Karachi*
 Anwar Hassan Gilani, *Karachi*



Philippines

Mark Anthony De Lusong, *Quezon City*



Poland

Halina Cichoz-Lach, *Lublin*
 Jarosław Czyż, *Cracow*
 Julian Teodor Swierczynski, *Gdansk*



Portugal

Cristina Freire, *Hull*
 Ana Isabel Gouveia Lopes, *Lisbon*



Romania

Dan Lucian Dumitrascu, *Cluj*



Russia

Tatyana A Korolenko, *Novosibirsk*



Saudi Arabia

Moamen Salah Refat, *Taif*
 Shahab Uddin, *Riyadh*



Singapore

Kok-Ann Gwee, *Singapore*
 Khok-Yu Ho, *Singapore*
 Kok-Yuen Ho, *Singapore*



Slovenia

Rok Orel, *Ljubljana*



South Africa

C Johannes van Rensburg, *Tygerberg*



South Korea

Chong-Su Cho, *Seoul*
 Ki Baik Hahm, *Incheon*
 Seok Joo Han, *Seoul*
 Jeong Won Jang, *Incheon*
 Dong Joon Kim, *Chuncheon*
 Jae J Kim, *Seoul*
 Kyoung Mee Kim, *Seoul*
 Nayoung Kim, *Gyeonggi-do*
 Sung-Bae Kim, *Seoul*
 Byung-Hoon Lee, *Seoul*
 Kwan Sik Lee, *Seoul*
 Sang-Han Lee, *Daegu*
 Yun Jeong Lim, *Kyunggi-do*
 Ji-Young Park, *Seoul*
 Uy Dong Sohn, *Seoul*
 Young-Joon Surh, *Seoul*



Spain

Matias Antonio Avila, *Pamplona*
 Luis Bujanda, *San Sebastián*
 Maria Carmen Collado, *Paterna*
 Conrado M Fernandez-Rodriguez, *Madrid*
 Ángel Lanas, *Zaragoza*
 Juan-R Malagelada, *Barcelona*
 Jose JG Marin, *Salamanca*

Antonio Ruiz Medina, *Jaén*
 Maria J Monte, *Salamanca*
 Miguel Muñoz, *Seville*
 Jesus Prieto, *Pamplona*
 Victor Manuel Victor, *Valencia*
 Maria D Yago, *Granada*



Sweden

Bodil Ohlsson, *Malmö*
 Henrik Thorlacius, *Malmö*
 Curt Tysk, *Örebro*



Switzerland

Carsten Alexander Wagner, *Zurich*



Thailand

Weekitt Kittisupamongkol, *Bangkok*
 Abhasnee Sobhonslidsuk, *Bangkok*
 Suporn Treepongkaruna, *Bangkok*
 Sombat Treeprasertsuk, *Bangkok*



Turkey

Fusun Acarturk, *Etiler-Ankara*
 Engin Altintas, *Mersin*
 Gül Deniz Karadeniz Cakmak, *Zonguldak*
 Hayrullah Derici, *Balıkesir*
 Mukaddes Eşrefoğlu, *Malatya*
 Ilker Tasci, *Etilik*
 Berrak Çağlayan Yeğen, *Haydarpaşa*



United Kingdom

Nadeem Ahmad Afzal, *Hampshire*
 Qasim Aziz, *London*
 Hugh BARR, *Gloucester*
 Ian Leonard Phillip Beales, *Norwich*
 Barbara Braden, *Oxford*
 Susan J Duthie, *Aberdeen*
 Eyad Elkord, *Manchester*
 Anton Vignaraj Emmanuel, *London*
 Konstantinos C Fragkos, *London*
 Nusrat Husain, *Cheshire*
 Jin-Yong Kang, *London*
 Mariusz Madalinski, *Ipswich*
 Srinivasan Madhusudan, *Nottingham*
 Subramanian Mahadevan, *Birmingham*
 John Francis Mayberry, *Leicester*
 Chuka Uche Nwokolo, *Coventry*
 Ajith Kumar Siriwardena, *Manchester*
 Her-Hsin Tsai, *Cottingham*
 Konstantinos Tziomalos, *London*
 Craig LC Williams, *Glasgow*



United States

Zubair H Aghai, *Camden*
 Shrikant Anant, *Oklahoma City*
 Kondala R Atkuri, *Stanford*
 Cheryl Hunt Baker, *Orlando*
 James M Becker, *Boston*

Qiang Cai, *Atlanta*
 Jiande Chen, *Galveston*
 Liang Cheng, *Indianapolis*
 Joan Clària, *Boston*
 Seth D Crockett, *Chapel Hill*
 Joseph John Cullen, *Iowa*
 Brian J Day, *Colorado*
 Cataldo Doria, *Philadelphia*
 Craig Stephen Dorrell, *Portland*
 Douglas Arnold Drossman, *Chapel Hill*
 Eli D Ehrenpreis, *Illinois*
 Bing-Liang Fang, *Houston*
 Ronnie Fass, *Arizona*
 S Hossein Fatem, *Minneapolis*
 Linda A Feagins, *Dallas*
 Mitchell P Fink, *Los Angeles*
 Lori Fischbach, *Fort Worth*
 Craig Alan Friesen, *Kansas City*
 Fie Gao, *Bethesda*
 M Eric Gershwin, *Davis*
 Shannon Stroud Glaser, *Temple*
 Stephen A Harrison, *Fort Sam Houston*
 Hendrik Heinz, *Ohio*
 Tiberiu Hershcovici, *Tucson*
 Weihong Hou, *Charlotte*
 Peng Huang, *Houston*

William Moses Huang, *New York*
 William Jeffrey Hurst, *Hershey*
 Hartmut Jaeschke, *Kansas City*
 Robert T Jensen, *Bethesda*
 David A Johnson, *Norfolk*
 Pramodini B Kale-Pradhan, *Detroit*
 Vik Khoshoo, *Marrero*
 Tammy L Kindel, *Cincinnati*
 Nils Lambrecht, *California*
 Joel Edward Lavine, *New York*
 Lorenzo Leggio, *Providence*
 Felix W Leung, *North Hills*
 Josh Levitsky, *Chicago*
 Robert W Li, *Washington*
 Allen W Mangel, *Research Triangle Park*
 Richard A Marlar, *Oklahoma City*
 Craig J McClain, *Louisville*
 Murielle Mimeault, *Omaha*
 Smruti R Mohanty, *Chicago*
 John Edward Morley, *St. Louis*
 Sandeep Mukherjee, *Omaha*
 Michael Foster Olive, *Charleston*
 Keith M Olsen, *Omaha*
 Virendra N Pandey, *Newark*
 Narasimham Laxmi Parinandi, *Columbus*
 William Parker, *Durham*

Paul J Pockros, *La Jolla*
 Suofu Qin, *Irvine*
 P Hemachandra Reddy, *Oregon*
 Randolph Eldon Regal, *Ann Arbor*
 Jean-François Rossignol, *Tampa*
 Leonard P Rybak, *Springfield*
 George Sachs, *Los Angeles*
 M Wasif Saif, *New Haven*
 Bimaljit Singh Sandhu, *Richmond*
 Bo Shen, *Cleveland*
 Ashwani Kumar Singal, *Rochester*
 Biographical Sketch, *Hershey*
 Bronislaw Slomiany, *Newark*
 Charles Jeffrey Smith, *Columbia*
 Shi-Yong Sun, *Atlanta*
 Kenneth J Vega, *Oklahoma City*
 Yu-Jui Yvonne Wan, *Kansas*
 Lixin Wang, *Los Angeles*
 Horst Christian Weber, *Boston*
 Brian Wigdahl, *Philadelphia*
 Guang-Yin Xu, *League City*
 Yoshio Yamaoka, *Houston*
 Yutao Yan, *Atlanta*
 Jieyun Yin, *Galveston*
 Jian-Min Yuan, *Minnesota*
 Jian-Ying Zhang, *El Paso*



Contents

Quarterly Volume 6 Number 3 August 6, 2015

EDITORIAL

- 28 Current position of vasoconstrictor and albumin infusion for type 1 hepatorenal syndrome
Sobhonslidsuk A

REVIEW

- 32 Primary biliary cirrhosis: From bench to bedside
Kouroumalis E, Notas G
- 59 Antioxidants in liver health
Casas-Grajales S, Muriel P

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

- 73 Nociceptin effect on intestinal motility depends on opioid-receptor like-1 receptors and nitric oxide synthase co-localization
Sibaev A, Fichna J, Saur D, Yuece B, Timmermans JP, Storr M

Observational Study

- 84 Beverage intake preference and bowel preparation laxative taste preference for colonoscopy
Laiyemo AO, Burnside C, Laiyemo MA, Kwagyan J, Williams CD, Idowu KA, Ashktorab H, Kibreab A, Scott VF, Sanderson AK

CASE REPORT

- 89 Gastrointestinal Kaposi's sarcoma: Case report and review of the literature
Lee AJ, Brenner L, Mourad B, Monteiro C, Vega KJ, Munoz JC

Contents

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics

Volume 6 Number 3 August 6, 2015

ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, Hien Quoc Huynh, MD, FRACP, Head, Associate professor, Division of Pediatric GI Nutrition, Department of Pediatrics, Stollery Children's Hospital, University of Alberta, Aberthart Centre #1 Room 9219, 11402 University Avenue, Edmonton AB T6G 2J3, Canada

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics (*World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther*, *WJGPT*, online ISSN 2150-5349, DOI: 10.4292), is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJGPT covers topics concerning: (1) Clinical pharmacological research articles on specific drugs, concerning with pharmacodynamics, pharmacokinetics, toxicology, clinical trial, drug reactions, drug metabolism and adverse reaction monitoring, *etc.*; (2) Research progress of clinical pharmacology; (3) Introduction and evaluation of new drugs; (4) Experiences and problems in applied therapeutics; (5) Research and introductions of methodology in clinical pharmacology; and (6) Guidelines of clinical trial.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJGPT*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

INDEXING/ ABSTRACTING

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics is now indexed in PubMed Central, PubMed, Digital Object Identifier, and Directory of Open Access Journals.

FLYLEAF

I-IV Editorial Board

EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

Responsible Assistant Editor: *Xiang Li*
Responsible Electronic Editor: *Su-Qing Lin*
Proofing Editor-in-Chief: *Lian-Sheng Ma*

Responsible Science Editor: *Fang-Fang Ji*
Proofing Editorial Office Director: *Xiu-Xiu Song*

NAME OF JOURNAL

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics

ISSN

ISSN 2150-5349 (online)

LAUNCH DATE

May 6, 2010

FREQUENCY

Quarterly

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF

Hugh J Freeman, MD, FRCPC, FACP, Professor,
Department of Medicine (Gastroenterology), University of British Columbia, Hospital, 2211 Wesbrook Mall, Vancouver, BC V6T1W5, Canada

EDITORIAL OFFICE

Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics

Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: <http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>
<http://www.wjgnet.com>

PUBLISHER

Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: <http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>
<http://www.wjgnet.com>

PUBLICATION DATE

August 6, 2015

COPYRIGHT

© 2015 Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. Articles published by this Open-Access journal are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-commercial License, which permits use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited, the use is non commercial and is otherwise in compliance with the license.

SPECIAL STATEMENT

All articles published in journals owned by the Baishideng Publishing Group (BPG) represent the views and opinions of their authors, and not the views, opinions or policies of the BPG, except where otherwise explicitly indicated.

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS

Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/g_info_20100315084234.htm

ONLINE SUBMISSION

<http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/>

Current position of vasoconstrictor and albumin infusion for type 1 hepatorenal syndrome

Abhasnee Sobhonslidsuk

Abhasnee Sobhonslidsuk, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Department of Medicine, Faculty of Medicine, Ramathibodi Hospital, Mahidol University, Bangkok 10400, Thailand

Author contributions: Sobhonslidsuk A solely contributed to this paper.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Abhasnee Sobhonslidsuk hereby denied any conflict of interest with regard to the present paper.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Abhasnee Sobhonslidsuk, MD, Associate Professor, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Department of Medicine, Faculty of Medicine, Ramathibodi Hospital, Mahidol University, 270 Rama 6 road, Rajathevee, Bangkok 10400, Thailand. abhasnee.sob@mahidol.ac.th
Telephone: +66-02-2011304
Fax: +66-02-2011304

Received: March 30, 2015

Peer-review started: March 31, 2015

First decision: June 3, 2015

Revised: June 11, 2015

Accepted: July 21, 2015

Article in press: July 23, 2015

Published online: August 6, 2015

Abstract

Spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP), refractory ascites, hepatorenal syndrome (HRS), hyponatremia and hepatic encephalopathy are complications

which frequently happen during a clinical course of decompensated cirrhosis. Splanchnic and peripheral vasodilatation, increased intrarenal vasoconstriction and impaired cardiac responsive function are pathological changes causing systemic and hemodynamic derangement. Extreme renal vasoconstriction leads to severe reduction of renal blood flow and glomerular filtration rate, which finally evolves into the clinical feature of HRS. Clinical manifestations of type 1 and type 2 HRS come to medical attention differently. Patients with type 1 HRS present as acute kidney injury whereas those with type 2 HRS will have refractory ascites as the leading problem. Prompt diagnosis of type 1 HRS can halt the progression of HRS to acute tubular necrosis if the combined treatment of albumin infusion and vasoconstrictors is started timely. HRS reversal was seen in 34%-60% of patients, followed with decreasing mortality. Baseline serum levels of creatinine less than 5 mg/dL, bilirubin less than 10 mg/dL, and increased mean arterial pressure of over 5 mmHg by day 3 of the combined treatment of vasoconstrictor and albumin are the predictors of good response. Type 1 HRS can be prevented in some conditions such as albumin infusion in SBP, prophylactic antibiotics for upper gastrointestinal hemorrhage, albumin replacement after large volume paracentesis in cirrhotic patients with massive ascites. The benefit of albumin infusion in infection with primary source other than SBP requires more studies.

Key words: Albumin; Acute kidney injury; Hepatorenal syndrome; Cirrhosis; Vasoconstrictor

© The Author(s) 2015. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Type 1 hepatorenal syndrome (HRS), which presents as acute kidney injury, is an uncommon, but critical problem in decompensated cirrhosis. The most common precipitating factor is infection especially spontaneous bacterial peritonitis. The combined regimen of albumin and vasoconstrictor is the pharmacotherapy

of choice for type 1 HRS based on pathogenic mechanisms of peripheral and splanchnic vasodilatation. Prompt treatment with the combined regimen can lead to HRS reversal in 34%-60% of patients. Type 1 HRS can be prevented in cirrhotic complications such as albumin infusion for spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, large volume paracentesis with albumin replacement, and prophylactic antibiotics for upper gastrointestinal hemorrhage.

Sobhonslidsuk A. Current position of vasoconstrictor and albumin infusion for type 1 hepatorenal syndrome. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(3): 28-31 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i3.28.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i3.28>

DEFINITION AND TYPES OF HEPATORENAL SYNDROME

In 2004, the Acute Dialysis Quality Initiative workgroup developed a consensus definition and classification for a new terminology of acute renal failure which was termed acute kidney injury (AKI) to reflect the entire spectrum of acute renal failure^[1]. In 2007, the AKI Network group proposed a revision of the criteria of AKI and redefined AKI as an absolute increase in serum creatinine level of ≥ 0.3 mg/dL, or an increase in serum creatinine level > 1.5 times from baseline, or a reduction in urine output < 0.5 mL/kg per hour for > 6 h^[1]. AKI that develops in patients with decompensated cirrhosis can be triggered by volume depletion, infection or nephrotoxic acute tubular necrosis, primary renal parenchymal diseases, obstructive nephropathy and hepatorenal syndrome (HRS).

Since the first definition and the diagnostic criteria of HRS were established in 1994, HRS has been widely accepted as a reversible functional renal failure^[2]. The International Ascites Club met in 2007 and set up a consensus on a new definition, diagnostic criteria and recommendation for the treatment of HRS^[2]. HRS is divided into two types: type 1 and type 2 HRS^[2,3]. Type 1 HRS is typified by rapid deterioration of renal function as defined by a rising of serum creatinine level to over 2.5 mg/dL in less than 2 wk, and is characteristically presented as AKI^[2-5]. Type 2 HRS runs a slower progressive clinical course with a median survival of 6 mo, and is classically associated with refractory ascites^[2-5]. Patients with decompensated cirrhosis or acute on chronic liver failure who suffer from type 1 HRS would present with a critical illness, carrying a grave prognosis and having high mortality^[5,6]. The consensus emphasized on the potential reversibility of type 1 HRS as a functional renal failure and the role of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP) as an important precipitating factor of HRS^[2,3,5]. Contrasting with a previous consensus, this new definition gives an importance to HRS which was precipitated by SBP without ongoing shock.

The panel emphasized that the treatment for HRS should be started early in the clinical course of SBP-precipitated HRS^[2,4,5].

Incidences of HRS in patients with decompensated cirrhosis who develop ascites was equal to 18% after 1 year, and could go up to 39% after 5 years^[4]. Apart from SBP, bacterial infection with primary sources of infection other than SBP, upper gastrointestinal hemorrhage, large volume paracentesis without albumin administration, and severe acute alcoholic hepatitis have been reported to precipitate type 1 HRS^[4,5].

PATHOGENESIS OF HRS

While liver failure in decompensated cirrhosis progresses, splanchnic and peripheral arterial vasodilatation become markedly prominent with the development of hyperdynamic circulation^[2,4,5]. Increased local release of vasodilators, especially nitric oxide, is the principal cause of the vasodilatation^[2,4,5,7,8]. Proinflammatory cytokines release after the occurrence of SBP aggravates splanchnic and peripheral vasodilatation^[3,7,8].

Relative reduction of intravascular pressure from peripheral and splanchnic vasodilatation stimulates renin-angiotensin, aldosterone and sympathetic nervous system, causing the release of systemic and renal vasoconstrictors^[2,4,5,7,8]. Intense renal vasoconstriction from vasoconstrictive hormones leads to markedly low renal perfusion and a significant reduction of glomerular filtration rate^[5,7-9]. Suboptimal cardiac function as a consequence of impaired systolic and diastolic stimuli responses is an intensifying pathogenic mechanism in decompensated cirrhosis with type 1 HRS^[2-5,7-9].

TREATMENT OF TYPE 1 HRS

Liver transplantation is the definite treatment for type 1 and type 2 HRS^[3]. From a recent retrospective study in decompensated cirrhotic patients with type 1 HRS who underwent liver transplantation, type 1 HRS resolved in 75.8% of patients after transplantation^[10]. The predictor of HRS non-reversal at post-liver transplant was the duration of pre-transplant dialysis^[10]. However, because of scarcity of liver grafts and the complexity of patient conditions, the first line treatment of type 1 HRS, which should be considered, are vasoconstrictors plus albumin infusion^[2,4,5,7,8]. Vasoconstrictors such as terlipressin help to improve hepatic and renal hemodynamics, decreasing hepatic venous pressure gradient and portal venous blood flow, and raising mean arterial pressure^[11]. Terlipressin should be initiated at 0.5-1 mg every 4-6 h^[9]. The dose of terlipressin can be increased every 2 d if there is no clinical response, to a maximum of 12 mg/d^[2,5]. Terlipressin should be discontinued if there is no response seen for reduction of serum creatinine level after 3 d^[2,5]. Treatment duration should be expanded until type 1 HRS resolves, or having received the combined treatment for a maximum of 14 d^[2,5]. Albumin should be started at 1 g/kg on the

first day, and the dose can be increased to a maximum of 100 g if there is no or inadequate clinical response, followed by 20-40 g/d on the following days^[2,5]. From a previous study, the complete response rate could reach 60% in patients with type 1 HRS after the combined pharmacotherapy^[2]. The renal dysfunction was reversible in 34%-60% of patients and the recovery of renal function was sustainable in 70%-80% of patients after the treatment was discontinued^[4,12-14]. After the completed treatment of terlipressin and albumin, type 1 HRS rarely recurs, if it is reversal^[15]. Baseline serum levels of creatinine < 5 mg/dL and bilirubin < 10 mg/dL, and an increase mean arterial pressure $\geq$ 5 mmHg on day 3 are predictive factors of good response to terlipressin and albumin^[15-18]. From the results of meta-analysis studies, besides the benefit in HRS reversal, the combined treatment is helpful in reducing mortality^[13,19]. A meta-analysis showed that the treatment of type 1 HRS with terlipressin led to increased incidence of cardiovascular events including cardiac arrhythmia, myocardial ischemia, intestinal infarction and hypertension comparing to the control groups (14% vs 0%)^[13]. When terlipressin was compared with other vasoconstrictor drugs such as norepinephrine, there was no difference in term of the efficacy in HRS reversal between both drugs^[14,20,21]. However, adverse events during the course of type 1 HRS treatment were less often seen in the type 1 HRS patients who were treated with norepinephrine^[20,21]. The cost of norepinephrine is cheaper than terlipressin, but the drug requires continuous intravenous infusion under close monitoring of vital signs in intensive care units. A recent randomized controlled trial revealed that terlipressin plus albumin was more effective in HRS reversal than midodrine and octreotide plus albumin^[22].

PREVENTION OF TYPE 1 HRS

In decompensated cirrhotic patients who developed SBP, albumin infusion (1.5 g/kg at the first diagnosis of infection together with 1 g/kg at 48 h later), comparing to a control group, can decrease the development of type 1 HRS (10% vs 33%) and hospital mortality (10% vs 29%)^[5,23]. For type 1 HRS with ongoing infection, treatment with antibiotics alone can reverse type 1 HRS in only 33% of treated patients^[24]. The patients who did not have HRS reversal were associated with poorer prognosis and higher mortality than those who were in the treatment response group^[24]. Thus, for type 1 HRS precipitated by infection, early management with vasoconstrictors plus albumin infusion along with antibiotics tends to be more useful and logical than treatment with antibiotics alone. A proof of concept study was recently reported^[25]. Early treatment with terlipressin and albumin is effective and safe in type 1 HRS patients with sepsis^[25,26]. Renal improvement is seen in two-thirds of decompensated cirrhotic patients with sepsis and type 1 HRS after the combined treatment of terlipressin and albumin^[25].

For cirrhosis with infection with primary sources other than SBP, albumin infusion in combination with antibiotics have more advantages in improving renal and circulatory function than using antibiotics alone^[27]. The use of albumin infusion in patients with infection other than SBP tended to reduce the incidences of HRS and improve survival^[27].

Antibiotic prophylaxis in decompensated cirrhosis with upper gastrointestinal bleeding was showed to reduce bacterial infection and mortality^[8]. Albumin replacement (8 g per 1 liter of ascites removal) after large volume paracentesis prevents renal and electrolyte impairment and the activation of endogenous vasoactive hormones^[28,29]. The use of pentoxifylline in severe acute alcoholic hepatitis is useful in reducing renal dysfunction and type 1 HRS^[8].

CONCLUSION

Type 1 HRS is a critical condition affecting patients with decompensated cirrhosis. It is an infrequent event, but has a grave prognosis. Management of type 1 HRS requires very rapid diagnosis according to the consensus criteria of the International Ascites Club (2007) and exclusion of other causes of AKI. The role of renal biomarkers for early diagnosis of type 1 HRS is currently under investigation. Unless the diagnosis of type 1 HRS is made promptly and the combined treatment of albumin and vasoconstrictors is started quickly, the complete response of acute renal dysfunction may not be achieved, and poor outcomes with high mortality can be the consequences. The advantage of early treatment of vasoconstrictors plus albumin is fully supported from the study of sepsis-related type 1 HRS. Until now, data has not confirmed the benefits of terlipressin over norepinephrine or other vasoconstrictive drugs. The choice of vasoconstrictors depends on the suitability and availability of the medications and medical facilities.

REFERENCES

1. Mehta RL, Kellum JA, Shah SV, Molitoris BA, Ronco C, Warnock DG, Levin A. Acute Kidney Injury Network: report of an initiative to improve outcomes in acute kidney injury. *Crit Care* 2007; **11**: R31 [PMID: 17331245 DOI: 10.1186/cc5713]
2. Salerno F, Gerbes A, Ginès P, Wong F, Arroyo V. Diagnosis, prevention and treatment of hepatorenal syndrome in cirrhosis. *Gut* 2007; **56**: 1310-1318 [PMID: 17389705 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2006.107789]
3. Yang YW, Wu CH, Hu RH, Ho MC, Tsai MK, Wu YM, Lee PH. Longitudinal assessment of prognostic factors for patients with hepatorenal syndrome in a tertiary center. *Hepatol Int* 2010; **4**: 507-510 [PMID: 20827408 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-010-9180-8]
4. Angeli P, Merkel C. Pathogenesis and management of hepatorenal syndrome in patients with cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 2008; **48** Suppl 1: S93-103 [PMID: 18304678 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2008.01.010]
5. Arroyo V, Fernandez J, Ginès P. Pathogenesis and treatment of hepatorenal syndrome. *Semin Liver Dis* 2008; **28**: 81-95 [PMID: 18293279 DOI: 10.1055/s-2008-1040323]
6. Cárdenas A, Ginès P. Acute-on-chronic liver failure: the kidneys. *Curr Opin Crit Care* 2011; **17**: 184-189 [PMID: 21311322 DOI: 10.1097/MCC.0b013e328344b3da]
7. Wong F. Recent advances in our understanding of hepatorenal

- syndrome. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **9**: 382-391 [PMID: 22614754 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2012.96]
- 8 **Leithead JA**, Hayes PC, Ferguson JW. Review article: advances in the management of patients with cirrhosis and portal hypertension-related renal dysfunction. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **39**: 699-711 [PMID: 24528130 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12653]
 - 9 **Angeli P**, Sanyal A, Moller S, Alessandria C, Gadano A, Kim R, Sarin SK, Bernardi M. Current limits and future challenges in the management of renal dysfunction in patients with cirrhosis: report from the International Club of Ascites. *Liver Int* 2013; **33**: 16-23 [PMID: 22507181 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2012.02807.x]
 - 10 **Wong F**, Leung W, Al Beshir M, Marquez M, Renner EL. Outcomes of patients with cirrhosis and hepatorenal syndrome type 1 treated with liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2015; **21**: 300-307 [PMID: 25422261 DOI: 10.1002/lt.24049]
 - 11 **Narahara Y**, Kanazawa H, Taki Y, Kimura Y, Atsukawa M, Katakura T, Kidokoro H, Harimoto H, Fukuda T, Matsushita Y, Nakatsuka K, Sakamoto C. Effects of terlipressin on systemic, hepatic and renal hemodynamics in patients with cirrhosis. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **24**: 1791-1797 [PMID: 19686420 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2009.05873.x]
 - 12 **Sanyal AJ**, Boyer T, Garcia-Tsao G, Regenstein F, Rossaro L, Appenrodt B, Blei A, Güllberg V, Sigal S, Teuber P. A randomized, prospective, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of terlipressin for type 1 hepatorenal syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **134**: 1360-1368 [PMID: 18471513 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.02.014]
 - 13 **Glud LL**, Christensen K, Christensen E, Krag A. Systematic review of randomized trials on vasoconstrictor drugs for hepatorenal syndrome. *Hepatology* 2010; **51**: 576-584 [PMID: 19885875 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23286]
 - 14 **Dobre M**, Demirjian S, Sehgal AR, Navaneethan SD. Terlipressin in hepatorenal syndrome: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Int Urol Nephrol* 2011; **43**: 175-184 [PMID: 20306131 DOI: 10.1007/s11255-010-9725-8]
 - 15 **Sagi SV**, Mittal S, Kasturi KS, Sood GK. Terlipressin therapy for reversal of type 1 hepatorenal syndrome: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **25**: 880-885 [PMID: 20074149 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2009.06132.x]
 - 16 **Nazar A**, Pereira GH, Guevara M, Martín-Llahi M, Pepin MN, Marinelli M, Solà E, Baccaro ME, Terra C, Arroyo V, Ginès P. Predictors of response to therapy with terlipressin and albumin in patients with cirrhosis and type 1 hepatorenal syndrome. *Hepatology* 2010; **51**: 219-226 [PMID: 19877168 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23283]
 - 17 **Boyer TD**, Sanyal AJ, Garcia-Tsao G, Blei A, Carl D, Bexon AS, Teuber P. Predictors of response to terlipressin plus albumin in hepatorenal syndrome (HRS) type 1: relationship of serum creatinine to hemodynamics. *J Hepatol* 2011; **55**: 315-321 [PMID: 21167235 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.11.020]
 - 18 **Velez JC**, Nietert PJ. Therapeutic response to vasoconstrictors in hepatorenal syndrome parallels increase in mean arterial pressure: a pooled analysis of clinical trials. *Am J Kidney Dis* 2011; **58**: 928-938 [PMID: 21962618 DOI: 10.1053/j.ajkd.2011.07.017]
 - 19 **Glud LL**, Christensen K, Christensen E, Krag A. Terlipressin for hepatorenal syndrome. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; **9**: CD005162 [PMID: 22972083 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD005162.pub3]
 - 20 **Nassar Junior AP**, Farias AQ, D'Albuquerque LA, Carrilho FJ, Malbouisson LM. Terlipressin versus norepinephrine in the treatment of hepatorenal syndrome: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e107466 [PMID: 25203311 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0107466]
 - 21 **Singh V**, Ghosh S, Singh B, Kumar P, Sharma N, Bhalla A, Sharma AK, Choudhary NS, Chawla Y, Nain CK. Noradrenaline vs. terlipressin in the treatment of hepatorenal syndrome: a randomized study. *J Hepatol* 2012; **56**: 1293-1298 [PMID: 22322237 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2012.01.012]
 - 22 **Cavallin M**, Kamath PS, Merli M, Fasolato S, Toniutto P, Salerno F, Bernardi M, Romanelli RG, Colletta C, Salinas F, Di Giacomo A, Ridola L, Fornasiero E, Caraceni P, Morando F, Piano S, Gatta A, Angeli P. Terlipressin plus albumin versus midodrine and octreotide plus albumin in the treatment of hepatorenal syndrome: A randomized trial. *Hepatology* 2015; **62**: 567-574 [PMID: 25644760 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27709]
 - 23 **Sort P**, Navasa M, Arroyo V, Aldeguer X, Planas R, Ruiz-del-Arbol L, Castells L, Vargas V, Soriano G, Guevara M, Ginès P, Rodés J. Effect of intravenous albumin on renal impairment and mortality in patients with cirrhosis and spontaneous bacterial peritonitis. *N Engl J Med* 1999; **341**: 403-409 [PMID: 10432325 DOI: 10.1056/nejm199908053410603]
 - 24 **Barreto R**, Fagundes C, Guevara M, Solà E, Pereira G, Rodríguez E, Graupera I, Martín-Llahi M, Ariza X, Cárdenas A, Fernández J, Rodés J, Arroyo V, Ginès P. Type-1 hepatorenal syndrome associated with infections in cirrhosis: natural history, outcome of kidney function, and survival. *Hepatology* 2014; **59**: 1505-1513 [PMID: 24037970 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26687]
 - 25 **Rodríguez E**, Elia C, Solà E, Barreto R, Graupera I, Andrealli A, Pereira G, Poca M, Sánchez J, Guevara M, Soriano G, Alessandria C, Fernández J, Arroyo V, Ginès P. Terlipressin and albumin for type-1 hepatorenal syndrome associated with sepsis. *J Hepatol* 2014; **60**: 955-961 [PMID: 24447876 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2013.12.032]
 - 26 **Salerno F**, Monti V. Hepatorenal syndrome type 1 and bacterial infection: a catastrophic association in patients with cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2014; **59**: 1239-1241 [PMID: 24425447 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27015]
 - 27 **Guevara M**, Terra C, Nazar A, Solà E, Fernández J, Pavesi M, Arroyo V, Ginès P. Albumin for bacterial infections other than spontaneous bacterial peritonitis in cirrhosis. A randomized, controlled study. *J Hepatol* 2012; **57**: 759-765 [PMID: 22732511 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2012.06.013]
 - 28 **Ginès P**, Titó L, Arroyo V, Planas R, Panés J, Viver J, Torres M, Humbert P, Rimola A, Llach J. Randomized comparative study of therapeutic paracentesis with and without intravenous albumin in cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 1988; **94**: 1493-1502 [PMID: 3360270]
 - 29 **Luca A**, García-Pagán JC, Bosch J, Feu F, Jiménez W, Ginès A, Fernández M, Escorsell A, Arroyo V, Rodés J. Beneficial effects of intravenous albumin infusion on the hemodynamic and humoral changes after total paracentesis. *Hepatology* 1995; **22**: 753-758 [PMID: 7657279]

P-Reviewer: Chiang TA, Gatselis NA, Jin B, Shi Z
S-Editor: Ji FF **L-Editor:** A **E-Editor:** Liu SQ



Primary biliary cirrhosis: From bench to bedside

Elias Kouroumalis, George Notas

Elias Kouroumalis, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, University of Crete Medical School, 71003 Heraklion, Crete, Greece

George Notas, Department of Experimental Endocrinology, University of Crete Medical School, 71003 Heraklion, Crete, Greece

George Notas, Institute of Applied Computational Mathematics, Foundation of Research and Technology Hellas (IACM-FORTH), 70013 Heraklion, Crete, Greece

Author contributions: Kouroumalis E and Notas G contributed to this paper.

Conflict-of-interest statement: None.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Elias Kouroumalis, MD, PhD, Professor, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, University of Crete Medical School, PO BOX 2208, 71003 Heraklion, Crete, Greece. kouroum@med.uoc.gr
Telephone: +30-2810-392355
Fax: +30-2810-542085

Received: July 9, 2014

Peer-review started: July 9, 2014

First decision: October 28, 2014

Revised: April 21, 2015

Accepted: May 16, 2015

Article in press: May 18, 2015

Published online: August 6, 2015

Abstract

Primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC) is a chronic non-

suppurative destructive intrahepatic cholangitis leading to cirrhosis after a protracted non cirrhotic stage. The etiology and pathogenesis are largely unknown and autoimmune mechanisms have been implicated to explain the pathological lesions. Many epitopes and autoantigens have been reported as crucial in the pathophysiology of the disease and T and B cells abnormalities have been described, the exact pathways leading to the destruction of small intrahepatic ductules are mostly speculative. In this review we examined the various epidemiological and geoepidemiological data as well as the complex pathogenetic aspects of this disease, focusing on recent *in vivo* and *in vitro* studies in this field. Initiation and progression of PBC is believed to be a multifactorial process with strong influences from the patient's genetic background and by various environmental factors. The role of innate and adaptive immunity, including cytokines, chemokines, macrophages and the involvement of apoptosis and reactive oxygen species are outlined in detailed. The current pathogenetic aspects are presented and a novel pathogenetic theory unifying the accumulated clinical information with *in vitro* and *in vivo* data is formulated. A review of clinical manifestations and immunological and pathological diagnosis was presented. Treatment modalities, including the multiple mechanisms of action of ursodeoxycholate were finally discussed.

Key words: Primary biliary cirrhosis; Innate immunity; Adaptive immunity; Ursodeoxycholate; Chemokines; Macrophages; Cytokines

© **The Author(s) 2015.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC) is a chronic non-suppurative destructive intrahepatic cholangitis leading to cirrhosis of largely unknown pathophysiology. We examined the epidemiological and geoepidemiological data as well as the pathogenetic aspects of PBC. A novel pathogenetic theory unifying the accumulated clinical information with *in vitro* and *in vivo* data is formulated. A review of clinical manifestations and immunological

and pathological diagnosis was presented. Treatment modalities, including the multiple mechanisms of action of ursodeoxycholate are discussed.

Kouroumalis E, Notas G. Primary biliary cirrhosis: From bench to bedside. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(3): 32-58 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i3.32.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i3.32>

INTRODUCTION

Primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC), also known as chronic non-suppurative destructive intrahepatic cholangitis is characterized by a gradual destruction of small intrahepatic bile ducts. Addison *et al*^[1] in 1851 published the first report of a patient with obstructive jaundice without evidence of large bile duct abnormalities. Dauphinee *et al*^[2] in 1949 first used the term PBC but it was Ahrens *et al*^[3] in 1950 that reported on a group of older women with progressive jaundice, pruritus, and hepatosplenomegaly. The basic histological description as chronic intrahepatic non-suppurative destructive cholangitis was reported by Rubin *et al*^[4] in 1965.

Autoimmune mechanisms have been implicated to explain the disease evolution of a condition which is in fact a member of the wider vanishing bile duct syndrome. Many epitopes and autoantigens have been reported as crucial in the pathophysiology of the disease and T and B cells abnormalities have been described, the exact pathways leading to the destruction of small intrahepatic ductules are mostly speculative. However the underlying pathways leading to liver damage are still under investigation. In this review, we examine epidemiological, pathogenetic and clinical characteristics of PBC. Finally we compile the clinical information and the novel data gathered from *in vivo* and *in vitro* studies that are presented in this review in order to propose a unifying hypothesis for the pathogenesis of this complex disease.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

There is a large variation of the incidence and prevalence of PBC worldwide (Table 1). Moreover there is a tendency to increase over the years. Thus, studies from the region of Victoria in Australia demonstrated that in an earlier population-based survey a prevalence of 19.1 per million was reported^[5] while ten years later in the same region a 10-fold higher incidence was reported^[6]. In a review of 37 older and more recent published studies the incidence of PBC ranged from 0.7 to 49 per million per year and the prevalence was estimated to range from 6.7 to 402 per million, with a tendency for higher values in the most recent studies^[7].

A prospective study performed in 2006-2007 in France shows that the incidence was 9 per million per

year, with an estimate of 36 per million in women over 45 years with a prevalence of 207 per million^[8], according to a recent systematic review the prevalence of PBC ranges from 1.9 to 40.2 per 100000 inhabitants^[9].

Although it is usually stated that the disease is more prevalent in Northern Europe (*e.g.*, England and Scotland)^[10,11] or the Northern United States (*e.g.*, Minnesota)^[12], we recently reported a prevalence of 365 cases/million population in the island of Crete indicating that in South Europe the disease is highly prevalent with a figure among the higher published in the world^[13].

Spatial and geographic differences in prevalence of PBC has been reported in several studies^[14-16]. In the North East of England there was a clear spatial distribution of patients with clusters of cases identified in several urban areas (up to 13 cases/km²). No demographic or geographical factors could explain this variation, although the presence of unidentified environmental factor(s) was suggested^[17]. Geographic clustering of PBC has also been reported in coastal First Nations of British Columbia, where disease has been recorded to be as high as 1 in 4 within generations of well-characterized multiplex families^[18]. In our own study we identified loci of very high prevalence within the homogeneous population of the island of Crete. Prediction map identified areas of high risk (11 patients per 50 km²) in the Eastern part, while low risk areas (122 patients per 50 km²) were located in the Western part of the island^[13].

It should be noted that all epidemiological estimations may represent only the tip of the iceberg since it has been reported and confirmed that the incidence of antimitochondrial antibody (AMA) positivity without liver disease is two times higher than the incidence of AMA positivity with liver disease^[19,20]. The significance of these findings is unclear. Possibly they do represent a hidden reservoir of future overt PBC or alternatively this is only an immunological abnormality without clinical consequences. If one adds to these observations the very long and often asymptomatic course of the disease, it is clear that epidemiological studies in PBC have many problems as presented in a recent review^[21].

PATHOGENESIS

As with many other diseases of unclear etiology it is stated that PBC is an autoimmune disease associated with genetic and environmental factors. Both, autoimmunity^[22] and environmental factors^[23,24] have been emphasized while several genetic associations in particular with recent genome-wide analyses^[25-27] have been published. However this is a very general description that may fit to other diseases as distant to PBC as inflammatory bowel disease, rheumatoid arthritis or Hashimoto's thyroiditis. We will try therefore to delineate these complex association and propose an unifying model to accommodate most aspects of the mechanism leading to the disease.

Table 1 Indicative studies and metanalysis reporting incidence and prevalence of primary biliary cirrhosis

Ref.	Year of publication	Country/region	Period	Incidence (/10 ⁶)	Prevalence (/10 ⁶)
Watson <i>et al</i> ^[5]	1995	Australia/Victoria	1974-1991		19.1
Metcalf <i>et al</i> ^[11]	1997	United Kingdom/Newcastle	1987-1994	14.0-32.0	180.0 (1987) 240.0 (1994)
James <i>et al</i> ^[10]	1999	United Kingdom	1987-1994		201.9 (1987) 334.6 (1994)
Kim <i>et al</i> ^[12]	2000	United States/Minnesota	1975-1995	27.0	402.0
¹ Prince <i>et al</i> ^[7]	2003	Multiple		0.7-49.0	6.7-402.0
Sood <i>et al</i> ^[6]	2004	Australia/Victoria	1990-2002		51.0
Corpechot <i>et al</i> ^[8]	2008	France	2006-2007	9.0	207.0
¹ Boonstra <i>et al</i> ^[9]	2012	Multiple		3.3-58.0	19.1-402.0
Koulentaki <i>et al</i> ^[13]	2014	Greece/Crete	1990-2010	20.9	365.0

¹Metanalysis.

PBC AS A GENETIC DISEASE

Epidemiological reports have shown that PBC is a heritable condition with a well proven familial prevalence. Family history of the disease has been reported to vary between 1.33% and 9.00%^[9]. In our disease population familial PBC was found to be a high 9.9%. This may reflect the fact that in many parts of the island of Crete societies are relatively close and marriages between distant relatives are common^[28]. The relative sibling risk in PBC has been estimated to be 10.5, a figure very close to other classical autoimmune disorders^[29]. The existence of a first degree relative with the disease is an independent risk factor disease appearance, with an odds ratio of 6.8-10.7^[30,31]. Moreover in monozygotic twins a concordance rate of 0.63 for PBC has been reported, the highest reported among autoimmune diseases^[32]. All these data do imply that a strong genetic background participate to the pathophysiology of PBC.

Most gene associations are derived from human leukocyte antigen (HLA) associations. HLA data in European populations has been produced from GWAS and iCHIP studies^[33] as for example in a large Italian cohort^[34]. Data on HLA alleles were also provided from iCHIP studies by Liu *et al*^[35] and Juran *et al*^[36]. When these studies are combined it seems that in European populations, PBC has been associated with either risk haplotypes (DRB1*08:01-DQA1*04:01-DQB1*04:02 and DRB1*04:04-DQB1*03:02) or protective haplotypes (DRB1*11:01-DQA1*05:01-DQB1*03:01 and DRB1*15:01-DQA1*01:02-DQB1*0602). In the Italian study, the HLA associations were driven by their DRB1 alleles, either the risk alleles DRB1*08 and DRB1*14, or the protective allele DRB1*11.

Apart from HLA associations, genes related to the regulation of components of the immune system appear to be involved in PBC. Candidate genes like SPIB are implicated in the development of plasmacytoid dendritic cells and natural killer (NK) cells, or to the development of dendritic cells, like IRF5 and IRF8^[37-39]. Genes that regulate innate immune responses have also been associated with PBC. Thus negative regulators of antigen presenting cells, like RPS6KA4 and DENND1B participating in the signal pathways by pattern recognition receptors and TNFRSF1A respectively are

among candidate genes^[40-43]. IRF5 in particular is an important mediator since it is also involved in macrophage polarization and Th1-Th17 differentiation and therefore might be a significant link between innate and adaptive immune response^[44]. Genes that regulate adaptive immune response have also been associated with PBC like those that drive activated CD4+ve Th0 cells to differentiate into Th1 cells by IL-12 interacting with IL-12R.

Four GWAS and two iCHIP studies of PBC have been recently published^[25,27,35,36,45-47].

GWAS studies of PBC from Japan confirmed the genetic heterogeneity of PBC^[27]. Risk loci significant in Europeans were not associated with PBC in Japan, including 1p31 (the IL-12RB2 locus, P 1/4 0.054), 3q25 (the IL-12A locus, P 1/4 0.342) and 19q13 (the SPIB locus, P 1/4 0.180). By contrast, other loci like 9p32 (TNFSF15) and 11q23 (POU2AF1) important for the Japanese, were not identified in European populations^[25,45,46]. Two excellent reviews on PBC genetics have been recently published^[48,49].

PBC AND ENVIRONMENTAL FACTORS

Despite extensive studies of specific genes only weak associations were established in PBC. Environmental factors may therefore be equally important. The presence of geographical disease clusters provides evidence for the participation of largely unknown environmental factors in the pathogenesis of PBC. These factors have been recently reviewed^[50,51]. A recent geoepidemiological study from Crete with a rather homogeneous and stable population has shown a large heterogeneity in the time-spatial distribution which together with the suggested route of disease spread strongly indicates the importance of environmental factors^[13].

Infections, through the mechanism of molecular mimicry, are strong candidate environmental factors in the pathogenesis of PBC. A possible candidate epitope is the mycobacterial hsp65 sharing a common motif with the PDC-E2 antigen^[52]. The same motif has been identified in *Lactobacillus delbrueckii* as the target of IgG3 antibodies in PBC sera^[53]. This motif, namely the PDC-E2 221-226 is a candidate common epitope in the

model of molecular mimicry. However another pathogen seems to be the most likely candidate in molecular mimicry. Reports have been focused on the intestinal commensal proteobacterium *Novosphingobium aromaticivorans* (*N. aromaticivorans*), as an etiological factor in many cases of human PBC^[54,55]. *N. aromaticivorans* was found in fecal samples from 25% of patients with PBC as well as in controls. PDC-E2 from this bacteria has high homology to human PDC-E2, and AMAs in serum samples from patients with PBC have a 1000-fold stronger reaction against *N. aromaticivorans* PDC-E2 than against *Escherichia coli* PDC-E2^[56,57]. Based on these clinical studies the group of Gershwin has reported on a mouse model of a liver disease closely resembling human PBC, initially triggered by this bacterium^[58]. The pathology of liver lesions and the presence of anti-PDC-E2 antibodies were related to the mouse genetic background, the liver persistence of *Novosphingobium* and the liver infiltration by NKT-cells activated by *Novosphingobium* glycosphingolipids. The interaction of glycosphingolipids of the *Novosphingobium* with NKT-cells may be the link between an environmental pathogen and the immune reactions that have been described in PBC. A previously unidentified, infection with *Novosphingobium* might also explain the reported redistribution of NKT-cells from the blood to the livers of PBC patients and the biliary epithelial expression of CD1d^[59,60].

Other infective factors associated with PBC include lipopolysaccharide (LPS), lipoteichoic acid, *Helicobacter*, β -retrovirus, *P. acnes*, *E. coli* and *Chlamydia*. The evidence however for their implication is not as strong as for the previous infectious agents^[61].

Non microbial environmental factors seem to be related to disease progression or disease severity. Thus familiar occurrence of disease, smoking, urinary tract infections or other autoimmune conditions seem to be detrimental while oral contraceptives might have a protective role^[31].

There might be a link between genetics and the influence of environmental factors. The mitochondrial autoantigen PDC-E2 contains lipoic acid; PDC-E2 captures electrons to alternate oxidation and reduction of a disulfide bond within lipoic acid. In genetically susceptible individuals, drugs or chemicals that modify this disulfide bond might lead to loss of tolerance to PDC-E2. This protein is well conserved throughout evolution, so loss of tolerance could also result from an immune response against similar epitopes in bacteria (molecular mimicry)^[58]. In addition to bacteria, chemical xenobiotic agents might induce PBC^[14]. Some halogenated organic compounds can attach to specific epitopes of PDC-E2 and induce production of antibodies that have higher affinities for modified mitochondrial epitopes than for normal PDC-E2. One such agent is 2-octynoic acid, which is a component of many cosmetics like nail polish; *in vivo* and *in vitro* data indicate its role in autoimmune biliary disease^[62,63].

Non-obese diabetic mice injected with bovine serum

albumin-conjugated 2-octynoic acid had high titers of AMAs and developed histologic features of PBC, including liver granulomas and infiltration of portal tracts with CD8+ve T lymphocytes^[64]. However in our population of PBC patients no association of the disease with the use of nail polish was found. This might be due to either a different specific genetic background of our patients or to the lack of significant quantities of octynoic acid in the nail polish brands used by our patients^[28].

PBC AND HUMOURAL IMMUNITY

A characteristic of PBC is considered to be the loss of tolerance to a mitochondrial antigen, the PDC-E2, a member of the 2-oxoacid dehydrogenase complexes (2-OADC). The antigenic epitopes are located within the inner lipoyl-binding domain overlapping amino acids 212-226^[65-67]. Earlier reports based on the inhibition of 2-OADC enzymatic activity by AMA and the presence in the portal tracts of B cells producing anti-PDC antibodies, suggested a pathogenetic role for AMAs^[68]. The best evidence for their pathogenetic role is the presence of secretory IgA anti-PDC in patients saliva, bile and urine of patients which inhibit the enzyme activity^[69-71]. It is however possible that AMAs might indirectly implicated in pathogenesis through apoptotic biliary bodies that activate innate responses^[72]. Moreover, AMAs is not a specific finding in PBC, since they are occasionally present in other autoimmune and non-autoimmune liver diseases. Therefore loss of tolerance to PDC-E2 alone does not seem to be sufficient to cause autoimmune cholangitis^[73,74]. Against the pathogenetic role of AMAs is also the presence of the clinical condition of the so called autoimmune cholangitis or better AMA-negative PBC, a disease clinically and histologically identical to PBC but without detectable AMA. The present evidence does not favour the role of AMA in the pathogenesis of PBC^[75].

There have been other antibodies that, although they are not pathogenetically associated, they influence the progress or the severity of the disease like the autoantibodies against the nuclear pore proteins gp210 and p62^[76]. The combination of anti-nuclear envelope antibody (ANEA) and anti-gp210 identified a subgroup of patients with increased fibrosis and inflammation and was associated with poor prognosis in our group of PBC patients^[77]. There is recent evidence to support deregulated B-cell immune responses in patients with PBC^[78].

INNATE AND ADAPTIVE IMMUNITY IN PBC (TLR RESPONSE AND T CELL RESPONSES)

Adaptive CD4+ve and CD8+ve T-cells and innate responses have been implicated in PBC pathogenesis, following environmental insults in genetically susceptible

individuals^[72,79,80]. The role of bacterial and viral factors has already been discussed. Biliary epithelial cells express molecules of the toll-like receptor (TLR) family that recognize pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) thus triggering the innate immune responses. It is also suggested that cholangiocyte damage might result from a combined dysregulation of TLRs and of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor- γ (a negative regulator of intracellular signaling) resulting in Th1-predominant cytokine effects. Moreover, CD4-positive, IL-17 secreting Th17 cells are important for the development of inflammation as they infiltrate biliary ductules and are directly related to the biliary innate responses to PAMPs^[81-85].

In PBC, besides IL-17⁺ cells infiltrating damaged bile ducts, hepatic NK-cells active against biliary epithelial cells are found, but their role in the loss of immune tolerance reported in PBC has not been elucidated^[86,87]. Earlier reports have demonstrated the presence of CD4 and CD8 T-cells reactive against the human PDC in PBC livers during the earliest disease states^[88-92].

CD4⁺ CD28-ve cells are markedly increased as intraepithelial lymphocytes within damaged bile ducts and may therefore participate in the bile duct damage^[93]. The residues 159-167 of PDC-E2 seem to be important in the pathogenesis since HLA DR4*0101-restricted T cell epitope, spanning residues 159-167 have been identified^[94-98], while CD8 T cells from PBC livers are cytotoxic against PDC-E2 159-167 pulsed autologous cells^[99].

An interesting model implicating T cells in the pathogenesis of PBC is a mouse manipulated for T cell-restricted expression of a dominant-negative (dn) form of transforming growth factor- β receptor II (TGF β R II). A PBC-like disease, not identical to the human condition develops which further connects the T cell role with the involvement of two cytokines namely TGF β and IL-12^[100].

IL-12 consists of the two p35 and p40 subunits, while TGF β signaling is essential in the development of the pro-inflammatory Th17 cells^[101]. Further data from this model indicate that it is the p40 subunit which is fundamental for development of bile duct damage^[102]. The importance of IL-12 signaling and the PBC-like disease of the dnTGF β RII mice is further supported by genetics relating the IL-12 pathway with human PBC as mentioned in the genetics section^[45].

In PBC, as already mentioned, T cells, particularly CD8 cytotoxic cells infiltrating the liver are mandatory for bile duct damage^[97]. However in the CD25-negative mouse model, lack of CD8 cells attenuates but does not abolish bile ductular destruction, indicating that an additional mechanism of destruction is also present in PBC^[103]. Equally important is the role of T regulatory cells. Animal experiments indicate that deficiency of regulatory T cells (Tregs) results in the development of AMA +ve, autoimmune bile ductular lesions anti^[104]. Moreover a reduction of Tregs has been found in the portal tracts of PBC patients^[105].

TLRS AND MACROPHAGES IN PBC

Kupffer cells are the resident liver macrophages and constitute approximately 80% of body macrophages. Kupffer cells respond to all TLR ligands by increasing the production of tumor necrosis factor (TNF)- α , IL-1, IL-6, IL-12, IL-18, and IL-10. Liver DCs express all members of the TLR family, although TLR5 expression is low. Hepatic pDCs activated by TLR7 and TLR9 ligands, produce TNF- α , IL-6, IL-12, and IFN- α ^[106,107]. Based on the reported connection between the biliary tract and the intestinal lumen, it is possible that intestinal-derived bacterial products could contribute to PBC progression^[61,84,108]. In response to ligands for TLR2, TLR3, TLR4, TLR5, and TLR9, PBMCs from PBC patients produce increased amounts of pro-inflammatory cytokines compared to PBMCs from healthy subjects^[109]. In PBC patients, high expression of TLR9 leads to increased intracellular immunoglobulin M and AMAs production by B cells^[110,111]. Furthermore, a number of TLR9 SNPs may cause B cells to produce higher amount of intracellular immunoglobulin M^[112]. High expression of TLR3 and type I interferon in macrophages surrounding portal tract and hepatocytes has been reported in the livers of PBC patients^[113]. Liver macrophages produce IFN- α through TLR3 signaling leading to synergistically enhanced LPS-induced NK-cell cytotoxicity to autologous BECs. Furthermore, in PBC patients liver NK-cell cytotoxicity is higher compared to controls, when these cells are incubated with poly I:C and LPS-primed liver macrophages^[86].

Mice immunized with 2-octynoic acid have been found to develop a type of autoimmune cholangitis with AMAs, similar to human PBC, but did not develop liver fibrosis. CD8 T cell infiltration, inflammatory cytokine expression and liver fibrosis were induced by Poly I:C treatment in this mouse model of PBC, thus further supporting the impact of TLR3 signaling in PBC^[114].

CYTOKINES IN PBC

Earlier reports have demonstrated the predominance of a Th1 cytokine profile in PBC with a parallel relative decline of Th2 prevalence^[115-117]. Overall, the data suggest that the IL-12 cytokine pathway and downstream JAK-STAT signaling is significant in PBC pathogenesis. The interaction of IL-12 and IL-12 receptor leads to the production of one more candidate gene in PBC, the STAT4 transcription factor that activates of Th1 cytokines production. More experimental data concerning the specific role of IL-12 signaling are needed in PBC and animal models. Interestingly, early onset of biliary cirrhosis has been reported in an IL-12-deficient child but the immediate relevance of this finding to PBC is unclear^[118].

Another important cytokine possibly involved in PBC pathogenesis is TGF- β as mentioned before. We have demonstrated that the serum profile of the 3 TGF- β isoforms is different in the liver disease groups studied. An increase in TGF- β 3 is a characteristic of

PBC irrespective of stage and therefore it may be pathogenetically important. Results from the hepatic vein samples indicate that the liver seems to be the source of the TGF- β abnormalities^[119]. Plasma levels of IL-6 are decreased in PBC^[120] but monocytes from PBC patients secrete more IL-1 and IL-6 after *in vitro* challenge with TLR ligands^[109] and increased liver expression of IL-6 was described in PBC^[117].

CHEMOKINES IN PBC

As mentioned before, many mechanisms of biliary epithelium death have been proposed, including various cytotoxic T cells subpopulations and NKT-cells^[82,83,121-124]. Additional destructive mechanisms involve the activation of TNF, CD 40, and Fas receptors^[125]. All these mechanisms however depend on the recruitment of these cells in the area of destruction. Chemokines are a discrete class of cytokines that regulate leukocyte recruitment, positioning and retention in tissues. Epithelial cells produce the chemokine Fractalkine (CX3CL1) and its receptor CX3CR is expressed in CD8+ve and CD4+ve T cells^[126]. An overexpression of fractalkine has been reported in injured bile ducts of PBC, while CD4+ve and CD8+ve lymphocytes expressing CX3CR1 predominate in portal tracts and within the biliary epithelium. Other chemokine receptors like CXCR3 and CCR5 are mostly expressed on Th1 cells^[124,127]. In early PBC Th1 cells positive for the CXCR3 densely surround the damaged bile ductules. As a consequence the ratio of CXCR3-/CCR4-positive lymphocytes (Th1/Th2) is significantly higher in early compared to late stage PBC^[128]. In more recent reports the significance of two other chemokines, namely the IFN- γ -inducible protein 10 (IP-10, CXCL10) and monokine induced by IFN- γ (MIG, CXCL9) has been stressed. These are produced by macrophages, *i.e.*, the Kupffer cells in the liver and are also implicated in the recruitment of Th1 cells *via* the same receptor CXCR3. Alternatively the sinusoidal endothelial cells may be another site of their production^[129,130]. MIG and IP-10 are also secreted by biliary epithelial cells and activated stellate cells^[131,132]. Increased plasma IP-10 and MIG levels have been reported in PBC patients accompanied by an increase in their mRNA in the liver tissue. Most importantly increased plasma levels were also found in their first degree relatives^[133]. The third CXC chemokine I-TAC was not detected.

We recently reported a significant increase of plasma MIG and IP-10 compared to normal controls. The CXCR3A variant mRNA was found in PBLs from all PBC patients as well as in normal controls. However the CXCR3B variant mRNA was expressed in 4/20 (19%) normal controls and all 20 PBC patients. These data suggest a possible pathogenetic implication of MIG and IP-10 chemokines and their receptor in the pathogenesis of PBC^[134]. Recent papers demonstrated that these chemokines and their receptors are also involved in the hepatic recruitment of Tregs and the pro-inflammatory Th17 and Tc17+ lymphocytes^[135,136].

There is also evidence that IP-10 is a pro-fibrotic factor participating in the interactions between hepatic stellate cells and NK cells which play a central role in the regulation of hepatic stellate cells activity and fibrosis. IP-10 blockade might be a future target for treatment of liver fibrosis^[137].

THE ROLE OF APOPTOSIS IN PBC

Experimental and clinical evidence suggests that apoptosis is the most important mechanism of biliary epithelial cell damage. Apoptotic biliary epithelial cells identified by the TUNEL reaction are frequently described in PBC liver tissue^[138]. Apoptosis markers have been demonstrated within the portal tracts in liver specimens from PBC patients^[139,140] including a reduced expression of the anti-apoptotic protein bcl-2^[141]. Cells responsible for apoptosis induction are the cytotoxic CD8+ve T-cells. Biliary epithelia, unlike other cell types, have a rather unique characteristic considering the fate of the pyruvate dehydrogenase complex during apoptosis. Glutathione fails to bind to the lysine-lipoyl residue of the dehydrogenase complex and thereby the autoreactive epitope is not cleaved^[142].

PDC-E2 is a ubiquitous protein present in mitochondria of nucleated cells; biliary epithelial cells translocate intact PDC-E2 to apoptotic bodies and create an apoptosome, which is immunoreactive. PDC-E2 remains intact and immunogenic during biliary epithelial cell apoptosis; This allows biliary PDC-E2 to be exposed to dendritic cells and its epitopes to be presented to T cells in draining lymph nodes, leading to production of AMAs^[72,80,143]. However in established transgenic mice that constitutively express PDC-E2, aberrant expression of PDC-E2 in the cytoplasm of BECs was not followed by biochemical, serological or histological features of PBC. The results indicated that PDC-E2 expression BECs is not sufficient for the initiation of autoimmunity. Additional factors may be required to establish a model of PBC^[144].

ROLE OF REACTIVE OXYGEN SPECIES IN PBC

There are few data on the significance of reactive oxygen species (ROS) in bile ductular damage in PBC. Biliary epithelial cells express low levels of glutathione-S-transferase with a resultant decrease of intracellular glutathione. On the other hand, lipid peroxidation seem to be increased as reflected by increased perinuclear expression of 4-hydroxynonenal^[145].

Other antioxidants including vitamin E, retinol, alpha-tocopherol, total carotenoids, lutein, zeaxanthin, lycopene, alpha and beta-carotene are reduced in PBC^[146-148]. Total serum antioxidant capacity (measured with chemiluminescence) is reduced in PBC patients^[149]. In contrast, we have reported increased levels of corrected total antioxidant capacity in PBC^[150] a fact that

may reflect a compensatory but probably not sufficient increase to counteract an increased ROS production.

In vitro studies further support the role of ROS as an effector mechanism in bile duct damage in PBC. Ursodeoxycholic acid (UDCA), the current drug of choice in PBC treatment, is a potent ROS scavenger, inhibiting mitochondrial oxidative stress and lipid peroxidation in a dose-dependent manner^[151-153]. Indirect evidence for the role of ROS comes from the rat bile duct-ligated model. Lipid peroxidation is a late event in the bile ligated model and a correlation seems to exist between lipid peroxidation and the activation of inflammatory cells^[154,155]. In this model overproduction of Free radicals is due to activation of NF- κ B resulting in increased production of the proinflammatory cytokines TNF- α , IL-6 and IL-1b^[156]. Moreover, *in vitro* experiments have shown that retention of several bile acids like taurochenodeoxycholic acid and taurocholic acid lead to hepatocyte damage producing hydroperoxide by mitochondria^[157,158]. The same bile acids induce hepatocyte apoptosis in a time and concentration-dependent manner due to ROS generation by mitochondria^[159]. These findings are relevant to human PBC because increased bile acid retention is a feature of at least late PBC.

A further connection of increased ROS and apoptosis of biliary epithelia has been provided by Celli *et al.*^[160] They demonstrated, that the reduction in the intracellular level of the antioxidant molecule glutathione leads to increased degradation of the anti-apoptotic bcl-2 protein and therefore to an increase in biliary epithelial apoptosis.

CURRENT VIEWS ON THE PATHOGENESIS OF PBC

Every effort to elucidate the complex pathogenetic mechanisms leading to the development of PBC should account for two facts that are critical in the disease pathophysiology. First, the main PDC auto-antigen is an inner mitochondrial membrane component and therefore any attempt of the immune cells to contact its epitopes should overcome three different membranes. This problem has been partly answered by the unique characteristic of biliary epithelial cell apoptosis and the retention of immunologically active antigens within the apoptotic blebs as mentioned before. Moreover apoptotic blebs does not seem to be an early phenomenon. The initiation event in a genetically predisposed individual still is not known. Second, PBC initially affects only the small intrahepatic bile ductular cells, while the antigen is widely distributed in many tissues including the extrahepatic bile ducts.

Pathogenetical models proposed so far consider as the crucial event the break down of T cell self tolerance to PDC epitopes. The generation of antibodies against PDC by themselves is not enough to damage the biliary ductules, as already mentioned^[144]. The molecular mimicry model of self-tolerance breakdown was pro-

posed as a more logical approach compared with the rather obscure concept of autoimmunity^[161].

According to this theory, bacterial or retroviral infections, probably trigger an immune attack leading to apoptosis of epithelial cells. This T-cell attack is mediated by TLR interaction with a micro-organism epitope cross-reacting with a self-PDC epitope. The retroviral etiology of PBC has been reviewed in detail^[75].

Endotoxins and PAMPs are potent activators of the immune response. These bacterial products are normally cleared by the liver and eliminated in bile^[162]. Lipid A is dephosphorylated and inactivated through the action of alkaline phosphatase in bile^[163]. Lipid A, the immunogenic constituent of gram-negative bacterial LPS, and other PAMPs accumulate in hepatocytes and biliary epithelium, thus contributing to small bile duct inflammation^[82,84,164,165]. PBC patients exhibit a strong immune response to LPS^[166,167]. The loss of tolerance to bacterial products could be at least partly secondary to cholestasis and, more specifically, to impaired alkaline cholestasis or a defect in transporters involved in the generation of ductal cholestasis^[168].

Apart from bacterial antigens viruses have been investigated as triggering agents in PBC. Thus viral particles have been described within biliary epithelial cells of PBC patients, and antibodies against retroviruses have been found in their sera^[169,170]. In a cohort of patients genetic material of a human beta retrovirus (95% homologous to the mouse mammary tumour virus) has been identified in the lymph nodes of 75% of patients^[171].

Epidemiological evidence may be interpreted as supportive of viral implication in the pathogenesis of PBC. Description of PBC clusters among individuals who emigrated from low PBC to high PBC prevalence areas and PBC cases among unrelated individuals living in the same house are some of these. Furthermore, in patients treated with tacrolimus PBC recurrence after liver transplantation occurs earlier and is more severe, while the contrary is observed with cyclosporine administration^[172-174]. However the retroviral etiology of PBC remains debatable^[175].

In accordance with the molecular mimicry model, Jones described an alternative pathogenetic model where virals or bacterial epitopes with homology to PDC are the initial trigger^[176]. Self-PDC reactive T cells escape negative selection in the thymus, because of the low affinity of their T cell receptor towards the the complex of self-peptide and major histocompatibility complex (MHC). An interesting feature of this model is that the state of activation of APC may determine the efficacy of antigen presentation and promote tolerance breakdown^[109].

As mentioned before, several other cells of the innate immune system are implicated in the pathophysiology of PBC. Granulomas common in PBC, increased levels of polyclonal IgM, hyper-responsiveness to CpG oligodeoxynucleotides and increased numbers of NK cells are related to innate responses. Bacterial and viral

epitopes induce innate immune responses through binding to TLRs. TLRs were described in cultured human biliary epithelial cells^[109-111,177]. These findings make the inclusion of innate immunity mandatory in any pathogenetic model of PBC.

Another finding connects senescence and shortened telomere length as a unique feature of damaged BEC in PBC. Significantly decreased telomere length in the affected biliary epithelial cells compared to histologically normal BEC in both PBC patients and controls has been reported. Immunohistochemistry confirmed cellular senescence. These changes are not inconsistent with the retroviral hypothesis, since viruses can directly damage the DNA in susceptible individuals^[178].

PATHOGENESIS OF PBC: A UNIFYING HYPOTHESIS

A significant increase of endothelins, particularly ET2 (and to a lesser extent of ET1) both in peripheral blood and in the hepatic vein of PBC patients from the early stages of the disease has been reported in our earlier study^[179]. We then proposed a new hypothesis for the pathogenesis of PBC. Here we modify our previous hypothesis to incorporate new data that have emerged since our previous publication^[180]. We consider that a primary defect is the overproduction by the liver endothelial cells of ET2 (and to a lesser extent ET1). This defect might be genetically controlled. It is possible that the initiating event in genetically susceptible patients is the effect of either a retrovirus or a pathogen like *N. aromaticivorans* or PAMPs. The presence of scavenger receptor type B capable of internalizing foreign antigens has been described in endothelial cells. A strongly antigenic component of gram positive bacteria namely lipoteichoic acid, has been described in endothelial cells of PBC patients^[181]. ET2 may induce Kupffer cells to produce pro-inflammatory cytokines, such as IL-1 and IL-6. This has been already described for mouse peritoneal macrophages^[182]. On the other hand, PAMPs acting on the TLRs of the Kupffer cells may lead to the production of TNF- α and further augmentation of IL-1 and IL-6. ET2 has a similar peptide homology with CXC chemokines and through ETB receptor on macrophages is a strong chemoattractant of these cells^[183]. Indeed macrophages comprise 30% of the cells infiltrating portal areas and are mostly found around damaged bile ducts^[184]. Electron microscopy verifies the presence of activated macrophages that differentiate into epithelioid cells near bile epithelial cells^[185].

Many cells at the periphery of epithelioid granulomas are MCP2 and MCP3 positive and almost 60% co-express CD68, a finding compatible with their macrophage origin^[186]. A possible link with the progression to cirrhosis in stage 3 and 4 PBC is the observation that Kupffer cells and myofibroblasts are increased and closely associated in periseptal and periportal areas. This might be an indication of an interaction between Kupffer and stellate

cells leading to fibrosis^[187].

Endothelins also cause contraction of stellate cells thus helping in the early appearance of portal hypertension in PBC^[188]. In agreement with this hypothesis are findings from our group indicating that disease specific antibodies against liver sinusoidal cells circulate in PBC^[189]. In addition we reported that polymorphisms related to endothelial cells were associated with PBC. Both eNOS intron4 VNTR and eNOS exon7 G894T SNP were related to increased risk in PBC while endothelin-1 rs2071942 "A" and rs5370 "T" alleles had a tendency for association with disease progression^[190].

Bile ducts are supplied with blood only from hepatic arteries; the epithelial cells receive blood from a network of capillaries originating from the terminal branches of the hepatic artery. It is called the peribiliary vascular plexus (PVP) and drains into the sinusoids. This specific vascular supply, is responsible for the extensive involvement of the interlobular bile ducts in ischemic injury^[191]. Reduced perfusion of this network can cause extensive bile duct damage^[192].

There is evidence that endothelins (ETs) and nitric oxide are the principal regulators of circulation of the PVP^[193]. We therefore propose that patients with PBC an initiating damage of the biliary epithelium is caused by ischaemia due to ET2 induced vasoconstriction observed from the early stages PBC. This finding was disease specific since it was not observed in other chronic liver disease patient with or without cirrhosis^[179]. Ischaemia might then lead to apoptosis of bile ductular cells a mechanism already reported in epithelial destruction of PBC. As mentioned earlier, biliary epithelial cells undergo a unique apoptosis with an antigenically active PDC complex shed from mitochondria into the cytoplasm as early as 6 h after induction of apoptosis possibly through the action of caspase 3^[194]. These immunoreactive epitopes, are then taken up by peribiliary antigen presenting cells expressing MHC II (this uptake might be either genetically regulated or alternatively be induced by proinflammatory cytokines^[195]). This is a mechanism that could explain the proposed similarities between PBC and graft vs host disease (GVHD)^[196-198] which is also attributed to endothelial cell injury^[199]. Interestingly in graft vs host disease observed after small bowel transplantation, increased levels of ET1 have been histochemically demonstrated in endothelial and epithelial cells some days before GVHD, strongly suggesting a pathogenetic significance^[200]. An additional feature of this model is that increased secretion of chemokines IP-10 and MIG possibly by endothelial or Kupffer cells is an early event that leads to accumulation of immune cells and also inactivation of NKT-cells by IP-10 with resultant reduced apoptosis of liver sinusoid endothelial cells^[137].

A possible role for TGF- β abnormalities have also been incorporated in this model. It is TGF- β 1 that modulates FoxP3 expression and the regulatory activity of CD4 cells^[201]. Could it be that TGF- β 3 influences the development of Tregs? Differences in TGF- β isoforms

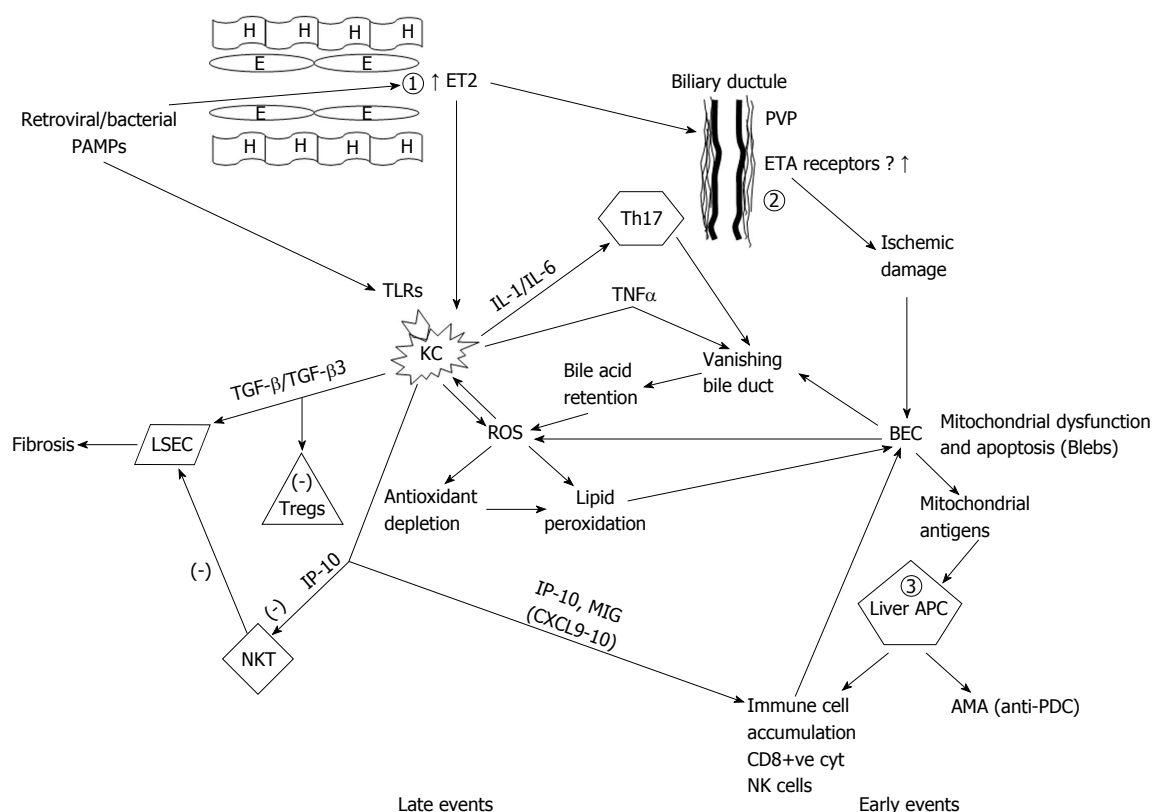


Figure 1 Liver sinusoidal endothelial cells and Kupffer cells are mandatory in the pathogenesis of primary biliary cirrhosis with early and late events in the unifying model. The fundamental early defect in primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC) is the overproduction of endothelin 2 (ET2) by endothelial cells (1) possibly driven by a retrovirus or other microbial pathogens in genetically predisposed individuals. ET2 is a chemoattractant for Kupffer cells and also causes contraction of stellate cells leading to early portal hypertension. ET2 leads to ischemic damage of biliary epithelial cells (BEC) (2) through constriction of the peribiliary vascular plexus with resultant BEC mitochondrial dysfunction and eventually apoptosis leading to the vanishing bile duct syndrome. Apoptotic blebs containing immunologically active mitochondrial antigens possibly generated through caspase cleavage, are presented by hyper-responsive liver dendritic cells (APC) (3) and lead to immune cell accumulation and antimitochondrial antibody production. The second fundamental defect occurring later in the disease process is the production of reactive oxygen species (ROS) driven by both bile acid accumulation as a result of the vanishing bile ducts and generation by Kupffer cells through ingestion of BEC apoptotic bodies. ROS drives the accumulated Kupffer cells to produce more ROS and pro-inflammatory cytokines. Moreover, a relative antioxidant insufficiency allows ROS to cause lipid peroxidation and further BEC apoptosis and mitochondrial dysfunction. CXCL chemokines produced by endothelial and Kupffer cells drive the accumulation of various immune cells while IP-10 inhibits apoptosis of LSCs induced by natural-killer T (NKT)-cells and thus favors the fibrosis induced by transforming growth factor (TGF)- β produced by Kupffer cells. However an increased TGF- β 3 production may also explain the reduced Tregs found in PBC. In this model BECs are destroyed by other mechanisms in addition to the initial ischemia. ROS damage, NK cell killing induced by interferon alpha (IFN α) production by Kupffer cells, cytotoxicity by CD8+ve cells and T-helper 17 (Th17) cell, are also implicated. All these lead to the development of the vanishing bile duct syndrome characteristic of PBC. H: Hepatocyte; E: Endothelial cell; ET2: Endothelin 2; PVP: Peribiliary vascular plexus; PAMP: Pathogen-associated molecular patterns; ETA: Endothelin-A; TLR: Toll-like receptors; IL: Interleukin; TNF α : Tumor necrosis factor alpha; KC: Kupffer cells; TGF- β : Transforming growth factor beta; BEC: Biliary epithelial cells; ROS: Reactive oxygen species; LSEC: Liver sinusoid endothelial cells; Tregs: Regulatory T-cells; IP-10: Interferon gamma-induced protein 10; APC: Antigen presenting cells; MIG: Monokine induced by gamma interferon; NKT: Natural killer T-cells; Anti-PDC: Anti-pyruvate decarboxylase antibodies; AMA: Antimitochondrial antibodies.

may lead to a deranged balance between Tregs and Th17 cells. We have also proposed that these findings may be the causative link leading to Treg and/or Th17 deregulations reported in PBC. The presence of increased local levels of TGF- β 3 (and the concomitant relative lack of TGF- β 1) in conjunction with increased levels of IL-6 may shift the balance towards an increased activity of the proinflammatory Th17 cells adding to the CD8 cytotoxic lymphocytes destructive mechanism, while at the same time leading to functionally defective Treg. The increased presence of TGF- β 3 instead of TGF- β 1 could be a further mechanism that favors Th17 activity since one can postulate that TGF- β 3 could either be associated with functionally defective Tregs or could directly favor the increase of Th17. Further evidence for such a hypothesis is provided by a report that mice with mutation of the gene encoding the FoxP3 transcriptional

factor developed AMA positivity and features resembling PBC with increased levels of IL-17 and IL-23, cytokines associated with Th17 cells^[104].

The proposed model requires that additional aspects have to be verified in future. An important point is that the increased concentration of ET2 we reported was also observed in the systemic circulation. The vasoconstriction and the consequent ischemic injury therefore ought to be present in other organs away from the liver and PVP. This liver selectivity might be due to increased expression or increased affinity of ET receptors for ET2 in the PVP of PBC patients, also genetically determined, but this explanation requires further research.

Our proposed model is diagrammatically presented in Figure 1 and pathophysiological abnormalities are subdivided into early and late events. This hypothetical

model has several advantages. An interaction between innate and adaptive immunity in the pathogenesis of PBC is described. The initiating event involves innate immunity while adaptive immunity causes perpetuation of the disease even after disappearance of the initiating event. It also integrates the role of infective agents whether retroviral or bacterial and the similarity of PBC with GVHD. Interaction of endothelial and Kupffer cells with stellate cells allows for the development of fibrosis and cirrhosis.

In this model AMA production is a secondary phenomenon rather than pathogenetically related to bile ductular damage. Therefore the existence of AMA negative PBC is also explained as well as the presence of many other autoantibodies both disease and non-disease specific. Most importantly, it is recurrence with the idea of a complex genetical predisposition as it offers many levels for genetic control as outlined before. Candidates are endothelial cells (and possibly Kupffer cells), the perivascular plexus and ET receptor expression and affinity and peribiliary antigen presenting cells that might be genetically hyper-responsive. Furthermore some of them may be estrogen dependent, thus explaining the extreme female prevalence of the disease, but this requires further research.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

The typical PBC is characterized by a gradual long term disappearance of small intrahepatic bile ductules and a parallel long term increase in fibrosis, resulting in biliary cirrhosis over a period of 10-20 years. Ten percent to twenty percent of patients, are presented with fluctuating or persistent biochemical and histological evidence of auto-immune hepatitis. These patients have a more rapid progression of liver fibrosis and liver failure. A small minority of patients, develop a very rapid onset of vanishing bile duct syndrome with serious cholestatic jaundice and quick progress to cirrhosis in less than 5 years^[202,203]. At diagnosis, many patients are asymptomatic diagnosed at a routine check by an increase in cholestatic liver enzymes. Approximately 30% of them will remain asymptomatic for many years. The rest will develop symptoms within the next 4 years. The commonest symptom at presentation is fatigue followed by pruritus (21% and 19% respectively)^[204-206]. Severe fatigue impairs quality of life and appears in up to 80% of PBC during the course of the disease but it is not correlated with disease severity^[207,208].

However symptoms of autonomic dysfunction like orthostatic hypotension, excessive daytime somnolence and sleep disturbance have been reported^[209]. The pathophysiological mechanisms of chronic fatigue in PBC are not clear. Treatment is particularly difficult. UDCA is often ineffective while liver transplantation can not ameliorate the symptom. The second commoner symptom is pruritus in 20% to 70% of patients and can be debilitating at times^[210]. The severity of cholestasis and the histological stage of the disease do not correlate

with the intensity of pruritus. In our population pruritus is extremely rare at any stage of the disease for unknown reasons. The pathophysiology is obscure and the molecules that may be responsible for itching in cholestasis have not been identified. Proposed causative agents include bile salt metabolites, progesterone metabolites, histamine and endogenous opioids but the existing evidence for the implication of these agents is weak^[211,212].

Cutaneous manifestations with various degrees of severity are common in PBC patients. We have described fungal infections of the skin even in the earlier histological stages. Plantar mycoses, onychomycoses, and interdigital mycoses were more frequent in PBC patients compared to normal controls. Dermographism and melanosis were also very common. In as many as 38.7% of patients the presenting symptom was a dermatologic lesion^[213].

An increased portal pressure defined as the difference between the wedge and free pressure in the hepatic veins is frequently found in PBC. A reliable predictor of survival is the stability or improvement of this pressure gradient^[214,215]. Cirrhosis is present only at stage 4, but variceal hemorrhage has been described early in the disease due to early development of nodular regenerative hyperplasia^[216].

A relative lack of intestinal bile acids leads to malabsorption of calcium and vitamin D and hence to osteoporosis. This is usually a late finding. Decreased osteoblastic and increased osteoclastic activity have been incriminated in the progress of osteoporosis in PBC patients^[217,218].

Regarding breast cancer, both increased risk^[219,220] and equal risk^[221] compared to a healthy women have been reported in PBC patients. The incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma in advanced PBC is more or less similar to other types of cirrhosis and is more frequent in male patients. The incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) amongst patients with a diagnosis of PBC is estimated at 0.36 per 100 person years. An increasing risk for HCC has been observed in the most advanced stages of PBC^[222-224]. As with other autoimmune diseases PBC has been reported to be associated with many immune-mediated diseases. Thyroid abnormalities are often reported in PBC, sometimes preceding its diagnosis^[225]. Other autoimmune diseases develop in approximately 33% of patients with PBC (for example scleroderma, Hashimoto's disease, Raynaud syndrome, and Sjögren's syndrome), as do cholestasis or pruritus during pregnancy^[30,31,226-228].

Dyslipidemia was found in 69.4% of our patients, in 60% of their first degree relatives and in 40.9% of the study controls. Multivariate analysis confirmed the association with the presence of at least another autoimmune disease while a cancer history was more frequently reported in patients than in controls ($P = 0.033$)^[28]. Coeliac disease is far more common in PBC compared to inflammatory bowel diseases and has been reported in up to 6% of PBC patients^[229].

However this is not true in all populations and criteria for diagnosis should always include duodenal and small bowel biopsies. In our series of patients a very high proportion of false positive results of celiac disease associated antibodies was found. Twenty-one percent of PBC patients and 35% of patients with AMA negative PBC had anti-gliadin antibodies while the corresponding numbers for anti-transglutaminase were 10% and 18% respectively. By contrast anti-reticulin and anti-endomysial antibodies were not detected. Duodenal and small bowel biopsies performed in two thirds of patients with either AMA positive or AMA negative PBC patients with at least one antibody present, failed to confirm histologically even a single case of celiac disease and therefore in our patient population an increased risk for celiac disease could not be demonstrated. In accordance with our findings a high prevalence of false-positive anti-gliadin and anti-tissue transglutaminase antibodies has been reported in chronic liver disease^[230].

DIAGNOSIS

Presence of serum AMAs, elevations of cholestatic enzymes mainly of alkaline phosphatase and increased levels of IgM immunoglobulin in serum, are the criteria used for diagnosis of PBC. The M2 subclass of AMAs is considered highly specific for PBC. The presence of two criteria indicate a probable diagnosis, but a definitive diagnosis requires all three^[231,232].

Histology compatible with PBC, although usually not necessary for diagnosis, is mandatory for identification of the histological stage of the disease.

Various other autoantibodies are frequently found in PBC. Most prominent are the antinuclear antibodies (ANAs) reported in 30% of PBC patients^[233-235]. The so-called "multiple nuclear dots" ANA pattern corresponds to the Sp100 and Sp140 antigens, pro-myelocytic leukemia nuclear body proteins and small ubiquitin-like modifiers^[236,237] is considered specific for PBC. A second immunofluorescence pattern of AMAs, the "nuclear membrane" (rim) pattern, corresponds to ANEAs, such as gp210 and nucleoporin p62^[238,239]. Earlier reports indicated that the anti-gp210 antibodies are specific for PBC and their presence is associated with more severe and active disease^[76,240]. An increased expression of gp210 on the nuclear envelope of bile ductules and portal mononuclear cells and peri-portal hepatocytes was reported by Nakamura *et al.*^[241] who also confirmed their association with active disease. We also reported that 46.9% of patients with PBC have detectable ANEAs and 21% of them had detectable anti-gp210 antibodies in a subgroup of PBC patients with histologically advanced disease with poor prognosis^[77].

The role of serum surrogate markers in PBC diagnosis is doubtful to say the least. We recently reported on simple biochemical markers of liver fibrosis in patients with PBC and other chronic liver diseases. Significantly increased levels of hyaluronan and collagen IV, were found in all chronic liver diseases compared to controls,

but laminin was increased only in HBV and HCV cirrhosis. Serum Hyaluronan was significantly increased in late PBC compared to early stage disease (154.5 ng/mL; 95%CI: 55.3-764.4 and 54.5 ng/mL; 95%CI: 27.3-426.9 respectively, $P < 0.05$). The areas under the curve for late PBC were relatively high for hyaluronan and collagen IV (0.74 and 0.70 respectively) and low for leptin and laminin (0.63 and 0.59 respectively). Moreover hyaluronan had 96% sensitivity and 90% Negative Prognostic Value for late stages of PBC. However no single measurement could differentiate between early and late stage PBC. Serum hyaluronan nonetheless proved to be a useful serum marker for sequential follow up studies in PBC^[242]. Other surrogate markers like APRI, Forns, Fibroindex and FIB-4 do not offer any advantage over the single biochemical measurements we used^[243].

Other non invasive techniques, namely transient elastography, supersonic shear imaging and acoustic radiation force impulse elastography have been tested in patients with PBC, in an effort to establish advanced fibrosis^[244,245]. It is doubtful however that their use can replace the gold standard of liver biopsy particularly in early PBC. The evolution of fibrosis over the years might be a field where these techniques can assist in the follow up of these patients.

PATHOLOGY

PBC is histologically classified into 4 stages according to Ludwig^[246] or Scheuer classification^[247]. In early stages, lesions mostly progress in small interlobular bile ductules. Swelling and degeneration of their epithelium finally leading to necrosis is a prominent feature of early PBC^[248]. There is extensive infiltration of the portal tracts with mononuclear cells, including macrophages and eosinophils mostly around affected bile ductules. In some cases granulomas or aggregates of epithelioid cells are found either in portal tracts or within the lobule. Granulomas can be found in any histological stage. Occasionally mild Kupffer cell hyperplasia or infiltration of sinusoids by lymphocytes can be found. A histological finding associated with disease progression is the presence of periportal hepatitis. In later stages, the injured bile ducts gradually disappear probably through apoptosis and fibrosis and ultimately cirrhosis develop. A useful finding in diagnosis is an excessive accumulation of copper within hepatocytes present from the early stages. As already mentioned a liver biopsy may not be necessary for diagnosis. This is true but staging of the disease still requires a liver biopsy since neither serum surrogate markers nor elastography can replace an adequate liver tissue sample. In particular elastography, although relative simple to perform, can only assess fibrosis and not the other parameters a liver biopsy can provide. Moreover the distinction between stages II and III in the METAVIR scale is extremely difficult^[243,244].

Kakuda *et al.*^[249] analyzed the usefulness of a new histological classification system in predicting

retrospectively the clinical outcome of patients with PBC. The prognostic performance of this system, which was developed a few years ago by this Japanese team^[250-252] was compared to those of the Scheuer's and Ludwig's classical systems. They concluded that, while the place of liver biopsy in PBC remains clearly limited for diagnostic purposes, an accurate histological examination of the liver based on the evaluation of several individual lesions of prognostic relevance may be useful to predict the long-term prognosis and the outcome under UDCA treatment.

NATURAL HISTORY BEFORE UDCA TREATMENT

The introduction of the UDCA in the treatment of PBC has altered the natural course of the disease. Before UDCA, an increasing serum bilirubin after a relatively stable phase, was an ominous sign and death was the final event after a few months^[253]. Bilirubin above 2 mg/L, was associated with a median survival of 4 years and for levels over 6 mg/L, it was only 2 years. At a multicenter European study of 236 patients, (54% on stage 1-2 and 19% on stage 3), were followed up for a period of 4 years. Almost half of the patients developed histologically-proven cirrhosis^[254]. In another large study of 770 patients from the Northeast England liver failure appeared in 15% of them within a 5-year follow up^[255]. Very high rates of histological deterioration was reported in three large 4 years follow up studies of untreated patients with a median 2 years for advanced fibrosis to develop and the probability of remaining in the early stage of only 29% (95%CI: 15%-52%)^[254,256]. In a additional report of 256 patients prospectively studied for 5.6 years the appearance of esophageal varices was 31%^[257].

TREATMENT OF PBC

Medical management in PBC is aimed at two specific goals; first treatment of symptoms (jaundice, fatigue and pruritus) and complications (ascites, metabolic bone disease, hypercholesterolemia, malabsorption, anemia and vitamin deficiencies) resulting from chronic cholestasis. The second aim focuses on suppressing the underlying pathogenetic process that revolves around the destruction of intralobular bile ducts^[258].

Treatment PBC patients is not disease specific and virtually has not changed over the last 25 years. Standard treatment is the long term administration of the secondary bile acid UDCA. The first trial looking at UDCA in PBC was conducted by Poupon *et al.*^[259] in 1987 and demonstrated dramatic improvement in liver biochemistries in PBC patients receiving 12-15 mg/kg per day of UDCA. Several independent cohort analyses showed that survival in UDCA-treated PBC patients (13-15 mg/kg per day) was significantly longer than expected from natural history models of the disease^[260-262]. The effect of UDCA on survival

has been studied with either observational studies or Markov models. Two hundred and sixty-two patients who received 13-15 mg/kg UDCA daily were followed up for 1-20 years (mean 8 years). Transplantation free survival rates were 84% and 66% at 10 and 20 years. By contrast, there was a significantly high probability of death or liver transplantation in patients treated in the late stages of the disease with a relative risk of 2.2^[263].

We also reported similar results in our cohort of patients with the favourable outcome more prominent when UDCA was commenced in histological stage 1-2 of the disease^[264]. Although these comparisons are indirect, they further support a sustained beneficial effect of UDCA on survival in PBC patients. Withdrawal of UDCA even after more than 6 years of treatment was followed by immediate biochemical rebound^[265].

In addition to survival, a large number of randomized controlled trials were performed to assess the effect of UDCA on progression of fibrosis. In these trials the dose of UDCA administered was usually 13-15 mg/kg per day^[266-271]. In an early report, UDCA treated patients were followed for 6 years and compared with untreated patients. There was a significant reduction of cirrhosis development (13% vs 49%)^[272]. Similar results were reported in another study where treated patients had a 5-fold lower rate of advancement of fibrosis or development of cirrhosis. In a 4-year follow up 76% of the treated patients were still in early stages as compared to only 29% of placebo controls^[273]. UDCA was equally effective in reducing the rate of esophageal varices appearance in a 4-year study of 180 patients. Only 16% of patients developed varices compared to 58% on the placebo arm^[274].

On the other hand, a recent Cochrane systematic review of 16 randomized trials of 1447 patients in total has concluded that UDCA has a significant effect on reducing jaundice, ascites and liver biochemistries but had no significant effect on mortality or liver transplantation^[275] in accordance with earlier meta-analyses^[276,277]. However, other meta-analyses that excluded short duration trials (< 2 years) and trials using suboptimal UDCA doses, less than 13 mg/kg per day confirmed in fact the beneficial effect on transplant-free survival of UDCA (13-15 mg/kg per day) in early stage PBC patients^[278].

Not all patients respond to UDCA treatment. Age is associated with response while male sex is a predictor of non-response to UDCA^[279]. Biliary enrichment of UDCA by at least 40% is usually regarded as a surrogate of a therapeutic response; it rarely exceeds 50% with standard doses, but can reach as high as 65%-75% with very high doses (30 mg/kg per day)^[280]. Several studies tried to define the best way to assess if a response to UDCA therapy has occurred in patients with PBC. The Barcelona criteria suggests that a decrease of 40% in serum alkaline phosphatase (ALP) level is a predictor of favourable response to UDCA^[262]. Corpechot *et al.*^[281], looking at the efficiency of several combinations of threshold lab biochemistries in predicting outcomes

of 292 patients with PBC established the Paris I criteria (ALP < 3 times the upper limit of normal (ULN), aspartate aminotransferase (AST) < 2 ULN and bilirubin < 1 mg/dL after 1 year of UDCA). A transplant-free survival rate of 90% at ten years was observed in patients fulfilling these criteria and only 51% for those who did not^[281]. The same group recently established the better validated Paris II criteria which defined the best biochemical response in early stage (histological stage 1-2) as ALP and AST < 1.5 ULN, with a normal bilirubin^[282]. The suboptimal therapeutic response evaluated by different biochemical criteria has been recently reviewed by Corpechot^[283]. Normalization of all biochemical abnormalities is achieved in 20% of patients after 2 years treatment with UDCA^[284].

The biochemical response to UDCA should be monitored every 3 to 6 mo. Improvement in liver tests may be observed as early as the first month, and 90% of the improvement usually occurs within the first year. In patients with non-advanced disease, the maximum response is observed after 3 years and maintained in the long-term despite slight and marginal increases in bilirubin and aspartate aminotransferase^[285].

Today there is a more or less general agreement that a biochemical response to a dose of 13-15 mg/kg per day of UDCA delays progression of disease in the majority of patients. Major changes in the natural history of PBC have been achieved, mainly resulting in decreased rates of liver transplantation and prolonged survival due to earlier diagnosis of the disease and hence timely intervention with UDCA^[214,262,271,281,286,287].

An increasing use of UDCA is accompanied by a similar decrease in the number of patients transplanted^[288,289]. UDCA has very few adverse effects even after many years of treatment. A slight weight gain not exceeding an average of 2 kg, is reported by many patients particularly those who have stopped smoking. It is possible that an alteration of bile acid pool composition might lead to signaling through the TGR5 pathway and subsequent weight gain^[290]. Administration of UDCA in patients with pruritus may in fact cause deterioration of pruritus and it is recommended that a low dose of 200-400 mg/d should initially be given with a gradual increase in 4-8 wk up to the usual daily dosage. UDCA is not approved for use during the first trimester of pregnancy, although embryotoxicity has not been reported in humans. A number of retrospective studies found no serious side-effects in women with PBC who started gestation during UDCA therapy and who continued the treatment throughout their pregnancy^[291,292]. Breast feeding with UDCA treatment is also not approved, but was incidentally reported to cause no detrimental effects in the newborn^[293].

Despite the favourable response of most patients to UDCA, there is a number of patients with incomplete response to the drug. Various combinations with additional drugs have been tested. Recent studies aimed at combining other agents to UDCA have shown promise. Bezafibrate has proved to have an additional

anticholestatic effect in combination with UDCA^[294,295]. Two meta-analyses showed different results. A Cochran meta-analysis concludes that the addition of bezafibrate offers no advantage over UDCA alone^[296], while favorable results were reported in a very recent meta-analysis^[297].

Immunosuppressants such as colchicine or methotrexate demonstrated a sustained clinical response. The addition of methotrexate was reported to improve both liver biochemistry and histology^[298,299] although some studies reported no effect from this combination^[300-302]. Furthermore, in a 10-year study, the addition to UDCA of either methotrexate or colchicine offered no survival advantage to that predicted by the Mayo model. However pre-cirrhotic patients taking methotrexate showed no progression therefore verifying that the drug is a useful addition to UDCA at least in some patients^[303,304].

Non responders could be treated with a combination of UDCA and budesonide but there is not a general consensus for that treatment. In newly diagnosed PBC patients a combination of UDCA and budesonide improves liver biochemistry and histology but whether this is accompanied by a clear survival benefit remains to be established^[305,306].

Chlorambucil has also been tried. Despite improvement in some outcome measures such as serum bilirubin levels in PBC patients treated with chlorambucil, a Cochrane systemic review concluded that evidence is inadequate for the usage of chlorambucil in PBC patients. Bone marrow suppression was a serious side-effect with this drug^[307].

Tetrathiomolybdate was also investigated and the agent was efficacious for the management of PBC. Only biochemical endpoints were used without a proof of histological improvement. Hence, as the authors suggest longer clinical trials to examine transplant-free survival and histological progression are needed^[308].

Novel treatment options have also been suggested for non-responders to UDCA; B cell depletion using rituximab was investigated with promising results that require verification by additional studies^[309-311].

The T cell receptor, cytotoxic T lymphocyte antigen 4 (CTLA-4) acts as a co-stimulatory molecule in T-cell activation which in turn leads to biliary damage. Recent evidence supports the utilization of an optimized course of therapy by means of CTLA-4 Ig to potentially aid in the therapy of PBC patients^[312]. However the most promising new treatment since the introduction of UDCA is a derivative of chenodeoxycholic acid, obeticholic acid (OCA). The effect of obeticholic acid is mediated through its action in bile acid homeostasis, acting as a potent farnesoid X receptor (FXR) ligand^[313,314]. FXR is the key nuclear receptor for homeostasis and entero-hepatic circulation of bile acids. Obeticholic acid is approximately 100 times more potent FXR activator than chenodeoxycholic acid, the strongest natural activator of FXR known so far^[315]. Activation of FXR promotes bile acid secretion by activating bile acid transporters in the apical membrane of hepatocytes together with a

parallel reduction in bile acid uptake at the basolateral membrane. FXR agonists also reduce bile acid synthesis modulating the transcription of cholesterol 7- α -hydroxylase, the rate-limiting enzyme in bile acid synthesis, *via* induction of the suppressor protein small heterodimer partner and activation of the fibroblast growth factor 19 (FGF-19) enterohepatic signaling, which mediates bile acid feedback regulation^[316,317].

Since OCA and UDCA exert their secretagogue effects on bile acids through distinct mechanisms, there is a potential for synergistic therapeutic effects. Experimental evidence indicates that OCA has also antifibrotic properties consistent with FXR agonist effects *in vivo*^[318,319]. Clinical evaluation of OCA is currently ongoing, but phase-II efficacy and safety data in PBC have already been reported. One hundred sixty-five patients with persistently high ALP levels ($> 1.5 \times$ ULN) were randomized to receive either a placebo or OCA at 10, 25 or 50 mg once daily for 12 wk while maintained on the usual UDCA treatment. Results were initially presented as abstracts and very recently as a full paper^[320,321]. Seventy percent of patients demonstrated a 25% reduction in ALP in the three OCA arms compared with a 3% change from baseline in the placebo group was reported. In addition, levels of aminotransferases, gamma-glutamyltransferase (GGT) as well as C4 sterol used as a surrogate marker of bile acid synthesis and the primary bile acids cholic acid and CDCA, were all significantly decreased while FGF-19 concentrations increased^[322]. Biochemical improvement was maintained for an additional 12 mo open label extension of the initial trial. However an 85% incidence of pruritus with a dose response relationship was also observed but only 13% were forced to withdraw from the extended trial due to severe pruritus.

In another study, 59 UDCA-naïve patients were randomized to either a placebo or OCA at 10 or 50 mg once daily as monotherapy for 12 wk^[323]. A 50% reduction in ALP levels from baseline compared with no change in the placebo group was noted. Similar results were reported with aminotransferases, GGT and IgM levels significantly decreased in the OCA groups, but pruritus was seen in $> 70\%$ of patients and led to treatment discontinuation in up to 38% of cases.

MODE OF ACTION OF UDCA

Endogenous primary bile acids cholic acid and CDCA in both serum and bile are significantly decreased by the oral administration of UDCA, with a parallel marked increase in UDCA concentration, which then accounts for up to 50% of the circulating bile acid pool^[324,325]. UDCA interrupts the enterohepatic circulation of endogenous bile acids increasing therefore their fecal elimination^[326-328]. It also facilitates the endogenous secretion of bile acids into bile by promoting insertion and possibly activation of two bile carriers (the bile salt export pump bile salt export pump and the conjugate export pump, multidrug resistance-associated protein 2)

into the canalicular membrane of the hepatocyte. UDCA also protects hepatocytes from apoptosis induced by bile acid. This is attributed to inhibition of mitochondrial membrane permeability transition, and stimulation of a survival pathway^[329]. Another mechanism by which UDCA probably acts is the restoration of ductal expression of the anion exchanger 2, which is thought to compensate for defective biliary alkaline secretion thus contributing to the reduction of cytotoxicity of endogenous bile acids against cholangiocytes (the so called "biliary HCO₃-umbrella hypothesis")^[330]. Enhancement of defenses against oxidative stress is also a mechanism by which UDCA protects cholangiocytes and hepatocytes. In chronic cholestasis there is an excessive production of peroxide and hydroxynonenal protein adducts which is probably counteracted by an UDCA-induced enhancement of liver glutathione levels and the upregulation of J-glutamylcysteine synthetase and methionine S-adenosyltransferase^[151,331-335]. In experimental animals^[336] and patients with PBC^[337,338], additional oxidative stress protective mechanisms, namely Nrf2-mediated hepatocellular transport, detoxification and anti-oxidative stress systems, have been induced by UDCA. UDCA may also exert hepatic as well as systemic anti-apoptotic effects. *In vitro* UDCA and tauroursodeoxycholic acid can prevent apoptosis caused by different agents like hydrophobic bile acids, ethanol, TGF β 1, Fas ligand and okadaic acid in both hepatic and non-hepatic cells^[339]. In patients with PBC, UDCA also exerts anti-apoptotic properties in cholangiocytes and so may inhibit the availability of mitochondrial antigens in dendritic cells and macrophages^[340]. The mechanisms involved in the anti-apoptotic properties of UDCA include targeting of mitochondrial function and integrity, reduction of endoplasmic reticulum stress, and interactions with various survival signals in the cAMP, Akt, NF- κ B, MAPK and PI3K signaling pathways^[341-344].

We have demonstrated in HepG2 cells that UDCA modulates caspase activation and apoptosis in a concentration-dependent, while activation of the caspase cascade does not always correlates with increased apoptosis. We therefore concluded that serum UDCA concentrations should be adjusted through dosage modifications to achieve the required effect^[345].

UDCA is an extraordinary molecule since apart from the action mentioned above it seems likely, that it exerts anti-inflammatory^[346] and immunological protective effects as well. UDCA strongly reduced MHC class I expression in the liver in PBC^[347]. In several experimental models, UDCA exerted immunosuppressive properties by interfering with B- and T-cell functions. UDCA inhibited CpG-induced immunoglobulin production by B cells^[348] cytokine (IL-2, IL-4, IFN- γ) release by mononuclear cells when challenged with LPS^[349] and intrahepatic TNF- α and MIP-2 in the concanavalin A model of liver damage in experimental animals^[350]. These findings suggest that UDCA modifies TLR4 and TLR9 signaling pathways, therefore reducing inflammation^[351]. The anti-inflammatory properties of

UDCA might, in addition, be mediated by activation of the vitamin D receptor in cholangiocytes to promote the secretion of antimicrobial peptides in human bile^[352,353].

UDCA administration in PBC blunts the accumulation of endotoxin in bile and suppresses the immune reaction against lipid A^[164,166,167]. The mechanisms involved in UDCA-induced tolerance to endotoxin are both a reduced intestinal absorption of gut-derived endotoxin^[354] and protection against endotoxemia by enhancing the transport of LPS across hepatocytes from blood to bile^[355]. LPS is inactivated in alkaline bile by alkaline phosphatase as it becomes less active in a lower pH milieu^[163].

In many autoimmune mediated liver diseases an important pathogenetic role in the initiation and perpetuation of the hepatocyte injury is played by the NKT-cells^[58]. UDCA corrects NKT-cell activity by inhibiting prostaglandin E2 production in PBC. Since, as mentioned before, a reduced function of NKT-cells induced by IP-10 inhibits liver stellate cell apoptosis, restoration of NKT activity is evidently favourable in PBC^[356].

Two additional mechanisms have been proposed by us to further explain the beneficial effect of UDCA in PBC. We have suggested that an increase in ET2 observed from the early stages of the disease may be the initiative mechanism causing ischemic damage to cholangiocytes. UDCA treatment caused a significant reduction of ET2, possibly interrupting the early detrimental effect of ET2^[179]. A second mechanism may involve the CXCL chemokines. As mentioned before, PBC patients have increased levels of the chemokines IP-10 and MIG both in plasma and the liver^[133]. These chemokines are important for the attraction of cells cytotoxic for cholangiocytes.

We recently reported a significant serum decrease of these chemokines after UDCA administration. Moreover we demonstrated using flow cytometry a significantly lower CXCR3 expression in normal controls (13.5%) compared to PBC (37.2%), which was decreased (28.1%, $P < 0.01$) after UDCA treatment, a finding that might indicate a new additional mechanism of action for UDCA^[134].

TRANSPLANTATION

Liver transplantation is the only curative treatment of PBC which is a very frequent indication for liver transplantation in the United States^[288]. The indications are the same with any other cirrhosis and include refractory ascites, hepatic encephalopathy, and portal hypertension leading to hepatorenal syndrome, spontaneous bacterial peritonitis. However in PBC there are two additional indications unique in this disease. These are intractable pruritus and debilitating fatigue.

Liver transplantation improves long term survival in PBC patients. An earlier study of 161 PBC patients showed a significant improvement ($P < 0.01$) of out-

comes when expected patient survival through utilization of the Mayo natural history model was compared to actual survival. Moreover the 2 year survival was 74% for transplanted patients as compared to 31% for non-transplanted patients^[357]. These survival figures have been considerably improved in recent years^[358].

REFERENCES

- 1 **Addison T**, Gull W. On a certain affection of the skin, vitiligoidea - a. plana, b. tuberosa. *Guys Hospital Reports* 1851; **7**: 265-276
- 2 **Dauphinee JA**, Sinclair JC. Primary biliary cirrhosis. *Can Med Assoc J* 1949; **61**: 1-6 [PMID: 18153470]
- 3 **Ahrens EH**, Payne MA, Kunkel HG, Eisenmenger WJ, Blondheim SH. Primary biliary cirrhosis. *Medicine* (Baltimore) 1950; **29**: 299-364 [PMID: 14796348]
- 4 **Rubin E**, Schaffner F, Popper H. Primary biliary cirrhosis. chronic non-suppurative destructive cholangitis. *Am J Pathol* 1965; **46**: 387-407 [PMID: 14266218]
- 5 **Watson RG**, Angus PW, Dewar M, Goss B, Sewell RB, Smallwood RA. Low prevalence of primary biliary cirrhosis in Victoria, Australia. Melbourne Liver Group. *Gut* 1995; **36**: 927-930 [PMID: 7615286]
- 6 **Sood S**, Gow PJ, Christie JM, Angus PW. Epidemiology of primary biliary cirrhosis in Victoria, Australia: high prevalence in migrant populations. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: 470-475 [PMID: 15300579]
- 7 **Prince MI**, James OF. The epidemiology of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Clin Liver Dis* 2003; **7**: 795-819 [PMID: 14594132]
- 8 **Corpechot C**, Gaouar F, Salle A-V, Diemert B, Carrat F, Johanet C, Chazouilleres O, Poupon R. Epidemiology of primary biliary cirrhosis: results of a prospective study performed on the overall metropolitan French population. *Hepatology* 2008; **48**: 602A
- 9 **Boonstra K**, Beuers U, Ponsioen CY. Epidemiology of primary sclerosing cholangitis and primary biliary cirrhosis: a systematic review. *J Hepatol* 2012; **56**: 1181-1188 [PMID: 22245904 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2011.10.025]
- 10 **James OF**, Bhopal R, Howel D, Gray J, Burt AD, Metcalf JV. Primary biliary cirrhosis once rare, now common in the United Kingdom? *Hepatology* 1999; **30**: 390-394 [PMID: 10421645]
- 11 **Metcalf JV**, Bhopal RS, Gray J, Howel D, James OF. Incidence and prevalence of primary biliary cirrhosis in the city of Newcastle upon Tyne, England. *Int J Epidemiol* 1997; **26**: 830-836 [PMID: 9279616]
- 12 **Kim WR**, Lindor KD, Locke GR, Thorneau TM, Homburger HA, Batts KP, Yawn BP, Petz JL, Melton LJ, Dickson ER. Epidemiology and natural history of primary biliary cirrhosis in a US community. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **119**: 1631-1636 [PMID: 11113084]
- 13 **Koulentaki M**, Mantaka A, Sifaki-Pistolla D, Thalassinou E, Tzanakis N, Kouroumalis E. Geoeidemiology and space-time analysis of Primary biliary cirrhosis in Crete, Greece. *Liver Int* 2014; **34**: e200-e207 [PMID: 24502439 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12479]
- 14 **Ala A**, Stanca CM, Bu-Ghanim M, Ahmado I, Branch AD, Schiano TD, Odin JA, Bach N. Increased prevalence of primary biliary cirrhosis near Superfund toxic waste sites. *Hepatology* 2006; **43**: 525-531 [PMID: 16496326 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21076]
- 15 **Abu-Mouch S**, Selmi C, Benson GD, Kenny TP, Invernizzi P, Zuin M, Podda M, Rossaro L, Gershwin ME. Geographic clusters of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Clin Dev Immunol* 2003; **10**: 127-131 [PMID: 14768943]
- 16 **Arbour L**, Field L, Ross P, Erikson A, Yoshida E. The mystery of primary biliary cirrhosis in British Columbia's First Nations people. *Int J Circumpolar Health* 2004; **63** Suppl 2: 185-188 [PMID: 15736648]
- 17 **Prince MI**, Chetwynd A, Diggle P, Jarner M, Metcalf JV, James OF. The geographical distribution of primary biliary cirrhosis in a well-defined cohort. *Hepatology* 2001; **34**: 1083-1088 [PMID:

- 11731995]
- 18 **Arbour L**, Rupps R, Field L, Ross P, Erikson A, Henderson H, Hill W, Yoshida E. Characteristics of primary biliary cirrhosis in British Columbia's First Nations population. *Can J Gastroenterol* 2005; **19**: 305-310 [PMID: 15915245]
 - 19 **Mattalia A**, Quaranta S, Leung PS, Bauducci M, Van de Water J, Calvo PL, Danielle F, Rizzetto M, Ansari A, Coppel RL, Rosina F, Gershwin ME. Characterization of antimitochondrial antibodies in health adults. *Hepatology* 1998; **27**: 656-661 [PMID: 9500690]
 - 20 **Ohba K**, Omagari K, Kinoshita H, Soda H, Masuda J, Hazama H, Tagawa M, Hata T, Nakamura H, Murata I, Kohno S. Primary biliary cirrhosis among atomic bomb survivors in Nagasaki, Japan. *J Clin Epidemiol* 2001; **54**: 845-850 [PMID: 11470395]
 - 21 **Podda M**, Selmi C, Lleo A, Moroni L, Invernizzi P. The limitations and hidden gems of the epidemiology of primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Autoimmun* 2013; **46**: 81-87 [PMID: 23871640 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaut.2013.06.015]
 - 22 **Solis Herruzo JA**, Solís Muñoz P, Muñoz Yagüe T. The pathogenesis of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Rev Esp Enferm Dig* 2009; **101**: 413-423
 - 23 **McNally RJ**, Ducker S, James OF. Are transient environmental agents involved in the cause of primary biliary cirrhosis? Evidence from space-time clustering analysis. *Hepatology* 2009; **50**: 1169-1174 [PMID: 19711423 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23139]
 - 24 **Selmi C**, Gershwin ME. The role of environmental factors in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Trends Immunol* 2009; **30**: 415-420 [PMID: 19643668 DOI: 10.1016/j.it.2009.05.006]
 - 25 **Mells GF**, Floyd JA, Morley KI, Cordell HJ, Franklin CS, Shin SY, Heneghan MA, Neuberger JM, Donaldson PT, Day DB, Ducker SJ, Muriithi AW, Wheeler EF, Hammond CJ, Dawwas MF, Jones DE, Peltonen L, Alexander GJ, Sandford RN, Anderson CA. Genome-wide association study identifies 12 new susceptibility loci for primary biliary cirrhosis. *Nat Genet* 2011; **43**: 329-332 [PMID: 21399635 DOI: 10.1038/ng.789]
 - 26 **Tanaka A**, Ohira H, Kikuchi K, Nezu S, Shibuya A, Bianchi I, Podda M, Invernizzi P, Takikawa H. Genetic association of Fc receptor-like 3 polymorphisms with susceptibility to primary biliary cirrhosis: ethnic comparative study in Japanese and Italian patients. *Tissue Antigens* 2011; **77**: 239-243 [PMID: 21299530 DOI: 10.1111/j.1399-0039.2010.01600.x]
 - 27 **Nakamura M**, Nishida N, Kawashima M, Aiba Y, Tanaka A, Yasunami M, Nakamura H, Komori A, Nakamura M, Zeniya M, Hashimoto E, Ohira H, Yamamoto K, Onji M, Kaneko S, Honda M, Yamagiwa S, Nakao K, Ichida T, Takikawa H, Seike M, Umemura T, Ueno Y, Sakisaka S, Kikuchi K, Ebinuma H, Yamashiki N, Tamura S, Sugawara Y, Mori A, Yagi S, Shirabe K, Taketomi A, Arai K, Monoe K, Ichikawa T, Taniat M, Miyake Y, Kumagi T, Abe M, Yoshizawa K, Yoshita S, Shimoda S, Honda K, Takahashi H, Hirano K, Takeyama Y, Harada K, Migita K, Ito M, Yatsuhashi H, Fukushima N, Ota H, Komatsu T, Saoshiro T, Ishida J, Kouno H, Kouno H, Yagura M, Kobayashi M, Muro T, Masaki N, Hirata K, Watanabe Y, Nakamura Y, Shimada M, Hirashima N, Komeda T, Sugi K, Koga M, Ario K, Takesaki E, Maehara Y, Uemoto S, Kokudo N, Tsubouchi H, Mizokami M, Nakanuma Y, Tokunaga K, Ishibashi H. Genome-wide association study identifies TNFSF15 and POU2AF1 as susceptibility loci for primary biliary cirrhosis in the Japanese population. *Am J Hum Genet* 2012; **91**: 721-728 [PMID: 23000144 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajhg.2012.08.010]
 - 28 **Mantaka A**, Koulentaki M, Chlouverakis G, Enele-Melono JM, Darivianaki A, Tzardi M, Kouroumalis EA. Primary biliary cirrhosis in a genetically homogeneous population: disease associations and familial occurrence rates. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2012; **12**: 110 [PMID: 22898439]
 - 29 **Jones DE**, Watt FE, Metcalf JV, Bassendine MF, James OF. Familial primary biliary cirrhosis reassessed: a geographically-based population study. *J Hepatol* 1999; **30**: 402-407 [PMID: 10190721]
 - 30 **Gershwin ME**, Selmi C, Worman HJ, Gold EB, Watnik M, Utts J, Lindor KD, Kaplan MM, Vierling JM. Risk factors and comorbidities in primary biliary cirrhosis: a controlled interview-based study of 1032 patients. *Hepatology* 2005; **42**: 1194-1202 [PMID: 16250040 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20907]
 - 31 **Corpechot C**, Chrétien Y, Chazouillères O, Poupon R. Demographic, lifestyle, medical and familial factors associated with primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 2010; **53**: 162-169 [PMID: 20471130 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.02.019]
 - 32 **Selmi C**, Mayo MJ, Bach N, Ishibashi H, Invernizzi P, Gish RG, Gordon SC, Wright HI, Zweiban B, Podda M, Gershwin ME. Primary biliary cirrhosis in monozygotic and dizygotic twins: genetics, epigenetics, and environment. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: 485-492 [PMID: 15300581]
 - 33 **Diltney AT**, Moutsianas L, Leslie S, McVean G. HLA*IMP--an integrated framework for imputing classical HLA alleles from SNP genotypes. *Bioinformatics* 2011; **27**: 968-972 [PMID: 21300701 DOI: 10.1093/bioinformatics/btr061]
 - 34 **Invernizzi P**, Ransom M, Raychaudhuri S, Kosoy R, Lleo A, Shigeta R, Franke A, Bossa F, Amos CI, Gregersen PK, Siminovich KA, Cusi D, de Bakker PI, Podda M, Gershwin ME, Seldin MF. Classical HLA-DRB1 and DPB1 alleles account for HLA associations with primary biliary cirrhosis. *Genes Immun* 2012; **13**: 461-468 [PMID: 22573116 DOI: 10.1038/gene.2012.17]
 - 35 **Liu JZ**, Almarri MA, Gaffney DJ, Mells GF, Jostins L, Cordell HJ, Ducker SJ, Day DB, Heneghan MA, Neuberger JM, Donaldson PT, Bathgate AJ, Burroughs A, Davies MH, Jones DE, Alexander GJ, Barrett JC, Sandford RN, Anderson CA. Dense fine-mapping study identifies new susceptibility loci for primary biliary cirrhosis. *Nat Genet* 2012; **44**: 1137-1141 [PMID: 22961000 DOI: 10.1038/ng.2395]
 - 36 **Juran BD**, Hirschfield GM, Invernizzi P, Atkinson EJ, Li Y, Xie G, Kosoy R, Ransom M, Sun Y, Bianchi I, Schlicht EM, Lleo A, Coltescu C, Bernuzzi F, Podda M, Lammert C, Shigeta R, Chan LL, Balschun T, Marconi M, Cusi D, Heathcote EJ, Mason AL, Myers RP, Milkiewicz P, Odin JA, Luketic VA, Bacon BR, Bodenheimer HC, Liakina V, Vincent C, Levy C, Franke A, Gregersen PK, Bossa F, Gershwin ME, de Andrade M, Amos CI, Lazaridis KN, Seldin MF, Siminovich KA. Immunochip analyses identify a novel risk locus for primary biliary cirrhosis at 13q14, multiple independent associations at four established risk loci and epistasis between 1p31 and 7q32 risk variants. *Hum Mol Genet* 2012; **21**: 5209-5221 [PMID: 22936693 DOI: 10.1093/hmg/dd359]
 - 37 **Schotte R**, Rissoan MC, Bendriss-Vermare N, Bridon JM, Duhon T, Weijer K, Brière F, Spits H. The transcription factor Spi-B is expressed in plasmacytoid DC precursors and inhibits T-, B-, and NK-cell development. *Blood* 2003; **101**: 1015-1023 [PMID: 12393575 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2002-02-0438]
 - 38 **Becker AM**, Michael DG, Satpathy AT, Sciammas R, Singh H, Bhattacharya D. IRF-8 extinguishes neutrophil production and promotes dendritic cell lineage commitment in both myeloid and lymphoid mouse progenitors. *Blood* 2012; **119**: 2003-2012 [PMID: 22238324 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2011-06-364976]
 - 39 **Taylor P**, Tamura T, Ozato K. IRF family proteins and type I interferon induction in dendritic cells. *Cell Res* 2006; **16**: 134-140 [PMID: 16474425]
 - 40 **Honda K**, Taniguchi T. IRFs: master regulators of signalling by Toll-like receptors and cytosolic pattern-recognition receptors. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2006; **6**: 644-658 [PMID: 16932750]
 - 41 **Kaisho T**, Tanaka T. Turning NF-kappaB and IRFs on and off in DC. *Trends Immunol* 2008; **29**: 329-336 [PMID: 18534908 DOI: 10.1016/j.it.2008.03.005]
 - 42 **Arthur JS**. MSK activation and physiological roles. *Front Biosci* 2008; **13**: 5866-5879 [PMID: 18508628]
 - 43 **Cabal-Hierro L**, Lazo PS. Signal transduction by tumor necrosis factor receptors. *Cell Signal* 2012; **24**: 1297-1305 [PMID: 22374304 DOI: 10.1016/j.cellsig.2012.02.006]
 - 44 **Krausgruber T**, Blazek K, Smallie T, Alzabin S, Lockstone H, Sahgal N, Hsuell T, Feldmann M, Udalova IA. IRF5 promotes inflammatory macrophage polarization and TH1-TH17 responses. *Nat Immunol* 2011; **12**: 231-238 [PMID: 21240265 DOI: 10.1038/ni.1990]

- 45 **Hirschfield GM**, Liu X, Xu C, Lu Y, Xie G, Lu Y, Gu X, Walker EJ, Jing K, Juran BD, Mason AL, Myers RP, Peltekian KM, Ghent CN, Coltescu C, Atkinson EJ, Heathcote EJ, Lazaridis KN, Amos CI, Siminovitch KA. Primary biliary cirrhosis associated with HLA, IL12A, and IL12RB2 variants. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **360**: 2544-2555 [PMID: 19458352 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0810440]
- 46 **Liu X**, Invernizzi P, Lu Y, Kosoy R, Lu Y, Bianchi I, Podda M, Xu C, Xie G, Macchiardi F, Selmi C, Lupoli S, Shigeta R, Ransom M, Lleo A, Lee AT, Mason AL, Myers RP, Peltekian KM, Ghent CN, Bernuzzi F, Zuin M, Rosina F, Borghesio E, Floreani A, Lazzari R, Niro G, Andriulli A, Muratori L, Muratori P, Almasio PL, Andreone P, Margotti M, Brunetto M, Coco B, Alvaro D, Bragazzi MC, Marra F, Pisano A, Rigamonti C, Colombo M, Marzioni M, Benedetti A, Fabris L, Strazzabosco M, Portincasa P, Palmieri VO, Tiribelli C, Croce L, Bruno S, Rossi S, Vinci M, Prisco C, Mattalia A, Toniutto P, Picciotto A, Galli A, Ferrari C, Colombo S, Casella G, Morini L, Caporaso N, Colli A, Spinzi G, Montanari R, Gregersen PK, Heathcote EJ, Hirschfield GM, Siminovitch KA, Amos CI, Gershwin ME, Seldin MF. Genome-wide meta-analyses identify three loci associated with primary biliary cirrhosis. *Nat Genet* 2010; **42**: 658-660 [PMID: 20639880 DOI: 10.1038/ng.627]
- 47 **Hirschfield GM**, Liu X, Han Y, Gorlov IP, Lu Y, Xu C, Lu Y, Chen W, Juran BD, Coltescu C, Mason AL, Milkiewicz P, Myers RP, Odin JA, Luketic VA, Speiciene D, Vincent C, Levy C, Gregersen PK, Zhang J, Heathcote EJ, Lazaridis KN, Amos CI, Siminovitch KA. Variants at IRF5-TNPO3, 17q12-21 and MMEL1 are associated with primary biliary cirrhosis. *Nat Genet* 2010; **42**: 655-657 [PMID: 20639879 DOI: 10.1038/ng.631]
- 48 **Mells GF**, Kaser A, Karlsen TH. Novel insights into autoimmune liver diseases provided by genome-wide association studies. *J Autoimmun* 2013; **46**: 41-54 [PMID: 23931959 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaut.2013.07.004]
- 49 **Hirschfield GM**, Chapman RW, Karlsen TH, Lammert F, Lazaridis KN, Mason AL. The genetics of complex cholestatic disorders. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **144**: 1357-1374 [PMID: 23583734 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.03.053]
- 50 **Kouroumalis E**. Environmental agents involved in the cause of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Dis Markers* 2010; **29**: 329-336 [PMID: 21297252 DOI: 10.3233/DMA-2010-0769]
- 51 **Selmi C**, De Santis M, Cavaciocchi F, Gershwin ME. Infectious agents and xenobiotics in the etiology of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Dis Markers* 2010; **29**: 287-299 [PMID: 21297248 DOI: 10.3233/DMA-2010-0746]
- 52 **Bogdanos DP**, Pares A, Baum H, Caballeria L, Rigopoulou EI, Ma Y, Burroughs AK, Rodes J, Vergani D. Disease-specific cross-reactivity between mimicking peptides of heat shock protein of Mycobacterium gordonae and dominant epitope of E2 subunit of pyruvate dehydrogenase is common in Spanish but not British patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Autoimmun* 2004; **22**: 353-362 [PMID: 15120760 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaut.2004.03.002]
- 53 **Bogdanos DP**, Baum H, Okamoto M, Montalto P, Sharma UC, Rigopoulou EI, Vlachogiannakos J, Ma Y, Burroughs AK, Vergani D. Primary biliary cirrhosis is characterized by IgG3 antibodies cross-reactive with the major mitochondrial autoepitope and its Lactobacillus mimic. *Hepatology* 2005; **42**: 458-465 [PMID: 16025495 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20788]
- 54 **Selmi C**, Balkwill DL, Invernizzi P, Ansari AA, Coppel RL, Podda M, Leung PS, Kenny TP, Van De Water J, Nantz MH, Kurth MJ, Gershwin ME. Patients with primary biliary cirrhosis react against a ubiquitous xenobiotic-metabolizing bacterium. *Hepatology* 2003; **38**: 1250-1257 [PMID: 14578864 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2003.50446]
- 55 **Kaplan MM**. Novosphingobium aromaticivorans: a potential initiator of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2004; **99**: 2147-2149 [PMID: 15554995]
- 56 **Padgett KA**, Selmi C, Kenny TP, Leung PS, Balkwill DL, Ansari AA, Coppel RL, Gershwin ME. Phylogenetic and immunological definition of four lipoylated proteins from Novosphingobium aromaticivorans, implications for primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Autoimmun* 2005; **24**: 209-219 [PMID: 15848043]
- 57 **Olafsson S**, Gudjonsson H, Selmi C, Amano K, Invernizzi P, Podda M, Gershwin ME. Antimitochondrial antibodies and reactivity to N. aromaticivorans proteins in Icelandic patients with primary biliary cirrhosis and their relatives. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2004; **99**: 2143-2146 [PMID: 15554994]
- 58 **Mattner J**, Savage PB, Leung P, Oertelt SS, Wang V, Trivedi O, Scanlon ST, Pendem K, Teyton L, Hart J, Ridgway WM, Wicker LS, Gershwin ME, Bendelac A. Liver autoimmunity triggered by microbial activation of natural killer T cells. *Cell Host Microbe* 2008; **3**: 304-315 [PMID: 18474357 DOI: 10.1016/j.chom.2008.03.009]
- 59 **Kita H**, Naidenko OV, Kronenberg M, Ansari AA, Rogers P, He XS, Koning F, Mikayama T, Van De Water J, Coppel RL, Kaplan M, Gershwin ME. Quantitation and phenotypic analysis of natural killer T cells in primary biliary cirrhosis using a human CD1d tetramer. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **123**: 1031-1043 [PMID: 12360465]
- 60 **Harada K**, Isse K, Tsuneyama K, Ohta H, Nakanuma Y. Accumulating CD57 + CD3 + natural killer T cells are related to intrahepatic bile duct lesions in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Liver Int* 2003; **23**: 94-100 [PMID: 12654131]
- 61 **Harada K**, Nakanuma Y. Biliary innate immunity: function and modulation. *Mediators Inflamm* 2010; **2010**: pii: 373878 [PMID: 20798866 DOI: 10.1155/2010/373878]
- 62 **Amano K**, Leung PS, Rieger R, Quan C, Wang X, Marik J, Suen YF, Kurth MJ, Nantz MH, Ansari AA, Lam KS, Zeniya M, Matsuura E, Coppel RL, Gershwin ME. Chemical xenobiotics and mitochondrial autoantigens in primary biliary cirrhosis: identification of antibodies against a common environmental, cosmetic, and food additive, 2-octynoic acid. *J Immunol* 2005; **174**: 5874-5883 [PMID: 15845458]
- 63 **Rieger R**, Leung PS, Jeddell MR, Kurth MJ, Nantz MH, Lam KS, Barsky D, Ansari AA, Coppel RL, Mackay IR, Gershwin ME. Identification of 2-nonynoic acid, a cosmetic component, as a potential trigger of primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Autoimmun* 2006; **27**: 7-16 [PMID: 16876981]
- 64 **Wakabayashi K**, Yoshida K, Leung PS, Moritoki Y, Yang GX, Tsuneyama K, Lian ZX, Hibi T, Ansari AA, Wicker LS, Ridgway WM, Coppel RL, Mackay IR, Gershwin ME. Induction of autoimmune cholangitis in non-obese diabetic (NOD).1101 mice following a chemical xenobiotic immunization. *Clin Exp Immunol* 2009; **155**: 577-586 [PMID: 19094117 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.2008.03837.x]
- 65 **Yeaman SJ**, Fussey SP, Danner DJ, James OF, Mutimer DJ, Bassendine MF. Primary biliary cirrhosis: identification of two major M2 mitochondrial autoantigens. *Lancet* 1988; **1**: 1067-1070 [PMID: 2896910]
- 66 **Fussey SP**, Guest JR, James OF, Bassendine MF, Yeaman SJ. Identification and analysis of the major M2 autoantigens in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1988; **85**: 8654-8658 [PMID: 3186751]
- 67 **Coppel RL**, McNeilage LJ, Surh CD, Van de Water J, Spithill TW, Whittingham S, Gershwin ME. Primary structure of the human M2 mitochondrial autoantigen of primary biliary cirrhosis: dihydrolipoamide acetyltransferase. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1988; **85**: 7317-7321 [PMID: 3174635]
- 68 **Björkland A**, Löf L, Mendel-Hartvig I, Tötterman TH. Primary biliary cirrhosis. High proportions of B cells in blood and liver tissue produce anti-mitochondrial antibodies of several Ig classes. *J Immunol* 1994; **153**: 2750-2757 [PMID: 8077679]
- 69 **Nishio A**, Van de Water J, Leung PS, Joplin R, Neuberger JM, Lake J, Björkland A, Tötterman TH, Peters M, Worman HJ, Ansari AA, Coppel RL, Gershwin ME. Comparative studies of antimitochondrial autoantibodies in sera and bile in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 1997; **25**: 1085-1089 [PMID: 9141421]
- 70 **Tanaka A**, Nalbandian G, Leung PS, Benson GD, Munoz S, Findor JA, Branch AD, Coppel RL, Ansari AA, Gershwin ME. Mucosal immunity and primary biliary cirrhosis: presence of antimitochondrial antibodies in urine. *Hepatology* 2000; **32**: 910-915 [PMID: 11050038]
- 71 **Reynoso-Paz S**, Leung PS, Van De Water J, Tanaka A, Munoz S, Bass N, Lindor K, Donald PJ, Coppel RL, Ansari AA, Gershwin

- ME. Evidence for a locally driven mucosal response and the presence of mitochondrial antigens in saliva in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2000; **31**: 24-29 [PMID: 10613723]
- 72 **Lleo A**, Bowlus CL, Yang GX, Invernizzi P, Podda M, Van de Water J, Ansari AA, Coppel RL, Worman HJ, Gores GJ, Gershwin ME. Biliary apotopes and anti-mitochondrial antibodies activate innate immune responses in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2010; **52**: 987-998 [PMID: 20568301 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23783]
 - 73 **Leung PS**, Rossaro L, Davis PA, Park O, Tanaka A, Kikuchi K, Miyakawa H, Norman GL, Lee W, Gershwin ME. Antimitochondrial antibodies in acute liver failure: implications for primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2007; **46**: 1436-1442 [PMID: 17657817 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21828]
 - 74 **Bhat M**, Guindi M, Heathcote EJ, Hirschfield GM. Transient development of anti-mitochondrial antibodies accompanies autoimmune hepatitis-sclerosing cholangitis overlap. *Gut* 2009; **58**: 152-153 [PMID: 19091843 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2008.163220]
 - 75 **Sutton I**, Neuberger J. Primary biliary cirrhosis: seeking the silent partner of autoimmunity. *Gut* 2002; **50**: 743-746 [PMID: 12010869]
 - 76 **Invernizzi P**, Podda M, Battezzati PM, Crosignani A, Zuin M, Hitchman E, Maggioni M, Meroni PL, Penner E, Wiesierska-Gadek J. Autoantibodies against nuclear pore complexes are associated with more active and severe liver disease in primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 2001; **34**: 366-372 [PMID: 11322196]
 - 77 **Sfakianaki O**, Koulentaki M, Tzardi M, Tsangaridou E, Theodoropoulos PA, Castanas E, Kouroumalis EA. Peri-nuclear antibodies correlate with survival in Greek primary biliary cirrhosis patients. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 4938-4943 [PMID: 20954280]
 - 78 **Takahashi T**, Miura T, Nakamura J, Yamada S, Miura T, Yanagi M, Matsuda Y, Usuda H, Emura I, Tsuneyama K, He XS, Gershwin ME. Plasma cells and the chronic nonsuppurative destructive cholangitis of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2012; **55**: 846-855 [PMID: 22031474 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24757]
 - 79 **Lindor KD**, Gershwin ME, Poupon R, Kaplan M, Bergasa NV, Heathcote EJ. Primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2009; **50**: 291-308 [PMID: 19554543 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22906]
 - 80 **Lleo A**, Selmi C, Invernizzi P, Podda M, Coppel RL, Mackay IR, Gores GJ, Ansari AA, Van de Water J, Gershwin ME. Apotopes and the biliary specificity of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: 871-879 [PMID: 19185000 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22736]
 - 81 **Rong G**, Zhou Y, Xiong Y, Zhou L, Geng H, Jiang T, Zhu Y, Lu H, Zhang S, Wang P, Zhang B, Zhong R. Imbalance between T helper type 17 and T regulatory cells in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis: the serum cytokine profile and peripheral cell population. *Clin Exp Immunol* 2009; **156**: 217-225 [PMID: 19302244 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.2009.03898.x]
 - 82 **Harada K**, Shimoda S, Sato Y, Isse K, Ikeda H, Nakanuma Y. Periductal interleukin-17 production in association with biliary innate immunity contributes to the pathogenesis of cholangiopathy in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Clin Exp Immunol* 2009; **157**: 261-270 [PMID: 19604266 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.2009.03947.x]
 - 83 **Lan RY**, Salunga TL, Tsuneyama K, Lian ZX, Yang GX, Hsu W, Moritoki Y, Ansari AA, Kemper C, Price J, Atkinson JP, Coppel RL, Gershwin ME. Hepatic IL-17 responses in human and murine primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Autoimmun* 2009; **32**: 43-51 [PMID: 19101114 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaut.2008.11.001]
 - 84 **Harada K**, Nakanuma Y. Biliary innate immunity in the pathogenesis of biliary diseases. *Inflamm Allergy Drug Targets* 2010; **9**: 83-90 [PMID: 20402650]
 - 85 **Poggi A**, Zocchi MR. NK cell autoreactivity and autoimmune diseases. *Front Immunol* 2014; **5**: 27 [PMID: 24550913 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00027]
 - 86 **Shimoda S**, Harada K, Niirio H, Shirabe K, Taketomi A, Maehara Y, Tsuneyama K, Nakanuma Y, Leung P, Ansari AA, Gershwin ME, Akashi K. Interaction between Toll-like receptors and natural killer cells in the destruction of bile ducts in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2011; **53**: 1270-1281 [PMID: 21400555 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24194]
 - 87 **Shimoda S**, Tsuneyama K, Kikuchi K, Harada K, Nakanuma Y, Nakamura M, Ishibashi H, Hisamoto S, Niirio H, Leung PS, Ansari AA, Gershwin ME, Akashi K. The role of natural killer (NK) and NK T cells in the loss of tolerance in murine primary biliary cirrhosis. *Clin Exp Immunol* 2012; **168**: 279-284 [PMID: 22519590 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.2012.04581.x]
 - 88 **Van de Water J**, Ansari A, Prindiville T, Coppel RL, Ricalton N, Kotzin BL, Liu S, Roche TE, Krams SM, Munoz S, Gershwin ME. Heterogeneity of autoreactive T cell clones specific for the E2 component of the pyruvate dehydrogenase complex in primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Exp Med* 1995; **181**: 723-733 [PMID: 7836925]
 - 89 **Jones DE**, Palmer JM, James OF, Yeaman SJ, Bassendine MF, Diamond AG. T-cell responses to the components of pyruvate dehydrogenase complex in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 1995; **21**: 995-1002 [PMID: 7705811]
 - 90 **Shimoda S**, Van de Water J, Ansari A, Nakamura M, Ishibashi H, Coppel RL, Lake J, Keeffe EB, Roche TE, Gershwin ME. Identification and precursor frequency analysis of a common T cell epitope motif in mitochondrial autoantigens in primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Clin Invest* 1998; **102**: 1831-1840 [PMID: 9819369 DOI: 10.1172/JCI4213]
 - 91 **Jones DE**, Palmer JM, Yeaman SJ, Bassendine MF, Diamond AG. T cell responses to natural human proteins in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Clin Exp Immunol* 1997; **107**: 562-568 [PMID: 9067533]
 - 92 **Akbar SM**, Yamamoto K, Miyakawa H, Ninomiya T, Abe M, Hiasa Y, Masumoto T, Horiike N, Onji M. Peripheral blood T-cell responses to pyruvate dehydrogenase complex in primary biliary cirrhosis: role of antigen-presenting dendritic cells. *Eur J Clin Invest* 2001; **31**: 639-646 [PMID: 11454020]
 - 93 **Kamihira T**, Shimoda S, Harada K, Kawano A, Handa M, Baba E, Tsuneyama K, Nakamura M, Ishibashi H, Nakanuma Y, Gershwin ME, Harada M. Distinct costimulation dependent and independent autoreactive T-cell clones in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 1379-1387 [PMID: 14598254]
 - 94 **Shimoda S**, Nakamura M, Ishibashi H, Hayashida K, Niho Y. HLA DRB4 0101-restricted immunodominant T cell autoepitope of pyruvate dehydrogenase complex in primary biliary cirrhosis: evidence of molecular mimicry in human autoimmune diseases. *J Exp Med* 1995; **181**: 1835-1845 [PMID: 7536796]
 - 95 **Shigematsu H**, Shimoda S, Nakamura M, Matsushita S, Nishimura Y, Sakamoto N, Ichiki Y, Niho Y, Gershwin ME, Ishibashi H. Fine specificity of T cells reactive to human PDC-E2 163-176 peptide, the immunodominant autoantigen in primary biliary cirrhosis: implications for molecular mimicry and cross-recognition among mitochondrial autoantigens. *Hepatology* 2000; **32**: 901-909 [PMID: 11050037]
 - 96 **Shimoda S**, Nakamura M, Shigematsu H, Tanimoto H, Gushima T, Gershwin ME, Ishibashi H. Mimicry peptides of human PDC-E2 163-176 peptide, the immunodominant T-cell epitope of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2000; **31**: 1212-1216 [PMID: 10827144]
 - 97 **Kita H**, Lian ZX, Van de Water J, He XS, Matsumura S, Kaplan M, Luketic V, Coppel RL, Ansari AA, Gershwin ME. Identification of HLA-A2-restricted CD8(+) cytotoxic T cell responses in primary biliary cirrhosis: T cell activation is augmented by immune complexes cross-presented by dendritic cells. *J Exp Med* 2002; **195**: 113-123 [PMID: 11781370]
 - 98 **Matsumura S**, Kita H, He XS, Ansari AA, Lian ZX, Van De Water J, Yamamoto K, Tsuji T, Coppel RL, Kaplan M, Gershwin ME. Comprehensive mapping of HLA-A0201-restricted CD8 T-cell epitopes on PDC-E2 in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2002; **36**: 1125-1134 [PMID: 12395322 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2002.36161]
 - 99 **Kita H**, Matsumura S, He XS, Ansari AA, Lian ZX, Van de Water J, Coppel RL, Kaplan MM, Gershwin ME. Quantitative and functional analysis of PDC-E2-specific autoreactive cytotoxic T lymphocytes in primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Clin Invest* 2002; **109**: 1231-1240 [PMID: 11994412 DOI: 10.1172/JCI14698]
 - 100 **Oertelt S**, Lian ZX, Cheng CM, Chuang YH, Padgett KA, He XS, Ridgway WM, Ansari AA, Coppel RL, Li MO, Flavell RA, Kronenberg M, Mackay IR, Gershwin ME. Anti-mitochondrial antibodies and primary biliary cirrhosis in TGF-beta receptor II

- dominant-negative mice. *J Immunol* 2006; **177**: 1655-1660 [PMID: 16849474]
- 101 **Gorieli S**, Cavoy R, Goldman M. Interleukin-12 family members and type I interferons in Th17-mediated inflammatory disorders. *Allergy* 2009; **64**: 702-709 [PMID: 19383026 DOI: 10.1111/j.1398-9995.2009.02039.x]
 - 102 **Yoshida K**, Yang GX, Zhang W, Tsuda M, Tsuneyama K, Moritoki Y, Ansari AA, Okazaki K, Lian ZX, Coppel RL, Mackay IR, Gershwin ME. Deletion of interleukin-12p40 suppresses autoimmune cholangitis in dominant negative transforming growth factor beta receptor type II mice. *Hepatology* 2009; **50**: 1494-1500 [PMID: 19676134 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23132]
 - 103 **Hsu W**, Zhang W, Tsuneyama K, Moritoki Y, Ridgway WM, Ansari AA, Coppel RL, Lian ZX, Mackay I, Gershwin ME. Differential mechanisms in the pathogenesis of autoimmune cholangitis versus inflammatory bowel disease in interleukin-2Ralpha(-/-) mice. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: 133-140 [PMID: 19065673 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22591]
 - 104 **Zhang W**, Sharma R, Ju ST, He XS, Tao Y, Tsuneyama K, Tian Z, Lian ZX, Fu SM, Gershwin ME. Deficiency in regulatory T cells results in development of antimitochondrial antibodies and autoimmune cholangitis. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: 545-552 [PMID: 19065675 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22651]
 - 105 **Lan RY**, Cheng C, Lian ZX, Tsuneyama K, Yang GX, Moritoki Y, Chuang YH, Nakamura T, Saito S, Shimoda S, Tanaka A, Bowlus CL, Takano Y, Ansari AA, Coppel RL, Gershwin ME. Liver-targeted and peripheral blood alterations of regulatory T cells in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2006; **43**: 729-737 [PMID: 16557534 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21123]
 - 106 **Seki E**, Tsutsui H, Nakano H, Tsuji N, Hoshino K, Adachi O, Adachi K, Futatsugi S, Kuida K, Takeuchi O, Okamura H, Fujimoto J, Akira S, Nakanishi K. Lipopolysaccharide-induced IL-18 secretion from murine Kupffer cells independently of myeloid differentiation factor 88 that is critically involved in induction of production of IL-12 and IL-1beta. *J Immunol* 2001; **166**: 2651-2657 [PMID: 11160328]
 - 107 **Wu J**, Meng Z, Jiang M, Zhang E, Trippler M, Broering R, Bucchi A, Krux F, Dittmer U, Yang D, Roggendorf M, Gerken G, Lu M, Schlaak JF. Toll-like receptor-induced innate immune responses in non-parenchymal liver cells are cell type-specific. *Immunology* 2010; **129**: 363-374 [PMID: 19922426 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2567.2009.03179.x]
 - 108 **Yang L**, Seki E. Toll-like receptors in liver fibrosis: cellular crosstalk and mechanisms. *Front Physiol* 2012; **3**: 138 [PMID: 22661952 DOI: 10.3389/fphys.2012.00138]
 - 109 **Mao TK**, Lian ZX, Selmi C, Ichiki Y, Ashwood P, Ansari AA, Coppel RL, Shimoda S, Ishibashi H, Gershwin ME. Altered monocyte responses to defined TLR ligands in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2005; **42**: 802-808 [PMID: 16175622 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20859]
 - 110 **Kikuchi K**, Lian ZX, Yang GX, Ansari AA, Ikehara S, Kaplan M, Miyakawa H, Coppel RL, Gershwin ME. Bacterial CpG induces hyper-IgM production in CD27(+) memory B cells in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: 304-312 [PMID: 15685542]
 - 111 **Moritoki Y**, Lian ZX, Wulff H, Yang GX, Chuang YH, Lan RY, Ueno Y, Ansari AA, Coppel RL, Mackay IR, Gershwin ME. AMA production in primary biliary cirrhosis is promoted by the TLR9 ligand CpG and suppressed by potassium channel blockers. *Hepatology* 2007; **45**: 314-322 [PMID: 17256753 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21522]
 - 112 **Kikuchi K**, Lian ZX, Kimura Y, Selmi C, Yang GX, Gordon SC, Invernizzi P, Podda M, Coppel RL, Ansari AA, Ikehara S, Miyakawa H, Gershwin ME. Genetic polymorphisms of toll-like receptor 9 influence the immune response to CpG and contribute to hyper-IgM in primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Autoimmun* 2005; **24**: 347-352 [PMID: 15878652]
 - 113 **Takii Y**, Nakamura M, Ito M, Yokoyama T, Komori A, Shimizu-Yoshida Y, Nakao R, Kusumoto K, Nagaoka S, Yano K, Abiru S, Ueki T, Matsumoto T, Daikoku M, Taniguchi K, Fujioka H, Migita K, Yatsuhashi H, Nakashima M, Harada M, Ishibashi H. Enhanced expression of type I interferon and toll-like receptor-3 in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Lab Invest* 2005; **85**: 908-920 [PMID: 15856047]
 - 114 **Ambrosini YM**, Yang GX, Zhang W, Tsuda M, Shu S, Tsuneyama K, Leung PS, Ansari AA, Coppel RL, Gershwin ME. The multi-hit hypothesis of primary biliary cirrhosis: polyinosinic-polycytidylic acid (poly I: C) and murine autoimmune cholangitis. *Clin Exp Immunol* 2011; **166**: 110-120 [PMID: 21910728 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.2011.04453.x]
 - 115 **Harada K**, Van de Water J, Leung PS, Coppel RL, Ansari A, Nakanuma Y, Gershwin ME. In situ nucleic acid hybridization of cytokines in primary biliary cirrhosis: predominance of the Th1 subset. *Hepatology* 1997; **25**: 791-796 [PMID: 9096578]
 - 116 **Sekiya H**, Komatsu T, Isono E, Furukawa M, Matsushima S, Yamaguchi N, Yamauchi K, Hayashi N. Decrease in the prevalence of IL-4-producing CD4+ T cells in patients with advanced stage of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1999; **94**: 3589-3594 [PMID: 10606324]
 - 117 **Nagano T**, Yamamoto K, Matsumoto S, Okamoto R, Tagashira M, Ibuki N, Matsumura S, Yabushita K, Okano N, Tsuji T. Cytokine profile in the liver of primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Clin Immunol* 1999; **19**: 422-427 [PMID: 10634216]
 - 118 **Pulickal AS**, Hambleton S, Callaghan MJ, Moore CE, Goulding J, Goodsall A, Baretto R, Lammass DA, Anderson ST, Levin M, Pollard AJ. Biliary cirrhosis in a child with inherited interleukin-12 deficiency. *J Trop Pediatr* 2008; **54**: 269-271 [PMID: 18204084 DOI: 10.1093/tropej/fmm119]
 - 119 **Voumavouraki A**, Koulentaki M, Tzardi M, Sfakianaki O, Manousou P, Notas G, Kouroumalis E. Increased TGF-beta3 in primary biliary cirrhosis: an abnormality related to pathogenesis? *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 5057-5064 [PMID: 20976842]
 - 120 **Chuang YH**, Lian ZX, Tsuneyama K, Chiang BL, Ansari AA, Coppel RL, Gershwin ME. Increased killing activity and decreased cytokine production in NK cells in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Autoimmun* 2006; **26**: 232-240 [PMID: 16730427]
 - 121 **Isse K**, Harada K, Zen Y, Kamihira T, Shimoda S, Harada M, Nakanuma Y. Fractalkine and CX3CR1 are involved in the recruitment of intraepithelial lymphocytes of intrahepatic bile ducts. *Hepatology* 2005; **41**: 506-516 [PMID: 15726664 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20582]
 - 122 **Shimoda S**, Harada K, Niiro H, Yoshizumi T, Soejima Y, Taketomi A, Maehara Y, Tsuneyama K, Nakamura M, Komori A, Migita K, Nakanuma Y, Ishibashi H, Selmi C, Gershwin ME. Biliary epithelial cells and primary biliary cirrhosis: the role of liver-infiltrating mononuclear cells. *Hepatology* 2008; **47**: 958-965 [PMID: 18181218 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22102]
 - 123 **Borchers AT**, Shimoda S, Bowlus C, Keen CL, Gershwin ME. Lymphocyte recruitment and homing to the liver in primary biliary cirrhosis and primary sclerosing cholangitis. *Semin Immunopathol* 2009; **31**: 309-322 [PMID: 19533132 DOI: 10.1007/s00281-009-0167-2]
 - 124 **Shimoda S**, Harada K, Niiro H, Taketomi A, Maehara Y, Tsuneyama K, Kikuchi K, Nakanuma Y, Mackay IR, Gershwin ME, Akashi K. CX3CL1 (fractalkine): a signpost for biliary inflammation in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2010; **51**: 567-575 [PMID: 19908209 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23318]
 - 125 **Afford SC**, Ahmed-Choudhury J, Randhawa S, Russell C, Youster J, Crosby HA, Eliopoulos A, Hubscher SG, Young LS, Adams DH. CD40 activation-induced, Fas-dependent apoptosis and NF-kappaB/AP-1 signaling in human intrahepatic biliary epithelial cells. *FASEB J* 2001; **15**: 2345-2354 [PMID: 11689460 DOI: 10.1096/fj.01-0088com]
 - 126 **Muehlhoefer A**, Saubermann LJ, Gu X, Luedtke-Heckenkamp K, Xavier R, Blumberg RS, Podolsky DK, MacDermott RP, Reinecker HC. Fractalkine is an epithelial and endothelial cell-derived chemoattractant for intraepithelial lymphocytes in the small intestinal mucosa. *J Immunol* 2000; **164**: 3368-3376 [PMID: 10706732]
 - 127 **Qin S**, Rottman JB, Myers P, Kassam N, Weinblatt M, Loetscher M, Koch AE, Moser B, Mackay CR. The chemokine receptors

- CXCR3 and CCR5 mark subsets of T cells associated with certain inflammatory reactions. *J Clin Invest* 1998; **101**: 746-754 [PMID: 9466968 DOI: 10.1172/JCI1422]
- 128 **Harada K**, Tsuneyama K, Yasoshima M, Kanemori Y, Ohta H, Masuda S, Onai N, Matsushima K, Nakanuma Y. Type1 and type2 memory T cells imbalance shown by expression of intrahepatic chemokine receptors relates to pathogenesis of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatol Res* 2002; **24**: 290 [PMID: 12393031]
 - 129 **Shields PL**, Morland CM, Salmon M, Qin S, Hubscher SG, Adams DH. Chemokine and chemokine receptor interactions provide a mechanism for selective T cell recruitment to specific liver compartments within hepatitis C-infected liver. *J Immunol* 1999; **163**: 6236-6243 [PMID: 10570316]
 - 130 **Schrage A**, Wechsung K, Neumann K, Schumann M, Schulzke JD, Engelhardt B, Zeitz M, Hamann A, Klugewitz K. Enhanced T cell transmigration across the murine liver sinusoidal endothelium is mediated by transcytosis and surface presentation of chemokines. *Hepatology* 2008; **48**: 1262-1272 [PMID: 18697212 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22443]
 - 131 **Shetty S**, Lalor PF, Adams DH. Lymphocyte recruitment to the liver: molecular insights into the pathogenesis of liver injury and hepatitis. *Toxicology* 2008; **254**: 136-146 [PMID: 18775762 DOI: 10.1016/j.tox.2008.08.003]
 - 132 **Holt AP**, Houghton EL, Lalor PF, Filer A, Buckley CD, Adams DH. Liver myofibroblasts regulate infiltration and positioning of lymphocytes in human liver. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **136**: 705-714 [PMID: 19010327 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.10.020]
 - 133 **Chuang YH**, Lian ZX, Cheng CM, Lan RY, Yang GX, Moritoki Y, Chiang BL, Ansari AA, Tsuneyama K, Coppel RL, Gershwin ME. Increased levels of chemokine receptor CXCR3 and chemokines IP-10 and MIG in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis and their first degree relatives. *J Autoimmun* 2005; **25**: 126-132 [PMID: 16243485]
 - 134 **Manousou P**, Kolios G, Drygiannakis I, Koulentaki M, Pyrovolaki K, Voumvouraki A, Notas G, Bourikas L, Papadaki HA, Kouroumalis E. CXCR3 axis in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis: a possible novel mechanism of the effect of ursodeoxycholic acid. *Clin Exp Immunol* 2013; **172**: 9-15 [PMID: 23480180 DOI: 10.1111/cei.12032]
 - 135 **Santodomingo-Garzon T**, Han J, Le T, Yang Y, Swain MG. Natural killer T cells regulate the homing of chemokine CXC receptor 3-positive regulatory T cells to the liver in mice. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: 1267-1276 [PMID: 19140218 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22761]
 - 136 **Ou YH**, Banz V, Kavanagh D, Liaskou E, Withers DR, Humphreys E, Reynolds GM, Lee-Turner L, Kalia N, Hubscher SG, Klennerman P, Eksteen B, Adams DH. CXCR3-dependent recruitment and CCR6-mediated positioning of Th-17 cells in the inflamed liver. *J Hepatol* 2012; **57**: 1044-1051 [PMID: 22796894 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2012.07.008]
 - 137 **Hintermann E**, Bayer M, Pfeilschifter JM, Luster AD, Christen U. CXCL10 promotes liver fibrosis by prevention of NK cell mediated hepatic stellate cell inactivation. *J Autoimmun* 2010; **35**: 424-435 [PMID: 20932719 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaut.2010.09.003]
 - 138 **Harada K**, Nakanuma Y. Molecular mechanisms of cholangiopathy in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Med Mol Morphol* 2006; **39**: 55-61 [PMID: 16821141 DOI: 10.1007/s00795-006-0321-z]
 - 139 **Graham AM**, Dollinger MM, Howie SE, Harrison DJ. Bile duct cells in primary biliary cirrhosis are 'primed' for apoptosis. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1998; **10**: 553-557 [PMID: 9855077]
 - 140 **Tinmouth J**, Lee M, Wanless IR, Tsui FW, Inman R, Heathcote EJ. Apoptosis of biliary epithelial cells in primary biliary cirrhosis and primary sclerosing cholangitis. *Liver* 2002; **22**: 228-234 [PMID: 12100573]
 - 141 **Iwata M**, Harada K, Kono N, Kaneko S, Kobayashi K, Nakanuma Y. Expression of Bcl-2 familial proteins is reduced in small bile duct lesions of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hum Pathol* 2000; **31**: 179-184 [PMID: 10685631]
 - 142 **Odin JA**, Huebert RC, Casciola-Rosen L, LaRusso NF, Rosen A. Bcl-2-dependent oxidation of pyruvate dehydrogenase-E2, a primary biliary cirrhosis autoantigen, during apoptosis. *J Clin Invest* 2001; **108**: 223-232 [PMID: 11457875 DOI: 10.1172/JCI10716]
 - 143 **Allina J**, Hu B, Sullivan DM, Fiel MI, Thung SN, Bronk SF, Huebert RC, van de Water J, LaRusso NF, Gershwin ME, Gores GJ, Odin JA. T cell targeting and phagocytosis of apoptotic biliary epithelial cells in primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Autoimmun* 2006; **27**: 232-241 [PMID: 17222534]
 - 144 **Inamura K**, Tsuji H, Nakamoto Y, Suzuki M, Kaneko S. Transgenic mice aberrantly expressing pyruvate dehydrogenase complex E2 component on biliary epithelial cells do not show primary biliary cirrhosis. *Clin Exp Immunol* 2006; **145**: 93-100 [PMID: 16792678]
 - 145 **Tsuneyama K**, Harada K, Kono N, Sasaki M, Saito T, Gershwin ME, Ikemoto M, Arai H, Nakanuma Y. Damaged interlobular bile ducts in primary biliary cirrhosis show reduced expression of glutathione-S-transferase-pi and aberrant expression of 4-hydroxynonenal. *J Hepatol* 2002; **37**: 176-183 [PMID: 12127421]
 - 146 **Kaplan MM**, Elta GH, Furie B, Sadowski JA, Russell RM. Fat-soluble vitamin nutriture in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 1988; **95**: 787-792 [PMID: 3396823]
 - 147 **Sokol RJ**, Kim YS, Hoofnagle JH, Heubi JE, Jones EA, Balistreri WF. Intestinal malabsorption of vitamin E in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 1989; **96**: 479-486 [PMID: 2910763]
 - 148 **Muñoz SJ**, Heubi JE, Balistreri WF, Maddrey WC. Vitamin E deficiency in primary biliary cirrhosis: gastrointestinal malabsorption, frequency and relationship to other lipid-soluble vitamins. *Hepatology* 1989; **9**: 525-531 [PMID: 2925155]
 - 149 **Aboutwerat A**, Pemberton PW, Smith A, Burrows PC, McMahon RF, Jain SK, Warnes TW. Oxidant stress is a significant feature of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2003; **1637**: 142-150 [PMID: 12633902]
 - 150 **Notas G**, Miliaraki N, Kampa M, Dimoulis F, Matrella E, Hatzidakis A, Castanas E, Kouroumalis E. Patients with primary biliary cirrhosis have increased serum total antioxidant capacity measured with the crocin bleaching assay. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 4194-4198 [PMID: 16015688]
 - 151 **Ljubuncic P**, Tanne Z, Bomzon A. Ursodeoxycholic acid suppresses extent of lipid peroxidation in diseased liver in experimental cholestatic liver disease. *Dig Dis Sci* 2000; **45**: 1921-1928 [PMID: 11117561]
 - 152 **Ljubuncic P**, Abu-Salach O, Bomzon A. Ursodeoxycholic acid and superoxide anion. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 4875-4878 [PMID: 16097062]
 - 153 **Serviddio G**, Pereda J, Pallardó FV, Carretero J, Borrás C, Cutrin J, Vendemiale G, Poli G, Viña J, Sastre J. Ursodeoxycholic acid protects against secondary biliary cirrhosis in rats by preventing mitochondrial oxidative stress. *Hepatology* 2004; **39**: 711-720 [PMID: 14999689 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20101]
 - 154 **Parola M**, Leonarduzzi G, Robino G, Albano E, Poli G, Dianzani MU. On the role of lipid peroxidation in the pathogenesis of liver damage induced by long-standing cholestasis. *Free Radic Biol Med* 1996; **20**: 351-359 [PMID: 8720905]
 - 155 **Huang YT**, Hsu YC, Chen CJ, Liu CT, Wei YH. Oxidative-stress-related changes in the livers of bile-duct-ligated rats. *J Biomed Sci* 2003; **10**: 170-178 [PMID: 12595753]
 - 156 **Liu TZ**, Lee KT, Chern CL, Cheng JT, Stern A, Tsai LY. Free radical-triggered hepatic injury of experimental obstructive jaundice of rats involves overproduction of proinflammatory cytokines and enhanced activation of nuclear factor kappaB. *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 2001; **31**: 383-390 [PMID: 11688850]
 - 157 **Sokol RJ**, Straka MS, Dahl R, Devereaux MW, Yerushalmi B, Gumprecht E, Elkins N, Everson G. Role of oxidant stress in the permeability transition induced in rat hepatic mitochondria by hydrophobic bile acids. *Pediatr Res* 2001; **49**: 519-531 [PMID: 11264436 DOI: 10.1203/00006450-200104000-00014]
 - 158 **Sokol RJ**, Winkhofer-Roob BM, Devereaux MW, McKim JM. Generation of hydroperoxides in isolated rat hepatocytes and hepatic mitochondria exposed to hydrophobic bile acids. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **109**: 1249-1256 [PMID: 7557092]
 - 159 **Sokol RJ**, Dahl R, Devereaux MW, Yerushalmi B, Kobak GE, Gumprecht E. Human hepatic mitochondria generate reactive

- oxygen species and undergo the permeability transition in response to hydrophobic bile acids. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2005; **41**: 235-243 [PMID: 16056106]
- 160 **Celli A**, Que FG, Gores GJ, LaRusso NF. Glutathione depletion is associated with decreased Bcl-2 expression and increased apoptosis in cholangiocytes. *Am J Physiol* 1998; **275**: G749-G757 [PMID: 9756506]
 - 161 **Butler P**, Hamilton-Miller J, Baum H, Burroughs AK. Detection of M2 antibodies in patients with recurrent urinary tract infection using an ELISA and purified PBC specific antigens. Evidence for a molecular mimicry mechanism in the pathogenesis of primary biliary cirrhosis? *Biochem Mol Biol Int* 1995; **35**: 473-485 [PMID: 7773184]
 - 162 **Mimura Y**, Sakisaka S, Harada M, Sata M, Tanikawa K. Role of hepatocytes in direct clearance of lipopolysaccharide in rats. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **109**: 1969-1976 [PMID: 7498663]
 - 163 **Tuin A**, Huizinga-Van der Vlag A, van Loenen-Weemaes AM, Meijer DK, Poelstra K. On the role and fate of LPS-dephosphorylating activity in the rat liver. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2006; **290**: G377-G385 [PMID: 16223948]
 - 164 **Sasatomi K**, Noguchi K, Sakisaka S, Sata M, Tanikawa K. Abnormal accumulation of endotoxin in biliary epithelial cells in primary biliary cirrhosis and primary sclerosing cholangitis. *J Hepatol* 1998; **29**: 409-416 [PMID: 9764987]
 - 165 **Harada K**, Nakanuma Y. Cholangiopathy with respect to biliary innate immunity. *Int J Hepatol* 2012; **2012**: 793569 [PMID: 21994888 DOI: 10.1155/2012/793569]
 - 166 **Ide T**, Sata M, Nakano H, Suzuki H, Tanikawa K. Increased serum IgM class anti-lipid A antibody and therapeutic effect of ursodeoxycholic acid in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatogastroenterology* 1997; **44**: 1569-1573 [PMID: 9427024]
 - 167 **Ballot E**, Bandin O, Chazouilleres O, Johanet C, Poupon R. Immune response to lipopolysaccharide in primary biliary cirrhosis and autoimmune diseases. *J Autoimmun* 2004; **22**: 153-158 [PMID: 14987744 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaut.2003.11.002]
 - 168 **Fiorotto R**, Scirpo R, Trauner M, Fabris L, Hoque R, Spirli C, Strazzabosco M. Loss of CFTR affects biliary epithelium innate immunity and causes TLR4-NF- κ B-mediated inflammatory response in mice. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **141**: 1498-1508, 1508.e1-e5 [PMID: 21712022 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.06.052]
 - 169 **Mason A**, Xu L, Shen Z, Fodera B, Joplin R, Neuberger J, O'Donnell B. Patients with primary biliary cirrhosis make anti-viral and anti-mitochondrial antibodies to mouse mammary tumor virus. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: 1863-1864; author reply 1864-1865 [PMID: 15578536]
 - 170 **Mason AL**, Xu L, Guo L, Munoz S, Jaspan JB, Bryer-Ash M, Cao Y, Sander DM, Shoenfeld Y, Ahmed A, Van de Water J, Gershwin ME, Garry RF. Detection of retroviral antibodies in primary biliary cirrhosis and other idiopathic biliary disorders. *Lancet* 1998; **351**: 1620-1624 [PMID: 9620716]
 - 171 **Xu L**, Shen Z, Guo L, Fodera B, Keogh A, Joplin R, O'Donnell B, Aitken J, Carman W, Neuberger J, Mason A. Does a betaretrovirus infection trigger primary biliary cirrhosis? *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 8454-8459 [PMID: 12832623 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1433063100]
 - 172 **Mason AL**, Zhang G. Linking human beta retrovirus infection with primary biliary cirrhosis. *Gastroenterol Clin Biol* 2010; **34**: 359-366 [PMID: 20580176 DOI: 10.1016/j.gcb.2010.04.014]
 - 173 **Mason AL**. The evidence supports a viral aetiology for primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 2011; **54**: 1312-1314 [PMID: 21147183 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.12.009]
 - 174 **Montano-Loza AJ**, Wasilenko S, Bintner J, Mason AL. Cyclosporine A inhibits in vitro replication of betaretrovirus associated with primary biliary cirrhosis. *Liver Int* 2010; **30**: 871-877 [PMID: 20492501 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2010.02257.x]
 - 175 **Selmi C**. The evidence does not support a viral etiology for primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 2011; **54**: 1315-1316 [PMID: 21146570 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.12.010]
 - 176 **Jones DE**. Pathogenesis of primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 2003; **39**: 639-648 [PMID: 12971978]
 - 177 **Selmi C**, Lleo A, Pasini S, Zuin M, Gershwin ME. Innate immunity and primary biliary cirrhosis. *Curr Mol Med* 2009; **9**: 45-51 [PMID: 19199941]
 - 178 **Sasaki M**, Ikeda H, Yamaguchi J, Nakada S, Nakanuma Y. Telomere shortening in the damaged small bile ducts in primary biliary cirrhosis reflects ongoing cellular senescence. *Hepatology* 2008; **48**: 186-195 [PMID: 18536059 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22348]
 - 179 **Dimoulis P**, Kolios G, Notas G, Matrella E, Xidakis C, Koulentaki M, Tsagarakis N, Kouroumalis A, Kouroumalis E. Ursodeoxycholic acid reduces increased circulating endothelin 2 in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2005; **21**: 227-234 [PMID: 15691296]
 - 180 **Kouroumalis E**, Notas G. Pathogenesis of primary biliary cirrhosis: a unifying model. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 2320-2327 [PMID: 16688819]
 - 181 **Tsuneyama K**, Harada K, Kono N, Hiramatsu K, Zen Y, Sudo Y, Gershwin ME, Ikemoto M, Arai H, Nakanuma Y. Scavenger cells with gram-positive bacterial lipoteichoic acid infiltrate around the damaged interlobular bile ducts of primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 2001; **35**: 156-163 [PMID: 11580136]
 - 182 **Speciale L**, Roda K, Saresella M, Taramelli D, Ferrante P. Different endothelins stimulate cytokine production by peritoneal macrophages and microglial cell line. *Immunology* 1998; **93**: 109-114 [PMID: 9536126]
 - 183 **Grimshaw MJ**, Wilson JL, Balkwill FR. Endothelin-2 is a macrophage chemoattractant: implications for macrophage distribution in tumors. *Eur J Immunol* 2002; **32**: 2393-2400 [PMID: 12207323 DOI: 10.1002/1521-4141(200209)32:9<2393::AID-IMMU2393>3.0.CO;2-4]
 - 184 **Colucci G**, Schaffner F, Paronetto F. In situ characterization of the cell-surface antigens of the mononuclear cell infiltrate and bile duct epithelium in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Clin Immunol Immunopathol* 1986; **41**: 35-42 [PMID: 3488860]
 - 185 **Tobe K**, Tsuchiya T, Itoshima T, Nagashima H, Kobayashi T. Electron microscopy of fat-storing cells in liver diseases with special reference to cilia and cytoplasmic cholesterol crystals. *Arch Histol Jpn* 1985; **48**: 435-441 [PMID: 4084006]
 - 186 **Tsuneyama K**, Harada K, Yasoshima M, Hiramatsu K, Mackay CR, Mackay IR, Gershwin ME, Nakanuma Y. Monocyte chemotactic protein-1, -2, and -3 are distinctively expressed in portal tracts and granulomata in primary biliary cirrhosis: implications for pathogenesis. *J Pathol* 2001; **193**: 102-109 [PMID: 11169522 DOI: 10.1002/1096-9896(2000)999:999<::AID-PATH725>3.0.CO;2-P]
 - 187 **Mathew J**, Hines JE, Toole K, Johnson SJ, James OF, Burt AD. Quantitative analysis of macrophages and perisinusoidal cells in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Histopathology* 1994; **25**: 65-70 [PMID: 7959647]
 - 188 **Rockey D**. The cellular pathogenesis of portal hypertension: stellate cell contractility, endothelin, and nitric oxide. *Hepatology* 1997; **25**: 2-5 [PMID: 8985256 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.1997.v25.ajhep0250002]
 - 189 **Sfakianaki O**, Tzardi M, Voumvouraki A, Afgoustaki A, Koulentaki M, Kouroumalis E. Presence of disease specific autoantibodies against liver sinusoidal cells in primary biliary cirrhosis. *World J Hepatol* 2013; **5**: 568-576 [PMID: 24179616 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v5.i10.568]
 - 190 **Mantaka A**, Goulielmos GN, Koulentaki M, Tsagournis O, Voumvouraki A, Kouroumalis EA. Polymorphisms of genes related to endothelial cells are associated with primary biliary cirrhosis patients of Cretan origin. *Hum Immunol* 2012; **73**: 829-835 [PMID: 22609442 DOI: 10.1016/j.humimm.2012.05.003]
 - 191 **Strazzabosco M**, Fabris L. Functional anatomy of normal bile ducts. *Anat Rec (Hoboken)* 2008; **291**: 653-660 [PMID: 18484611 DOI: 10.1002/ar.20664]
 - 192 **Ludwig J**, Batts KP, MacCarty RL. Ischemic cholangitis in hepatic allografts. *Mayo Clin Proc* 1992; **67**: 519-526 [PMID: 1434878]
 - 193 **Koda W**, Harada K, Tsuneyama K, Kono N, Sasaki M, Matsui O, Nakanuma Y. Evidence of the participation of peribiliary mast cells in regulation of the peribiliary vascular plexus along the

- intrahepatic biliary tree. *Lab Invest* 2000; **80**: 1007-1017 [PMID: 10908146]
- 194 **Matsumura S**, Van De Water J, Kita H, Coppel RL, Tsuji T, Yamamoto K, Ansari AA, Gershwin ME. Contribution to antimitochondrial antibody production: cleavage of pyruvate dehydrogenase complex-E2 by apoptosis-related proteases. *Hepatology* 2002; **35**: 14-22 [PMID: 11786955]
 - 195 **Ayres RC**, Neuberger JM, Shaw J, Joplin R, Adams DH. Intercellular adhesion molecule-1 and MHC antigens on human intrahepatic bile duct cells: effect of pro-inflammatory cytokines. *Gut* 1993; **34**: 1245-1249 [PMID: 8104850]
 - 196 **Howell CD**, Li J, Chen W. Role of intercellular adhesion molecule-1 and lymphocyte function-associated antigen-1 during nonsuppurative destructive cholangitis in a mouse graft-versus-host disease model. *Hepatology* 1999; **29**: 766-776 [PMID: 10051478]
 - 197 **Kimura T**, Suzuki K, Inada S, Hayashi A, Isobe M, Matsuzaki Y, Tanaka N, Osuga T, Fujiwara M. Monoclonal antibody against lymphocyte function-associated antigen 1 inhibits the formation of primary biliary cirrhosis-like lesions induced by murine graft-versus-host reaction. *Hepatology* 1996; **24**: 888-894 [PMID: 8855193]
 - 198 **Wakae T**, Takatsuka H, Seto Y, Iwata N, Mori A, Okada M, Fujimori Y, Okamoto T, Kakishita E, Hara H. Similarity between hepatic graft-versus-host disease and primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hematology* 2002; **7**: 305-310 [PMID: 12850818 DOI: 10.1080/1024533021000037171]
 - 199 **Beschorner WE**, Shinn CA, Hess AD, Suresch DL, Santos GW. Immune-related injury to endothelium associated with acute graft-versus-host disease in the rat. *Transplant Proc* 1989; **21**: 3025-3027 [PMID: 2468250]
 - 200 **Hiroyasu S**, Shiraishi M, Kusano T, Muto Y. Involvement of endothelin in graft-versus-host disease after rat small bowel transplantation. *Transpl Int* 1997; **10**: 121-124 [PMID: 9089997]
 - 201 **Pyzik M**, Piccirillo CA. TGF-beta1 modulates Foxp3 expression and regulatory activity in distinct CD4+ T cell subsets. *J Leukoc Biol* 2007; **82**: 335-346 [PMID: 17475784]
 - 202 **Poupon R**. Autoimmune overlapping syndromes. *Clin Liver Dis* 2003; **7**: 865-878 [PMID: 14594134]
 - 203 **Vleggaar FP**, van Buuren HR, Zondervan PE, ten Kate FJ, Hop WC. Jaundice in non-cirrhotic primary biliary cirrhosis: the premature ductopenic variant. *Gut* 2001; **49**: 276-281 [PMID: 11454806]
 - 204 **Parés A**, Rodés J. Natural history of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Clin Liver Dis* 2003; **7**: 779-794 [PMID: 14594131]
 - 205 **Prince MI**, Chetwynd A, Craig WL, Metcalf JV, James OF. Asymptomatic primary biliary cirrhosis: clinical features, prognosis, and symptom progression in a large population based cohort. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 865-870 [PMID: 15138215]
 - 206 **Milkiewicz P**, Heathcote EJ. Fatigue in chronic cholestasis. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 475-477 [PMID: 15016736]
 - 207 **Cauch-Dudek K**, Abbey S, Stewart DE, Heathcote EJ. Fatigue in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Gut* 1998; **43**: 705-710 [PMID: 9824355]
 - 208 **Huet PM**, Deslauriers J, Tran A, Faucher C, Charbonneau J. Impact of fatigue on the quality of life of patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2000; **95**: 760-767 [PMID: 10710071]
 - 209 **Newton JL**, Pairman J, Sutcliffe K, Wilton K, Jones DE. A predictive model for fatigue and its etiologic associations in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **6**: 228-233 [PMID: 18237872 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2007.11.021]
 - 210 **Talwalkar JA**, Souto E, Jorgensen RA, Lindor KD. Natural history of pruritus in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2003; **1**: 297-302 [PMID: 15017671]
 - 211 **Jones DE**. Fatigue in cholestatic liver disease: is it all in the mind? *J Hepatol* 2007; **46**: 992-994 [PMID: 17445940]
 - 212 **Kremer AE**, Beuers U, Oude-Elferink RP, Puhl T. Pathogenesis and treatment of pruritus in cholestasis. *Drugs* 2008; **68**: 2163-2182 [PMID: 18840005]
 - 213 **Koulentaki M**, Ioannidou D, Stefanidou M, Maraki S, Drigiannakis I, Dimoulis P, Melono JM, Tosca A, Kouroumalis EA. Dermatological manifestations in primary biliary cirrhosis patients: a case control study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 541-546 [PMID: 16464228]
 - 214 **Huet PM**, Vincent C, Deslaurier J, Coté J, Matsutani S, Boileau R, Huet-van Kerckvoorde J. Portal hypertension and primary biliary cirrhosis: effect of long-term ursodeoxycholic acid treatment. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **135**: 1552-1560 [PMID: 18722374 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.07.019]
 - 215 **Mayo MJ**. Portal hypertension in primary biliary cirrhosis: a potentially reversible harbinger of demise. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **135**: 1450-1451 [PMID: 18848554 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.09.041]
 - 216 **Colina F**, Pinedo F, Solis JA, Moreno D, Nevado M. Nodular regenerative hyperplasia of the liver in early histological stages of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 1992; **102**: 1319-1324 [PMID: 1551537]
 - 217 **Hodgson SF**, Dickson ER, Wahner HW, Johnson KA, Mann KG, Riggs BL. Bone loss and reduced osteoblast function in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Ann Intern Med* 1985; **103**: 855-860 [PMID: 4062087]
 - 218 **Springer JE**, Cole DE, Rubin LA, Cauch-Dudek K, Harewood L, Evroviski J, Peltekova VD, Heathcote EJ. Vitamin D-receptor genotypes as independent genetic predictors of decreased bone mineral density in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **118**: 145-151 [PMID: 10611163]
 - 219 **Wolke AM**, Schaffner F, Kapelman B, Sacks HS. Malignancy in primary biliary cirrhosis. High incidence of breast cancer in affected women. *Am J Med* 1984; **76**: 1075-1078 [PMID: 6145354]
 - 220 **Goudie BM**, Burt AD, Boyle P, Macfarlane G, Birnie GG, Mills PR, Gillis CR, MacSween RN, Watkinson G. Breast cancer in women with primary biliary cirrhosis. *Br Med J (Clin Res Ed)* 1985; **291**: 1597-1598 [PMID: 3935201]
 - 221 **Löf L**, Adami HO, Sparén P, Danielsson A, Eriksson LS, Hultcrantz R, Lindgren S, Olsson R, Prytz H, Ryden BO. Cancer risk in primary biliary cirrhosis: a population-based study from Sweden. *Hepatology* 1994; **20**: 101-104 [PMID: 8020878]
 - 222 **Jones DE**, Metcalf JV, Collier JD, Bassendine MF, James OF. Hepatocellular carcinoma in primary biliary cirrhosis and its impact on outcomes. *Hepatology* 1997; **26**: 1138-1142 [PMID: 9362353]
 - 223 **Nijhawan PK**, Therneau TM, Dickson ER, Boynton J, Lindor KD. Incidence of cancer in primary biliary cirrhosis: the Mayo experience. *Hepatology* 1999; **29**: 1396-1398 [PMID: 10216121]
 - 224 **Shibuya A**, Tanaka K, Miyakawa H, Shibata M, Takatori M, Sekiyama K, Hashimoto N, Amaki S, Komatsu T, Morizane T. Hepatocellular carcinoma and survival in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2002; **35**: 1172-1178 [PMID: 11981767]
 - 225 **Crowe JP**, Christensen E, Butler J, Wheeler P, Doniach D, Keenan J, Williams R. Primary biliary cirrhosis: the prevalence of hypothyroidism and its relationship to thyroid autoantibodies and sicca syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1980; **78**: 1437-1441 [PMID: 6768634]
 - 226 **Mang FW**, Michieletti P, O'Rourke K, Cauch-Dudek K, Diamant N, Bookman A, Heathcote J. Primary biliary cirrhosis, sicca complex, and dysphagia. *Dysphagia* 1997; **12**: 167-170 [PMID: 9190103]
 - 227 **Watt FE**, James OF, Jones DE. Patterns of autoimmunity in primary biliary cirrhosis patients and their families: a population-based cohort study. *QJM* 2004; **97**: 397-406 [PMID: 15208427]
 - 228 **Prince MI**, Ducker SJ, James OF. Case-control studies of risk factors for primary biliary cirrhosis in two United Kingdom populations. *Gut* 2010; **59**: 508-512 [PMID: 20332522 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2009.184218]
 - 229 **Bush A**, Mitchison H, Walt R, Baron JH, Boylston AW, Summerfield JA. Primary biliary cirrhosis and ulcerative colitis. *Gastroenterology* 1987; **92**: 2009-2013 [PMID: 3569774]
 - 230 **Chatzicostas C**, Roussomoustakaki M, Drygiannakis D, Niniraki M, Tzardi M, Koulentaki M, Dimoulis P, Mouzas I, Kouroumalis E. Primary biliary cirrhosis and autoimmune cholangitis are not

- associated with coeliac disease in Crete. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2002; **2**: 5 [PMID: 11914139]
- 231 **Kaplan MM**, Gershwin ME. Primary biliary cirrhosis. *N Engl J Med* 2005; **353**: 1261-1273 [PMID: 16177252]
 - 232 **Drebbler U**, Mueller JJ, Klein E, Kasper HU, Schulze F, Schardt K, Quasdorff M, Schulte S, Odenthal M, Dienes HP. Liver biopsy in primary biliary cirrhosis: clinicopathological data and stage. *Pathol Int* 2009; **59**: 546-554 [PMID: 19627538 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1827.2009.02405.x]
 - 233 **Szosteki C**, Guldner HH, Will H. Autoantibodies against "nuclear dots" in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Semin Liver Dis* 1997; **17**: 71-78 [PMID: 9089912 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-1007184]
 - 234 **Invernizzi P**, Selmi C, Ranftler C, Podda M, Wiesierska-Gadek J. Antinuclear antibodies in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Semin Liver Dis* 2005; **25**: 298-310 [PMID: 16143945 DOI: 10.1055/s-2005-916321]
 - 235 **Bogdanos DP**, Komorowski L. Disease-specific autoantibodies in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Clin Chim Acta* 2011; **412**: 502-512 [PMID: 21185272 DOI: 10.1016/j.cca.2010.12.019]
 - 236 **Sternsdorf T**, Guldner HH, Szosteki C, Gröttinger T, Will H. Two nuclear dot-associated proteins, PML and Sp100, are often co-autoimmunogenic in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. *Scand J Immunol* 1995; **42**: 257-268 [PMID: 7631159]
 - 237 **Granito A**, Yang WH, Muratori L, Lim MJ, Nakajima A, Ferri S, Pappas G, Quarneri C, Bianchi FB, Bloch DB, Muratori P. PML nuclear body component Sp140 is a novel autoantigen in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 125-131 [PMID: 19861957 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2009.596]
 - 238 **Courvalin JC**, Lassoued K, Bartnik E, Blobel G, Wozniak RW. The 210-kD nuclear envelope polypeptide recognized by human autoantibodies in primary biliary cirrhosis is the major glycoprotein of the nuclear pore. *J Clin Invest* 1990; **86**: 279-285 [PMID: 2195063 DOI: 10.1172/JCI114696]
 - 239 **Wesierska-Gadek J**, Hohenauer H, Hitchman E, Penner E. Autoantibodies against nucleoporin p62 constitute a novel marker of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 1996; **110**: 840-847 [PMID: 8608894]
 - 240 **Muratori P**, Muratori L, Ferrari R, Cassani F, Bianchi G, Lenzi M, Rodrigo L, Linares A, Fuentes D, Bianchi FB. Characterization and clinical impact of antinuclear antibodies in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: 431-437 [PMID: 12591064]
 - 241 **Nakamura M**, Takii Y, Ito M, Komori A, Yokoyama T, Shimizu-Yoshida Y, Koyabu M, Matsuyama M, Mori T, Kamihira T, Daikoku M, Migita K, Yatsuhashi H, Nozaki N, Shimoda S, Ishibashi H. Increased expression of nuclear envelope gp210 antigen in small bile ducts in primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Autoimmun* 2006; **26**: 138-145 [PMID: 16337775]
 - 242 **Voumvouraki A**, Koulentaki M, Notas G, Sfakianaki O, Kouroumalis E. Serum surrogate markers of liver fibrosis in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Eur J Intern Med* 2011; **22**: 77-83 [PMID: 21238899 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejim.2010.10.002]
 - 243 **Floreani A**, Cazzagon N, Martinez D, Cavalletto L, Baldo V, Chemello L. Performance and utility of transient elastography and noninvasive markers of liver fibrosis in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Dig Liver Dis* 2011; **43**: 887-892 [PMID: 21783442 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2011.06.011]
 - 244 **Corpechot C**, Carrat F, Poujol-Robert A, Gaouar F, Wendum D, Chazouillères O, Poupon R. Noninvasive elastography-based assessment of liver fibrosis progression and prognosis in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2012; **56**: 198-208 [PMID: 22271046 DOI: 10.1002/hep.25599]
 - 245 **Cassinotto C**, Lapuyade B, Mouries A, Hiriart JB, Vergniol J, Gaye D, Castain C, Le Bail B, Chermak F, Foucher J, Laurent F, Montaudon M, De Ledinghen V. Non-invasive assessment of liver fibrosis with impulse elastography: comparison of Supersonic Shear Imaging with ARFI and FibroScan®. *J Hepatol* 2014; **61**: 550-557 [PMID: 24815876 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2014.04.044]
 - 246 **Ludwig J**, Dickson ER, McDonald GS. Staging of chronic nonsuppurative destructive cholangitis (syndrome of primary biliary cirrhosis). *Virchows Arch A Pathol Anat Histol* 1978; **379**: 103-112 [PMID: 150690]
 - 247 **Scheuer P**. Primary biliary cirrhosis. *Proc R Soc Med* 1967; **60**: 1257-1260 [PMID: 6066569]
 - 248 **Nakanuma Y**, Harada K. Florid duct lesion in primary biliary cirrhosis shows highly proliferative activities. *J Hepatol* 1993; **19**: 216-221 [PMID: 7905494]
 - 249 **Kakuda Y**, Harada K, Sawada-Kitamura S, Ikeda H, Sato Y, Sasaki M, Okafuji H, Mizukoshi E, Terasaki S, Ohta H, Kasashima S, Kawashima A, Kaizaki Y, Kaneko S, Nakanuma Y. Evaluation of a new histologic staging and grading system for primary biliary cirrhosis in comparison with classical systems. *Hum Pathol* 2013; **44**: 1107-1117 [PMID: 23313306 DOI: 10.1016/j.humpath.2012.09.017]
 - 250 **Nakanuma Y**, Harada K. The role of the pathologist in diagnosing and grading biliary diseases. *Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol* 2011; **35**: 347-352 [PMID: 21474418 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinre.2011.01.018]
 - 251 **Nakanuma Y**, Zen Y, Harada K, Sasaki M, Nonomura A, Uehara T, Sano K, Kondo F, Fukusato T, Tsuneyama K, Ito M, Wakasa K, Nomoto M, Minato H, Haga H, Kage M, Yano H, Haratake J, Aishima S, Masuda T, Aoyama H, Miyakawa-Hayashino A, Matsumoto T, Sanefuji H, Ojima H, Chen TC, Yu E, Kim JH, Park YN, Tsui W. Application of a new histological staging and grading system for primary biliary cirrhosis to liver biopsy specimens: Interobserver agreement. *Pathol Int* 2010; **60**: 167-174 [PMID: 20403042 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1827.2009.02500.x]
 - 252 **Bioulac-Sage P**. Primary biliary cirrhosis: a new histological staging and grading system proposed by Japanese authors. *Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol* 2011; **35**: 333-335 [PMID: 21497151 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinre.2011.03.001]
 - 253 **Shapiro JM**, Smith H, Schaffner F. Serum bilirubin: a prognostic factor in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Gut* 1979; **20**: 137-140 [PMID: 428825]
 - 254 **Christensen E**, Crowe J, Doniach D, Popper H, Ranek L, Rodés J, Tygstrup N, Williams R. Clinical pattern and course of disease in primary biliary cirrhosis based on an analysis of 236 patients. *Gastroenterology* 1980; **78**: 236-246 [PMID: 7350046]
 - 255 **Prince M**, Chetwynd A, Newman W, Metcalf JV, James OF. Survival and symptom progression in a geographically based cohort of patients with primary biliary cirrhosis: follow-up for up to 28 years. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **123**: 1044-1051 [PMID: 12360466]
 - 256 **Locke GR**, Therneau TM, Ludwig J, Dickson ER, Lindor KD. Time course of histological progression in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 1996; **23**: 52-56 [PMID: 8550048]
 - 257 **Gores GJ**, Wiesner RH, Dickson ER, Zinsmeister AR, Jorgensen RA, Langworthy A. Prospective evaluation of esophageal varices in primary biliary cirrhosis: development, natural history, and influence on survival. *Gastroenterology* 1989; **96**: 1552-1559 [PMID: 2785470]
 - 258 **Imam MH**, Talwalkar JA, Lindor KD. Clinical management of autoimmune biliary diseases. *J Autoimmun* 2013; **46**: 88-96 [PMID: 23860242 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaut.2013.06.014]
 - 259 **Poupon R**, Chrétien Y, Poupon RE, Ballet F, Calmus Y, Darnis F. Is ursodeoxycholic acid an effective treatment for primary biliary cirrhosis? *Lancet* 1987; **1**: 834-836 [PMID: 2882236]
 - 260 **Poupon RE**, Bonnard AM, Chrétien Y, Poupon R. Ten-year survival in ursodeoxycholic acid-treated patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. The UDCA-PBC Study Group. *Hepatology* 1999; **29**: 1668-1671 [PMID: 10347106]
 - 261 **ter Borg PC**, Schalm SW, Hansen BE, van Buuren HR. Prognosis of ursodeoxycholic Acid-treated patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. Results of a 10-yr cohort study involving 297 patients. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 2044-2050 [PMID: 16848809]
 - 262 **Parés A**, Caballería L, Rodés J. Excellent long-term survival in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis and biochemical response to ursodeoxycholic Acid. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 715-720 [PMID: 16530513]
 - 263 **Corpechot C**, Carrat F, Bahr A, Chrétien Y, Poupon RE, Poupon R. The effect of ursodeoxycholic acid therapy on the natural course

- of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: 297-303 [PMID: 15685541]
- 264 **Koulentaki M**, Moscandrea J, Dimoulis P, Chatzicostas C, Kouroumalis EA. Survival of anti-mitochondrial antibody-positive and -negative primary biliary cirrhosis patients on ursodeoxycholic acid treatment. *Dig Dis Sci* 2004; **49**: 1190-1195 [PMID: 15387345]
 - 265 **Leuschner M**. UDCA, PBC, and biochemistry, what does normal mean? *Gut* 2000; **47**: 595-596 [PMID: 11203304]
 - 266 **Poupon RE**, Balkau B, Eschwège E, Poupon R. A multicenter, controlled trial of ursodiol for the treatment of primary biliary cirrhosis. UDCA-PBC Study Group. *N Engl J Med* 1991; **324**: 1548-1554 [PMID: 1674105 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199105303242204]
 - 267 **Poupon RE**, Poupon R, Balkau B. Ursodiol for the long-term treatment of primary biliary cirrhosis. The UDCA-PBC Study Group. *N Engl J Med* 1994; **330**: 1342-1347 [PMID: 8152446 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199405123301903]
 - 268 **Poupon RE**, Lindor KD, Cauch-Dudek K, Dickson ER, Poupon R, Heathcote EJ. Combined analysis of randomized controlled trials of ursodeoxycholic acid in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **113**: 884-890 [PMID: 9287980]
 - 269 **Lindor KD**, Thorneau TM, Jorgensen RA, Malinchoc M, Dickson ER. Effects of ursodeoxycholic acid on survival in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 1996; **110**: 1515-1518 [PMID: 8613058]
 - 270 **Heathcote EJ**, Cauch-Dudek K, Walker V, Bailey RJ, Blendis LM, Ghent CN, Michieletti P, Minuk GY, Pappas SC, Scully LJ. The Canadian Multicenter Double-blind Randomized Controlled Trial of ursodeoxycholic acid in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 1994; **19**: 1149-1156 [PMID: 8175136]
 - 271 **Poupon RE**, Lindor KD, Parés A, Chazouillères O, Poupon R, Heathcote EJ. Combined analysis of the effect of treatment with ursodeoxycholic acid on histologic progression in primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 2003; **39**: 12-16 [PMID: 12821038]
 - 272 **Angulo P**, Batts KP, Thorneau TM, Jorgensen RA, Dickson ER, Lindor KD. Long-term ursodeoxycholic acid delays histological progression in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 1999; **29**: 644-647 [PMID: 10051462]
 - 273 **Corpechot C**, Carrat F, Bonnard AM, Poupon RE, Poupon R. The effect of ursodeoxycholic acid therapy on liver fibrosis progression in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2000; **32**: 1196-1199 [PMID: 11093724]
 - 274 **Lindor KD**, Jorgensen RA, Thorneau TM, Malinchoc M, Dickson ER. Ursodeoxycholic acid delays the onset of esophageal varices in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Mayo Clin Proc* 1997; **72**: 1137-1140 [PMID: 9413293]
 - 275 **Rudic JS**, Poropat G, Krstic MN, Bjelakovic G, Gluud C. Ursodeoxycholic acid for primary biliary cirrhosis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; **12**: CD000551 [PMID: 23235576 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD000551.pub3]
 - 276 **Goulis J**, Leandro G, Burroughs AK. Randomised controlled trials of ursodeoxycholic-acid therapy for primary biliary cirrhosis: a meta-analysis. *Lancet* 1999; **354**: 1053-1060 [PMID: 10509495]
 - 277 **Gong Y**, Huang Z, Christensen E, Gluud C. Ursodeoxycholic acid for patients with primary biliary cirrhosis: an updated systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials using Bayesian approach as sensitivity analyses. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2007; **102**: 1799-1807 [PMID: 17459023]
 - 278 **Shi J**, Wu C, Lin Y, Chen YX, Zhu L, Xie WF. Long-term effects of mid-dose ursodeoxycholic acid in primary biliary cirrhosis: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 1529-1538 [PMID: 16863557]
 - 279 **Carbone M**, Mells GF, Pells G, Dawwas MF, Newton JL, Heneghan MA, Neuberger JM, Day DB, Ducker SJ, Sandford RN, Alexander GJ, Jones DE. Sex and age are determinants of the clinical phenotype of primary biliary cirrhosis and response to ursodeoxycholic acid. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **144**: 560-569.e7; quiz e13-14 [PMID: 23246637 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2012.12.005]
 - 280 **Roda E**, Azzaroli F, Nigro G, Piazza F, Jaboli F, Ferrara F, Liva S, Giovannelli S, Miracolo A, Colecchia A, Festi D, Mazzeo C, Bacchi L, Roda A, Mazzella G. Improved liver tests and greater biliary enrichment with high dose ursodeoxycholic acid in early stage primary biliary cirrhosis. *Dig Liver Dis* 2002; **34**: 523-527 [PMID: 12236487]
 - 281 **Corpechot C**, Abenavoli L, Rabahi N, Chrétien Y, Andréani T, Johanet C, Chazouillères O, Poupon R. Biochemical response to ursodeoxycholic acid and long-term prognosis in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2008; **48**: 871-877 [PMID: 18752324 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22428]
 - 282 **Corpechot C**, Chazouillères O, Poupon R. Early primary biliary cirrhosis: biochemical response to treatment and prediction of long-term outcome. *J Hepatol* 2011; **55**: 1361-1367 [PMID: 21703194 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2011.02.031]
 - 283 **Corpechot C**. Primary biliary cirrhosis and bile acids. *Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol* 2012; **36** Suppl 1: S13-S20 [PMID: 23141888 DOI: 10.1016/S2210-7401(12)70016-5]
 - 284 **Jorgensen RA**, Dickson ER, Hofmann AF, Rossi SS, Lindor KD. Characterisation of patients with a complete biochemical response to ursodeoxycholic acid. *Gut* 1995; **36**: 935-938 [PMID: 7615288]
 - 285 **Kuiper EM**, Hansen BE, Lesterhuis W, Robijn RJ, Thijs JC, Engels LG, Koek GH, Aparicio MN, Kerbert-Dreteler MJ, van Buuren HR. The long-term effect of ursodeoxycholic acid on laboratory liver parameters in biochemically non-advanced primary biliary cirrhosis. *Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol* 2011; **35**: 29-33 [PMID: 20810227 DOI: 10.1016/j.gcb.2010.07.018]
 - 286 **Kuiper EM**, Hansen BE, de Vries RA, den Ouden-Muller JW, van Ditzhuijsen TJ, Haagsma EB, Houben MH, Witteman BJ, van Erpecum KJ, van Buuren HR. Improved prognosis of patients with primary biliary cirrhosis that have a biochemical response to ursodeoxycholic acid. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **136**: 1281-1287 [PMID: 19208346 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.01.003]
 - 287 **Kumagi T**, Guindi M, Fischer SE, Arenovich T, Abdalian R, Coltescu C, Heathcote EJ, Hirschfield GM. Baseline ductopenia and treatment response predict long-term histological progression in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 2186-2194 [PMID: 20502446 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2010.216]
 - 288 **Lee J**, Belanger A, Doucette JT, Stanca C, Friedman S, Bach N. Transplantation trends in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2007; **5**: 1313-1315 [PMID: 17900996]
 - 289 **Corpechot C**, Poupon R. Geotherapeutics of primary biliary cirrhosis: bright and sunny around the Mediterranean but still cloudy and foggy in the United Kingdom. *Hepatology* 2007; **46**: 963-965 [PMID: 17894325 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21871]
 - 290 **Thomas C**, Auwerx J, Schoonjans K. Bile acids and the membrane bile acid receptor TGR5--connecting nutrition and metabolism. *Thyroid* 2008; **18**: 167-174 [PMID: 18279017 DOI: 10.1089/thy.2007.0255]
 - 291 **Poupon R**, Chrétien Y, Chazouillères O, Poupon RE. Pregnancy in women with ursodeoxycholic acid-treated primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 2005; **42**: 418-419 [PMID: 15710226]
 - 292 **Westbrook R**, Hughes S, O'Grady J, Devlin J, Harrison P, Heneghan M. Pregnancy in cholestatic disease. *Hepatology* 2011; **54** (Suppl 1): 926A
 - 293 **Kumagi T**, Al - Harthy N, Coltescu C, GM H. Pregnancy and primary biliary cirrhosis: cross-sectional and retrospective analyses demonstrate a high prevalence of symptoms and a risk of disease progression. *Hepatology* 2009; **50** (Suppl 4): 1008A
 - 294 **Iwasaki S**, Ohira H, Nishiguchi S, Zeniya M, Kaneko S, Onji M, Ishibashi H, Sakaida I, Kuriyama S, Ichida T, Onishi S, Toda G. The efficacy of ursodeoxycholic acid and bezafibrate combination therapy for primary biliary cirrhosis: A prospective, multicenter study. *Hepatol Res* 2008; **38**: 557-564 [PMID: 18452482 DOI: 10.1111/j.1872-034X.2007.00305.x]
 - 295 **Honda A**, Ikegami T, Nakamuta M, Miyazaki T, Iwamoto J, Hirayama T, Saito Y, Takikawa H, Imawari M, Matsuzaki Y. Anticholestatic effects of bezafibrate in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis treated with ursodeoxycholic acid. *Hepatology* 2013; **57**: 1931-1941 [PMID: 22911624 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26018]
 - 296 **Rudic JS**, Poropat G, Krstic MN, Bjelakovic G, Gluud C. Bezafibrate for primary biliary cirrhosis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; **1**:

- CD009145 [PMID: 22259000 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD009145.pub2]
- 297 **Zhang Y**, Chen K, Dai W, Xia Y, Wang F, Shen M, Cheng P, Wang C, Yang J, Zhu R, Zhang H, Li J, Zheng Y, Wang J, Lu J, Zhou Y, Guo C. Combination therapy of bezafibrate and ursodeoxycholic acid for primary biliary cirrhosis: A meta-analysis. *Hepatol Res* 2015; **45**: 48-58 [PMID: 24934524 DOI: 10.1111/hepr.12373]
 - 298 **Kaplan MM**, Schmid C, Provenzale D, Sharma A, Dickstein G, McKusick A. A prospective trial of colchicine and methotrexate in the treatment of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **117**: 1173-1180 [PMID: 10535881]
 - 299 **Babatin MA**, Sanai FM, Swain MG. Methotrexate therapy for the symptomatic treatment of primary biliary cirrhosis patients, who are biochemical incomplete responders to ursodeoxycholic acid therapy. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2006; **24**: 813-820 [PMID: 16918885]
 - 300 **Lindor KD**, Dickson ER, Jorgensen RA, Anderson ML, Wiesner RH, Gores GJ, Lange SM, Rossi SS, Hofmann AF, Baldus WP. The combination of ursodeoxycholic acid and methotrexate for patients with primary biliary cirrhosis: the results of a pilot study. *Hepatology* 1995; **22**: 1158-1162 [PMID: 7557866]
 - 301 **González-Koch A**, Brahm J, Antezana C, Smok G, Cumsille MA. The combination of ursodeoxycholic acid and methotrexate for primary biliary cirrhosis is not better than ursodeoxycholic acid alone. *J Hepatol* 1997; **27**: 143-149 [PMID: 9252088]
 - 302 **Combes B**, Emerson SS, Flye NL, Munoz SJ, Luketic VA, Mayo MJ, McCashland TM, Zetterman RK, Peters MG, Di Bisceglie AM, Benner KG, Kowdley KV, Carithers RL, Rosoff L, Garcia-Tsao G, Boyer JL, Boyer TD, Martinez EJ, Bass NM, Lake JR, Barnes DS, Bonacini M, Lindsay KL, Mills AS, Markin RS, Rubin R, West AB, Wheeler DE, Contos MJ, Hofmann AF. Methotrexate (MTX) plus ursodeoxycholic acid (UDCA) in the treatment of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2005; **42**: 1184-1193 [PMID: 16250039 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20897]
 - 303 **Kaplan MM**, Cheng S, Price LL, Bonis PA. A randomized controlled trial of colchicine plus ursodiol versus methotrexate plus ursodiol in primary biliary cirrhosis: ten-year results. *Hepatology* 2004; **39**: 915-923 [PMID: 15057894 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20103]
 - 304 **Leung J**, Bonis PA, Kaplan MM. Colchicine or methotrexate, with ursodiol, are effective after 20 years in a subset of patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **9**: 776-780 [PMID: 21699802 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2011.05.010]
 - 305 **Leuschner M**, Maier KP, Schlichting J, Strahl S, Herrmann G, Dahm HH, Ackermann H, Happ J, Leuschner U. Oral budesonide and ursodeoxycholic acid for treatment of primary biliary cirrhosis: results of a prospective double-blind trial. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **117**: 918-925 [PMID: 10500075]
 - 306 **Rautiainen H**, Kärkkäinen P, Karvonen AL, Nurmi H, Pikkarainen P, Nuutinen H, Färkkilä M. Budesonide combined with UDCA to improve liver histology in primary biliary cirrhosis: a three-year randomized trial. *Hepatology* 2005; **41**: 747-752 [PMID: 15754377 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20646]
 - 307 **Li WX**, Yan X, Shi CR, Zhang AP. Chlorambucil for patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; **9**: CD008714 [PMID: 22972125 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD008714.pub2]
 - 308 **Askari F**, Innis D, Dick RB, Hou G, Marrero J, Greenon J, Brewer GJ. Treatment of primary biliary cirrhosis with tetrathiomolybdate: results of a double-blind trial. *Transl Res* 2010; **155**: 123-130 [PMID: 20171597 DOI: 10.1016/j.trsl.2009.09.009]
 - 309 **Myers RP**, Swain MG, Lee SS, Shaheen AA, Burak KW. B-cell depletion with rituximab in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis refractory to ursodeoxycholic acid. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2013; **108**: 933-941 [PMID: 23649186 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2013.51]
 - 310 **Moritoki Y**, Lian ZX, Lindor K, Tuscano J, Tsuneyama K, Zhang W, Ueno Y, Dunn R, Kehry M, Coppel RL, Mackay IR, Gershwin ME. B-cell depletion with anti-CD20 ameliorates autoimmune cholangitis but exacerbates colitis in transforming growth factor-beta receptor II dominant negative mice. *Hepatology* 2009; **50**: 1893-1903 [PMID: 19877182 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23238]
 - 311 **Tsuda M**, Moritoki Y, Lian ZX, Zhang W, Yoshida K, Wakabayashi K, Yang GX, Nakatani T, Vierling J, Lindor K, Gershwin ME, Bowlus CL. Biochemical and immunologic effects of rituximab in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis and an incomplete response to ursodeoxycholic acid. *Hepatology* 2012; **55**: 512-521 [PMID: 22006563 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24748]
 - 312 **Dhirapong A**, Yang GX, Nadler S, Zhang W, Tsuneyama K, Leung P, Knechtle S, Ansari AA, Coppel RL, Liu FT, He XS, Gershwin ME. Therapeutic effect of cytotoxic T lymphocyte antigen 4/immunoglobulin on a murine model of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2013; **57**: 708-715 [PMID: 22996325 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26067]
 - 313 **Chignard N**, Poupon R. Targeting farnesoid x receptor in hepatic and biliary inflammatory diseases. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **137**: 734-735; discussion 736 [PMID: 19563842 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.06.027]
 - 314 **Kowdley K**, Luketic V, Jones D, Chapman R, Burroughs A, Hirschfield G, Poupon R, Schramm C, Vincent C, Rust C, Pares A, Mason A, Castelloe E, Sciacca C, Boehm O, Pruzanski M, Shapiro D. The first new monotherapy therapeutic PBC study in a decade? An international study evaluating the farnesoid X receptor agonist obeticholic acid in PBC. *Hepatology* 2011; **54**: 416A
 - 315 **Pellicciari R**, Fiorucci S, Camaioni E, Clerici C, Costantino G, Maloney PR, Morelli A, Parks DJ, Willson TM. 6alpha-ethylchenodeoxycholic acid (6-ECDCA), a potent and selective FXR agonist endowed with anticholestatic activity. *J Med Chem* 2002; **45**: 3569-3572 [PMID: 12166927]
 - 316 **Song KH**, Li T, Owsley E, Strom S, Chiang JY. Bile acids activate fibroblast growth factor 19 signaling in human hepatocytes to inhibit cholesterol 7alpha-hydroxylase gene expression. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: 297-305 [PMID: 19085950 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22627]
 - 317 **Hofmann AF**, Mangelsdorf DJ, Kliewer SA. Chronic diarrhea due to excessive bile acid synthesis and not defective ileal transport: a new syndrome of defective fibroblast growth factor 19 release. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **7**: 1151-1154 [PMID: 19665580 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2009.07.026]
 - 318 **Fiorucci S**, Antonelli E, Rizzo G, Renga B, Mencarelli A, Riccardi L, Orlandi S, Pellicciari R, Morelli A. The nuclear receptor SHP mediates inhibition of hepatic stellate cells by FXR and protects against liver fibrosis. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: 1497-1512 [PMID: 15521018]
 - 319 **Fiorucci S**, Rizzo G, Antonelli E, Renga B, Mencarelli A, Riccardi L, Morelli A, Pruzanski M, Pellicciari R. Cross-talk between farnesoid-X-receptor (FXR) and peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma contributes to the antifibrotic activity of FXR ligands in rodent models of liver cirrhosis. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 2005; **315**: 58-68 [PMID: 15980055]
 - 320 **Mason A**, Luketic V, Lindor K, Hirschfield G, Gordon S, Mayo M, Kowdley K, Pares A, Trauner M, Sciacca C, Beecher Jones T, Pruzanski M, Shapiro D. Farnesoid - X Receptor Agonists: a New Class of Drugs for the Treatment of PBC? An International Study Evaluating the Addition of Obeticholic Acid (INT - 747) to Ursodeoxycholic Acid. *Hepatology* 2010; **52** (Suppl 1): 357A
 - 321 **Hirschfield GM**, Mason A, Luketic V, Lindor K, Gordon SC, Mayo M, Kowdley KV, Vincent C, Bodhenheimer HC, Parés A, Trauner M, Marschall HU, Adorini L, Sciacca C, Beecher-Jones T, Castelloe E, Böhm O, Shapiro D. Efficacy of obeticholic acid in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis and inadequate response to ursodeoxycholic acid. *Gastroenterology* 2015; **148**: 751-761.e8 [PMID: 25500425 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.12.005]
 - 322 **Marschall HU**, Luketic VA, Mason AL, Lindor KD, Hirschfield GM, Gordon SC, Mayo MJ, Kowdley KV, Pares A, Trauner M, Eliot L, Hofmann AF, Sciacca CI, Shapiro DA. The Farnesoid X receptor (FXR) agonist obeticholic acid (INT-747, 6 alpha-ethyl chenodeoxycholic acid) in combination with ursodeoxycholic acid (UDCA) increases plasma FGF-19 concentration or profile in Primary Biliary Cirrhosis (PBC). *Hepatology* 2010; **52**: 355a-356a
 - 323 **Kowdley KV**, Jones D, Luketic V, Chapman R, Burroughs A, Hirschfield G, Poupon R, Schramm C, Vincent C, Rust C, Pares

- A, Mason A, Sciacca C, Beecher-Jones T, Bohm O, Castellote E, Pruzanski M, Shapiro D, Grp OPS. An International Study Evaluating the Farnesoid X Receptor Agonist Obeticholic Acid as Monotherapy in Pbc. *Hepatology* 2011; **54**: S13-S13
- 324 **Poupon RE**, Chrétien Y, Poupon R, Paumgartner G. Serum bile acids in primary biliary cirrhosis: effect of ursodeoxycholic acid therapy. *Hepatology* 1993; **17**: 599-604 [PMID: 8477964]
- 325 **Lindor KD**, Lacerda MA, Jorgensen RA, DeSotel CK, Batta AK, Salen G, Dickson ER, Rossi SS, Hofmann AF. Relationship between biliary and serum bile acids and response to ursodeoxycholic acid in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1998; **93**: 1498-1504 [PMID: 9732932]
- 326 **Marteau P**, Chazouillères O, Myara A, Jian R, Rambaud JC, Poupon R. Effect of chronic administration of ursodeoxycholic acid on the ileal absorption of endogenous bile acids in man. *Hepatology* 1990; **12**: 1206-1208 [PMID: 2227819]
- 327 **Eusufzai S**, Ericsson S, Cederlund T, Einarsson K, Angelin B. Effect of ursodeoxycholic acid treatment on ileal absorption of bile acids in man as determined by the SeHCAT test. *Gut* 1991; **32**: 1044-1048 [PMID: 1916489]
- 328 **Marschall HU**, Wagner M, Zollner G, Fickert P, Diczfalusy U, Gumhold J, Silbert D, Fuchsbichler A, Benthin L, Grundström R, Gustafsson U, Sahlin S, Einarsson C, Trauner M. Complementary stimulation of hepatobiliary transport and detoxification systems by rifampicin and ursodeoxycholic acid in humans. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **129**: 476-485 [PMID: 16083704]
- 329 **Paumgartner G**, Beuers U. Ursodeoxycholic acid in cholestatic liver disease: mechanisms of action and therapeutic use revisited. *Hepatology* 2002; **36**: 525-531 [PMID: 12198643]
- 330 **Prieto J**, García N, Martí-Climent JM, Peñuelas I, Richter JA, Medina JF. Assessment of biliary bicarbonate secretion in humans by positron emission tomography. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **117**: 167-172 [PMID: 10381924]
- 331 **Mitsuyoshi H**, Nakashima T, Sumida Y, Yoh T, Nakajima Y, Ishikawa H, Inaba K, Sakamoto Y, Okanoue T, Kashima K. Ursodeoxycholic acid protects hepatocytes against oxidative injury via induction of antioxidants. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1999; **263**: 537-542 [PMID: 10491327 DOI: 10.1006/bbrc.1999.1403]
- 332 **Rodríguez-Ortigosa CM**, Cincu RN, Sanz S, Ruiz F, Quiroga J, Prieto J. Effect of ursodeoxycholic acid on methionine adenosyltransferase activity and hepatic glutathione metabolism in rats. *Gut* 2002; **50**: 701-706 [PMID: 11950820]
- 333 **Bernstein C**, Payne CM, Bernstein H, Garewal H. Activation of the metallothionein IIA promoter and other key stress response elements by ursodeoxycholate in HepG2 cells: relevance to the cytoprotective function of ursodeoxycholate. *Pharmacology* 2002; **65**: 2-9 [PMID: 11901295]
- 334 **Lapenna D**, Ciofani G, Festi D, Neri M, Pierdomenico SD, Giamberardino MA, Cuccurullo F. Antioxidant properties of ursodeoxycholic acid. *Biochem Pharmacol* 2002; **64**: 1661-1667 [PMID: 12429355]
- 335 **Arisawa S**, Ishida K, Kameyama N, Ueyama J, Hattori A, Tatsumi Y, Hayashi H, Yano M, Hayashi K, Katano Y, Goto H, Takagi K, Wakusawa S. Ursodeoxycholic acid induces glutathione synthesis through activation of PI3K/Akt pathway in HepG2 cells. *Biochem Pharmacol* 2009; **77**: 858-866 [PMID: 19073151 DOI: 10.1016/j.bcp.2008.11.012]
- 336 **Okada K**, Shoda J, Taguchi K, Maher JM, Ishizaki K, Inoue Y, Ohtsuki M, Goto N, Takeda K, Utsunomiya H, Oda K, Warabi E, Ishii T, Osaka K, Hyodo I, Yamamoto M. Ursodeoxycholic acid stimulates Nrf2-mediated hepatocellular transport, detoxification, and antioxidative stress systems in mice. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2008; **295**: G735-G747 [PMID: 18687751 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.90321.2008]
- 337 **Yang H**, Ramani K, Xia M, Ko KS, Li TW, Oh P, Li J, Lu SC. Dysregulation of glutathione synthesis during cholestasis in mice: molecular mechanisms and therapeutic implications. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: 1982-1991 [PMID: 19399914 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22908]
- 338 **Kawata K**, Kobayashi Y, Souda K, Kawamura K, Sumiyoshi S, Takahashi Y, Noritake H, Watanabe S, Suehiro T, Nakamura H. Enhanced hepatic Nrf2 activation after ursodeoxycholic acid treatment in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. *Antioxid Redox Signal* 2010; **13**: 259-268 [PMID: 20055754 DOI: 10.1089/ars.2009.2903]
- 339 **Rodrigues CM**, Fan G, Ma X, Kren BT, Steer CJ. A novel role for ursodeoxycholic acid in inhibiting apoptosis by modulating mitochondrial membrane perturbation. *J Clin Invest* 1998; **101**: 2790-2799 [PMID: 9637713 DOI: 10.1172/JCI1325]
- 340 **Koga H**, Sakisaka S, Ohishi M, Sata M, Tanikawa K. Nuclear DNA fragmentation and expression of Bcl-2 in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 1997; **25**: 1077-1084 [PMID: 9141420]
- 341 **Xie Q**, Khaoustov VI, Chung CC, Sohn J, Krishnan B, Lewis DE, Yoffe B. Effect of tauroursodeoxycholic acid on endoplasmic reticulum stress-induced caspase-12 activation. *Hepatology* 2002; **36**: 592-601 [PMID: 12198651]
- 342 **Qiao L**, Yacoub A, Studer E, Gupta S, Pei XY, Grant S, Hylemon PB, Dent P. Inhibition of the MAPK and PI3K pathways enhances UDCA-induced apoptosis in primary rodent hepatocytes. *Hepatology* 2002; **35**: 779-789 [PMID: 11915023]
- 343 **Schoemaker MH**, Conde de la Rosa L, Buist-Homan M, Vrenken TE, Havinga R, Poelstra K, Haisma HJ, Jansen PL, Moshage H. Tauroursodeoxycholic acid protects rat hepatocytes from bile acid-induced apoptosis via activation of survival pathways. *Hepatology* 2004; **39**: 1563-1573 [PMID: 15185297 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20246]
- 344 **Solá S**, Castro RE, Kren BT, Steer CJ, Rodrigues CM. Modulation of nuclear steroid receptors by ursodeoxycholic acid inhibits TGF-beta1-induced E2F-1/p53-mediated apoptosis of rat hepatocytes. *Biochemistry* 2004; **43**: 8429-8438 [PMID: 15222754 DOI: 10.1021/bi049781x]
- 345 **Tsagarakis NJ**, Drygiannakis I, Batistakis AG, Kolios G, Kouroumalis EA. A concentration-dependent effect of ursodeoxycholate on apoptosis and caspases activities of HepG2 hepatocellular carcinoma cells. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2010; **640**: 1-7 [PMID: 20451512 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejphar.2010.04.023]
- 346 **Ikegami T**, Matsuzaki Y, Fukushima S, Shoda J, Olivier JL, Bouscarel B, Tanaka N. Suppressive effect of ursodeoxycholic acid on type IIA phospholipase A2 expression in HepG2 cells. *Hepatology* 2005; **41**: 896-905 [PMID: 15793850 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20630]
- 347 **Calmus Y**, Gane P, Rouger P, Poupon R. Hepatic expression of class I and class II major histocompatibility complex molecules in primary biliary cirrhosis: effect of ursodeoxycholic acid. *Hepatology* 1990; **11**: 12-15 [PMID: 2403961]
- 348 **Kikuchi K**, Hsu W, Hosoya N, Moritoki Y, Kajiyama Y, Kawai T, Takai A, Hayami E, Selmi C, Gershwin ME, Miyakawa H. Ursodeoxycholic acid reduces CpG-induced IgM production in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatol Res* 2009; **39**: 448-454 [PMID: 19207576 DOI: 10.1111/j.1872-034X.2008.00474.x]
- 349 **Yoshikawa M**, Tsujii T, Matsumura K, Yamao J, Matsumura Y, Kubo R, Fukui H, Ishizaka S. Immunomodulatory effects of ursodeoxycholic acid on immune responses. *Hepatology* 1992; **16**: 358-364 [PMID: 1639344]
- 350 **Ishizaki K**, Iwaki T, Kinoshita S, Koyama M, Fukunari A, Tanaka H, Tsurufuji M, Sakata K, Maeda Y, Imada T, Chiba K. Ursodeoxycholic acid protects concanavalin A-induced mouse liver injury through inhibition of intrahepatic tumor necrosis factor-alpha and macrophage inflammatory protein-2 production. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2008; **578**: 57-64 [PMID: 17888421]
- 351 **Tu CT**, Han B, Yao QY, Zhang YA, Liu HC, Zhang SC. Curcumin attenuates Concanavalin A-induced liver injury in mice by inhibition of Toll-like receptor (TLR) 2, TLR4 and TLR9 expression. *Int Immunopharmacol* 2012; **12**: 151-157 [PMID: 22138522 DOI: 10.1016/j.intimp.2011.11.005]
- 352 **Sadeghi K**, Wessner B, Laggner U, Ploder M, Tamandl D, Friedl J, Zügel U, Steinmeyer A, Pollak A, Roth E, Boltz-Nitulescu G, Spittler A. Vitamin D3 down-regulates monocyte TLR expression and triggers hyporesponsiveness to pathogen-associated molecular patterns. *Eur J Immunol* 2006; **36**: 361-370 [PMID: 16402404 DOI: 10.1002/eji.200425995]
- 353 **D'Aldebert E**, Biyeeyeme Bi Mve MJ, Mergey M, Wendum

- D, Firrincieli D, Coilly A, Fouassier L, Corpechot C, Poupon R, Housset C, Chignard N. Bile salts control the antimicrobial peptide cathelicidin through nuclear receptors in the human biliary epithelium. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **136**: 1435-1443 [PMID: 19245866 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.12.040]
- 354 **Schwarzenberg SJ**, Bundy M. Ursodeoxycholic acid modifies gut-derived endotoxemia in neonatal rats. *Pediatr Res* 1994; **35**: 214-217 [PMID: 8165057 DOI: 10.1203/00006450-199402000-00018]
- 355 **Hori Y**, Ohyanagi H. Protective effect of the intravenous administration of ursodeoxycholic acid against endotoxemia in rats with obstructive jaundice. *Surg Today* 1997; **27**: 140-144 [PMID: 9017991]
- 356 **Nishigaki Y**, Ohnishi H, Moriwaki H, Muto Y. Ursodeoxycholic acid corrects defective natural killer activity by inhibiting prostaglandin E2 production in primary biliary cirrhosis. *Dig Dis Sci* 1996; **41**: 1487-1493 [PMID: 8689929]
- 357 **Markus BH**, Dickson ER, Grambsch PM, Fleming TR, Mazzaferro V, Klintmalm GB, Wiesner RH, Van Thiel DH, Starzl TE. Efficiency of liver transplantation in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. *N Engl J Med* 1989; **320**: 1709-1713 [PMID: 2659986 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM198906293202602]
- 358 **Karlsen TH**, Vesterhus M, Boberg KM. Review article: controversies in the management of primary biliary cirrhosis and primary sclerosing cholangitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **39**: 282-301 [PMID: 24372568 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12581]

P- Reviewer: Lisotti A, Lin CW **S- Editor:** Ji FF **L- Editor:** A
E- Editor: Liu SQ



Antioxidants in liver health

Sael Casas-Grajales, Pablo Muriel

Sael Casas-Grajales, Pablo Muriel, Department of Pharmacology, Centro de Investigación y de Estudios Avanzados del Instituto Politécnico Nacional, México City 07000, México

Author contributions: Both authors contributed to this paper.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare that there are no conflicts of interest in the present work.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Pablo Muriel, PhD, Department of Pharmacology, Centro de Investigación y de Estudios Avanzados del Instituto Politécnico Nacional, D.F., C.P. 14-740, México City 07000, México. pmuriel@cinvestav.mx
Telephone: +52-55-57473303
Fax: +52-55-57473394

Received: February 4, 2015
Peer-review started: February 6, 2015
First decision: April 10, 2015
Revised: June 4, 2015
Accepted: June 18, 2015
Article in press: June 19, 2015
Published online: August 6, 2015

Abstract

Liver diseases are a worldwide medical problem because the liver is the principal detoxifying organ and maintains metabolic homeostasis. The liver metabolizes various compounds that produce free radicals (FR). However, antioxidants scavenge FR and maintain the oxidative/antioxidative balance in the liver. When the liver oxidative/antioxidative balance is disrupted, the state is termed oxidative stress. Oxidative stress leads

to deleterious processes in the liver and produces liver diseases. Therefore, restoring antioxidants is essential to maintain homeostasis. One method of restoring antioxidants is to consume natural compounds with antioxidant capacity. The objective of this review is to provide information pertaining to various antioxidants found in food that have demonstrated utility in improving liver diseases.

Key words: Antioxidant; Oxidative stress; Naringenin; Quercetin; Curcumin; Resveratrol; Silymarin; Coffee; Liver diseases

© The Author(s) 2015. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: The objective of this review is to provide an evidence-based update of antioxidants present in food and to describe their benefits on liver diseases.

Casas-Grajales S, Muriel P. Antioxidants in liver health. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(3): 59-72 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i3.59.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i3.59>

INTRODUCTION

The liver is the main organ that metabolizes xenobiotics and endogenous molecules to maintain metabolic homeostasis in the organism. Therefore, the liver is a target of many insults that result in dysregulated hepatic homeostasis and lead to hepatic diseases^[1,2]. The liver is composed of the following cells types: hepatocytes, Kupffer cells, liver sinusoidal endothelial cells, pit cells, and hepatic stellate cells (HSC)^[3]. Cirrhosis is caused by liver injury from a variety of etiological factors and is the end stage of progressive fibrosis^[4]. Oxidative stress plays an important role in the establishment of fibrosis and subsequently in cirrhosis^[5]. Therefore, the use of molecules with antioxidant properties has

been proposed as a treatment for fibrosis and cirrhosis caused by oxidative stress.

LIVER DISEASES

Liver diseases are a major medical problem worldwide. There are numerous liver diseases caused by different insults, and the disease type depends on the location of development. The main causes of liver disease are viral and parasitic infections in regions such as Africa and Asia. Alcohol abuse is the most important cause of liver diseases in Europe and America. However, viral hepatitis has increased recently^[6]. Cirrhosis is likely the most important liver disease, and it is characterized by the accumulation of extracellular matrix proteins (including collagens I, III and IV) and distortion of the hepatic architecture^[7].

OXIDATIVE STRESS

Oxidative stress is defined as an imbalance between the production of free radicals (FR) and the antioxidant defenses^[8]. The overproduction of pro-oxidants causes deleterious events in the cell such as lipid peroxidation, oxidative DNA damage, and protein damage^[9]. FR are defined as atoms or molecules with one or more unpaired electrons. FR can exist as radical cations or radical anions^[10] and are usually unstable and highly reactive because they can react with nearby molecules and abstract electrons. Oxygen can reduce and generate reactive oxygen species (ROS) by the interaction with transition metals or by the excitation of electrons secondary to the addition of energy^[9]. Oxidative stress contributes to fibrogenesis by increasing harmful cytokines such as transforming growth factor- β (TGF- β), interleukin-6 (IL-6), and tumor necrosis factor- α (TNF- α)^[2]. Furthermore, TGF- β increases ROS production in endothelial cells, epithelial cells, smooth muscle cells, and fibroblasts^[3].

MAIN SOURCES OF FR IN BIOLOGICAL SYSTEMS

There are several pathways to produce FR, the principal source in the body is own metabolism into the cell; however, this is not the only mechanism to induce oxidative stress. The environment plays an important role in the production of FR, ROS and reactive nitrogen species (RNS), for example, air pollution, UV irradiation, X-rays and gamma-rays^[10]. The production of ROS can be induced by endogenous or exogenous substances. The most important endogenous sources are cytochrome P450 metabolism, peroxisomes, microsomes, metal-catalyzed reactions, neutrophils, eosinophils and macrophages during inflammation, and mitochondria-catalyzed electron transport reactions in the complexes I and III^[11,12]. Ubisemiquinone has been proposed as the main reductant of oxygen in mitochondrial membranes, consequently, mitochondria

generates approximately 2-3 nmol of superoxide/min per mg of protein, indicating that this organelle is the most important physiological producer of ROS and hydrogen peroxide (H₂O₂)^[12]. However, there are other sources of superoxide anion (O₂⁻) like xanthine oxidase, an enzyme that belongs to molybdenum iron-sulphur flavin hydroxylases, which is widely distributed among species and is present in several tissues in mammals. This enzyme plays an important role in the hydroxylation of purines, particularly, by the oxidation of hypoxanthine to xanthine, then from xanthine to uric acid. In both reactions, molecular oxygen is reduced, forming O₂⁻ in the first reaction and H₂O₂ in the second^[11]. Another endogenous source of ROS generation is during inflammation, by macrophages and neutrophils. Activated macrophages trigger an increase in oxygen uptake, resulting in the formation of O₂⁻, nitric oxide (NO) and H₂O₂^[13]. In neutrophils, nicotine adenine dinucleotide phosphate [NAD(P)H] oxidase generates O₂⁻ that is required for the respiratory burst necessary for bacterial destruction, also nonphagocytic NAD(P)H oxidases produce O₂⁻ in a range of 1%-10%^[14]. Cytochrome P450 enzymes are another pathway of ROS production during the breakdown or uncoupling of the P450 catalytic cycle. Microsomes generate 80% of the H₂O₂ at hyperoxia sites, and peroxisomes produce H₂O₂ but not O₂⁻ under physiological conditions, the liver is the major organ where peroxisomes contribute with the overall H₂O₂ production^[11]. Meanwhile, RNS like NO are synthesized by nitric oxide synthases (NOSs), which metabolizes arginine to citrulline in a five-electron oxidative reaction, resulting in the formation of NO^[15]. Cells from the immune system can produce also NO in the oxidative burst triggered during inflammation processes. In the extracellular environment, NO can react with oxygen and water then to form nitrate and nitrite anions, also the NO and O₂⁻ can react together and lead to a more reactive FR called peroxynitrite anion (ONOO⁻) that can cause lipid peroxidation and DNA fragmentation^[16].

ANTIOXIDANTS

Antioxidants are molecules that in low concentrations can prevent or delay the oxidation of an oxidizable substrate^[17]. Antioxidants are present in our body and exist in several foods. Antioxidants have a high affinity for FR and scavenge these molecules to protect our health. Compounds with antioxidant properties donate electrons to FR to reduce their reactivity and maintain the cellular pro-oxidant/antioxidant balance. There are many types of molecules with antioxidant activity. Natural compounds have been studied extensively and are relevant to many illnesses including liver diseases (Table 1).

CURCUMIN

Curcumin is also known as diferuloylmethane or 1,7-bis(4-hydroxy-3-methoxyphenyl)-1,6-heptadieno-

Table 1 Different antioxidants found in food (clinical effects and relevance)

Antioxidant	Main clinical effects	Clinical relevance
Curcumin	Antioxidant Anti-fibrotic Anti-inflammatory Anti-microbial Wound healing Anti-carcinogenic	No studies available in human hepatic disorders
Resveratrol	Antioxidant Anti-inflammatory Anti-carcinogenic Lipid modulation Antifibrotic	Current data are contradictory, more clinical studies are needed
Coffee	Antinecrotic Antifibrotic Antioxidant Anticholestatic Chemoprotective	Inverse relationship between coffee-cirrhosis has been demonstrated, but it is necessary to do more basic research and prospective clinical trials
Quercetin	Chelation of transition metal ions Anti-carcinogenic Cardioprotective Bacteriostatic Antioxidant Antifibrotic Anti-inflammatory Anti-apoptotic Anti-aggregatory Vasodilating	No studies available in human hepatic disorders
Silymarin	Antioxidant Antifibrotic Anti-inflammatory Anti-carcinogenic Immunomodulation	Silymarin has been shown to be effective, but it is necessary to do more clinical trials focused on survival rates of patients with cirrhosis
Naringenin	Antioxidant Hypocholesterolemic Anti-estrogenic Hypolipidemic Antihypertensive Anti-inflammatory Antifibrotic Anti-carcinogenic Anti-atherogenic	No studies available in human hepatic disorders
Green tea	Anti-inflammatory Anti-arthritic Antimicrobial Antioxidant Neuroprotective Antidiabetic Antiangiogenesis Anti-carcinogenic	More clinical studies are needed

3,5-Dione. It is obtained from the rhizomes of *Curcuma longa* and has several pharmacological properties including strong antioxidant, anti-fibrogenic, anti-inflammatory, anti-microbial, and anti-carcinogenic actions in addition to wound healing effects^[18,19]. Approximately, intake of turmeric in the Indian diet is of 2-2.5 g in a 60-kg individual, this is equal to 60-100 mg of curcumin daily. The Food and Drug Administration classified turmeric as a generally recognized as safe (GRAS). Toxicity assays on animals proved that curcumin is safe even at high doses. However, some species like mice and rats with prolonged high-dose intake of turmeric are susceptible to hepatotoxicity^[20]. ³H-curcumin was found to be poorly absorbed in the rat intestine^[21]. It is metabolized into curcumin glucuronide and curcumin

sulfonate^[22]. When curcumin is administrated intra-peritoneally, it is metabolized to tetrahydrocurcumin, hexahydrocurcumin and hexahydrocurcuminol^[23]. Despite curcumin has low bioavailability when is administered orally, Arcaro *et al.*^[24] (2014) used piperine, an inhibitor of hepatic and intestinal concomitantly with curcumin. They had shown that both 90 mg/kg of curcumin and 20 mg/kg of piperine had antidiabetic and antioxidant effects. Nevertheless, coadministration of curcumin and piperine did not change the antidiabetic and antioxidant activity of curcumin. Additionally, when the dose of piperine was increased to 40 mg/kg this abrogated the beneficial effects of curcumin. Contrary, Sehgal *et al.*^[25] proved the effect of piperine in curcumin in mitigating benzo(a)pyrene toxicity in liver. They found that pretreatment of 100 mg/kg

of body weight of curcumin protects against a single dose of benzo(a)pyrene; however, the coadministration with piperine produced a better effect than curcumin alone, suggesting an enhancer activity by piperine. Curcumin has demonstrated hepatoprotective actions on acute and chronic liver injury^[26]. Both of types of liver injuries necrosis, oxidative stress, and an inflammatory state^[27]. In 2007, Reyes-Gordillo *et al*^[28] demonstrated that curcumin inhibits the increase in cytokines such as TNF- α , IL-1 β and IL-6. Additionally, curcumin reduces oxidative stress induced *via* carbon tetrachloride (CCl₄) metabolism by inactivating the nuclear factor- κ B (NF- κ B) pathway. Moreover, curcumin can elicit its hepatoprotective effect interacting with Fe³⁺ and Cu²⁺. In a study performed by Jiao *et al*^[29], they suggest that curcumin could be an iron chelator because they found that transferrin receptor 1 and iron regulatory proteins, indicators of iron depletion, increased in response of curcumin. In agreement, Bernabé-Pineda *et al*^[30], reported that when cyclic voltammograms are in basic media, that a chemical reaction has taken place between curcumin and specially Fe³⁺. On the other hand, curcumin has been tested in liver^[31], but its chelating Cu²⁺ behavior has not been investigated; however, Baum *et al*^[32] in 2004 tested the interaction of curcumin with Cu²⁺ and Fe²⁺, they reported that two molecules of curcumin bind to ion Cu²⁺ or Fe²⁺. In a study performed by Li *et al*^[33], it was found that curcumin increases the levels of glutathione (GSH) and heme oxygenase-1 (HO-1), as well as, nuclear factor-erythroid 2-related factor 2 (Nrf2) proteins, suggesting another way to prevent oxidative stress by curcumin. In agreement, Charoensuk *et al*^[34] have shown that curcumin increased the levels of mRNA and protein of Nrf2 and HO-1 and gene expression of NAD(P)H quinone oxidoreductase 1 (NQO1), glutamate cysteine ligase (GCL), activating transcription factor-3, peroxiredoxin 3 (Prdx3) and Prdx6, so increasing the antioxidant system in the cell. Curcumin also has demonstrated to increase the activity of superoxide dismutase (SOD), catalase (CAT), glutathione peroxidase (GPx) and glutathione-S-transferase (GST)^[35,36] activity. Another mechanism of action of curcumin is by interacting with enzymes or genes implicated in liver cirrhosis. Hassan *et al*^[37] proved effect of curcumin by modulating miRNA 199 and 200 that are the main miRNA associated to liver fibrosis. They showed that miRNA 199 and 200 were increased by the administration of CCl₄. However, curcumin restored these miRNAs to their basal levels. Finally, curcumin has shown that in low concentrations, it inhibits the activity of CYP2E1 and its protein levels in alcohol-induced liver damage, thus inhibiting the metabolism of alcohol for this pathway^[38]. However, other studies have shown that curcumin does not have an effect on CYP2E1 activity in the liver^[39-41].

RESVERATROL

The phytoalexin resveratrol (3,5,4'-trans-trihydroxystilbene) is a polyphenol found in the skin of red

grapes, red wine, peanuts and berries^[42]. This compound possesses several beneficial activities including antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, anti-carcinogenic, and anti-fibrogenic properties, in addition to affecting lipid modulation^[43]. The rate of absorption of resveratrol is approximately 75% after an oral administration^[44]. Resveratrol is metabolized to resveratrol sulfate and in low concentrations to resveratrol glucuronide^[45] *via* enzymes of phase II through UDP-glucuronosyltransferase (UGT) or sulfotransferase (ST)^[46]. These results were based on *in vitro* experiments with hepatocytes treated with resveratrol. Conversely, *in vivo* experiments performed in rats demonstrated that the enterohepatic recirculation plays an important role in the overall systematic exposure to resveratrol when it was administered in aglycone or glucuronide form^[47]. Resveratrol has been reported as a compound well tolerated in clinical trials^[48]. Nevertheless, in a study performed by Crowell *et al*^[49] in an animal model, resveratrol at the highest dose used (3000 mg/kg body weight/day for 4 wk) produced renal toxicity and reduced final body weights and food consumption as well as other markers of tissue lesions. However, no histological effects in the liver were observed, despite of the clinical chemistry changes and increased liver weight. On the other hand, Williams *et al*^[50] reported not toxicity caused by high-purity trans-resveratrol at different times of exposure and doses. They used 700 mg/kg body weight/day for 90 d as the higher dose and time of exposure, not finding any adverse effect. In 2007, Chávez *et al*^[43] demonstrated that resveratrol decreased the cytokine TGF- β and prevented hepatic fibrosis and NF- κ B translocation to the nucleus following chronic use of CCl₄. Resveratrol has antioxidant capacity and protects against ethanol-induced lipid peroxidation^[51], toxicity by acetaminophen (APAP)^[52], and oxidative stress in animal models of cholestasis^[53]. It has been suggested that the OH groups play an important role in the antioxidant activity of resveratrol^[6]. A study performed by blocking OH group methylation showed that resveratrol and trimethylated resveratrol afford some degree of protection, but the latter possesses the best protective effects^[54]. One explanation of this phenomenon considers that the half-life of resveratrol is very short^[55] and that trimethylated resveratrol may act as a prodrug and increase the protective effect of resveratrol. However, resveratrol could be less potent than trimethylated resveratrol^[6]. Another hepatoprotection mechanism of resveratrol is by activating genes related to antioxidant system or inhibiting enzymes. A study performed by Cheng *et al*^[56] suggest that resveratrol can activate extracellular signal-regulated kinase (ERK) signaling pathway, which in turn can enhance the activation and translocation of Nrf2 to the nucleus, therefore, elevating the expression of HO-1 and glyoxalase. According to the previous study, Bagul *et al*^[57] have shown that resveratrol was able to elevate the translocation of Nrf2 the nucleus, thus suggesting an alternative pathway to protect from oxidative stress. Resveratrol has been reported to decrease acetylation

of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma coactivator 1- α (PGC1- α) and increasing its activity by the activation of the protein deacetylase sirtuin 1 (SIRT1), thus improving mitochondrial function and protecting against metabolic disease^[58]. Price *et al.*^[59] found that resveratrol activates AMP-activated protein kinase (AMPK) in mice treated with moderate dosage and increase nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD⁺) levels, also increasing the levels of PGC1- α . AMPK has been shown to augment SIRT1 by increasing NAD⁺ levels in an indirect way, while this protein deacetylates the AMPK liver kinase B1, leading to phosphorylation and activation of AMPK. Zhu *et al.*^[60] have shown that, after administration of resveratrol in mice, the antioxidant system was increased (SOD, GPx, and GSH) in liver tissue as well as the levels of SIRT1 and p-AMPK were upregulated. Resveratrol has also shown to inhibit the activity of CYP2E1 in microsomes of rat liver^[61], and to significantly inhibit the activity of this P450 isoform in a model of APAP-induced liver injury^[62] and in DEN-induced hepatocarcinogenesis model^[63]. The only clinical double-blind study performed to determine the resveratrol hepatoprotective effect demonstrated that a 500 mg resveratrol dose for 12 wk caused a significant reduction in inflammatory cytokines, serum cytokeratin-18, NF- κ B activation, liver alanine aminotransferase (ALT), and hepatic steatosis grade compared to the placebo group in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD)^[64]. Contrary to this study, a clinical trial performed by Chachay *et al.*^[65] in 2014 showed that resveratrol did not significantly improve any characteristics of NAFLD compared to the placebo group. Interestingly, the results showed increased hepatic stress and elevated levels of ALT and aspartate aminotransferase (AST) in the liver. Based on these data, additional clinical trials are needed to determine the actual hepatoprotective effect of resveratrol^[66].

COFFEE

Coffee is a mixture of several different molecules including carbohydrates, lipids, vitamins, alkaloids, nitrogenous molecules, and phenolic compounds^[67]. Coffee is possibly the most popular drink worldwide^[68]. However, the amount of antioxidants in different bean roasts can vary^[69]. The three major compounds present in coffee are caffeine, diterpene alcohols (cafestol and kahweol), and chlorogenic acid^[70]. Coffee consumption has been associated with the reduction of several chronic diseases^[71]. This result may be due to the pharmacological properties that have anti-necrotic, anti-fibrotic, anti-cholestatic, chemoprotective, and antioxidant functions^[72]. Caffeine is the best-known active component of coffee, and it is absorbed rapidly after an oral ingestion (5 min) and reaches its peak blood levels after 30 min. When caffeine is consumed in high amounts produced side effects. Recommendations from Health Canada in 2013, stipulated that the caffeine intake per day for children should not exceed

2.5 mg/kg of body weight. Additionally, tachycardia and arrhythmia typically arise when more than 200 mg of caffeine are ingested^[73]. Worthley *et al.*^[74] have given 250 mL of a sugar-free energy drink to 50 young people, this drink contained about 80 mg of caffeine, they have observed that caffeine increased the blood pressure compared with controls. Moreover, other kind of sickness have been reported for caffeine consumption such as cardiovascular diseases, a negatively impact in cognition, perpetual memory and learning^[73]. Smith *et al.*^[75] in 2002, reported that the intake of 300 mg of caffeine increased anxiety and tension. Also, caffeine triggered hallucinatory experiences in people who drink 300 mg of coffee (about 7 cups per day). Patients with panic disorders were more sensitive to caffeine^[73]. The half-life of caffeine is approximately 5-6 h^[76,77]. Caffeine is almost completely metabolized in the liver. The principal metabolite is paraxanthine, which results from the activity of CYP1A2. However, this enzyme produces other metabolites such as theobromine, theophylline, and 1,3,7-trimethyluric acid. Other enzymes such as CYPs 1A1 and 2E1 participate in caffeine metabolism^[78]. An important property of caffeine is that it easily passes through the blood-brain barrier^[79]. The absorption rate of chlorogenic acid is 33% of the dose in both, rats and humans. Several metabolites have been identified in human plasma and urine, and these metabolites include polyphenolic acids, glycine conjugates, sulfates and glucuronides of hydroxycinnamic acid, and hydrogenated hydroxycinnamic acid^[80]. Many studies have shown an inverse relationship among coffee consumption and liver cirrhosis^[71]. In the prospective study performed by Klatsky *et al.*^[81], the authors demonstrated an inverse coffee-cirrhosis relationship for the first time. In 1994, Corrao *et al.*^[82] performed a study and identified a dose-response relationship between coffee intake and cirrhosis. The data show that the odds ratio for liver cirrhosis decreases from 1.0 for people who do not drink coffee to 0.47, 0.23, 0.21, and 0.16 for 1, 2, 3 or 4 cups of coffee daily, respectively. Furthermore, the study showed that the caffeine *per se* did not show any relationship with cirrhosis by testing other drinks with caffeine. Although coffee is beneficial to liver health, the study failed to demonstrate a causative role of coffee in preventing liver injury. Thus, additional basic research and controlled prospective studies are needed. Arauz *et al.*^[72] in 2013 demonstrated that coffee has a beneficial effect on liver injury caused by chronic administration of thioacetamide (TAA). Coffee prevented cholestasis and necrosis measured by the enzymes γ -glutamyl transpeptidase (γ -GTP), alkaline phosphatase, and ALT. Human trials demonstrated the same results^[83]. This inverse relationship was particularly high in heavy alcohol drinkers^[84]. Conversely, liver injury inhibits caffeine metabolism, and people with liver diseases may experience adverse consequences after drinking coffee. Furthermore, it is important to distinguish between former coffee drinkers and nondrinkers in future epidemiological studies^[71,85]. Moreno *et al.*^[86] in 2011 and

Arauz *et al.*^[72] in 2013 demonstrated in murine models that coffee prevents experimental liver cirrhosis in two models of liver injury using carbon tetrachloride and thioacetamide. Both studies showed that coffee reduced the expression of the profibrogenic cytokine TGF- β . The study by Arauz *et al.*^[72] measured the expression of connective tissue growth factor (CTGF), which has been suggested as an important downstream modulator of TGF- β that increases its profibrogenic response. This finding is consistent with the significant upregulation of extracellular matrix in fibrotic liver^[72]. Cavin *et al.*^[87] have reported coffee as an inducer of GST, aldo-keto reductase, GSH, HO-1, glutathione-S-transferase P1, that are enzymes involved in the detoxification process. Also, they suggest that a possible mechanism of chemoprotection of coffee is by stimulation of Nrf2 pathway. In another study, coffee was able to elevate mRNA levels of NQO1 and glutathione-S-transferase A1 in liver and small intestine also, UDP-glucuronosyltransferase 1A6 and GCL catalytic (GCLC) were increased in small intestine. Further, the same group reported that this induction was bigger in mice possessing Nrf2 in contrast with Nrf2 knockout mice^[88].

QUERCETIN

Quercetin is also known as 3,3',4',5,7-penta-hydroxyflavone. It is a flavonol found in natural products, especially in apples and onions^[89]. Quercetin is known to have biological effects including chelation of heavy metals, anti-carcinogenic, cardioprotective, bacteriostatic, anti-inflammatory, and antioxidant properties^[90], in addition to functioning as a hepatoprotective agent^[91]. The normal intake of quercetin is less than 5-40 mg/d. However, people who eat the peel of food with high amounts of quercetin may consume 200-500 mg/d^[90]. In 2004, high purity quercetin used in foods was GRAS in the range of 0.008%-0.5% or 10-125 mg/serving^[90]. Bors *et al.*^[92] in 1990 showed the characteristics that an antioxidant must have to exert an effective activity. These characteristics include the presence of orthodihydroxy or catechol groups in the B-ring, a 2,3-double bond of the C-ring, and OH substitution on positions 3 and 5 of the C-ring and A-ring, respectively^[92]. The quercetin ring presents all of these features. The structure of flavonoids can interact with both FR and metal ions like Fe³⁺ and Cu²⁺, therefore showing chelating properties. In a study performed by Mira *et al.*^[93], it was shown that quercetin was capable of reducing Fe³⁺ and Cu²⁺, due to its 2, 3-double bond and the catechol group in the β -ring. Furthermore, its ability to reduce the Cu²⁺ seems to be dependent of hydroxyl groups. After oral intake, quercetin is rapidly absorbed and peaks at approximately 30 min^[94] before it is metabolized by glucuronidation and sulfation by the UGT and ST, respectively. Furthermore, the addition of O-methylation in the position 3' or 4' of the catechol group in the B-ring results in isorhamnetin (3'-O-methylquercetin)

and tamaraxetin (4'-O-methylquercetin) by catechol-O-methyl transferase. These processes begin in the intestine, and the compounds are released into the lumen before conjugation in the liver by the same enzymes. However, other tissues such as the kidneys can also metabolize quercetin^[94-97]. Quercetin has shown hepatoprotective properties in rats treated chronically with CCl₄ for 8 wk by preventing the expression of profibrogenic genes including TGF- β , CTGF, and collagen-1 α (Col-1 α). Therefore, quercetin reduces the fibrogenic process and liver enzymes associated with a significant reduction of activated HSC and inhibition of NF- κ B. Conversely, quercetin increased the gene expression and improved the activity of SOD and CAT, in addition to activating metalloproteinases 2 and 9 (MMP2 and MMP9)^[91]. Pavanato *et al.*^[98] in 2003 used the same hepatotoxin for 16 wk and observed that quercetin improves the hepatic liver enzymes AST, ALT, inducible NOS (iNOS) expression, and collagen content and reduces lipid peroxidation. de David *et al.*^[99] showed similar results using TAA hepatotoxin and found that quercetin inhibited the change in the p-ERK 1/2 pathway and significantly prevented the increase in apoptosis by regulating the Bax/Bcl-2 ratio^[99]. In a study performed by Granado-Serrano *et al.*^[100] in HepG2 cells, they found that quercetin modulated Nrf2 and p38, it was dependent on the concentration used and the time of exposure, quercetin rapidly activated Nrf2 by up-regulating its phosphorylation, consequently, translocation to the nucleus and binding to antioxidant response element (ARE), also increased GSH content and expression of GPx. However, when the time of exposure is larger, this effect was blocked by quercetin which, in turn activated p38-MAPK *via*. Therefore suggesting that Nrf2-ARE acts as a sensor and responds to a chemical. However, Tanigawa *et al.*^[101] reported that quercetin possesses an enhanced effect in the ARE binding activity and Nrf2-mediated transcription activity in HepG2 cells. Moreover, quercetin apart from up-regulating expression of Nrf2 mRNA and protein, also stabilized Nrf2 protein inhibiting its proteasomal degradation and reduced the levels of kelch-like ECH-associated protein 1 (Keap1) through the formation of a modified Keap1. On the other hand, a study performed by Ji *et al.*^[102] showed that quercetin does not possess an enhanced activity in mRNA expression of Nrf2 or Keap1. However, they suggested that quercetin could interact with Keap1 and fill the binding site of Nrf2 in Keap1, thus inhibiting its interaction and inducing the transcriptional activation of Nrf2. Quercetin has shown to suppress the activity of CYP2E1 when ethanol over activated it and induces HO-1 in hepatocytes^[103]. According with this findings, in a non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) model, quercetin was able to decrease by 2-fold CYP2E1 activity compared with NASH group^[104]. On the other hand, quercetin effect was inhibited by CYP2E1 compared with a control measuring by HPLC in rat liver microsomes^[105]. Currently, there are no clinical studies available on quercetin

hepatoprotection^[106].

SILYMARIN

Silymarin is a natural substance derived from *Silybum marianum*, also known as Milk thistle or Saint Mary's thistle^[6]. Silymarin has been reported as a safe compound in acute doses in animal models due to its lack of side effects. In contrast, in a clinical trial, thousands of patients suffered mainly mild gastrointestinal disorders by silymarin consumption^[107]. In other clinical trial, El-Kamary *et al.*^[108] (2009) no side effects were reported in 105 patients using 140 mg of silymarin. The range of doses used in literature is from 280 to 800 mg/kg of body weight/day. After oral administration, the silymarin peak plasma concentration is reached at approximately 6-8 h. Silymarin has poor bioavailability (23%-47%). The metabolites of silymarin are conjugated in the liver by UGT and ST (phase II reactions)^[109]. Among the hepatoprotective effects of silymarin, it is known that silybin, the major constituent of silymarin, has iron-chelating properties^[110,111]. Silymarin has also been probed as iron chelator in children with β -thalassemia with iron overload^[112]. In a study performed by Najafzadeh *et al.*^[113], they suggest that hepatoprotective effect of silymarin in iron-overload induced hepatotoxicity was due to an iron-chelator activity but no studies have been made proving the chelating properties *per se* of silymarin in liver diseases. Silymarin has hepatoprotective properties against several hepatotoxins such as CCl₄. Silymarin can prevent oxidative stress, fibrosis, cirrhosis, and lipid peroxidation by modulating the content of phosphatidylethanolamine^[114]. Thus, it improves liver enzyme activities and protects against the harmful increases in cholesterol/phospholipids and sphingomyelin/phosphatidylcholine ratios in the membrane. This effect was associated with a decrease in Na⁺/K⁺ and Ca²⁺-ATPase activities induced by CCl₄. However, silymarin does not reverse well-established cirrhosis^[115-119]. Kim *et al.*^[120] showed that silymarin increases nuclear translocation of Nrf2 in activated HSC, however, expression of other molecules related to a detoxifying effect have not been measured. Also, silymarin has been reported to increase the activity of antioxidant enzymes like SOD, GPx^[121] and CAT^[122]. A clinical trial examining silymarin in a complex with phosphatidylcholine found reduced levels of the liver enzymes, ALT and γ -GTP, and serum bilirubin levels in a dose-dependent manner in patients with hepatitis caused by virus infection or alcohol abuse^[123]. Another clinical study showed similar results when silymarin was administered alone^[124]. In patients with cirrhosis, silymarin administration for 41 mo significantly increased the survival rate compared to a placebo group^[125]. However, in the study performed by Parés *et al.*^[126], silymarin showed no effect on survival rate in the clinical course in alcoholic patients with liver cirrhosis.

NARINGENIN

Naringenin is also known as 5,7,4'-trihydroxyflavanone. Naringenin is a flavanone found in citrus fruits and tomatoes^[127]. In a study performed recently, Yang *et al.*^[128] reported that naringenin does not cause deleterious effects in beagle dogs, the maximum time of exposure was 180 d and with doses varying of 20, 100, or 500 mg/kg body weight/day. Also, Surampalli *et al.*^[129], showed that naringenin was harmless upon exposure to rat gastrointestinal epithelium in doses ranging from 1 mmol/L to 100 mmol/L, thus suggesting naringenin as a safe compound. Naringenin has many pharmacological properties including hypolipidemic, anti-hypertensive, anti-inflammatory, antioxidant and anti-fibrotic functions^[127]. Flavonoids are absorbed in the aglycone form rather than in the glycoside form like quercetin. The glycoside form of naringenin is cleaved in the small intestine before absorption, which results in sulfate and glucuronide metabolites in the small intestine wall and liver^[127,130] by UGT and ST. Mira *et al.*^[93] showed that naringenin has shown capacity of reduction of the Fe³⁺ and Cu²⁺ but in less potential than quercetin. Chtourou *et al.*^[131] found that naringenin prevents the depletion of SOD, CAT, GPx and GSH. Conversely, naringenin also prevented the increase in lipid peroxidation, ALT and AST. Additionally, expression of the following genes was also affected in an NAFLD rat model induced by a high cholesterol diet: pro-inflammatory cytokines TNF- α , IL-6, and IL-1 β , EGF-like module-containing mucin-like hormone receptor-like 1, iNOS, NF- κ B, MMP2 and MMP9^[131]. Similar results were obtained by Yen *et al.*^[132] using naringenin alone and a naringenin-loaded nanoparticle system (NARN). Both treatments exhibited antioxidant and hepatoprotective activities. The treatments also inhibited the activation of caspases 3, and 8. However, NARN was more effective as a hepatoprotector and antioxidant than free naringenin because it also inhibits caspase 9 during CCl₄-induced hepatotoxicity in rats^[132]. In a study performed by Goldwasser *et al.*^[133] it was found that naringenin activates peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor alpha (PPAR α), then decreasing the levels of very low density lipoprotein production without causing lipid accumulation in hepatocytes, in a hepatitis C virus (HCV) model. Similar results were found by Cho *et al.*^[134], who have shown that naringenin intake causes a significant depletion in the amount of total triglycerides and cholesterol in plasma and liver of rats. Also, naringenin-fed animals showed an increment in PPAR α protein expression in liver. Goldwasser *et al.*^[133] found that the flavonoid regulates the activity of PPAR γ and liver X receptor alpha (LXR α), by activating the ligand-binding domain of PPAR α and PPAR γ , while inhibiting LXR α , thus modulating different genes related to fatty acid oxidation and lipogenesis. Han *et al.*^[135], found that a pretreatment with naringenin-7-O-glucoside increased NQO1, ERK and phosphorylation and translocation of Nrf2 to the nucleus in H9c2 cardiomyocytes, as well as, upregulating the

mRNA expression of GCLC and GCL modifier^[135], thus inducing endogenous antioxidant enzymes. Similar findings was reported by Esmaili *et al.*^[136], they showed that naringenin was capable of attenuating CCl₄-induced liver injury by downregulating TNF- α , iNOS and cyclooxygenase-2, both protein and mRNA, as well as by increasing Nfr2 and HO-1 expression. Motawi *et al.*^[137] suggested that naringenin could be another example of CYP2E1 inhibitor; they probed it, in rat liver microsomal assay in co-administration with simvastatin, and such inhibition of CYP2E1 is another *via* to improve antioxidant defenses^[137]. There are currently no studies available in human hepatic disorders^[138].

GREEN TEA

Camellia sinensis, also known as green tea, is a worldwide consumed beverage. Its beneficial effects on health are due in part to its antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, anti-arthritis and anti-angiogenic effects. Moreover, green tea is a mixture of polyphenols (the major class of active compounds) including catechins (also known as flavan-3-ols) which constitute about 30% (mass fraction) of green tea leaves; the major catechins in green tea are (+)-catechin, (-)-epicatechin, (-)-epigallocatechin, (-)-epicatechin-3-gallate, (-)-gallo-catechin, (-)-gallo-catechin gallate and (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG). Flavonoids like quercetin, kaempferol and myricetin; methylxanthine alkaloids such as caffeine, theophylline and theobromine, and phenolic acids (gallic acid, chlorogenic acid and caffeic acid)^[139,140]. EGCG is the most abundant catechin and represents up to 50% of total polyphenols and possesses the strongest antioxidant capacity, therefore, it is considered the main biological active compound^[140]. On the other hand, green tea does not only exert its antioxidant properties by polyphenols, L-theanine is the primary amino acid in green tea and represents 1%-2% of the leaf dry weight, it is synthesized in the roots of green tea and is concentrated in the leaves. L-theanine chemical structure is similar to glutamic acid, the latest is a precursor of GSH. Studies have shown that L-theanine protects the cell maintaining the levels of GSH in cancer and neurotoxicity diseases^[141]. The intake of green tea can be considered safe when its consumption does not exceed 1-2 cups/d. Nevertheless, hepatotoxicity has been attributed to the intake of green tea when it is used for weight control; furthermore^[140]. Pérez-Vargas *et al.*^[141] found that L-theanine prevented the increased expression of NF- κ B and down-regulated IL-1 β and IL-6 and the cytokines TGF- β and CTGF induced by carbon tetrachloride. Moreover, the expression of the corresponding mRNAs decreased accordingly. On the other hand, L-theanine promoted the expression of IL-10 and the fibrolytic enzyme metalloproteinase 13 (MMP13). In a study performed by Yu *et al.*^[142] they have shown that EGCG ameliorates liver inflammation, necrosis and fibrosis and suppressed the expression of TNF- α , IL-1 β , TGF- β , MMP9, α -SMA, and Col-1 α 1. Similar results were

obtained in HSC cell line LX-2, where EGCG was capable of suppressing TGF- β 1, Col-1 α 1, MMP2, MMP9, TIMP1, and α -SMA. Moreover, Bin Dajem *et al.*^[143] used the aqueous extract of green tea in a Schistosoma mansoni-infected mice model to investigate its effect on the oxidative stress, antioxidant system and liver pathology induced by the parasite. They found that green tea extract suppressed the oxidative stress by decreasing the lipid peroxides. However, failed to enhance the antioxidant system and to reverse alterations in the liver such as necrosis. In a study performed by Higashi *et al.*^[144] they found that EGCG modulates the growth of HSC activated cells by Rho-signaling pathways and induces the phosphorylation of ERK 1/2, c-Jun kinase and p38, suggesting a mechanism of its anti-fibrotic capacity. In a cisplatin-induced nephrotoxicity model in rats, EGCG increased the levels of Nfr2, HO-1, SOD, CAT, GPx and GSH^[145]. In clinical trials, green tea has shown protective effects against various kinds of cancers, including premalignant prostate, esophageal, colon, rectum and pancreatic cancers^[146]. Nevertheless, in hepatocellular carcinoma, green tea did not have any protective effect^[147]. In a study performed by Haleboua-De Marzio *et al.*^[148] they have shown, after a single oral dose of green tea (400 mg), in patients with cirrhosis induced by HCV, that it is safe and well tolerable by all patients, therefore suggesting the use of green tea in the treatment of cirrhosis in the future. However, more clinical studies related to the beneficial effects on liver diseases are needed.

The information shown above represents some of the antioxidants uses in different kind of experiments in animals and clinical trials. However, it is difficult to say which of these antioxidants possess the best hepatoprotective properties since they have different chemical structures and antioxidant potency, then its scavenger capacity is not the same. Moreover, other parameters need to be considered, such as the bioavailability, and pharmacokinetics. We focus our hepatoprotective ranking mainly based on the chemical structure showed in Figure 1. We suggest that silymarin has the best hepatoprotective effect because is a mixture of flavonolignans including silybin, isosilybin, silydianin, silychristin, isosilychristin and the flavonoid taxifolin. In addition, silybinin is composed of 2 diastereoisomeric compounds (silybin A and silybin B) in a 1:1 ratio^[149]. Flavonoids in its structure have different forms to stabilize FR including hydroxyl phenolic groups, double bonds and sometimes a catechol group^[92]. Therefore, silymarin seems to be the best choice referred to hepatoprotective effect. Green tea is another mixture of polyphenols, as mentioned earlier, containing catechins, flavonoids and methylxanthine alkaloids. Nevertheless its data referred to hepatoprotection is lower than silymarin, for these reason we decided ranked green tea in the second place. The antioxidant property of EGCG is related of its hydroxyl phenolic groups, that maybe acts mainly from hydrogen atoms transfer or single electron transfer reactions. This groups are presented in the B- and D-rings of

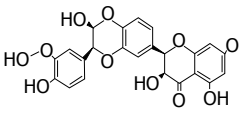
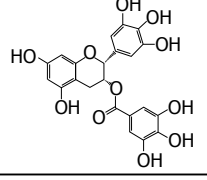
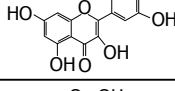
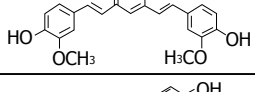
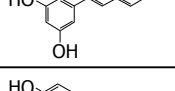
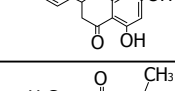
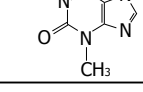
Antioxidant	Efficacy on hepatoprotective effect	Structure
Silymarin ¹	The highest	
Green tea ¹	Lower than silymarin	
Quercetin	Lower than green tea	
Curcumin	Lower than quercetin	
Resveratrol	Lower than curcumin	
Naringenin	Lower than resveratrol	
Coffee ¹	The lowest	

Figure 1 Comparison between hepatoprotective effect-related antioxidant capacities. ¹The structure presented is based on the most studied compound. For silymarin we show the structure of silybin, in the case of green tea the structure of (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate, and in the case of coffee the structure of caffeine.

EGCG^[150]. Quercetin, as mentioned above, is a flavonoid that have all the elements to exert a magnificent hepatoprotective effect related to its structure showing a catechol group in the B ring, substitution of hydroxyl phenolic groups in the A and C ring and a double bond in the position 2-3 of the C ring^[92]. Curcumin has been used in the treatment of experimental liver diseases since 1970 and shows a powerful antioxidant capacity and immunomodulatory properties. However, it does not have the same structure of flavonoids, showing two hydroxyl phenolic groups and a heptadiene linkage two methoxyphenol rings. Ak *et al*^[151] suggest that keto form of curcumin, the heptadienone linkage between the two methoxyphenol rings, contain a carbon atom that can donate a hydrogen, therefore, stabilizing FR. We considered that its capacity of stabilize FR is lower than quercetin. Resveratrol possesses hydroxyl phenolic groups and a system of conjugated double bonds that can donate electrons to FR. Resveratrol has two phenolic rings: monophenol and diphenol. Gülçin^[152] suggests that subtraction of hydrogen atom is easily in the monophenol ring. Naringenin is another flavonoid with lower antioxidant capacity than quercetin, shows a hydroxyl phenolic group in its structure in the A ring. However, it does not have the catechol group or the double bond^[92]. Also, Cao *et al*^[153] suggest that in flavonoids the hydroxyl

substitution is relevant in the ORAC_{OH}[•] activity. Caffeine has double bonds in its structure. Chu *et al*^[154] reported that pure caffeine had very low ORAC_{OH}[•] values, whereas, crude caffeine had higher values than pure caffeine. We considered that caffeine has the lowest antioxidant activity of all the compounds showed; therefore coffee has the lowest antioxidant capacity.

CONCLUSION

Investigations of antioxidants show that compounds in food are candidates for the treatment of several diseases because they improve the antioxidant system in the body, especially when the disease involves oxidative stress. This review describes antioxidants that can be investigated for experimental and clinical trials and will be used for the treatment of liver diseases such as liver cirrhosis. Curcumin, quercetin, and naringenin are effective in the treatment of experimental liver injury, and they can be studied in clinical trials. Green tea have been shown to protect against different kinds of cancer in clinical trials, except in hepatocellular carcinoma. Conversely, there are no clinical trials investigating resveratrol, coffee, and silymarin. However, the data are poor or contradictory, and it is necessary to perform more clinical trials to use these antioxidants for the

treatment of liver diseases in patients.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors express their gratitude to Martha Noyola and Maria Teresa García for their careful review of the manuscript. Sael Casas-Grajales was a fellow of Conacyt 288926.

REFERENCES

- Muriel P. Some experimental models of liver damage. In: Sahu SC. Hepatotoxicity: From genomics to in vitro and in vivo models. West Sussex, England: Wiley, 2007: 119-137
- Muriel P. Cytokines in liver diseases. In: Sahu SC. Hepatotoxicity: From genomics to in vitro and in vivo models. West Sussex, England: Wiley, 2007: 371-389
- Muriel P, Arauz J. Coffee and liver health In: Chu Y. Coffee emerging health effects and disease prevention. West Sussex, UK: IFT Press/Wiley-Blackwell, 2012: 123-139
- Reyes-Gordillo K, Segovia J, Shibayama M, Tsutsumi V, Vergara P, Moreno MG, Muriel P. Curcumin prevents and reverses cirrhosis induced by bile duct obstruction or CCl₄ in rats: role of TGF- β modulation and oxidative stress. *Fundam Clin Pharmacol* 2008; **22**: 417-427 [PMID: 18705752 DOI: 10.1111/j.1472-8206.2008.00611.x]
- Muriel P. Peroxidation of lipids and liver damage. In: Baskin SI, Salem H. Oxidants, antioxidants and free radicals. Washington, D. C., USA: Taylor & Francis, 1997: 237-357
- Muriel P, Rivera-Espinoza Y. Beneficial drugs for liver diseases. *J Appl Toxicol* 2008; **28**: 93-103 [PMID: 17966118 DOI: 10.1002/jat.1310]
- Battaller R, Brenner DA. Liver fibrosis. *J Clin Invest* 2005; **115**: 209-218 [PMID: 15690074 DOI: 10.1172/JCI200524282]
- Betteridge DJ. What is oxidative stress? *Metabolism* 2000; **49**: 3-8 [PMID: 10693912 DOI: 10.1016/S0026-0495(00)80077-3]
- Yoshikawa T, Naito Y. What is oxidative stress? *JMAJ* 2002; **45**: 271-276
- Ternay JAL, Sorokin V. Redox, radicals, and antioxidants In: Baskin SI, Salem H. Oxidants, antioxidants, and free radicals. Washington, DC, USA: Taylor and Francis, 1997: 1-21
- Cadenas E. Biochemistry of oxygen toxicity. *Annu Rev Biochem* 1989; **58**: 79-110 [PMID: 2673022 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.bi.58.070189.000455]
- Valko M, Rhodes CJ, Moncol J, Izakovic M, Mazur M. Free radicals, metals and antioxidants in oxidative stress-induced cancer. *Chem Biol Interact* 2006; **160**: 1-40 [PMID: 16430879 DOI: 10.1016/j.cbi.2005.12.009]
- Inoue M, Sato EF, Nishikawa M, Park AM, Kira Y, Imada I, Utsumi K. Mitochondrial generation of reactive oxygen species and its role in aerobic life. *Curr Med Chem* 2003; **10**: 2495-2505 [PMID: 14529465 DOI: 10.2174/0929867033456477]
- Conner EM, Grisham MB. Inflammation, free radicals, and antioxidants. *Nutrition* 1996; **12**: 274-277 [PMID: 8862535 DOI: 10.1016/S0899-9007(96)00000-8]
- Ghafourifar P, Cadenas E. Mitochondrial nitric oxide synthase. *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 2005; **26**: 190-195 [PMID: 15808343 DOI: 10.1016/j.tips.2005.02.005]
- Carr AC, McCall MR, Frei B. Oxidation of LDL by myeloperoxidase and reactive nitrogen species: reaction pathways and antioxidant protection. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 2000; **20**: 1716-1723 [PMID: 10894808 DOI: 10.1016/01.atv.20.7.1716]
- Halliwell B. How to characterize a biological antioxidant. *Free Radic Res Commun* 1990; **9**: 1-32 [PMID: 2159941]
- Punithavathi D, Venkatesan N, Babu M. Protective effects of curcumin against amiodarone-induced pulmonary fibrosis in rats. *Br J Pharmacol* 2003; **139**: 1342-1350 [PMID: 12890714 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjp.0705362]
- Maheshwari RK, Singh AK, Gaddipati J, Srimal RC. Multiple biological activities of curcumin: a short review. *Life Sci* 2006; **78**: 2081-2087 [PMID: 16413584 DOI: 10.1016/j.lfs.2005.12.007]
- Chainani-Wu N. Safety and anti-inflammatory activity of curcumin: a component of tumeric (*Curcuma longa*). *J Altern Complement Med* 2003; **9**: 161-168 [PMID: 12676044]
- Ravindranath V, Chandrasekhara N. Metabolism of curcumin--studies with [3H]curcumin. *Toxicology* 1982; **22**: 337-344 [PMID: 7342372]
- Ireson C, Orr S, Jones DJ, Verschoyle R, Lim CK, Luo JL, Howells L, Plummer S, Jukes R, Williams M, Steward WP, Gescher A. Characterization of metabolites of the chemopreventive agent curcumin in human and rat hepatocytes and in the rat in vivo, and evaluation of their ability to inhibit phorbol ester-induced prostaglandin E₂ production. *Cancer Res* 2001; **61**: 1058-1064 [PMID: 11221833]
- Aggarwal B, Bhatt ID, Ichikawa H, Anh KS, Sethi G, Sandur SK, Natarajan C, Seeram N, Shishodia S. Curcumin-biological and medicinal properties. In: Ravindran PN, Nirmal-Babu K, Sivaraman K. Tumeric: The Genus *Curcuma*. Boca Raton, USA: CRC Press, 2007: 297-368
- Arcaro CA, Gutierrez VO, Assis RP, Moreira TF, Costa PI, Baviera AM, Brunetti IL. Piperine, a natural bioenhancer, nullifies the antidiabetic and antioxidant activities of curcumin in streptozotocin-diabetic rats. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e113993 [PMID: 25469699 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0113993]
- Sehgal A, Kumar M, Jain M, Dhawan DK. Piperine as an adjuvant increases the efficacy of curcumin in mitigating benzo(a)pyrene toxicity. *Hum Exp Toxicol* 2012; **31**: 473-482 [PMID: 22027502 DOI: 10.1177/0960327111421943]
- Matés JM, Segura JA, Alonso FJ, Márquez J. Natural antioxidants: therapeutic prospects for cancer and neurological diseases. *Mini Rev Med Chem* 2009; **9**: 1202-1214 [PMID: 19534692 DOI: 10.2174/138955709789055180]
- Wang ME, Chen YC, Chen IS, Hsieh SC, Chen SS, Chiu CH. Curcumin protects against thioacetamide-induced hepatic fibrosis by attenuating the inflammatory response and inducing apoptosis of damaged hepatocytes. *J Nutr Biochem* 2012; **23**: 1352-1366 [PMID: 22221674 DOI: 10.1016/j.jnutbio.2011.08.004]
- Reyes-Gordillo K, Segovia J, Shibayama M, Vergara P, Moreno MG, Muriel P. Curcumin protects against acute liver damage in the rat by inhibiting NF- κ B, proinflammatory cytokines production and oxidative stress. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2007; **1770**: 989-996 [PMID: 17383825 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbagen.2007.02.004]
- Jiao Y, Wilkinson J, Christine Pietsch E, Buss JL, Wang W, Planalp R, Torti FM, Torti SV. Iron chelation in the biological activity of curcumin. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2006; **40**: 1152-1160 [PMID: 16545682 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2005.11.003]
- Bernabé-Pineda M, Ramírez-Silva MT, Romero-Romo MA, González-Vergara E, Rojas-Hernández A. Spectrophotometric and electrochemical determination of the formation constants of the complexes Curcumin-Fe(III)-water and Curcumin-Fe(II)-water. *Spectrochim Acta A Mol Biomol Spectrosc* 2004; **60**: 1105-1113 [PMID: 15084330 DOI: 10.1016/S1386-1425(03)00344-5]
- Rivera-Espinoza Y, Muriel P. Pharmacological actions of curcumin in liver diseases or damage. *Liver Int* 2009; **29**: 1457-1466 [PMID: 19811613 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2009.02086.x]
- Baum L, Ng A. Curcumin interaction with copper and iron suggests one possible mechanism of action in Alzheimer's disease animal models. *J Alzheimers Dis* 2004; **6**: 367-377; discussion 443-449 [PMID: 15345806]
- Li B, Wang L, Lu Q, Da W. Liver injury attenuation by curcumin in a rat NASH model: an Nrf2 activation-mediated effect? *Ir J Med Sci* 2014; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 25385666 DOI: 10.1007/s11845-014-1226-9]
- Charoensuk L, Pinlaor P, Prakobwong S, Hiraku Y, Laothong U, Ruangjirachuporn W, Yongvanit P, Pinlaor S. Curcumin induces a nuclear factor-erythroid 2-related factor 2-driven response against oxidative and nitrative stress after praziquantel treatment in liver fluke-infected hamsters. *Int J Parasitol* 2011; **41**: 615-626 [PMID: 21256849 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijpara.2010.12.011]
- Reddy ACP, Lokesh BR. Alterations in lipid peroxides in rat liver

- by dietary n-3 fatty acids: modulation of antioxidant enzymes by curcumin, eugenol, and vitamin E. *J Nutr Biochem* 1994; **5**: 181-188 [DOI: 10.1016/0955-2863(94)90070-1]
- 36 **Koiram PR**, Veerapur VP, Kunwar A, Mishra B, Barik A, Priyadarsini IK, Mazhuvancherry UK. Effect of curcumin and curcumin copper complex (1: 1) on radiation-induced changes of anti-oxidant enzymes levels in the livers of Swiss albino mice. *J Radiat Res* 2007; **48**: 241-245 [PMID: 17464095 DOI: 10.1269/jrr.06103]
 - 37 **Hassan ZK**, Al-Olayan EM. Curcumin reorganizes miRNA expression in a mouse model of liver fibrosis. *Asian Pac J Cancer Prev* 2012; **13**: 5405-5408 [PMID: 23317191 DOI: 10.7314/apjcp.2012.13.11.5405]
 - 38 **Lee HI**, McGregor RA, Choi MS, Seo KI, Jung UJ, Yeo J, Kim MJ, Lee MK. Low doses of curcumin protect alcohol-induced liver damage by modulation of the alcohol metabolic pathway, CYP2E1 and AMPK. *Life Sci* 2013; **93**: 693-699 [PMID: 24063989 DOI: 10.1016/j.lfs.2013.09.014]
 - 39 **Guangwei X**, Rongzhu L, Wenrong X, Suhua W, Xiaowu Z, Shizhong W, Ye Z, Aschner M, Kulkarni SK, Bishnoi M. Curcumin pretreatment protects against acute acrylonitrile-induced oxidative damage in rats. *Toxicology* 2010; **267**: 140-146 [PMID: 19913070 DOI: 10.1016/j.tox.2009.11.001]
 - 40 **Sugiyama T**, Nagata J, Yamagishi A, Endoh K, Saito M, Yamada K, Yamada S, Umegaki K. Selective protection of curcumin against carbon tetrachloride-induced inactivation of hepatic cytochrome P450 isozymes in rats. *Life Sci* 2006; **78**: 2188-2193 [PMID: 16288784 DOI: 10.1016/j.lfs.2005.09.025]
 - 41 **Oetari S**, Sudibyo M, Commandeur JN, Samhoedi R, Vermeulen NP. Effects of curcumin on cytochrome P450 and glutathione S-transferase activities in rat liver. *Biochem Pharmacol* 1996; **51**: 39-45 [PMID: 8534266 DOI: 10.1016/0006-2952(95)02113-2]
 - 42 **Matés JM**, Segura JA, Alonso FJ, Márquez J. Anticancer antioxidant regulatory functions of phytochemicals. *Curr Med Chem* 2011; **18**: 2315-2338 [PMID: 21517750 DOI: 10.2174/092986711795656036]
 - 43 **Chávez E**, Reyes-Gordillo K, Segovia J, Shibayama M, Tsutsumi V, Vergara P, Moreno MG, Muriel P. Resveratrol prevents fibrosis, NF-kappaB activation and TGF-beta increases induced by chronic CCl4 treatment in rats. *J Appl Toxicol* 2008; **28**: 35-43 [PMID: 17429801 DOI: 10.1002/jat.1249]
 - 44 **Walle T**. Bioavailability of resveratrol. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2011; **1215**: 9-15 [PMID: 21261636 DOI: 10.1111/j.1749-6632.2010.05842.x]
 - 45 **Yu C**, Shin YG, Chow A, Li Y, Kosmeder JW, Lee YS, Hirschelman WH, Pezzuto JM, Mehta RG, van Breemen RB. Human, rat, and mouse metabolism of resveratrol. *Pharm Res* 2002; **19**: 1907-1914 [PMID: 12523673]
 - 46 **Wenzel E**, Somoza V. Metabolism and bioavailability of trans-resveratrol. *Mol Nutr Food Res* 2005; **49**: 472-481 [PMID: 15779070 DOI: 10.1002/mnfr.200500010]
 - 47 **Marier JF**, Vachon P, Gritsas A, Zhang J, Moreau JP, Ducharme MP. Metabolism and disposition of resveratrol in rats: extent of absorption, glucuronidation, and enterohepatic recirculation evidenced by a linked-rat model. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 2002; **302**: 369-373 [PMID: 12065739 DOI: 10.1124/jpet.102.033340]
 - 48 **Cottart CH**, Nivet-Antoine V, Laguillier-Morizot C, Beaudeux JL. Resveratrol bioavailability and toxicity in humans. *Mol Nutr Food Res* 2010; **54**: 7-16 [PMID: 20013887 DOI: 10.1002/mnfr.200900437]
 - 49 **Crowell JA**, Korytko PJ, Morrissey RL, Booth TD, Levine BS. Resveratrol-associated renal toxicity. *Toxicol Sci* 2004; **82**: 614-619 [PMID: 15329443 DOI: 10.1093/toxsci/kfh263]
 - 50 **Williams LD**, Burdock GA, Edwards JA, Beck M, Bausch J. Safety studies conducted on high-purity trans-resveratrol in experimental animals. *Food Chem Toxicol* 2009; **47**: 2170-2182 [PMID: 19505523 DOI: 10.1016/j.fct.2009.06.002]
 - 51 **Kasdallah-Grissa A**, Mornagui B, Aouani E, Hammami M, Gharbi N, Kamoun A, El-Fazaa S. Protective effect of resveratrol on ethanol-induced lipid peroxidation in rats. *Alcohol Alcohol* 2006; **41**: 236-239 [PMID: 16517551 DOI: 10.1093/alcalc/agh256]
 - 52 **Sener G**, Toklu HZ, Sehirli AO, Velioglu-Ogünç A, Cetinel S, Gedik N. Protective effects of resveratrol against acetaminophen-induced toxicity in mice. *Hepatol Res* 2006; **35**: 62-68 [PMID: 16595188 DOI: 10.1016/j.hepres.2006.02.005]
 - 53 **Ara C**, Kirimlioglu H, Karabulut AB, Coban S, Ay S, Harputluoglu M, Kirimlioglu V, Yilmaz S. Protective effect of resveratrol against oxidative stress in cholestasis. *J Surg Res* 2005; **127**: 112-117 [PMID: 16083749 DOI: 10.1016/j.jss.2005.01.024]
 - 54 **Rivera H**, Shibayama M, Tsutsumi V, Perez-Alvarez V, Muriel P. Resveratrol and trimethylated resveratrol protect from acute liver damage induced by CCl4 in the rat. *J Appl Toxicol* 2008; **28**: 147-155 [PMID: 17541932 DOI: 10.1002/jat.1260]
 - 55 **Walle T**, Hsieh F, DeLegge MH, Oatis JE, Walle UK. High absorption but very low bioavailability of oral resveratrol in humans. *Drug Metab Dispos* 2004; **32**: 1377-1382 [PMID: 1533514 DOI: 10.1124/dmd.104.000885]
 - 56 **Cheng AS**, Cheng YH, Chiou CH, Chang TL. Resveratrol upregulates Nrf2 expression to attenuate methylglyoxal-induced insulin resistance in Hep G2 cells. *J Agric Food Chem* 2012; **60**: 9180-9187 [PMID: 22917016 DOI: 10.1021/jf302831d]
 - 57 **Bagul PK**, Middela H, Matapally S, Padiya R, Bastia T, Madhusudana K, Reddy BR, Chakravarty S, Banerjee SK. Attenuation of insulin resistance, metabolic syndrome and hepatic oxidative stress by resveratrol in fructose-fed rats. *Pharmacol Res* 2012; **66**: 260-268 [PMID: 22627169 DOI: 10.1016/j.phrs.2012.05.003]
 - 58 **Lagouge M**, Argmann C, Gerhart-Hines Z, Meziane H, Lerin C, Daussin F, Messadeq N, Milne J, Lambert P, Elliott P, Geny B, Laakso M, Puigserver P, Auwerx J. Resveratrol improves mitochondrial function and protects against metabolic disease by activating SIRT1 and PGC-1alpha. *Cell* 2006; **127**: 1109-1122 [PMID: 17112576 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2006.11.013]
 - 59 **Price NL**, Gomes AP, Ling AJ, Duarte FV, Martin-Montalvo A, North BJ, Agarwal B, Ye L, Ramadori G, Teodoro JS, Hubbard BP, Varela AT, Davis JG, Varamini B, Hafner A, Moaddel R, Rolo AP, Coppari R, Palmeira CM, de Cabo R, Baur JA, Sinclair DA. SIRT1 is required for AMPK activation and the beneficial effects of resveratrol on mitochondrial function. *Cell Metab* 2012; **15**: 675-690 [PMID: 22560220 DOI: 10.1016/j.cmet.2012.04.003]
 - 60 **Zhu W**, Chen S, Li Z, Zhao X, Li W, Sun Y, Zhang Z, Ling W, Feng X. Effects and mechanisms of resveratrol on the amelioration of oxidative stress and hepatic steatosis in KKAY mice. *Nutr Metab (Lond)* 2014; **11**: 35 [PMID: 25140191 DOI: 10.1186/1743-7075-11-35]
 - 61 **Piver B**, Berthou F, Dreano Y, Lucas D. Inhibition of CYP3A, CYP1A and CYP2E1 activities by resveratrol and other non volatile red wine components. *Toxicol Lett* 2001; **125**: 83-91 [PMID: 11701226 DOI: 10.1016/S0378-4274(01)00418-0]
 - 62 **Wang Y**, Jiang Y, Fan X, Tan H, Zeng H, Wang Y, Chen P, Huang M, Bi H. Hepato-protective effect of resveratrol against acetaminophen-induced liver injury is associated with inhibition of CYP-mediated bioactivation and regulation of SIRT1-p53 signaling pathways. *Toxicol Lett* 2015; **236**: 82-89 [PMID: 25956474 DOI: 10.1016/j.toxlet.2015.05.001]
 - 63 **Wu X**, Li C, Xing G, Qi X, Ren J. Resveratrol Downregulates Cyp2e1 and Attenuates Chemically Induced Hepatocarcinogenesis in SD Rats. *J Toxicol Pathol* 2013; **26**: 385-392 [PMID: 24526811 DOI: 10.1293/tox.2013-0020]
 - 64 **Faghihzadeh F**, Adibi P, Rafiei R, Hekmatdoost A. Resveratrol supplementation improves inflammatory biomarkers in patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Nutr Res* 2014; **34**: 837-843 [PMID: 25311610 DOI: 10.1016/j.nutres.2014.09.005]
 - 65 **Chachay VS**, Macdonald GA, Martin JH, Whitehead JP, O'Moore-Sullivan TM, Lee P, Franklin M, Klein K, Taylor PJ, Ferguson M, Coombes JS, Thomas GP, Cowin GJ, Kirkpatrick CM, Prins JB, Hickman IJ. Resveratrol does not benefit patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **12**: 2092-103. e1-6 [PMID: 24582567 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2014.02.024]
 - 66 **Chan CC**, Cheng LY, Lin CL, Huang YH, Lin HC, Lee FY. The protective role of natural phytoalexin resveratrol on inflammation, fibrosis and regeneration in cholestatic liver injury. *Mol Nutr*

- Food Res* 2011; **55**: 1841-1849 [PMID: 22086758 DOI: 10.1002/mnfr.201100374]
- 67 **Shin JW**, Wang JH, Kang JK, Son CG. Experimental evidence for the protective effects of coffee against liver fibrosis in SD rats. *J Sci Food Agric* 2010; **90**: 450-455 [PMID: 20355067 DOI: 10.1002/jsfa.3838]
 - 68 **Spiller MA**. The chemical components of coffee. In: Spiller GA. Caffeine. Boca Raton, USA: CRC Press, 1998: 97-161
 - 69 **Daglia M**, Papetti A, Gregotti C, Bertè F, Gazzani G. In vitro antioxidant and ex vivo protective activities of green and roasted coffee. *J Agric Food Chem* 2000; **48**: 1449-1454 [PMID: 10820041 DOI: 10.1021/jf990510g]
 - 70 **McCusker RR**, Goldberger BA, Cone EJ. Caffeine content of specialty coffees. *J Anal Toxicol* 2003; **27**: 520-522 [PMID: 14607010 DOI: 10.1093/jat/27.7.520]
 - 71 **Muriel P**, Arauz J. Coffee and liver diseases. *Fitoterapia* 2010; **81**: 297-305 [PMID: 19825397 DOI: 10.1016/j.fitote.2009.10.003]
 - 72 **Arauz J**, Moreno MG, Cortés-Reynosa P, Salazar EP, Muriel P. Coffee attenuates fibrosis by decreasing the expression of TGF- β and CTGF in a murine model of liver damage. *J Appl Toxicol* 2013; **33**: 970-979 [PMID: 22899499 DOI: 10.1002/jat.2788]
 - 73 **Ibrahim NK**, Ifikhar R. Energy drinks: Getting wings but at what health cost? *Pak J Med Sci* 2014; **30**: 1415-1419 [PMID: 25674149 DOI: 10.12669/pjms.306.5396]
 - 74 **Worthley MI**, Prabhu A, De Sciscio P, Schultz C, Sanders P, Willoughby SR. Detrimental effects of energy drink consumption on platelet and endothelial function. *Am J Med* 2010; **123**: 184-187 [PMID: 20103032 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjmed.2009.09.013]
 - 75 **Smith A**. Effects of caffeine on human behavior. *Food Chem Toxicol* 2002; **40**: 1243-1255 [PMID: 12204388 DOI: 10.1016/S0278-6915(02)00096-0]
 - 76 **Papadelis C**, Kourtidou-Papadelis C, Vlachogiannis E, Skepastianos P, Bamidis P, Maglaveras N, Pappas K. Effects of mental workload and caffeine on catecholamines and blood pressure compared to performance variations. *Brain Cogn* 2003; **51**: 143-154 [PMID: 12633594 DOI: 10.1016/S0278-2626(02)00530-4]
 - 77 **Rogers PJ**. Caffeine, mood and mental performance in everyday life. *Nutrition Bulletin* 2007; **32**: 84-89 [DOI: 10.1111/j.1467-3010.2007.00607.x]
 - 78 **Gajewska M**, Paini A, Sala Benito JV, Burton J, Worth A, Urani C, Briesen H, Schramm KW. In vitro-to-in vivo correlation of the skin penetration, liver clearance and hepatotoxicity of caffeine. *Food Chem Toxicol* 2015; **75**: 39-49 [PMID: 25455898 DOI: 10.1016/j.fct.2014.10.017]
 - 79 **McCall AL**, Millington WR, Wurtman RJ. Blood-brain barrier transport of caffeine: dose-related restriction of adenosine transport. *Life Sci* 1982; **31**: 2709-2715 [PMID: 7154859 DOI: 10.1016/0024-3205(82)90715-9]
 - 80 **Stalmach A**. Bioavailability of coffee chlorogenic acid. In: Chu YF. Coffee: Emerging health effects and disease prevention. West Sussex, UK: IFT Press/Wiley-Blackwell, 2012: 60-76
 - 81 **Klatsky AL**, Armstrong MA. Alcohol, smoking, coffee, and cirrhosis. *Am J Epidemiol* 1992; **136**: 1248-1257 [PMID: 1476147]
 - 82 **Corrao G**, Lepore AR, Torchio P, Valenti M, Galatola G, D'Amicis A, Aricò S, di Orio F. The effect of drinking coffee and smoking cigarettes on the risk of cirrhosis associated with alcohol consumption. A case-control study. Provincial Group for the Study of Chronic Liver Disease. *Eur J Epidemiol* 1994; **10**: 657-664 [PMID: 7672043 DOI: 10.1007/BF01719277]
 - 83 **Morisco F**, Lembo V, Mazzone G, Camera S, Caporaso N. Coffee and liver health. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2014; **48** Suppl 1: S87-S90 [PMID: 25291138 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0000000000000240]
 - 84 **La Vecchia C**. Coffee, liver enzymes, cirrhosis and liver cancer. *J Hepatol* 2005; **42**: 444-446 [PMID: 15763323 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2005.01.004]
 - 85 **Ruhl CE**, Everhart JE. Coffee and caffeine consumption reduce the risk of elevated serum alanine aminotransferase activity in the United States. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: 24-32 [PMID: 15633120 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2004.09.075]
 - 86 **Moreno MG**, Chávez E, Aldaba-Muruato LR, Segovia J, Vergara P, Tsutsumi V, Shibayama M, Rivera-Espinoza Y, Muriel P. Coffee prevents CCl₄-induced liver cirrhosis in the rat. *Hepatol Int* 2011; **5**: 857-863 [PMID: 21484136 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-010-9247-6]
 - 87 **Cavin C**, Marin-Kuan M, Langouët S, Bezençon C, Guignard G, Verguet C, Piguet D, Holzhäuser D, Cornaz R, Schilter B. Induction of Nrf2-mediated cellular defenses and alteration of phase I activities as mechanisms of chemoprotective effects of coffee in the liver. *Food Chem Toxicol* 2008; **46**: 1239-1248 [PMID: 17976884 DOI: 10.1016/j.fct.2007.09.099]
 - 88 **Higgins LG**, Cavin C, Itoh K, Yamamoto M, Hayes JD. Induction of cancer chemopreventive enzymes by coffee is mediated by transcription factor Nrf2. Evidence that the coffee-specific diterpenes cafestol and kahweol confer protection against acrolein. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 2008; **226**: 328-337 [PMID: 18028974 DOI: 10.1016/j.taap.2007.09.018]
 - 89 **Hertog MG**, Hollman PC, Katan MB, Kromhout D. Intake of potentially anticarcinogenic flavonoids and their determinants in adults in The Netherlands. *Nutr Cancer* 1993; **20**: 21-29 [PMID: 8415127 DOI: 10.1080/01635589309514267]
 - 90 **Harwood M**, Danielewska-Nikiel B, Borzelleca JF, Flamm GW, Williams GM, Lines TC. A critical review of the data related to the safety of quercetin and lack of evidence of in vivo toxicity, including lack of genotoxic/carcinogenic properties. *Food Chem Toxicol* 2007; **45**: 2179-2205 [PMID: 17698276 DOI: 10.1016/j.fct.2007.05.015]
 - 91 **Hernández-Ortega LD**, Alcántar-Díaz BE, Ruiz-Corro LA, Sandoval-Rodríguez A, Bueno-Topete M, Armendariz-Borunda J, Salazar-Montes AM. Quercetin improves hepatic fibrosis reducing hepatic stellate cells and regulating pro-fibrogenic/anti-fibrogenic molecules balance. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **27**: 1865-1872 [PMID: 22989100 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2012.07262.x]
 - 92 **Bors W**, Heller W, Michel C, Saran M. Radical chemistry of flavonoid antioxidants. In: Emerit I, Packer L, Auclair C. Antioxidants in Therapy and Preventive Medicine (Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology). New York, USA: Plenum Press, 1990: 165-170
 - 93 **Mira L**, Fernandez MT, Santos M, Rocha R, Florêncio MH, Jennings KR. Interactions of flavonoids with iron and copper ions: a mechanism for their antioxidant activity. *Free Radic Res* 2002; **36**: 1199-1208 [PMID: 12592672 DOI: 10.1080/1071576021000016463]
 - 94 **Murota K**, Terao J. Quercetin appears in the lymph of unanesthetized rats as its phase II metabolites after administered into the stomach. *FEBS Lett* 2005; **579**: 5343-5346 [PMID: 16194534 DOI: 10.1016/j.febslet.2005.08.060]
 - 95 **Murota K**, Shimizu S, Chujo H, Moon JH, Terao J. Efficiency of absorption and metabolic conversion of quercetin and its glucosides in human intestinal cell line Caco-2. *Arch Biochem Biophys* 2000; **384**: 391-397 [PMID: 11368329 DOI: 10.1006/abbi.2000.2123]
 - 96 **Crespy V**, Morand C, Manach C, Besson C, Demigne C, Remesy C. Part of quercetin absorbed in the small intestine is conjugated and further secreted in the intestinal lumen. *Am J Physiol* 1999; **277**: G120-G126 [PMID: 10409158]
 - 97 **Rechner AR**, Kuhnle G, Bremner P, Hubbard GP, Moore KP, Rice-Evans CA. The metabolic fate of dietary polyphenols in humans. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2002; **33**: 220-235 [PMID: 12106818 DOI: 10.1016/S0891-5849(02)00877-8]
 - 98 **Pavanato A**, Tuñón MJ, Sánchez-Campos S, Marroni CA, Llesuy S, González-Gallego J, Marroni N. Effects of quercetin on liver damage in rats with carbon tetrachloride-induced cirrhosis. *Dig Dis Sci* 2003; **48**: 824-829 [PMID: 12741479 DOI: 10.1023/A:1022869716643]
 - 99 **de David C**, Rodrigues G, Bona S, Meurer L, González-Gallego J, Tuñón MJ, Marroni NP. Role of quercetin in preventing thioacetamide-induced liver injury in rats. *Toxicol Pathol* 2011; **39**: 949-957 [PMID: 21885874 DOI: 10.1177/0192623311418680]
 - 100 **Granado-Serrano AB**, Martín MA, Bravo L, Ramos S. Quercetin modulates Nrf2 and glutathione-related defenses in HepG2 cells: Involvement of p38. *Chem Biol Interact* 2012; **195**: 154-164 [PMID: 22197970 DOI: 10.1016/j.cbi.2011.12.005]

- 101 **Tanigawa S**, Fujii M, Hou DX. Action of Nrf2 and Keap1 in ARE-mediated NQO1 expression by quercetin. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2007; **42**: 1690-1703 [PMID: 17462537 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2007.02.017]
- 102 **Ji LL**, Sheng YC, Zheng ZY, Shi L, Wang ZT. The involvement of p62-Keap1-Nrf2 antioxidative signaling pathway and JNK in the protection of natural flavonoid quercetin against hepatotoxicity. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2015; **85**: 12-23 [PMID: 25881548 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2015.03.035]
- 103 **Tang Y**, Tian H, Shi Y, Gao C, Xing M, Yang W, Bao W, Wang D, Liu L, Yao P. Quercetin suppressed CYP2E1-dependent ethanol hepatotoxicity via depleting heme pool and releasing CO. *Phytomedicine* 2013; **20**: 699-704 [PMID: 23583009 DOI: 10.1016/j.phymed.2013.03.010]
- 104 **Surapaneni KM**, Priya VV, Mallika J. Pioglitazone, quercetin and hydroxy citric acid effect on cytochrome P450 2E1 (CYP2E1) enzyme levels in experimentally induced non alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH). *Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci* 2014; **18**: 2736-2741 [PMID: 25317811]
- 105 **Zhou JQ**, Tang ZQ. Effect of quercetin on CYP1A2, CYP2E1, CYP3A2 activities and its inhibitory mechanism studies in rat liver microsomes. *J Chin Pharm Sci* 2005; **14**: 231-236
- 106 **Ying HZ**, Liu YH, Yu B, Wang ZY, Zang JN, Yu CH. Dietary quercetin ameliorates nonalcoholic steatohepatitis induced by a high-fat diet in gerbils. *Food Chem Toxicol* 2013; **52**: 53-60 [PMID: 23123425 DOI: 10.1016/j.fct.2012.10.030]
- 107 **Bahmani M**, Shirzad H, Rafieian S, Rafieian-Kopaei M. Silybum marianum: Beyond Hepatoprotection. *J Evid Based Complementary Altern Med* 2015; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 25686616 DOI: 10.1177/2156587215571116]
- 108 **El-Kamary SS**, Shardell MD, Abdel-Hamid M, Ismail S, El-Ateek M, Metwally M, Mikhaili N, Hashem M, Mousa A, Aboul-Fotouh A, El-Kassas M, Esmat G, Strickland GT. A randomized controlled trial to assess the safety and efficacy of silymarin on symptoms, signs and biomarkers of acute hepatitis. *Phytomedicine* 2009; **16**: 391-400 [PMID: 19303273 DOI: 10.1016/j.phymed.2009.02.002]
- 109 **Dixit N**, Baboota S, Kohli K, Ahmad S, Ali J. Silymarin: A review of pharmacological aspects and bioavailability enhancement approaches. *Indian J Pharmacol* 2007; **39**: 172-179 [DOI: 10.4103/0253-7613.36534]
- 110 **Hutchinson C**, Bomford A, Geissler CA. The iron-chelating potential of silybin in patients with hereditary haemochromatosis. *Eur J Clin Nutr* 2010; **64**: 1239-1241 [PMID: 20628405 DOI: 10.1038/ejcn.2010.136]
- 111 **Pietrangelo A**, Borella F, Casalgrandi G, Montosi G, Ceccarelli D, Galesi D, Giovannini F, Gasparetto A, Masini A. Antioxidant activity of silybin in vivo during long-term iron overload in rats. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **109**: 1941-1949 [PMID: 7498660 DOI: 10.1016/0016-5085(95)90762-9]
- 112 **Hagag AA**, Elfatah MA. Therapeutic value of silymarin as iron chelator in children with beta thalassemia with iron overload. *J Leuk* 2014; **42**: 1-6 [DOI: 10.4172/2329-6917.1000132]
- 113 **Najafzadeh H**, Jalali MR, Morovvati H, Taravati F. Comparison of the prophylactic effect of silymarin and deferoxamine on iron overload-induced hepatotoxicity in rat. *J Med Toxicol* 2010; **6**: 22-26 [PMID: 20182837]
- 114 **Mata-Santos HA**, Dutra FF, Rocha CC, Lino FG, Xavier FR, Chinalia LA, Hossy BH, Castelo-Branco MT, Teodoro AJ, Paiva CN, dos Santos Pyrrho A. Silymarin reduces profibrogenic cytokines and reverses hepatic fibrosis in chronic murine schistosomiasis. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2014; **58**: 2076-2083 [PMID: 24449779 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.01936-13]
- 115 **Muriel P**, Garciapiña T, Perez-Alvarez V, Mourelle M. Silymarin protects against paracetamol-induced lipid peroxidation and liver damage. *J Appl Toxicol* 1992; **12**: 439-442 [PMID: 1360480 DOI: 10.1002/jat.2550120613]
- 116 **Mourelle M**, Muriel P, Favari L, Franco T. Prevention of CCL4-induced liver cirrhosis by silymarin. *Fundam Clin Pharmacol* 1989; **3**: 183-191 [PMID: 2548940]
- 117 **Muriel P**, Mourelle M. Prevention by silymarin of membrane alterations in acute CCl4 liver damage. *J Appl Toxicol* 1990; **10**: 275-279 [PMID: 1975258 DOI: 10.1002/jat.2550100408]
- 118 **Muriel P**, Mourelle M. The role of membrane composition in ATPase activities of cirrhotic rat liver: effect of silymarin. *J Appl Toxicol* 1990; **10**: 281-284 [PMID: 2167906 DOI: 10.1002/jat.2550100409]
- 119 **Muriel P**, Moreno MG, Hernández Mdel C, Chávez E, Alcantar LK. Resolution of liver fibrosis in chronic CCl4 administration in the rat after discontinuation of treatment: effect of silymarin, silibinin, colchicine and trimethylcolchicinic acid. *Basic Clin Pharmacol Toxicol* 2005; **96**: 375-380 [PMID: 15853930 DOI: 10.1111/j.1742-7843.2005.pto_06.x]
- 120 **Kim M**, Yang SG, Kim JM, Lee JW, Kim YS, Lee JI. Silymarin suppresses hepatic stellate cell activation in a dietary rat model of non-alcoholic steatohepatitis: analysis of isolated hepatic stellate cells. *Int J Mol Med* 2012; **30**: 473-479 [PMID: 22710359 DOI: 10.3892/ijmm.2012.1029]
- 121 **Tzeng JI**, Chen MF, Chung HH, Cheng JT. Silymarin decreases connective tissue growth factor to improve liver fibrosis in rats treated with carbon tetrachloride. *Phytother Res* 2013; **27**: 1023-1028 [PMID: 22933420 DOI: 10.1002/ptr.4829]
- 122 **Kiruthiga PV**, Pandian SK, Devi KP. Silymarin protects PBMC against B(a)P induced toxicity by replenishing redox status and modulating glutathione metabolizing enzymes--an in vitro study. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 2010; **247**: 116-128 [PMID: 20600218 DOI: 10.1016/j.taap.2010.06.004]
- 123 **Vailati A**, Aristia L, Sozze E, Milani F, Inglese V, Calenda PO, Gossolo PA, Ascari E. Randomized open study of the dose-effect relationship of a short course of IdB 1016 (Silybin Phytosome) in patients with viral or alcoholic hepatitis. *Fitoterapia* 1993; **94**: 219-228
- 124 **Magliulo E**, Gagliardi B, Fiori GP. [Results of a double blind study on the effect of silymarin in the treatment of acute viral hepatitis, carried out at two medical centres (author's transl)]. *Med Klin* 1978; **73**: 1060-1065 [PMID: 353464]
- 125 **Ferenci P**, Dragosics B, Ditttrich H, Frank H, Benda L, Lochs H, Meryn S, Base W, Schneider B. Randomized controlled trial of silymarin treatment in patients with cirrhosis of the liver. *J Hepatol* 1989; **9**: 105-113 [PMID: 2671116 DOI: 10.1016/0168-8278(89)90083-4]
- 126 **Parés A**, Planas R, Torres M, Caballeria J, Viver JM, Acero D, Panés J, Rigau J, Santos J, Rodés J. Effects of silymarin in alcoholic patients with cirrhosis of the liver: results of a controlled, double-blind, randomized and multicenter trial. *J Hepatol* 1998; **28**: 615-621 [PMID: 9566830 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(98)80285-7]
- 127 **Patel K**, Singh GK, Patel DK. A review on pharmacological and analytical aspects of naringenin. *Chin J Integr Med* 2014; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 25501296 DOI: 10.1007/s11655-014-1960-x]
- 128 **Yang CP**, Liu MH, Zou W, Guan XL, Lai L, Su WW. Toxicokinetics of naringin and its metabolite naringenin after 180-day repeated oral administration in beagle dogs assayed by a rapid resolution liquid chromatography/tandem mass spectrometric method. *J Asian Nat Prod Res* 2012; **14**: 68-75 [PMID: 22263596 DOI: 10.1080/10286020.2011.632369]
- 129 **Surampalli G**, Nanjwade BK, Patil PA. Safety evaluation of naringenin upon experimental exposure on rat gastrointestinal epithelium for novel optimal drug delivery. *Drug Deliv* 2014; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 24937377 DOI: 10.3109/10717544.2014.923957]
- 130 **Erlund I**. Review of the flavonoids quercetin, hesperetin, and naringenin. Dietary sources, bioactivities, bioavailability, and epidemiology. *Nutr Res* 2004; **24**: 851-874
- 131 **Chtourou Y**, Fetoui H, Jemai R, Ben Slima A, Makni M, Gdoura R. Naringenin reduces cholesterol-induced hepatic inflammation in rats by modulating matrix metalloproteinases-2, 9 via inhibition of nuclear factor κ B pathway. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2015; **746**: 96-105 [PMID: 25446569 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejphar.2014.10.027]
- 132 **Yen FL**, Wu TH, Lin LT, Cham TM, Lin CC. Naringenin-loaded nanoparticles improve the physicochemical properties and the

- hepatoprotective effects of naringenin in orally-administered rats with CCl₄-induced acute liver failure. *Pharm Res* 2009; **26**: 893-902 [PMID: 19034626 DOI: 10.1007/s11095-008-9791-0]
- 133 **Goldwasser J**, Cohen PY, Lin W, Kitsberg D, Balaguer P, Polyak SJ, Chung RT, Yarmush ML, Nahmias Y. Naringenin inhibits the assembly and long-term production of infectious hepatitis C virus particles through a PPAR-mediated mechanism. *J Hepatol* 2011; **55**: 963-971 [PMID: 21354229]
 - 134 **Cho KW**, Kim YO, Andrade JE, Burgess JR, Kim YC. Dietary naringenin increases hepatic peroxisome proliferators-activated receptor α protein expression and decreases plasma triglyceride and adiposity in rats. *Eur J Nutr* 2011; **50**: 81-88 [PMID: 20567977 DOI: 10.1007/s00394-010-0117-8]
 - 135 **Han X**, Pan J, Ren D, Cheng Y, Fan P, Lou H. Naringenin-7-O-glucoside protects against doxorubicin-induced toxicity in H9c2 cardiomyocytes by induction of endogenous antioxidant enzymes. *Food Chem Toxicol* 2008; **46**: 3140-3146 [PMID: 18652870 DOI: 10.1016/j.fct.2008.06.086]
 - 136 **Esmacili MA**, Alilou M. Naringenin attenuates CCl₄ -induced hepatic inflammation by the activation of an Nrf2-mediated pathway in rats. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol* 2014; **41**: 416-422 [PMID: 24684352 DOI: 10.1111/1440-1681.12230]
 - 137 **Motawi TK**, Teleb ZA, El-Boghdady NA, Ibrahim SA. Effect of simvastatin and naringenin coadministration on rat liver DNA fragmentation and cytochrome P450 activity: an in vivo and in vitro study. *J Physiol Biochem* 2014; **70**: 225-237 [PMID: 24264056 DOI: 10.1007/s13105-103-0296-x]
 - 138 **Hermenean A**, Ardelean A, Stan M, Hadaruga N, Mihali CV, Costache M, Dinischiotu A. Antioxidant and hepatoprotective effects of naringenin and its β -cyclodextrin formulation in mice intoxicated with carbon tetrachloride: a comparative study. *J Med Food* 2014; **17**: 670-677 [PMID: 24611872 DOI: 10.1089/jmf.2013.0007]
 - 139 **Castro J**, Pregibon T, Chumanov K, Marcus RK. Determination of catechins and caffeine in proposed green tea standard reference materials by liquid chromatography-particle beam/electron ionization mass spectrometry (LC-PB/EIMS). *Talanta* 2010; **82**: 1687-1695 [PMID: 20875564 DOI: 10.1016/j.talanta.2010.07.054]
 - 140 **Mazzanti G**, Sotto AD, Vitalone A. Hepatotoxicity of green tea: an update. *Arch Toxicol* 2015; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 25975988]
 - 141 **Pérez-Vargas JE**, Zarco N, Vergara P, Shibayama M, Segovia J, Tsutsumi V, Muriel P. L-Theanine prevents carbon tetrachloride-induced liver fibrosis via inhibition of nuclear factor κ B and down-regulation of transforming growth factor β and connective tissue growth factor. *Hum Exp Toxicol* 2015; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 25852135 DOI: 10.1177/0960327115578864]
 - 142 **Yu DK**, Zhang CX, Zhao SS, Zhang SH, Zhang H, Cai SY, Shao RG, He HW. The anti-fibrotic effects of epigallocatechin-3-gallate in bile duct-ligated cholestatic rats and human hepatic stellate LX-2 cells are mediated by the PI3K/Akt/Smad pathway. *Acta Pharmacol Sin* 2015; **36**: 473-482 [PMID: 25832428 DOI: 10.1038/aps.2014.155]
 - 143 **Bin Dajem SM**, Shati AA, Adly MA, Ahmed OM, Ibrahim EH, Mostafa OM. Green tea (Camellia sinensis) ameliorates female Schistosoma mansoni-induced changes in the liver of Balb/C mice. *Saudi J Biol Sci* 2011; **18**: 361-368 [PMID: 23961148 DOI: 10.1016/j.sjbs.2011.06.003]
 - 144 **Higashi N**, Kohjima M, Fukushima M, Ohta S, Kotoh K, Enjoji M, Kobayashi N, Nakamura M. Epigallocatechin-3-gallate, a green-tea polyphenol, suppresses Rho signaling in TWNT-4 human hepatic stellate cells. *J Lab Clin Med* 2005; **145**: 316-322 [PMID: 15976760 DOI: 10.1016/j.lab.2005.03.017]
 - 145 **Sahin K**, Tuzcu M, Gencoglu H, Dogukan A, Timurkan M, Sahin N, Aslan A, Kucuk O. Epigallocatechin-3-gallate activates Nrf2/HO-1 signaling pathway in cisplatin-induced nephrotoxicity in rats. *Life Sci* 2010; **87**: 240-245 [PMID: 20619277 DOI: 10.1016/j.lfs.2010.06.014]
 - 146 **Hosseini A**, Ghorbani A. Cancer therapy with phytochemicals: evidence from clinical studies. *Avicenna J Phytomed* 2015; **5**: 84-97 [PMID: 25949949]
 - 147 **Darvesh AS**, Bishayee A. Chemopreventive and therapeutic potential of tea polyphenols in hepatocellular cancer. *Nutr Cancer* 2013; **65**: 329-344 [PMID: 23530632 DOI: 10.1080/01635581.2013.767367]
 - 148 **Halegoua-De Marzio D**, Kraft WK, Daskalakis C, Ying X, Hawke RL, Navarro VJ. Limited sampling estimates of epigallocatechin gallate exposures in cirrhotic and noncirrhotic patients with hepatitis C after single oral doses of green tea extract. *Clin Ther* 2012; **34**: 2279-2285.e1 [PMID: 23153661 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinthera.2012.10.009]
 - 149 **Hackett ES**, Twedt DC, Gustafson DL. Milk thistle and its derivative compounds: a review of opportunities for treatment of liver disease. *J Vet Intern Med* 2013; **27**: 10-16 [PMID: 23140176 DOI: 10.1111/jvim.12002]
 - 150 **Lambert JD**, Elias RJ. The antioxidant and pro-oxidant activities of green tea polyphenols: a role in cancer prevention. *Arch Biochem Biophys* 2010; **501**: 65-72 [PMID: 20558130 DOI: 10.1016/j.abb.2010.06.013]
 - 151 **Ak T**, Gülçin I. Antioxidant and radical scavenging properties of curcumin. *Chem Biol Interact* 2008; **174**: 27-37 [PMID: 18547552 DOI: 10.1016/j.cbi.2008.05.003]
 - 152 **Gülçin I**. Antioxidant properties of resveratrol: A structure-activity insight. *Innov Food Sci Emerg Technol* 2010; **11**: 210-218 [DOI: 10.1016/j.ifset.2009.07.002]
 - 153 **Cao G**, Sofic E, Prior RL. Antioxidant and prooxidant behavior of flavonoids: structure-activity relationships. *Free Radic Biol Med* 1997; **22**: 749-760 [PMID: 9119242 DOI: 10.1016/s0891-5849(96)00351-6]
 - 154 **Chu YF**, Chen Y, Brown PH, Lyle BJ, Black RM, Cheng IH, Ou B, Prior RL. Bioactivities of crude caffeine: Antioxidant activity, cyclooxygenase-2 inhibition, and enhanced glucose uptake. *Food Chem* 2012; **131**: 564-568 [DOI: 10.1016/j.foodchem.2011.09.024]

P- Reviewer: Acuna-Castroviejo D S- Editor: Ji FF

L- Editor: A E- Editor: Liu SQ



Basic Study

Nociceptin effect on intestinal motility depends on opioid-receptor like-1 receptors and nitric oxide synthase co-localization

Andrei Sibaev, Jakub Fichna, Dieter Saur, Birol Yuce, Jean-Pierre Timmermans, Martin Storr

Andrei Sibaev, Birol Yuce, Martin Storr, Department of Medicine, Division of Gastroenterology, Ludwig Maximilians University of Munich, 81377 Munich, Germany

Jakub Fichna, Martin Storr, Division of Gastroenterology, University of Calgary, Calgary T2N 2T9, Canada

Jakub Fichna, Department of Biochemistry, Medical University of Lodz, 92215 Lodz, Poland

Dieter Saur, Department of Internal Medicine II, Technical University Munich, 81675 Munich, Germany

Jean-Pierre Timmermans, Laboratory of Cell Biology and Histology, University of Antwerp, B-2020 Antwerp, Belgium

Author contributions: Sibaev A, Fichna J, Saur D, Yuce B, Timmermans JP and Storr M contributed to study concept and design; Sibaev A, Fichna J, Saur D and Timmermans JP contributed to acquisition of data; all authors contributed to analysis and interpretation of data; Storr M contributed to drafting of the manuscript; all authors contributed to critical revision of the manuscript for important intellectual content; Sibaev A and Fichna J contributed to statistical analysis; Timmermans JP and Storr M contributed to study supervision.

Supported by The Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft (STO 645/2-1 to Storr M and YU132/2-1 to Yuce B), the Society of Gastroenterology in Bavaria (to Storr M), the Förderprogramm für Forschung und Lehre of the Ludwig Maximilians University Munich to Yuce B, the University of Calgary Research Grant Committee (to Storr M), the Luventus Plus program of the Polish Ministry of Science and Higher Education (#0107/IP1/2013/72 to Fichna J) and the grants from the Medical University of Lodz (#503/1-156-04/503-01 to Fichna J) and National Science Centre (#UMO-2013/11/B/NZ7/01301 to Fichna J).

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the University of Calgary, Calgary, Canada Institutional Review Board.

Institutional animal care and use committee statement:

All procedures involving animals were reviewed and approved by the Institutional Animal Care and Use Committee of the University of Calgary, Calgary, Canada (IACUC protocol number: M07071/2010).

Conflict-of-interest statement: Authors declare no conflict of interest.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Martin Storr, MD, PhD, Department of Medicine, Division of Gastroenterology, Ludwig Maximilians University of Munich, Marchioninistrasse 15, 81377 Munich, Germany. martin.storr@med.uni-muenchen.de
Telephone: +49-89-70950
Fax: +49-89-70955281

Received: November 18, 2014

Peer-review started: November 18, 2014

First decision: December 12, 2014

Revised: April 26, 2015

Accepted: May 16, 2015

Article in press: May 18, 2015

Published online: August 6, 2015

Abstract

AIM: To study the effect of the opioid-receptor like-1 (ORL1) agonist nociceptin on gastrointestinal (GI)

myenteric neurotransmission and motility.

METHODS: Reverse transcriptase - polymerase chain reaction and immunohistochemistry were used to localize nociceptin and ORL1 in mouse tissues. Intracellular electrophysiological recordings of excitatory and inhibitory junction potentials (EJP, IJP) were made in a chambered organ bath. Intestinal motility was measured *in vivo*.

RESULTS: Nociceptin accelerated whole and upper GI transit, but slowed colonic expulsion *in vivo* in an ORL1-dependent manner, as shown using [Nphe¹]NOC and AS ODN pretreatment. ORL1 and nociceptin immunoreactivity were found on enteric neurons. Nociceptin reduced the EJP and the nitric oxide-sensitive slow IJP in an ORL1-dependent manner, whereas the fast IJP was unchanged. Nociceptin further reduced the spatial spreading of the EJP up to 2 cm.

CONCLUSION: Compounds acting at ORL1 are good candidates for the future treatment of disorders associated with increased colonic transit, such as diarrhea or diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome.

Key words: Nociceptin; Gastrointestinal transit; Opioid-receptor like-1; Electrophysiology; Expression

© The Author(s) 2015. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Here we aimed to study the effect of the endogenous opioid-receptor like-1 (ORL1) agonist nociceptin on gastrointestinal (GI) myenteric neurotransmission and motility. We observed that nociceptin reduces excitatory and inhibitory neurotransmission in motoneurons and interneurons and the overall effect on the GI tract may depend on co-localization of ORL1 receptors with nitric oxide synthase. Since ORL1 activation, unlike other opioid receptor-active drugs, is not associated with central side effects, compounds acting at the ORL1 may be good candidates for the future treatment of disorders associated with increased colonic transit, such as diarrhea or diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome.

Sibaev A, Fichna J, Saur D, Yuce B, Timmermans JP, Storr M. Nociceptin effect on intestinal motility depends on opioid-receptor like-1 receptors and nitric oxide synthase co-localization. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(3): 73-83 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i3/73.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i3.73>

INTRODUCTION

The heptadecapeptide nociceptin, also known as orphanin FQ, is the only known endogenous agonist at the opioid-receptor like-1 (ORL1) receptor^[1,2]. From a

structural perspective nociceptin is closely related to the dynorphin family, but differs from other endogenous opioids^[1-5]. Although the ORL1 receptor, alternatively named nociceptin or opioid-4, is a G protein-coupled receptor that shares significant (> 60%) sequence homology to the classical opioid binding sites (μ , δ , κ)^[4,6-8], it remains the only target for nociceptin. Furthermore, the effects of nociceptin are not blocked by naloxone, which would further argue against grouping the ORL1 with classical opioid receptors.

ORL1 mRNA is widely distributed in the central and peripheral nervous systems, and in peripheral organs. In the gastrointestinal (GI) tract ORL1 was localized by molecular and immunohistochemical methods. In the guinea pig colon nociceptin is co-localized with calretinin, substance P and enkephalin and, to a small extent, also with nitric oxide synthase (NOS) and VIP immunoreactivity, suggesting that it may be localized in excitatory motoneurons, as well as in descending interneurons^[9].

The GI tract is one site where opioids show actions and opioids are known to slow motility^[10-13], by reducing peripheral neurotransmitter release^[14,15] or by blocking enteric neurotransmission at multiple sites within the peristaltic reflex^[10,16-21].

Over the last decade, organ bath experiments revealed that nociceptin induces contractions by reducing inhibitory neurotransmission and causes relaxation by reducing cholinergic neurotransmission^[22-24]. More complex preparations disclosed that nociceptin reduces the excitatory components of the peristaltic reflex and thus slows GI motility^[25]. Depending on the model used colonic transit was increased or reduced and it seems that timing and route of administration of nociceptin injections may also influence the direction of the results^[26,27]. Many of the previously published results are conflicting and it is intriguing that the majority of these studies characterized nociceptin, but failed to shed some light on the involvement of ORL1. Some of the confusion may be caused since previous *in vivo* studies used different ORL1 agonists; however, ORL1 antagonists were never employed *in vivo*, thus probing an ORL1 involvement of the observed effects.

The aim of our study was to investigate the endogenous nociceptin system in attempt to elucidate the role and function of ORL1 receptors in the GI tract. Based on the effects of nociceptin on the GI motility observed *in vivo*, localization and co-localization of the peptide and its receptor were examined in the mouse ileum and colon. Electrophysiology was employed to investigate whether cholinergic excitatory junction potentials (EJPs), purinergic fast excitatory and inhibitory junction potentials (fIJPs) and nitrergic slow IJPs (sIJPs) are changed by nociceptin, if nociceptin has effects on long-distance neurotransmission and motoneurons and interneurons are involved. Our results shed new light on the endogenous nociceptin system physiology, what may have important clinical implications in future.

Table 1 Antisera used for immunohistochemistry

Antisera (host)	Source	Dilution
Primary antisera		
ORL1 (KOR-3) (H-85) (rabbit)	Santa Cruz Biotechnology (sc-15309)	1:50
ORL1 (KOR-3) (N-19) (goat)	Santa Cruz Biotechnology (sc-9759)	1:50
Nociceptin (guinea-pig)	Abcam (ab10276)	1:100-200
NOS (rabbit)	Euro Diagnostica (B 220-1)	0.389
NOS (guinea pig)	Euro Diagnostica (B-GP 225-1)	0.736
PGP 9.5 (guinea pig)	Chemicon (AB5898)	0.389
Secondary antisera and streptavidin complexes		
FITC-conjugated donkey anti rabbit	Jackson ImmunoResearch (711-095-152)	0.111
Cy3-conjugated donkey anti rabbit	Jackson ImmunoResearch (711-165-152)	0.215
Biotinylated donkey anti rabbit	Jackson ImmunoResearch (711-065-152)	0.111
Biotinylated donkey anti goat	Jackson ImmunoResearch (705-065-147)	0.111
Biotinylated donkey anti goat	Jackson ImmunoResearch (706-065-148)	0.111
FITC-conjugated donkey anti goat	Jackson ImmunoResearch (705-095-147)	1:50
FITC-conjugated donkey anti guinea pig	Jackson ImmunoResearch (706-095-148)	1:50
Cy3-conjugated donkey anti guinea pig	Jackson ImmunoResearch (706-165-148)	0.215
Cy3-conjugated Streptavidin	Jackson ImmunoResearch (016-160-084)	0.215
FITC-conjugated Streptavidin	Jackson ImmunoResearch (016-010-084)	1:100
		Streptavidin FITC: Jackson ImmunoResearch 016-010-084; 1:100

ORL1: Opioid-receptor like-1; NOS: Nitric oxide synthase; FITC: Fluorescein isothiocyanate.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Animal use for these studies was approved by the Animal Care Committee of the Government of Bavaria/Germany and the University of Calgary Animal Care Committee and all experiments were performed in accordance with institutional Animal Ethics Committee guidelines.

In vivo motility studies

Whole gut transit and colonic expulsion test was performed as described previously in non-fasted male mice^[28,29].

To test the involvement of ORL1 receptors, co-administration studies with selective antagonist [NPhe¹]-NOC [100 pmol, intravenous (*iv*)] were performed. To interfere with the expression of the ORL1 protein, a phosphorothioate antisense oligodeoxynucleotide AS ODN, synthesized by the UCDNA Synthesis Lab (Calgary, AB, Canada) was used. The AS ODN sequence (5'-C*A *G*G*C*A*C*T*C*G*A*T-3', where an asterisk marks the phosphorothioate linkage) was chosen to selectively target exon 4 of ORL1, but not the ORL1 alternative variant. The control consisted of a mismatched sequence (MM ODN), in which four bases were switched (5'-C*G*G*G*T*A*C*G*G*C*G*T-3', where bold indicates the mismatch). ODN solutions were prepared in sterile water immediately prior to use. Mice received either AS or MM ODN at a dose of 5 µg per animal (*i.p.*), injected every 12 h over 2 d (in total 4 injections). Twelve hours after last injection the animals were used to test colonic bead expulsion. Treatment with AS or MM ODN did not alter the normal behaviour of mice.

RNA isolation and reverse transcriptase - polymerase chain reaction

Total RNA from mouse brain, longitudinal muscle-

myenteric plexus layer (LMMP) and mucosa of ileum and LMMP and mucosa of colon was reversely transcribed in complementary DNA as described before^[30,31]. mRNA expression of mouse ORL1 was tested using specific primers [mORL1 (S): 5'-CTGCCTCGTCATGTATGTCATC-3'; mORL1 (AS): 5'-GGAAGATGCAGATGGCAAATACA-3']. As control, we used GAPDH [mGAPDH (S): 5'-GCTGAACGG GAAGCTCACTG-3'; mGAPDH (AS): 5'-GCTGTTGAAGTCG CAGGAGAC-3'].

Immunohistochemistry

Cryosections and whole mounts of mouse colon and ileum were used for immunohistochemistry. Immunohistochemical incubations were carried out as detailed previously^[25]. Antisera and streptavidin complexes are listed in Table 1. Negative controls and specificity controls were performed as described previously^[25].

Tissue preparation for electrophysiological experiments

Tissue preparation was performed as described previously^[25].

Intracellular electrical recording

Intracellular recordings of circular colonic smooth muscle cells were performed as detailed previously^[32,33]. Neurons were stimulated with single electrical pulses (15 V; 0.3 ms duration) using single or multiple platinum electrodes as described previously^[32,33].

Membrane potentials were recorded as described previously^[25].

Drugs

Hexamethonium, atropine, tetrodotoxin (TTX) methylene blue were obtained from Sigma (Irvine, United Kingdom); [NPhe¹]NOCNH₂ ([NPhe¹]NOC) and nociceptin were from Biotrend (Köln, Germany). Drugs were

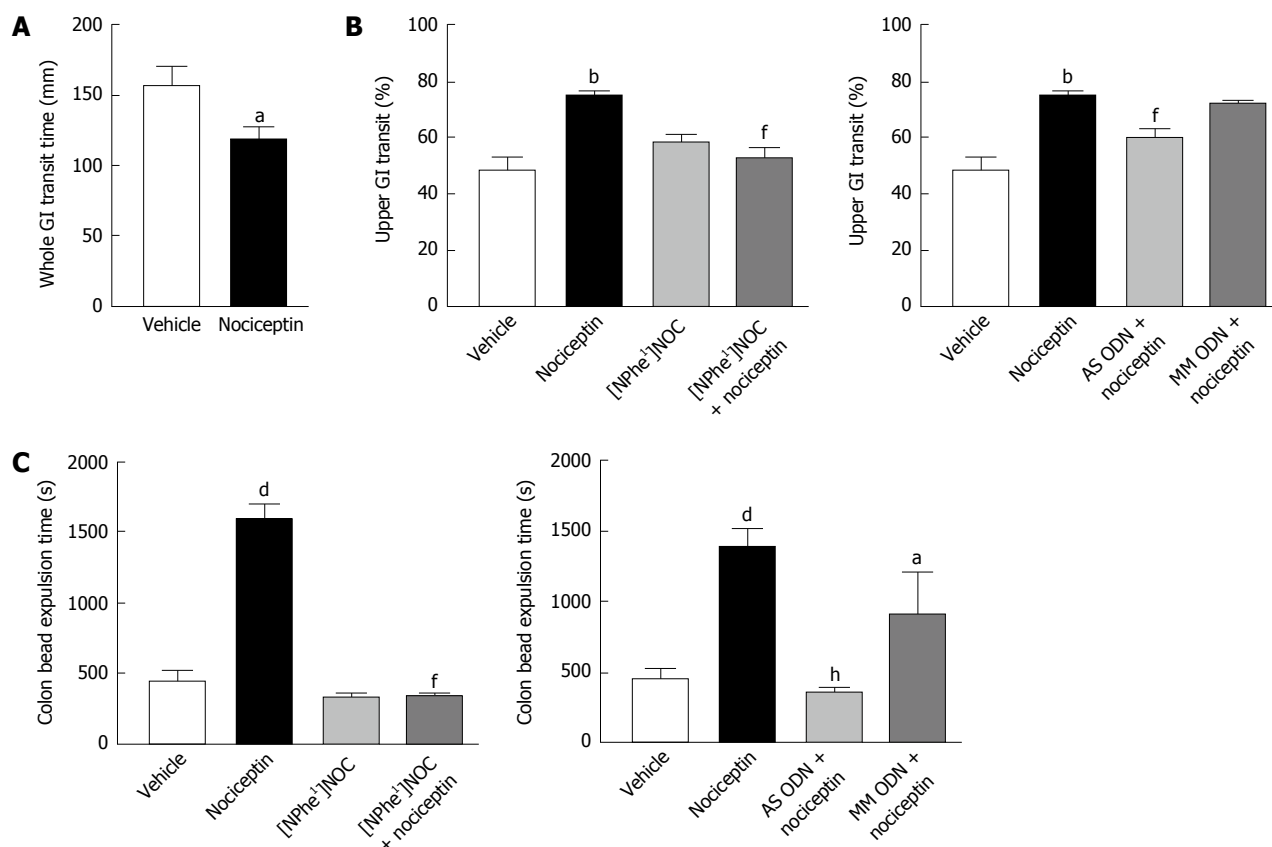


Figure 1 *In vivo* effects of nociceptin in the gastrointestinal tract in mice. A: Nociceptin (100 pmol, *iv*) accelerated whole gastrointestinal transit; B: Nociceptin (100 pmol, *iv*) accelerated upper gastrointestinal transit. This effect was absent in animals pretreated with [NPhe¹]NOC (100 pmol, *iv*) at a dose that had no effects when given alone and in the AS ODN-treated mice; C: Nociceptin (100 pmol, *iv*) slowed colonic bead expulsion. This effect was absent in animals pretreated with [NPhe¹]NOC (100 pmol, *iv*) at a dose that had no effects when given alone and in the AS ODN-treated mice. Data are mean $\pm$ SEM of $n = 5-8$ mice/group. ^a $P < 0.05$, ^b $P < 0.01$, ^d $P < 0.001$, vs vehicle-treated mice; ^f $P < 0.01$, ^h $P < 0.001$ vs nociceptin alone. AS and MM ODN, antisense and mismatched deoxynucleotide, respectively. GI: Gastrointestinal; *iv*: Intravenous.

added to the bath in microliter volumes and appropriate control experiments were performed with vehicles to exclude vehicle-induced effects. For the *in vivo* experiments drugs were first dissolved in DMSO and then further diluted in saline.

Data analysis and statistics

Data analysis and statistics was performed as described previously^[25].

RESULTS

Nociceptin accelerates whole and upper gastrointestinal transit, but delays colonic expulsion in an ORL1-dependent manner

As shown in Figure 1A and B, nociceptin (100 pmol, *iv*) significantly increased the passage through whole and upper GI tract. The effect of nociceptin on upper GI transit time was blocked by the selective ORL1 antagonist, [NPhe¹]NOC (100 pmol, *iv*) and the pretreatment with AS ODN for two days. On the contrary, a significant delay in bead expulsion time was observed in mice that received nociceptin *iv* (100 pmol) (Figure 1C). [NPhe¹]NOC alone (100 pmol, *iv*) did not change colonic bead expulsion, but significantly reversed

the effects of nociceptin, confirming the involvement of ORL1. Blocking ORL1 by *i.p.* treatment of mice with AS ODN over 48 h abolished the inhibitory effect of nociceptin (nociceptin 100 pmol, *iv*: 1383 $\pm$ 146.8 s vs AS ODN + nociceptin 100 pmol, *iv*: 373 $\pm$ 33.6 s, $P < 0.001$) (Figure 1C). The repeated administration of MM ODN produced a minor decrease of the nociceptin action in the mouse colon.

ORL1 mRNA is expressed in mouse ileum and colon

To verify the mechanisms underlying the differential effect of nociceptin based on the site of action, the presence of ORL1 mRNA in mouse GI tract was determined by RT-PCR (Figure 2). Low abundant expression of an alternative ORL1 variant with an 81 bp insertion of the unspliced intron 3 was observed in mouse brain, in LMMP and mucosa of mouse ileum and in LMMP of mouse colon (Figure 1; PCR product of approximately 400 bp. This alternative splicing event generates an in-frame stop codon and therefore creates a C-terminally truncated ORL1 protein with unknown function. All investigated mouse tissues displayed expression of the short ORL1 mRNA variant lacking intron 3 with a PCR product size of approximately 320 bp (Figure 2).

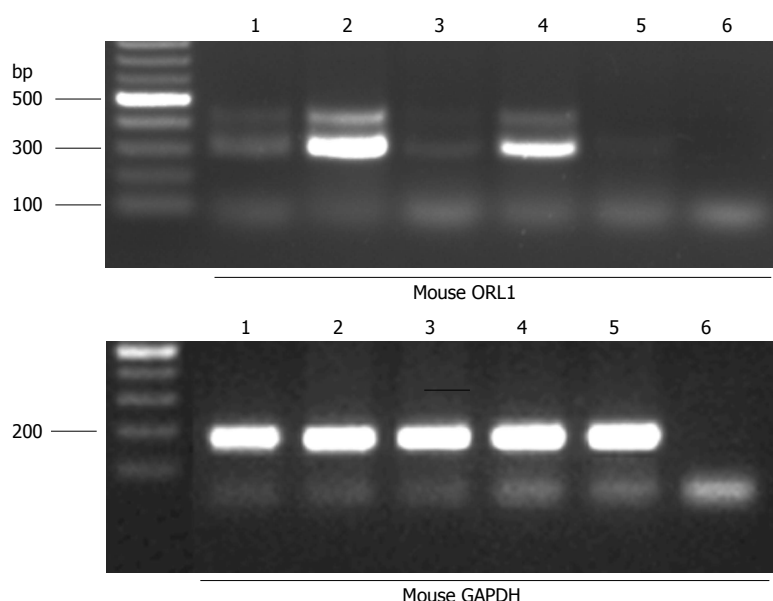


Figure 2 A representative gel for reverse transcriptase - polymerase chain reaction for opioid-receptor like-1 using total RNA. Two alternatively spliced mRNA variants of mouse opioid-receptor like-1 (ORL1) with a size of approximately 320 and 400 bp are expressed in mouse brain (lane 1), longitudinal muscle-myenteric plexus layer (LMMP) (lane 2) and mucosa (lane 3) of mouse ileum and in LMMP (lane 4) of mouse colon. In the mucosa of mouse colon, only the short ORL1 isoform is present (lane 5), whereas the negative control (lane 6) showed no specific polymerase chain reaction product. Lower panel shows results for GAPDH, which was used as internal control. GAPDH: Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase.

ORL1 is co-expressed with NOS in mouse colon, but not ileum

In line with the single labeling, the RT-PCR data and the double labeling with the general neuronal marker PGP9.5 showed that a majority of myenteric neurons in mouse ileum and colon expressed IR for ORL1 (Figure 3). This ORL1 labeling was mainly restricted to the neuronal somata. Double staining with a nitroergic marker revealed high level of co-expression of ORL1 with NOS in mouse large intestine, but not in the small intestine. Corresponding single labeling studies, showed comparable staining, thus non-specific findings were ruled out (Figure 3).

Moreover, the presence of the endogenous peptide nociceptin was confirmed intracellularly in the majority of the myenteric neurons of the mouse colon and both NOS and PGP9.5 double-labeled with nociceptin (Figure 4A). A punctuate intracellular staining pattern suggested a localization in vesicles. Since granular staining was observed in 100% of the neurons, we performed additional control staining in cortex and hippocampus, *i.e.*, regions where distinct subpopulations of neurons are known to stain positive for nociceptin (Figure 4B).

Electrophysiological recordings show that nociceptin reduces excitatory and inhibitory junction potentials in the mouse colon

Under basal conditions, circular smooth muscle cells of mouse large bowel displayed stable resting membrane potentials (-53.9 ± 3.7 mV, $n = 17$). Stimulation of myenteric neurons with EFS gave rise to junction potentials sensitive to TTX.

In the colon (proximal), an EJP was followed by a

biphasic IJP, with an initial fIJP followed by a sIJP. In the middle colon, EFS with the same stimulation parameter elicited a biphasic IJP without an EJP and in the distal colon only a monophasic IJP was seen.

The amplitudes of junction potentials were measured and compared to membrane potential prior to electrical stimulus application. The EJP represents excitatory cholinergic neurotransmission, the sIJP inhibitory nitroergic neurotransmission and the fIJP purinergic inhibitory neurotransmission as detailed earlier^[33].

Increasing the nociceptin concentrations (1 nmol/L-1 μ mol/L), led to a significant reduction in EJP in the mouse proximal colon and this effect was reversed by addition of [NPhe¹]NOC, ($n = 6$; Figure 5A). The fIJP was not affected by nociceptin, whereas the sIJP was significantly reduced. The effect of nociceptin on the sIJP was reversed by [NPhe¹]NOC ($n = 6$; Figure 5A). In the middle colon, nociceptin (1 nmol/L-1 μ mol/L) reduced the sIJP, an effect that was reversed by [NPhe¹]NOC ($n = 6$; Figure 5B). The fIJP was not changed. Finally, in the distal colon nociceptin (10 nmol/L-1 μ mol/L) significantly reduced the monophasic IJP, and this effect that was also reversed by [NPhe¹]NOC ($n = 6$; Figure 5C).

Influence of the ORL1 agonist nociceptin on the spatial distribution of EJP responses

The ORL1 agonist nociceptin was added in increasing doses (100 nmol/L-10 μ mol/L) to the organ bath and the spatial distribution of the ascending EJP was reported. EJPs could be recorded up to a distance of 18-20 mm. Incubation of the tissues with nociceptin caused a reduction in EJP responses to electrical stimulation

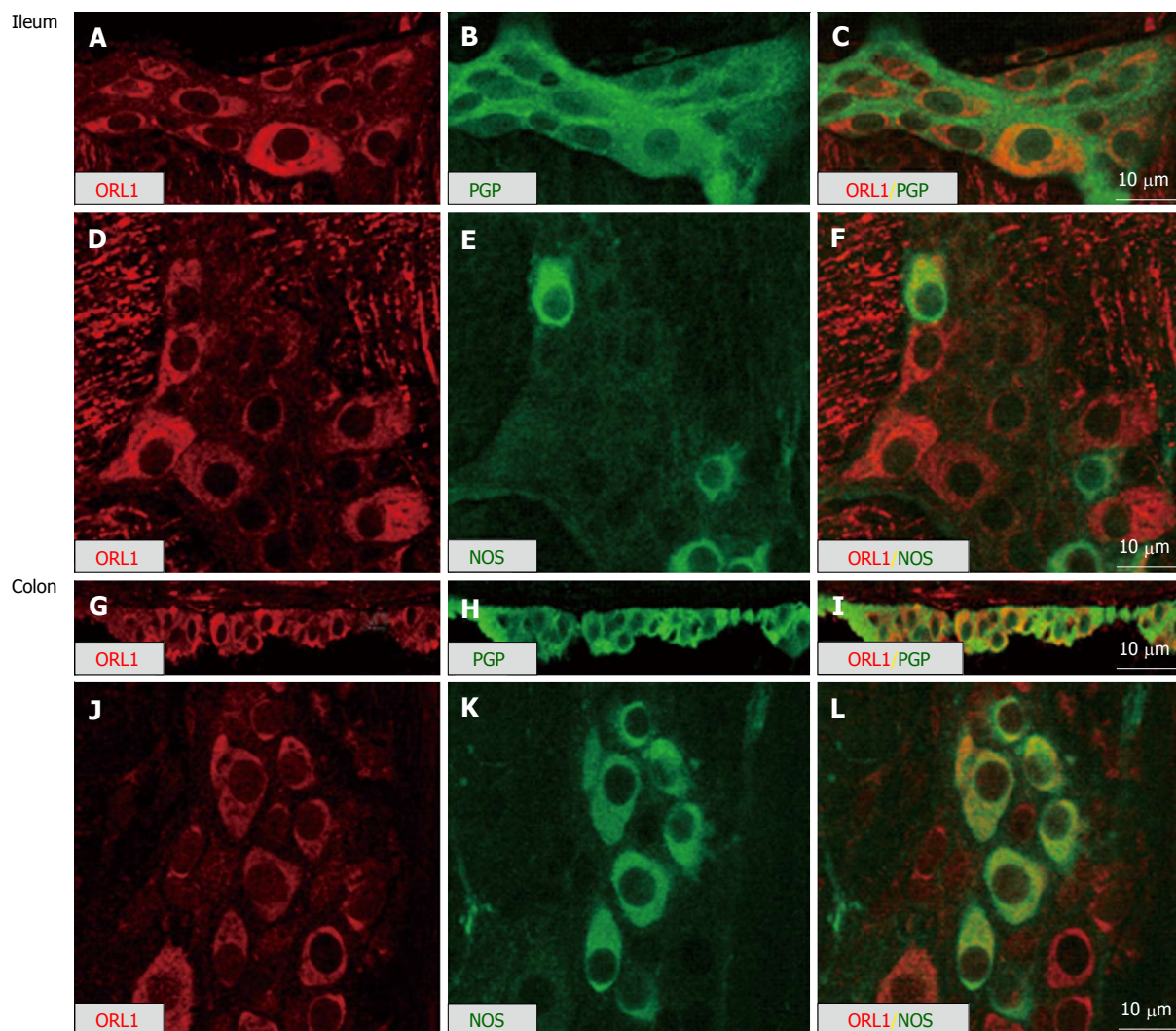


Figure 3 Double-labeling of myenteric plexus whole-mount preparations (A-F; J-L) and cryosections (G-I) of mouse ileum (A-F) and mouse colon (G-L) demonstrating co-labeling in myenteric neurons of opioid-receptor like-1 immunoreactivity with the neuron-endocrine marker protein gene product 9.5 or nitric oxide synthase. ORL1: Opioid-receptor like-1; NOS: Nitric oxide synthase; PGP: Protein gene product.

(Figures 6 and 7). For SE 1-6 this decrease represented an ORL1 activity on the motor neurons, whereas for SE > 7 the effects represented influences on interneurons, as characterized previously^[34]. Furthermore, the distance over which the EJP was recordable, was concentration dependently shortened. This suggests that ORL1 agonism reduces the excitatory responses not only on amplitude, but also on the spatial fast propagation in the myenteric reflex (ascending part) (Figure 7A). The ORL1 antagonist [NPhe¹]NOC (1 μmol/L), when given alone, did not change the spatial distribution of EJPs (Figure 7B).

Influence of TTX, hexamethonium, atropine, and nociceptin in the partitioned electrophysiological chamber

In additional experiments with two separately perfused electrophysiological chambers, TTX (3 mmol/L), when applied to the stimulatory chamber, reduced the EJP in the chamber where recording was performed (data not shown). Atropine (1 μmol/L) when added to

the stimulation chamber did not alter the EJP in the recording chamber (data not shown). Hexamethonium (100 mmol/L) when given to the stimulatory chamber reduced the EJP significantly in the chamber where recording was performed [control 29.6 ± 4.3 mV, hexamethonium (100 mmol/L) 24.5 ± 4.7 mV; $n = 5$, $P < 0.05$]. In separate experiments nociceptin was given to the stimulatory chamber and significantly reduced the EJP in the chamber where the anal recording was performed [control 27.9 ± 5.3 mV, nociceptin (1 μmol/L) 21.9 ± 4.5 mV; $n = 7$, $P < 0.05$].

DISCUSSION

Due to powerful actions on GI motility opioids are clinically used to slow increased GI transit. However, opioids are associated with side effects like addiction, respiratory depression and sedation, limiting their use. The ORL1 receptor and its endogenous ligand, nociceptin, have been known for approximately 15 years, but their effects on GI motility are still not

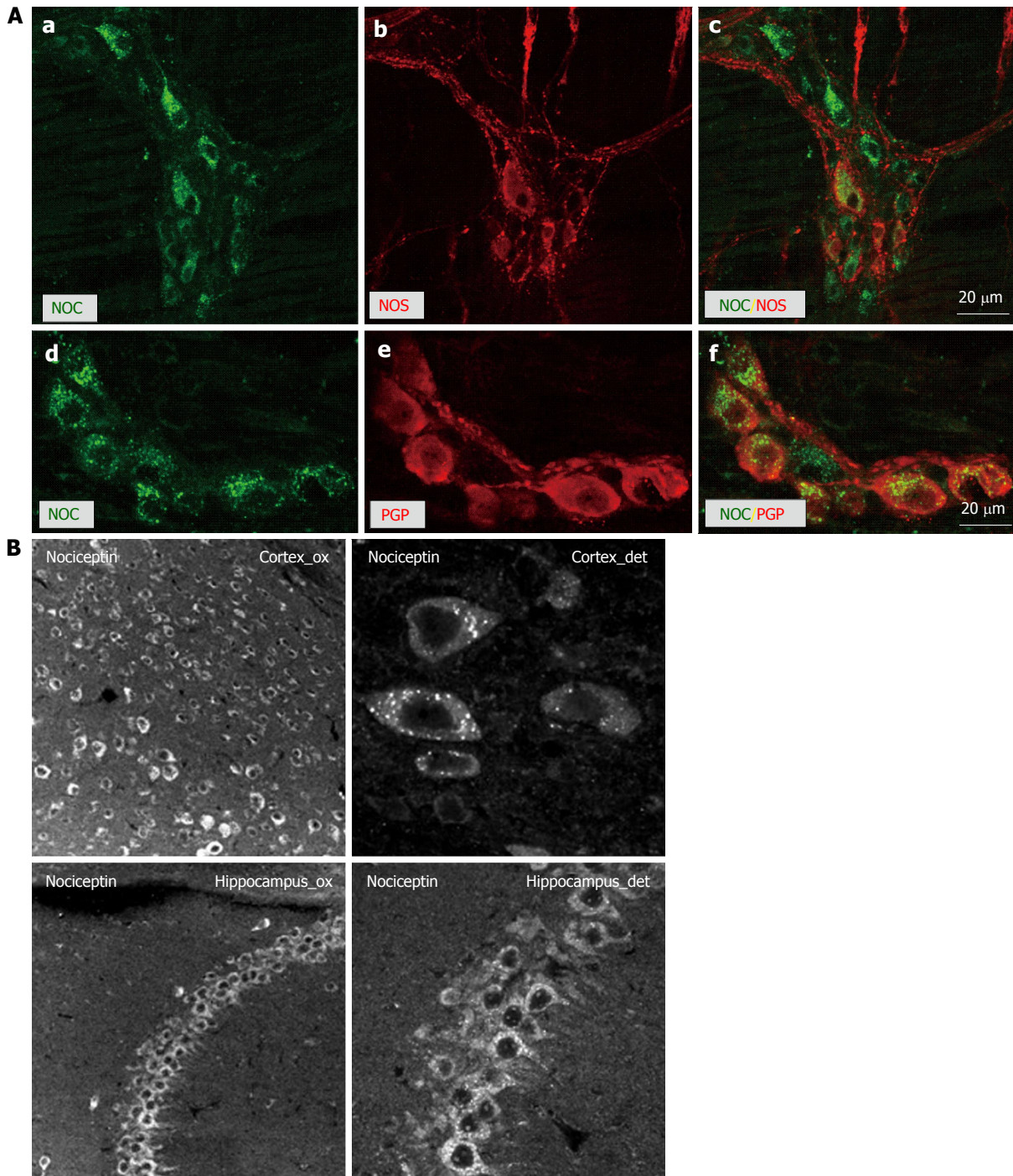


Figure 4 Double-labeling of myenteric plexus whole-mount preparations with nociceptin, nitric oxide synthase and neuron-endocrine marker protein gene product 9.5 immunoreactivity. A: Double-labeling of myenteric plexus whole-mount preparations of mouse colon demonstrating co-labeling in myenteric neurons of nociceptin (NOC) immunoreactivity with nitric oxide synthase (NOS) (A-C) and the neuron-endocrine marker protein gene product 9.5 (PGP9.5) (D-F); B: A granular appearance of the nociceptin staining in the myenteric neurons was also observed in brain sections, which served as additional controls. Individual immunopositive neurons are recognizable along the entire cortex, be it with slight region-dependent differences in staining intensity. In the hippocampal region also neuronal processes stain for nociceptin. The diffuse distribution of nociceptin corresponds with literature data (see also datasheet Abcam). No other structures apart from neurons appear to be stained.

fully understood. Since ORL1 activation, unlike the classical opioids, appears to be devoid of central side effects, drugs targeting the ORL1 receptor may be of future use in humans. The present study showed that nociceptin and ORL1 are present in the mouse colon and both are involved in the regulation of motility and neurotransmission. Most importantly, this study for the

first time proves that the co-expression of ORL1 with NOS is crucial for nociceptin effects on GI motility *in vivo*. It also demonstrates that not only motor neurons, but also interneurons are modulated by nociceptin in an ORL1-dependent manner.

The effect of nociceptin on the GI motility has already been investigated by several groups and the

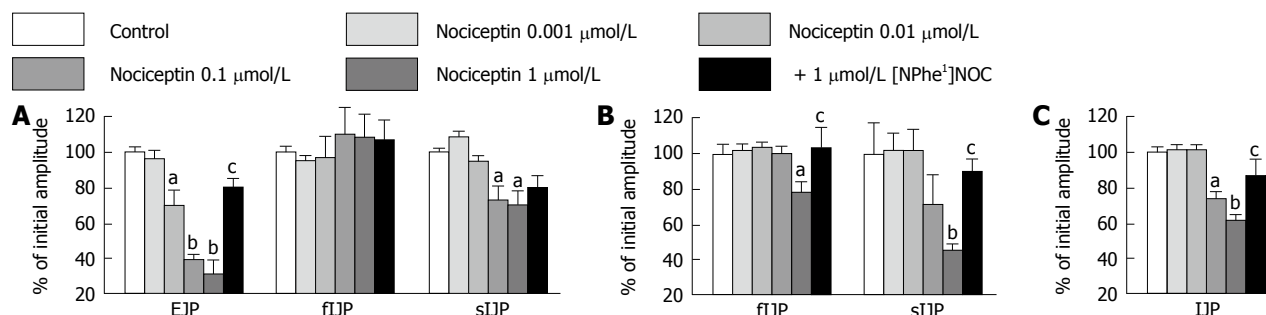


Figure 5 Effect of nociceptin (1 nmol/L–10 μmol/L) on electrically induced junction potentials. A: EJP, fIJP and sIJP for proximal colon; B: fIJP and sIJP for middle colon; C: IJP for distal colon. The last bar of each set shows the antagonizing effect of [NPhe¹]NOC (1 μmol/L). Data are mean ± SEM of $n = 5-8$. ^a $P < 0.05$; ^b $P < 0.01$ vs control; ^c $P < 0.05$ vs nociceptin alone. EJP: Excitatory junction potentials; IJP: Inhibitory junction potentials; fIJP: Fast IJP; sIJP: Slow IJP.

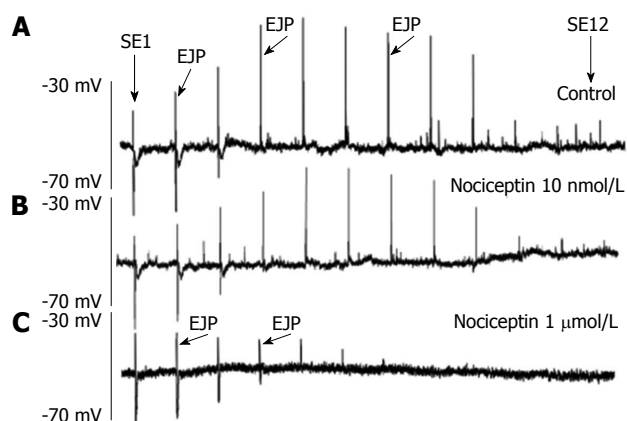


Figure 6 Effect of nociceptin (1 nmol/L, 1 μmol/L) on the spatial distribution of the excitatory junction potentials. Tracing A shows the spatial distribution of the excitatory junction potentials (EJP) recorded in smooth muscle cells. Stimulation site (SE)1 corresponds to stimulation nearby the recording site, whereas SE12 represents stimulation located 20 mm in anal direction. Thus the original recording shows the spatial distribution of ascending electrophysiological responses following anal stimulation recorded in 1.67 mm intervals. Tracings B and C show the effect of increasing concentrations of nociceptin (10 nmol/L and 1 μmol/L) on the spatial distribution of junction potentials. Note the marked reduction of EJP in a concentration-dependent fashion and the shift of the maximal distance over which an EJP can be recorded.

results are often contradictory, depending on the site of administration, dose used and the animal model employed in the study^[23,26,35,36]. Our observations *in vivo* clearly showed a differential, ORL1-dependent action of nociceptin in the mouse ileum and colon, where it accelerates and decreases the intestinal motility, respectively. In an attempt to investigate the possible influence of the ORL1 expression patterns on the effect of nociceptin, RT-PCR and immunohistochemistry studies were then executed. We found that ORL1 mRNA and immunoreactivity are present in the GI tract and there is practically no difference in expression levels between small and large intestine, excluding this factor from further investigations. Interestingly, we found the expression of an alternatively spliced ORL1 mRNA variant^[37] in mice that has not been reported in other rodents like rats^[25]. It remains unresolved whether the presence of ORL1 splice variants is associated with different receptor functionality; however, in view of our latter findings this seems rather unlikely.

Immunohistochemistry localized ORL1 staining in the majority of myenteric neurons of the colon and co-localisation with NOS suggests that ORL1 is expressed on inhibitory neurons, what was previously suggested for rats^[25]. Of note, there was no co-expression of ORL1 with NOS in the mouse ileum, what may indicate the lack of involvement of nitrergic pathways in the action of nociceptin in the small intestine and may explain in part the effect that we observed in mice.

Using specific antibodies, nociceptin has previously been localized mainly on fibers of myenteric neurons of rat colon and neuronal cell bodies of guinea pig colon^[9,36]. Our study extends these observations to mouse colon and for the first time reports that nociceptin appears to be present in vesicles in the cell body of the majority of myenteric neurons, where it double labels with NOS and PGP9.5. In contrast to the guinea pig, where nociceptin can be found only on a limited number of neurons, in the mouse nociceptin is present in the majority of neurons.

We proceeded with our investigation by performing electrophysiological recordings and found that nociceptin significantly reduced electrically-induced contractions *in vitro*; moreover, these effects showed regional differences. The notion that the ORL1 receptor is involved modulation of intestinal motility was indicated by the finding that [NPhe¹]NOC antagonized the effects of nociceptin. Since the nociceptin effects were unchanged in naloxone presence no other opioid receptors are involved and this is in agreement with observations published by others^[27,38,39]. Furthermore, we found in agreement with others no effect of nociceptin or [NPhe¹]NOC on pharmacologically stimulated smooth muscle or basal tone^[22,24,25,40] and are strongly supported by our immunohistochemical studies, which localize ORL1 receptors on neuronal, but not on smooth muscle cells.

The most important findings in our study were illustrated by further intracellular recordings in the mouse colon. Nociceptin produced a significant inhibitory effect on EJPs, which, in addition, was the lowest in the middle colon compared to effects in proximal and distal colonic tissues. Furthermore, sIJP were reduced by nociceptin, suggesting ORL1 involvement in excitatory cholinergic and inhibitory neurotransmission. The sIJP is known

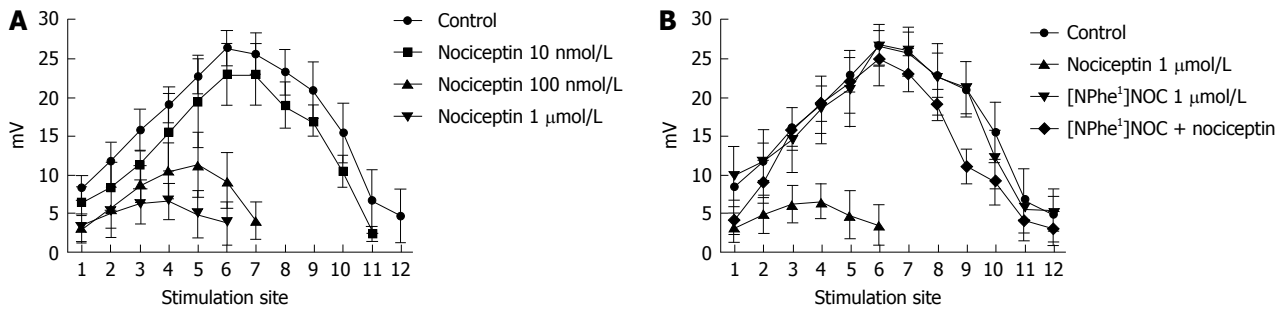


Figure 7 Effect of nociceptin (1 µmol/L) and [Nphe¹]NOC (1 µmol/L) on the spatial distribution of the excitatory junction potentials. A: A concentration-dependent reduction in excitatory junction potentials (EJP) amplitude at the different stimulation sites induced by nociceptin (10 nmol/L–1 µmol/L). Note that nociceptin caused, besides a reduction in the EJP amplitude, shortening of the distance over which the EJP can be recorded; B: [Nphe¹]NOC (1 µmol/L) had no effect on EJPs, but antagonized the effect of nociceptin (1 µmol/L).

to resemble the nitrergic inhibitory neurotransmission, which is further stressed by our immunohistochemical findings, showing that the ORL1 was co-localized with NOS, as well as our observations *in vivo*.

The present study shows an involvement of nociceptin and the ORL1 in ascending myenteric neuronal network circuits in the colon and increases our current understanding about ORL1 neurotransmission. EJP, which represents excitatory cholinergic neurotransmission was reduced by nociceptin^[33], in a [Nphe¹]NOC-reversible manner at all involved sites of stimulation, but also shortened the transmission distance. This observation leads us to postulate that not only motor neurons, but also interneurons are modulated by nociceptin. The nociceptin-induced reduction of the EJP amplitude at the shorter distances (SE1–6) points to an action at ORL1 on motor-neurons. However, the shortened distance of transmission of the EJP was caused by ORL1 actions on inter-neurons. Here ORL1 activation reduced spreading of the electrical signal and excitatory neurotransmission. The shortened transmission distances reported here may be explained by different neuronal mechanisms, *e.g.*, reduced pre- or postsynaptic neurotransmitter release or neuronal excitability as underlying mechanisms^[41,42].

The experiments with hexamethonium show that transmission involving ganglions is involved in EJP transmission, since EJPs were abolished by hexamethonium beyond 10 mm. In our study EJPs at the closer stimulation sites were reduced and this reduction effect was found to be higher than the remainder amplitude in presence of hexamethonium, which suggests that the ORL1 influenced neurotransmission on motor neurons.

[Nphe¹]NOC alone had no influence on the electrophysiological parameter observed, but did antagonize the effect of nociceptin, lending clear evidence to the hypothesis that the receptors on motor neurons and interneurons are ORL1 receptors. Our experiments in the separable electrophysiological chamber clearly indicated that ORL1 activation minimizes interneuron neurotransmission. This happens to an extent comparable to that seen with the ganglionic blocker hexamethonium. Therefore, our study shows for the first time that ORL1 receptors are located on myenteric plexus

interneurons and additionally on neuromuscular junctions of motor neurons.

In summary, our study shows for the first time that nociceptin activates ORL1 on motoneurons and interneurons, which leads to a decrease in cholinergic excitatory and inhibitory nitrergic neurotransmission. In the cholinergic excitatory pathways nociceptin reduces not only the local transmission of EJP, but also the spatial spreading of ascending excitatory responses at distances up to 20 mm. Since ORL1 activation, unlike other opioid receptor-active drugs, is not associated with central side effects, compounds acting at the ORL1 may be good candidates for the future treatment of disorders associated with increased colonic transit, such as diarrhea or diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome.

COMMENTS

Background

The heptadecapeptide nociceptin, also known as orphanin FQ, is the only known endogenous agonist at the opioid-receptor like-1 (ORL1) receptor. From a structural perspective nociceptin is closely related to the dynorphin family, but differs from other endogenous opioids in that it does not possess the N-terminal tyrosine residue. Over the last decade, organ bath experiments revealed that nociceptin induces contractions by reducing inhibitory neurotransmission and causes relaxation by reducing cholinergic neurotransmission. More complex preparations disclosed that nociceptin reduces the excitatory components of the peristaltic reflex and thus slows gastrointestinal (GI) motility.

Research frontiers

The aim of the study was to investigate the endogenous nociceptin system in attempt to elucidate the role and function of ORL1 receptors in the GI tract. Based on the effects of nociceptin on the GI motility observed *in vivo*, localization and co-localization of the peptide and its receptor were examined in the mouse ileum and colon. Electrophysiology was employed to investigate whether cholinergic excitatory junction potentials, purinergic fast inhibitory junction potentials (IJPs) and nitrergic slow IJPs are changed by nociceptin, if nociceptin has effects on long-distance neurotransmission and motoneurons and interneurons are involved. The authors' results shed new light on the endogenous nociceptin system physiology, what may have important clinical implications in future.

Innovations and breakthroughs

The present study shows that nociceptin and ORL1 are present in the mouse colon and both are involved in the regulation of motility and neurotransmission. Most importantly, this study for the first time proves that the co-expression of ORL1 with nitric oxide synthase is crucial for nociceptin effects on GI motility *in*

vivo. It also demonstrates that not only motor neurons, but also interneurons are modulated by nociceptin in an ORL1-dependent manner.

Applications

Since ORL1 activation, unlike other opioid receptor-active drugs, is not associated with central side effects, compounds acting at the ORL1 may be good candidates for the future treatment of disorders associated with increased colonic transit, such as diarrhea or diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome.

Terminology

The authors' observations *in vivo* clearly showed a differential, ORL1-dependent action of nociceptin in the mouse ileum and colon, where it accelerates and decreases the intestinal motility, respectively. The authors proceeded with our investigation by performing electrophysiological recordings and found that nociceptin significantly reduces electrically-induced contractions *in vitro*; moreover, these effects showed regional differences.

Peer-review

Overall this manuscript is well conducted and written. The hypothesis is also interest and successful.

REFERENCES

- Meunier JC, Mollereau C, Toll L, Suaudeau C, Moisand C, Alvinerie P, Butour JL, Guillemot JC, Ferrara P, Monsarrat B. Isolation and structure of the endogenous agonist of opioid receptor-like ORL1 receptor. *Nature* 1995; **377**: 532-535 [PMID: 7566152 DOI: 10.1038/377532a0]
- Reinscheid RK, Nothacker HP, Bourson A, Ardati A, Henningsen RA, Bunzow JR, Grandy DK, Langen H, Monsma FJ, Civelli O. Orphanin FQ: a neuropeptide that activates an opioidlike G protein-coupled receptor. *Science* 1995; **270**: 792-794 [PMID: 7481766 DOI: 10.1126/science.270.5237.792]
- Reinscheid RK, Ardati A, Monsma FJ, Civelli O. Structure-activity relationship studies on the novel neuropeptide orphanin FQ. *J Biol Chem* 1996; **271**: 14163-14168 [PMID: 8662940 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.271.24.14163]
- Mollereau C, Parmentier M, Mailleux P, Butour JL, Moisand C, Chalon P, Caput D, Vassart G, Meunier JC. ORL1, a novel member of the opioid receptor family. Cloning, functional expression and localization. *FEBS Lett* 1994; **341**: 33-38 [PMID: 8137918 DOI: 10.1016/0014-5793(94)80235-1]
- Guerrini R, Calo' G, Rizzi A, Bigoni R, Rizzi D, Regoli D, Salvadori S. Structure-activity relationships of nociceptin and related peptides: comparison with dynorphin A. *Peptides* 2000; **21**: 923-933 [PMID: 10998526 DOI: 10.1016/S0196-9781(00)00229-1]
- Chen Y, Fan Y, Liu J, Mestek A, Tian M, Kozak CA, Yu L. Molecular cloning, tissue distribution and chromosomal localization of a novel member of the opioid receptor gene family. *FEBS Lett* 1994; **347**: 279-283 [PMID: 8034018 DOI: 10.1016/0014-5793(94)00560-5]
- Fukuda K, Kato S, Mori K, Nishi M, Takeshima H, Iwabe N, Miyata T, Houtani T, Sugimoto T. cDNA cloning and regional distribution of a novel member of the opioid receptor family. *FEBS Lett* 1994; **343**: 42-46 [PMID: 8163014 DOI: 10.1016/0014-5793(94)80603-9]
- Hawes BE, Fried S, Yao X, Weig B, Graziano MP. Nociceptin (ORL-1) and mu-opioid receptors mediate mitogen-activated protein kinase activation in CHO cells through a Gi-coupled signaling pathway: evidence for distinct mechanisms of agonist-mediated desensitization. *J Neurochem* 1998; **71**: 1024-1033 [PMID: 9721727 DOI: 10.1046/j.1471-4159.1998.71031024.x]
- O'Donnell AM, Ellis LM, Riedl MS, Elde RP, Mawe GM. Distribution and chemical coding of orphanin FQ/nociceptin-immunoreactive neurons in the myenteric plexus of guinea pig intestines and sphincter of Oddi. *J Comp Neurol* 2001; **430**: 1-11 [PMID: 11135242 DOI: 10.1002/1096-9861(20010129)430:1<1::AID-CNE1011>3.0.CO;2-H]
- Allescher HD, Storr M, Brechmann C, Hahn A, Schusdziarra V. Modulatory effect of endogenous and exogenous opioids on the excitatory reflex pathway of the rat ileum. *Neuropeptides* 2000; **34**: 62-68 [PMID: 10688971 DOI: 10.1054/npep.1999.0789]
- Grider JR, Makhlof GM. Role of opioid neurons in the regulation of intestinal peristalsis. *Am J Physiol* 1987; **253**: G226-G231 [PMID: 2887119]
- Kromer W. The current status of opioid research on gastro-intestinal motility. *Life Sci* 1989; **44**: 579-589 [PMID: 2564621 DOI: 10.1016/0024-3205(89)90190-2]
- Kaufman PN, Krevsky B, Malmud LS, Maurer AH, Somers MB, Siegel JA, Fisher RS. Role of opiate receptors in the regulation of colonic transit. *Gastroenterology* 1988; **94**: 1351-1356 [PMID: 2834257]
- Manaka H, Manaka Y, Kostolanska F, Fox JE, Daniel EE. Release of VIP and substance P from isolated perfused canine ileum. *Am J Physiol* 1989; **257**: G182-G190 [PMID: 2475029]
- Donnerer J, Holzer P, Lembeck F. Release of dynorphin, somatostatin and substance P from the vascularly perfused small intestine of the guinea-pig during peristalsis. *Br J Pharmacol* 1984; **83**: 919-925 [PMID: 6083815]
- Allescher HD, Storr M, Piller C, Brantl V, Schusdziarra V. Effect of opioid active therapeutics on the ascending reflex pathway in the rat ileum. *Neuropeptides* 2000; **34**: 181-186 [PMID: 11021978 DOI: 10.1054/npep.2000.0811]
- Storr M, Hahn A, Gaffal E, Saur D, Allescher HD. Effects of endomorphin-1 and -2 on mu-opioid receptors in myenteric neurons and in the peristaltic reflex in rat small intestine. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol* 2002; **29**: 428-434 [PMID: 12010188 DOI: 10.1046/j.1440-1681.2002.03681.x]
- Coupar IM. The peristaltic reflex in the rat ileum: evidence for functional mu- and delta-opiate receptors. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 1995; **47**: 643-646 [PMID: 8583364 DOI: 10.1111/j.2042-7158.1995.tb05851.x]
- Clark SJ, Smith TW. The release of Met-enkephalin from the guinea-pig ileum at rest and during peristaltic activity. *Life Sci* 1983; **33 Suppl 1**: 465-468 [PMID: 6664225 DOI: 10.1016/0024-3205(83)90542-8]
- Clark SJ, Smith TW. Peristalsis abolishes the release of methionine-enkephalin from guinea-pig ileum *in vitro*. *Eur J Pharmacol* 1981; **70**: 421-424 [PMID: 7227458 DOI: 10.1016/0014-2999(81)90175-8]
- Kromer W, Pretzlaff W, Woinoff R. Opioids modulate periodicity rather than efficacy of peristaltic waves in the guinea pig ileum *in vitro*. *Life Sci* 1980; **26**: 1857-1865 [PMID: 6249985 DOI: 10.1016/0024-3205(80)90614-1]
- Zhang G, Murray TF, Grandy DK. Orphanin FQ has an inhibitory effect on the guinea pig ileum and the mouse vas deferens. *Brain Res* 1997; **772**: 102-106 [PMID: 9406961 DOI: 10.1016/S0006-8993(97)00858-5]
- Yazdani A, Takahashi T, Bagnol D, Akil H, Watson SJ. A newly discovered neuropeptide orphanin FQ: its distribution and action in rat gastrointestinal tract. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **112**: A1201
- Osinski MA, Pampusch MS, Murtaugh MP, Brown DR. Cloning, expression and functional role of a nociceptin/orphanin FQ receptor in the porcine gastrointestinal tract. *Eur J Pharmacol* 1999; **365**: 281-289 [PMID: 9988113 DOI: 10.1016/S0014-2999(98)00869-3]
- Yüce B, Sibaev A, Haaken A, Saur D, Allescher HD, Göke B, Timmermans JP, Storr M. ORL-1 receptor mediates the action of nociceptin on ascending myenteric reflex pathways in rats. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **133**: 574-586 [PMID: 17681177]
- Broccardo M, Agostini S, Petrella C, Guerrini R, Improta G. Central and peripheral role of the nociceptin/orphaninFQ system on normal and disturbed colonic motor function and faecal pellet output in the rat. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2008; **20**: 939-948 [PMID: 18410266 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2008.01120.x]
- Osinski MA, Brown DR. Orphanin FQ/nociceptin: a novel neuromodulator of gastrointestinal function? *Peptides* 2000; **21**: 999-1005 [PMID: 10998534 DOI: 10.1016/S0196-9781(00)00240-

- 0]
- 28 **Fichna J**, Schicho R, Andrews CN, Bashashati M, Klompus M, McKay DM, Sharkey KA, Zjawiony JK, Janecka A, Storr MA. Salvinorin A inhibits colonic transit and neurogenic ion transport in mice by activating kappa-opioid and cannabinoid receptors. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2009; **21**: 1326-e128 [PMID: 19650775 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2009.01369.x]
 - 29 **Kamysz E**, Sałaga M, Sobczak M, Kamysz W, Fichna J. Characterization of the effects of opiorphin and sialorphin and their analogs substituted in position 1 with pyroglutamic acid on motility in the mouse ileum. *J Pept Sci* 2013; **19**: 166-172 [PMID: 23381913]
 - 30 **Saur D**, Paehge H, Schusdziaarra V, Allescher HD. Distinct expression of splice variants of neuronal nitric oxide synthase in the human gastrointestinal tract. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **118**: 849-858 [PMID: 10784584 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(00)70171-5]
 - 31 **Saur D**, Seidler B, Paehge H, Schusdziaarra V, Allescher HD. Complex regulation of human neuronal nitric-oxide synthase exon 1c gene transcription. Essential role of Sp and ZNF family members of transcription factors. *J Biol Chem* 2002; **277**: 25798-25814 [PMID: 11960979 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M109802200]
 - 32 **Storr M**, Sibaev A, Marsicano G, Lutz B, Schusdziaarra V, Timmermans JP, Allescher HD. Cannabinoid receptor type 1 modulates excitatory and inhibitory neurotransmission in mouse colon. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2004; **286**: G110-G117 [PMID: 12893627 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00148.2003]
 - 33 **Sibaev A**, Franck H, Vanderwinden JM, Allescher HD, Storr M. Structural differences in the enteric neural network in murine colon: impact on electrophysiology. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2003; **285**: G1325-G1334 [PMID: 12881230]
 - 34 **Sibaev A**, Yüce B, Allescher HD, Göke B, Storr M. A new electrophysiological tool to investigate the spatial neuronal projections within the myenteric ascending reflex of the mouse colon. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol* 2008; **35**: 744-750 [PMID: 18346174 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1681.2008.04919.x]
 - 35 **Osinski MA**, Bass P, Gaumnitz EA. Peripheral and central actions of orphanin FQ (nociceptin) on murine colon. *Am J Physiol* 1999; **276**: G125-G131 [PMID: 9886987]
 - 36 **Yazdani A**, Takahashi T, Bagnol D, Watson SJ, Owyang C. Functional significance of a newly discovered neuropeptide, orphanin FQ, in rat gastrointestinal motility. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **116**: 108-117 [PMID: 9869608 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(99)70234-9]
 - 37 **Pan YX**, Xu J, Wan BL, Zuckerman A, Pasternak GW. Identification and differential regional expression of KOR-3/ORL-1 gene splice variants in mouse brain. *FEBS Lett* 1998; **435**: 65-68 [PMID: 9755860 DOI: 10.1016/S0014-5793(98)01039-4]
 - 38 **Menzies JR**, Glen T, Davies MR, Paterson SJ, Corbett AD. In vitro agonist effects of nociceptin and [Phe(1)psi(CH(2)-NH)Gly(2)]nociceptin(1-13)NH(2) in the mouse and rat colon and the mouse vas deferens. *Eur J Pharmacol* 1999; **385**: 217-223 [PMID: 10607879 DOI: 10.1016/S0014-2999(99)00700-1]
 - 39 **Rizzi A**, Bigoni R, Calò G, Guerrini R, Salvadori S, Regoli D. [Nphe(1)]nociceptin-(1-13)-NH(2) antagonizes nociceptin effects in the mouse colon. *Eur J Pharmacol* 1999; **385**: R3-R5 [PMID: 10607891 DOI: 10.1016/S0014-2999(99)00730-X]
 - 40 **Calò G**, Rizzi A, Bodin M, Neugebauer W, Salvadori S, Guerrini R, Bianchi C, Regoli D. Pharmacological characterization of nociceptin receptor: an in vitro study. *Can J Physiol Pharmacol* 1997; **75**: 713-718 [PMID: 9276153 DOI: 10.1139/y97-055]
 - 41 **Vaughan CW**, Ingram SL, Christie MJ. Actions of the ORL1 receptor ligand nociceptin on membrane properties of rat periaqueductal gray neurons in vitro. *J Neurosci* 1997; **17**: 996-1003 [PMID: 8994054]
 - 42 **Yu TP**, Xie CW. Orphanin FQ/nociceptin inhibits synaptic transmission and long-term potentiation in rat dentate gyrus through postsynaptic mechanisms. *J Neurophysiol* 1998; **80**: 1277-1284 [PMID: 9744938]

P- Reviewer: Lambrecht NW, Senates ES **S- Editor:** Ji FF

L- Editor: A **E- Editor:** Liu SQ



Observational Study

Beverage intake preference and bowel preparation laxative taste preference for colonoscopy

Adeyinka O Laiyemo, Clinton Burnside, Maryam A Laiyemo, John Kwagyan, Carla D Williams, Kolapo A Idowu, Hassan Ashktorab, Angsom Kibreab, Victor F Scott, Andrew K Sanderson

Adeyinka O Laiyemo, Hassan Ashktorab, Angsom Kibreab, Victor F Scott, Andrew K Sanderson, Department of Medicine, Howard University College of Medicine, Washington, DC 20060, United States

Clinton Burnside, Carla D Williams, Kolapo A Idowu, Howard University Cancer Center, Washington, DC 20060, United States

Maryam A Laiyemo, Department of Biological Sciences, College of Arts and Sciences, Howard University, Washington, DC 20060, United States

John Kwagyan, Georgetown-Howard Universities Center for Clinical and Translations Science, Washington, DC 20060, United States

Author contributions: All authors contributed to this manuscript.

Supported by In part, the Bridge Funds and Pilot Study Awards Program of Howard University, No. U400043; by grant awards from the National Center for Advancing Translational Science, Nos. KL2TR000102-04 and UL1RT000101; from the National Institute for Diabetes, Digestive Diseases and Kidney, No. R21DK100875; and National Institutes of Health (to Dr. Laiyemo AO).

Institutional review board statement: The study was approved by the Institutional Review Board of Howard University, Washington DC (Reference = IRB-12-MED-17).

Informed consent statement: All participants gave written informed consent prior to participation.

Conflict-of-interest statement: None.

Data sharing statement: No.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on

different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Adeyinka O Laiyemo, MD, MPH, Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Medicine, Howard University College of Medicine, 2041 Georgia Avenue, NW, Washington, DC 20060, United States. adeyinka.laiyemo@howard.edu
Telephone: +1-202-8657186
Fax: +1-202-8654607

Received: March 16, 2015
Peer-review started: March 18, 2015
First decision: April 10, 2015
Revised: May 26, 2015
Accepted: June 9, 2015
Article in press: June 11, 2015
Published online: August 6, 2015

Abstract

AIM: To examine whether non-alcoholic beverage intake preferences can guide polyethylene glycol (PEG)-based bowel laxative preparation selection for patients.

METHODS: We conducted eight public taste test sessions using commercially procured (A) unflavored PEG, (B) citrus flavored PEG and (C) PEG with ascorbate (Moviprep). We collected characteristics of volunteers including their beverage intake preferences. The volunteers tasted the laxatives in randomly assigned orders and ranked the laxatives as 1st, 2nd, and 3rd based on their taste preferences. Our primary outcome is the number of 1st place rankings for each preparation.

RESULTS: A total of 777 volunteers completed the study. Unflavored PEG was ranked as 1st by 70 (9.0%), flavored PEG by 534 (68.7%) and PEG with ascorbate by

173 (22.3%) volunteers. Demographic, lifestyle characteristics and beverage intake patterns for coffee, tea, and carbonated drinks did not predict PEG-based laxative preference.

CONCLUSION: Beverage intake pattern was not a useful guide for PEG-based laxative preference. It is important to develop more tolerable and affordable bowel preparation laxatives for colonoscopy. Also, patients should taste their PEG solution with and without flavoring before flavoring the entire gallon as this may give them more opportunity to pick a pattern that may be more tolerable.

Key words: Bowel preparation; Laxatives; Colonoscopy; Taste tests; Colon cancer; Screening

© **The Author(s) 2015.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: There is a need to improve patients' experience with bowel preparation process in order to optimize both colonoscopy uptake. Polyethylene glycol (PEG) is the most widely used laxative but many patients do not readily tolerate it because of its taste. We evaluated whether beverage intake preference pattern can be a useful guide for predicting tolerability of bowel preparation laxative in multiple public taste tests. Our study suggested that no demographic or lifestyle factors predicted bowel preparation taste preference for PEG-based preparations. We recommend that patients should taste PEG formulation before flavoring it to assist them in choosing a more tolerable pattern of ingestion.

Laiyemo AO, Burnside C, Laiyemo MA, Kwagyan J, Williams CD, Idowu KA, Ashktorab H, Kibreab A, Scott VF, Sanderson AK. Beverage intake preference and bowel preparation laxative taste preference for colonoscopy. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(3): 84-88 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i3.84.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i3.84>

INTRODUCTION

Colorectal cancer (CRC) remains a leading cause of cancer-related deaths^[1] despite evidence from case-control^[2-4], cohort^[5] and randomized control studies^[6-8] that screening reduces the risk of death from the disease because a large proportion of age-eligible adults in the United States have not been screened^[9,10]. This is a major public health problem. Although there are multiple acceptable options for CRC screening^[11], colonoscopy is the only modality for surveillance, diagnostic and therapeutic purposes.

Colonoscopy requires a full bowel preparation using oral laxative agents. However, a substantial percentage of patients do not readily tolerate their bowel laxatives for colonoscopy. Inadequate bowel preparation wastes limited endoscopic resources in addition to patients' and

providers' time and reduces the enthusiasm for repeat screening among patients^[12]. Furthermore, inadequate endoscopy has been associated with subsequent colorectal cancer^[13] underscoring the importance of achieving a high quality preparation for colonoscopy.

Given that the palatability of substances varies among people, we postulated that beverage intake preferences may be a useful guide to personalize bowel preparation recommendations for patients. We tested this hypothesis by conducting public taste tests among volunteers to correlate their beverage intake patterns to their preferred bowel preparations' taste.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Public taste tests

The study was approved by the Institutional Review Board of Howard University (IRB-12-MED-17). We conducted eight public taste test sessions at Howard University Hospital lobby from July 2012 to March 2013. The objective of the taste test was to determine participants' preferences for 3 commercially procured preparations of polyethylene glycol-(PEG) 3350 used for bowel preparation for colonoscopy. These were: (1) Unflavored PEG; (2) citrus flavored PEG; and (3) PEG with sodium ascorbate and ascorbic acid (Moviprep®, Raleigh, NC).

The study was open to any volunteer (visitors, ambulatory care patients, students, and staff) if they were at least 18 years old. The study was explained to each participant and written informed consent was obtained. Each participant completed an intake form providing information on their demographic characteristics (age, sex, self identified race, highest education attained, income, marital status and self reported weight and height), lifestyle choices (smoking status and alcohol intake) and their non-alcoholic beverage intake preferences and patterns for coffee, tea and carbonated drinks (soda). Subsequently, volunteers tasted and drank 10 cc (equivalent to 2 teaspoons) of each laxative in randomly selected order (ABC, BCA, CAB) and rated the laxatives based on their preferences in an ordinal fashion with the preferred laxative rated as 1st, then 2nd for the next preferred and 3rd for the least preferred laxative. We offered confectioneries to each volunteer on completion of their participation in the study.

Exposure and outcome assessment

Information on how each volunteer prefers to drink coffee was collected with five options: (1) I do not drink coffee; (2) Without milk/cream; without sugar/sweetener; (3) Without milk/cream; with sugar/sweetener; (4) With milk/cream; without sugar/sweetener; and (5) With milk/cream; with sugar/sweetener. Similar information was obtained for tea intake. They were also asked if they drink regular carbonated drinks (soda), diet soda, and whether they prefer the taste of diet soda to regular soda. Our primary outcome was the number of 1st place ranking for each laxative preparation.

Table 1 Association of demographic and lifestyle characteristics with bowel preparation taste preference

Characteristics	n	Preferred unflavored PEG (n = 70)		Preferred flavored PEG (n = 534)		Preferred moviprep (n = 173)	
		n (%)	OR (95%CI)	n (%)	OR (95%CI)	n (%)	OR (95%CI)
Age ≥ 50 yr							
No	421	32 (7.6)	Reference	283 (67.2)	Reference	106 (25.2)	Reference
Yes	356	38 (10.6)	1.45 (0.89-2.38)	251 (70.5)	1.17 (0.86-1.58)	67 (18.8)	0.69 (0.49-0.97)
Sex							
Male	340	21 (6.2)	Reference	242 (71.2)	Reference	77 (22.7)	Reference
Female	432	48 (11.1)	1.90 (1.11-3.24)	288 (66.7)	0.81 (0.60-1.10)	96 (22.2)	0.98 (0.69-1.37)
Race							
Non-blacks	120	12 (10.0)	Reference	83 (69.2)	Reference	25 (20.8)	Reference
Blacks	657	58 (8.8)	0.87 (0.45-1.68)	451 (68.7)	0.98 (0.64-1.49)	148 (22.5)	1.10 (0.69-1.78)
Marital status							
Unmarried	455	38 (8.4)	Reference	314 (69.0)	Reference	103 (22.6)	Reference
Married	169	13 (7.7)	0.91 (0.47-1.76)	110 (65.1)	0.84 (0.57-1.22)	46 (27.2)	1.28 (0.85-1.91)
College education							
No	418	41 (9.8)	Reference	299 (71.5)	Reference	78 (18.7)	Reference
Yes	343	27 (7.9)	0.79 (0.47-1.31)	228 (66.5)	0.79 (0.58-1.07)	88 (25.7)	1.50 (1.06-2.12)
Yearly income < \$25000							
No	437	33 (7.6)	Reference	302 (69.1)	Reference	102 (23.3)	Reference
Yes	268	29 (10.8)	1.49 (0.88-2.51)	181 (67.5)	0.93 (0.67-1.29)	58 (21.6)	0.91 (0.63-1.31)
BMI							
< 25 kg/m ²	223	18 (8.1)	Reference	150 (67.3)	Reference	55 (24.7)	Reference
25-29 kg/m ²	258	25 (9.7)	1.22 (0.65-2.30)	172 (66.7)	0.97 (0.66-1.42)	61 (23.6)	0.95 (0.62-1.44)
≥ 30 kg/m ²	275	26 (9.5)	1.19 (0.63-2.23)	199 (72.4)	1.27 (0.87-1.87)	50 (18.7)	0.68 (0.44-1.05)
History of smoking							
No	485	38 (7.8)	Reference	334 (68.9)	Reference	113 (23.3)	Reference
Yes	286	32 (11.2)	1.48 (0.90-2.43)	195 (68.2)	0.97 (0.71-1.33)	59 (20.6)	0.86 (0.60-1.22)
Alcohol							
No	311	26 (8.4)	Reference	216 (69.5)	Reference	69 (22.2)	Reference
Yes	457	42 (9.2)	1.11 (0.66-1.85)	312 (68.3)	0.95 (0.69-1.29)	103 (22.5)	1.02 (0.72-1.44)
Health history							
Diabetes							
No	661	51 (8.8)	Reference	453 (68.5)	Reference	150 (22.7)	Reference
Yes	107	11 (10.3)	1.19 (0.60-2.35)	76 (71.0)	1.13 (0.72-1.76)	20 (18.7)	0.78 (0.47-1.32)
Hypertension							
No	521	48 (9.2)	Reference	341 (65.5)	Reference	132 (25.3)	Reference
Yes	248	22 (8.9)	0.96 (0.57-1.63)	188 (75.8)	1.65 (1.17-2.33)	138 (15.3)	0.53 (0.36-0.79)

Missing data: sex = 5; marital status = 153; education = 16; income = 72; BMI = 21; smoking status = 6; alcohol = 9; diabetes = 9; hypertension = 8. PEG: Polyethylene glycol; BMI: Body mass index.

Statistical analysis

We calculated the percentages of volunteers who preferred each laxative's taste and compared the characteristics of participants who selected each laxative as 1st vs those who did not. Missing variables were set to missing without the use of dummy variables. We used logistic regression models to compare the characteristics of volunteers who chose each laxative as 1st to the rest of the volunteers and calculated odds ratios (OR) and 95%CI. We performed similar analyses and compared the pattern of beverage intake for coffee, tea, and soda with those who did not drink these beverages. We evaluated the predictive accuracy of the models by calculating the area under the receiver operating characteristics curve (AUC). We used Stata® statistical software version 11.2 (College Station, Texas) for our analyses.

RESULTS

A total of 777 volunteers completed the taste test. The mean age of volunteers was 45.1 years (range 18-83

years), 432 (56.0%) women and 657 (84.6%) blacks. Seventy (9.0%) participants preferred unflavored PEG as first choice, 534 (68.7%) preferred flavored PEG while 173 (22.3%) preferred PEG with ascorbate.

Overall, no demographic or lifestyle characteristics adequately predicted the preference for any bowel laxative. Volunteers who were older than 50 years (OR = 0.69; 95%CI: 0.49-0.97) and those with hypertension (OR = 0.53; 95%CI: 0.36-0.79) were less likely to prefer PEG with ascorbate as first choice. Although those with hypertension were more likely to prefer flavored PEG (OR = 1.65; 95%CI: 1.17-2.23) but the predictive accuracy was low (AUC = 0.55). Volunteers with college education were more likely to prefer PEG with ascorbate (OR = 1.50; 95%CI: 1.06-2.12), but the predictive accuracy was also low (AUC = 0.55). Similarly, women were more likely to prefer unflavored PEG (OR = 1.90; 95%CI: 1.11-3.24), albeit with low predictive accuracy (AUC = 0.57) (Table 1). The coffee, tea and carbonated drinks intake pattern of volunteers were not associated with laxative taste preferences (Table 2).

Table 2 Association of beverage intake preferences with bowel preparation taste preference

Beverage intake	n	Preferred unflavored PEG (n = 70)		Preferred flavored PEG (n = 534)		Preferred Moviprep (n = 173)	
		n (%)	OR (95%CI)	n (%)	OR (95%CI)	n (%)	OR (95%CI)
Coffee intake pattern							
Don't drink coffee	265	22 (8.3)	Reference	183 (69.1)	Reference	60 (22.6)	Reference
No milk, no sugar	41	4 (9.8)	1.19 (0.39-3.66)	27 (65.9)	0.86 (0.43-1.73)	10 (24.4)	1.10 (0.51-2.38)
With sugar, no milk	42	2 (4.8)	0.55 (0.13-2.44)	34 (81.0)	1.90 (0.84-4.29)	6 (14.3)	0.57 (0.23-1.42)
With milk, no sugar	65	9 (13.9)	1.78 (0.78-4.06)	42 (64.6)	0.82 (0.46-1.45)	14 (21.5)	0.94 (0.49-1.81)
With milk, with sugar	336	31 (9.2)	1.12 (0.63-1.99)	230 (68.5)	0.97 (0.69-1.38)	75 (22.3)	0.98 (0.67-1.44)
Tea intake pattern							
Don't drink tea	138	14 (10.1)	Reference	96 (69.6)	Reference	28 (20.3)	Reference
No milk, no sugar	89	6 (6.7)	0.64 (0.24-1.73)	63 (70.8)	1.06 (0.59-1.90)	20 (22.5)	1.14 (0.60-2.18)
With sugar, no milk	336	30 (8.9)	0.87 (0.44-1.69)	240 (71.4)	1.09 (0.71-1.69)	66 (19.6)	0.96 (0.59-1.57)
With milk, no sugar	25	2 (8.0)	0.77 (0.16-3.62)	16 (64.0)	0.78 (0.32-1.90)	7 (28.0)	1.53 (0.58-4.02)
With milk, with sugar	153	14 (9.2)	0.89 (0.41-1.94)	96 (62.8)	0.74 (0.45-1.20)	43 (28.1)	1.54 (0.89-2.65)
Carbonated drinks							
Regular soda intake							
No	269	27 (10.0)	Reference	180 (66.9)	Reference	62 (23.1)	Reference
Yes	482	41 (8.5)	0.83 (0.50-1.39)	336 (69.7)	1.14 (0.83-1.57)	105 (21.8)	0.93 (0.65-1.33)
Diet soda intake							
No	493	43 (8.7)	Reference	336 (68.2)	Reference	114 (23.1)	Reference
Yes	218	19 (8.7)	1.00 (0.57-1.76)	155 (71.1)	1.15 (0.81-1.63)	44 (20.2)	0.84 (0.57-1.24)
Prefers the taste of diet soda to regular soda							
No	582	47 (8.1)	Reference	402 (69.1)	Reference	133 (22.9)	Reference
Yes	111	13 (11.7)	1.51 (0.79-2.89)	76 (68.5)	0.97 (0.63-1.51)	22 (19.8)	0.83 (0.50-1.38)

PEG: Polyethylene glycol.

DISCUSSION

In this large study of volunteers in public taste tests, demographic, lifestyle and beverage intake patterns of volunteers did not predict their taste preferences for the studied bowel laxatives commonly used in the preparation process for colonoscopy. This suggests that these characteristics are not clinically useful to guide the selection of laxatives for colonoscopy. It is unclear why beverage intake patterns of our participants did not predict their preferences for bowel laxatives examined in this study. However, we speculate that beverage intake patterns are probably more unique to the individuals and can be varied in composition more readily than the limited taste range of the bowel laxatives. It will be important to develop better tasting and more acceptable bowel preparation laxatives and make them available and affordable to all patients.

Improving bowel preparation experience of patients is an important step to enhance uptake of CRC screening using colonoscopy. Previous interventions have involved reduction in the salt content and flavoring of the solutions by manufacturers. For those with low socio-economic status, these newer products are often not accessible because they are generally not considered to be "preferred brands" and are either not covered by their third party payers or covered with substantially higher co-pays. Bowel preparations containing PEG is the predominant laxative used in the preparation process for colonoscopy but salty taste and large volume of these solutions limit their tolerability. PEG is generally covered by health insurance and is relatively inexpensive. The effect of flavoring of PEG on patients' tolerability is uncertain. In a taste test involving 5 PEG preparations

tasted by 100 subjects, Diab *et al*^[14] reported that the majority of subjects preferred the flavored products while 22% rated unflavored PEG as their first choice. Furthermore, Hayes *et al*^[15] reported that flavoring PEG (Colyte®) solution did not improve bowel preparation as compared to unflavored PEG.

An approach to ameliorate this challenge will be for manufacturers to provide free samples of their laxatives for patients to try at their endoscopists' offices. However, this may not be a viable option particularly as the relationship of pharmaceutical industries with care providers is under close scrutiny in many institutions and provision of free "test" samples medications has been abolished in many institutions. Therefore, it is imperative to develop palatable bowel preparation laxatives and make them affordable.

A notable strength of our study is that we studied the taste preference of a large number of volunteers. However, a limitation of our study is that we drew our inference from preferences that were based on tasting a small volume of laxatives by participants. However, if a small volume of a solution tastes really bad, it is highly unlikely that a large volume of it will be tolerable. Nonetheless, we acknowledge that it is conceivable that the sheer volume of solution to actually consume for colonoscopy preparation may further influence the overall experience of patients. Although our study was open to the general public, it was conducted at a single institution. Furthermore, the majority of our participants were black and the experience of other race-ethnicities may be different since beverage intake patterns and preferences may vary based on social characteristics.

In conclusion, the demographic characteristics, lifestyle choices and beverage intake preferences

of volunteers in this large taste test did not predict preferences for PEG-based bowel preparation laxatives to be a clinically useful guide to improve the experience of patients undergoing CRC screening. There is a need to develop palatable and affordable bowel preparation laxatives.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Abstracts from this study were presented at the Digestive Diseases Week in May 2013 in Orlando, Florida and at the American College of Gastroenterology meeting in San Diego in October 2013.

COMMENTS

Background

There is a great need to improve the bowel preparation process in order to increase colon cancer screening uptake. The current study evaluated whether the beverage intake pattern for coffee, tea and carbonated drinks can guide the preference of volunteers for polyethylene glycol (PEG)-based bowel preparation for colonoscopy.

Research frontiers

Adequacy of bowel preparation for screening colonoscopy is a quality measure. This underscores the need to improve bowel preparation quality during colonoscopy, and overall bowel preparation experience of the population when undergoing colonoscopy.

Innovations and breakthroughs

The current study examined whether personalized uniqueness of beverage intake of coffee, tea and carbonated drinks can be useful to guide the selection of PEG-based bowel preparation laxative for patients. This has not been investigated previously.

Applications

To summarize the practical applications of their research findings, so that readers may understand the perspectives by which this study will affect the field and future research. Beverage intake preferences for coffee, tea and carbonated drinks did not predict the preferences for PEG-based bowel preparation laxative among volunteers. This suggests that taste preference is probably too unique and individuals should probably taste the unflavored PEG-based laxative prior to flavoring during the bowel preparation process.

Terminology

Bowel preparation is the process of ensuring that the colon is free of stool during colonoscopy and involves the consumption of laxatives. It is important to tolerate the laxatives, which of often consumed in large volumes, to achieve optimal bowel cleansing.

Peer-review

Better tolerable bowel preparation would increase the rates of screening colonoscopy and therefore benefit the public.

REFERENCES

- 1 Siegel R, Ma J, Zou Z, Jemal A. Cancer statistics, 2014. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2014; **64**: 9-29 [PMID: 24399786 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21208]
- 2 Baxter NN, Goldwasser MA, Paszat LF, Saskin R, Urbach DR,

- Rabeneck L. Association of colonoscopy and death from colorectal cancer. *Ann Intern Med* 2009; **150**: 1-8 [PMID: 19075198 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-150-1-200901060-00306]
- 3 Newcomb PA, Norfleet RG, Storer BE, Surawicz TS, Marcus PM. Screening sigmoidoscopy and colorectal cancer mortality. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1992; **84**: 1572-1575 [PMID: 1404450 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/84.20.1572]
- 4 Selby JV, Friedman GD, Quesenberry CP, Weiss NS. A case-control study of screening sigmoidoscopy and mortality from colorectal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 1992; **326**: 653-657 [PMID: 1736103 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199203053261001]
- 5 Singh H, Nugent Z, Demers AA, Kliwer EV, Mahmud SM, Bernstein CN. The reduction in colorectal cancer mortality after colonoscopy varies by site of the cancer. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **139**: 1128-1137 [PMID: 20600026 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.06.052]
- 6 Atkin WS, Edwards R, Kralj-Hans I, Wooldrage K, Hart AR, Northover JM, Parkin DM, Wardle J, Duffy SW, Cuzick J. Once-only flexible sigmoidoscopy screening in prevention of colorectal cancer: a multicentre randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2010; **375**: 1624-1633 [PMID: 20430429 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(10)60551-X]
- 7 Mandel JS, Bond JH, Church TR, Snover DC, Bradley GM, Schuman LM, Ederer F. Reducing mortality from colorectal cancer by screening for fecal occult blood. Minnesota Colon Cancer Control Study. *N Engl J Med* 1993; **328**: 1365-1371 [PMID: 8474513 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199305133281901]
- 8 Schoen RE, Pinsky PF, Weissfeld JL, Yokochi LA, Church T, Laiyemo AO, Bresalier R, Andriole GL, Buys SS, Crawford ED, Fouad MN, Isaacs C, Johnson CC, Reding DJ, O'Brien B, Carrick DM, Wright P, Riley TL, Purdue MP, Izmirlian G, Kramer BS, Miller AB, Gohagan JK, Prorok PC, Berg CD. Colorectal-cancer incidence and mortality with screening flexible sigmoidoscopy. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **366**: 2345-2357 [PMID: 22612596 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoal114635]
- 9 Meissner HI, Breen N, Klabunde CN, Vernon SW. Patterns of colorectal cancer screening uptake among men and women in the United States. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2006; **15**: 389-394 [PMID: 16492934 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-05-0678]
- 10 Smith RA, Cokkinides V, Eyre HJ. Cancer screening in the United States, 2007: a review of current guidelines, practices, and prospects. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2007; **57**: 90-104 [PMID: 17392386 DOI: 10.3322/canjclin.57.2.90]
- 11 Levin B, Lieberman DA, McFarland B, Andrews KS, Brooks D, Bond J, Dash C, Giardiello FM, Glick S, Johnson D, Johnson CD, Levin TR, Pickhardt PJ, Rex DK, Smith RA, Thorson A, Winawer SJ. Screening and surveillance for the early detection of colorectal cancer and adenomatous polyps, 2008: a joint guideline from the American Cancer Society, the US Multi-Society Task Force on Colorectal Cancer, and the American College of Radiology. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **134**: 1570-1595 [PMID: 18384785 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.02.002]
- 12 Weissfeld JL, Ling BS, Schoen RE, Bresalier RS, Riley T, Prorok PC. Adherence to repeat screening flexible sigmoidoscopy in the Prostate, Lung, Colorectal, and Ovarian (PLCO) Cancer Screening Trial. *Cancer* 2002; **94**: 2569-2576 [PMID: 12173322 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.10538]
- 13 Doria-Rose VP, Newcomb PA, Levin TR. Incomplete screening flexible sigmoidoscopy associated with female sex, age, and increased risk of colorectal cancer. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 1273-1278 [PMID: 15871999 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2005.064030]
- 14 Diab FH, Marshall JB. The palatability of five colonic lavage solutions. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 1996; **10**: 815-819 [PMID: 8899092 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2036.1996.53195000.x]
- 15 Hayes A, Buffum M, Fuller D. Bowel preparation comparison: flavored versus unflavored colyte. *Gastroenterol Nurs* 2003; **26**: 106-109 [PMID: 12811320 DOI: 10.1097/00001610-200305000-00004]

P- Reviewer: Greenspan M, Katsoulis IE S- Editor: Ji FF
L- Editor: A E- Editor: Liu SQ



Gastrointestinal Kaposi's sarcoma: Case report and review of the literature

Ann Joo Lee, Lacie Brenner, Bashar Mourad, Carmela Monteiro, Kenneth J Vega, Juan Carlos Munoz

Ann Joo Lee, Lacie Brenner, Juan Carlos Munoz, Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Medicine, University of Florida College of Medicine Jacksonville, Jacksonville, FL 32209, United States

Bashar Mourad, Department of Medicine, University of Florida College of Medicine Jacksonville, Jacksonville, FL 32209, United States

Carmela Monteiro, Department of Pathology, University of Florida College of Medicine Jacksonville, Jacksonville, FL 32209, United States

Kenneth J Vega, Division of Digestive Diseases and Nutrition, University of Oklahoma Health Sciences Center, Oklahoma City, OK 73104, United States

Author contributions: Lee AJ and Mourad B collected the patient's clinical data; Lee AJ, Brenner L and Munoz JC performed the endoscopy and obtained biopsies for diagnosis; Monteiro C analyzed the histopathology; Lee AJ, Munoz JC and Vega KJ performed the literature review and wrote the paper.

Supported by University of Florida College of Medicine Jacksonville.

Institutional review board statement: This research did not require approval by the University of Florida College of Medicine/Jacksonville institutional review board.

Informed consent statement: This research did not require an informed consent.

Conflict-of-interest statement: No conflict of interest exists for all authors in this manuscript.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Kenneth J Vega, MD, Division of Digestive Diseases and Nutrition, University of Oklahoma Health Sciences Center, 920 Stanton L. Young Boulevard WP 1345, Oklahoma City, OK 73104, United States. kenneth-vega@ouhsc.edu
Telephone: +1-405-2715428
Fax: +1-405-2715803

Received: April 21, 2015
Peer-review started: April 24, 2015
First decision: June 3, 2015
Revised: June 21, 2015
Accepted: July 11, 2015
Article in press: July 14, 2015
Published online: August 6, 2015

Abstract

Kaposi's sarcoma (KS) of the gastrointestinal tract is not an uncommon disease among individuals with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). The majority is asymptomatic, and for this reason, gastrointestinal KS (GI-KS) remains undiagnosed. With continued tumor growth, considerable variation in clinical presentation occurs including abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, iron deficiency anemia (either chronic or frank gastrointestinal bleeding), and rarely mechanical obstruction alone or combined with bowel perforation. Endoscopy with biopsy allows for histological and immunohistochemical testing to confirm the diagnosis of GI-KS among those with clinical symptoms. In previous studies, dual treatment with highly active antiretroviral therapy and systemic chemotherapy have been associated with improved morbidity and mortality in individuals with visceral KS. Therefore, investigators have suggested performing screening endoscopies in select patients for early detection and treatment to improve outcome. In this review, we describe a 44 years old man with AIDS and cutaneous KS who presented for evaluation of postprandial abdominal pain, vomiting, and weight loss. On upper endoscopy, an extensive, infiltrative,

circumferential, reddish mass involving the entire body and antrum of the stomach was seen. Histologic examination later revealed spindle cell proliferation, and confirmatory immunohistochemical testing revealed human herpes virus 8 latent nuclear antigen expression consistent with a diagnosis of gastric KS. Following this, we present a comprehensive review of literature on KS with emphasis on gastrointestinal tract involvement and management.

Key words: Kaposi sarcoma; Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome; Gastrointestinal endoscopy; Epidemiology; Gastrointestinal tumor symptoms

© **The Author(s) 2015.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Gastrointestinal Kaposi's sarcoma (GI-KS) is more common than originally thought and the majority of patients are asymptomatic and remain undiagnosed. Therefore, clinicians should maintain a high suspicion, especially among acquired immunodeficiency syndrome patients. Screening endoscopies are frequently performed and a recent retrospective study suggested using certain clinical factors (low CD4 cell count of < 100 cell/ μ L, men who have sex with men, and presence of cutaneous Kaposi's) which may predict occurrence of GI-KS endoscopically. Endoscopy to detect GI-KS prior to clinical symptom development is desired as initiation of combined highly active antiretroviral therapy and liposomal doxorubicin therapy has shown to improve outcome.

Lee AJ, Brenner L, Mourad B, Monteiro C, Vega KJ, Munoz JC. Gastrointestinal Kaposi's sarcoma: Case report and review of the literature. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(3): 89-95 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i3.89.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i3.89>

INTRODUCTION

Kaposi's sarcoma (KS) is a low grade tumor of the vascular endothelium^[1]. In the United States, the majority of affected individuals have human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection^[2]. Although KS can develop at any HIV infection stage, it occurs more commonly in the setting of advanced immune suppression^[2,3]. In the Western population, the prevalence of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) associated KS is 6%-30%, and affected individuals usually manifest with cutaneous disease and/or visceral involvement, of which the gastrointestinal (GI) tract is the most common extracutaneous site^[4]. In untreated AIDS, the GI tract is involved in approximately 40%-51%, but only one in five of affected individuals have GI symptoms^[5]. The majority are clinically silent (79%), and therefore, most visceral KS remain unidentified^[4]. In recent studies, treatment using combined highly active antiretroviral

therapy (HAART) and systemic chemotherapy was associated with a significant improvement in morbidity and mortality^[6]. Therefore some experts have suggested screening endoscopy in select patients for early detection and initiation of treatment to improve survival outcome^[7].

CASE REPORT

A 44 years old man presented to the emergency department for evaluation of worsening abdominal pain following oral intake. Abdominal pain was described as cramping and associated with severe nausea and vomiting of ingested food. Clinical symptoms were unrelated to food type (acidic, dairy, or gluten-containing groups), and occurred after either solid or liquid intake. At evaluation, he was unable to tolerate anything by mouth and reported an associated 10 pound weight loss over a 1 mo period. Past medical history was significant for AIDS and cutaneous Kaposi sarcoma diagnosed by skin biopsy 4 years previously. Home medications included topical Imiquimod therapy for cutaneous KS, and recent initiation of HAART (2 mo prior to presentation) for low CD4 cell count which was poorly tolerated due to GI discomfort. On physical examination, multiple, plaque-like, violaceous, skin lesions were found in both lower extremities with associated edema in the right leg and foot. In addition, similar lesions were also found in the neck and trunk; the patient reported these lesions to be increasing in size. Laboratory studies revealed an absolute CD4 cell count of 101 cells/ μ L, HIV-RNA level of 168 copies/mL, and a mild anemia with hemoglobin of 11 g/mL. Other biochemical markers were normal including amylase, lipase, and liver function panel. Further evaluation with computed tomography imaging of the abdomen/pelvis with and without contrast was remarkable for a prominent, concentric gastric wall thickening involving the majority of the stomach. An upper endoscopy revealed an extensive, circumferential, infiltrative, reddish mass throughout the entire gastric body which extended into the fundus and antrum (Figures 1-3). Endoscopic biopsy specimens were obtained from the gastric lesions, and hematoxylin and eosin examination revealed spindle cell proliferation with extensive lymphoplasmocytic cell infiltrates (Figure 4). A confirmatory immunohistochemical test showed human herpes virus 8 latent nuclear antigen (HHV8 LNA) expression suggestive of HHV8, supporting the diagnosis of gastric KS (Figure 5).

DISCUSSION

Evolution of an old disease

KS was described in 1872 by a Hungarian dermatologist, Moritz Kohn Kaposi, who was the first to identify five cases of "idiopathic multiple pigmented sarcomas of the skin"^[8]. In one case, the patient expired from gastrointestinal bleeding with a postmortem report that revealed unspecified visceral lesions in the lung and GI



Figure 1 Endoscopic image of the gastric cardia demonstrating Kaposi's sarcoma lesion extension from the gastric body.

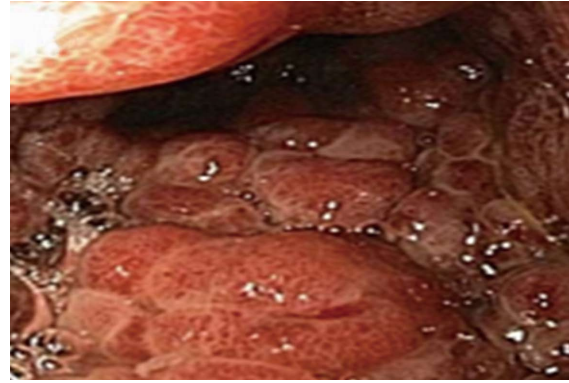


Figure 2 Endoscopic image of the gastric body showing an extensive, infiltrative, and circumferential Kaposi's sarcoma mass involving the entire body.



Figure 3 Endoscopic image of the gastric antrum with Kaposi's sarcoma lesion infiltration from the body.

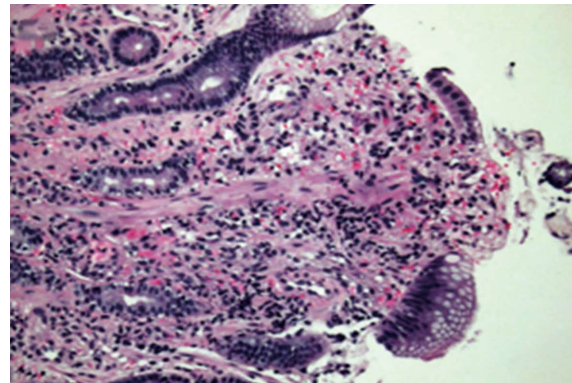


Figure 4 Hematoxylin and eosin stain of slit-like spaces with spindle cell proliferation and associated red blood cell extravasation seen in the lamina propria.

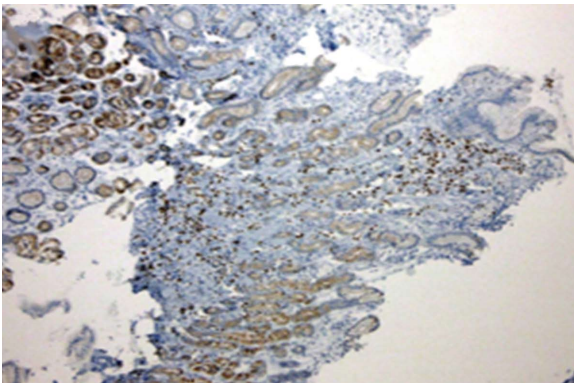


Figure 5 Immunohistochemical stain for human herpes virus 8 showing a strongly positive latent nuclear antigen staining of the spindle cells along the slit-like spaces.

tract. In 1981, with the onset of the HIV epidemic, the first case of AIDS-associated KS was described^[9]. Since, an increasing number of KS among AIDS patients prompted speculations of a possible infectious agent involved in tumor pathogenesis^[10]. By 1994, Chang *et al.*^[11] isolated a unique DNA sequence in KS tissue which was later classified as a new herpesvirus species now known as KS-associated herpesvirus or HHV8^[11]. Since its discovery, HHV8 has been detected in over 95% of all

AIDS and non-AIDS associated KS lesions, suggesting it as the causative agent in tumor development^[12].

Epidemiology and prevalence

Numerous serological studies have demonstrated a direct correlation between HHV8 infection and KS incidence. This data also indicated significant geographic variation in HHV8 seroprevalence existed. Overall, low seroprevalence is reported in North America, Northern Europe and Asia, intermediate seroprevalence in Eastern Europe, Mediterranean, and Caribbean countries, and high seroprevalence in Central (Uganda, Zambia, and South Africa) and Southern Africa^[12]. Although a cause and effect relationship between HHV8 and KS disease is clear, some exceptions to this pattern have been observed. For example in Africa, cases of endemic (or African) variant of KS were reported in Uganda and Zambia, but not in Gambia or the Ivory Coast although all four countries have similar seroprevalence rates^[13]. Similar circumstances have been reported in Italy, Egypt, and Chinese subpopulations where despite high seroprevalence of HHV8, KS incidence is low^[14-16]. These discrepancies suggest that other, at present, unidentified factors may be required for clinical expression.

Classification of KS

KS is classified into four clinical variants which have coevolved in certain human populations: classic KS, endemic (or African) KS, Iatrogenic (or immunosuppression related) KS, and epidemic (or AIDS related) KS^[12]. In the United States, AIDS and immunosuppression-related causes are the two most common forms of KS tumor, and also the more likely variants causing visceral organ involvement. Despite efforts to classify KS, all forms are associated with HHV8 infection, and differences are observed in primary tumor location and rate of disease progression. Therefore, these epidemiological variants of KS merely represent different clinical manifestations of the same pathologic process.

Classic KS: The classic variant occurs predominantly in elderly men of Mediterranean, Eastern Europe, and Ashkenazi Jewish descent, and is uncommon in North America. It is a slow growing tumor which typically presents as a solitary or multifocal cutaneous lesion in the lower extremities. Systemic progression is rare and visceral disease is observed in less than 10% of cases^[17].

Endemic or African KS: The African or Endemic KS variant consists of two disease subtypes, African cutaneous and African lymphadenopathic. It is more aggressive, and generally affects children of endemic African countries. These entities are not associated with HIV infection^[18]. Cutaneous and nodal manifestations are common, with systemic disease less frequent.

Iatrogenic or immunosuppression-related KS: Iatrogenic or immunosuppression-related KS affect individuals with suppressed immunity as a result of organ transplantation or other medical conditions requiring long term immunosuppressant therapy. Cutaneous lesions are typically the presenting feature with systemic progression occurring in up to 50% of cases. In two case series of renal transplant recipients, KS developed in approximately 0.5%-5% of organ recipients which occurred in a median time of 29-31 mo after surgery^[19-21]. In these patients, treatment with either reduction or discontinuation of the offending agent often led to tumor regression, and in some circumstances, complete resolution of disease.

Epidemic or AIDS related KS: Epidemic or AIDS-related KS is the most common form encountered in the United States. It can present at any stage of HIV infection, but more frequently in the setting of severe immune suppression^[22]. Clinical features are similar to those with immunosuppression-related KS, presenting with cutaneous lesions and visceral KS disease arising as disease progresses^[2].

Clinical features

The majority of patient with GI-KS will have cutaneous lesions at diagnosis. In most cases, skin lesions are

not physically debilitating, but can cause severe disfigurement. Cutaneous KS are generally well-demarcated, erythematous to violaceous, as well as flat, plaque-like or nodular in appearance^[2]. A solitary skin lesion is common in the early stage, but it can evolve into multicentric, coalescing lesions with progression. Large lesions are often associated with edema, but isolated lymphedema have been also reported in the absence of cutaneous disease. In most cases, these lesions present initially in the distal segment of the lower limbs, with proximal region involvement that parallel disease progression^[23]. However, in AIDS-related KS, skin lesions more frequently affects the head, neck and upper torso regions^[2].

Forty to fifty-one percent of patients with cutaneous lesions develop visceral KS which can involve the gastrointestinal tract, lungs, and less commonly the liver, spleen, kidney, and heart^[5]. The GI tract is the most common extracutaneous site, and the majority of affected individuals are without clinical symptoms^[4,5]. However, with tumor growth, considerable variations in symptoms can present including abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, and iron deficiency anemia from chronic or frank GI bleeding. In rare cases, the tumor burden has also led to mechanical obstruction, intussusception, and perforation of the bowel wall^[1].

Given such high incidence of GI-KS, endoscopic evaluation is required in AIDS patients that present with GI symptoms. However, in patients that are asymptomatic, the benefit of endoscopy remain a topic of debate. In Japan, screening endoscopies are frequently performed in HIV infected patients with the primary aim of early detection and initiation of treatment. A recent retrospective study looked at predictive factors for GI-KS and reported that patients with low CD4 cell count of < 100 cells/ μ L, men who have sex with men (MSM), and presence of cutaneous KS were more likely to have GI-KS, suggesting that clinicians consider endoscopy in these select patients even in the absence of clinical symptoms^[7].

Endoscopy

Gastrointestinal KS can involve any part of the GI tract from the oropharynx to the rectum, but it occurs most frequently in the stomach and small intestine. In two case series of 83 AIDS patients, the incidence of GI-KS was 40%-51%, of which 12%-24% were in the upper tract, 8%-12% were in the lower tract, and 15%-20% had multifocal lesions involving both the upper and lower GI tract^[5,24]. GI-KS is endoscopically evident by appearance which ranges from a red maculopapular lesion to a darker, nodular or polypoid lesion. In more severe disease, patients may present with a volcano-like mass with a central umbilication or ulceration which can bleed on contact^[1].

Although the majority of GI-KS disease can be identified easily on endoscopy, in some situations it may resemble common benign lesions (peptic ulcer and/or granulation tissue) as well as malignant neoplasms

(gastrointestinal stromal tumor, spindle cell melanoma, angiosarcoma)^[25,26]. For these reasons, biopsy specimens should be obtained to allow confirmatory testing with histopathology and immunohistochemistry testing. However, an endoscopic biopsy diagnosis is possible in only 15%-23% of cases, mainly owing to the submucosal nature of tumor growth^[24,27,28]. In the absence of mucosal invasion, an endoscopically obtained biopsy may be too superficial and key features may be difficult to appreciate on histopathology. In such cases, an endoscopic ultrasound guided biopsy increases the diagnostic yield and is recommended^[7].

Histology and immunohistochemistry

On histopathology, KS is classically characterized as spindle cell proliferation that forms irregular vascular channels or slits in the submucosal bowel layer. It is associated with extensive red blood cell extravasation and hemosiderin-laden macrophage deposits which gives it a characteristic red to dark, bruise-like appearance. Additionally, significant lymphoplasmocytic infiltration occur which can lead to tumor swelling and cause pain response^[25].

The presence of spindle shaped cells can exclude many benign and malignant lesions. However, in some circumstances, subtle vascularity and certain histological features of KS may overlap with other GI spindle cell tumors (gastrointestinal stromal tumor-GIST, spindle cell melanoma, and angiosarcoma) causing diagnostic uncertainty. To make a diagnosis of KS, the presence of HHV8 is necessary and immunohistochemical testing is recommended for all specimens with spindle cell morphology. HHV8 LNA is an immunomarker for this viral agent, and expression in spindle cell nuclei is considered to be 99% sensitive and 100% specific for KS^[29].

Other biomarkers that are expressed include CD34 and CD117 (or c-KIT), which overlap with other stromal tumors making it a less reliable marker for KS diagnosis. Similar to GI-KS, gastrointestinal stromal tumors also expresses CD34 and CD117, but it is distinguished by the absence of HHV8 LNA, and positive DOG 1 expression^[29]. Furthermore, spindle cell melanomas also share similar endoscopic and histologic features with GI-KS, but these tumors typically lack the CD34 marker and express S100 immunopositivity^[29].

Management

The treatment approach varies depending on the epidemiological variant of KS, and therapy is individualized based on the disease profile. In this segment, we will be focusing on the current treatment options for AIDS-associated KS with gastrointestinal tract manifestations.

AIDS-related KS is currently not a curable malignancy and the rate of disease progression is variable. Treatment with HAART is recommended in affected individuals if not already on therapy at diagnosis. Aside from the obvious improvement in immune status, the use of HAART inhibits the production of HIV tat protein which is

responsible for HIV viral replication and KS cell growth, invasion and angiogenesis^[28]. Since the introduction of HAART in 1995, the incidence of KS has substantially declined (25.6 cases per 100 person-years in the early 1990's to 7.5 per 100 person-years in 1996-1997), and patients stable on HAART with good virologic response had a slower rate of disease progression and prolonged survival^[29,30].

Among patients with localized cutaneous KS, HAART with either topical gel therapy or local radiation may suffice. However, in patients with extensive mucocutaneous disease or visceral organ involvement, combined HAART and systemic chemotherapy is indicated. Liposomal doxorubicin is the chemotherapeutic agent of choice in which the pegylated liposome component allows for the drug to accumulate preferentially in KS tissue, reducing the dose requirement and drug toxicity. In one study, a combined HAART and liposomal doxorubicin therapy was superior to stand alone HAART therapy with an overall response rate of 72% compared to 20% in the HAART alone group^[6]. Chemotherapy with vinca alkaloids, bleomycin, and doxorubicin has fallen out of favor due to variable response rates and substantial drug toxicity^[31-34]. Moreover, in randomized control trials, liposomal doxorubicin was also superior to combined chemotherapy regimens, further supporting liposomal doxorubicin as the drug of choice^[35,36].

Despite favorable outcomes with dual HAART and liposomal doxorubicin treatment, the incidence of disease relapse is reported to be 13% per year with the majority in the first year after completing chemotherapy^[37]. Among patients that require retreatment with liposomal doxorubicin, one-third will have treatment failure. In clinical trials, paclitaxel has demonstrated a comparable response rate of 59% and is currently the second-line agent approved by the Food and Drug Administration^[38]. A third option is interferon-alpha which was the initial medication approved for AIDS-related KS. It has a similar clinical response rate but requires several months for tumor response, limiting usefulness in clinical practice^[2].

Other drugs have been studied including anti-angiogenic compounds thalidomide and IM-862, and immunomodulators such as retinoid compounds^[2]. All have shown suboptimal response rates. Antiviral agents have also been investigated in small trials, and in a single *in-vitro* drug sensitivity evaluation, HHV8 was very sensitive to cidofovir, moderately sensitive to ganciclovir, and weakly sensitive to foscarnet and acyclovir suggesting it as a possible alternative therapy^[39,40]. However, currently no treatment recommendations have been drawn based on this study data for these compounds.

Conclusion

KS of the GI tract is far more common than originally thought, but the majority of patients are asymptomatic and remain undiagnosed. Therefore, clinicians should always maintain a high index of suspicion for GI-KS

especially in patients with AIDS. In Japan, screening endoscopies are frequently performed, and a recent retrospective study has suggested using certain clinical factors (low CD4 cell count of < 100 cells/ μ L, MSM, and presence of cutaneous KS) may predict the occurrence of GI-KS endoscopically. Performance of endoscopy to detect GI-KS prior to development of clinical symptoms is desired as initiation of combined HAART and liposomal doxorubicin therapy has shown to improve outcome.

COMMENTS

Case characteristics

A 44 years old man with a history of acquired immune deficiency syndrome presented with postprandial abdominal pain and nausea with vomiting.

Clinical diagnosis

Multiple plaque-like, violaceous skin lesions found in the lower extremities, trunk and neck suggestive of Kaposi's lesions.

Differential diagnosis

Peptic ulcer disease, gastric mass (adenocarcinoma, stromal tumor, Kaposi's sarcoma), and infectious esophagitis secondary to candida, herpes simplex virus, cytomegalovirus.

Laboratory diagnosis

Absolute CD4 cell count 101 cells/ μ L; human immunodeficiency virus-RNA 168 copies/mL; hemoglobin 11 g/mL; amylase, lipase, and liver function test were within normal limits.

Imaging diagnosis

Computed tomography scan showed a prominent concentric gastric wall thickening, and follow up upper endoscopy revealed a circumferential mass in the gastric body extending into antrum and fundus.

Pathological diagnosis

Hematoxylin and eosin examination revealed spindle cell proliferation with extensive lymphoplasmocytic cell infiltrates, and immunohistochemical testing confirmed human herpes virus 8 latent nuclear antigen (HHV8 LNA) expression supporting the diagnosis of gastrointestinal Kaposi's sarcoma (GI-KS).

Treatment

Patient was treated with highly active antiretroviral therapy and medical oncology referral was made to initiate systemic chemotherapy.

Related reports

Early diagnosis and treatment of GI-KS has shown to improve patient outcome. Since the majority of patients are asymptomatic, screening endoscopies are being performed in Japan. One retrospective study suggested using specific clinical factors to predict the occurrence of GI-KS which should be confirmed in a larger trial.

Term explanation

The HHV8 LNA stain is a confirmatory immunohistochemical test which is used to distinguish GI-KS from mimickers such as gastrointestinal stromal tumor, spindle cell melanoma, and angiosarcoma.

Experiences and lessons

This case suggests clinicians should maintain a high index of suspicion for GI-KS and a more judicious use of endoscopy may be helpful in improving patient outcome. Specific clinical factors have been shown to help predict the occurrence of GI-KS, which allows clinicians to identify at-risk patients for endoscopic evaluation. However, this should be confirmed in a larger trial.

Peer-review

It is a good case report of a gastrointestinal KS. Moreover, It is performed a comprehensive review and updating of literature about this.

REFERENCES

- Balachandra B**, Tunitsky E, Dawood S, Hings I, Marcus VA. Classic Kaposi's sarcoma presenting first with gastrointestinal tract involvement in a HIV-negative Inuit male--a case report and review of the literature. *Pathol Res Pract* 2006; **202**: 623-626 [PMID: 16682127 DOI: 10.1016/j.prp.2006.03.002]
- Levine AM**, Tulpule A. Clinical aspects and management of AIDS-related Kaposi's sarcoma. *Eur J Cancer* 2001; **37**: 1288-1295 [PMID: 11423260 DOI: 10.1016/S0959-8049(01)00109-5]
- Berberi A**, Noujeim Z. AIDS: An Epidemiologic and Correlation Between HIV- Related Oral Lesions and plasma levels of CD4, CD8 T Lymphocytes Counts and Ratio Among 50 Patients. *Br J Med Med Res* 2015; **6**: 859-866 [PMID: 25750864 DOI: 10.9734/BJMMR/2015/15394]
- Stebbing J**, Sanitt A, Nelson M, Powles T, Gazzard B, Bower M. A prognostic index for AIDS-associated Kaposi's sarcoma in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy. *Lancet* 2006; **367**: 1495-1502 [PMID: 16679162 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(06)68649-2]
- Parente F**, Cernuschi M, Orlando G, Rizzardini G, Lazzarin A, Bianchi Porro G. Kaposi's sarcoma and AIDS: frequency of gastrointestinal involvement and its effect on survival. A prospective study in a heterogeneous population. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1991; **26**: 1007-1012 [PMID: 1947766 DOI: 10.3109/00365529109003949]
- Martin-Carbonero L**, Barrios A, Saballs P, Sirera G, Santos J, Palacios R, Valencia ME, Alegre M, Podzamczar D, González-Lahoz J. Pegylated liposomal doxorubicin plus highly active antiretroviral therapy versus highly active antiretroviral therapy alone in HIV patients with Kaposi's sarcoma. *AIDS* 2004; **18**: 1737-1740 [PMID: 15280789 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000131385.60974.b9]
- Nagata N**, Shimbo T, Yazaki H, Asayama N, Akiyama J, Teruya K, Igari T, Ohmagari N, Oka S, Uemura N. Predictive clinical factors in the diagnosis of gastrointestinal Kaposi's sarcoma and its endoscopic severity. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e46967 [PMID: 23226197 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0046967]
- Stănescu L**, Foarfă C, Georgescu AC, Georgescu I. Kaposi's sarcoma associated with AIDS. *Rom J Morphol Embryol* 2007; **48**: 181-187 [PMID: 17641807]
- Centers for Disease Control (CDC)**. Kaposi's sarcoma and Pneumocystis pneumonia among homosexual men--New York City and California. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 1981; **30**: 305-308 [PMID: 6789108]
- Beral V**, Peterman TA, Berkman RL, Jaffe HW. Kaposi's sarcoma among persons with AIDS: a sexually transmitted infection? *Lancet* 1990; **335**: 123-128 [PMID: 1967430 DOI: 10.1016/0140-6736(90)90001-L]
- Chang Y**, Cesarman E, Pessin MS, Lee F, Culpepper J, Knowles DM, Moore PS. Identification of herpesvirus-like DNA sequences in AIDS-associated Kaposi's sarcoma. *Science* 1994; **266**: 1865-1869 [PMID: 7997879 DOI: 10.1126/science.7997879]
- Antman K**, Chang Y. Kaposi's sarcoma. *N Engl J Med* 2000; **342**: 1027-1038 [PMID: 10749966 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM200004063421407]
- Gompels UA**, Kasolo FC. HHV-8 serology and Kaposi's sarcoma. *Lancet* 1996; **348**: 1587-1588 [PMID: 8950901 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(05)66203-4]
- Calabrò ML**, Sheldon J, Favero A, Simpson GR, Fiore JR, Gomes E, Angarano G, Chieco-Bianchi L, Schulz TF. Seroprevalence of Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus/human herpesvirus 8 in several regions of Italy. *J Hum Virol* 1998; **1**: 207-213 [PMID: 10195244]
- Andreoni M**, El-Sawaf G, Rezza G, Ensoli B, Nicastrì E, Ventura L, Ercoli L, Sarmati L, Rocchi G. High seroprevalence of antibodies to human herpesvirus-8 in Egyptian children: evidence of nonsexual transmission. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1999; **91**: 465-469

- [PMID: 10070947 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/91.5.465]
- 16 **Dilnur P**, Katano H, Wang ZH, Osakabe Y, Kudo M, Sata T, Ebihara Y. Classic type of Kaposi's sarcoma and human herpesvirus 8 infection in Xinjiang, China. *Pathol Int* 2001; **51**: 845-852 [PMID: 11844050 DOI: 10.1046/j.1440-1827.2001.01293.x]
 - 17 **Iscovich J**, Boffetta P, Franceschi S, Azizi E, Sarid R. Classic kaposi sarcoma: epidemiology and risk factors. *Cancer* 2000; **88**: 500-517 [PMID: 10649240]
 - 18 **Schulz TF**. Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus (human herpesvirus 8): epidemiology and pathogenesis. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2000; **45** Suppl T3: 15-27 [PMID: 10855768]
 - 19 **Penn I**. Kaposi's sarcoma in transplant recipients. *Transplantation* 1997; **64**: 669-673 [PMID: 9311700 DOI: 10.1097/00007890-199709150-00001]
 - 20 **Montagnino G**, Bencini PL, Tarantino A, Caputo R, Ponticelli C. Clinical features and course of Kaposi's sarcoma in kidney transplant patients: report of 13 cases. *Am J Nephrol* 1994; **14**: 121-126 [PMID: 8080004 DOI: 10.1159/000168700]
 - 21 **Lesnani La Parola I**, Masini C, Nanni G, Diociaiuti A, Panocchia N, Cerimele D. Kaposi's sarcoma in renal-transplant recipients: experience at the Catholic University in Rome, 1988-1996. *Dermatology* 1997; **194**: 229-233 [PMID: 9187838 DOI: 10.1159/000246107]
 - 22 **Tappero JW**, Conant MA, Wolfe SF, Berger TG. Kaposi's sarcoma. Epidemiology, pathogenesis, histology, clinical spectrum, staging criteria and therapy. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 1993; **28**: 371-395 [PMID: 8445054 DOI: 10.1016/0190-9622(93)70057-Z]
 - 23 **Errihani H**, Berrada N, Raissouni S, Rais F, Mrabti H, Rais G. Classic Kaposi's sarcoma in Morocco: clinico-epidemiological study at the National Institute of Oncology. *BMC Dermatol* 2011; **11**: 15 [PMID: 22078023 DOI: 10.1186/1471-5945-11-15]
 - 24 **Friedman SL**, Wright TL, Altman DF. Gastrointestinal Kaposi's sarcoma in patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. Endoscopic and autopsy findings. *Gastroenterology* 1985; **89**: 102-108 [PMID: 4007399]
 - 25 **Taccogna S**, Crescenzi A, Stasi R, Turrini L, Gallo A, Rossi Z. Kaposi sarcoma of the stomach: a case report. *BMJ Case Rep* 2009 [DOI: 10.1136/bcr.03.2009.1666]
 - 26 **López de Blanc S**, Sambuelli R, Femopase F, Luna N, Gravotta M, David D, Bistoni A, Criscuolo MI. Bacillary angiomatosis affecting the oral cavity. Report of two cases and review. *J Oral Pathol Med* 2000; **29**: 91-96 [PMID: 10718405 DOI: 10.1034/j.1600-0714.2000.290207.x]
 - 27 **Parfitt JR**, Rodriguez-Justo M, Feakins R, Novelli MR. Gastrointestinal Kaposi's sarcoma: CD117 expression and the potential for misdiagnosis as gastrointestinal stromal tumour. *Histopathology* 2008; **52**: 816-823 [PMID: 18494611 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2559.2008.03034.x]
 - 28 **Barillari G**, Buonaguro L, Fiorelli V, Hoffman J, Michaels F, Gallo RC, Ensoli B. Effects of cytokines from activated immune cells on vascular cell growth and HIV-1 gene expression. Implications for AIDS-Kaposi's sarcoma pathogenesis. *J Immunol* 1992; **149**: 3727-3734 [PMID: 1431144]
 - 29 **Jacobson LP**, Yamashita TE, Detels R, Margolick JB, Chmiel JS, Kingsley LA, Melnick S, Muñoz A. Impact of potent antiretroviral therapy on the incidence of Kaposi's sarcoma and non-Hodgkin's lymphomas among HIV-1-infected individuals. Multicenter AIDS Cohort Study. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 1999; **21** Suppl 1: S34-S41 [PMID: 10430217]
 - 30 **Nasti G**, Martellotta F, Berretta M, Mena M, Fasan M, Di Perri G, Talamini R, Pagano G, Montroni M, Cinelli R, Vaccher E, D'Arminio Monforte A, Tirelli U. Impact of highly active antiretroviral therapy on the presenting features and outcome of patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome-related Kaposi sarcoma. *Cancer* 2003; **98**: 2440-2446 [PMID: 14635079 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.11816]
 - 31 **Volberding PA**, Abrams DI, Conant M, Kaslow K, Vranizan K, Ziegler J. Vinblastine therapy for Kaposi's sarcoma in the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. *Ann Intern Med* 1985; **103**: 335-338 [PMID: 4026082 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-103-3-335]
 - 32 **Lassoued K**, Clauvel JP, Katlama C, Janier M, Picard C, Matheron S. Treatment of the acquired immune deficiency syndrome-related Kaposi's sarcoma with bleomycin as a single agent. *Cancer* 1990; **66**: 1869-1872 [PMID: 1699652]
 - 33 **Remick SC**, Reddy M, Herman D, Grace C, Harper G, Willis K, Candon B, Horton J, Ruckdeschel JC. Continuous infusion bleomycin in AIDS-related Kaposi's sarcoma. *J Clin Oncol* 1994; **12**: 1130-1136 [PMID: 7515412]
 - 34 **Gill PS**, Rarick M, McCutchan JA, Slater L, Parker B, Muchmore E, Bernstein-Singer M, Akil B, Espina BM, Krailo M. Systemic treatment of AIDS-related Kaposi's sarcoma: results of a randomized trial. *Am J Med* 1991; **90**: 427-433 [PMID: 1707230 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9343(91)80081-V]
 - 35 **Northfelt DW**, Dezube BJ, Thommes JA, Miller BJ, Fischl MA, Friedman-Kien A, Kaplan LD, Du Mond C, Mamelok RD, Henry DH. Pegylated-liposomal doxorubicin versus doxorubicin, bleomycin, and vincristine in the treatment of AIDS-related Kaposi's sarcoma: results of a randomized phase III clinical trial. *J Clin Oncol* 1998; **16**: 2445-2451 [PMID: 9667262]
 - 36 **Stewart S**, Jablonowski H, Goebel FD, Arasteh K, Spittle M, Rios A, Aboulafia D, Galleshaw J, Dezube BJ. Randomized comparative trial of pegylated liposomal doxorubicin versus bleomycin and vincristine in the treatment of AIDS-related Kaposi's sarcoma. International Pegylated Liposomal Doxorubicin Study Group. *J Clin Oncol* 1998; **16**: 683-691 [PMID: 9469358]
 - 37 **Martín-Carbonero L**, Palacios R, Valencia E, Saballs P, Sirera G, Santos I, Baldobí F, Alegre M, Goyenechea A, Pedreira J, González del Castillo J, Martínez-Lacasa J, Ocampo A, Alsina M, Santos J, Podzamczek D, González-Lahoz J. Long-term prognosis of HIV-infected patients with Kaposi sarcoma treated with pegylated liposomal doxorubicin. *Clin Infect Dis* 2008; **47**: 410-417 [PMID: 18582203 DOI: 10.1086/589865]
 - 38 **Gill PS**, Tulpule A, Espina BM, Cabrales S, Bresnahan J, Ilaw M, Louie S, Gustafson NF, Brown MA, Orcutt C, Winograd B, Scadden DT. Paclitaxel is safe and effective in the treatment of advanced AIDS-related Kaposi's sarcoma. *J Clin Oncol* 1999; **17**: 1876-1883 [PMID: 10561228]
 - 39 **Medveczky MM**, Horvath E, Lund T, Medveczky PG. In vitro antiviral drug sensitivity of the Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus. *AIDS* 1997; **11**: 1327-1332 [PMID: 9302441 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-199711000-00006]
 - 40 **Kedes DH**, Ganem D. Sensitivity of Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus replication to antiviral drugs. Implications for potential therapy. *J Clin Invest* 1997; **99**: 2082-2086 [PMID: 9151779 DOI: 10.1172/JCI119380]

P- Reviewer: Munoz M, Ohkoshi S **S- Editor:** Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor:** Liu SQ





Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**

8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA

Telephone: +1-925-223-8242

Fax: +1-925-223-8243

E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com

Help Desk: <http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>

<http://www.wjgnet.com>



World Journal of *Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics*

World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther 2015 November 6; 6(4): 96-256





Editorial Board

2011-2015

The *World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics* Editorial Board consists of 411 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in surgery research. They are from 47 countries, including Argentina (3), Australia (13), Austria (4), Belarus (1), Belgium (3), Brazil (10), Canada (10), China (41), Czech Republic (1), Denmark (1), Egypt (3), Estonia (1), Finland (1), France (5), Germany (21), Greece (6), Hungary (4), India (18), Iran (6), Ireland (1), Israel (4), Italy (35), Japan (34), Lebanon (1), Lithuania (3), Mexico (2), Netherlands (10), New Zealand (2), Norway (2), Pakistan (2), Philippines (1), Poland (3), Portugal (2), Romania (1), Russia (1), Saudi Arabia (2), Singapore (3), Slovenia (1), South Africa (1), South Korea (16), Spain (13), Sweden (3), Switzerland (1), Thailand (4), Turkey (7), United Kingdom (20), and United States (84).

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF

Hugh J Freeman, *Vancouver*

STRATEGY ASSOCIATE

EDITORS-IN-CHIEF

Antonio Picardi, *Rome*

Elham Rahme, *Quebec*

Douglas Kevin Rex, *Indianapolis*

Angelo Zullo, *Rome*

GUEST EDITORIAL BOARD

MEMBERS

Full-Young Chang, *Taipei*

Mei-Chi Chang, *Taoyuan*

Ming-Jen Chen, *Taipei*

Chia-Yen Dai, *Kaohsiung*

Jiiang-Huei Jeng, *Taipei*

Wun-Chang Ko, *Taipei*

Hwai Jeng Lin, *Changhua*

Ming-Yie Liu, *Tainan*

Frank C Mao, *Taichung*

Tzu-Ming Pan, *Taipei*

Bor-Shyang Sheu, *Tainan*

Li Hsueh Tsai, *Taipei*

Keng-Liang Wu, *Kaohsiung*

Being-Sun Wung, *Chiayi*

Hsu-Heng Yen, *Changhua*

MEMBERS OF THE EDITORIAL BOARD



Argentina

Viviana Alicia Catania, *Rosario*

Guillermo Daniel Mazzolini, *Derqui-Pilar*

Valeria Paula Tripodi, *Buenos Aires*



Australia

Noor Al-Dasooqi, *Adelaide*

Thomas J Borody, *Sydney*

Rachel Jane Gibson, *Adelaide*

Xu-Feng Huang, *Wollongong*

Eline Suzanne Klaassens, *St Lucia*

Natasha A Koloski, *Brisbane*

Ian Lawrance, *Fremantle*

John Martin Mariadason, *Victoria*

Antonina Mikocka-Walus, *Melbourne*

Tim Murphy, *Adelaide*

Nam Quoc Nguyen, *Adelaide*

Samir Samman, *Sydney*

Neville D Yeomans, *Penrith South*



Austria

Martin Brunner, *Vienna*

Sonja Fruhwald, *Graz*

Michael Trauner, *Graz*

Viktoria Weber, *Krems*



Belarus

Sergey I Pimanov, *Vitebsk*



Belgium

Monika Schöller-Gyüre, *Mechelen*

Kristin Verbeke, *Leuven*

Vandenplas Yvan, *Alsemberg*



Brazil

Andréia Buffon, *Porto Alegre*

Gabriela Villaçá Chaves, *Rio de Janeiro*

Percília Cardoso Gaiquinto, *Botucatu*

Clelia Akiko Hiruma-Lima, *Botucatu*

Andre Castro Lyra, *Bahia*

Edson Marchiori, *Rio de Janeiro*

Ricardo de Souza Pereira, *Macapá*

Rafael Roesler, *Porto Alegre*

Leonardo Lucca Schiavon, *Florianópolis*

Francisca Cléa Florenço Sousa, *Fortaleza*



Canada

Brian Bressler, *Vancouver*

Yuewen Gong, *Manitoba*

Hien Quoc Huynh, *Edmonton*

Grigorios I Leontiadis, *Hamilton*

Sharon Marsh, *Québec*

Jean Sévigny, *Québec*

Martin Alexander Storr, *Alberta*

John Thomas Weber, *St. John's*



China

Zhao-Xiang Bian, *Hong Kong*

Xin-Jing Chen, *Nanjing*

Chi-Hin Cho, *Hong Kong*

Yong-Song Guan, *Chengdu*

Zhi-Li Huang, *Shanghai*

Bo Li, *Beijing*

Duo Li, *Hangzhou*

Yu-Yuan Li, *Guangzhou*

Xiong Ma, *Shanghai*
 Pan Qin, *Shanghai*
 Guo-Ping Sun, *Hefei*
 Xue-Ying Sun, *Harbin*
 Ming-Fu Wang, *Hong Kong*
 Che-Yuen Justin Wu, *Hong Kong*
 De-Xiang Xu, *Hefei*
 Rui-An Xu, *Xiamen*
 Ming-Xian Yan, *Jinan*
 Yong-Feng Yang, *Nanjing*
 Thomas Yau, *Hong Kong*
 Win-Nei Yeo, *Hong Kong*
 Long Yu, *Guangzhou*
 Jian-Ping Yuan, *Guangzhou*
 Man-Fung Yuen, *Hong Kong*
 Jian-Fu Zhang, *Xuzhou*
 Li-Qun Zhang, *Beijing*
 Min-Sheng Zhu, *Nanjing*



Czech Republic

Rene Kizek, *Brno*



Denmark

Ole Haagen Nielsen, *Herlev*



Egypt

Omar Mohamed Abdel-Salam, *Cairo*
 Ahmed Osman Abdel-Zaher, *Assiut*
 Osama Ahmed Badary, *Cairo*



Estonia

Riin Tamm, *Tartu*



Finland

Riitta Korpela, *Helsinki*



France

Ferrand Audrey, *Toulouse*
 Frederic Batteux, *Paris*
 Thierry Capiod, *Paris*
 Frederic Lagarce, *Angers*
 Hang Thi Thu Nguyen, *Clermont-Ferrand*



Germany

Susanne Beckebaum, *Essen*
 Jürgen Borlak, *Hannover*
 Güralp Onur Ceyhan, *Munich*
 Walee Chamulitrat, *Heidelberg*
 Anton Gillessen, *Muenster*
 Dirk Heitzmann, *Muenster*
 Jens Michael Heyn, *München*
 Joachim Labenz, *Siegen*
 Florian Lang, *Tübingen*
 Klaus Mönkemüller, *Bottrop*
 Thomas Müller, *Berlin*
 Belal Naser, *Salzgitter*

Beate Niesler, *Heidelberg*
 Matthias Ocker, *Marburg*
 Andreas Marc Palmer, *Konstanz*
 Dirk Rades, *Lubeck*
 Fuat Hakan Saner, *Essen*
 Manfred V Singer, *Mannheim*
 Konrad Ludwig Streetz, *Aachen*
 Frank Tacke, *Aachen*
 Gerhard Treiber, *Balingen*



Greece

Moses Elisaf, *Ioannina*
 Anastasios Koulaouzidis, *Greek*
 Ioannis E Koutroubakis, *Crete*
 Spilios Manolakopoulos, *Athens*
 Konstantinos C Mountzouris, *Athens*
 George Papatheodoridis, *Athens*



Hungary

Zsolt Barta, *Debrecen*
 László Czakó, *Szeged*
 Béla Molnár, *Budapest*
 Gyula Mózsik, *Pecs*



India

Anil Kumar Agarwal, *New Delhi*
 Sandip Basu, *Bombay*
 Chiranjib Chakraborty, *Vellore*
 Rukhsana Chowdhury, *Kolkata*
 Santosh Darisetty, *Hyderabad*
 C M Habibullah, *Andhra Pradesh*
 Mohammad Sultan Khuroo, *Kashmir*
 Mohandas K Mallath, *Mumbai*
 Balraj Mittal, *Lucknow*
 Rama Devi Mittal, *Lucknow*
 Asish Kumar Mukhopadhyay, *Kolkata*
 Lekha Saha, *Chandigarh*
 Shiv Kumar Sarin, *New Delhi*
 Jayshri Ankur Shah, *Mumbai*
 Sonu Sundd Singh, *Gurgaon*
 Sikta Swarnakar, *Kolkata*
 Rakesh Tandon, *New Delhi*
 Asna Urooj, *Mysore*



Iran

Seyed Mohsen Dehghani, *Shiraz*
 Ahmad Reza Dehpour, *Tehran*
 Sara Farhang, *Tabriz*
 Ali Gholamrezaei, *Isfahan*
 Parisa Hasanein, *Hamadan*
 Amir Mohammad Mortazavian, *Tehran*



Ireland

Zaid Heetun, *Kilkenny*



Israel

Nimer Najib Assy, *Safed*

Rami Eliakim, *Haifa*
 Simon Bar Meir, *Hashomer*
 Haim Shmuel Odes, *Beer Sheba*



Italy

Giovanni C Actis, *Torino*
 Pietro Andreone, *Bologna*
 Bruno Annibale, *Rome*
 Leonardo Baiocchi, *Rome*
 Giovanni Barbara, *Bologna*
 Gabrio Bassotti, *Perugia*
 Francesca Borrelli, *Naples*
 Giuseppe Brisinda, *Rome*
 Renzo Caprilli, *Rome*
 Mauro Antonio Maria Carai, *Cagliari*
 Renato Caviglia, *Rome*
 Carolina Ciacci, *Naples*
 Mario Cottone, *Trabucco*
 Roberto De Giorgio, *Bologna*
 Luca Elli, *Milano*
 Alessandro Granito, *Bologna*
 Francesco William Guglielmi, *Trani*
 Mario Guslandi, *Milan*
 Pietro Invernizzi, *Rozzano*
 Mariano Malaguarnera, *Catania*
 Gianpiero Manes, *Milano*
 Massimo C Mauri, *Milan*
 Massimo Montalto, *Rome*
 Giovanni Monteleone, *Rome*
 Gerardo Nardone, *Napoli*
 Fabio Pace, *Milano*
 Raffaele Pezzilli, *Bologna*
 Rita Rezzani, *Brescia*
 Carmelo Scarpignato, *Parma*
 Generoso Uomo, *Napoli*
 Paolo Usai-Satta, *Cagliari*
 Maurizio Vecchi, *Milano*
 Massimiliano Veroux, *Catania*



Japan

Akira Andoh, *Otsu*
 Yuichiro Eguchi, *Saga*
 Munechika Enjoji, *Fukuoka*
 Norihiro Furusyo, *Fukuoka*
 Naoki Hotta, *Aichi*
 Shigeo Ikegawa, *Higashi-Osaka*
 Susumu Ito, *Okinawa*
 Satoru Kakizaki, *Gunma*
 Terumi Kamisawa, *Tokyo*
 Motoyori Kanazawa, *Sendai*
 Takuma Kato, *Mie*
 Takashi Kawai, *Tokyo*
 Shirao Kuniaki, *Oita*
 Nobuyuki Matsushashi, *Tokyo*
 Tatsuya Matsura, *Yonago*
 Teruo Murakami, *Hiroshima*
 Yuji Naito, *Kyoto*
 Katsuyuki Nakajima, *Maebashi Gunma*
 Hiroshi Nakase, *Kyoto*
 Nobuhiro Ohkohchi, *Tsukuba*
 Shogo Ohkoshi, *Niigata City*
 Tomohiko Shimatani, *Hiroshima*
 Yasuhiko Sugawara, *Tokyo*
 Yoshitaka Takuma, *Okayama*
 Tatsuhiro Tsujimoto, *Nara*
 Takato Ueno, *Kurume*
 Kenji Watanabe, *Osaka*

Toshiaki Watanabe, *Tokyo*
 Jiro Watari, *Nishinomiya*
 Satoshi Yamagiwa, *Niigata*
 Takayuki Yamamoto, *Mie*
 Norimasa Yoshida, *Kyoto*
 Hitoshi Yoshiji, *Nara*
 Katsutoshi Yoshizato, *Hiroshima*



Lebanon

Ala Sharara, *Beirut*



Lithuania

Dalia Adukauskienė, *Kaunas*
 Giedrius Barauskas, *Kaunas*
 Laimas Virginijus Jonaitis, *Kaunas*



Mexico

Pablo Muriel, *Mexico City*
 Guillermo B Robles-Díaz, *Mexico City*



Netherlands

Judith Elisabeth Baars, *Rotterdam*
 Albert J Bredenoord, *Nieuwegein*
 Nanne KH de Boer, *Amsterdam*
 Pieter Jan Floris de Jonge, *Rotterdam*
 Wouter J de Jonge, *Amsterdam*
 Mireille A Edens, *Groningen*
 Chris Mulder, *Amsterdam*
 Godefridus Johannes Peters, *Amsterdam*
 Paul E Sijens, *Groningen*
 Vera Esther Valkhoff, *Rotterdam*



New Zealand

Momir M Mikov, *Dunedin*
 Maxim Petrov, *Auckland*



Norway

Guanglin Cui, *Tromsø*
 Reidar Fossmark, *Trondheim*



Pakistan

Furqaan Ahmed, *Karachi*
 Anwar Hassan Gilani, *Karachi*



Philippines

Mark Anthony De Lusong, *Quezon City*



Poland

Halina Cichoz-Lach, *Lublin*
 Jarosław Czyż, *Cracow*
 Julian Teodor Swierczynski, *Gdansk*



Portugal

Cristina Freire, *Hull*
 Ana Isabel Gouveia Lopes, *Lisbon*



Romania

Dan Lucian Dumitrascu, *Cluj*



Russia

Tatyana A Korolenko, *Novosibirsk*



Saudi Arabia

Moamen Salah Refat, *Taif*
 Shahab Uddin, *Riyadh*



Singapore

Kok-Ann Gwee, *Singapore*
 Khok-Yu Ho, *Singapore*
 Kok-Yuen Ho, *Singapore*



Slovenia

Rok Orel, *Ljubljana*



South Africa

C Johannes van Rensburg, *Tygerberg*



South Korea

Chong-Su Cho, *Seoul*
 Ki Baik Hahm, *Incheon*
 Seok Joo Han, *Seoul*
 Jeong Won Jang, *Incheon*
 Dong Joon Kim, *Chuncheon*
 Jae J Kim, *Seoul*
 Kyoung Mee Kim, *Seoul*
 Nayoung Kim, *Gyeonggi-do*
 Sung-Bae Kim, *Seoul*
 Byung-Hoon Lee, *Seoul*
 Kwan Sik Lee, *Seoul*
 Sang-Han Lee, *Daegu*
 Yun Jeong Lim, *Kyunggi-do*
 Ji-Young Park, *Seoul*
 Uy Dong Sohn, *Seoul*
 Young-Joon Surh, *Seoul*



Spain

Matias Antonio Avila, *Pamplona*
 Luis Bujanda, *San Sebastián*
 Maria Carmen Collado, *Paterna*
 Conrado M Fernandez-Rodriguez, *Madrid*
 Ángel Lanas, *Zaragoza*
 Juan-R Malagelada, *Barcelona*
 Jose JG Marin, *Salamanca*

Antonio Ruiz Medina, *Jaén*
 Maria J Monte, *Salamanca*
 Miguel Muñoz, *Seville*
 Jesus Prieto, *Pamplona*
 Victor Manuel Victor, *Valencia*
 Maria D Yago, *Granada*



Sweden

Bodil Ohlsson, *Malmö*
 Henrik Thorlacius, *Malmö*
 Curt Tysk, *Örebro*



Switzerland

Carsten Alexander Wagner, *Zurich*



Thailand

Weekitt Kittisupamongkol, *Bangkok*
 Abhasnee Sobhonslidsuk, *Bangkok*
 Suporn Treepongkaruna, *Bangkok*
 Sombat Treeprasertsuk, *Bangkok*



Turkey

Fusun Acarturk, *Etiler-Ankara*
 Engin Altintas, *Mersin*
 Güldeniz Karadeniz Cakmak, *Zonguldak*
 Hayrullah Derici, *Balıkesir*
 Mukaddes Eşrefoğlu, *Malatya*
 Ilker Tasci, *Etilik*
 Berrak Çağlayan Yeğen, *Haydarpaşa*



United Kingdom

Nadeem Ahmad Afzal, *Hampshire*
 Qasim Aziz, *London*
 Hugh BARR, *Gloucester*
 Ian Leonard Phillip Beales, *Norwich*
 Barbara Braden, *Oxford*
 Susan J Duthie, *Aberdeen*
 Eyad Elkord, *Manchester*
 Anton Vignaraj Emmanuel, *London*
 Konstantinos C Fragkos, *London*
 Nusrat Husain, *Cheshire*
 Jin-Yong Kang, *London*
 Mariusz Madalinski, *Ipswich*
 Srinivasan Madhusudan, *Nottingham*
 Subramanian Mahadevan, *Birmingham*
 John Francis Mayberry, *Leicester*
 Chuka Uche Nwokolo, *Coventry*
 Ajith Kumar Siriwardena, *Manchester*
 Her-Hsin Tsai, *Cottingham*
 Konstantinos Tziomalos, *London*
 Craig LC Williams, *Glasgow*



United States

Zubair H Aghai, *Camden*
 Shrikant Anant, *Oklahoma City*
 Kondala R Atkuri, *Stanford*
 Cheryl Hunt Baker, *Orlando*
 James M Becker, *Boston*

Qiang Cai, *Atlanta*
 Jiande Chen, *Galveston*
 Liang Cheng, *Indianapolis*
 Joan Clària, *Boston*
 Seth D Crockett, *Chapel Hill*
 Joseph John Cullen, *Iowa*
 Brian J Day, *Colorado*
 Cataldo Doria, *Philadelphia*
 Craig Stephen Dorrell, *Portland*
 Douglas Arnold Drossman, *Chapel Hill*
 Eli D Ehrenpreis, *Illinois*
 Bing-Liang Fang, *Houston*
 Ronnie Fass, *Arizona*
 S Hossein Fatem, *Minneapolis*
 Linda A Feagins, *Dallas*
 Mitchell P Fink, *Los Angeles*
 Lori Fischbach, *Fort Worth*
 Craig Alan Friesen, *Kansas City*
 Fie Gao, *Bethesda*
 M Eric Gershwin, *Davis*
 Shannon Stroud Glaser, *Temple*
 Stephen A Harrison, *Fort Sam Houston*
 Hendrik Heinz, *Ohio*
 Tiberiu Hershcovici, *Tucson*
 Weihong Hou, *Charlotte*
 Peng Huang, *Houston*

William Moses Huang, *New York*
 William Jeffrey Hurst, *Hershey*
 Hartmut Jaeschke, *Kansas City*
 Robert T Jensen, *Bethesda*
 David A Johnson, *Norfolk*
 Pramodini B Kale-Pradhan, *Detroit*
 Vik Khoshoo, *Marrero*
 Tammy L Kindel, *Cincinnati*
 Nils Lambrecht, *California*
 Joel Edward Lavine, *New York*
 Lorenzo Leggio, *Providence*
 Felix W Leung, *North Hills*
 Josh Levitsky, *Chicago*
 Robert W Li, *Washington*
 Allen W Mangel, *Research Triangle Park*
 Richard A Marlar, *Oklahoma City*
 Craig J McClain, *Louisville*
 Murielle Mimeault, *Omaha*
 Smruti R Mohanty, *Chicago*
 John Edward Morley, *St. Louis*
 Sandeep Mukherjee, *Omaha*
 Michael Foster Olive, *Charleston*
 Keith M Olsen, *Omaha*
 Virendra N Pandey, *Newark*
 Narasimham Laxmi Parinandi, *Columbus*
 William Parker, *Durham*

Paul J Pockros, *La Jolla*
 Suofu Qin, *Irvine*
 P Hemachandra Reddy, *Oregon*
 Randolph Eldon Regal, *Ann Arbor*
 Jean-François Rossignol, *Tampa*
 Leonard P Rybak, *Springfield*
 George Sachs, *Los Angeles*
 M Wasif Saif, *New Haven*
 Bimaljit Singh Sandhu, *Richmond*
 Bo Shen, *Cleveland*
 Ashwani Kumar Singal, *Rochester*
 Biographical Sketch, *Hershey*
 Bronislaw Slomiany, *Newark*
 Charles Jeffrey Smith, *Columbia*
 Shi-Yong Sun, *Atlanta*
 Kenneth J Vega, *Oklahoma City*
 Yu-Jui Yvonne Wan, *Kansas*
 Lixin Wang, *Los Angeles*
 Horst Christian Weber, *Boston*
 Brian Wigdahl, *Philadelphia*
 Guang-Yin Xu, *League City*
 Yoshio Yamaoka, *Houston*
 Yutao Yan, *Atlanta*
 Jieyun Yin, *Galveston*
 Jian-Min Yuan, *Minnesota*
 Jian-Ying Zhang, *El Paso*

Contents

Quarterly Volume 6 Number 4 November 6, 2015

EDITORIAL

- 96 Present state and future challenges in pediatric abdominal pain therapeutics research: Looking beyond the forest
Friesen CA, Schurman JV, Abdel-Rahman SM
- 105 Pharmaceutical management of hepatitis B and C in liver and kidney transplant recipients
Pipili C, Cholongitas E
- 111 Flatography: Detection of gastrointestinal diseases by faecal gas analysis
de Groot EF, de Meij TG, Berkhout DJ, van der Schee MP, de Boer NK
- 114 Direct antiviral agent treatment of decompensated hepatitis C virus-induced liver cirrhosis
Ohkoshi S, Hirono H, Yamagiwa S
- 120 Role of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors alpha and gamma in gastric ulcer: An overview of experimental evidences
Saha L

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

- 127 *Helicobacter pylori*: Effect of coexisting diseases and update on treatment regimens
Chang SS, Hu HY
- 137 Mesalazine preparations for the treatment of ulcerative colitis: Are all created equal?
Ye B, van Langenberg DR

REVIEW

- 145 Pharmacotherapy for the management of achalasia: Current status, challenges and future directions
Nassri A, Ramzan Z
- 156 Pregnancy and inflammatory bowel diseases: Current perspectives, risks and patient management
Hosseini-Carroll P, Mutyala M, Seth A, Nageeb S, Soliman D, Boktor M, Sheth A, Chapman J, Morris J, Jordan P, Manas K, Becker F, Alexander JS
- 172 Diagnosis and therapy of non-variceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding
Biecker E
- 183 Antibiotic treatment for *Helicobacter pylori*: Is the end coming?
Kim SY, Choi DJ, Chung JW

MINIREVIEWS

- 199 Autoimmune pancreatitis and cholangitis
Jani N, Buxbaum J
- 207 Age-related differences in celiac disease: Specific characteristics of adult presentation
Vivas S, Vaquero L, Rodríguez-Martín L, Caminero A

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

- 213 Plecanatide and dolcanatide, novel guanylate cyclase-C agonists, ameliorate gastrointestinal inflammation in experimental models of murine colitis
Shailubhai K, Palejwala V, Arjunan KP, Saykhedkar S, Nefsky B, Foss JA, Comiskey S, Jacob GS, Plevy SE
- 223 Orally administered extract from *Prunella vulgaris* attenuates spontaneous colitis in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice
Haarberg KMK, Wymore Brand MJ, Overstreet AMC, Hauck CC, Murphy PA, Hostetter JM, Ramer-Tait AE, Wannemuehler MJ

Retrospective Study

- 238 Typical and atypical symptoms of gastro esophageal reflux disease: Does *Helicobacter pylori* infection matter?
Grossi L, Ciccaglione AF, Marzio L

Observational Study

- 244 Prevalence of eosinophilic oesophagitis in adults presenting with oesophageal food bolus obstruction
Heerasing N, Lee SY, Alexander S, Dowling D

CASE REPORT

- 248 Massive duodenal variceal bleed; complication of extra hepatic portal hypertension: Endoscopic management and literature review
Steevens C, Abdalla M, Kothari TH, Kaul V, Kothari S
- 253 Preoperative detection of intrahepatic venovenous shunt treated by microwave precoagulation during right hepatectomy
Delhorme JB, Méméo R, Marescaux J, Pessaix P

Contents

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics
Volume 6 Number 4 November 6, 2015

ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, Ian Lawrance, PhD, Professor, School of Medicine and Pharmacology, University of Western Australia Director, Centre for Inflammatory Bowel Disease, Fremantle Hospital T Block, Fremantle WA 6160, Australia

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics (*World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther*, *WJGPT*, online ISSN 2150-5349, DOI: 10.4292), is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJGPT covers topics concerning: (1) Clinical pharmacological research articles on specific drugs, concerning with pharmacodynamics, pharmacokinetics, toxicology, clinical trial, drug reactions, drug metabolism and adverse reaction monitoring, etc.; (2) Research progress of clinical pharmacology; (3) Introduction and evaluation of new drugs; (4) Experiences and problems in applied therapeutics; (5) Research and introductions of methodology in clinical pharmacology; and (6) Guidelines of clinical trial.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJGPT*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

INDEXING/ ABSTRACTING

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics is now indexed in PubMed Central, PubMed, Digital Object Identifier, and Directory of Open Access Journals.

FLYLEAF

I-IV Editorial Board

EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

Responsible Assistant Editor: *Xiang Li*
Responsible Electronic Editor: *Dan Li*
Proofing Editor-in-Chief: *Lian-Sheng Ma*

Responsible Science Editor: *Xue-Mei Gong*
Proofing Editorial Office Director: *Xiu-Xia Song*

NAME OF JOURNAL

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics

ISSN

ISSN 2150-5349 (online)

LAUNCH DATE

May 6, 2010

FREQUENCY

Quarterly

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF

Hugh J Freeman, MD, FRCPC, FACP, Professor,
Department of Medicine (Gastroenterology), University of British Columbia, Hospital, 2211 Wesbrook Mall, Vancouver, BC V6T1W5, Canada

EDITORIAL OFFICE

Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pharmacology and Therapeutics

Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: <http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>
<http://www.wjgnet.com>

PUBLISHER

Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: <http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>
<http://www.wjgnet.com>

PUBLICATION DATE

November 6, 2015

COPYRIGHT

© 2015 Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. Articles published by this Open-Access journal are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-commercial License, which permits use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited, the use is non commercial and is otherwise in compliance with the license.

SPECIAL STATEMENT

All articles published in journals owned by the Baishideng Publishing Group (BPG) represent the views and opinions of their authors, and not the views, opinions or policies of the BPG, except where otherwise explicitly indicated.

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS

Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/g_info_20100315084234.htm

ONLINE SUBMISSION

<http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/>

Present state and future challenges in pediatric abdominal pain therapeutics research: Looking beyond the forest

Craig A Friesen, Jennifer V Schurman, Susan M Abdel-Rahman

Craig A Friesen, Division of Gastroenterology, Hepatology, and Nutrition, Children's Mercy Kansas City, Kansas City, MO 64108, United States

Jennifer V Schurman, Division of Developmental and Behavioral Sciences, Children's Mercy Kansas City, Kansas City, MO 64108, United States

Susan M Abdel-Rahman, Division of Pediatric Pharmacology, Medical Toxicology, and Therapeutic Innovation, Children's Mercy Kansas City, Kansas City, MO 64108, United States

Author contributions: All authors contributed equally to the content, writing, and revision of this manuscript; all authors had approved the final version of the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no conflicts of interest.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Craig A Friesen, MD, Division of Gastroenterology, Hepatology, and Nutrition, Children's Mercy Kansas City, 2401 Gillham Road, Kansas City, MO 64108, United States. cfriesen@cmh.edu
Telephone: +1-816-2343016
Fax: +1-816-8021465

Received: May 4, 2015

Peer-review started: May 6, 2015

First decision: July 10, 2015

Revised: August 8, 2015

Accepted: August 20, 2015

Article in press: August 21, 2015

Published online: November 6, 2015

Abstract

At the present time, it is nearly impossible to treat pediatric functional gastrointestinal disorders associated with pain in an evidence based fashion. This is due to the overall lack of controlled studies and, even more importantly, the complexity of the contributors to disease phenotype which are not controlled or accounted for in most therapeutic trials. In this manuscript, we review the challenges of defining entry criteria, controlling for the large number of biopsychosocial factors which may effect outcomes, and understanding pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic factors when designing therapeutic trials for abdominal pain in children. We also review the current state of pediatric abdominal pain therapeutics and discuss trial design considerations as we move forward.

Key words: Pharmacogenomics; Functional dyspepsia; Abdominal pain; Irritable bowel syndrome; Therapeutic trials; Pharmacokinetics

© **The Author(s) 2015.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: For abdominal pain therapeutics research to fulfill the promise of personalized medicine, there is a need to standardize trial entry criteria including validating Rome criteria as predictors of response. There is also a need to embrace complexity and recognize and control for the large number of biologic, psychologic, social, and pharmacologic factors which define each patient and may affect drug response. This approach will allow us not only to understand what treatments work for the population at large, but for the individual patient in front of us.

Friesen CA, Schurman JV, Abdel-Rahman SM. Present state and future challenges in pediatric abdominal pain therapeutics research: Looking beyond the forest. *World J Gastrointest*

Pharmacol Ther 2015; 6(4): 96-104 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i4/96.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i4.96>

TEXT

Personalized medicine involves tailoring treatment to the specific characteristics, needs, and preferences of the individual patient^[1]. At its heart, it's the "right drug at the right dose at the right time"^[2]. The personalized medicine movement is primarily predicated on two things: (1) that an evidence base exists to support certain treatment options at the level of the population; and (2) that individual variation in patient characteristics, needs, and preferences can be identified in such a way as to allow evidence-based treatment to be optimally tailored. In a sense, personalized medicine focuses on the individual patient within the context of the population. While this is ideal, combining the best of evidence-based research with the best of clinical application, this is not the current reality for many conditions, including pediatric functional gastrointestinal disorders (FGIDs) associated with pain.

At the present time, it is nearly impossible to treat pediatric FGIDs associated with pain in an evidence based fashion. This is due to the overall lack of controlled studies and, even more importantly, the complexity of the contributors to disease phenotype which are not controlled or accounted for in most therapeutic trials. Each patient has a unique set of characteristics which must be understood when delivering an intervention. However, our individual patient care is largely informed by aggregate group data. Furthermore, studies are generally designed to minimize variation within the sample and thus may bear little relationship to actual patients seen in the clinical setting^[3]. Group-wise analyses disguise substantial individual variation relevant to treatment. In short, we are unable to see the trees for the forest.

Diagnostic challenges also contribute to the familiar problems experienced by academic investigators and drug developers who conduct drug studies of FGIDs^[4,5]. Principal among these are poorly understood etiologies for this very heterogeneous group of conditions, poor diagnostic agreement in the classification of patients, incompletely validated criteria on which to subtype patients, and the fluctuating nature of symptoms^[6-8]. Absent a clear understanding of the physiological, psychological, and behavioral elements that define this condition and reliable biomarkers that can facilitate patient subtyping^[9,10], studies will invariably introduce uncertainty in their findings by pooling patients with putatively different underlying mechanisms of disease.

Collectively, these challenges lead to underpowered studies with variable response rates, large placebo effects, and limited relevance to the average pediatric patient with abdominal pain that is encountered in clinical practice. The role of this editorial is to lay out the relevant

history and present state of therapeutics in pediatric abdominal pain research, as well as to identify existing challenges that will need to be considered and addressed to move the field forward toward the personalized medicine ideal in the future.

ROME CRITERIA AS THE ENTRY CRITERIA FOR THERAPEUTIC TRIALS

In 1999, the pediatric Rome II committee established the first diagnostic criteria for FGIDs in children. These criteria were consensus-based and modeled after previous work (Rome I) in adults. In 2006, the pediatric criteria were revised by the Rome III committee. The Rome criteria define four FGIDs related to abdominal pain in children: Functional dyspepsia, irritable bowel syndrome, abdominal migraine, and childhood functional abdominal pain/syndrome^[11] (Table 1). The majority of children and adolescents with chronic abdominal pain or discomfort meet criteria for an FGID^[12,13]. At present, these Rome diagnoses form the entry criteria for nearly all pediatric abdominal pain therapeutic trials; however, the criteria have remained consensus-based and have never been completely validated nor shown to predict treatment response in clinical trials.

Utilizing the criteria in clinical practice or therapeutic trials is associated with some significant obstacles, including inherent ambiguity, inconsistent application, and differences in symptom reports between the patient and their parents or care givers. Although they seem to be "face valid", the Rome criteria lack a necessary degree of precision that translates to confusion on the part of patients, parents, and providers. For example, what is discomfort? Does the word discomfort mean nausea, bloating, or something else? Does it mean the same thing to parents as to the child? Do symptoms associated with discomfort result from different pathophysiologic processes or respond differently to treatments than does overt pain? In another example, an important criterion used to differentiate FD from IBS in the Rome criteria is relief with defecation which was defined in IBS as greater than 25% of the time but undefined in FD. Does having relief with a stool 5% or 10% of the time exclude FD? What happens when parents and children disagree about the percent time that defecation relieves pain? These are two relatively straightforward examples, but the criteria are open to interpretation in many areas. As suggested in the above examples, variance also is created by who provides the history and in what fashion. Utilizing standardized questionnaires, there is only fair to moderate agreement in diagnosis between symptom reports obtained from the patient and those obtained from their parent or guardian^[13,14]. Agreement is low between the evaluating physician and either the patient or parent^[13,14]. Further, responses on a standardized questionnaire also have low agreement to a daily symptom diary^[14]. Perhaps due to the ambiguity, criteria are inconsistently applied. It has been shown that

Table 1 Criteria for functional gastrointestinal disorders related to pain in children

Functional dyspepsia ¹
Must include all of the following
Persistent or recurrent pain or discomfort centered in the upper abdomen
Pain or discomfort not relieved by defecation or associated with onset of a change in stool frequency or form
Irritable bowel syndrome ¹
Must include all of the following
Abdominal pain or discomfort associated with 2 or more of the following at least 25% of the time
Improved by defecation
Onset associated with a change in stool frequency
Onset associated with a change in stool form
Abdominal migraine
Must include all of the following
Paroxysmal episodes of intense, acute periumbilical pain lasting at least one hour
Intervening periods of usual health lasting at least weeks
Pain interferes with normal activity
The pain is associated with at least two of the following
Anorexia
Nausea
Vomiting
Headache
Photophobia
Pallor
Criteria must be fulfilled at least two times in the preceeding 12 mo
Childhood functional abdominal pain ¹
Must include all of the following
Episodic or continuous abdominal pain
Does not meet criteria for another FGID
Childhood functional abdominal pain syndrome
Must include childhood FAP and at least 25% of the time with at least one of the following
Some loss of daily function
Additional somatic complaints such as headache, limb pain, or difficulty sleeping

All require that there be no evidence of an inflammatory, anatomic, metabolic, or neoplastic process that explains the symptoms. ¹Criteria fulfilled at least once per week for at least 12 mo. FGIDs: Functional gastrointestinal disorders; FAP: Functional abdominal pain.

pediatric gastroenterologists only have fair to moderate agreement regarding FGID diagnosis even when presented identical clinical vignettes^[15]. This problem may not be strictly limited to the pediatric population either. In adult FD, which has more specifically defined criteria, adherence to Rome criteria for inclusion was found in only 54% of clinical research trials^[16].

Another challenge to utilizing Rome criteria in practice is that there is heterogeneity within diagnoses. Pediatric criteria, unlike the adult Rome criteria, do not recognize subtypes within either FD or IBS. In adult FD, there are two recognized subtypes: (1) postprandial distress syndrome (PDS), characterized by postprandial fullness or early satiety; and (2) epigastric pain syndrome, characterized by epigastric pain or burning unrelated to meals. These are not recognized in the pediatric criteria, although there is some evidence that PDS is associated with increased mucosal mast cells, anxiety, and depression in pediatric FD^[17]. These are associations which may affect therapeutic responses to a given treatment. Likewise, IBS in adults may present with primarily constipation, diarrhea, or alternating symptoms; these patterns also have been described in children/adolescents, but are not specified as subtypes within the Rome criteria^[18]. Ostensibly pediatric patients with primarily constipation would respond differently

to an agent that affects motility than a patient with primarily diarrhea.

There also may be overlap between FGIDs, or between FGIDs and other conditions such as chronic nausea, GERD, or bladder dysfunction, which may influence treatment response. Nausea has been reported to be a commonly associated symptom in children with chronic abdominal pain which spans FGIDs^[19]. Nausea frequency is associated with poor school and social functioning, and also predicts social disability; thus, nausea may be a symptom that could affect therapeutic response independent of the FGID category. In adults, significant overlap has been reported between FD and IBS, with overlap associated with more severe symptoms and increased psychological dysfunction^[20,21]. Significant overlap has also been reported between FD and IBS in children, although some investigators report no overlap^[12,13]. This represents another area of variability in application of the Rome criteria, as some investigators diagnose FD/IBS overlap while other investigators default to IBS when symptoms of both are present.

Finally, the Rome FGIDs were meant to be positive diagnoses in that they do not require organic disease to be ruled out *per se*; however, the criteria contain the requirement that there be no inflammatory, anatomic, metabolic, or neoplastic process to explain the

symptoms. Pediatric gastroenterologists vary significantly in what testing they believe is necessary to rule out biochemical or structural causes of abdominal pain^[22]. Additionally, it has also been shown that the Rome III criteria are not specific enough to rule out organic diseases and that alarm symptoms do not differentiate between organic and non-organic disease^[23]. Taken together, the above issues may at least partly explain why only 39% of pediatric gastroenterologists report using the Rome criteria in their clinical practice^[22].

Ultimately, there is a need to fully validate the Rome criteria in children as well as evaluate which symptoms naturally cluster together as has been done in adult populations. Even more importantly, current diagnostic categories (or other symptom complexes) and symptom variability within a diagnostic category need to be assessed for their ability to predict treatment response.

IMPLICATIONS OF THE BIOPSYCHOSOCIAL MODEL

Beyond issues of diagnostic classification, the development of abdominal pain itself is now widely considered to be a complex process. Chronic abdominal pain is believed to arise through multiple pathways that include biological (physiological, genetics), psychological (emotional, behavioral), and social (relational, environmental) factors which interact with one another. Each of these factors may contribute to initiation or maintenance of pain, as well as frequency, duration, and intensity of pain and other related symptoms. Consequently, children may arrive at the same result through different pathways. In addition, the process is dynamic and different processes may contribute to symptoms generation to varying degrees at different time points.

Patients may arrive at the same symptom complex by very divergent pathophysiologic processes including dysmotility, visceral hypersensitivity, inflammation, and alteration of the microbiome. FD for example has been associated with visceral hypersensitivity, as well as a wide variety of electromechanical disturbances including disorders of gastric emptying and accommodation, gastric dysrhythmias, and antroduodenal dysmotility^[24]. FD has also been associated with inflammation, specifically mast cell accumulation in the antrum and eosinophil accumulation in the duodenum^[25]. Similarly, IBS may result from visceral hypersensitivity, motility disturbances, low grade inflammation, and/or an altered intestinal microbiome^[26]. Psychologic disturbances frequently co-exist and interact with other pathophysiologic factors. In addition, each patient has an environment which may interact with other pathophysiologic mechanisms and affect disease presentation and response to therapy over time.

Psychological functioning can be a significant source of patient variability, which cuts across all FGIDs. Psychological measures demonstrate clustering in children with FGIDs related to abdominal pain. In

one study, approximately half of pediatric patients with FGIDs showed no significant emotional, behavioral, or social disturbances, while 35%-45% demonstrated elevations only in anxiety scores and the remaining 13% demonstrated broad-based psychological problems^[27]. In another study, pediatric patients with FGIDs demonstrated distinct patterns of pain and adaptation, with adaptation affecting clinical outcome^[28].

Lastly, pain is influenced by a number of other broad social and environmental factors including interpersonal relationships, the natural environment, diet, and sleep. While some of these triggers appear common across individuals, there is likely variability among individuals on others^[29]. For example, some patients have clear associations between inflammation, pain and the pollen count. These patients may respond to a treatment regimen differently during a time of high pollen exposure as compared to low exposure or differently than individuals unaffected by the pollen count^[30].

Ultimately, the complexity of pediatric abdominal pain, and FGIDs specifically, creates significant challenges in controlling for disease variables in therapeutic trials. To date, this issue has largely been addressed through restrictive eligibility criteria, to reduce variability, or "noise", on the front end. However, the biopsychosocial model suggests that we may need to embrace individual variability, rather than control for it, in order to move closer to the personalized medicine ideal. In practice, this means that more liberal inclusion criteria combined with use of alternative research designs and/or more advanced statistical modeling approaches may be needed to support advancement in knowledge and care. We must assess each participant as a complex biopsychosocial system to understand how that system (*i.e.*, the whole person) affects treatment outcome and how that system rearranges in response to a treatment. This offers the hope of being able to determine which factors within the system predict the treatment that would be most effective for an individual patient.

CLINICAL PHARMACOLOGY

Historically, the lack of adequate pediatric drug trials, in general, could be blamed on several factors: (1) questions surrounding the ethics of conducting drug studies in children; (2) concerns related to the disproportionate financial investment required to support studies in a population which comprises a relatively small market share; and (3) assertions that pediatric studies are logistically more complex than comparable adult studies. Fortunately, academicians and regulators have come to appreciate that routinely administering medications to children when they have not been evaluated in this population is not ethically defensible^[31,32]. Subsequently, United States legislation has prompted a major push to evaluate drugs in children, shifting discussions from "if" these studies should be performed to "when" and "how" they should be conducted^[33]. With the general debate out

of the way, well-intentioned investigators are revealing additional challenges nested in the conduct of pediatric drug studies for FGIDs. Published studies continue to suffer from problems that can be loosely characterized as pharmacokinetic, pharmacodynamic, and diagnostic in nature.

Inadequacies in dosing regimen selection are perhaps the most straightforward to address. Since most academic investigations reflect repurposing of approved drugs there exists, at a minimum, some pharmacokinetic data that can be used to guide dosing decisions. Physiologically-based pharmacokinetic modelling and simulation strategies which take into consideration known maturational changes in the anatomy and physiology of major organs of disposition can provide a reasonable starting point from which to base dose selection^[34]. The caveat is that this approach requires some estimation of desired exposure targets which, when unknown, often reflect adult exposures that have demonstrated safety. Notably, there is evidence to suggest that a priori modelling predictions do not always reflect observed pharmacokinetic profiles^[35], which is why modelling exercises should be followed by confirmatory pharmacokinetic studies in advance of, or concurrent with, outcome based trials.

Importantly, the paradigm of “one and done” with respect to pediatric pharmacokinetic studies may not be a realistic option in FGIDs where marked variability in the genetic constitution, co-morbidities, and co-administered medications abound. Each of these factors can alter the pharmacokinetic profile of the drug in question to a different extent. However, a number of strategies can be integrated into the design of pediatric drug trials to enhance our understanding of the dose-exposure-response profile for selected treatment regimens. These include classical pharmacokinetic sampling in a small subset of patients, sparse pharmacokinetic sampling over a broader range of patients coupled with population pharmacokinetic analyses, and scavenged pharmacokinetic sampling or opportunistic clinical sampling similarly employing population-based analytical approaches. Though the latter strategies offer less than robust pharmacokinetic parameter estimates, they are only minimally labor intensive (as compared to classical pharmacokinetic studies) and are increasingly being accepted by regulatory agencies^[36,37].

Additional pharmacokinetic considerations surround reliable drug delivery. A troublesome consequence of the failure of big Pharma to integrate children early in the drug development process is the lack of age-appropriate dosage formulations^[38]. If the only available formulation is a solid oral dosage form, titrating the dose for children of varying weights can be problematic. Consequently, clinical trial outcomes that are not examined in the context of the weight-adjusted dose each participant received may miss important relationships between dose and response^[39]. One must also consider the extrapolation of the research findings to the clinical

practice setting. Data from a subset of children capable of swallowing the solid oral dosage form is of mixed utility in a pediatric practice setting where extemporaneous compounding may be undertaken to accommodate the needs of younger patients. Extemporaneous manipulation of the drug must be anticipated and the consequence on its relative bioavailability carefully assessed. Without these data, the fate of the molecule in the patient will be unknown and the care of the child potentially compromised^[38].

Pharmacodynamic challenges reflected in drug studies of pediatric FGIDs center around adequately capturing unbiased outcomes^[6]. As the need for objective biomarkers of treatment response is self-evident, and the current challenges related to subjective outcome measures have been thoughtfully addressed by others^[7,10,40], we only reference the problem here to suggest that guidance documents authored by the United States Food and Drug Administration may offer a reasonable starting point for discussions related to the design and utilization of instruments developed to collect patient reported outcomes (PRO)^[41,42]. These documents discuss the Agency's views on the adequacy of PRO measurement tools in the context of their characteristics, conceptual framework, content validity, criterion validity, ability to detect change, and suitability in special populations (e.g., children, cognitively impaired, nonverbal, non-native language speakers). They also discuss the integration of these tools into clinical trials including protocol design considerations and statistical considerations nested in the analysis of PRO data^[41,42]. We recognize that pediatric labeling is not a forethought for many academicians when designing FGIDs trials but the guidance offers insight into how a body of individuals tasked with the responsibility for determining the efficacy and safety of medicines view these instruments.

Ultimately, drug pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics and how these interact with genetics and disease processes must be considered if we are to gain a firm understanding of how to treat individual patients. Once we have selected the right drug for the right patient, pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics will allow us to fulfill the last step in a personalized medicine approach, the right dose at the right time.

CURRENT STATE OF ABDOMINAL PAIN THERAPEUTICS

Therapeutic management strategies for the treatment of functional gastrointestinal disorders share a common limitation with the sizeable majority of drugs on the market; namely, insufficient clinical evidence for their use in children. A Cochrane review published in 2002, and updated in 2008, identified a mere 6 trials evaluating drug-based interventions in children with recurrent abdominal pain or irritable bowel syndrome^[4,43]. Importantly, only one-half of these trials were randomized and controlled. Our own more recent

Table 2 Chronological list of placebo controlled drug trials for functional gastrointestinal disorders related to abdominal pain in children and adolescents, including summary of treatment, sample size, and outcome

Ref.	Treatment	Diagnosis	Sample size (enrolled/completed)	Superior to placebo for pain relief
Symon and Russell ^[44] (1995)	Pitotifen	Abdominal migraine	16/14	Yes
Kline <i>et al</i> ^[45] (2001)	Enteric coated peppermint oil capsules	Irritable bowel syndrome	50/42	Yes
See <i>et al</i> ^[46] (2001)	Famotidine	Abdominal pain and dyspepsia	25/25	Yes
Friesen <i>et al</i> ^[47] (2004)	Montelukast	FD with duodenal eosinophilia	40/37	Yes
Bahar <i>et al</i> ^[48] (2008)	Amitriptyline	Irritable bowel syndrome	35/33	Yes
Sadeghian <i>et al</i> ^[49] (2008)	Cyproheptadine	Functional abdominal pain	36/28	Yes
Saps <i>et al</i> ^[50] (2009)	Amitriptyline	FD, irritable bowel syndrome, and functional abdominal pain	90/83	No
Pourmoghaddas <i>et al</i> ^[51] (2014)	Mebeverine	Functional abdominal pain	115/87	No

search of the literature revealed a total of 8 placebo-controlled drug trials for abdominal pain related FGIDs in children/adolescents, indicating that we have not made much progress in the past 7 years (see Table 2 for a summary)^[44-51]. The clinical implication surrounding this paucity of well-controlled studies is limited empiric support for even basic prescribing decisions that clinicians make when managing pediatric patients with FGIDs.

Importantly, even within the existing literature, there are inconsistent findings that yield further confusion in applying results to clinical care. Comparison of the two separate trials of amitriptyline demonstrates some of the issues with regard to pediatric trials for FGIDs^[48,50]; one trial demonstrated efficacy while the other did not. In adults, amitriptyline has been shown to be efficacious in those with diarrhea-predominant IBS^[52]. One of the two pediatric trials for amitriptyline evaluated only participants with diarrhea-predominant IBS and demonstrated efficacy^[48]. In contrast, the other pediatric trial evaluated both diarrhea- and constipation-predominant IBS patients, and also included patients with functional abdominal pain and FD, and did not demonstrate efficacy^[50]. In addition to the much greater heterogeneity of the sample in the second study, there also was a trend for patients with IBS to be over-represented in the placebo group. The authors did analyze by specific FGID, but were likely underpowered to detect differences; descriptive statistics by group were not provided to allow the reader to evaluate effect size in this case. Thus, the lack of demonstrated efficacy for pain relief may have been due to patient selection, both in terms of inclusion criteria and randomization inequity. Another difference between the two studies may have been the dosing regimen. The per weight dosing likely varied significantly among patients within and across studies, although data on this was not presented nor analyzed as a covariate in the analysis. Furthermore, neither study determined amitriptyline concentrations in the blood to assess exposure. It is possible that success, or a lack thereof, was - at least in part - the result of

differential dosing and/or exposure across patients.

Further, there have been almost no studies that have looked at layering of treatments. Although not the focus of this commentary, in addition to the drug trials noted above, there have been 6 controlled trials of probiotics, 4 controlled trials of fiber supplements, and a number of trials of a variety of psychological interventions (with various degrees of control), all mainly done in isolation of, or without regard for, other treatments. Layering of treatments is an important avenue to explore given the many potential contributors to symptoms in a given patient as previously discussed. It seems intuitive that identifying as many potential pain contributors in a given patient and addressing each simultaneously with a treatment specific to the contributor would be the most efficacious approach. However, this remains to be fully proven, as limited data exists. One example of existing evidence for layered treatment would be combining montelukast with biofeedback-assisted relaxation training (BART) in FD associated with duodenal eosinophilia. In the first study, montelukast was shown to be efficacious in this patient group in a double-blind, placebo-controlled crossover trial^[47]. Then, in a second study, a separate group of patients was randomized to receive medication alone or in combination with BART. The combined, or layered, treatment resulted in more rapid resolution of pain and associated disability than seen for medication alone^[52].

Finally, clinical trials for pediatric FGIDs have largely utilized traditional research designs that analyze data in the aggregate, which serves only to identify evidence at the level of the population without regard for individual characteristics, needs, or preferences. Specifically, within the drug trials identified by our group, only 3 utilized a cross-over design, only 1 evaluated potential biomarkers of response, only 1 utilized multivariate analysis of response predictors with anxiety as a co-variable, and only 1 assessed drug exposure utilizing pharmacokinetics. While there may be a role for

population-level evidence in creating a solid foundation from which individualization of treatment can occur, this cannot be the only approach if we are to learn how to effectively tailor those interventions for the benefit of our clinical patients.

WHERE DO WE GO FROM HERE?

First and foremost, we need to study drugs being used to treat abdominal pain in children. The approach must recognize that this is a multifactorial disease and that each patient has a unique biopsychosocial profile that may affect treatment response. The most direct way to account for this participant-to-participant variability is to have the participant serve as their own control, either through utilizing cross-over designs (when the intervention has limited durability) or through single subject designs. Ultimately, trials need to be of sufficient sample size and comprehensive in collecting data regarding biologic, psychologic, and social/environmental variables such that all of these potential factors can be assessed to determine individual characteristics or profiles that predict response. Trials, particularly early ones, also must consider pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics to assess relationships between drug dosing, drug exposure, and clinical response. Generalizability depends on controlling variables in the analysis rather than at entry through overly strict entry criteria.

Given our current state of understanding, investigations of medicines for abdominal pain may benefit from new approaches to trial design, including: (1) adaptive sample size re-estimation which can account for inaccurate assumptions of variance that can affect a studies power^[53]; (2) enrichment designs that can limit the enrollment of participants with characteristics that may preclude the detection of a drug effect (*e.g.*, rapidly waxing and waning symptoms, non-adherence)^[54]; and (3) n-of-1 trials which can better characterize individual treatment effects and potentially improve trial efficiency while reducing the necessary sample size^[55]. Adaptive study designs involve prospectively planned opportunity for modification of one or more specified aspects of the study design and hypotheses based on analysis of interim data. These designs allow the flexibility to alter the direction when it becomes clear that a particular intervention is effective such that a second treatment could be layered on. Conversely, these designs allow an intervention to be dropped when there is sufficient data to indicate that the treatment is ineffective. Single subject designs allow for fewer participants but require more frequent observation to ensure that change occurs only with the intervention. Such designs are more economical and allow researchers to tease out what specific treatments are most effective. These designs allow more rigorous study of combination treatments with different treatments phased in over time and also permit determination of the impact of dose escalation.

CONCLUSION

There can be value in preserving the traditional group aggregate approach, and there certainly remains room for the completion of high quality controlled clinical trials in the treatment of pediatric FGIDs. However, we also need to move past tradition to evaluate naturally occurring variation to understand which characteristic or set of characteristics are relevant to outcome. Pragmatically, this means embracing individual variability rather than restricting it *via* stringent sample selection criteria. This means investigating that variability through pharmacokinetic work to better predict exposure and inform dosing in individual patients. This means creatively applying alternative designs to the execution rather than applying research methods that are comfortable or familiar. And, this means learning new analytic strategies or partnering with statisticians familiar with analysis of adaptive designs, small *n* trials, and/or approaches to modeling intraindividual variation. Ultimately, to move forward, we need to understand variability, not control it.

In short, people are complicated and children with chronic abdominal pain are no exception. If we fail to appreciate that complexity in our research designs, we will never really get useful information out of the trials that we do. We will see only the forest, but not the trees within it. While population-based data can provide a place to start and the broad context for treatment, personalized medicine requires going beyond this to take individual characteristics, needs, and preferences into account in providing treatment to an individual. Thinking flexibly in our research, with individual variability in mind, will allow us to not only assess which treatments are efficacious but equally important, to understand when and for whom the treatment works^[3]. Then we can determine not only which treatments work for the population at large, but also - and more importantly - for the individual patient in front of us.

REFERENCES

- 1 **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services Food and Drug Administration.** Paving the way for personalized medicine 2013. Available from: URL: <http://www.fda.gov/downloads/scienceresearch/specialtopics/personalizedmedicine/ucm372421.pdf>
- 2 **Hamburg MA, Collins FS.** The path to personalized medicine. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **363**: 301-304 [PMID: 20551152 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMp1006304]
- 3 **Schurman JV, Gayes LA.** Commentary: Putting tools in context: how pediatric psychologists can leverage science to improve clinical care. *J Pediatr Psychol* 2014; **39**: 262-263 [PMID: 24443739 DOI: 10.1093/jpepsy/jst140]
- 4 **Huertas-Ceballos AA, Logan S, Bennett C, Macarthur C.** Pharmacological interventions for recurrent abdominal pain (RAP) and irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) in childhood. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2008; (1): CD003017 [DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD003017.pub2]
- 5 **European Medicines Agency.** Guidelines on the evaluation of medicinal products for the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome (CPMP/EWP/785/97) 2014. Available from: URL: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/Scientific_guideline/2014/09/WC500173457.pdf

- 6 **Kortnerink JJ**, Rutten JM, Venmans L, Benninga MA, Tabbers MM. Pharmacologic treatment in pediatric functional abdominal pain disorders: a systematic review. *J Pediatr* 2015; **166**: 424-431. e6 [PMID: 25449223 DOI: 10.1016/j.peds.2014.09.067]
- 7 **Levy RL**, van Tilburg MA. Functional abdominal pain in childhood: background studies and recent research trends. *Pain Res Manag* 2012; **17**: 413-417 [PMID: 23248815]
- 8 **Yacob D**, Di Lorenzo C. Functional abdominal pain: all roads lead to Rome (criteria). *Pediatr Ann* 2009; **38**: 253-258 [PMID: 19476297]
- 9 **Whitfield KL**, Shulman RJ. Treatment options for functional gastrointestinal disorders: from empiric to complementary approaches. *Pediatr Ann* 2009; **38**: 288-290, 292-294 [PMID: 19476303]
- 10 **Miller LE**. Study design considerations for irritable bowel syndrome clinical trials. *Ann Gastroenterol* 2014; **27**: 338-345 [PMID: 25330749]
- 11 **Rasquin A**, Di Lorenzo C, Forbes D, Guiraldes E, Hyams JS, Staiano A, Walker LS. Childhood functional gastrointestinal disorders: child/adolescent. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 1527-1537 [PMID: 16678566]
- 12 **Walker LS**, Lipani TA, Greene JW, Caines K, Stutts J, Polk DB, Caplan A, Rasquin-Weber A. Recurrent abdominal pain: symptom subtypes based on the Rome II Criteria for pediatric functional gastrointestinal disorders. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2004; **38**: 187-191 [PMID: 14734882]
- 13 **Schurman JV**, Friesen CA, Danda CE, Andre L, Welchert E, Lavenbarg T, Cocjin JT, Hyman PE. Diagnosing functional abdominal pain with the Rome II criteria: parent, child, and clinician agreement. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2005; **41**: 291-295 [PMID: 16131983]
- 14 **van Tilburg MA**, Squires M, Blois-Martin N, Leiby A, Langseder A. Test of the child/adolescent Rome III criteria: agreement with physician diagnosis and daily symptoms. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2013; **25**: 302-e246 [PMID: 23216900 DOI: 10.1111/nmo.12056]
- 15 **Chogle A**, Dhroove G, Sztainberg M, Di Lorenzo C, Saps M. How reliable are the Rome III criteria for the assessment of functional gastrointestinal disorders in children? *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 2697-2701 [PMID: 20808296 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2010.350]
- 16 **Stanghellini V**, Cogliandro R. Review article: adherence to Rome criteria in therapeutic trials in functional dyspepsia. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **40**: 435-466 [PMID: 25056101 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12865]
- 17 **Schurman JV**, Singh M, Singh V, Neilan N, Friesen CA. Symptoms and subtypes in pediatric functional dyspepsia: relation to mucosal inflammation and psychological functioning. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2010; **51**: 298-303 [PMID: 20479684 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0b013e3181d1363c]
- 18 **Self MM**, Czyzewski DI, Chumpitazi BP, Weidler EM, Shulman RJ. Subtypes of irritable bowel syndrome in children and adolescents. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **12**: 1468-1473 [PMID: 24486406 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2014.01.031]
- 19 **Kovacic K**, Williams S, Li BU, Chelimsky G, Miranda A. High prevalence of nausea in children with pain-associated functional gastrointestinal disorders: are Rome criteria applicable? *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2013; **57**: 311-315 [PMID: 23591912 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0b013e3182964203]
- 20 **Suzuki H**, Hibi T. Overlap syndrome of functional dyspepsia and irritable bowel syndrome - are both diseases mutually exclusive? *J Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2011; **17**: 360-365 [PMID: 22148104 DOI: 10.5056/jnm.2011.17.4.360]
- 21 **Piacentino D**, Cantarini R, Alfonsi M, Badiali D, Pallotta N, Biondi M, Corazzari ES. Psychopathological features of irritable bowel syndrome patients with and without functional dyspepsia: a cross sectional study. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2011; **11**: 94 [PMID: 21871075 DOI: 10.1186/1471-230X-11-94]
- 22 **Schurman JV**, Hunter HL, Friesen CA. Conceptualization and treatment of chronic abdominal pain in pediatric gastroenterology practice. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2010; **50**: 32-37 [PMID: 19915496 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0b013e3181ae3610]
- 23 **Gijbbers CF**, Benninga MA, Schweizer JJ, Kneepkens CM, Vergouwe Y, Büller HA. Validation of the Rome III criteria and alarm symptoms for recurrent abdominal pain in children. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2014; **58**: 779-785 [PMID: 24866784 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0000000000000319]
- 24 **Rosen JM**, Cocjin JT, Schurman JV, Colombo JM, Friesen CA. Visceral hypersensitivity and electromechanical dysfunction as therapeutic targets in pediatric functional dyspepsia. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **5**: 122-138 [PMID: 25133041 DOI: 10.4292/wjgpt.v5.i3.122]
- 25 **Friesen CA**, Schurman JV, Colombo JM, Abdel-Rahman SM. Eosinophils and mast cells as therapeutic targets in pediatric functional dyspepsia. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2013; **4**: 86-96 [PMID: 24199024 DOI: 10.4292/wjgpt.v4.i4.86]
- 26 **Lee YJ**, Park KS. Irritable bowel syndrome: emerging paradigm in pathophysiology. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 2456-2469 [PMID: 24627583 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i10.2456]
- 27 **Schurman JV**, Danda CE, Friesen CA, Hyman PE, Simon SD, Cocjin JT. Variations in psychological profile among children with recurrent abdominal pain. *J Clin Psychol Med Settings* 2008; **15**: 241-251 [PMID: 19104969 DOI: 10.1007/s10880-008-9120-0]
- 28 **Walker LS**, Sherman AL, Bruehl S, Garber J, Smith CA. Functional abdominal pain patient subtypes in childhood predict functional gastrointestinal disorders with chronic pain and psychiatric comorbidities in adolescence and adulthood. *Pain* 2012; **153**: 1798-1806 [PMID: 22721910 DOI: 10.1016/j.pain.2012.03.026]
- 29 **Schurman JV**, Friesen CA. Identifying potential pediatric chronic abdominal pain triggers using ecological momentary assessment. *Clin Practice Pediatric Psychol* 2015 [DOI: 10.1037/cppp0000095]
- 30 **Magnusson J**, Lin XP, Dahlman-Höglund A, Hanson L LA, Teleme E, Magnusson O, Bengtsson U, Ahlstedt S. Seasonal intestinal inflammation in patients with birch pollen allergy. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2003; **112**: 45-50 [PMID: 12847478]
- 31 **Shaddy RE**, Denne SC. Clinical report--guidelines for the ethical conduct of studies to evaluate drugs in pediatric populations. *Pediatrics* 2010; **125**: 850-860 [PMID: 20351010 DOI: 10.1542/peds.2010-0082]
- 32 **Royal College of Paediatrics and Child Health (RCPCH) Ethics Advisory Committee**. Guidelines for the ethical conduct of medical research involving children. *Arch Dis Child* 2000; **82**: 117-182 [DOI: 10.1136/adc.82.2.177]
- 33 **Tolbert J**, Goldman JL, Kauffman RE, Abdel-Rahman SM. The creating hope act: what's old is new again. *Pediatr Health Med Ther* 2014; **5**: 49-57 [DOI: 10.2147/PHMT.S46069]
- 34 **Wagner J**, Abdel-Rahman SM. Pediatric pharmacokinetics. *Pediatr Rev* 2013; **34**: 258-269 [PMID: 23729775]
- 35 **Rodriguez W**, Selen A, Avant D, Chaurasia C, Crescenzi T, Gieser G, Di Giacinto J, Huang SM, Lee P, Mathis L, Murphy D, Murphy S, Roberts R, Sachs HC, Suarez S, Tandon V, Upoor RS. Improving pediatric dosing through pediatric initiatives: what we have learned. *Pediatrics* 2008; **121**: 530-539 [PMID: 18310202 DOI: 10.1542/peds.2007-1529]
- 36 **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services Food and Drug Administration**. Center for Drug Evaluation and Research (CDER). General clinical pharmacology considerations for pediatric studies for drugs and biological products 2014. Available from: URL: <http://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidancecomplanceregulatoryinformation/guidances/ucm425885.pdf>
- 37 **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services Food and Drug Administration**. Center for Drug Evaluation and Research (CDER). Guidance for industry population pharmacokinetics. December, 2014
- 38 **Abdel-Rahman SM**, Reed MD, Wells TG, Kearns GL. Considerations in the rational design and conduct of phase I/II pediatric clinical trials: avoiding the problems and pitfalls. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **81**: 483-494 [PMID: 17329988]
- 39 **Benjamin DK**, Smith PB, Jadhav P, Gobburu JV, Murphy MD, Hasselblad V, Baker-Smith C, Califf RM, Li JS. Pediatric antihypertensive trial failures: analysis of end points and dose range. *Hypertension* 2008; **51**: 834-840 [PMID: 18332283 DOI: 10.1161/HYPERTENSIONAHA.107.104950]

- 40 **Irvine EJ**, Whitehead WE, Chey WD, Matsueda K, Shaw M, Talley NJ, Veldhuyzen van Zanten SJ. Design of treatment trials for functional gastrointestinal disorders. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 1538-1551 [PMID: 16678567]
- 41 **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services Food and Drug Administration**, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research (CDER). Patient-reported outcome measures: Use in medical product development to support labeling claims 2009. Available from: URL: <http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/Guidances/UCM193282.pdf>
- 42 **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services Food and Drug Administration**, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research (CDER). Irritable bowel syndrome- clinical evaluation of drugs for treatment 2012. Available from: URL: <http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/.../Guidances/UCM205269.pdf>
- 43 **Huertas-Ceballos A**, Logan S, Bennett C, Macarthur C. Pharmacological interventions for recurrent abdominal pain (RAP) and irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) in childhood. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2008; **1**: CD003017 [PMID: 18254013]
- 44 **Symon DN**, Russell G. Double blind placebo controlled trial of pizotifen syrup in the treatment of abdominal migraine. *Arch Dis Child* 1995; **72**: 48-50 [PMID: 7717738]
- 45 **Kline RM**, Kline JJ, Di Palma J GJ. Enteric-coated, pH-dependent peppermint oil capsules for the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome in children. *J Pediatr* 2001; **138**: 125-128 [PMID: 11148527]
- 46 **See MC**, Birnbaum AH, Schechter CB, Goldenberg MM, Benkov KJ. Double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of famotidine in children with abdominal pain and dyspepsia: global and quantitative assessment. *Dig Dis Sci* 2001; **46**: 985-992 [PMID: 11341669]
- 47 **Friesen CA**, Kearns GL, Andre L, Neustrom M, Roberts CC, Abdel-Rahman SM. Clinical efficacy and pharmacokinetics of montelukast in dyspeptic children with duodenal eosinophilia. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2004; **38**: 343-351 [PMID: 15076638]
- 48 **Bahar RJ**, Collins BS, Steinmetz B, Ament ME. Double-blind placebo-controlled trial of amitriptyline for the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome in adolescents. *J Pediatr* 2008; **152**: 685-689 [PMID: 18410774 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpeds]
- 49 **Sadeghian M**, Farahmand F, Fallahi GH, Abbasi A. Cyproheptadine for the treatment of functional abdominal pain in childhood: a double-blinded randomized placebo-controlled trial. *Minerva Pediatr* 2008; **60**: 1367-1374 [PMID: 18971897]
- 50 **Saps M**, Youssef N, Miranda A, Nurko S, Hyman P, Cocjin J, Di Lorenzo C. Multicenter, randomized, placebo-controlled trial of amitriptyline in children with functional gastrointestinal disorders. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **137**: 1261-1269 [PMID: 19596010 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.06.060]
- 51 **Pourmoghaddas Z**, Saneian H, Roohafza H, Gholamrezaei A. Mebeverine for pediatric functional abdominal pain: a randomized, placebo-controlled trial. *Biomed Res Int* 2014; **2014**: 191026 [PMID: 25089264 DOI: 10.1155/2014/191026]
- 52 **Schurman JV**, Wu YP, Grayson P, Friesen CA. A pilot study to assess the efficacy of biofeedback-assisted relaxation training as an adjunct treatment for pediatric functional dyspepsia associated with duodenal eosinophilia. *J Pediatr Psychol* 2010; **35**: 837-847 [PMID: 20185416 DOI: 10.1093/jpepsy/jsq010]
- 53 **Proschan MA**. Sample size re-estimation in clinical trials. *Biom J* 2009; **51**: 348-357 [PMID: 19358221]
- 54 **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services Food and Drug Administration**, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research (CDER). Enrichment strategies for clinical trials to support approval of human drugs and biological products 2012. Available from: URL: <http://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidancecomplianceregulatoryinformation/guidances/ucm332181.pdf>
- 55 **Willke RJ**, Zheng Z, Subedi P, Althin R, Mullins CD. From concepts, theory, and evidence of heterogeneity of treatment effects to methodological approaches: a primer. *BMC Med Res Methodol* 2012; **12**: 185 [PMID: 23234603 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2288-12-185]

P- Reviewer: Actis GC, Tsai HH **S- Editor:** Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor:** Li D



Pharmaceutical management of hepatitis B and C in liver and kidney transplant recipients

Chrysoula Pipili, Evangelos Cholongitas

Chrysoula Pipili, Division of Nephrology, Royal Infirmary of Edinburgh, Edinburgh EH16 4SA, Scotland, United Kingdom

Evangelos Cholongitas, 4th Department of Internal Medicine, Medical School of Aristotle University, Hippokraton General Hospital of Thessaloniki, 54642 Thessaloniki, Greece

Author contributions: Authors contributed equally in writing and editing of the article.

Conflict-of-interest statement: There are no conflicts of interest.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Evangelos Cholongitas, Assistant Professor of Internal Medicine, 4th Department of Internal Medicine, Medical School of Aristotle University, Hippokraton General Hospital of Thessaloniki, 49, Konstantinopoleos Street, 54642 Thessaloniki, Greece. cholongitas@yahoo.gr
Telephone: +30-69-36378903
Fax: +30-23-10992940

Received: May 16, 2015
Peer-review started: May 18, 2015
First decision: June 24, 2015
Revised: July 5, 2015
Accepted: July 29, 2015
Article in press: August 3, 2015
Published online: November 6, 2015

Abstract

The combination of hepatitis B immune globulin with entecavir or tenofovir (at least for a certain period of

time) seems to be the most reasonable prophylaxis against recurrent hepatitis B after liver transplantation. Entecavir represents an attractive option for treatment of naïve kidney transplant recipients, because of its high efficacy and the low rates of resistance. However antiviral treatment should be individualized in the view of kidney function and the previous resistance. To date, new captivating therapeutic strategies could make interferon-free regimens viable for treatment of hepatitis C virus positive liver transplant recipients. The recent combinations of sofosbuvir with simeprevir or daclatasvir or ledipasvir plus/minus ribavirin have boosted the on treatment and sustained virological response to rates approaching 100% within liver transplant recipients with recurrent chronic hepatitis C (CHC). Preliminary data showed that the second generation direct oral antivirals could result to high treatment rates of recurrent CHC in kidney transplant recipients as well. Ongoing studies will clarify the optimal treatment of recurrent CHC in kidney transplant recipients.

Key words: Viral hepatitis; Hepatitis C recurrence; Hepatitis B; Hepatitis C; Liver transplantation; Kidney transplantation hepatitis B recurrence

© **The Author(s) 2015.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Emphasis should be placed in the appropriate nucleos(tide) analog selection for prevention of recurrent hepatitis B virus post liver and kidney transplantation; Second generation direct acting oral antivirals have demonstrated sustained virological response rates approaching 100%, minimal side effects and drug interactions on liver transplant recipients with chronic hepatitis C virus (HCV); Preliminary data showed outstanding response of kidney transplant recipients with chronic HCV to direct acting oral antivirals.

Pipili C, Cholongitas E. Pharmaceutical management of hepatitis

B and C in liver and kidney transplant recipients. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(4): 105-110 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i4/105.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i4.105>

INTRODUCTION

Treatment of chronic hepatitis B (CHB) and chronic hepatitis C (CHC) infection in patients who have undergone liver or kidney transplantation represents a challenge for physicians. Efforts to develop effective antiviral medications have been robust over the last decade and the data review showed clinical outcomes comparable with that of the non-infected transplant recipients^[1-4].

Recurrent hepatitis B post liver transplantation (Table 1)

Potent nucleos(t)ide analogues (NAs) with high-genetic barrier should be given in all patients with hepatitis B virus (HBV) decompensated cirrhosis in order to improve the liver function and achieve undetectable HBV DNA at the time of liver transplantation (LT)^[5]. It is known that NAs prevent HBV recurrence at an acceptable level and lead to long-term survival after LT^[6]. Furthermore, the combination of NAs with low-dose hepatitis B immune globulin (HBIG) can prevent HBV recurrence in more than 80% of LT recipients on long-term^[6]. However, long-term HBIG administration requires additional measurement for hepatitis B surface antibody titers and it has been proven inconvenient and costly. Thus, various HBIG-elimination prophylactic regimes have been tried, resulting in encouraging efficiency results similar to continuing HBIG^[7,8].

A systematic review and two studies carried out by our team^[9-11] favored the use of HBIG with a high genetic barrier NAs instead of HBIG and lamivudine combined prophylaxis against HBV recurrence after LT^[9], suggesting that the maintenance monotherapy with newer NAs [entecavir (ETV) or tenofovir (TDF)] was effective after discontinuation of HBIG prophylaxis^[10]. Indeed, the most recent prospective study coming from our group^[11] demonstrated that ETV or TDF monoprophyllaxis following combination with low-dose HBIG six months post LT was highly effective and safe in twenty-eight cirrhotic patients with undetectable HBV DNA at the time of LT. Nevertheless, the long-term immunosuppressive therapy may cause considerable renal dysfunction, cardiovascular disease and cancer, in the context of HBV recurrence, that account for significant late mortality^[12]. Interestingly, telbivudine administration for prophylaxis of HBV recurrence can improve renal function after LT^[13,14].

Generally, some form of HBV prophylaxis should be continued indefinitely after LT^[15]. Based on our recent review, that summarizes all the available relevant current data, the choice of therapy should be individualized in regards to patient's HBV-DNA levels before LT and the previous exposure to NA(s). LT recipients with a low risk

of HBV recurrence (*i.e.*, undetectable HBV DNA levels before LT, which represents the majority of HBV positive candidates), might discontinue HBIG and maintain on long-term oral antiviral therapy^[15]. Patients with high risk of HBV recurrence (high pretransplant HBV DNA levels, HIV coinfection and preexisting drug resistance or high risk of noncompliance to antiviral therapy) may need a more careful and close management^[16]. Only few studies have considered HBIG-free prophylactic regimens from the first post-operative day; *i.e.*, the administration of newer NAs (ETV or TDF). In keeping with low cost, these studies^[9,17] have given encouraging results, but this approach is still challenging and controversial.

Recurrent hepatitis B post kidney transplantation (Table 1)

Prior to the advent of NAs, HBV infection had such a severe negative impact on kidney transplantation (KT)^[1], that many centres regarded HBsAg seropositivity as a contraindication for KT. In the era of NAs administration the 5-10 year survival rate of KT recipients with CHB is approaching that of HBsAg negative patients^[1,18]. The introduction of NAs represents a major breakthrough in the field of KT accounting for minor liver complications, effective viral load suppression and better patient survival without compromising the kidney allograft outcome^[19]. Nevertheless, the management of KT recipients with CHB should take into account the special therapeutic limitations and the features of an ideal regimen of this patient group. The limitations of NA use include nephrotoxicity, reported mostly after adefovir and tenofovir administration, high resistance rates after long term lamivudine use, and allograft function decline following interferon use^[19,20].

The data on NA administration in KT recipients are scarce. Usually, KT candidates are started on antivirals before KT and carry on the same regimen post-KT unless liver disease deterioration or resistance accrues. Prophylactic antiviral therapy commenced prior to KT seems to better prevent the HBV related complications post KT^[21]. In this case, ETV should be the first line therapy for KT recipients because of the high efficacy and safety profile and the low rates of resistance^[20,22]. TDF is proposed as the best choice for cases with creatinine clearance > 60 mL/min, or history of resistance to lamivudine^[23], while telbivudine should be considered for CHB patients with low viremia if the aim is the amelioration of glomerular filtration rate^[13,24,25].

Recurrent hepatitis C post liver transplantation (Tables 1 and 2)

The rate of HCV recurrence has been extremely high in patients with HCV viremia at the time of liver transplantation, resulting to 70% decompensation (comparing with 10% in other immunocompetent groups), two thirds of graft failure and high death rates^[26]. The introduction of direct oral acting antivirals (DAAs) has revolutionized the treatment of patients with

Table 1 Recommendations for the management of hepatitis B and C infection after liver or kidney transplantation

Chronic hepatitis B	Post-liver transplantation	Prophylaxis and treatment	HBIG (for short term) plus NA ¹
	Post-kidney transplantation		NAs ¹
Chronic hepatitis C	Post-liver transplantation	No prophylaxis	Sofosbuvir based regimens or "3D" regimen plus RBV (for genotypes 1 and 4)
	Post-kidney transplantation		Newer direct oral antivirals plus/minus RBV (studies are ongoing) ²

¹Frontline analogues are considered entecavir or tenofovir in renal proper doses (consider telbivudine in the presence of renal dysfunction); ²Interferon is contraindicated due to the high risk of allograft rejection. HBIG: Hepatitis B immune globulin; NAs: Nucleos(t)ide analogues; 3D: Paritaprevir (plus ritonavir)/ombitasvir/dasabuvir for genotype 1 and paritaprevir (plus ritonavir)/ombitasvir for genotype 4; RBV: Ribavirin.

CHC and represents a major breakthrough especially for difficult to treat populations, involving the patients with cirrhosis Child-Pugh stage B and C, HCV genotype 1 and previous intolerance or non-response to interferon (IFN)-based therapy^[3]. First generation DAAs (*i.e.*, telaprevir and boceprevir) improved significantly the sustained virological response (SVR) but their common interactions with the calcineurin inhibitors and the poor tolerance prevented their wide implementation in LT recipients. Various IFN-free combinations, including potent second generation DAAs with non-overlapping resistance profiles, have provided rapid and potent suppression of viral replication. The current available reports^[27,28] indicated that the undetectable HCV RNA peritransplant has led to successful prevention of recurrent CHC post LT. In this line, the new DAA combinations have ensured excellent safety with minimal CNI interactions on LT recipients with recurrent CHC after LT (with the good results to be extended to LT recipients with fibrosing cholestatic hepatitis as well). The recent combinations of sofosbuvir with simeprevir or daclatasvir or ledipasvir plus/minus ribavirin (RBV) have boosted the SVR response to rates approaching 100% within LT recipients with CHC recurrence^[29-31]. Similarly, SVR and HCV recurrence prevention was reported in a second LT recipient with decompensated cirrhosis without pre-LT SVR commenced on an novel antiviral combination immediately post-LT^[32].

The latest data derived from the Coral study^[33] showed 97% SVR at four and 12 wk after four-drug administration: Paritaprevir (potent NS3/4A protease inhibitor), ombitasvir (potent NS5A inhibitor), dasabuvir (non-nucleoside NS5B polymerase inhibitor) and RBV. The Cosmos study group reported complete treatment in 27 LT recipients with CHC genotype 1 by using sofosbuvir plus simeprevir for 12 wk underlining minor side effects such as mild transient rash, indirect hyperbilirubinemia and cyclosporine withdrawal (due to simeprevir interaction)^[34]. Based on all these striking results, the European Association for the Study of the Liver^[35] recommends that: (1) all patients with CHC listed for LT should receive antiviral therapy in order to prevent graft infection after LT; and (2) HCV recurrence post LT should be treated with one of the above antiviral combinations, irrespectively of the severity of liver disease: Sofosbuvir and RBV for 12 wk in genotype 2; fixed dose sofosbuvir, ledipasvir and RBV for 12 wk in

genotypes 1, 4, 5, 6; sofosbuvir, daclatasvir plus RBV for 12 wk in all genotypes. In addition, patients without cirrhosis or with Child-Pugh class A post-LT could be also treated with: (1) sofosbuvir and simeprevir plus RBV if there are genotype 1, 4; and (2) paritaprevir/ombitasvir/dasabuvir and RBV for 12 wk if they are genotype 1b and for 24 wk if they are genotype 1a with cirrhosis; if they are genotype 4: Paritaprevir/ombitasvir plus RBV for 12 wk in non-cirrhotics or 24 wk in cirrhotics.

Recurrent hepatitis C post kidney transplantation (Tables 1 and 2)

CHC has been related with poor patient and graft survival after KT that corresponded to the pre-existing HCV infection before KT (the level of HCV RNA and the liver complications)^[36,37]. Consequently, substantial attention should be applied to treat HCV infection before KT. Very few studies reported the use of first generation DAAs (boceprevir and telaprevir) on the top of reduced dose IFN and RBV in kidney transplant candidates. The results are promising in regards to efficacy, but side effects such as anemia have been still of concern^[38-40]. The new DAAs administered as IFN- and RBV-free combinations might be proved the treatment of choice against HCV infection in KT patients. However DAA-efficacy, -tolerability and effect on graft function still warrant thorough evaluation. So far, the use of new antivirals in KT recipients has been reported solely in few cases and is being tested in two ongoing trials^[41-43]. Fibrosing cholestatic hepatitis was successfully treated either with sofosbuvir combined with pegylated-IFN and RBV^[41] or with sofosbuvir and simeprevir without IFN or RBV in combined kidney-liver transplant recipients^[42]. Moreover, sofosbuvir combined with low dose RBV was efficient, presented minimum adverse events such as pruritus and myalgia and did not require tacrolimus dose adjustments in eight KT recipients with HCV genotype 1, creatinine clearance higher than 30 mL/min and hemoglobin higher than 10 g/dL^[44]. The antivirals tested in the ongoing trial among KT recipients with HCV are sofosbuvir and ledipasvir and no initial data have been published yet^[43]. Concerns emerge in regards to performance of sofosbuvir in recipients with kidney function deterioration, since sofosbuvir is renally excreted and is not appropriate for creatinine clearance below 30 mL/min. Initiation of sofosbuvir - based regimens post KT once glomerular filtration rate > 30 mL/min as a prophylaxis could be

Table 2 Main characteristics of the approved direct acting antivirals that are currently used in interferon-free regimens for the treatment of chronic hepatitis C

Name	Category, antiviral activity	Doses	Adjustments
Simeprevir	Second-wave NS3/4A protease inhibitor, genotypes 1 and 4	150 mg daily, orally	No renal adjustment is needed Contraindicated in patients with Child-Pugh B/C Contraindicated cyclosporine co-administration Only in glomerular filtration rate > 30 mL/min
Sofosbuvir	NS5B RNA Polymerase nucleotide inhibitor, pangenotypic	400 mg daily, orally	No CNI adjustment is needed No renal adjustment is needed No CNI adjustment is needed ¹ No renal adjustment is needed
Daclatasvir	NS5A inhibitor, genotypes 1, 3 and 4	60 mg daily, orally	No renal adjustment is needed No CNI adjustment is needed
Ledipasvir	NS5A inhibitor genotypes 1, 3 and 4	90 mg daily, orally (fixed dose with sofosbuvir)	No renal adjustment is needed ¹ No CNI adjustment is needed
Dasabuvir	Non-NUC NS5B polymerase inhibitor genotype 1	250 mg every 12 h	No renal adjustment is needed
Paritaprevir/Ritonavir/Ombitasvir	Ritonavir boosted NS3/4A protease inhibitor/NS5A inhibitor, genotypes 1 and 4	75/50/12.5 mg x 2 once daily	No safety data in Child-Pugh B, contraindicated in Child-Pugh C Cyclosporine: 20% of pretreatment total daily dose; tacrolimus: 0.2 mg/72 h or 0.5 mg once weekly

¹Ledipasvir in combination with sofosbuvir should not be given in patients with glomerular filtration rate < 30 mL/min. CNI: Calcineurin inhibitor.

one option. Nevertheless, recent studies have reported acceptable safety and tolerance profile of sofosbuvir in CHC patients with end stage renal disease (glomerular filtration rate < 30 mL/min) or under hemodialysis^[45].

CONCLUSION

Substantial progress is acknowledged in the field of antiviral treatment of HBV and HCV positive LT recipients, even if the existing data are preliminary. The applications of novel antiviral combinations are viable in concept, but provisionally under way for HBV and HCV positive KT recipients. However, the high antiviral cost, the drug resistance and the nephrotoxicity will be barriers to optimal therapy access.

REFERENCES

- 1 **Yap DY**, Tang CS, Yung S, Choy BY, Yuen MF, Chan TM. Long-term outcome of renal transplant recipients with chronic hepatitis B infection-impact of antiviral treatments. *Transplantation* 2010; **90**: 325-330 [PMID: 20562676 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0b013e3181e5b811]
- 2 **Degertekin B**, Han SH, Keffe EB, Schiff ER, Luketic VA, Brown RS, Emre S, Soldevila-Pico C, Reddy KR, Ishitani MB, Tran TT, Pruett TL, Lok AS. Impact of virologic breakthrough and HBIG regimen on hepatitis B recurrence after liver transplantation. *Am J Transplant* 2010; **10**: 1823-1833 [PMID: 20346062 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-6143.2010.03046.x]
- 3 **Gane EJ**, Agarwal K. Directly acting antivirals (DAAs) for the treatment of chronic hepatitis C virus infection in liver transplant patients: "a flood of opportunity". *Am J Transplant* 2014; **14**: 994-1002 [PMID: 24730431 DOI: 10.1111/ajt.12714]
- 4 **Aqel BA**, Pungpapong S, Werner KT, Chervenak A, Rakela J, Watt K, Leise M, Murphy J, Henry T, Ryland K. The use of Sofosbuvir and Simeprevir to treat HCV G1 in the liver transplant setting: The experience of three transplant settings. *Hepatology* 2014; **60** (S4): 206A
- 5 **Papatheodoridis GV**, Cholongitas E, Archimandritis AJ, Burroughs AK. Current management of hepatitis B virus infection before and after liver transplantation. *Liver Int* 2009; **29**: 1294-1305 [PMID: 19619264 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2009.02085.x]
- 6 **Honaker MR**, Shokouh-Amiri MH, Vera SR, Alloway RR, Grewal HP, Hardinger KL, Kizilisik AT, Bagous T, Trofe J, Stratta RJ, Egidi MF, Gaber AO. Evolving experience of hepatitis B virus prophylaxis in liver transplantation. *Transpl Infect Dis* 2002; **4**: 137-143 [PMID: 12421458 DOI: 10.1034/j.1399-3062.2002.01012.x]
- 7 **Freshwater DA**, Dudley T, Cane P, Mutimer DJ. Viral persistence after liver transplantation for hepatitis B virus: a cross-sectional study. *Transplantation* 2008; **85**: 1105-1111 [PMID: 18431229 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0b013e31816a342a]
- 8 **Teperman LW**, Poordad F, Bzowej N, Martin P, Pungpapong S, Schiano T, Flaherty J, Dinh P, Rossi S, Subramanian GM, Spivey J. Randomized trial of emtricitabine/tenofovir disoproxil fumarate after hepatitis B immunoglobulin withdrawal after liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2013; **19**: 594-601 [PMID: 23447407 DOI: 10.1002/lt.23628]
- 9 **Cholongitas E**, Papatheodoridis GV. High genetic barrier nucleos(t)ide analogue(s) for prophylaxis from hepatitis B virus recurrence after liver transplantation: a systematic review. *Am J Transplant* 2013; **13**: 353-362 [PMID: 23137006]
- 10 **Cholongitas E**, Vasiliadis T, Antoniadis N, Goulis I, Papanikolaou V, Akriviadis E. Hepatitis B prophylaxis post liver transplantation with newer nucleos(t)ide analogues after hepatitis B immunoglobulin discontinuation. *Transpl Infect Dis* 2012; **14**: 479-487 [PMID: 22624695 DOI: 10.1111/j.1399-3062.2012.00741.x]
- 11 **Cholongitas E**, Goulis I, Antoniadis N, Fouzas I, Imvrios G, Papanikolaou V, Akriviadis E. New nucleos(t)ide analogue monoprophyllaxis after cessation of hepatitis B immunoglobulin is effective against hepatitis B recurrence. *Transpl Int* 2014; **27**: 1022-1028 [PMID: 24909714 DOI: 10.1111/tri.12370]
- 12 **Åberg F**, Isoniemi H, Höckerstedt K. Long-term results of liver transplantation. *Scand J Surg* 2011; **100**: 14-21 [PMID: 21482501]
- 13 **Cholongitas E**, Vasiliadis T, Goulis I, Fouzas I, Antoniadis N, Papanikolaou V, Akriviadis E. Telbivudine is associated with improvement of renal function in patients transplanted for HBV liver disease. *J Viral Hepat* 2015; **22**: 574-580 [PMID: 25385239 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.12362]
- 14 **Perrella A**, Lanza AG, Pisaniello D, DiCostanzo G, Calise F,

- Cuomo O. Telbivudine prophylaxis for hepatitis B virus recurrence after liver transplantation improves renal function. *Transplant Proc* 2014; **46**: 2319-2321 [PMID: 25242778]
- 15 **Pipili C**, Cholongitas E. Management of patients with hepatitis B and C before and after liver and kidney transplantation. *World J Hepatol* 2014; **6**: 315-325 [PMID: 24868325 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v6.i5.315]
- 16 **Roche B**, Samuel D. Prevention of hepatitis B virus reinfection in liver transplant recipients. *Intervirology* 2014; **57**: 196-201 [PMID: 25034488 DOI: 10.1159/000360944]
- 17 **Fung J**, Chan SC, Cheung C, Yuen MF, Chok KS, Sharr W, Chan AC, Cheung TT, Seto WK, Fan ST, Lai CL, Lo CM. Oral nucleoside/nucleotide analogs without hepatitis B immune globulin after liver transplantation for hepatitis B. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2013; **108**: 942-948 [PMID: 23629601 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2013.111]
- 18 **Chan TM**, Fang GX, Tang CS, Cheng IK, Lai KN, Ho SK. Preemptive lamivudine therapy based on HBV DNA level in HBsAg-positive kidney allograft recipients. *Hepatology* 2002; **36**: 1246-1252 [PMID: 12395336 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2002.36156]
- 19 **Pipili CL**, Papatheodoridis GV, Cholongitas EC. Treatment of hepatitis B in patients with chronic kidney disease. *Kidney Int* 2013; **84**: 880-885 [PMID: 23783238 DOI: 10.1038/ki.2013.249]
- 20 **Pipili C**, Cholongitas E, Papatheodoridis G. Review article: nucleos(t)ide analogues in patients with chronic hepatitis B virus infection and chronic kidney disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **39**: 35-46 [PMID: 24299322 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12538]
- 21 **Kidney Disease Improving Global Outcomes (KDIGO) Transplant Work Group**. KDIGO clinical practice guideline for the care of kidney transplant recipients. Suppl 3 ed. 2009: S1-S155
- 22 **Cho JH**, Lim JH, Park GY, Kim JS, Kang YJ, Kwon O, Choi JY, Park SH, Kim YL, Kim HK, Huh S, Kim CD. Successful withdrawal of antiviral treatment in kidney transplant recipients with chronic hepatitis B viral infection. *Transpl Infect Dis* 2014; **16**: 295-303 [PMID: 24628837 DOI: 10.1111/tid.12202]
- 23 **Daudé M**, Rostaing L, Sauné K, Lavyssière L, Basse G, Esposito L, Guitard J, Izopet J, Alric L, Kamar N. Tenofovir therapy in hepatitis B virus-positive solid-organ transplant recipients. *Transplantation* 2011; **91**: 916-920 [PMID: 21325995 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0b013e3182100f59]
- 24 **Lai CL**, Gane E, Liaw YF, Hsu CW, Thongsawat S, Wang Y, Chen Y, Heathcote EJ, Rasenack J, Bzowej N, Naoumov NV, Di Bisceglie AM, Zeuzem S, Moon YM, Goodman Z, Chao G, Constance BF, Brown NA. Telbivudine versus lamivudine in patients with chronic hepatitis B. *N Engl J Med* 2007; **357**: 2576-2588 [PMID: 18094378 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa066422]
- 25 **Gane EJ**, Deray G, Liaw YF, Lim SG, Lai CL, Rasenack J, Wang Y, Papatheodoridis G, Di Bisceglie A, Buti M, Samuel D, Uddin A, Bosset S, Trylesinski A. Telbivudine improves renal function in patients with chronic hepatitis B. *Gastroenterology* 2014; **146**: 138-146.e5 [PMID: 24067879 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.09.031]
- 26 **Berenguer M**, Prieto M, Rayón JM, Mora J, Pastor M, Ortiz V, Carrasco D, San Juan F, Burguño MD, Mir J, Berenguer J. Natural history of clinically compensated hepatitis C virus-related graft cirrhosis after liver transplantation. *Hepatology* 2000; **32**: 852-858 [PMID: 11003634]
- 27 **Curry MP**, Forns X, Chung RT, Terrault NA, Brown R, Fenkel JM, Gordon F, O'Leary J, Kuo A, Schiano T, Everson G, Schiff E, Befeler A, Gane E, Saab S, McHutchison JG, Subramanian GM, Symonds WT, Denning J, McNair L, Arterburn S, Svarovskaia E, Moonka D, Afdhal N. Sofosbuvir and ribavirin prevent recurrence of HCV infection after liver transplantation: an open-label study. *Gastroenterology* 2015; **148**: 100-107.e1 [PMID: 25261839 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.09.023]
- 28 **Mandorfer M**, Kozbial K, Freissmuth C, Schwabl P, Stättermayer AF, Reiberger T, Beinhardt S, Schwarzer R, Trauner M, Ferlitsch A, Hofer H, Peck-Radosavljevic M, Ferenci P. Interferon-free regimens for chronic hepatitis C overcome the effects of portal hypertension on virological responses. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2015; **42**: 707-718 [PMID: 26179884 DOI: 10.1111/apt.13315]
- 29 **Pungpapong S**, Aqel BA, Koning L, Murphy JL, Henry TM, Ryland KL, Yataco ML, Satyanarayana R, Rosser BG, Vargas HE, Charlton MR, Keaveny AP. Multicenter experience using telaprevir or boceprevir with peginterferon and ribavirin to treat hepatitis C genotype 1 after liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2013; **19**: 690-700 [PMID: 23696372 DOI: 10.1002/lt.23669]
- 30 **Conti F**, Lebray P, Schielke A, Regnault H, Thabut D, Eyraud D, Poujol-Robert A, Chazouilhès O, Calmus Y. Sofosbuvir/Daclatasvir Therapy for Recurrent Hepatitis C after Liver Transplantation: Preliminary report from the parisian centers. *Hepatology* 2014; **60** (S4): 208A
- 31 **Reddy KR**, Everson G, Flamm S. Ledipasvir/Sofosbuvir with Ribavirin for the Treatment of HCV in Patients with Post Transplant Recurrence: Preliminary Results of a Prospective, Multicenter Study. *Hepatology* 2014; **60** (S4): 200A
- 32 **Donato MF**, Monico S, Malinverno F, Aghemo A, Maggioni M, Reggiani P, Colombo M. Bridging all oral DAA therapy from wait time to post-liver transplant to improve HCV eradication? *Liver Int* 2015; **35**: 1-4 [PMID: 25074044]
- 33 **Kwo PY**, Mantry PS, Coakley E, Te HS, Vargas HE, Brown R, Gordon F, Levitsky J, Terrault NA, Burton JR, Xie W, Setze C, Badri P, Pilot-Matias T, Vilchez RA, Forns X. An interferon-free antiviral regimen for HCV after liver transplantation. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **371**: 2375-2382 [PMID: 25386767]
- 34 **Punzalan C**, Barry C, Zachariaw I, Rodrigues J, Metha S, Bozorgzadeh A, Barnard G. Successful treatment of post liver transplant patients with genotype 1 hepatitis C virus with sofosbuvir and simeprevir. *Hepatology* 2014; **60** (4Suppl): 688A
- 35 **EASL**. Recommendations on treatment of hepatitis c 2015. Available from: URL: <http://www.easl.eu/research/our-contributions/clinical-practice-guidelines/detail/recommendations-on-treatment-of-hepatitis-c-2015/report/5>
- 36 **Mahmoud IM**, Elhabashi AF, Elsayy E, El-Husseini AA, Sheha GE, Sobh MA. The impact of hepatitis C virus viremia on renal graft and patient survival: a 9-year prospective study. *Am J Kidney Dis* 2004; **43**: 131-139 [PMID: 14712436]
- 37 **Liu CH**, Kao JH. Treatment of hepatitis C virus infection in patients with end-stage renal disease. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **26**: 228-239 [PMID: 21261711]
- 38 **Butt AA**, Skanderson M, McGinnis KA, Ahuja T, Bryce CL, Barnato AE, Chang CC. Impact of hepatitis C virus infection and other comorbidities on survival in patients on dialysis. *J Viral Hepat* 2007; **14**: 688-696 [PMID: 17875003 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2007.00853.x]
- 39 **Treitel M**, Marbury T, Preston RA, Triantafyllou I, Feely W, O'Mara E, Kasseria C, Gupta S, Hughes EA. Single-dose pharmacokinetics of boceprevir in subjects with impaired hepatic or renal function. *Clin Pharmacokinet* 2012; **51**: 619-628 [PMID: 22799589 DOI: 10.1007/BF03261935]
- 40 **Mauss S**, Hueppe D, Alshuth U. Renal impairment is frequent in chronic hepatitis C patients under triple therapy with telaprevir or boceprevir. *Hepatology* 2014; **59**: 46-48 [PMID: 23813604 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26602]
- 41 **Delabaudière C**, Lavyssière L, Dörr G, Muscarelli F, Danjoux M, Sallusto F, Peron JM, Bureau C, Rostaing L, Izopet J, Kamar N. Successful treatment of fibrosing cholestatic hepatitis with pegylated interferon, ribavirin and sofosbuvir after a combined kidney-liver transplantation. *Transpl Int* 2015; **28**: 255-258 [PMID: 25159822 DOI: 10.1111/tri.12428]
- 42 **Bhamidimarri K**, Guttierrez J, Grigorian A, Peyton A, Levy C, O'Brien C, Martin P. Urgent treatment with sofosbuvir based regimen for Hepatitis C genotype 1 patients with severe renal insufficiency (GFR <30 ml/min). *Hepatology* 2014; **60** (4Suppl): 688-689A
- 43 **Gilead Sciences**. Safety and Efficacy of Ledipasvir/Sofosbuvir (LDV/SOF) Fixed Dose Combination (FDC) for 12 or 24 Weeks in Kidney Transplant Recipients With Chronic HCV Infection. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US). Available from: URL: <https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02251717> NLM Identifier: NCT02251717
- 44 **Huard G**, Kim B, Patel A, Aljarallah B, Perrumalswami P, Oddin G, Geatrakas S, Ahmad J, Dieteric D, Nair V. Early safety and efficacy profiles of Renal Transplant Recipients with chronic

hepatitis C treated with Sofosbuvir and Ribavirin. *Hepatology* 2014; **60** (S4): S40A

45 **Nazario H**, Ndungu M, Modi A. Safety and efficacy of sofosbuvir

plus siveprevir without ribavirin in hepatitis C genotype 1-infected patients with end stage renal disease of GFR<30ml/min. *J Hepatol* 2015; **62**: S635

P- Reviewer: Gwak GY, Ikura Y, Montasser IF, Sharma D

S- Editor: Ji FF **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Li D



Flatography: Detection of gastrointestinal diseases by faecal gas analysis

Evelien F de Groot, Tim G de Meij, Daniel J Berkhout, Marc P van der Schee, Nanne K de Boer

Evelien F de Groot, Nanne K de Boer, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, VU University Medical Centre, 1081HZ Amsterdam, The Netherlands

Tim G de Meij, Daniel J Berkhout, Marc P van der Schee, Department of Paediatric Gastroenterology, VU University Medical Centre, 1081HZ Amsterdam, The Netherlands

Author contributions: de Groot EF and de Boer NK had the original idea and wrote the manuscript; de Meij TG, Berkhout DJ and van der Schee MP critically reviewed the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no conflict of interests.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Nanne K de Boer, MD, PhD, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, VU University Medical Centre, PO Box 7057, 1081HZ Amsterdam, The Netherlands. khn.deboer@vumc.nl
Telephone: +31-20-4440613
Fax: +31-20-4440554

Received: April 24, 2015

Peer-review started: April 25, 2015

First decision: July 10, 2015

Revised: September 1, 2015

Accepted: September 25, 2015

Article in press: September 28, 2015

Published online: November 6, 2015

Abstract

Patients presenting with gastro-intestinal symptoms might suffer from a range of possible underlying diseases. An unmet need exists for novel cost-effective,

reproducible, easy-to-perform and non-invasive tests. Hippocrates used body odours to diagnose diseases circa 460 before Christ. The art of diagnostic smelling is making a promising high-tech come-back with portable "electronic diagnostic noses". Analysis of faecal volatile organic compounds is a novel field in metabolomics with considerable potential to improve the diagnosis, phenotyping and monitoring of gastro-intestinal disease. Challenges will be to mature over the coming years by development of a standardized methodology for stool sample collection, storage, handling and analysis. Furthermore, key volatiles need to be identified to improve test accuracy and sensitivity by development of sensors tailored toward the accurate identification of disease specific volatiles. If these challenges are adequately faced, analysis of faecal volatiles has realistic potential to considerably improve screening, diagnosis and disease monitoring for gastro-intestinal diseases.

Key words: Flatography; Electronic nose; Smell; Volatile organic compounds; Gastro-intestinal diseases; Volatile metabolomics

© **The Author(s) 2015.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Analysis of faecal volatile organic compounds is a novel field in metabolomics with considerable potential to improve the diagnosis, phenotyping and monitoring of gastro-intestinal disease. Challenges will be to mature over the coming years by development of a standardized methodology for stool sample collection, storage, handling and analysis. Key volatiles need to be identified to improve test accuracy and sensitivity by development of sensors tailored toward the accurate identification of disease specific volatiles. Analysis of faecal volatiles has realistic potential to considerably improve screening, diagnosis and disease monitoring for gastro-intestinal diseases.

de Groot EF, de Meij TG, Berkhout DJ, van der Schee MP, de Boer NK. Flatography: Detection of gastrointestinal diseases

by faecal gas analysis. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(4): 111-113 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i4/111.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i4.111>

EDITORIAL

Patients presenting with gastro-intestinal symptoms might suffer from a range of possible underlying diseases. Diagnosis and monitoring of disease activity in gastro-intestinal disease (GID) are often time-consuming and carry a high burden on patients and the health care system. Laboratory tests have usually only limited specificity and sensitivity, and endoscopic evaluation of the gastro-intestinal tract is unpleasant and costly. Therefore, an unmet need exists in daily clinical practice for novel cost-effective, reproducible, easy-to-perform and non-invasive tests.

Recent advances in chemical analytical techniques may help to meet these goals. The "Father of Western medicine", the ancient Greek physician Hippocrates, used body odours to diagnose diseases already circa 460 before Christ. Centuries later, the art of diagnostic smelling is making a promising high-tech come-back since portable "electronic diagnostic noses" are currently increasingly studied in medical research setting.

The human body is a metabolic machinery and metabolites, both odorous and non-odorous, are discharged in various bodily excretions, like urine, faeces, blood and breath^[1]. The metabolome is the aggregate of the small molecules (< 2000 Dalton) that form the raw materials of a wide array of metabolic reactions, of both physiologic and pathologic metabolic pathways, and its resulting end products^[2]. Volatile organic compounds (VOCs) are the carbon based end products and in humans up to 1840 different VOCs have been described^[1]. As any disease is characterized by changes in metabolism, these molecules are potential diagnostic biomarkers for a wide range of diseases. This may be especially useful when diseases have clinically similar manifestations, but require different therapeutic approaches.

Analysis of VOCs is a rapid emerging field of basal and clinical research and two basic approaches are used. Firstly chemical analytical techniques, such as gas chromatography linked to mass spectrometry, selected ion flow tube mass spectrometry and ion mobility spectroscopy, help to identify physiochemical properties of the target volatiles in a sample. This can generate valuable insights into the pathophysiology of underlying diseases and the origins of these volatiles. Unfortunately these techniques are relatively cumbersome and costly, thereby limiting their applicability in daily clinical practice, making them primarily suitable as a research tool.

Alternatively VOCs can be analysed by broadly cross-reactive gas-sensor arrays^[3] that employ pattern recognition techniques to discriminate patterns of volatile

biomarkers, so-called smellprints^[4]. The attractiveness of this approach lies in the simultaneous assessment of a full VOC-profile by sensors that are generally low-cost, rapid and suitable as point of care tools. Since such an approach closely mimics mammalian olfaction this technique has been termed an electronic nose (eNose)^[3,5]. This technique does not allow identification of separate compounds, which is generally not a clinical limitation, since determination of individual molecules is mostly not necessary in clinical practice.

Recently published data has shown that analysis of VOCs can discriminate between patients with various diseases, like *Clostridium difficile*, colorectal cancer and inflammatory bowel disease and controls with promising accuracy^[6-11]. On theoretical grounds, VOCs in GID have several metabolic origins. Firstly exogenous, comprising dietary intake and the microbiome, supported by studies showing effect of diet on VOCs/microbiome^[12] and links between VOC and microbiome^[13]. Secondly, local from the primary affected disease site, due to inflammation of mucosa and necrosis, suggested by studies on colorectal cancer^[8] and inflammatory bowel disease^[11]. Thirdly the systemic (immunological) response, such as increased oxidative stress^[14], supported by fact that GI diseases can be detected in breath^[7] and urine^[15].

The composition of the volatile metabolome is highly depended on the analysed substrate. For example, some VOCs found in faeces might be absent in breath^[1]. At least theoretically, VOCs originating from the gastro-intestinal tract dissolve from the intestines into the bloodstream and subsequently being transported to the lungs and might consequently appear in breath. However, some VOCs are chemically unable to dissolve into the bloodstream and some VOCs will be converted by the liver or other organs. Thereby some VOCs will remain or drop below the detection level and in addition new VOCs might be produced or existing VOCs will increase^[1].

Based on the origins of faecal VOCs, analysis of VOCs emanating from faeces, so called flatography, might be the best non-invasive way of diagnosing GID as this substrate offers the most direct and integral reflection of the diseased gastrointestinal tract.

Results of several studies underline that flatography can be used for discrimination of patients with GID^[8,11]. It is an attractive technique from both the patient's and physician's perspective, as the samples can be collected non-invasively. Moreover, in common daily clinical practice, most patients already need to hand in a stool sample for culture, faecal calprotectin or other laboratory tests, therefore collection of an extra sample for faecal gas analysis will take only little effort.

Although published results are promising, this technique is currently still in development and also has some limitations. At this moment, no standard methodology is verified yet. There are no studies available on external validation and also the influences of procedure of stool sampling, storage and handling needs to be sorted out. These development pathways probably require a combination of eNose and chemical analytical techniques

to help identify target VOCs helping to guide the development of primed sensors that are suited for use in clinical practice.

To conclude, analysis of faecal VOCs is a novel field in metabolomics with considerable potential to improve the diagnosis, phenotyping and monitoring of GID. Challenges will be to mature over the coming years by development of a standardized methodology for stool sample collection, storage, handling and analysis. Furthermore, key volatiles need to be identified to improve test accuracy and sensitivity by development of sensors tailored toward the accurate identification of disease specific volatiles. If these challenges are adequately faced analysis of faecal volatiles has realistic potential to considerably improve screening, diagnosis and disease monitoring for gastro-intestinal diseases.

REFERENCES

- 1 **de Lacy Costello B**, Amann A, Al-Kateb H, Flynn C, Filipiak W, Khalid T, Osborne D, Ratcliffe NM. A review of the volatiles from the healthy human body. *J Breath Res* 2014; **8**: 014001 [PMID: 24421258 DOI: 10.1088/1752-7155/8/1/014001]
- 2 **Wishart DS**, Jewison T, Guo AC, Wilson M, Knox C, Liu Y, Djoumbou Y, Mandal R, Aziat F, Dong E, Bouatra S, Sinelnikov I, Arndt D, Xia J, Liu P, Yallou F, Bjorn Dahl T, Perez-Pineiro R, Eisner R, Allen F, Neveu V, Greiner R, Scalbert A. HMDB 3.0--The Human Metabolome Database in 2013. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2013; **41**: D801-D807 [PMID: 23161693 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gks1065]
- 3 **Persaud K**, Dodd G. Analysis of discrimination mechanisms in the mammalian olfactory system using a model nose. *Nature* 1982; **299**: 352-355 [PMID: 7110356]
- 4 **Röck F**, Barsan N, Weimar U. Electronic nose: current status and future trends. *Chem Rev* 2008; **108**: 705-725 [PMID: 18205411 DOI: 10.1021/cr068121q]
- 5 **Buck L**, Axel R. A novel multigene family may encode odorant receptors: a molecular basis for odor recognition. *Cell* 1991; **65**: 175-187 [PMID: 1840504]
- 6 **Garner CE**, Smith S, de Lacy Costello B, White P, Spencer R, Probert CS, Ratcliffe NM. Volatile organic compounds from feces and their potential for diagnosis of gastrointestinal disease. *FASEB J* 2007; **21**: 1675-1688 [PMID: 17314143]
- 7 **Peng G**, Hakim M, Broza YY, Billan S, Abdah-Bortnyak R, Kuten A, Tisch U, Haick H. Detection of lung, breast, colorectal, and prostate cancers from exhaled breath using a single array of nanosensors. *Br J Cancer* 2010; **103**: 542-551 [PMID: 20648015 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6605810]
- 8 **de Meij TG**, Larbi IB, van der Schee MP, Lentferink YE, Paff T, Terhaar Sive Droste JS, Mulder CJ, van Bodegraven AA, de Boer NK. Electronic nose can discriminate colorectal carcinoma and advanced adenomas by fecal volatile biomarker analysis: proof of principle study. *Int J Cancer* 2014; **134**: 1132-1138 [PMID: 23959518 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.28446]
- 9 **Arasaradnam RP**, Ouaret N, Thomas MG, Quraishi N, Heatherington E, Nwokolo CU, Bardhan KD, Covington JA. A novel tool for noninvasive diagnosis and tracking of patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2013; **19**: 999-1003 [PMID: 23478806 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0b013e3182802b26]
- 10 **Arasaradnam RP**, Quraishi N, Kyrrou I, Nwokolo CU, Joseph M, Kumar S, Bardhan KD, Covington JA. Insights into 'fermentonomics': evaluation of volatile organic compounds (VOCs) in human disease using an electronic 'e-nose'. *J Med Eng Technol* 2011; **35**: 87-91 [PMID: 21204611 DOI: 10.3109/03091902.2010.539770]
- 11 **de Meij TG**, de Boer NK, Benninga MA, Lentferink YE, de Groot EF, van de Velde ME, van Bodegraven AA, van der Schee MP. Faecal gas analysis by electronic nose as novel, non-invasive method for assessment of active and quiescent paediatric inflammatory bowel disease: Proof of principle study. *J Crohns Colitis* 2014 [PMID: 25248313 DOI: 10.1016/j.crohns.2014.09.004]
- 12 **Arasaradnam RP**, Ouaret N, Thomas MG, Gold P, Quraishi MN, Nwokolo CU, Bardhan KD, Covington JA. Evaluation of gut bacterial populations using an electronic e-nose and field asymmetric ion mobility spectrometry: further insights into 'fermentonomics'. *J Med Eng Technol* 2012; **36**: 333-337 [PMID: 22764881 DOI: 10.3109/03091902.2012.690015]
- 13 **Raman M**, Ahmed I, Gillevet PM, Probert CS, Ratcliffe NM, Smith S, Greenwood R, Sikaroodi M, Lam V, Crotty P, Bailey J, Myers RP, Rioux KP. Fecal microbiome and volatile organic compound metabolome in obese humans with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **11**: 868-75.e1-3 [PMID: 23454028 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2013.02.015]
- 14 **Amann A**, Costello Bde L, Miekisch W, Schubert J, Buszewski B, Pleil J, Ratcliffe N, Risby T. The human volatilome: volatile organic compounds (VOCs) in exhaled breath, skin emanations, urine, feces and saliva. *J Breath Res* 2014; **8**: 034001 [PMID: 24946087 DOI: 10.1088/1752-7155/8/3/034001]
- 15 **Arasaradnam RP**, Westenbrink E, McFarlane MJ, Harbord R, Chambers S, O'Connell N, Bailey C, Nwokolo CU, Bardhan KD, Savage R, Covington JA. Differentiating coeliac disease from irritable bowel syndrome by urinary volatile organic compound analysis--a pilot study. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e107312 [PMID: 25330367 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0107312]

P- Reviewer: Lee SH S- Editor: Ji FF
L- Editor: A E- Editor: Li D



Direct antiviral agent treatment of decompensated hepatitis C virus-induced liver cirrhosis

Shogo Ohkoshi, Haruka Hirono, Satoshi Yamagiwa

Shogo Ohkoshi, Haruka Hirono, Department of Internal Medicine, School of Life Dentistry at Niigata, the Nippon Dental University, Niigata-city 951-8580, Japan

Satoshi Yamagiwa, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Graduate School of Medical and Dental Sciences Niigata University, Niigata-city 951-8520, Japan

Author contributions: Ohkoshi S wrote the paper; Hirono H and Yamagiwa S made a discussion with Ohkoshi S.

Supported by Grant-in-Aid for Scientific Research (C) (25461012 for Shogo Ohkoshi) from the Japan Society for the Promotion of Science (JSPS).

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors do not have any commercial affiliation or consultancy that could be construed as a conflict of interest.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Shogo Ohkoshi, MD, PhD, Department of Internal Medicine, School of Life Dentistry at Niigata, the Nippon Dental University, 1-8 Hamaura-Cho, Chuo-ku, Niigata-city 951-8580, Japan. okoshi@ngt.ndu.ac.jp
Telephone: +81-25-2118243
Fax: +81-25-2671582

Received: May 20, 2015
Peer-review started: May 21, 2015
First decision: July 10, 2015
Revised: July 15, 2015
Accepted: September 10, 2015
Article in press: September 16, 2015
Published online: November 6, 2015

Abstract

Recently, direct antiviral agents (DAAs) have been increasingly used for the treatment of chronic hepatitis C virus (HCV) infections, replacing interferon-based regimens that have severe adverse effects and low tolerability. The constant supply of new DAAs makes shorter treatment periods with enhanced safety possible. The efficacy of DAAs for treatment of compensated liver cirrhosis (LC) is not less than that for treatment of non-cirrhotic conditions. These clinical advantages have been useful in pre- and post-liver transplantation (LT) settings. Moreover, DAAs can be used to treat decompensated HCV-induced LC in elderly patients or those with severe complications otherwise having poor prognosis. Although encouraging clinical data are beginning to appear, the actual efficacy of DAAs for suppressing disease progression, allowing delisting for LT and, most importantly, improving prognosis of patients with decompensated HCV-LC remains unknown. Case-control studies to examine the short- or long-term effects of DAAs for treatment of decompensated HCV-LC are urgently need.

Key words: Decompensated liver cirrhosis; Prognosis; Direct antiviral agent; Hepatitis C virus; Comorbidity; Nucleic acid analogue

© **The Author(s) 2015.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Decompensated liver cirrhosis (LC) due to hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection is a severe disease with poor prognosis. Because interferon-included regimens are contraindicated at this stage, liver transplantation has been the only way to cure the disease. However, recent development of direct antiviral agents (DAAs) is offering a hope for this difficult situation. Promising antiviral effects of DAAs for LC have been observed, suggesting

they might be useful for treatment of decompensated HCV-LC. To explore this possibility, large case-control studies are needed.

Ohkoshi S, Hirono H, Yamagiwa S. Direct antiviral agent treatment of decompensated hepatitis C virus-induced liver cirrhosis. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(4): 114-119 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i4/114.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i4.114>

INTRODUCTION

Hepatitis C virus (HCV) - induced decompensated liver cirrhosis (LC) is a life-threatening illness with an average 5-year survival rate of 50%^[1,2]. Although liver transplantation (LT) has been the only curative therapy for these patients, the recently-developed direct antiviral agents (DAAs) are now helping patients cope with these difficult situations. Because DAAs have far fewer adverse effects and are better tolerated than interferon (IFN), they can be used to treat the elderly or patients with comorbidities, such as leuco - or thrombocytopenia. It is well-known that IFN-based therapies provide lower sustained viral response (SVR) rates as the disease progresses and fibrosis levels increase. However, this may not be the case for DAA treatments, because the presence of compensated cirrhosis reportedly has not hampered the therapeutic outcomes^[3,4]. Because these patients have the higher risk of mortality and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), the benefits of eradicating the virus, may be greater than doing so in those having less-advanced disease.

There have been only a few reports of the effects of DAA therapy in patients with decompensated HCV-induced LC (HCV-LC). The effects and safety of DAAs for treatment of severe liver diseases in both pre- and post-(LT) patients have been demonstrated^[5,6]. After LT, reinfection of the grafted liver frequently occurs if HCV is not eradicated, and subsequently one third of liver transplant recipients with HCV infection either died, experienced allograft loss, or developed cirrhosis by the fifth post-operative year^[7]. Thus, the primary endpoint of DAA therapy in the setting of LT is to clear the virus before transplantation and prevent reinfection of grafted livers. Importantly, findings obtained from studying this situation can be extended to therapy for elderly patients and those having comorbidities-patients having no indications for LT in the real-world settings.

On the other hand, there have been numerous clinical experiences of use of oral nucleoside analogues (NAs) for HBV-induced compensated or decompensated LC, and clinical benefits for both in short- and long-term prognosis have been established^[8]. In this review, we summarize the data on use of DAAs for treatment of advanced HCV-LC and comorbidities, referencing the past experience with use of NAs for these HBV patients.

DECOMPENSATED HCV-LC: NATURAL HISTORY AND TREATMENT

Chronic hepatitis C infection is one of the leading causes of chronic liver diseases and the most common indication for LT. Because of its indolent clinical course, patients occasionally suffer from advanced disease before diagnosis is made. In its natural history, cirrhosis develops in 4%-24% of patients during 20 years of chronic infection^[9]. The annual occurrence rate of HCC is about 2%-4% of patients with cirrhosis, and it is reported to be around 7% in Japanese patients^[9,10]. Signs of decompensation include ascites, jaundice, encephalopathy and variceal bleedings. The 5-year survival rate for decompensated HCV-LC is about 50%; the condition is a good indication for LT^[1,2]. However, implementation rates of LT vary among the countries depending on the accessibility of donor livers. In a country like Japan, where chronic insufficiency of donor livers is the usual situation, most of patients with decompensated HCV-LC cannot benefit from LT. Above all, most of these patients are elderly and have several clinical complications, and are generally not considered suitable candidate for LT.

IFN-BASED TREATMENT FOR ADVANCED HCV-INDUCED LIVER DISEASES

Currently IFN-based regimen for the patients with chronic HCV having genotype 1 (GT1) mainly consists of pegylated-interferon (PEG-IFN), ribavirin (RBV) and a protease inhibitor (PI). Xu *et al*^[11] reported that SVR rates of PEG-IFN plus RBV therapy for patients with decompensated HCV-LC were 19.7% for GT1 and 42.9% for GT2, resulting in significant suppression of disease progression, compared to control patients. Thus IFN-based regimens might improve the prognosis of the patients with advanced type C liver diseases when treatment is safe and compliance is good. However, in the era of DAAs which have both strong anti-viral effect and sufficient tolerability, IFN-based regimens may no longer be prioritized for patients with advanced type C liver diseases; and rather, may be relatively contraindicated because of severe complications and low probability of attaining SVR^[12].

RECENT PROGRESS OF DAA TREATMENTS

NS3/4A protease inhibitors (PIs) such as telaprevir, simeprevir, vaniprevir have been approved in Japan for treatment of GT1b, in combination with PEG-IFN plus RBV. These regimens have greatly improved therapeutic efficacy; SVR rates have been reported to be more than 70% for telaprevir or simeprevir plus PEG-IFN and RBV regimens^[13,14]. However, the recent replacement, which was approved in 2014, of the IFN-based regimens, which had severe adverse effects and poor tolerability, by the

combination of asunaprevir (PI) and daclatasvir (NS5A inhibitor) for GT1b patients, has become a central role in their treatment^[15]. On the other hand, sofosbuvir (SOF), a potent inhibitor of the HCV NS5B polymerase, has been approved for the treatment of chronic hepatitis C genotypes 1-4 in the United States and other countries. SVR was obtained in more than 85% of patients with GT1 when combined with PEG-IFN and RBV^[16]. Because of its high efficacy and safety, low incidence of adverse effects and a high genetic barrier, SOF is useful when combined with another DAA or RBV^[17,18]. The combination of SOF and ledipasvir (LDV, another NS5A inhibitor) treatment was tested in large-scale clinical trials, resulting in SVR rates of more than 90% in patients with GT1 infection^[19-21]. It is expected to be approved in Japan in 2015, based on the SVR rate of close to 100% in Japanese GT1 patients^[22]. Moreover, remarkable SVR rates (99.5% with RBV and 99.0% without RBV for GT1b infection) were reported with ABT-450/r-ombitasvir and dasabuvir treatment^[23]. The combination treatment of grazoprevir (MK-5172, an NS3/4A protease inhibitor) and elbasvir (MK-8742, an NS5A inhibitor) with or without RBV for 12 to 18 wk achieved high SVR rates, ranging from 90%-100%, encompassing the treatment arms^[24]. Thus, the constant supply of new DAAs is improving the efficacy and tolerability of this class of drugs.

THE CURRENT STATUS OF DAA TREATMENT FOR COMPENSATED HCV-LC

Most IFN-free DAA trials up to now have enrolled only a modest population (10%-20%) of cirrhotics with well-compensated diseases^[15,20,25,26]. SVR rates for cirrhotics in these studies were comparable to those of non-cirrhotic patients, in contrast to the result of IFN-based regimens, for which, as fibrosis of liver progresses, the rate of SVR decreases and the incidence of adverse effects increases. A recently-published phase III trial (Turquoise-II) with ABT-450/r-ombitasvir- and dasabuvir plus RBV-based regimens, was performed exclusively in patients with GT1 HCV-LC^[3]. This study included 380 patients with cirrhosis in Child-Pugh class A5 to A6, randomly assigned to receive either 12 or 24 wk of treatments. Patients achieved SVR12 of 91.8% and 95.9% in the 12-wk and 24-wk treatment arm, respectively. In addition, differences in rates of SVR12 between patients with mild to moderate fibrosis (F0 to F2) vs F3 to F4 were not statistically significant^[27]. These outstanding SVR rates accompanied by a high safety and tolerability profile in cirrhotics allow IFN-free DAA regimens to be much more available to even decompensated cirrhosis patients.

DAA TREATMENT FOR DECOMPENSATED HCV-LC

DAA treatments for patients with severe liver diseases

before and after LT have been reported^[7,28]. The primary endpoint of treatment in the liver-transplant setting is to eradicate the virus to prevent reinfection by HCV of the grafted liver tissue. SOF-based DAA regimens have been playing a central role in these settings. A total of 61 patients, mainly with compensated LC [$\leq$ CTP (Child-Turcotte-Pugh) 7, or $<$ MELD (Model of End-Stage Liver Disease) 22] and HCC, on the waiting list for LT, had received up to 48 wk of SOF plus RBV treatment, and 30 of 43 (70%) whose HCV RNA levels were less than 25 IU/mL at transplantation obtained post-transplantation virologic response at 12 wk. Safety profiles were excellent^[28]. In addition, combination treatment of SOF + RBV ($\pm$ Peg-IFN) were tested in 104 patients who had early severe recurrence (52), LC (52) after LT^[7]. SVR 12 was obtained in 35 of 48 (73%) with early severe recurrence. Importantly, 59 of 103 (57%) reported clinical improvement. These studies showed that SOF-based, IFN-free regimens provided high rates of SVR with a good safety profile in difficult peri-LT settings.

Clinical and epidemiological features of HCV-infected patients vary among the countries. In Japan, candidates for DAA treatment are mainly the elderly or those with complications. Presently, published results in patients with decompensated cirrhosis in real-world settings consist mostly of preliminary conference reports. Afdhal *et al.*^[29] reported on 48 wk of SOF plus RBV treatment for a total of 50 patients with GT1-4 HCV-LC (60% of them were CPT7-10 and 20% $\geq$ MELD 14) and 89% of rapid viral response (RVR) 4 and 97% RVR 8 were obtained. SVR 4 was obtained in 16/18 (89%) GT1 and CTP Class B patients after 12 wk of SOF/LDV treatment^[30]. A total of 108 patients with CTP Class B or C cirrhosis with GT1 and 4 were treated with SOF/LDV and RBV, and SVR was achieved in 87% of those given the 12-wk treatment and 89% in the 24-wk treatment^[31]. It is remarkable that these SVR rates are comparable to those for compensated LC or even non-cirrhotic patients. Although the numbers were still small and the results were preliminary, these studies suggest that such treatments may extend the life expectancy of patients who would otherwise be considered end-stage without the use of DAA.

DAA TREATMENT FOR COMORBIDITIES

IFN-based regimens are contraindicated for depressed patients and cautions should be exercised in their use for those with psychiatric disorders. The presence of leucocytopenia and thrombocytopenia may severely impair compliance with IFN-based therapies^[32]. DAA can be administered safely in these situations and also to elderly patients with cardiovascular complications and diabetes. However, caution should be used in patients with anemia, renal insufficiency and cardiopulmonary complications if the regimen contains RBV.

Because SOF also has renal toxicity, caution is necessary in those with renal dysfunction. However, the newly-developed DAAs grazoprevir and elbasvir

are metabolized by the liver and easily administered to patients with renal dysfunction without adjustment of dose^[24]. In general, unlike IFN, DAAs can be administered to patients with autoimmune disorders unless RBV, which might affect the immune status, is included in the regimen^[33]. Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV)/HCV co-infected patients have the same cure rates, of over 90%, with IFN-free DAA combinations. Therefore, guidelines no longer separate mono- and co-infected patients. The only special consideration in HIV/HCV co-infected subjects is the need to check for drug-drug interactions between anti-HIV and -HCV agents^[34].

EXPECTATIONS AND CONCERNS OF DAA TREATMENT FOR DECOMPENSATED HCV-LC

Past clinical experiences from the results of NA treatment of patients with advanced HBV liver diseases may provide useful information when predicting the short- and long-term effects of DAA therapy for decompensated HCV-LC, a practice that is still in the beginning stages. Jang *et al.*^[35] reported the long-term effect of the NAs in patients with decompensated HBV-LC. They followed 284 untreated patients and 423 treated with NAs for more than 7 years and found that transplant-free survival was significantly improved in those treated with NAs (59.7% vs 46.0%). CTP and MELD scores improved significantly as a consequence of continuous suppression of HBV. They found that the degree of improvement was greater in those with higher CTP or MELD scores and early commencement of therapy was more important in the improvement of prognosis.

There are some similarities and differences between the following two situations: That is, NAs for HBV and DAAs for HCV. Anti-viral effects of DAAs against HCV might possibly surpass that of NAs against HBV, given that DAAs eliminate HCV RNA from serum in a very short period. Safety profiles may be comparable to NAs. Most importantly, DAAs may induce virus-free state if SVR is accomplished with only short duration of treatment, whereas the NAs for HBV cannot eliminate covalently closed circular DNA in liver and even long-term treatment may not eradicate the virus. Thus, DAA treatment for decompensated HCV-LC might elicit a similar clinical impact as NAs for decompensated HBV-LC with only a short-term treatment. Actually, preliminary report showed that DAAs for decompensated LC improved MELD scores in 60% to 79% patients only 4 wk after treatment finalization^[31]. For these reasons, DAA treatments would be indicated positively for those with decompensated LC-HCV in real world-settings^[36].

Despite of these encouraging situations and that a standardized mortality rate analysis reported a lower liver-related mortality among HCV-cirrhotics with SVR by IFN treatment^[37], to our knowledge there are currently no data on disease progression, delisting from LT, and improvement of life expectancy after the achievement

of SVR for decompensated LC-HCV. It is well-known that the level of liver fibrosis can be decreased with the eradication of virus^[38]. However, it is uncertain whether the severe fibrosis observed in decompensated HCV-LC could be reversed to some extent. Although successful treatment outcomes in HCV induced cirrhotics resulted in the significant prevention of HCC^[39], it is not yet clear whether DAA treatment for decompensated HCV-LC lowers the incidence of HCC. Actually, despite clinical improvement, the occurrence of HCC was not significantly suppressed by NA treatment for decompensated HBV-LC^[35]. However, given the difference of pathogenesis between HBV and HCV, in that one virus integrates into the genome and the other does not, the two infections might not always respond in a similar fashion.

There are also several issues to be considered when commencing the treatment of DAA for decompensated HCV-LC. Early mortality due to aggravation of liver function during therapy might occur as was observed during treatment with lamivudine for decompensated HBV-LC^[40]. Patients with advanced cirrhosis still have a high risk for hospitalization after the initiation of DAA treatment^[36]. In addition, decompensated cirrhosis patients are more prone to develop drug-induced side-effects when compared to patients with compensated cirrhosis. For example, simeprevir is contraindicated to Child C LC, asunaprevir to Child B-C and ABT-450/r to Child B^[6]. Especially patients on SOF regimens should also be monitored for renal dysfunction^[41].

Currently it is possible to perform a large scale case-control study to clarify short- or long-term effects of DAA treatment for decompensated HCV-LC patients in real-world settings. Until these results are available, treatment of decompensated HCV-LC patients should be individualized on a case-by-case basis, giving due consideration to viral factors like genotype and clinical background factors including age, severity of liver diseases and presence of comorbidities.

REFERENCES

- 1 **Fattovich G**, Giustina G, Degos F, Tremolada F, Diodati G, Almasio P, Nevens F, Solinas A, Mura D, Brouwer JT, Thomas H, Njapoum C, Casarin C, Bonetti P, Fuschi P, Basho J, Tocco A, Bhalla A, Galassini R, Noventa F, Schalm SW, Realdi G. Morbidity and mortality in compensated cirrhosis type C: a retrospective follow-up study of 384 patients. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **112**: 463-472 [PMID: 9024300]
- 2 **Planas R**, Ballesté B, Alvarez MA, Rivera M, Montoliu S, Galeras JA, Santos J, Coll S, Morillas RM, Solà R. Natural history of decompensated hepatitis C virus-related cirrhosis. A study of 200 patients. *J Hepatol* 2004; **40**: 823-830 [PMID: 15094231 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2004.01.005]
- 3 **Poordad F**, Hezode C, Trinh R, Kowdley KV, Zeuzem S, Agarwal K, Shiffman ML, Wedemeyer H, Berg T, Yoshida EM, Fornis X, Lovell SS, Da Silva-Tillmann B, Collins CA, Campbell AL, Podsadeci T, Bernstein B. ABT-450/r-ombitasvir and dasabuvir with ribavirin for hepatitis C with cirrhosis. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 1973-1982 [PMID: 24725237 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1402869]
- 4 **Reddy KR**, Bourlière M, Sulkowski M, Omata M, Zeuzem S, Feld JJ, Lawitz E, Marcellin P, Welzel TM, Hyland R, Ding X, Yang J, Knox S, Pang P, Dvory-Sobol H, Subramanian GM, Symonds W, McHutchison JG, Mangia A, Gane E, Mizokami M, Pol S, Afdhal

- N. Ledipasvir and sofosbuvir in patients with genotype 1 hepatitis C virus infection and compensated cirrhosis: An integrated safety and efficacy analysis. *Hepatology* 2015; **62**: 79-86 [PMID: 25846144 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27826]
- 5 **Gambato M**, Lens S, Navasa M, Forns X. Treatment options in patients with decompensated cirrhosis, pre- and post-transplantation. *J Hepatol* 2014; **61**: S120-S131 [PMID: 25443340 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2014.07.020]
 - 6 **Lens S**, Gambato M, Londoño MC, Forns X. Interferon-free regimens in the liver-transplant setting. *Semin Liver Dis* 2014; **34**: 58-71 [PMID: 24782259 DOI: 10.1055/s-0034-1371011]
 - 7 **Forns X**, Charlton M, Denning J, McHutchison JG, Symonds WT, Brainard D, Brandt-Sarif T, Chang P, Kivett V, Castells L, Prieto M, Fontana RJ, Baumert TF, Coilly A, Londoño MC, Habersetzer F. Sofosbuvir compassionate use program for patients with severe recurrent hepatitis C after liver transplantation. *Hepatology* 2015; **61**: 1485-1494 [PMID: 25557906 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27681]
 - 8 **Peng CY**, Chien RN, Liaw YF. Hepatitis B virus-related decompensated liver cirrhosis: benefits of antiviral therapy. *J Hepatol* 2012; **57**: 442-450 [PMID: 22504333 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2012.02.033]
 - 9 **Hajarizadeh B**, Grebely J, Dore GJ. Epidemiology and natural history of HCV infection. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **10**: 553-562 [PMID: 23817321 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2013.107]
 - 10 **El-Serag HB**, Rudolph KL. Hepatocellular carcinoma: epidemiology and molecular carcinogenesis. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **132**: 2557-2576 [PMID: 17570226 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.04.061]
 - 11 **Xu Y**, Qi W, Wang X, Zhao P, Zhang Y, Zhang Q, Qin S, Wang J. Pegylated interferon α -2a plus ribavirin for decompensated hepatitis C virus-related cirrhosis: relationship between efficacy and cumulative dose. *Liver Int* 2014; **34**: 1522-1531 [PMID: 25453135]
 - 12 **American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases and the Infectious Diseases Society of America**. Recommendations for Testing, Managing, and Treating Hepatitis C. AASLD recommendations 2015. Available from: URL: <http://www.hcvguidelines.org/>
 - 13 **Forns X**, Lawitz E, Zeuzem S, Gane E, Bronowicki JP, Andreone P, Horban A, Brown A, Peeters M, Lenz O, Ouwkerk-Mahadevan S, Scott J, De La Rosa G, Kalmeijer R, Sinha R, Beumont-Mauviel M. Simeprevir with peginterferon and ribavirin leads to high rates of SVR in patients with HCV genotype 1 who relapsed after previous therapy: a phase 3 trial. *Gastroenterology* 2014; **146**: 1669-1679.e3 [PMID: 24602923 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.02.051]
 - 14 **Furusyo N**, Ogawa E, Nakamura M, Kajiwarra E, Nomura H, Dohmen K, Takahashi K, Satoh T, Azuma K, Kawano A, Tanabe Y, Kotoh K, Shimoda S, Hayashi J. Telaprevir can be successfully and safely used to treat older patients with genotype 1b chronic hepatitis C. *J Hepatol* 2013; **59**: 205-212 [PMID: 23542346 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2013.03.020]
 - 15 **Kumada H**, Suzuki Y, Ikeda K, Toyota J, Karino Y, Chayama K, Kawakami Y, Ido A, Yamamoto K, Takaguchi K, Izumi N, Koike K, Takehara T, Kawada N, Sata M, Miyagoshi H, Eley T, McPhee F, Damokosh A, Ishikawa H, Hughes E. Daclatasvir plus asunaprevir for chronic HCV genotype 1b infection. *Hepatology* 2014; **59**: 2083-2091 [PMID: 24604476 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27113]
 - 16 **Kowdley KV**, Lawitz E, Crespo I, Hassanein T, Davis MN, DeMicco M, Bernstein DE, Afdhal N, Vierling JM, Gordon SC, Anderson JK, Hyland RH, Dvory-Sobol H, An D, Hindes RG, Albanis E, Symonds WT, Berrey MM, Nelson DR, Jacobson IM. Sofosbuvir with pegylated interferon alfa-2a and ribavirin for treatment-naïve patients with hepatitis C genotype-1 infection (ATOMIC): an open-label, randomised, multicentre phase 2 trial. *Lancet* 2013; **381**: 2100-2107 [PMID: 23499440 DOI: 10.1016/s0140-6736(13)60247-0]
 - 17 **Osinusi A**, Meissner EG, Lee YJ, Bon D, Heytens L, Nelson A, Sneller M, Kohli A, Barrett L, Proschan M, Herrmann E, Shivakumar B, Gu W, Kwan R, Teferi G, Talwani R, Silk R, Kotb C, Wroblewski S, Fishbein D, Dewar R, Highbarger H, Zhang X, Kleiner D, Wood BJ, Chavez J, Symonds WT, Subramanian M, McHutchison J, Polis MA, Fauci AS, Masur H, Kottlil S. Sofosbuvir and ribavirin for hepatitis C genotype 1 in patients with unfavorable treatment characteristics: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA* 2013; **310**: 804-811 [PMID: 23982366 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2013.109309]
 - 18 **Sulkowski MS**, Gardiner DF, Rodriguez-Torres M, Reddy KR, Hassanein T, Jacobson I, Lawitz E, Lok AS, Hineirosta F, Thuluvath PJ, Schwartz H, Nelson DR, Everson GT, Eley T, Wind-Rotolo M, Huang SP, Gao M, Hernandez D, McPhee F, Sherman D, Hindes R, Symonds W, Pasquinelli C, Grasela DM. Daclatasvir plus sofosbuvir for previously treated or untreated chronic HCV infection. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 211-221 [PMID: 24428467 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1306218]
 - 19 **Afdhal N**, Reddy KR, Nelson DR, Lawitz E, Gordon SC, Schiff E, Nahass R, Ghalib R, Gitlin N, Herring R, Lalezari J, Younes ZH, Pockros PJ, Di Bisceglie AM, Arora S, Subramanian GM, Zhu Y, Dvory-Sobol H, Yang JC, Pang PS, Symonds WT, McHutchison JG, Muir AJ, Sulkowski M, Kwo P. Ledipasvir and sofosbuvir for previously treated HCV genotype 1 infection. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 1483-1493 [PMID: 24725238 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1316366]
 - 20 **Afdhal N**, Zeuzem S, Kwo P, Chojkier M, Gitlin N, Puoti M, Romero-Gomez M, Zarski JP, Agarwal K, Buggisch P, Foster GR, Bräu N, Buti M, Jacobson IM, Subramanian GM, Ding X, Mo H, Yang JC, Pang PS, Symonds WT, McHutchison JG, Muir AJ, Mangia A, Marcellin P. Ledipasvir and sofosbuvir for untreated HCV genotype 1 infection. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 1889-1898 [PMID: 24725239 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1402454]
 - 21 **Kowdley KV**, Gordon SC, Reddy KR, Rossaro L, Bernstein DE, Lawitz E, Shiffman ML, Schiff E, Ghalib R, Ryan M, Rustgi V, Chojkier M, Herring R, Di Bisceglie AM, Pockros PJ, Subramanian GM, An D, Svarovskaia E, Hyland RH, Pang PS, Symonds WT, McHutchison JG, Muir AJ, Pound D, Fried MW. Ledipasvir and sofosbuvir for 8 or 12 weeks for chronic HCV without cirrhosis. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 1879-1888 [PMID: 24720702 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1402355]
 - 22 **Mizokami M**, Yokosuka O, Takehara T, Sakamoto N, Korenaga M, Mochizuki H, Nakane K, Enomoto H, Ikeda F, Yanase M, Toyoda H, Genda T, Umemura T, Yatsushashi H, Ide T, Toda N, Nirei K, Ueno Y, Nishigaki Y, Betular J, Gao B, Ishizaki A, Omote M, Mo H, Garrison K, Pang PS, Knox SJ, Symonds WT, McHutchison JG, Izumi N, Omata M. Ledipasvir and sofosbuvir fixed-dose combination with and without ribavirin for 12 weeks in treatment-naïve and previously treated Japanese patients with genotype 1 hepatitis C: an open-label, randomised, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Infect Dis* 2015; **15**: 645-653 [PMID: 25863559 DOI: 10.1016/s1473-3099(15)70099-x]
 - 23 **Ferenci P**, Bernstein D, Lalezari J, Cohen D, Luo Y, Cooper C, Tam E, Marinho RT, Tsai N, Nyberg A, Box TD, Younes Z, Enayati P, Green S, Baruch Y, Bhandari BR, Caruntu FA, Sepe T, Chulanov V, Janczewska E, Rizzardini G, Gervain J, Planas R, Moreno C, Hassanein T, Xie W, King M, Podsadecki T, Reddy KR. ABT-450/r-ombitasvir and dasabuvir with or without ribavirin for HCV. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 1983-1992 [PMID: 24795200 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1402338]
 - 24 **Lawitz E**, Gane E, Pearlman B, Tam E, Ghesquiere W, Guyader D, Alric L, Bronowicki JP, Lester L, Sievert W, Ghalib R, Balart L, Sund F, Lagging M, Dutko F, Shaughnessy M, Hwang P, Howe AY, Wahl J, Robertson M, Barr E, Haber B. Efficacy and safety of 12 weeks versus 18 weeks of treatment with grazoprevir (MK-5172) and elbasvir (MK-8742) with or without ribavirin for hepatitis C virus genotype 1 infection in previously untreated patients with cirrhosis and patients with previous null response with or without cirrhosis (C-WORTHY): a randomised, open-label phase 2 trial. *Lancet* 2015; **385**: 1075-1086 [PMID: 25467591 DOI: 10.1016/s0140-6736(14)61795-5]
 - 25 **Lawitz E**, Sulkowski MS, Ghalib R, Rodriguez-Torres M, Younossi ZM, Corregidor A, DeJesus E, Pearlman B, Rabinovitz M, Gitlin N, Lim JK, Pockros PJ, Scott JD, Fevery B, Lambrecht T, Ouwkerk-Mahadevan S, Callewaert K, Symonds WT, Picchio G, Lindsay KL, Beumont M, Jacobson IM. Simeprevir plus sofosbuvir, with or without ribavirin, to treat chronic infection with hepatitis C virus genotype 1 in non-responders to pegylated

- interferon and ribavirin and treatment-naïve patients: the COSMOS randomised study. *Lancet* 2014; **384**: 1756-1765 [PMID: 25078309 DOI: 10.1016/s0140-6736(14)61036-9]
- 26 **Younossi ZM**, Stepanova M, Marcellin P, Afdhal N, Kowdley KV, Zeuzem S, Hunt SL. Treatment with ledipasvir and sofosbuvir improves patient-reported outcomes: Results from the ION-1, -2, and -3 clinical trials. *Hepatology* 2015; **61**: 1798-1808 [PMID: 25627448 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27724]
 - 27 **Zeuzem S**, Soriano V, Asselah T, Gane EJ, Bronowicki JP, Angus P, Lohse AW, Stickel F, Müllhaupt B, Roberts S, Schuchmann M, Manns M, Bourlière M, Buti M, Stern JO, Gallivan JP, Voss F, Sabo JP, Böcher W, Mensa FJ. Efficacy and safety of faldaprevir, deleobuvir, and ribavirin in treatment-naïve patients with chronic hepatitis C virus infection and advanced liver fibrosis or cirrhosis. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2015; **59**: 1282-1291 [PMID: 25512403 DOI: 10.1128/aac.04383-14]
 - 28 **Curry MP**, Forns X, Chung RT, Terrault NA, Brown R, Fenkel JM, Gordon F, O'Leary J, Kuo A, Schiano T, Everson G, Schiff E, Befeler A, Gane E, Saab S, McHutchison JG, Subramanian GM, Symonds WT, Denning J, McNair L, Arterburn S, Svarovskaia E, Moonka D, Afdhal N. Sofosbuvir and ribavirin prevent recurrence of HCV infection after liver transplantation: an open-label study. *Gastroenterology* 2015; **148**: 100-107.e1 [PMID: 25261839 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.09.023]
 - 29 **Afdhal N**, Everson G, Calleja JL, McCaughan G, Symonds WT, Denning J, McNair L, McHutchison JG, Arterburn S, Charlton M, Reddy R, Asselah T, Gane E, Forns X. O68 sofosbuvir and ribavirin for the treatment of chronic hcv with cirrhosis and portal hypertension with and without decompensation: early virologic response and safety. *J Hepatol* 2014; **60**: S28 [DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(14)60070-2]
 - 30 **Gane EJ**, Hyland RH, An D, Pang PS, Symonds WT, McHutchison JG, Stedman CA. O6 sofosbuvir/ledipasvir fixed dose combination is safe and effective in difficult-to-treat populations including genotype-3 patients, decompensated genotype-1 patients, and genotype-1 patients with prior sofosbuvir treatment experience. *J Hepatol* 2014; **60**: S3-S4 [DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(14)60008-8]
 - 31 **Flamm SL**, Everson GT, Charlton MR, Denning JM, Arterburn S, Brandt-Sarif T, Pang PS, McHutchison JG, Reddy R, Afdhal NH. Ledipasvir/sofosbuvir with ribavirin for the treatment of HCV in patients with decompensated cirrhosis: preliminary results of a prospective, multicenter study. *Hepatology* (Baltimore, Md) 2014; **60**: 320A
 - 32 **Giannini EG**, Marenco S, Fazio V, Pieri G, Savarino V, Picciotto A. Peripheral blood cytopaenia limiting initiation of treatment in chronic hepatitis C patients otherwise eligible for antiviral therapy. *Liver Int* 2012; **32**: 1113-1119 [PMID: 22471814 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2012.02798.x]
 - 33 **Carella C**, Mazziotti G, Morisco F, Rotondi M, Cioffi M, Tuccillo C, Sorvillo F, Caporaso N, Amato G. The addition of ribavirin to interferon-alpha therapy in patients with hepatitis C virus-related chronic hepatitis does not modify the thyroid autoantibody pattern but increases the risk of developing hypothyroidism. *Eur J Endocrinol* 2002; **146**: 743-749 [PMID: 12039693]
 - 34 **Rockstroh JK**. Optimal therapy of HIV/HCV co-infected patients with direct acting antivirals. *Liver Int* 2015; **35** Suppl 1: 51-55 [PMID: 25529087 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12721]
 - 35 **Jang JW**, Choi JY, Kim YS, Woo HY, Choi SK, Lee CH, Kim TY, Sohn JH, Tak WY, Han KH. Long-term effect of antiviral therapy on disease course after decompensation in patients with hepatitis B virus-related cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2015; **61**: 1809-1820 [PMID: 25627342 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27723]
 - 36 **Höner Zu Siederdissen C**, Maasoumy B, Deterding K, Port K, Sollik L, Mix C, Kirschner J, Cornberg J, Manns MP, Wedemeyer H, Cornberg M. Eligibility and safety of the first interferon-free therapy against hepatitis C in a real-world setting. *Liver Int* 2015; **35**: 1845-1852 [PMID: 25556625 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12774]
 - 37 **Yoshida H**, Arakawa Y, Sata M, Nishiguchi S, Yano M, Fujiyama S, Yamada G, Yokosuka O, Shiratori Y, Omata M. Interferon therapy prolonged life expectancy among chronic hepatitis C patients. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **123**: 483-491 [PMID: 12145802]
 - 38 **Shiratori Y**, Imazeki F, Moriyama M, Yano M, Arakawa Y, Yokosuka O, Kuroki T, Nishiguchi S, Sata M, Yamada G, Fujiyama S, Yoshida H, Omata M. Histologic improvement of fibrosis in patients with hepatitis C who have sustained response to interferon therapy. *Ann Intern Med* 2000; **132**: 517-524 [PMID: 10744587]
 - 39 **Morgan RL**, Baack B, Smith BD, Yartel A, Pitasi M, Falck-Ytter Y. Eradication of hepatitis C virus infection and the development of hepatocellular carcinoma: a meta-analysis of observational studies. *Ann Intern Med* 2013; **158**: 329-337 [PMID: 23460056 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-158-5-201303050-00005]
 - 40 **Fontana RJ**, Hann HW, Perrillo RP, Vierling JM, Wright T, Rakela J, Anshuetz G, Davis R, Gardner SD, Brown NA. Determinants of early mortality in patients with decompensated chronic hepatitis B treated with antiviral therapy. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **123**: 719-727 [PMID: 12198698]
 - 41 **Kattakuzhy S**, Levy R, Kottlilil S. Sofosbuvir for treatment of chronic hepatitis C. *Hepatol Int* 2015; **9**: 161-173 [PMID: 25788194 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-014-9606-9]

P- Reviewer: Montalto G S- Editor: Ji FF
L- Editor: A E- Editor: Li D



Role of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors alpha and gamma in gastric ulcer: An overview of experimental evidences

Lekha Saha

Lekha Saha, Department of Pharmacology, Post Graduate Institute of Medical Education and Research, Chandigarh 160012, India

Author contributions: Saha L, the sole author of the manuscript, conceived the issues which formed the content of the manuscript and wrote the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: None declared.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Lekha Saha, Associate Professor, Department of Pharmacology, Post Graduate Institute of Medical Education and Research, Chandigarh 160012, India. lekhasaha@rediffmail.com
Telephone: +91-172-2755253
Fax: +91-172-2744401

Received: April 15, 2015
Peer-review started: April 18, 2015
First decision: June 18, 2015
Revised: July 11, 2015
Accepted: October 12, 2015
Article in press: October 13, 2015
Published online: November 6, 2015

Abstract

Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors (PPARs) are ligand-activated transcription factors belonging to the nuclear hormone receptor superfamily. Three subtypes, PPAR α , PPAR β/δ , and PPAR γ , have been identified

so far. PPAR α is expressed in the liver, kidney, small intestine, heart, and muscle, where it activates the fatty acid catabolism and control lipoprotein assembly in response to long-chain unsaturated fatty acids, eicosanoids, and hypolipidemic drugs (*e.g.*, fenofibrate). PPAR β/δ is more broadly expressed and is implicated in fatty acid oxidation, keratinocyte differentiation, wound healing, and macrophage response to very low density lipoprotein metabolism. This isoform has been implicated in transcriptional-repression functions and has been shown to repress the activity of PPAR α or PPAR γ target genes. PPAR γ 1 and γ 2 are generated from a single-gene peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors gamma by differential promoter usage and alternative splicing. PPAR γ 1 is expressed in colon, immune system (*e.g.*, monocytes and macrophages), and other tissues where it participates in the modulation of inflammation, cell proliferation, and differentiation. PPARs regulate gene expression through distinct mechanisms: Ligand-dependent transactivation, ligand-independent repression, and ligand-dependent transrepression. Studies in animals have demonstrated the gastric antisecretory activity of PPAR α agonists like ciprofibrate, bezafibrate and clofibrate. Study by Pathak *et al* also demonstrated the effect of PPAR α agonist, bezafibrate, on gastric secretion and gastric cytoprotection in various gastric ulcer models in rats. The majority of the experimental studies is on pioglitazone and rosiglitazone, which are PPAR γ activators. In all the studies, both the PPAR γ activators showed protection against the gastric ulcer and also accelerate the ulcer healing in gastric ulcer model in rats. Therefore, PPAR α and PPAR γ may be a target for gastric ulcer therapy. Finally, more studies are also needed to confirm the involvement of PPARs α and γ in gastric ulcer.

Key words: Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors; Gastric ulcer; Evidences

© The Author(s) 2015. Published by Baishideng Publishing

Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors (PPARs) are a nuclear hormone receptor family and act as transcription factors. PPARs are of three subtypes, *i.e.*, PPAR α , PPAR β/δ , and PPAR γ . The common sites where PPAR α is expressed are muscle, heart, liver, small intestine and kidney. PPAR γ is involved in modulation of various functions like inflammation, cell proliferation, and differentiation and it is commonly expressed in white blood cells (*e.g.*, macrophages and monocytes) which are involved in immune activity and in the colon. Studies in animals have demonstrated the gastric antisecretory activity of PPAR α agonists like ciprofibrate, bezafibrate and clofibrate. The majority of the experimental studies regarding the role of PPAR γ activators is on pioglitazone and rosiglitazone. In all the studies, both the PPAR γ activators showed protection against the gastric ulcer and also accelerate the ulcer healing in gastric ulcer model in rats. Therefore, PPAR α and PPAR γ can be explored as a target of gastric ulcer treatment. The aim of the present paper is to discuss the experimental evidences of the role of PPARs in gastric ulcer.

Saha L. Role of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors alpha and gamma in gastric ulcer: An overview of experimental evidences. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(4): 120-126 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i4/120.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i4.120>

INTRODUCTION

Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors (PPARs) are a nuclear hormone receptor family and act as transcription factors. PPARs are of three subtypes, *i.e.*, PPAR α , PPAR β/δ , and PPAR γ . PPAR α is involved in fatty acid catabolism and also in controlling of lipoprotein assembly. Factors which activate PPAR α are hypolipidemic drugs (*e.g.*, Fenofibrate), long-chain unsaturated fatty acids and eicosanoids. PPAR α is distributed in many tissues like heart, kidney, muscle, liver, and small intestine^[1,2]. PPAR β/δ isoform of PPARs has been shown to involve in transcriptional-repression functions and inhibits PPAR α or PPAR γ target genes^[2-7]. This isoform is abundantly distributed in the body and take part in various activities like keratinocyte differentiation, fatty acid oxidation, healing and very low density lipoprotein metabolism. PPAR γ 1 and γ 2 are two subtype of PPAR γ and derived from a single gene peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors gamma^[8-12]. PPAR γ 1 is involved in modulation of various physiological functions like inflammation, cell proliferation, and differentiation and is found in tissues like white blood cells (*e.g.*, monocytes and macrophages) of the immune system, colon, and other tissues. Whereas PPAR γ 2 found in adipose tissue and plays an important role in the differentiation of adipocyte, storage

of lipid, and energy dissipation^[12]. Not only that, PPAR γ is also taking part in the metabolism of glucose and improving the insulin sensitivity. Thiazolidinediones which is a PPAR γ agonist, are commonly used for the treatment of type 2 diabetes as insulin-sensitizing drugs^[2,4,5].

Molecular structure of PPARs

PPARs are consist of following function domains: (A/B) N-terminal region, (C) DBD (DNA-binding domain), (D) flexible hinge region, (E) LBD (ligand binding domain) and (F) C-terminal region^[13,14]. The DBD contains two zinc finger motifs, which bind to specific sequences of DNA known as hormone response elements when the receptor is activated. The LBD has an extensive secondary structure consisting of 13 alpha helices and a beta sheet. Natural and synthetic ligands bind to the LBD, either activating or repressing the receptor. The transcriptional activating function (AF-1) motif is present in the N-terminus and it is not activated by ligands. On the other hand, E/F domain or LBD also contains a transcriptional activating function (AF-2) motif at the C-terminus helix 12, which is activated by ligands^[13]. A large numbers of synthetic and natural ligands like eicosanoids, fatty acids, linoleic acid derivatives, oxidized and nitrated fatty acids, bind to the large binding pocket present on the E/F (LBD) domain. The dimerization of PPARs with the 9-cis retinoic acid receptor (RXR) requires both the D and E/F domains. Then this dimerized PPARs and RXR bound to their respective peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor response elements (PPREs) present on the DNA molecule.

Genes which take part in various body functions like the metabolism of lipid, homeostasis of energy, proliferation, differentiation, and survival of cells has their functional PPREs in their regulatory regions^[1,2,13,15].

The expression of various genes which involved in various physiological functions are regulated by PPARs through three mechanisms: Transactivation (ligand-dependent), repression (ligand-independent) and trans-repression (ligand-dependent)^[16,17] (Figure 1).

The classical mode of action of PPARs is the ligand-dependent transactivation. In this mechanism when a ligand binds to the PPARs, there is folding back of the helix 12 of the LBD which leads to the exposure of the AF-2 motif. The AF-2 motif is crucial for the recruitment of transcriptional coactivators. All these changes help in fitting together of all the transcriptional machinery at PPRE-containing promoters^[16,17]. When there is no ligand, transcription of target genes is inhibited by PPARs by recruitment of co repressor complexes like nuclear receptor corepressor and silencing mediator for retinoid and thyroid receptors (Figure 1). "Transrepression" has recently been discovered as an additional nongenomic, ligand-dependent gene repression mechanism of PPARs which involves protein-protein interactions of NF κ B, AP1, Smads, signal transducers and activators of transcription, and nuclear factor of activated T cells^[17-19]. In both the genomic mechanisms of regulation of various genes by PPARs, *i.e.*, repression and transactivation required the

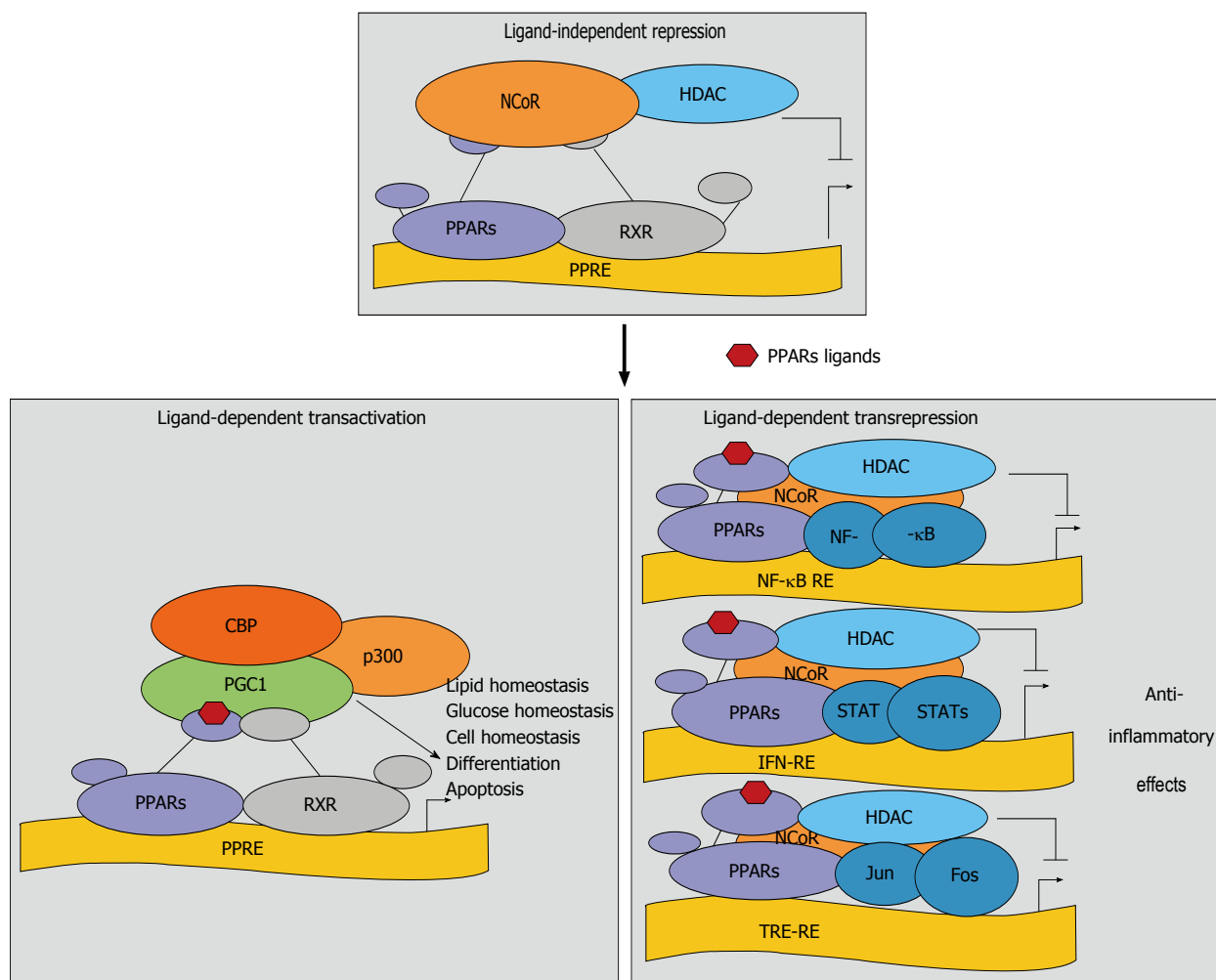


Figure 1 Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors - mediated mechanisms of transcriptional regulation. In the absence of ligands, peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors (PPARs) bind the promoters of their target genes and repress transcription by recruiting the corepressor complex. In the presence of ligands, PPARs can induce either ligand-dependent transactivation or transrepression. Transactivation involves PPARs heterodimerization with the retinoid X receptors (RXRs) followed by recognition of specific PPAR response elements (PPREs) and interaction with coactivators. Transrepression involves interference with other signal transduction pathways, including NF-κB, STAT, and AP1. NCoR: Nuclear receptor corepressor; NF-κB-RE: NF-κB response element; IFN-RE: Interferon-stimulated gene factor responsive element; TRE-RE: O-tetradecanoylphorbol 13-acetate-responsive element; HDAC: Histone deacetylase; CBP: CREB binding protein; PGC1: Peroxisome proliferator activated receptor gamma coactivator 1; STATs: Signal transducers and activators of transcription.

binding of PPARs to PPREs, but transrepression, which is a nongenomic mechanism, does not require the binding of PPARs to PPREs. The anti-inflammatory properties of PPARs might be explained by the transrepression mechanism, where there is recruitment and stabilization of the corepressor complexes on the promoters of pro-inflammatory genes^[17-20].

PPAR α and gastric ulcer

PPAR α is widely distributed in the small and large intestinal mucosa where dietary fatty acids delivered^[21,22]. The genes which involved in functions like inflammation, cell cycle progression, angiogenesis and lipid metabolism are regulated by PPAR α ^[23-27]. The role of PPAR α in the processes like angiogenesis and cell cycle progression has been suggested its contribution toward the formation and progression tumor. To the best of my knowledge till date, no data have been available which indicates its role in gastric and esophageal cancer. However, its role in

colorectal cancer has been investigated both *in vivo* and *in vitro* studies^[24-30].

PPAR α agonist enhanced the release of gastrin following the stimulation of PPAR α ^[31]. The PPAR α agonist induced hypergastrinemia is associated with less number of granules per cell as well as a relative increase in the number of electron-dense granules. All these changes with PPAR α agonist are similar to those effects induced by proton pump inhibitor, pantoprazole, which indicates the signs of activation of the gastric cells in general^[32]. Gastrin is a peptide hormone. It has two principal biological effects: Stimulation of acid secretion from gastric parietal cells and stimulation of mucosal growth in the acid-secreting part of the stomach (gastric cytoprotective effect)^[33]. Nitric oxide is one of the well know gastro-cytoprotective agent and there is increased in the release of nitric oxide following PPAR α stimulation^[34]. Reports in the published literature have indirectly shown the antagastric ulcer effect of PPAR α .

The gastric antisecretory activity of PPAR α agonists like ciprofibrate, bezafibrate and clofibrate have been demonstrated in animal studies^[35,36]. A short study by Eason *et al*^[36] in the mid-1970s first time demonstrated the antisecretory activity of clofibrate in rats. In the same study other phenoxyisobutyrate derivatives like ciprofibrate and bezafibrate have also demonstrated a significant reduction in gastric acid secretion in rats like clofibrate, but the duration of action of ciprofibrate was longer as compared to ciprofibrate and bezafibrate^[36].

Another study by Pathak *et al*^[35] also studied the effect of bezafibrate, a PPAR α agonist, on acid secretion and gastric cytoprotection in various rat models of gastric ulcer. Various gastric ulcer models were used in this study like acetic acid-induced chronic gastric ulcers, pylorus ligation, ethanol-induced, indomethacin-induced and ischemia-reperfusion-induced gastric ulcers. Bezafibrate (10 mg/kg and 100 mg/kg body weight) were used intraperitoneally. Significant antiulcer effects were seen with both the doses of bezafibrate in all the gastric ulcer models except acetic acid-induced chronic gastric ulcers and ischemia-reperfusion-induced gastric ulcer models. The healing of gastric ulcer was improved with bezafibrate in acetic acid-induced chronic gastric ulcer model. Bezafibrate (10 and 100 mg/kg) was also able to inhibit gastric ulcer formation induced by ischemia-reperfusion. So, this study not only demonstrated the antigastric ulcer property of the PPAR α agonists, but also demonstrated its ulcer healing property in gastric ulcer models in rats^[35].

We have also demonstrated the antigastric ulcer activity of bezafibrate in our laboratory (unpublished data). The present study was undertaken to validate antiulcer activity and the mechanism of action of bezafibrate in gastric ulcer. The aspirin induced gastric ulcer model was used. Bezafibrate was administered in graded doses (10-200 mg/kg) to detect the best effective anti-ulcer dose of bezafibrate. Keeping in view the diversity of defensive mechanisms, the present study was limited to exploring the involvement of the mucosal oxidant system, apoptotic pathway and nitric oxide pathway in the mechanism of the antigastric ulcer effect of bezafibrate. To explore the nitric oxide mechanism, a nitric oxide synthase inhibitor, *N*^o-nitro-L-arginine was used. The following parameters were measured: Ulcer Index, Histopathological scoring of gastric ulcer, gastric juice analysis, Gastric mucosal lipid peroxidation parameters, Estimation of nitric oxide metabolite in blood, mRNA expression of inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS) and constitutive nitric oxide synthase (cNOS) enzyme in gastric mucosa, Gastric mucosal DNA fragmentation study. Bezafibrate demonstrated dose-dependent antiulcer activity, showed antisecretory and gastro protective action, reduced lipid peroxidation, inhibit iNOS expression, preserve cNOS expression and qualitatively inhibited DNA fragmentation and improved upon the Histopathological score of gastric mucosa.

The histopathological findings of the gastric mucosa:

Aspirin administration showed superficial erosion and ulceration on the mucosa and infiltration of inflammatory cells. Co administration of bezafibrate with aspirin showed gastric mucosa with reepithilization, formation of pits and decreased infiltration of inflammatory cells. From this finding we can say that bezafibrate (a PPAR α agonist) might have an anti inflammatory activity in gastric ulcer. This is the new finding seen with Bezafibrate and if proven clinically can be used in combination with aspirin (unpublished data).

PPAR γ AND GASTRIC ULCER

PPAR γ is a subtype type of PPARs which is a nuclear hormone receptor super family. The transcription of numerous cellular processes and various cytokines is controlled by activation of PPAR γ ^[37]. The function and differentiation of immune cells and synthesis of many inflammatory cytokines like tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF- α) might be controlled by stimulation of PPAR γ ^[38]. Cytoprotective and antioxidant activities of PPAR γ activation have been demonstrated in several experimental studies^[39]. The role of PPAR γ has been implicated in various disease conditions like atherosclerosis, inflammation, cancer and infertility. In adipose tissue, PPAR γ is highly expressed and it plays an important role in the differentiation of adipocyte and maintenance of insulin responses.

PPAR γ is widely distributed in the colon and the major sources might be the macrophages and epithelial cells. The other tissues which expressed PPAR γ are small intestine, liver, pancreas and stomach. Low concentrations of PPAR γ are seen in tissues like kidneys, glial cells, cartilage, airway epithelial cells and skin. Whereas gene of PPAR γ is almost undetectable in muscles^[40]. In spite the fact that colonic epithelial cells highly expressed PPAR γ , investigators have also demonstrated the effect of the PPAR γ /RXR in gastric disorders. Most gastric cancer cell lines expressed PPAR γ and RXR α both at mRNA and protein level^[41]. Studies have not been fully explored the distribution of PPAR γ in human stomach tissue. In the published literatures, reports are there about the constitutive and the ubiquitous expression of PPAR γ mainly by epithelial cells in normal human gastric mucosa^[42]. During gastritis, there noticeably increased in the expression of PPAR γ in gastric mucosa^[41]. This finding may substantiate the preventive regulatory role of PPAR γ in inflammatory cascade and could be a target for the prevention of gastric inflammation. This hypothesis has been supported by many studies in which PPAR γ agonists demonstrated the protective role in gastric inflammation in chemical-induced gastritis models in rats^[43,44]. A study by Hamaguchi *et al*^[43] demonstrated the ulcer healing property of 15d-prostaglandin J2, a natural PPAR γ agonist, in gastric ulcer model without the effect on gastric-acid secretion. A study by Takagi *et al*^[44] also supported this finding of Hamaguchi and colleagues by demonstrating the beneficial effects of pioglitazone, a specific ligand of PPAR γ on aspirin-induced

gastric mucosal injury, which could be attributable to the inhibition of production of gastric TNF- α . Another study by Naito *et al*^[45] further substantiated the anti-inflammatory properties of pioglitazone in experimentally induced gastric mucosal injury in rat which could be attributable to its. Naito *et al*^[45] also explores the antioxidative property of pioglitazone in their study. The ulcer healing property of pioglitazone was also demonstrated by Konturek *et al*^[46] in rat. They determined the effect of pioglitazone on the healing of gastric ulcers in rats. Konturek *et al*^[46] explored the following parameters in their study to demonstrate the ulcer healing property of pioglitazone: Measuring the gastric mucosal blood flow, measuring the expression of various cytokines like interleukin-1 α , TNF- α and measuring the expression of various protective proteins like heat shock protein 70 (HSP70), cNOS, iNOS, cyclooxygenase-1 and cyclooxygenase-2 in gastric mucosa. There was significant increased in gastric ulcer healing by pioglitazone pre-treatment as there was significant increased in blood flow at the ulcer margin and there was reduction in the area of gastric ulcers. There was significant increased in the expression of PPAR γ mRNA in the gastric mucosa (ulcerated). Therefore the study by Konturek *et al*^[46] demonstrated the ulcer healing property of pioglitazone and also supports the anti-inflammatory action of pioglitazone.

The gastroprotective effect of another PPAR γ agonist, rosiglitazone, has been documented by Villegas *et al*^[47] against ischemia - reperfusion induced injury in the rat stomach. The potent gastro protective and ulcer healing properties of pioglitazone was also determined in another study by Brzozowski *et al*^[37]. In this study, the authors were also able to demonstrate the role of endogenous PG and NO in gastroprotective and hyperaemic actions of pioglitazone. There were significantly decreased in the release and expression of various proinflammatory cytokines like TNF- α and IL-1 β by pioglitazone. The acceleration of ulcer healing by the PPAR γ ligand may be attributed to the increase in angiogenesis at the ulcer margin by a significant increase in the expression of PECAM-1 protein, a marker of angiogenesis^[37].

The latest study by El-Moselhy *et al*^[48] further documented the involvement of PPAR γ activation in nitric oxide mediated gastric ulcer healing in rats. Stress - induced ulcer model was used in this study. The nitric oxide pathway was explored. To demonstrate the gastroprotective effect of rosiglitazone, the authors used the following groups of animals: Rosiglitazone alone treated group, rosiglitazone + PPAR γ antagonist (BADGE) group, rosiglitazone + nitric oxide synthase inhibitor (L-NAME) group. The authors concluded that the gastroprotective effect of rosiglitazone might be because of its antisecretory, antioxidant and anti-inflammatory properties^[48].

CONCLUSION

The findings of the experimental studies suggest the involvement of PPAR α and γ in gastric ulcer. Regarding the involvement of PPAR α , there are two studies

published in the literature which showed gastric antisecretory effects of phenoxyisobutyrate (ciprofibrate, bezafibrate and clofibrate) and gastric cytoprotective effects of bezafibrate in the rat gastric ulcer model. The majority of the experimental studies is on pioglitazone and rosiglitazone, which are PPAR γ activators. In all the studies, both the PPAR γ activators showed protection against the gastric ulcer and also accelerate the ulcer healing in gastric ulcer model in rats. The mechanisms involved in the protection of gastric ulcer explored in these studies are antioxidant activity, anti-inflammatory activity, angiogenic activity and over expression of HSP70. Therefore, PPAR α and PPAR γ may be a target for gastric ulcer therapy. Finally, more studies are also needed to confirm the involvement of PPAR α and γ in gastric ulcer.

REFERENCES

- Desvergne B, Wahli W. Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors: nuclear control of metabolism. *Endocr Rev* 1999; **20**: 649-688 [PMID: 10529898 DOI: 10.1210/edrv.20.5.0380]
- Kersten S, Wahli W. Peroxisome proliferator activated receptor agonists. *EXS* 2000; **89**: 141-151 [PMID: 10997287 DOI: 10.1007/978-3-0348-8393-1_9]
- Michalik L, Desvergne B, Wahli W. Peroxisome-proliferator-activated receptors and cancers: complex stories. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2004; **4**: 61-70 [PMID: 14708026 DOI: 10.1038/nrc1254]
- Evans RM, Barish GD, Wang YX. PPARs and the complex journey to obesity. *Nat Med* 2004; **10**: 355-361 [PMID: 15057233 DOI: 10.1038/nm1025]
- Nahle Z. PPAR trilogy from metabolism to cancer. *Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care* 2004; **7**: 397-402 [PMID: 15192441 DOI: 10.1097/01.mco.0000134360.30911.bb]
- Michalik L, Auwerx J, Berger JP, Chatterjee VK, Glass CK, Gonzalez FJ, Grimaldi PA, Kadowaki T, Lazar MA, O'Rahilly S, Palmer CN, Plutzky J, Reddy JK, Spiegelman BM, Staels B, Wahli W. International Union of Pharmacology. LXI. Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors. *Pharmacol Rev* 2006; **58**: 726-741 [PMID: 17132851 DOI: 10.1124/pr.58.4.5]
- Michalik L, Wahli W. Involvement of PPAR nuclear receptors in tissue injury and wound repair. *J Clin Invest* 2006; **116**: 598-606 [PMID: 16511592 DOI: 10.1172/JCI27958]
- Fajas L, Fruchart JC, Auwerx J. PPARgamma3 mRNA: a distinct PPARgamma mRNA subtype transcribed from an independent promoter. *FEBS Lett* 1998; **438**: 55-60 [PMID: 9821958 DOI: 10.1016/S0014-5793(98)01273-3]
- Al-Shali K, Cao H, Knoers N, Hermus AR, Tack CJ, Hegele RA. A single-base mutation in the peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma4 promoter associated with altered in vitro expression and partial lipodystrophy. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2004; **89**: 5655-5660 [PMID: 15531525 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2004-0280]
- Zhu Y, Alvares K, Huang Q, Rao MS, Reddy JK. Cloning of a new member of the peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gene family from mouse liver. *J Biol Chem* 1993; **268**: 26817-26820 [PMID: 8262913]
- Meirhaeghe A, Amouyel P. Impact of genetic variation of PPARgamma in humans. *Mol Genet Metab* 2004; **83**: 93-102 [PMID: 15464424 DOI: 10.1016/j.ymgme.2004.08.014]
- Tontonoz P, Hu E, Graves RA, Budavari AI, Spiegelman BM. mPPAR gamma 2: tissue-specific regulator of an adipocyte enhancer. *Genes Dev* 1994; **8**: 1224-1234 [PMID: 7926726 DOI: 10.1101/gad.8.10.1224]
- Diradourian C, Girard J, Pégrier JP. Phosphorylation of PPARs: from molecular characterization to physiological relevance. *Biochimie* 2005; **87**: 33-38 [PMID: 15733734 DOI: 10.1016/

- j.biochi.2004.11.010]
- 14 **Renaud JP**, Moras D. Structural studies on nuclear receptors. *Cell Mol Life Sci* 2000; **57**: 1748-1769 [PMID: 11130180 DOI: 10.1007/PL00000656]
 - 15 **Mangelsdorf DJ**, Evans RM. The RXR heterodimers and orphan receptors. *Cell* 1995; **83**: 841-850 [PMID: 8521508 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(95)90200-7]
 - 16 **Berger J**, Moller DE. The mechanisms of action of PPARs. *Annu Rev Med* 2002; **53**: 409-435 [PMID: 11818483 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.med.53.082901.104018]
 - 17 **Ricote M**, Glass CK. PPARs and molecular mechanisms of transrepression. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2007; **1771**: 926-935 [PMID: 17433773 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbali.2007.02.013]
 - 18 **Yessoufou A**, Wahli W. Multifaceted roles of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors (PPARs) at the cellular and whole organism levels. *Swiss Med Wkly* 2010; **140**: w13071 [PMID: 20842602 DOI: 10.4414/sm.w.2010.13071]
 - 19 **Torchia J**, Glass C, Rosenfeld MG. Co-activators and co-repressors in the integration of transcriptional responses. *Curr Opin Cell Biol* 1998; **10**: 373-383 [PMID: 9640539 DOI: 10.1016/S0955-0674(98)80014-8]
 - 20 **Li M**, Pascual G, Glass CK. Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma-dependent repression of the inducible nitric oxide synthase gene. *Mol Cell Biol* 2000; **20**: 4699-4707 [PMID: 10848596 DOI: 10.1128/MCB.20.13.4699-4707.2000]
 - 21 **Huin C**, Corriveau L, Bianchi A, Keller JM, Collet P, Krémari-Bouillaud P, Domenjoud L, Bécuwe P, Schohn H, Ménard D, Dauça M. Differential expression of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors (PPARs) in the developing human fetal digestive tract. *J Histochem Cytochem* 2000; **48**: 603-611 [PMID: 10769044 DOI: 10.1177/002215540004800504]
 - 22 **Braissant O**, Wahli W. Differential expression of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-alpha, -beta, and -gamma during rat embryonic development. *Endocrinology* 1998; **139**: 2748-2754 [PMID: 9607781 DOI: 10.1210/en.139.6.2748]
 - 23 **Cuzzocrea S**, Di Paola R, Mazzon E, Genovese T, Muià C, Centorrino T, Caputi AP. Role of endogenous and exogenous ligands for the peroxisome proliferators activated receptors alpha (PPAR-alpha) in the development of inflammatory bowel disease in mice. *Lab Invest* 2004; **84**: 1643-1654 [PMID: 15492755 DOI: 10.1038/labinvest.3700185]
 - 24 **Griffioen M**, Steegenga WT, Ouwerkerk IJ, Peltenburg LT, Jochemsen AG, Schrier PI. Repression of the minimal HLA-B promoter by c-myc and p53 occurs through independent mechanisms. *Mol Immunol* 1998; **35**: 829-835 [PMID: 9839551 DOI: 10.1016/S0161-5890(98)00074-1]
 - 25 **Watson JD**, Oster SK, Shago M, Khosravi F, Penn LZ. Identifying genes regulated in a Myc-dependent manner. *J Biol Chem* 2002; **277**: 36921-36930 [PMID: 12145275 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M201493200]
 - 26 **Varet J**, Vincent L, Mirshahi P, Pille JV, Legrand E, Opolon P, Mishal Z, Soria J, Li H, Soria C. Fenofibrate inhibits angiogenesis in vitro and in vivo. *Cell Mol Life Sci* 2003; **60**: 810-819 [PMID: 12785728 DOI: 10.1007/s00018-003-2322-6]
 - 27 **Kasai T**, Miyauchi K, Yokoyama T, Aihara K, Daida H. Efficacy of peroxisome proliferative activated receptor (PPAR)-alpha ligands, fenofibrate, on intimal hyperplasia and constrictive remodeling after coronary angioplasty in porcine models. *Atherosclerosis* 2006; **188**: 274-280 [PMID: 16325819 DOI: 10.1016/j.atheroscler.2005.10.047]
 - 28 **Pozzi A**, Capdevila JH. PPARalpha Ligands as Antitumorigenic and Antiangiogenic Agents. *PPAR Res* 2008; **2008**: 906542 [PMID: 18725983 DOI: 10.1155/2008/906542]
 - 29 **Martinasso G**, Oraldi M, Trombetta A, Maggiora M, Bertetto O, Canuto RA, Muzio G. Involvement of PPARs in Cell Proliferation and Apoptosis in Human Colon Cancer Specimens and in Normal and Cancer Cell Lines. *PPAR Res* 2007; **2007**: 93416 [PMID: 17389773 DOI: 10.1155/2007/93416]
 - 30 **Gizard F**, Amant C, Barbier O, Bellosta S, Robillard R, Percevault F, Sevestre H, Krimpenfort P, Corsini A, Rochette J, Glineur C, Fruchart JC, Torpier G, Staels B. PPAR alpha inhibits vascular smooth muscle cell proliferation underlying intimal hyperplasia by inducing the tumor suppressor p16INK4a. *J Clin Invest* 2005; **115**: 3228-3238 [PMID: 16239970 DOI: 10.1172/JCI22756]
 - 31 **Lachal S**, Ford J, Shulkes A, Baldwin GS. PPARalpha agonists stimulate progastrin production in human colorectal carcinoma cells. *Regul Pept* 2004; **120**: 243-251 [PMID: 15177943 DOI: 10.1016/j.regpep.2004.03.015]
 - 32 **Martinsen TC**, Skogaker NE, Bendheim MØ, Waldum HL. Antral G cells in rats during dosing with a PPAR alpha agonist: a morphometric and immunocytochemical study. *Med Electron Microsc* 2003; **36**: 18-32 [PMID: 12658348 DOI: 10.1007/s007950300003]
 - 33 **Allen A**, Flemström G, Garner A, Kivilaakso E. Gastroduodenal mucosal protection. *Physiol Rev* 1993; **73**: 823-857 [PMID: 8415927]
 - 34 **Newaz M**, Blanton A, Fidelis P, Oyekan A. NAD(P)H oxidase/nitric oxide interactions in peroxisome proliferator activated receptor (PPAR)alpha-mediated cardiovascular effects. *Mutat Res* 2005; **579**: 163-171 [PMID: 16054168 DOI: 10.1016/j.mrfmmm.2005.02.024]
 - 35 **Pathak R**, Asad M, Hrishikeshavan HJ, Prasad S. Effect of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-alpha agonist (bezafibrate) on gastric secretion and gastric cytoprotection in rats. *Fundam Clin Pharmacol* 2007; **21**: 291-296 [PMID: 17521298 DOI: 10.1111/j.1472-8206.2007.00475.x]
 - 36 **Eason CT**, Pattison A, Howells DD, Spencer AJ, Bonner FW. Assessment of gastric antisecretory effects of phenoxyisobutyrate derivatives in the rat and the mouse. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1988; **23**: 1063-1071 [PMID: 3247588 DOI: 10.3109/00365528809090170]
 - 37 **Brzozowski T**, Konturek PC, Pajdo R, Kwiecień SN, Konturek S, Targosz A, Burnat G, Cieszkowski J, Pawlik WW, Hahn EG. Agonist of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma (PPAR-gamma): a new compound with potent gastroprotective and ulcer healing properties. *Inflammopharmacology* 2005; **13**: 317-330 [PMID: 16259750 DOI: 10.1163/156856005774423908]
 - 38 **Wada K**, Nakajima A, Takahashi H, Yoneda M, Fujisawa N, Ohsawa E, Kadowaki T, Kubota N, Terauchi Y, Matsuhashi N, Saubermann LJ, Nakajima N, Blumberg RS. Protective effect of endogenous PPARgamma against acute gastric mucosal lesions associated with ischemia-reperfusion. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2004; **287**: G452-G458 [PMID: 15246971 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00523.2003]
 - 39 **Gumieniczek A**. Modification of cardiac oxidative stress in alloxan-induced diabetic rabbits with repaglinide treatment. *Life Sci* 2005; **78**: 259-263 [PMID: 16137706 DOI: 10.1016/j.lfs.2005.04.074]
 - 40 **Dubuquoy L**, Dharancy S, Nutten S, Pettersson S, Auwerx J, Desreumaux P. Role of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma and retinoid X receptor heterodimer in hepatogastroenterological diseases. *Lancet* 2002; **360**: 1410-1418 [PMID: 12424006 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(02)11395-X]
 - 41 **Wu K**, Yao L, Wu H, Liu Z, Li L, Qiao T, Fan D. Expression of PPAR gamma and RXR alpha in tissue and cell lines of gastric carcinoma. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **120**: A64 [DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(08)80296-X]
 - 42 **Nomura S**, Nakajima A, Osawa E, Sekihara H, Matsuhashi N, Kaminishi M. Gastric expression of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor γ (PPAR γ) in gastritis and gastric tumors. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **120**: A519 [DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(01)82513-0]
 - 43 **Hamaguchi M**, Watanabe T, Higuchi K, Tominaga K, Fujiwara Y, Arakawa T. Marked enhancement of gastric ulcer healing by peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor γ ligands in rats. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **120**: A162 [DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(08)80799-8]
 - 44 **Takagi T**, Naito Y, Matsuyama K, Yagi N, Yoshida N, Yoshikawa T. Pioglitazone, a specific PPAR γ ligand, inhibits aspirin-induced gastric injury in rats. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **120**: A609
 - 45 **Naito Y**, Takagi T, Matsuyama K, Yoshida N, Yoshikawa T. Pioglitazone, a specific PPAR-gamma ligand, inhibits aspirin-induced gastric mucosal injury in rats. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2001; **15**:

- 865-873 [PMID: 11380325 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2036.2001.00983.x]
- 46 **Konturek PC**, Brzozowski T, Kania J, Konturek SJ, Kwiecien S, Pajdo R, Hahn EG. Pioglitazone, a specific ligand of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-gamma, accelerates gastric ulcer healing in rat. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2003; **472**: 213-220 [PMID: 12871756 DOI: 10.1016/S0014-2999(03)01932-0]
- 47 **Villegas I**, Martín AR, Toma W, de la Lastra CA. Rosiglitazone, an agonist of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma, protects against gastric ischemia-reperfusion damage in rats: role of oxygen free radicals generation. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2004; **505**: 195-203 [PMID: 15556153 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejphar.2004.10.020]
- 48 **El-Moselhy MA**, Nazmy WH. Involvement of PPAR γ activation in NO mediated gastric ulcer healing in rats. *Asian J Pharm Clin Res* 2013; **6**: 200-205

P- Reviewer: Actis GC, Bashashati M **S- Editor:** Tian YL
L- Editor: A **E- Editor:** Li D



2015 Advances in *Helicobacter Pylori****Helicobacter pylori*: Effect of coexisting diseases and update on treatment regimens**

Shen-Shong Chang, Hsiao-Yun Hu

Shen-Shong Chang, Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Internal Medicine, Taipei City Hospital Yang-Ming Branch, School of Medicine, Institute of Public Health and Department of Public Health, National Yang-Ming University, Taipei 112, Taiwan

Hsiao-Yun Hu, Institute of Public Health and Department of Public Health, National Yang-Ming University, Taipei 112, Taiwan

Hsiao-Yun Hu, Department of Education and Research, Taipei City Hospital, Taipei 103, Taiwan

Author contributions: Chang SS and Hu HY contributed equally to this study.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Hsiao-Yun Hu, PhD, Department of Education and Research, Taipei City Hospital, No. 145 Zhengzhou Rd., Taipei 103, Taiwan. hyhu@ym.edu.tw
Telephone: +886-2-27093600-3816
Fax: +886-2-28261002

Received: April 27, 2015

Peer-review started: May 1, 2015

First decision: May 18, 2015

Revised: June 10, 2015

Accepted: September 14, 2015

Article in press: September 15, 2015

Published online: November 6, 2015

Abstract

The presence of concomitant diseases is an independent

predictive factor for non-*Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) peptic ulcers. Patients contracting concomitant diseases have an increased risk of developing ulcer disease through pathogenic mechanisms distinct from those of *H. pylori* infections. Factors other than *H. pylori* seem critical in peptic ulcer recurrence in end stage renal disease (ESRD) and cirrhotic patients. However, early *H. pylori* eradication is associated with a reduced risk of recurrent complicated peptic ulcers in patients with ESRD and liver cirrhosis. Resistances to triple therapy are currently detected using culture-based and molecular methods. Culture susceptibility testing before first- or second-line therapy is inadvisable. Using highly effective empiric first-line and rescue regimens can yield acceptable results. Sequential therapy has been included in a recent consensus report as a valid first-line option for eradicating *H. pylori* in geographic regions with high clarithromycin resistance. Two novel eradication regimens, namely concomitant and hybrid therapy, have proven more effective in patients with dual- (clarithromycin- and metronidazole-) resistant *H. pylori* strains. We aim to review the prevalence of and eradication therapy for *H. pylori* infection in patients with ESRD and cirrhosis. Moreover, we summarized the updated *H. pylori* eradication regimens.

Key words: Concomitant diseases; *Helicobacter pylori*; Culture susceptibility; Concomitant therapy; Hybrid therapy

© The Author(s) 2015. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: The authors outline that patients contracting concomitant diseases have an increased risk of developing ulcer disease through pathogenic mechanisms distinct from those of *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) infections. Early *H. pylori* eradication is associated with a reduced risk of recurrent complicated peptic ulcers in patients with end stage renal disease and liver cirrhosis. Two novel eradication regimens, namely concomitant

and hybrid therapy, have proven more effective in patients with dual resistant *H. pylori* strains. High-dose amoxicillin therapy is promising and superior to standard regimens. Finally, culture and susceptibility testing should be performed before third-line treatment.

Chang SS, Hu HY. *Helicobacter pylori*: Effect of coexisting diseases and update on treatment regimens. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(4): 127-136 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i4/127.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i4.127>

INTRODUCTION

Helicobacter pylori (*H. pylori*), a widespread human pathogen affecting more than 50% of the human population^[1], has been implicated in the development of peptic ulcer disease (PUD), gastric adenocarcinoma, and mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphoma^[2-4]. Hopkins *et al*^[5] reported that the recurrence of peptic ulcers can markedly decrease from 70% to 10% or lower following *H. pylori* eradication.

Interactions among hosts, pathogens, and environmental factors are crucial to *H. pylori* colonization^[6,7]. The presence of concomitant diseases is an independent predictive factor for non-*H. pylori* peptic ulcers^[8]. Patients contracting concomitant diseases have an increased risk of developing ulcer disease through pathogenic mechanisms distinct from those of *H. pylori* infections^[9,10]. Another explanation for the reported association between concomitant diseases and *H. pylori*-negative peptic ulcers is that many patients with comorbid conditions require nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs). Whether *H. pylori* eradication can protect all patients with concomitant diseases, such as end-stage renal disease (ESRD) and liver cirrhosis, from ulcer recurrence requires further exploration.

Triple therapy is one of the oldest methods for *H. pylori* eradication. Resistances to triple therapy are currently detected using culture-based and molecular methods. However, such methods are difficult to apply in clinical practice because of the long period necessary before obtaining results as well as the high costs of routine performance. No therapy regimen can cure *H. pylori* infections in all treated patients, and some patients remain infected despite several consecutive standard therapies^[11]. Concomitant therapy is a combination of antibiotics, including amoxicillin, metronidazole, clarithromycin, and a proton pump inhibitor (PPI), for a period of 5-7 d. This is a novel regimen, regarding which only a few evaluation studies have been published. Thus, the optimal therapy duration and success rates in populations with high dual resistance remain undefined.

END-STAGE RENAL DISEASE

H. pylori prevalence among patients with end-stage renal disease

Studies on *H. pylori* infections in uremic patients have

reported rates varying from 27% to 73.0%^[12-20]. This variation may have been caused by small sample sizes, nonuniform duration of dialysis, and varying methodologies and enrollment criteria. The *H. pylori* infection rate is lower in chronic kidney disease (CKD) (58.52%) and ESRD (56.25%) patients with PUD than in PUD patients without CKD, according to a Taiwanese population-based study^[21]. Sugimoto *et al*^[20] reported an *H. pylori* infection rate of 38.3% in patients with ESRD receiving dialysis for 4 years, suggesting that longer durations of dialysis reduce the risk of *H. pylori* infection. Factors other than *H. pylori* seem critical to peptic ulcer recurrence in patients with ESRD patients. These results imply that the diverse gastric environment of ESRD patients. Factors such as reductions in mucosa prostaglandin^[12], hypergastrinemia^[22], drugs such as NSAIDs^[23], and systemic and local circulatory failure^[20] influence the onset of recurrent PUD in patients with ESRD.

H. pylori tests for patients with end-stage renal disease

Invasive and noninvasive methods are available to detect *H. pylori* infections. However, dialyzed patients are often reluctant to undergo invasive procedures such as endoscopies^[24]. Because patients with ESRD receive antisecretory drugs and require multiple antibiotic treatments for septic complications, inadvertent eradication of *H. pylori* infections is possible. Therefore, many *H. pylori*-negative patients with positive serologies were previously infected with *H. pylori* and inadvertently cured. The 2007 Maastricht Consensus Report on the diagnosis and treatment of *H. pylori* infections does not recommend the serological determination of *H. pylori* infections in routine clinical practice^[25]. Huang *et al*^[26] proposed that the diagnostic accuracy of *H. pylori* detection in patients with ESRD can be improved by performing the ¹³C-urea breath test (UBT) after hemodialysis therapy and assessing the UBT with a cutoff excess 13CO₂/12CO₂ ratio value exceeding 5. However, the diagnostic efficacy of the UBT for patients with ESRD remains less accurate than that for dyspeptic patients without renal impairment.

The UBT seems to be the most reliable diagnostic method for *H. pylori* infections in patients with chronic renal failure (CRF), and stool antigen tests show heterogeneous results, with substantial differences among manufacturers^[24]. However, Wang *et al*^[27] proposed that stool antigen is a noninvasive and reliable tool for screening *H. pylori* infections before therapy and assessing the success of eradication therapy in patients with ESRD. Establishing the reliability of diagnostic methods for *H. pylori* is crucial for managing infection^[28]. Patients contracting CRF often have reduced gastric acid secretion and increased levels of urea in the blood and gastric juices^[29-31], which may affect the density and distribution of *H. pylori* infections and, consequently, the reliability of diagnostic tests. Because no diagnostic tests for *H. pylori* infections are 100% reliable, the European *Helicobacter pylori* Study Group guidelines^[32] recommend determining a gold standard from at

least two techniques. The approach of combining all techniques has been used in previous studies evaluating the methods of diagnosing *H. pylori* infections^[24,33,34]. However, this approach is too costly for use in clinical practice.

***H. pylori* therapy in patients with end-stage renal disease**

The optimal therapeutic regimen for *H. pylori* infection remains undefined in patients with ESRD. Few studies concerning triple therapy in uremic patients have been reported^[27,35-39]. A 1-wk course of PPI-based triple therapy (omeprazole, 20 mg twice daily; amoxicillin, 1 g twice daily; and clarithromycin, 500 mg twice daily) achieved a high eradication rate of *H. pylori* infection in patients with CRF and a creatinine clearance (CrCl) of less than 30 mL/min per 1.73 m², similar to that of controls with normal renal function^[35]. The regimen was tolerated favorably. Another study showed that 7-d triple therapy with a low-dose OAC (omeprazole, 40 mg daily; amoxicillin, 500 mg daily; and clarithromycin, 500 mg daily) regimen was effective and safe for eradicating *H. pylori* infections in hemodialysis patients^[40].

Amoxicillin^[41] and clarithromycin^[42], which are primarily eliminated renally, necessitate dosage reduction in patients with renal impairment according to CrCl. Wang *et al*^[27] used 7-d triple therapy with omeprazole (20 mg twice daily), amoxicillin (1 g twice daily), and clarithromycin (500 mg twice daily) and reported an eradication rate of 86.8% among 40 hemodialysis patients. Tsukada *et al*^[38] reported an eradication rate of 82.0% among 39 hemodialysis patients using 7-d triple therapy with omeprazole (30 mg twice daily), amoxicillin (500 mg twice daily), and clarithromycin (400 mg twice daily). Itatsu *et al*^[39] used 7-d triple therapy with lansoprazole (30 mg twice daily), amoxicillin (375 mg twice daily), and clarithromycin (200 mg twice daily) in 11 hemodialysis patients and achieved an eradication rate of 72.7%.

Ideal treatment regimens should be effective, simple, and safe with fewer adverse effects and high patient compliance. One of the main reasons for treatment failure is irregular therapy with low compliance^[43]. The prevalence of resistance to antibiotics, particularly clarithromycin and nitroimidazoles varies with gender, ethnic group and country^[44]. Resistance to amoxicillin does not appear to be a critical problem in *H. pylori*-infected ESRD and non-ESRD patients in Turkey. By contrast, rates of resistance to clarithromycin are high, particularly in the ESRD population^[45]. Prospective studies on the optimal therapy protocol, including antibiotic combination, dosage, and duration, in ESRD patients are warranted.

***H. pylori* eradication and recurrent peptic ulcers in patients with end-stage renal disease**

Patients with ESRD receiving hemodialysis often have various gastrointestinal (GI) problems such as nausea, dyspepsia, appetite loss, epigastric discomfort, and

heartburn. Patients with ESRD exhibit a higher incidence of PUD than do patients without renal disease^[12]. *H. pylori* is critical in the development of peptic ulcers^[46]. Therefore, physicians must consider these two factors when treating ESRD in patients with upper GI disease.

ESRD is associated with a substantial health care burden in hospitalized patients with peptic ulcer bleeding (PUB). The presence of ESRD contributes to a higher mortality rate, longer hospital stay, and increased need for surgery among such patients^[47]. A population-based study conducted in Taiwan^[48] over a 10-year period revealed that PUD incidence was 10-12 times higher in patients with CKD than in those without CKD. Luo *et al*^[49] reported that patients with ESRD receiving hemodialysis exhibited a high risk of PUB. Another study showed that patients with ESRD had a higher long-term risk of peptic ulcer rebleeding^[50]. A crucial question is whether *H. pylori* eradication therapy is necessary for *H. pylori*-infected dialysis patients. Although *H. pylori* eradication is unequivocally effective in preventing peptic ulcer recurrence in the general population^[3], such effectiveness has not been established in patients with ESRD. Tseng *et al*^[12] conducted a prospective study in a single hospital and reported that *H. pylori* eradication in patients with ESRD reduces recurrent PUD. In addition, a higher recurrent peptic ulcer rate was noted after successful *H. pylori* eradication in *H. pylori*-infected ESRD patients. Sugimoto *et al*^[20,51] reported that initiating hemodialysis treatment triggers a decrease in the prevalence of *H. pylori* infection. Moreover, receiving a maximum of 4 years of dialysis treatment has naturally cured *H. pylori* infection, thus supporting the practice of administering eradication therapy to *H. pylori*-infected dialysis patients, particularly those receiving dialysis for 5 years or more. However, a population-based study in Taiwan^[52] revealed that early *H. pylori* eradication is associated with a reduced risk of recurrent complicated peptic ulcers in patients with ESRD; the authors recommended administering *H. pylori* eradication within 120 d after peptic ulcer diagnosis in *H. pylori*-infected ESRD patients who have developed peptic ulcers.

LIVER CIRRHOSIS

***H. pylori* prevalence in patients with liver cirrhosis**

Cirrhotic patients with PUB have a 5-fold higher risk of complications or death^[53]. *H. pylori* infection promotes the production of ammonia, which is an etiological factor involved in gastric mucosa disorders^[54]. However, decompensated liver cirrhosis also involves hepatic encephalopathy because of higher serum ammonia levels. Thus, decompensated cirrhotic patients with *H. pylori* infections seem to have a higher risk of gastric mucosa lesions and GI complications.

Kim *et al*^[55] revealed that *H. pylori* infection in cirrhotic patients may be inversely related to the severity of liver cirrhosis (Child-Pugh class A group: 51.5%, class B group: 30.5%, and class C group: 20%). Jung *et al*^[56] also showed that the *H. pylori* infection rate

is approximately 71.1% (162 of 228 patients) in all cirrhotic patients with peptic ulcers; however, the rate is only 50.0% (17 of 34 patients) in the Child-Pugh class C group. By contrast, Siringo *et al.*^[57] used serum anti-*H. pylori* IgG antibody levels to confirm a higher *H. pylori* infection rate of 76.5% in cirrhotic patients and 95.1% in cirrhotic patients with peptic ulcers. Such variability is likely explained by differences in *H. pylori* prevalence inherent in different populations and methodological differences among studies, including the means of testing used to define the presence of infection.

Bhargava *et al.*^[58] showed that gastric mucosa from patients with portal hypertension exhibited typical vascular dilatation and congestion, whereas the *H. pylori* infection rate was significantly lower in patients with portal hypertension (51.5% *H. pylori* infection rate) with particularly marked vascular dilatation (only 18.8% *H. pylori* infection rate) compared with the controls (75.5% *H. pylori* infection rate). Factors other than *H. pylori* seem critical in peptic ulcer recurrence in cirrhotic patients. In addition, *H. pylori* is not the predominant etiology for liver cirrhosis, particularly the decompensated type, with PUD or recurrent ulcer disease, according to a population-based study conducted in Taiwan^[59]. This is consistent with previous studies^[55,60,61], and a 35.6% to 51.92% *H. pylori* infection rate in cirrhotic patients with peptic ulcers.

***H. pylori* eradication and recurrent peptic ulcers in patients with liver cirrhosis**

The prevalence of *H. pylori* in patients with cirrhosis and PUD is generally less than 60%^[60,62-65], suggesting that the pathogenesis of ulcer disease in a substantial proportion of cirrhotic patients may not be related to *H. pylori* infection^[66-69]. Host environments are crucial to *H. pylori* colonization^[7,70]. *H. pylori* adapts to humans, colonizing in children and remaining persistent throughout life^[71]. The pathogenesis of the high peptic ulcer rate in cirrhotic patients is multifactorial. Cirrhotic patients have a higher risk of gastric mucosa damage because of reduced mucosal prostaglandin, which is crucial in the cytoprotection of gastric mucosa, which causes PUD. Other factors including increased serum gastrin concentration^[72], impaired mucus secretion^[73], and portal hypertensive gastropathy^[74,75] may contribute to peptic ulcers and peptic ulcer recurrence in cirrhotic patients.

Compared with the general population, patients with cirrhosis have greater bleeding complications, delayed healing, and higher ulcer recurrence rates^[68]. Luo *et al.*^[76] proposed that the risk of developing PUB in liver cirrhosis patients is 4-fold. A group of researchers from Taiwan found that 21 (58%) patients in whom *H. pylori* infections were eradicated developed recurrent duodenal ulcers within a year^[60]. These results suggest that the pathogenesis of ulcer disease in a substantial proportion of patients with cirrhosis may not be related to *H. pylori* infection, a possibility proposed by researchers^[65,67]. However, early *H. pylori* eradication is associated with a lower risk of recurrent peptic ulcers

in cirrhotic patients, according to a Taiwan population-based study^[77]. *H. pylori* eradication therapy is the primary method of treating cirrhotic patients with peptic ulcers.

***H. pylori* eradication and hepatic encephalopathy in patients with liver cirrhosis**

A meta-analysis showed that *H. pylori* infections are associated with elevated blood ammonia levels in cirrhotic patients. In addition, the association seems more prominent in Asian patients than in Caucasian patients^[78]. Addressing whether *H. pylori* eradication may benefit the long-term management of hepatic encephalopathy. Some studies have shown the benefit of eradication therapy^[79-81]; however, other studies have reported negative results^[82-84].

An ideal study protocol should also address a homogenous study population according to the severity of liver cirrhosis, assessment of psychometric tests, and measurements of ammonia levels in the blood. Currently, the demonstrated beneficial effect of eradication therapy in *H. pylori*-positive cirrhotic patients is insufficient for recommending the use of this therapy in clinical practice. An appropriately randomized study designed to assess the influence of *H. pylori* eradication on hepatic encephalopathy in cirrhotic patients is warranted.

ENTEROHEPATIC *HELICOBACTER* AND LIVER DISEASE

Bile-tolerant *helicobacter* species such as *H. hepaticus* and *H. bilis* have frequently been reported to cause hepatitis in mice and other rodents^[85]. The most comprehensively studied member of this group of enterohepatic *Helicobacter* species is *H. hepaticus*^[86]. *H. bilis* has been found in species of inbred mice and reported to induce chronic hepatitis and hepatocellular carcinomas^[87]. *H. hepaticus* was initially detected by immunofluorescence, electron microscopy, and culture in the livers of certain inbred mice and has been shown to cause multifocal necrotizing hepatitis, hepatic adenomas, and hepatocellular carcinomas^[88,89]. The reason for further study of the possible role of these new *helicobacter* species in human liver disease has been to develop noninvasive serological assays for determining the seroprevalence of hepatic *helicobacter* infections^[85].

Fox *et al.*^[90] stated that *H. hepaticus* infection increased the risk of liver cancer in hepatitis C virus and/or Hepatitis B virus infection. Fukuda *et al.*^[91] revealed that serum anti-*H. hepaticus* and/or anti-*H. bilis* antibody levels were significantly higher in patients with liver disease than in patients with other autoimmune hepatitis. Liver cirrhosis patients exhibited a substantially higher anti-*H. hepaticus* serum antibody level than other liver disease and health donors^[92]. Although *Helicobacter* spp. have been identified in the liver of humans, their pathogenic role in human liver diseases remains largely unclear^[93]. Kleine *et al.*^[94] established an *in vitro* model

for demonstrating the pathogenic effect of a *Helicobacter* spp. on human liver cells, resulting in an inflammatory response with increased synthesis of inflammatory mediators and consecutive monocyte activation. The higher prevalence of *Helicobacter* spp. associated with more advanced stages of liver disease supports the possibility of their role in the progression of chronic hepatitis toward cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma. An interventional study aimed at eradicating *Helicobacter* spp. from the liver would elucidate this association between *Helicobacter* spp. and liver cirrhosis and is thus warranted^[93].

UPDATED *H. PYLORI* THERAPY

Successful eradication of *H. pylori* is a major component in treating these conditions^[95]. However, the rate of *H. pylori* eradication after triple therapy is decreasing, with standard amoxicillin plus clarithromycin-based triple therapy achieving eradication rates of only approximately 75% in many series^[96,97]. Apart from the conventional first-line regimen (triple therapy), other therapies have been proposed (sequential, concomitant, quadruple, and miscellaneous) to face the growing problem of antibiotic resistance. Although unsuccessful eradication can be caused by increasing antimicrobial resistance, an additional critical contributor is the treatment-related side effects and resultant incomplete therapy. New treatment regimens for *H. pylori* infections should be optimized to achieve an eradication rate of $\geq 95\%$ ^[98]. Patient allergies and the local availability of drugs should be considered when selecting a treatment. *H. pylori* eradication should be confirmed after treatment, and, if second-line therapy is required, clarithromycin or a fluoroquinolone should not be reused^[99].

Sequential therapy

First developed in Italy in the 1990s, sequential therapy (5-d PPI and amoxicillin, followed by 5-d PPI, clarithromycin, and metronidazole), is a regimen that has proven more effective in eradicating *H. pylori* than has triple therapy in many studies^[100-104]. Recent multicenter randomized trials conducted in Taiwan have shown the superiority of sequential therapy over standard triple therapy. These findings also support that the most effective eradication regimen should be chosen on the basis of the prevalence of antibiotic-resistant *H. pylori* in a region^[105]. The ability of sequential therapy to eradicate clarithromycin-resistant bacteria has been demonstrated, and sequential therapy has been included in a recent consensus report as a valid first-line option for eradicating *H. pylori* in geographic regions with high clarithromycin resistance^[106].

Hybrid and concomitant therapy

Two novel eradication regimens, namely concomitant and hybrid therapy, have proven more effective than triple and sequential therapy in the last few years, particularly in patients with dual- (clarithromycin- and

metronidazole-) resistant *H. pylori* strains^[107-111]. Meta-analyses have shown that the outcome of concomitant therapy is duration-dependent^[112]. Molina-Infante *et al.*^[113] proposed that optimized nonbismuth quadruple hybrid (consisting of omeprazole 40 mg twice daily and amoxicillin 1 g twice daily for 14 d, plus clarithromycin 500 mg twice daily and nitroimidazole 500 mg twice daily for the final 7 d as a quadruple therapy) and concomitant (consisting of omeprazole 40 mg twice daily, amoxicillin 1 g twice daily, clarithromycin 500 mg twice daily, and nitroimidazole 500 mg twice daily, all concurrently for 14 d) therapies cured more than 90% of patients with *H. pylori* infections in areas of high clarithromycin and metronidazole resistance. In concomitant therapy, all four drugs are administered for the entire therapy duration, indicating that this regimen is less complex than sequential therapy because it does not involve changing the number or type of drugs halfway through the therapy. A recently proposed hybrid therapy has proven as effective as a 14-d concomitant regimen in a pilot study^[106].

High-dose amoxicillin therapy

The efficacy of treatment for *H. pylori* infection has decreased steadily because of increasing resistance to clarithromycin, metronidazole, and levofloxacin. Resistance to amoxicillin is generally low, and high intragastric pH increases the efficacy of amoxicillin. Therefore, Yang *et al.*^[114] proposed that a combination of a high-dose PPI and amoxicillin (dual therapy), consisting of rabeprazole (20 mg, four times daily) and amoxicillin (750 mg, four times daily) for 14 d, is superior to standard regimens as empirical first-line or rescue therapies for *H. pylori* infection and has similar safety profiles and tolerability.

Bismuth-based quadruple therapy

During the initial development of bismuth quadruple therapy, the dose and duration of bismuth therapy were shown to be crucial variables, particularly in regions where metronidazole resistance was common^[115]. However, many studies on these regimens have used suboptimal doses and durations of bismuth therapy, producing relatively poor results^[116]. Bismuth-containing quadruple therapy is an alternative to standard triple therapy in areas with low clarithromycin resistance and the main first-line therapeutic option in areas with high prevalence of clarithromycin resistance. Using this regimen at full doses for 14 d produces a 95% or greater treatment success rate, irrespective of the level of metronidazole resistance^[117].

Salvage therapy

Tailored antimicrobial therapy for an infectious disease is typically selected on the basis of susceptibility testing^[99,118]. The treatment of *H. pylori* infection differs from that of most common infectious diseases because culture and susceptibility testing is generally not offered for *H. pylori* infections by hospital laboratories. In

addition, many *H. pylori* infections can be identified using noninvasive testing (such as UBT or stool antigen testing), indicating that endoscopies are neither necessary nor acceptable to patients, and clinicians must choose treatment empirically. Therefore, culture and susceptibility testing should be performed before third-line treatment^[106]. Salvage therapy (after multiple treatment failures) should be chosen on the basis of susceptibility testing whenever possible^[101].

Probiotic therapy

Song *et al.*^[119] proposed that supplementation with *Saccharomyces boulardii* could be effective for improving *H. pylori* eradication rates by reducing side effects, thus facilitating completion of eradication therapy. Probiotics are mostly administered by modulating the balance of its microflora^[120]. Probiotic adjunct therapy is particularly useful in patients with a history of GI intolerance to antibiotic treatment^[121]. These effects have been demonstrated for several species of probiotics, including *Lactobacillus acidophilus*, *Lactobacillus salivarius*, *Lactobacillus rhamnosus*, and *Bifidobacterium bifidum*, among others^[122-124]. Proposed mechanisms include modulating the colonization of the gastric mucosa and the direct killing of *H. pylori* through secreted metabolites with antimicrobial properties^[95]. The lack of protocol standardization is problematic, and interpreting the various results is difficult.

CONCLUSION

Although other factors influence the onset of peptic ulcer and recurrent peptic ulcer in ESRD and cirrhotic patients, *H. pylori* eradication therapy is the primary method of treating ESRD and cirrhotic patients with peptic ulcers. Culture susceptibility testing before first- or second-line therapy is unadvisable. The known obstacles to culture susceptibility testing include the need for endoscopic examination and the fact that culture is time-consuming, costly, and not 100% sensitive. Using highly effective empiric first-line and rescue regimens can yield acceptable results^[100,107,125]. In the near future, *in vivo* and *in vitro* studies may possibly be grouped according to geographic area to identify the most effective therapy for eradicating *H. pylori*, which relates to the local habitat.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We wish to thank the Taiwan Ministry of Education for their support for this work through its "Aim for the Top University Plan".

REFERENCES

- 1 Suerbaum S, Michetti P. Helicobacter pylori infection. *N Engl J Med* 2002; **347**: 1175-1186 [PMID: 12374879 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra020542]
- 2 Thiede C, Morgner A, Alpen B, Wündisch T, Herrmann J, Ritter M, Ehninger G, Stolte M, Bayerdörffer E, Neubauer A. What role does Helicobacter pylori eradication play in gastric MALT and gastric MALT lymphoma? *Gastroenterology* 1997; **113**: S61-S64 [PMID: 9394762 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(97)80014-5]
- 3 Van der Hulst RW, Rauws EA, Köycü B, Keller JJ, Bruno MJ, Tijssen JG, Tytgat GN. Prevention of ulcer recurrence after eradication of Helicobacter pylori: a prospective long-term follow-up study. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **113**: 1082-1086 [PMID: 9322501 DOI: 10.1053/gast.1997.v113.pm9322501]
- 4 Uemura N, Okamoto S, Yamamoto S, Matsumura N, Yamaguchi S, Yamakido M, Taniyama K, Sasaki N, Schlemper RJ. Helicobacter pylori infection and the development of gastric cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2001; **345**: 784-789 [PMID: 11556297 DOI: 10.1080/003655202760230793]
- 5 Hopkins RJ, Girardi LS, Turney EA. Relationship between Helicobacter pylori eradication and reduced duodenal and gastric ulcer recurrence: a review. *Gastroenterology* 1996; **110**: 1244-1252 [PMID: 8613015 DOI: 10.1053/gast.1996.v110.pm8613015]
- 6 Amieva MR, El-Omar EM. Host-bacterial interactions in Helicobacter pylori infection. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **134**: 306-323 [PMID: 18166359 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.11.009]
- 7 Wu MS, Chen CJ, Lin JT. Host-environment interactions: their impact on progression from gastric inflammation to carcinogenesis and on development of new approaches to prevent and treat gastric cancer. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2005; **14**: 1878-1882 [PMID: 16103430 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-04-0792]
- 8 Gisbert JP, Calvet X. Review article: Helicobacter pylori-negative duodenal ulcer disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2009; **30**: 791-815 [PMID: 19706147 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2009.04105.x]
- 9 Xia HH, Phung N, Kalantar JS, Talley NJ. Demographic and endoscopic characteristics of patients with Helicobacter pylori positive and negative peptic ulcer disease. *Med J Aust* 2000; **173**: 515-519 [PMID: 11194733 DOI: 10.1093/ageing/27.4.427]
- 10 Shahin WA, Abdel-Baset EZ, Nassar AK, Atta MM, Kabil SM, Murray JA. Low incidence of Helicobacter pylori infection in patients with duodenal ulcer and chronic liver disease. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2001; **36**: 479-484 [PMID: 11346200 DOI: 10.1080/003655201750153250]
- 11 Ierardi E, Giorgio F, Losurdo G, Di Leo A, Principi M. How antibiotic resistances could change Helicobacter pylori treatment: A matter of geography? *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 8168-8180 [PMID: 24363506 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i45.8168]
- 12 Tseng GY, Lin HJ, Fang CT, Yang HB, Tseng GC, Wang PC, Hung TL, Deng YC, Cheng YT, Huang CH. Recurrence of peptic ulcer in uraemic and non-uraemic patients after Helicobacter pylori eradication: a 2-year study. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **26**: 925-933 [PMID: 17767477 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2007.03438.x]
- 13 Kang JY, Ho KY, Yeoh KG, Guan R, Wee A, Lee E, Lye WC, Leong SO, Tan CC. Peptic ulcer and gastritis in uraemia, with particular reference to the effect of Helicobacter pylori infection. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1999; **14**: 771-778 [PMID: 10482427 DOI: 10.1046/j.1440-1746.1999.01947.x]
- 14 Sotoudehmanesh R, Ali Asgari A, Ansari R, Nouraei M. Endoscopic findings in end-stage renal disease. *Endoscopy* 2003; **35**: 502-505 [PMID: 12783348 DOI: 10.1055/s-2003-39672]
- 15 Loffeld RJ, Peltenburg HG, vd Oever H, Stobberingh E. Prevalence of Helicobacter pylori antibodies in patients on chronic intermittent haemodialysis. *Nephron* 1991; **59**: 250-253 [PMID: 1956486 DOI: 10.1159/000186560]
- 16 Davenport A, Shallcross TM, Crabtree JE, Davison AM, Will EJ, Heatley RV. Prevalence of Helicobacter pylori in patients with end-stage renal failure and renal transplant recipients. *Nephron* 1991; **59**: 597-601 [PMID: 1766499 DOI: 10.1159/000186650]
- 17 Luzzi F, Imeneo M, Maletta M, Mantelli I, Tancre D, Merando G, Biancone L, Pallone F. Helicobacter pylori-specific IgG in chronic haemodialysis patients: relationship of hypergastrinaemia to positive serology. *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 1996; **11**: 120-124 [PMID: 8649619 DOI: 10.1093/oxfordjournals.ndt.a027026]
- 18 Jaspersen D, Fassbinder W, Heinkele P, Kronsbein H, Schorr W, Raschka C, Brennenstuhl M. Significantly lower prevalence of Helicobacter pylori in uremic patients than in patients with normal renal function. *J Gastroenterol* 1995; **30**: 585-588 [PMID: 8574329]

- DOI: 10.1007/BF02367783]
- 19 **Khedmat H**, Ahmadzad-Asl M, Amini M, Lessan-Pezeshki M, Einollahi B, Pourfarziani V, Naseri MH, Davoudi F. Gastro-duodenal lesions and *Helicobacter pylori* infection in uremic patients and renal transplant recipients. *Transplant Proc* 2007; **39**: 1003-1007 [PMID: 17524875 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2007.03.034]
 - 20 **Sugimoto M**, Sakai K, Kita M, Imanishi J, Yamaoka Y. Prevalence of *Helicobacter pylori* infection in long-term hemodialysis patients. *Kidney Int* 2009; **75**: 96-103 [PMID: 18843261 DOI: 10.1038/ki.2008.508]
 - 21 **Chang SS**, Hu HY. Lower *Helicobacter pylori* infection rate in chronic kidney disease and end-stage renal disease patients with peptic ulcer disease. *J Chin Med Assoc* 2014; **77**: 354-359 [PMID: 24907021 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcma.2014.04.004]
 - 22 **Gür G**, Boyacioglu S, Gül C, Turan M, Gürsoy M, Baysal C, Ozdemir N. Impact of *Helicobacter pylori* infection on serum gastrin in haemodialysis patients. *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 1999; **14**: 2688-2691 [PMID: 10534513 DOI: 10.1093/ndt/14.11.2688]
 - 23 **Tseng GY**, Lin HJ. Aspirin prescription and outcomes in hemodialysis patients. *Am J Kidney Dis* 2008; **51**: 1070-1071; author reply 1071 [PMID: 18501791 DOI: 10.1053/j.ajkd.2008.01.035]
 - 24 **López T**, Quesada M, Almirall J, Sanfeliu I, Segura F, Calvet X. Usefulness of non-invasive tests for diagnosing *Helicobacter pylori* infection in patients undergoing dialysis for chronic renal failure. *Helicobacter* 2004; **9**: 674-680 [PMID: 15610083 DOI: 10.1111/j.1083-4389.2004.00282.x]
 - 25 **Malfertheiner P**, Megraud F, O'Morain C, Bazzoli F, El-Omar E, Graham D, Hunt R, Rokkas T, Vakil N, Kuipers EJ. Current concepts in the management of *Helicobacter pylori* infection: the Maastricht III Consensus Report. *Gut* 2007; **56**: 772-781 [PMID: 17170018 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2006.101634]
 - 26 **Huang JJ**, Huang CJ, Ruaan MK, Chen KW, Yen TS, Sheu BS. Diagnostic efficacy of (13)C-urea breath test for *Helicobacter pylori* infection in hemodialysis patients. *Am J Kidney Dis* 2000; **36**: 124-129 [PMID: 10873881 DOI: 10.1053/ajkd.2000.8284]
 - 27 **Wang YL**, Sheu BS, Huang JJ, Yang HB. Noninvasive stool antigen assay can effectively screen *Helicobacter pylori* infection and assess success of eradication therapy in hemodialysis patients. *Am J Kidney Dis* 2001; **38**: 98-103 [PMID: 11431188 DOI: 10.1053/ajkd.2001.25200]
 - 28 **Chang SS**, Hu HY. Reply. *J Chin Med Assoc* 2014; **77**: 657-658 [PMID: 25443803]
 - 29 **Ala-Kaila K**, Kataja M, Keyriläinen O, Pasternack A. The gastric secretion profile of patients with chronic renal failure. *Ann Clin Res* 1981; **13**: 65-70 [PMID: 7235612 DOI: 10.3109/00365528708991969]
 - 30 **Ala-Kaila K**. Gastric secretion kinetics in chronic renal failure. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1987; **22**: 1185-1192 [PMID: 3324296]
 - 31 **Kim H**, Park C, Jang WI, Lee KH, Kwon SO, Robey-Cafferty SS, Ro JY, Lee YB. The gastric juice urea and ammonia levels in patients with *Campylobacter pylori*. *Am J Clin Pathol* 1990; **94**: 187-191 [PMID: 2371972 DOI: 10.1097/00004836-200205000-00020]
 - 32 Guidelines for clinical trials in *Helicobacter pylori* infection. Working Party of the European *Helicobacter pylori* Study Group. *Gut* 1997; **41** Suppl 2: S1-S9 [PMID: 9404236 DOI: 10.1136/gut.43.5.e728]
 - 33 **Calvet X**, Quesada M, Roselló M, Salceda F, Sanfeliu I, Dalmau B, Gil M. Stool antigen for the diagnosis of *Helicobacter pylori* infection in cirrhosis: comparative usefulness of three different methods. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2003; **17**: 727-731 [PMID: 12641523 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2036.2003.01466.x]
 - 34 **Thijs JC**, van Zwet AA, Thijs WJ, Oey HB, Karrenbeld A, Stellaard F, Luijck DS, Meyer BC, Kleibeuker JH. Diagnostic tests for *Helicobacter pylori*: a prospective evaluation of their accuracy, without selecting a single test as the gold standard. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1996; **91**: 2125-2129 [PMID: 8855734 DOI: 10.1016/0016-5085(95)23623-6]
 - 35 **Mak SK**, Loo CK, Wong AM, Wong PN, Lo KY, Tong GM, Lam EK, Wong AK. Efficacy of a 1-week course of proton-pump inhibitor-based triple therapy for eradicating *Helicobacter pylori* in patients with and without chronic renal failure. *Am J Kidney Dis* 2002; **40**: 576-581 [PMID: 12200810 DOI: 10.1053/ajkd.2002.34916]
 - 36 **Tamura H**, Tokushima H, Murakawa M, Matsumura O, Itoyama S, Sekine S, Hirose H, Mitarai T, Isoda K. Eradication of *Helicobacter pylori* in patients with end-stage renal disease under dialysis treatment. *Am J Kidney Dis* 1997; **29**: 86-90 [PMID: 9002534 DOI: 10.1016/S0272-6386(97)90012-3]
 - 37 **Mak SK**, Loo CK, Wong PN, Lo KY, Tong GM, Lam EK, Wong AK. A retrospective study on efficacy of proton-pump inhibitor-based triple therapy for eradication of *Helicobacter pylori* in patients with chronic renal failure. *Singapore Med J* 2003; **44**: 74-78 [PMID: 14503780]
 - 38 **Tsukada K**, Miyazaki T, Katoh H, Masuda N, Ojima H, Fukai Y, Nakajima M, Manda R, Fukuchi M, Kuwano H, Tsukada O. Seven-day triple therapy with omeprazole, amoxicillin and clarithromycin for *Helicobacter pylori* infection in haemodialysis patients. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2002; **37**: 1265-1268 [PMID: 12465723 DOI: 10.1080/003655202761020524]
 - 39 **Itatsu T**, Miwa H, Nagahara A, Kubota M, Miyazaki A, Sato N, Hayashida Y. Eradication of *Helicobacter pylori* in hemodialysis patients. *Ren Fail* 2007; **29**: 97-102 [PMID: 17365917 DOI: 10.1080/08860220601039122]
 - 40 **Chang WC**, Jo YI, Park HS, Jegal J, Park JH, Lee JH, Jin CJ. *Helicobacter pylori* eradication with a 7-day low-dose triple therapy in hemodialysis patients. *Clin Exp Nephrol* 2010; **14**: 469-473 [PMID: 20632062 DOI: 10.1007/s10157-010-0319-7]
 - 41 **Arancibia A**, Drouguet MT, Fuentes G, González G, González C, Thambo S, Palombo G. Pharmacokinetics of amoxicillin in subjects with normal and impaired renal function. *Int J Clin Pharmacol Ther Toxicol* 1982; **20**: 447-453 [PMID: 7141752 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2125.2000.00149.x]
 - 42 **Fraschini F**, Scaglione F, Demartini G. Clarithromycin clinical pharmacokinetics. *Clin Pharmacokinet* 1993; **25**: 189-204 [PMID: 8222460 DOI: 10.2165/00003088-199325030-00003]
 - 43 **Wermeille J**, Cunningham M, Dederding JP, Girard L, Baumann R, Zelger G, Buri P, Metry JM, Sitavanc R, Gallaz L, Merki H, Godin N. Failure of *Helicobacter pylori* eradication: is poor compliance the main cause? *Gastroenterol Clin Biol* 2002; **26**: 216-219 [PMID: 11981460]
 - 44 **Harris A**, Misiewicz JJ. Treating *Helicobacter pylori*--the best is yet to come? *Gut* 1996; **39**: 781-783 [PMID: 9038656 DOI: 10.1136/gut.39.6.781]
 - 45 **Aydemir S**, Boyacioglu S, Gur G, Demirbilek M, Can FK, Korkmaz M, Yilmaz U. *Helicobacter pylori* infection in hemodialysis patients: susceptibility to amoxicillin and clarithromycin. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 842-845 [PMID: 15682477 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v11.i6.842]
 - 46 **McColl KE**. Clinical practice. *Helicobacter pylori* infection. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **362**: 1597-1604 [PMID: 20427808 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMcP1001110]
 - 47 **Parasa S**, Navaneethan U, Sridhar AR, Venkatesh PG, Olden K. End-stage renal disease is associated with worse outcomes in hospitalized patients with peptic ulcer bleeding. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **77**: 609-616 [PMID: 23357495 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.11.014]
 - 48 **Liang CC**, Muo CH, Wang IK, Chang CT, Chou CY, Liu JH, Yen TH, Huang CC, Chung CJ. Peptic ulcer disease risk in chronic kidney disease: ten-year incidence, ulcer location, and ulcerogenic effect of medications. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e87952 [PMID: 24498412 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0087952]
 - 49 **Luo JC**, Leu HB, Huang KW, Huang CC, Hou MC, Lin HC, Lee FY, Lee SD. Incidence of bleeding from gastroduodenal ulcers in patients with end-stage renal disease receiving hemodialysis. *CMAJ* 2011; **183**: E1345-E1351 [PMID: 22083684 DOI: 10.1503/cmaj.110299]
 - 50 **Wu CY**, Wu MS, Kuo KN, Wang CB, Chen YJ, Lin JT. Long-term peptic ulcer rebleeding risk estimation in patients undergoing haemodialysis: a 10-year nationwide cohort study. *Gut* 2011; **60**: 1038-1042 [PMID: 21266725]
 - 51 **Sugimoto M**, Yamaoka Y. Review of *Helicobacter pylori* infection

- and chronic renal failure. *Ther Apher Dial* 2011; **15**: 1-9 [PMID: 21272246 DOI: 10.1111/j.1744-9987.2010.00851.x]
- 52 **Chang SS**, Hu HY. Association between early *Helicobacter pylori* eradication and a lower risk of recurrent complicated peptic ulcers in end-stage renal disease patients. *Medicine* (Baltimore) 2015; **94**: e370 [PMID: 25569660 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000000370]
 - 53 **Calvet X**, Navarro M, Gil M, Lafont A, Sanfeliu I, Brullet E, Campo R, Dalmau B, Rivero E, Mas P. Epidemiology of peptic ulcer disease in cirrhotic patients: role of *Helicobacter pylori* infection. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1998; **93**: 2501-2507 [PMID: 9860415 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9270(98)00592-9]
 - 54 **Tsujii M**, Kawano S, Tsuji S, Fusamoto H, Kamada T, Sato N. Mechanism of gastric mucosal damage induced by ammonia. *Gastroenterology* 1992; **102**: 1881-1888 [PMID: 1587407 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(00)85070-2]
 - 55 **Kim DJ**, Kim HY, Kim SJ, Hahn TH, Jang MK, Baik GH, Kim JB, Park SH, Lee MS, Park CK. *Helicobacter pylori* infection and peptic ulcer disease in patients with liver cirrhosis. *Korean J Intern Med* 2008; **23**: 16-21 [PMID: 18363275 DOI: 10.3904/kjim.2008.23.1.16]
 - 56 **Jung SW**, Lee SW, Hyun JJ, Kim DI, Koo JS, Yim HJ, Park JJ, Lee HS, Chun HJ, Um SH, Choi JH, Kim CD, Ryu HS. Efficacy of *Helicobacter pylori* eradication therapy in chronic liver disease. *Dig Liver Dis* 2009; **41**: 134-140 [PMID: 18436489 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2008.03.005]
 - 57 **Siringo S**, Vaira D, Menegatti M, Piscaglia F, Sofia S, Gaetani M, Miglioli M, Corinaldesi R, Bolondi L. High prevalence of *Helicobacter pylori* in liver cirrhosis: relationship with clinical and endoscopic features and the risk of peptic ulcer. *Dig Dis Sci* 1997; **42**: 2024-2030 [PMID: 9365129 DOI: 10.1136/gut.35.3.309]
 - 58 **Bhargava N**, Venkateswaran S, Ramakrishna BS, Mathan M. Colonization by *Helicobacter pylori* and its relationship to histological changes in the gastric mucosa in portal hypertension. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1994; **9**: 507-511 [PMID: 7827303 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.1994.tb01282.x]
 - 59 **Chang SS**, Hu HY. *Helicobacter pylori* is not the predominant etiology for liver cirrhosis patients with peptic ulcer disease. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **25**: 159-165 [PMID: 23044811 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0b013e32835a1b26]
 - 60 **Lo GH**, Yu HC, Chan YC, Chen WC, Hsu PI, Lin CK, Lai KH. The effects of eradication of *Helicobacter pylori* on the recurrence of duodenal ulcers in patients with cirrhosis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2005; **62**: 350-356 [PMID: 16111950 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5107(05)01633-0]
 - 61 **Wang CH**, Ma LR, Lin RC, Kuo JY, Chang KK. *Helicobacter pylori* infection and risk of peptic ulcer among cirrhotic patients. *J Formos Med Assoc* 1997; **96**: 55-58 [PMID: 9033184]
 - 62 **Chen LS**, Lin HC, Lee FY, Hou MC, Lee SD. Prevalence of duodenal ulcer in cirrhotic patients and its relation to *Helicobacter pylori* and portal hypertension. *Zhonghua Yixue Zazhi* (Taipei) 1995; **56**: 226-231 [PMID: 8548663 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.1996.tb00011.x]
 - 63 **Wu CS**, Lin CY, Liaw YF. *Helicobacter pylori* in cirrhotic patients with peptic ulcer disease: a prospective, case controlled study. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1995; **42**: 424-427 [PMID: 8566632 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5107(95)70044-7]
 - 64 **Dore MP**, Mura D, Deledda S, Maragkoudakis E, Pironi A, Realdi G. Active peptic ulcer disease in patients with hepatitis C virus-related cirrhosis: the role of *Helicobacter pylori* infection and portal hypertensive gastropathy. *Can J Gastroenterol* 2004; **18**: 521-524 [PMID: 15372116 DOI: 10.1016/S1590-8658(01)80485-0]
 - 65 **Calvet X**, Navarro M, Gil M, Mas P, Rivero E, Sanfeliu I, Brullet E, Campo R, Dalmau B, Lafont A. Seroprevalence and epidemiology of *Helicobacter pylori* infection in patients with cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 1997; **26**: 1249-1254 [PMID: 9210611 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(97)80459-X]
 - 66 **Farinati F**, De Bona M, Floreani A, Foschia F, Rugge M. *Helicobacter pylori* and the liver: any relationship? *Ital J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1998; **30**: 124-128 [PMID: 9615280 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(98)80805-2]
 - 67 **van Nieuwkerk CM**, Kuipers EJ. Liver cirrhosis and peptic ulcer disease; a correlation with *Helicobacter pylori*? *Neth J Med* 2000; **56**: 203-205 [PMID: 10821974 DOI: 10.1016/S0300-2977(00)00013-9]
 - 68 **Saad RJ**, Chey WD. Peptic ulcer disease in patients with chronic liver disease: looking beyond bugs and drugs. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2005; **62**: 357-359 [PMID: 16111951 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2005.06.003]
 - 69 **Gisbert JP**, Moreno-Otero R, Pajares JM. [Prevalence of *Helicobacter pylori* infection in chronic liver disease and relationship with its complications: systematic review and meta-analysis]. *Med Clin (Barc)* 2002; **119**: 464-474 [PMID: 12385656 DOI: 10.1016/S1590-8658(02)90225-2]
 - 70 **Blaser MJ**, Atherton JC. *Helicobacter pylori* persistence: biology and disease. *J Clin Invest* 2004; **113**: 321-333 [PMID: 14755326 DOI: 10.1172/JCI20925]
 - 71 **Atherton JC**, Blaser MJ. Coadaptation of *Helicobacter pylori* and humans: ancient history, modern implications. *J Clin Invest* 2009; **119**: 2475-2487 [PMID: 19729845 DOI: 10.1172/JCI38605]
 - 72 **Furuta T**, Baba S, Takashima M, Futami H, Arai H, Kajimura M, Hanai H, Kaneko E. Effect of *Helicobacter pylori* infection on gastric juice pH. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1998; **33**: 357-363 [PMID: 9605256 DOI: 10.1080/00365529850170973]
 - 73 **Suzuki H**, Ishii H. [Peptic ulcer disease complicated with liver cirrhosis]. *Nihon Rinsho* 2004; **62**: 532-540 [PMID: 15038099 DOI: 10.1016/S1590-8658(10)60366-0]
 - 74 **Chen CT**, Wang TF, Chan CC, Lee FY, Chang FY, Lin HC, Hou MC, Lu RH, Chu CJ, Wang SS, Lee SD. Role of chronic *Helicobacter pylori* infection in hyperdynamic circulation of cirrhotic patients. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2002; **49**: 208-212 [PMID: 11941956]
 - 75 **Kitano S**, Dolgor B. Does portal hypertension contribute to the pathogenesis of gastric ulcer associated with liver cirrhosis? *J Gastroenterol* 2000; **35**: 79-86 [PMID: 10680661 DOI: 10.1007/s005350050018]
 - 76 **Luo JC**, Leu HB, Hou MC, Huang CC, Lin HC, Lee FY, Chang FY, Chan WL, Lin SJ, Chen JW. Cirrhotic patients at increased risk of peptic ulcer bleeding: a nationwide population-based cohort study. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2012; **36**: 542-550 [PMID: 22817655 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2012.05225.x]
 - 77 **Chang SS**, Hu HY. *H. pylori* eradication lower ulcers in cirrhosis. [Corrected]. *J Dig Dis* 2014; **15**: 451-458 [PMID: 24825443 DOI: 10.1111/1751-2980.12159]
 - 78 **Jiang HX**, Qin SY, Min ZG, Xie MZ, Lin T, Hu BL, Guo XY. Association of *Helicobacter pylori* with elevated blood ammonia levels in cirrhotic patients: a meta-analysis. *Yonsei Med J* 2013; **54**: 832-838 [PMID: 23709415 DOI: 10.3349/ymj.2013.54.4.832]
 - 79 **Dasani BM**, Sigal SH, Lieber CS. Analysis of risk factors for chronic hepatic encephalopathy: the role of *Helicobacter pylori* infection. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1998; **93**: 726-731 [PMID: 9625117 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9270(98)00094-X]
 - 80 **Miyaji H**, Ito S, Azuma T, Ito Y, Yamazaki Y, Ohtaki Y, Sato F, Hirai M, Kuriyama M, Kohli Y. Effects of *Helicobacter pylori* eradication therapy on hyperammonaemia in patients with liver cirrhosis. *Gut* 1997; **40**: 726-730 [PMID: 9245925 DOI: 10.1136/gut.40.6.726]
 - 81 **Agrawal A**, Gupta A, Chandra M, Koowar S. Role of *Helicobacter pylori* infection in the pathogenesis of minimal hepatic encephalopathy and effect of its eradication. *Indian J Gastroenterol* 2011; **30**: 29-32 [PMID: 21416318 DOI: 10.1007/s12664-011-0087-7]
 - 82 **Miquel J**, Barcena R, Boixeda D, Fernández J, SanRoman AL, Martín-de-Argila C, Ramosa F. Role of *Helicobacter pylori* infection and its eradication in patients with subclinical hepatic encephalopathy. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2001; **13**: 1067-1072 [PMID: 11564957 DOI: 10.1097/00042737-200109000-00012]
 - 83 **Scotiniotis IA**, Lucey MR, Metz DC. *Helicobacter pylori* infection is not associated with subclinical hepatic encephalopathy in stable cirrhotic patients. *Dig Dis Sci* 2001; **46**: 2744-2751 [PMID: 11768268]
 - 84 **Quero JC**, Hartmann IJ, de Rooij F, Wilson JH, Schalm SW. Hyperammonaemia and *Helicobacter pylori*. *Lancet* 1995; **346**: 713-714 [PMID: 7658863 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(95)92332-2]
 - 85 **Nilsson I**, Lindgren S, Eriksson S, Wadström T. Serum antibodies

- to *Helicobacter hepaticus* and *Helicobacter pylori* in patients with chronic liver disease. *Gut* 2000; **46**: 410-414 [PMID: 10673306 DOI: 10.1136/gut.46.3.410]
- 86 **Fox JG**, Ge Z, Whary MT, Erdman SE, Horwitz BH. *Helicobacter hepaticus* infection in mice: models for understanding lower bowel inflammation and cancer. *Mucosal Immunol* 2011; **4**: 22-30 [PMID: 20944559 DOI: 10.1038/mi.2010.61]
 - 87 **Fox JG**, Yan LL, Dewhirst FE, Paster BJ, Shames B, Murphy JC, Hayward A, Belcher JC, Mendes EN. *Helicobacter bilis* sp. nov., a novel *Helicobacter* species isolated from bile, livers, and intestines of aged, inbred mice. *J Clin Microbiol* 1995; **33**: 445-454 [PMID: 7536217 DOI: 10.1099/jmm.0.032144-0]
 - 88 **Ward JM**, Fox JG, Anver MR, Haines DC, George CV, Collins MJ, Gorelick PL, Nagashima K, Gonda MA, Gilden RV. Chronic active hepatitis and associated liver tumors in mice caused by a persistent bacterial infection with a novel *Helicobacter* species. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1994; **86**: 1222-1227 [PMID: 8040890 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/86.16.1222]
 - 89 **Fox JG**, Li X, Yan L, Cahill RJ, Hurley R, Lewis R, Murphy JC. Chronic proliferative hepatitis in A/JCr mice associated with persistent *Helicobacter hepaticus* infection: a model of *Helicobacter*-induced carcinogenesis. *Infect Immun* 1996; **64**: 1548-1558 [PMID: 8613359 DOI: 10.1128/IAI.73.12.8449-8452.2005]
 - 90 **Fox JG**, Feng Y, Theve EJ, Raczynski AR, Fiala JL, Doernbe AL, Williams M, McFaline JL, Essigmann JM, Schauer DB, Tannenbaum SR, Dedon PC, Weinman SA, Lemon SM, Fry RC, Rogers AB. Gut microbes define liver cancer risk in mice exposed to chemical and viral transgenic hepatocarcinogens. *Gut* 2010; **59**: 88-97 [PMID: 19850960 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2009.183749]
 - 91 **Fukuda Y**, Shimoyama T, Ohmura T, Sano Y, Nakabayashi N, Takahashi R, Fujioka T, Mitchell HM, Shimoyama T. Characterization and application of a new monoclonal antibody with high specificity for *Helicobacter hepaticus*. *Helicobacter* 2009; **14**: 66-71 [PMID: 19191899 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2009.00652.x]
 - 92 **Murakami K**, Takahashi R, Ono M, Watanabe K, Okimoto T, Kodama M, Abe D, Kimura M, Fujioka T. Serodiagnosis of *Helicobacter hepaticus* infection in patients with liver and gastrointestinal diseases: western blot analysis and ELISA using a highly specific monoclonal antibody for *H. hepaticus* antigen. *J Gastroenterol* 2011; **46**: 1120-1126 [PMID: 21656014 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-011-0414-x]
 - 93 **Pellicano R**, Ménard A, Rizzetto M, Mégraud F. *Helicobacter* species and liver diseases: association or causation? *Lancet Infect Dis* 2008; **8**: 254-260 [PMID: 18353266 DOI: 10.1016/S1473-3099(08)70066-5]
 - 94 **Kleine M**, Worbs T, Schrem H, Vondran FW, Kaltenborn A, Klemmner J, Förster R, Josenhans C, Suerbaum S, Bektas H. *Helicobacter hepaticus* induces an inflammatory response in primary human hepatocytes. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e99713 [PMID: 24932686 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0099713]
 - 95 **Medeiros JA**, Pereira MI. The use of probiotics in *Helicobacter pylori* eradication therapy. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2013; **47**: 1-5 [PMID: 23222208 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e3182702dbc]
 - 96 **Scaccianoce G**, Zullo A, Hassan C, Gentili F, Cristofari F, Cardinale V, Gigliotti F, Piglionica D, Morini S. Triple therapies plus different probiotics for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication. *Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci* 2008; **12**: 251-256 [PMID: 18727457 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejim.2012.07.006]
 - 97 **de Bortoli N**, Leonardi G, Ciana E, Merlo A, Bellini M, Costa F, Mumolo MG, Ricchiuti A, Cristiani F, Santi S, Rossi M, Marchi S. *Helicobacter pylori* eradication: a randomized prospective study of triple therapy versus triple therapy plus lactoferrin and probiotics. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2007; **102**: 951-956 [PMID: 17313499 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2007.01085.x]
 - 98 **O'Connor A**, Gisbert JP, McNamara D, O'Morain C. Treatment of *Helicobacter pylori* infection 2011. *Helicobacter* 2011; **16** Suppl 1: 53-58 [PMID: 21896086]
 - 99 **Rimbara E**, Fischbach LA, Graham DY. Optimal therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* infections. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **8**: 79-88 [PMID: 21293508 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2010.210]
 - 100 **Chuah SK**, Tsay FW, Hsu PI, Wu DC. A new look at anti-*Helicobacter pylori* therapy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2011; **17**: 3971-3975 [PMID: 22046084 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v17.i35.3971]
 - 101 **Rinaldi V**, Zullo A, Pugliano F, Valente C, Diana F, Attili AF. The management of failed dual or triple therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 1997; **11**: 929-933 [PMID: 9354202 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2036.1997.00228.x]
 - 102 **Gisbert JP**, Calvet X, O'Connor A, Mégraud F, O'Morain CA. Sequential therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication: a critical review. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2010; **44**: 313-325 [PMID: 20054285 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(10)61541-7]
 - 103 **Gatta L**, Vakil N, Vaira D, Scarpignato C. Global eradication rates for *Helicobacter pylori* infection: systematic review and meta-analysis of sequential therapy. *BMJ* 2013; **347**: f4587 [PMID: 23926315 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.f4587]
 - 104 **Kate V**, Kalayarasan R, Ananthakrishnan N. Sequential therapy versus standard triple-drug therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication: a systematic review of recent evidence. *Drugs* 2013; **73**: 815-824 [PMID: 23625272 DOI: 10.1007/s40265-013-0053-z]
 - 105 **Liou JM**, Chen CC, Chen MJ, Chen CC, Chang CY, Fang YJ, Lee JY, Hsu SJ, Luo JC, Chang WH, Hsu YC, Tseng CH, Tseng PH, Wang HP, Yang UC, Shun CT, Lin JT, Lee YC, Wu MS. Sequential versus triple therapy for the first-line treatment of *Helicobacter pylori*: a multicentre, open-label, randomised trial. *Lancet* 2013; **381**: 205-213 [PMID: 23158886 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(12)61579-7]
 - 106 **Malfertheiner P**, Megraud F, O'Morain CA, Atherton J, Axon AT, Bazzoli F, Gensini GF, Gisbert JP, Graham DY, Rokkas T, El-Omar EM, Kuipers EJ. Management of *Helicobacter pylori* infection--the Maastricht IV/ Florence Consensus Report. *Gut* 2012; **61**: 646-664 [PMID: 22491499]
 - 107 **Georgopoulos SD**, Papastergiou V, Karatapanis S. Current options for the treatment of *Helicobacter pylori*. *Expert Opin Pharmacother* 2013; **14**: 211-223 [PMID: 23331077 DOI: 10.1097/00001574-199801000-00012]
 - 108 **Hsu PI**, Wu DC, Wu JY, Graham DY. Modified sequential *Helicobacter pylori* therapy: proton pump inhibitor and amoxicillin for 14 days with clarithromycin and metronidazole added as a quadruple (hybrid) therapy for the final 7 days. *Helicobacter* 2011; **16**: 139-145 [PMID: 21435092 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2011.00828.x]
 - 109 **Sardarian H**, Fakheri H, Hosseini V, Taghvaei T, Maleki I, Mokhtare M. Comparison of hybrid and sequential therapies for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication in Iran: a prospective randomized trial. *Helicobacter* 2013; **18**: 129-134 [PMID: 23121338 DOI: 10.1111/hel.12017]
 - 110 **Molina-Infante J**, Pazos-Pacheco C, Vinagre-Rodriguez G, Perez-Gallardo B, Dueñas-Sadornil C, Hernandez-Alonso M, Gonzalez-Garcia G, Mateos-Rodriguez JM, Fernandez-Bermejo M, Gisbert JP. Nonbismuth quadruple (concomitant) therapy: empirical and tailored efficacy versus standard triple therapy for clarithromycin-susceptible *Helicobacter pylori* and versus sequential therapy for clarithromycin-resistant strains. *Helicobacter* 2012; **17**: 269-276 [PMID: 22759326 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2012.00947.x]
 - 111 **Georgopoulos SD**, Xirouchakis E, Martinez-Gonzalez B, Sgouras DN, Spiliadi C, Mentis AF, Laoudi F. Clinical evaluation of a ten-day regimen with esomeprazole, metronidazole, amoxicillin, and clarithromycin for the eradication of *Helicobacter pylori* in a high clarithromycin resistance area. *Helicobacter* 2013; **18**: 459-467 [PMID: 23714140 DOI: 10.1111/hel.12062]
 - 112 **Essa AS**, Kramer JR, Graham DY, Treiber G. Meta-analysis: four-drug, three-antibiotic, non-bismuth-containing "concomitant therapy" versus triple therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication. *Helicobacter* 2009; **14**: 109-118 [PMID: 19298338 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2009.00671.x]
 - 113 **Molina-Infante J**, Romano M, Fernandez-Bermejo M, Federico A, Gravina AG, Pozzati L, Garcia-Abadia E, Vinagre-Rodriguez G, Martinez-Alcala C, Hernandez-Alonso M, Miranda A, Iovene MR, Pazos-Pacheco C, Gisbert JP. Optimized nonbismuth quadruple therapies cure most patients with *Helicobacter pylori* infection in populations with high rates of antibiotic resistance. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **145**: 121-128.e1 [PMID: 23562754 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.05.011]

- 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.03.050]
- 114 **Yang JC**, Lin CJ, Wang HL, Chen JD, Kao JY, Shun CT, Lu CW, Lin BR, Shieh MJ, Chang MC, Chang YT, Wei SC, Lin LC, Yeh WC, Kuo JS, Tung CC, Leong YL, Wang TH, Wong JM. High-dose dual therapy is superior to standard first-line or rescue therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* infection. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **13**: 895-905.e5 [PMID: 25460556 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2014.10.036]
 - 115 **van der Wouden EJ**, Thijs JC, van Zwet AA, Sluiter WJ, Kleibouker JH. The influence of in vitro nitroimidazole resistance on the efficacy of nitroimidazole-containing anti-*Helicobacter pylori* regimens: a meta-analysis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1999; **94**: 1751-1759 [PMID: 10406231 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9270(99)00258-0]
 - 116 **Luther J**, Higgins PD, Schoenfeld PS, Moayyedi P, Vakil N, Chey WD. Empiric quadruple vs. triple therapy for primary treatment of *Helicobacter pylori* infection: Systematic review and meta-analysis of efficacy and tolerability. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 65-73 [PMID: 19755966 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2009.508]
 - 117 **Liang X**, Xu X, Zheng Q, Zhang W, Sun Q, Liu W, Xiao S, Lu H. Efficacy of bismuth-containing quadruple therapies for clarithromycin-, metronidazole-, and fluoroquinolone-resistant *Helicobacter pylori* infections in a prospective study. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **11**: 802-807.e1 [PMID: 23376004 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2013.01.008]
 - 118 **Graham DY**. *Helicobacter pylori* eradication therapy research: Ethical issues and description of results. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **8**: 1032-1036 [PMID: 20656062 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2010.07.002]
 - 119 **Song MJ**, Park DI, Park JH, Kim HJ, Cho YK, Sohn CI, Jeon WK, Kim BI. The effect of probiotics and mucoprotective agents on PPI-based triple therapy for eradication of *Helicobacter pylori*. *Helicobacter* 2010; **15**: 206-213 [PMID: 20557362 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2010.00751.x]
 - 120 **Fuller R**. Probiotics in man and animals. *J Appl Bacteriol* 1989; **66**: 365-378 [PMID: 2666378 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2672.1989.tb05105.x]
 - 121 **Wilhelm SM**, Johnson JL, Kale-Pradhan PB. Treating bugs with bugs: the role of probiotics as adjunctive therapy for *Helicobacter pylori*. *Ann Pharmacother* 2011; **45**: 960-966 [PMID: 21693698 DOI: 10.1345/aph.1Q104]
 - 122 **Zou J**, Dong J, Yu X. Meta-analysis: Lactobacillus containing quadruple therapy versus standard triple first-line therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication. *Helicobacter* 2009; **14**: 97-107 [PMID: 19751434 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2009.00716.x]
 - 123 **Canducci F**, Cremonini F, Armuzzi A, Di Caro S, Gabrielli M, Santarelli L, Nista E, Lupascu A, De Martini D, Gasbarrini A. Probiotics and *Helicobacter pylori* eradication. *Dig Liver Dis* 2002; **34** Suppl 2: S81-S83 [PMID: 12408448 DOI: 10.1016/S1590-8658(02)80172-4]
 - 124 **Chenoll E**, Casinos B, Bataller E, Astals P, Echevarría J, Iglesias JR, Balbarie P, Ramón D, Genovés S. Novel probiotic *Bifidobacterium bifidum* CECT 7366 strain active against the pathogenic bacterium *Helicobacter pylori*. *Appl Environ Microbiol* 2011; **77**: 1335-1343 [PMID: 21169430 DOI: 10.1128/AEM.01820-10]
 - 125 **Gisbert JP**. Is culture necessary before first-line treatment for *Helicobacter pylori* infection? *Intern Med* 2011; **50**: 2717; author reply 2719-2720 [PMID: 22041399 DOI: 10.2169/internalmedicine.50.5135]

P- Reviewer: Pellicano R, Vorobjova T, Vermi W
S- Editor: Yu J **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Li D



2015 Advances in Inflammatory Bowel Disease

Mesalazine preparations for the treatment of ulcerative colitis: Are all created equal?

Bei Ye, Daniel R van Langenberg

Bei Ye, Daniel R van Langenberg, Department of Gastroenterology, Eastern Health, Victoria 3128, Australia

Bei Ye, Daniel R van Langenberg, Eastern Health Clinical School, Monash University, Victoria 3128, Australia

Author contributions: Ye B performed the literature review and wrote the manuscript; van Langenberg DR revised the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: No conflict-of-interest to declare.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Dr. Daniel R van Langenberg, Department of Gastroenterology, Eastern Health, Arnold Street, Box Hill, Victoria 3128, Australia. daniel.van-langenberg@monash.edu
Telephone: +61-3-98953000
Fax: +61-3-98999137

Received: May 16, 2015

Peer-review started: May 20, 2015

First decision: July 27, 2015

Revised: August 24, 2015

Accepted: October 12, 2015

Article in press: October 13, 2015

Published online: November 6, 2015

The therapeutic effect of mesalazine occurs topically at the site of diseased colonic mucosa. A myriad of oral mesalazine preparations have been formulated with various drug delivery methods to minimize systemic absorption and maximise drug availability at the inflamed colonic epithelium. It remains unclear whether different oral mesalazine formulations are bioequivalent. This review aims to evaluate the differences between mesalazine formulations based on the currently available literature and explore factors which may influence the selection of one agent above another.

Key words: Colitis; Ulcerative; Drug delivery systems; Mesalamine; Sulfasalazine; Therapeutic equivalency

© The Author(s) 2015. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Various formulations of oral mesalazine are available for management of mild to moderate ulcerative colitis. Selection of the most appropriate formulation requires tailoring of the therapy to the individual and must incorporate factors such as disease distribution, efficacy, side effect profile, pill burden, patient preference and health economics.

Ye B, van Langenberg DR. Mesalazine preparations for the treatment of ulcerative colitis: Are all created equal? *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(4): 137-144 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i4/137.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i4.137>

Abstract

Oral mesalazine (also known as mesalamine) is a 5-aminosalicylic acid compound used in the treatment of mild to moderate ulcerative colitis, with high rates of efficacy in induction and maintenance of remission.

INTRODUCTION

Ulcerative colitis is a chronic idiopathic inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) characterised by intestinal inflammation confined to the superficial mucosal layer. It may involve the rectum only, the distal colon

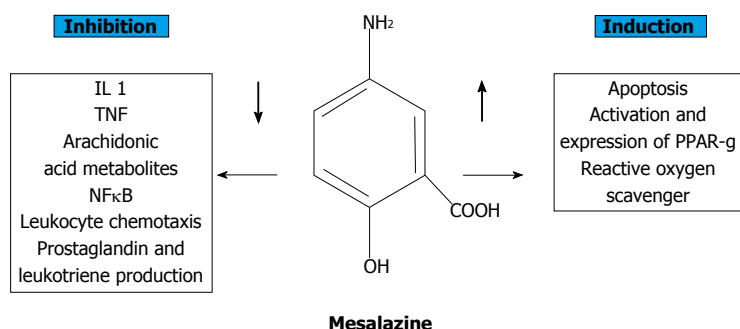


Figure 1 Proposed mechanism of action of mesalazine at the colonic mucosa. IL: Interleukin; NFκB: Nuclear factor κB; PPAR: Peroxisome proliferative activated receptor; TNF: Tumour necrosis factor.

or the entire colon, typically in a contiguous fashion. Classical symptoms of ulcerative colitis include bloody diarrhoea, urgency and tenesmus. Mesalazine, a 5-aminosalicylic acid compound (5-aminosalicylate, or 5-ASA), is most often used as the first line therapy for mild to moderate ulcerative colitis^[1]. However, the exact mechanism of action of mesalazine remains poorly elucidated. It is believed to exert a negative effect on the cyclooxygenase and lipoxygenase pathways, thereby reducing the formation of pro-inflammatory prostaglandins and leukotrienes^[2,3]. The peroxisome proliferator activated receptor-γ is also implicated in colonic inflammation and has been identified as a target of 5-ASA action^[4]. Furthermore, mesalazine may have antioxidant properties that reduce tissue injury and play a part in inhibition of T cell activation and proliferation^[5,6] (Figure 1).

Oral mesalazine compounds have proven efficacy for inducing and maintaining remission in patients with ulcerative colitis^[7,8]. Mesalazine exerts therapeutic effect through local topical activity at the inflamed mucosa^[9]. Oral mesalazine in unaltered form is almost entirely absorbed by the small intestines, with very little intact drug reaching the colon^[10,11]. Hence, the main goal of the various formulations currently available on the market is to optimise drug delivery to the affected colon and minimise systemic absorption. This promotes maximal therapeutic efficacy at the lowest possible dose, which in turn reduces side effects.

It remains unclear whether individual mesalazine formulations have differential effects in certain IBD patient subgroups. Anecdotally in the clinical setting, the choice of mesalazine appears at best to be rather experimental or idiosyncratic, and at worst, based on ambit claims by pharmaceutical representatives and/or advertisement, rather than evidence-based. In the absence of quality head to head comparative trials in appropriately selected patients, claims that one formulation is superior to another may be spurious. Nevertheless, physicians are often tasked with selecting a suitable mesalazine compound for their patients. These decisions require tailoring of the therapy to the individual and must incorporate factors such as disease distribution, efficacy, side effect profile, pill burden, patient preference and health economics. Hence, this review aims to

evaluate the current literature relating to potential therapeutic differences between mesalazine formulations and thus inform an evidence-based approach to optimal mesalazine use in patients with ulcerative colitis.

DELIVERY MECHANISMS

Azo-bonded prodrugs

In these formulations, mesalazine is synthesized as a prodrug, binding *via* an azo bond to either a transporter molecule or another mesalazine molecule. This prevents absorption of the drug in the upper gastrointestinal tract. The azo bond is subsequently cleaved by bacteria containing azoreductase in the colon, releasing the active mesalazine component (Table 1).

Sulfasalazine (Azulfidine®, Salazopyrin®, Pyralin®, Pfizer Inc, New York, NY) was one of the first aminosalicylates shown to be effective in the induction and maintenance of remission in ulcerative colitis^[12,13]. It consists of a mesalazine and a sulfapyridine molecule bound by an azo bond, which is cleaved upon exposure to colonic bacteria. Mesalazine is the active moiety and sulfapyridine acts as an inactive carrier molecule^[14,15]. Systemic absorption of sulfapyridine is responsible for many of the adverse effects associated with sulfasalazine^[16]. Approximately 20% of patients are intolerant^[17].

Other azo-bonded prodrugs have been formulated with alternative carrier molecules, in an attempt to reduce side effects. Olsalazine sodium (Dipentum®; UCB Pharma, Slough, United Kingdom) is comprised of two mesalazine molecules also connected by an azo-bond. Balsalazide disodium (Colazide®, Fresenius Kabi AG, Hamburg, Germany; Colazal®, Salix Pharmaceuticals Inc, Morrisville, NC) consists of mesalazine bound to 4-aminobenzoyl-β-alanine. Both agents have been shown to be effective in treatment of patients with ulcerative colitis^[18,19].

pH dependent formulations

Other mesalazine preparations encapsulate the active drug in an enteric coat in order to control the site of drug release. The enteric coating consists of a resin film designed to release mesalazine only at a designated pH, thereby preventing premature disintegration in the

Table 1 Summary of drug delivery mechanisms

Formulations	Generic name	Proprietary names	Mode of delivery	Site of drug release
Azo-bonded prodrugs	Sulfasalazine	Azulfidine®; Salazopyrin®; Pyralin®	Mesalazine bound to sulfapyridine	Colon
	Olsalazine	Dipentum®	Two mesalazine molecules bound together	Colon
	Balsalazide	Colazide®; Colazal®	Mesalazine bound to 4-aminobenzoyl-β-alanine	Colon
pH dependent	Mesalazine	Asacol®; Mesren®	Eudragit-S coating (dissolves at pH ≥ 7)	Terminal ileum, colon
		Salofalk®; Mesasal®; Claversal®	Eudragit-L coating (dissolves at pH ≥ 6)	Mid ileum to colon
		Salofalk Granules®	Eudragit-L coating and matrix core	Mid ileum to colon
Time dependent	Mesalazine	Pentasa®, Pentasa® granules	Microspheres encapsulated within an ethylcellulose semi-permeable membrane	Duodenum to colon
MMX	MMX mesalazine	Lialda®; Mezavant XL®; Mezavant®	Enteric coating (dissolves at pH ≥ 7). MMX of lipophilic and hydrophilic excipients	Terminal ileum and entire colon

MMX: Multi-matrix system.

acidic environment of the stomach and proximal small bowel. Asacol® (Tillotts Pharma AG, Ziefen, Switzerland) and Mesren® (Ivax Pharmaceuticals Limited, Runcorn, Cheshire, United Kingdom) are manufactured with a methacrylate copolymer coating, Eudragit-S. This coating dissolves at pH ≥ 7, releasing the active drug in the terminal ileum and colon. Salofalk® (Dr Falk GmbH, Freiburg, Germany), Mesasal® (Aspen Pharmacare, NSW, Australia) and Claversal® (Merckle GmbH, Ulm, Germany), comprise mesalazine enclosed within an Eudragit-L coating which disintegrates at pH ≥ 6, thus preferentially releasing the drug throughout mid to distal ileum and colon^[20]. A potential issue with this mode of delivery is that colonic pH, although highly variable, is overall reduced in patients with inflammatory bowel disease^[21]. It has been postulated that the lowered colonic pH may impede the release of 5-ASA from the pH dependent enteric coating and reduce its efficacy. Certainly, it is recommended that pH dependent formulations should not be co-administered with lactulose or other medications which lower colonic pH.

Time dependent formulations

Pentasa® (Ferring Pharmaceuticals, Copenhagen, Denmark) adopts an alternative method of drug delivery consisting of microspheres of mesalazine encapsulated within an ethylcellulose semi-permeable membrane. This structure allows time and moisture dependent release of the active drug, independent of the luminal pH. Mesalazine is theoretically distributed gradually throughout the gastrointestinal tract from the duodenum to the rectum^[22]. This in turn may be of therapeutic value in patients with small bowel Crohn's disease^[23]. In ulcerative colitis, the efficacy of Pentasa® has been demonstrated in multiple studies, including one randomised control trial where 64% of patients maintained remission after 12 mo of Pentasa® 4 g/d compared with 38% of patient who received placebo ($P = 0.0004$)^[24].

Granule formulations

There is data to suggest that improved efficacy in patients with moderate ulcerative colitis may be achieved with a higher daily dose of mesalazine^[25]. In

order to reduce pill burden and encourage adherence, both Pentasa® and Salofalk® (Dr Falk GmbH, Freiburg, Germany) are available as loose micro granules, packaged into sachets. This allows a higher drug dose to be administered without increasing pill burden and thus attempts to enhance patient tolerability. Furthermore, this formulation may be especially advantageous in patients who have difficulty ingesting large quantities of tablets.

Multi-matrix system

Mezavant® (Lialda®, United States), Mezavant XL® (United Kingdom and Ireland), Shire Pharmaceuticals Inc, Wayne, PA) is a once daily formulation of mesalazine which adopts a multi-matrix system (MMX). Mesalazine is incorporated into a lipophilic matrix which is in turn dispersed within a hydrophilic matrix. The tablet is enterically coated and dissolves at pH ≥ 7, in the terminal ileum. The hydrophilic matrix is then exposed to intestinal fluid and swells to form a viscous gel mass. This viscous gel potentiates slow diffusion of the active drug from the tablet core and thereby enabling slow controlled release of mesalazine throughout the entire length of the colon^[26]. Kamm *et al.*^[27] evaluated the efficacy of MMX mesalazine in patients with active ulcerative colitis and found it to be significantly superior to placebo in inducing remission.

COMPARISON OF MESALAZINE FORMULATIONS

Pharmacokinetics

The ideal mesalazine formulation would minimise systemic absorption in the upper gastrointestinal tract and maximise delivery of the active drug to the colonic mucosa. Ingested 5-ASA is acetylated by the N-acetyltransferase 1 (NAT 1) enzyme in intestinal epithelial cells to form the inactive metabolite N-Ac-5ASA. This metabolite is then either absorbed systemically and excreted in the urine or secreted back into the colonic lumen and excreted in the faeces. Some 5-ASA is also absorbed directly into the bloodstream and undergoes metabolism by the NAT 1 enzyme in liver cells, followed

by elimination in the urine^[11,28].

The assorted delivery technologies used by mesalazine formulations have a direct bearing on their pharmacokinetics. The drug release profile of MMX mesalazine has been compared with pH-dependent formulation Asacol® using radioactive labelling. MMX mesalazine tablets began to disintegrate earlier than Asacol®, at an average of 4.8 h compared to 6.2 h respectively. Complete disintegration occurred at 17.4 h for MMX mesalazine compared with 7.3 h for Asacol®, implying a more prolonged release of 5-ASA with MMX mesalazine. This allows slow and controlled distribution throughout the entire colon. In contrast, Asacol® released the active drug more rapidly, predominantly in the right colon. Consequently, disease distribution may be an important factor to consider in selection of mesalazine agents, with MMX mesalazine potentially more appropriate for patients with distal colitis.

The rate of intestinal transit may also impact the pharmacokinetics of different oral mesalazine preparations, and hence their efficacy. Faecal excretion of 5-ASA was evaluated in healthy volunteers after administration of laxatives to induce diarrhoea and accelerate intestinal transit. Diarrhoea resulted in a marked increase in faecal loss of the pro-drugs, sulfasalazine and olsalazine, indicating insufficient time for activation of the pro-drug by colonic bacteria^[29]. In comparison, pH and time dependent formulations (Pentasa® and Salofalk®) appeared to maintain adequate release of 5-ASA despite accelerated intestinal transit^[29,30]. Similarly, Das *et al.*^[31] evaluated this theory in the clinical setting by administering sulfasalazine to patients with active and inactive ulcerative colitis. The serum levels of sulfapyridine, a byproduct of sulfasalazine metabolism, were then measured as a marker of drug activation. Patients with active disease had lower systemic levels of sulfapyridine compared with patients with inactive disease, suggesting less sulfasalazine had been activated to release the 5-ASA molecule. As such, pro-drug formulations like sulfasalazine may potentially be less effective in the setting of active ulcerative colitis due to diarrhoea and accelerated intestinal transit, given their reliance on exposure to colonic bacteria for activation.

Efficacy

Comparing the efficacy of various oral mesalazine formulations is problematic as patient populations in each study differ in terms of disease severity, disease distribution and primary end points. Direct comparative studies have only identified minor yet inconsistent differences in efficacy between agents. In a randomised double-blind study of patients with active ulcerative colitis, balsalazide was found to be significantly more efficacious in inducing remission and better tolerated than the pH dependent formulation (Asacol®)^[32]. Two subsequent studies, however, were not able to reproduce these results^[33,34].

The influence of enteric coating on efficacy has also been evaluated. Gibson *et al.*^[35] demonstrated in

a randomised double-blind trial that Eudragit-L (pH-dependent) and ethylcellulose-coated (time-dependent) mesalazine tablets achieved comparable rates of clinical remission after 8 wk of therapy. In contrast, another study by Ito *et al.*^[36] found that pH-dependent formulations were significantly more effective than time-dependent formulations in patients with proctitis-predominant ulcerative colitis.

As discussed, MMX mesalazine utilises multi matrix technology in an attempt to release 5-ASA in a controlled manner. Pharmacokinetic studies also suggest a more prolonged duration of drug release, theoretically enabling active drug delivery to more distal regions of the colon. Prantera *et al.*^[37] compared MMX mesalazine 2.4 g/d to Asacol® 2.4 g/d as maintenance therapy in 331 patients with left sided ulcerative colitis. After 12 mo, the two formulations were comparable in maintaining clinical and endoscopic remission based on clinician assessment, 60.9% and 61.7% respectively. However, based on patient diary records of symptoms, including stool frequency and rectal bleeding, 62.2% of patients treated with MMX mesalazine maintained remission compared with 51.5% treated with Asacol ($P = 0.053$)^[37]. Although not statistically significant, there is a trend to suggest that MMX mesalazine may be more efficacious in patients with left sided ulcerative colitis. The disparity between clinician assessment and patient records may be a reflection of under reporting of symptoms during clinical consultations.

It is apparent that studies have to date delivered incongruent results regarding the efficacy of different oral mesalazine agents. A Cochrane review by Feagan and Macdonald^[8] in 2012 aimed to accrue currently available data and compare the efficacy and safety of oral mesalazine formulations in ulcerative colitis. The meta-analysis did not show any statistically significant difference in efficacy between the various preparations of mesalazine in induction of remission. Interestingly, in maintenance of remission, sulfasalazine was significantly superior to other oral mesalazine agents, with 43% of sulfasalazine patients relapsing compared with 48% of patients treated with other oral mesalazine preparations (12 studies, 1655 patients; RR = 1.14, 95%CI: 1.03-1.27)^[7]. However, it must be highlighted that comparative reviews should be interpreted with caution, as they may not account for patient population and study design variability between different trials. Given the paucity of direct comparative trials with adequate power, the relative efficacy of different oral mesalazine formulations cannot be definitively concluded. Patient characteristics, such as disease distribution nevertheless, do anecdotally influence clinicians towards the selection of a particular agent.

Safety

Mesalazine is generally well tolerated, with similar side effect profiles between different formulations. The rate of adverse events is estimated to be in the range of

20%-30%^[38]. The most common side effects include arthralgia, myalgia, flatulence, abdominal pain, nausea, diarrhoea and headache. Rare but serious side effects include interstitial nephritis and pancreatitis.

Of the mesalazine formulations, olsalazine more commonly causes diarrhoea, with up to 29% of patient experiencing this side effect^[39,40]. This has been attributed, at least in part, to the presence of the azo bond, which has prosecretory effects on rabbit mucosa *in vitro*^[41].

As expected, sulfasalazine is poorly tolerated compared with other mesalazine formulations. A meta-analysis found 28% of patients treated with sulfasalazine experienced adverse events compared with 15% of other mesalazine agents (RR = 0.48, 95%CI: 0.37-0.63)^[8]. In addition, it is also associated with agranulocytosis, a rare but potentially fatal haematological condition^[42]. As a result, sulfasalazine is increasingly superseded by the newer generation oral mesalazine formulations. Patients who do not tolerate sulfasalazine may benefit from switching to an alternate mesalazine agent that does not contain the sulfapyridine moiety, which is believed to cause the majority of side effects.

Adherence

The natural history of ulcerative colitis entails a remitting and relapsing clinical course. Maintenance therapy is important in prevention of disease recurrence. Non-adherence, defined as taking less than 80% of prescribed medications, ranges between 40% to 72% in patients with ulcerative colitis^[43,44]. This is particularly problematic in patients with quiescent disease, as the benefit of therapy is less obvious. Patients who are non-adherent have a five-fold greater risk of disease recurrence than adherent patients^[45].

Determinants of adherence are varied and patient-specific. Risk factors for non-adherence include male sex, single status, full-time employment, and thrice daily dosing^[44]. Dosing regimen is one facet of this multifactorial issue. A meta-analysis by Claxton *et al*^[46] suggested that less frequent dosing is associated with higher adherence. Multi-dose regimens and large pill burdens have been identified as major barriers to adherence in ulcerative colitis^[47]. Formulations such as MMX mesalazine with once daily (OD) dosing or granule-based preparations with lower pill burden should in theory assist adherence.

OD dosing was compared with conventional dosing in a meta-analysis by Ford *et al*^[48] in 2011. Rates of adherence were not significantly different between the two groups. Similarly, in the meta-analysis by Feagan and Macdonald^[7], OD dosing did not result in improved adherence compared with conventional dosing. The most plausible explanation for this finding is that medication adherence in most clinical trials is artificially higher due to the intensive clinical supervision and reinforcement, thus not necessarily a true reflection of real-world clinical practice. OD dosing of mesalazine is still promulgated as the preferred option for reducing pill

burden and promoting adherence.

Cost effectiveness

Ulcerative colitis is a chronic disease which requires prolonged therapy to maintain remission. This can place a substantial financial burden on the patient or the healthcare provider. On a per tablet basis, novel formulations of oral mesalazine are often presumed to be more expensive. Yet, Prenzler *et al*^[49] analysed the cost effectiveness of Mezavant® compared with Asacol® and showed a 76% probability for cost savings and a gain of 0.011 quality adjusted life-years (QALYs) with Mezavant®. A similar United Kingdom analysis of Mezavant® and Asacol® found a 62% chance of cost savings and a gain of 0.011 QALYs with Mezavant®^[50]. Both these models suggest that Mezavant® may be a cost effective option amongst oral mesalazine formulations.

CHANGING MESALAZINE FORMULATIONS

Although mesalazine is overall an effective therapy in ulcerative colitis, not all formulations are appropriate for each individual patient. The clinical decision to change from one preparation to another is often influenced by factors including clinical response, tolerability, pill burden, compliance, cost and patient preference. (See Figure 2) An important clinical dilemma is whether patients who have failed one formulation of mesalazine should be switched to an alternate preparation, or should the lack of response to one formulation be considered a class effect.

In a small study, 9 ulcerative colitis patients with endoscopic evidence of active disease despite treatment with Asacol® 2.4 g/d were changed to Pentasa® 4.0 g/d. Following twelve weeks of treatment, there was a significant reduction in the endoscopic severity of disease^[51]. It is important to highlight, however, that the dosages of the two mesalazine formulations were not equimolar. In another study, sub-analysis of two MMX mesalazine trials identified a pooled population of patients with active mild to moderate ulcerative colitis, who were switched from an existing oral 5-ASA (≤ 2.0 g/d) to 2.4 g/d or 4.8 g/d of MMX mesalazine. After 8 wk, significantly more patients treated with 4.8 g/d (37.5%, $P < 0.05$) and numerically more patients treated with 2.4 g/d (31.8%) achieved endoscopic remission compared to placebo (20.9%)^[52]. Similarly, two small pilot studies also evaluated 87 patients who were inadequately maintained on mesalazine and switched to OD dosing Salofalk® granules. After 6 mo of therapy, 70% of patients demonstrated improved ulcerative colitis severity scores (Walsley Index). There was also a 60% reduction in hospital visits due to flare of disease, 45% reduction in family doctor visits and 50% reduction in steroid usage^[53]. In addition, Motoya *et al*^[54] reported a retrospective analysis of 46 patients with active ulcerative colitis, who were switched from a

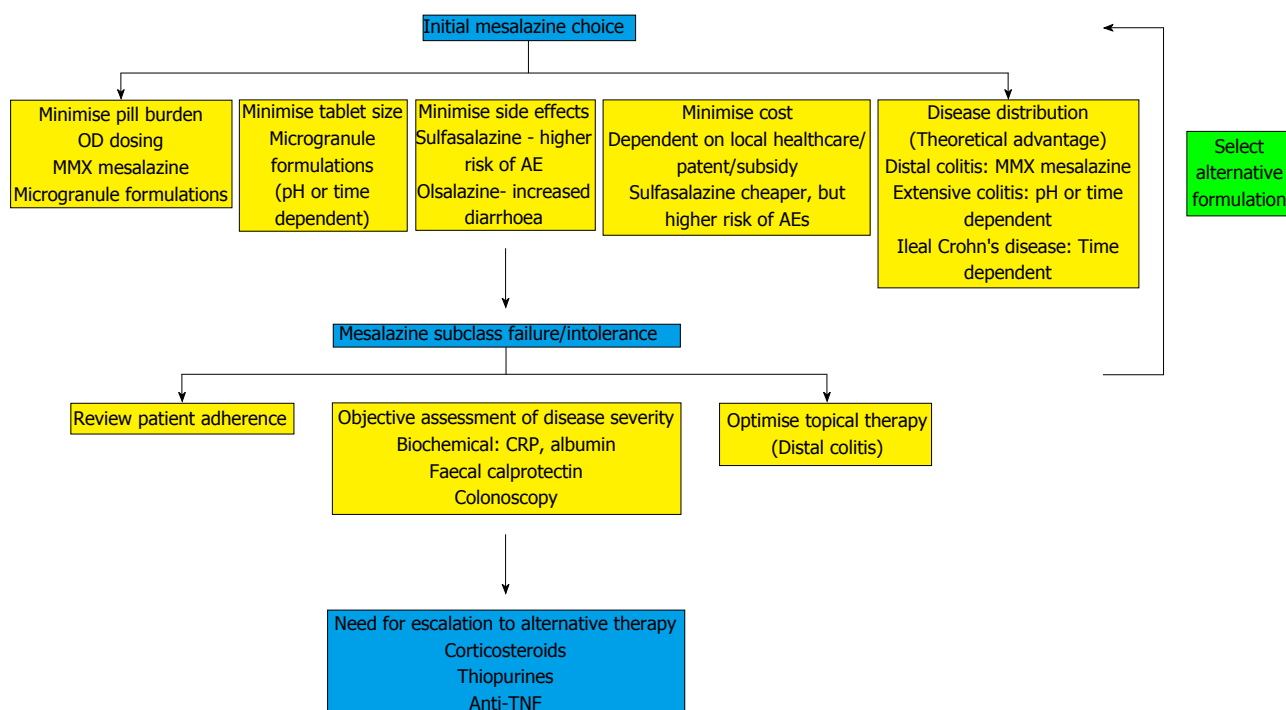


Figure 2 Algorithm for selection of mesalazine formulations. Anti-TNF: Anti-tumour necrosis factor; AEs: Adverse events; MMX: Multi-matrix system; OD: Once daily; CRP: C-reactive protein.

time-dependent mesalazine formulation (4.0 g/d) to a pH dependent formulation (3.6 g/d) due to inadequate clinical response. At 8 wk, 50% of patients achieved clinical remission, with a significant reduction in the Lichtiger clinical activity index. These studies suggest that patients with poor response to one formulation of oral mesalazine may benefit from switching to an alternate preparation, although the data remains sparse and warrants further investigation.

On the other hand, patients who have stable disease on a particular mesalazine formulation should not change preparations as it may destabilise disease control. Robinson *et al*^[55] found in a retrospective study that stable patients who switched mesalazine formulations had a 3.5 fold greater risk of relapse compared to those who did not switch. This indicates that the mesalazine formulations are not bioequivalent and disruptions to maintenance mesalazine should be avoided.

CONCLUSION

In summary, oral mesalazine remains the cornerstone of management of mild to moderate ulcerative colitis. Various formulations have been developed in an attempt to optimise drug delivery to the region of active disease. Each differ in terms of enteric coating, site of drug release and mode of drug delivery, and thus are not interchangeable. Failure of one formulation, should not negate future use of the entire drug class. Although there is a lack of consistent comparative data to confidently state the superiority of one formulation over another, there are theoretical advantages of each formulation to provide some limited guidance. Ultimately, the choice

of mesalazine formulation should be tailored to each individual patient, taking into consideration disease distribution, tolerability, adherence and cost effectiveness.

REFERENCES

- 1 Sutherland L, Roth D, Beck P, May G, Makiyama K. Oral 5-aminosalicylic acid for maintenance of remission in ulcerative colitis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2002; (4): CD000544 [PMID: 12519547 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.cd000544]
- 2 Ligumsky M, Karmeli F, Sharon P, Zor U, Cohen F, Rachmilewitz D. Enhanced thromboxane A2 and prostacyclin production by cultured rectal mucosa in ulcerative colitis and its inhibition by steroids and sulfasalazine. *Gastroenterology* 1981; **81**: 444-449 [PMID: 6114012]
- 3 Hawkey CJ, Boughton-Smith NK, Whittle BJ. Modulation of human colonic arachidonic acid metabolism by sulfasalazine. *Dig Dis Sci* 1985; **30**: 1161-1165 [PMID: 2866075 DOI: 10.1007/BF01314051]
- 4 Rousseaux C, Lefebvre B, Dubuquoy L, Lefebvre P, Romano O, Auwerx J, Metzger D, Wahli W, Desvergne B, Naccari GC, Chavatte P, Farce A, Bulois P, Cortot A, Colombel JF, Desreumaux P. Intestinal antiinflammatory effect of 5-aminosalicylic acid is dependent on peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-gamma. *J Exp Med* 2005; **201**: 1205-1215 [PMID: 15824083 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20041948]
- 5 Ahnfelt-Ronne I, Nielsen OH, Christensen A, Langholz E, Binder V, Riis P. Clinical evidence supporting the radical scavenger mechanism of 5-aminosalicylic acid. *Gastroenterology* 1990; **98**: 1162-1169 [PMID: 1969825]
- 6 Santucci L, Wallace J, Mencarelli A, Farneti S, Morelli A, Fiorucci S. Different sensitivity of lamina propria T-cell subsets to nitric oxide-induced apoptosis explains immunomodulatory activity of a nitric oxide-releasing derivative of mesalamine in rodent colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: 1243-1257 [PMID: 15887108 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2005.01.051]
- 7 Feagan BG, Macdonald JK. Oral 5-aminosalicylic acid for maintenance of remission in ulcerative colitis. *Cochrane*

- Database Syst Rev 2012; **10**: CD000544 [PMID: 23076890 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.cd000544.pub3]
- 8 **Feagan BG**, Macdonald JK. Oral 5-aminosalicylic acid for induction of remission in ulcerative colitis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; **10**: CD000543 [PMID: 23076889 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.cd000543.pub3]
 - 9 **Podolsky DK**. Inflammatory bowel disease. *N Engl J Med* 2002; **347**: 417-429 [PMID: 12167685 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra020831]
 - 10 **Peppercorn MA**, Goldman P. Distribution studies of salicylazosulfapyridine and its metabolites. *Gastroenterology* 1973; **64**: 240-245 [PMID: 4405598]
 - 11 **Schröder H**, Campbell DE. Absorption, metabolism, and excretion of salicylazosulfapyridine in man. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 1972; **13**: 539-551 [PMID: 4402886]
 - 12 **Baron JH**, Connell AM, Lennard-Jones JE, Jones FA. Sulphasalazine and salicylazosulphadimidine in ulcerative colitis. *Lancet* 1962; **1**: 1094-1096 [PMID: 13865153 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(62)92080-9]
 - 13 **Dick AP**, Grayson MJ, Carpenter RG, Petrie A. Controlled trial of sulphasalazine in the treatment of ulcerative colitis. *Gut* 1964; **5**: 437-442 [PMID: 14218553 DOI: 10.1136/gut.5.5.437]
 - 14 **Azad Khan AK**, Piris J, Truelove SC. An experiment to determine the active therapeutic moiety of sulphasalazine. *Lancet* 1977; **2**: 892-895 [PMID: 72239 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(77)90831-5]
 - 15 **Klotz U**, Maier K, Fischer C, Heinkel K. Therapeutic efficacy of sulfasalazine and its metabolites in patients with ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease. *N Engl J Med* 1980; **303**: 1499-1502 [PMID: 6107853 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM198012253032602]
 - 16 **Nielsen OH**. Sulfasalazine intolerance. A retrospective survey of the reasons for discontinuing treatment with sulfasalazine in patients with chronic inflammatory bowel disease. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1982; **17**: 389-393 [PMID: 6127793 DOI: 10.3109/00365528209182073]
 - 17 **Martin F**. Oral 5-aminosalicylic acid preparations in treatment of inflammatory bowel disease. An update. *Dig Dis Sci* 1987; **32**: 57S-63S [PMID: 2891469 DOI: 10.1007/BF01312465]
 - 18 **Travis SP**, Tysk C, de Silva HJ, Sandberg-Gertzén H, Jewell DP, Järnerot G. Optimum dose of olsalazine for maintaining remission in ulcerative colitis. *Gut* 1994; **35**: 1282-1286 [PMID: 7959238 DOI: 10.1136/gut.35.9.1282]
 - 19 **Giaffer MH**, Holdsworth CD, Lennard-Jones JE, Rodrigues CA, McIntyre PB, Manjunatha S, Baron JH, Barrison IG, Polson RJ, Hoare AM. Improved maintenance of remission in ulcerative colitis by balsalazide 4 g/day compared with 2 g/day. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 1992; **6**: 479-485 [PMID: 1358234 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.1992.tb00561.x]
 - 20 **Christensen LA**, Fallingborg J, Abildgaard K, Jacobsen BA, Sanchez G, Hansen SH, Bondesen S, Hvidberg EF, Rasmussen SN. Topical and systemic availability of 5-aminosalicylate: comparisons of three controlled release preparations in man. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 1990; **4**: 523-533 [PMID: 2129640 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.1990.tb00499.x]
 - 21 **Nugent SG**, Kumar D, Rampton DS, Evans DF. Intestinal luminal pH in inflammatory bowel disease: possible determinants and implications for therapy with aminosalicylates and other drugs. *Gut* 2001; **48**: 571-577 [PMID: 11247905 DOI: 10.1136/gut.48.4.571]
 - 22 **Rasmussen SN**, Bondesen S, Hvidberg EF, Hansen SH, Binder V, Halskov S, Flachs H. 5-aminosalicylic acid in a slow-release preparation: bioavailability, plasma level, and excretion in humans. *Gastroenterology* 1982; **83**: 1062-1070 [PMID: 7117789]
 - 23 **Lim WC**, Hanauer S. Aminosalicylates for induction of remission or response in Crohn's disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2010; **(12)**: CD008870 [PMID: 21154400 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.cd008870]
 - 24 **Miner P**, Hanauer S, Robinson M, Schwartz J, Arora S. Safety and efficacy of controlled-release mesalamine for maintenance of remission in ulcerative colitis. Pentasa UC Maintenance Study Group. *Dig Dis Sci* 1995; **40**: 296-304 [PMID: 7851193 DOI: 10.1007/BF02065413]
 - 25 **Hanauer SB**, Sandborn WJ, Kornbluth A, Katz S, Safdi M, Woogen S, Regalli G, Yeh C, Smith-Hall N, Ajayi F. Delayed-release oral mesalamine at 4.8 g/day (800 mg tablet) for the treatment of moderately active ulcerative colitis: the ASCEND II trial. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 2478-2485 [PMID: 16279903 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2005.00248.x]
 - 26 **Lakatos PL**. Use of new once-daily 5-aminosalicylic acid preparations in the treatment of ulcerative colitis: Is there anything new under the sun? *World J Gastroenterol* 2009; **15**: 1799-1804 [PMID: 19370774 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.15.1799]
 - 27 **Kamm MA**, Sandborn WJ, Gassull M, Schreiber S, Jackowski L, Butler T, Lyne A, Stephenson D, Palmen M, Joseph RE. Once-daily, high-concentration MMX mesalamine in active ulcerative colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **132**: 66-75; quiz 432-433 [PMID: 17241860 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2006.10.011]
 - 28 **Myers B**, Evans DN, Rhodes J, Evans BK, Hughes BR, Lee MG, Richens A, Richards D. Metabolism and urinary excretion of 5-amino salicylic acid in healthy volunteers when given intravenously or released for absorption at different sites in the gastrointestinal tract. *Gut* 1987; **28**: 196-200 [PMID: 3557190 DOI: 10.1136/gut.28.2.196]
 - 29 **Rijk MC**, van Hogezaand RA, van Schaik A, van Tongeren JH. Disposition of 5-aminosalicylic acid from 5-aminosalicylic acid-delivering drugs during accelerated intestinal transit in healthy volunteers. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1989; **24**: 1179-1185 [PMID: 2574905 DOI: 10.3109/00365528909090784]
 - 30 **Christensen LA**, Slot O, Sanchez G, Boserup J, Rasmussen SN, Bondesen S, Hansen SH, Hvidberg EF. Release of 5-aminosalicylic acid from Pentasa during normal and accelerated intestinal transit time. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 1987; **23**: 365-369 [PMID: 3567055 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2125.1987.tb03061.x]
 - 31 **Das KM**, Eastwood MA, McManus JP, Sircus W. The metabolism of salicylazosulphapyridine in ulcerative colitis. I. The relationship between metabolites and the response to treatment in inpatients. *Gut* 1973; **14**: 631-641 [PMID: 4147555 DOI: 10.1136/gut.14.8.631]
 - 32 **Green JR**, Lobo AJ, Holdsworth CD, Leicester RJ, Gibson JA, Kerr GD, Hodgson HJ, Parkins KJ, Taylor MD. Balsalazide is more effective and better tolerated than mesalamine in the treatment of acute ulcerative colitis. The Abacus Investigator Group. *Gastroenterology* 1998; **114**: 15-22 [PMID: 9428213 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(98)70627-4]
 - 33 **Levine DS**, Riff DS, Pruitt R, Wruble L, Koval G, Sales D, Bell JK, Johnson LK. A randomized, double blind, dose-response comparison of balsalazide (6.75 g), balsalazide (2.25 g), and mesalamine (2.4 g) in the treatment of active, mild-to-moderate ulcerative colitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97**: 1398-1407 [PMID: 12094857 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2002.05781.x]
 - 34 **Pruitt R**, Hanson J, Safdi M, Wruble L, Hardi R, Johanson J, Koval G, Riff D, Winston B, Cross A, Doty P, Johnson LK. Balsalazide is superior to mesalamine in the time to improvement of signs and symptoms of acute mild-to-moderate ulcerative colitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97**: 3078-3086 [PMID: 12492193 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2002.07103.x]
 - 35 **Gibson PR**, Fixa B, Pekárková B, Bátorovský M, Radford-Smith G, Tibitanzl J, Gabalec L, Florin TH, Greinwald R. Comparison of the efficacy and safety of Eudragit-L-coated mesalazine tablets with ethylcellulose-coated mesalazine tablets in patients with mild to moderately active ulcerative colitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2006; **23**: 1017-1026 [PMID: 16573804 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2006.02861.x]
 - 36 **Ito H**, Iida M, Matsumoto T, Suzuki Y, Sasaki H, Yoshida T, Takano Y, Hibi T. Direct comparison of two different mesalamine formulations for the induction of remission in patients with ulcerative colitis: a double-blind, randomized study. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2010; **16**: 1567-1574 [PMID: 20049950 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.21193]
 - 37 **Prantera C**, Kohn A, Campieri M, Caprilli R, Cottone M, Pallone F, Savarino V, Sturmiolo GC, Vecchi M, Ardia A, Bellinva S. Clinical trial: ulcerative colitis maintenance treatment with 5-ASA: a 1-year, randomized multicentre study comparing MMX with Asacol. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2009; **30**: 908-918 [PMID: 19678813 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2009.04117.x]
 - 38 **Moss AC**, Peppercorn MA. The risks and the benefits of mesalazine as a treatment for ulcerative colitis. *Expert Opin Drug Saf* 2007; **6**: 99-107 [PMID: 17367256 DOI: 10.1517/14740338.6.2.99]

- 39 **Feurle GE**, Theuer D, Velasco S, Barry BA, Wördehoff D, Sommer A, Jantschek G, Kruis W. Olsalazine versus placebo in the treatment of mild to moderate ulcerative colitis: a randomised double blind trial. *Gut* 1989; **30**: 1354-1361 [PMID: 2684804 DOI: 10.1136/gut.30.10.1354]
- 40 **Zinberg J**, Molinas S, Das KM. Double-blind placebo-controlled study of olsalazine in the treatment of ulcerative colitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1990; **85**: 562-566 [PMID: 2337059]
- 41 **Kles KA**, Vavricka SR, Turner JR, Musch MW, Hanauer SB, Chang EB. Comparative analysis of the in vitro prosecretory effects of balsalazide, sulfasalazine, olsalazine, and mesalamine in rabbit distal ileum. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2005; **11**: 253-257 [PMID: 15735431 DOI: 10.1097/01.MIB.0000160806.53858.55]
- 42 **Jick H**, Myers MW, Dean AD. The risk of sulfasalazine - and mesalazine - associated blood disorders. *Pharmacotherapy* 1995; **15**: 176-181 [PMID: 7624265]
- 43 **Hawthorne AB**, Rubin G, Ghosh S. Review article: medication non-adherence in ulcerative colitis--strategies to improve adherence with mesalazine and other maintenance therapies. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2008; **27**: 1157-1166 [PMID: 18384664 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2008.03698.x]
- 44 **Kane SV**, Cohen RD, Aikens JE, Hanauer SB. Prevalence of nonadherence with maintenance mesalamine in quiescent ulcerative colitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2001; **96**: 2929-2933 [PMID: 11693328 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2001.04683.x]
- 45 **Kane S**, Huo D, Aikens J, Hanauer S. Medication nonadherence and the outcomes of patients with quiescent ulcerative colitis. *Am J Med* 2003; **114**: 39-43 [PMID: 12543288 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9343(02)01383-9]
- 46 **Claxton AJ**, Cramer J, Pierce C. A systematic review of the associations between dose regimens and medication compliance. *Clin Ther* 2001; **23**: 1296-1310 [PMID: 11558866 DOI: 10.1016/S0149-2918(01)80109-0]
- 47 **Shale MJ**, Riley SA. Studies of compliance with delayed-release mesalazine therapy in patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2003; **18**: 191-198 [PMID: 12869079 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2036.2003.01648.x]
- 48 **Ford AC**, Khan KJ, Sandborn WJ, Kane SV, Moayyedi P. Once-daily dosing vs. conventional dosing schedule of mesalamine and relapse of quiescent ulcerative colitis: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2011; **106**: 2070-2077; quiz 2078 [PMID: 21894226 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2011.296]
- 49 **Prenzler A**, Yen L, Mittendorf T, von der Schulenburg JM. Cost effectiveness of ulcerative colitis treatment in Germany: a comparison of two oral formulations of mesalazine. *BMC Health Serv Res* 2011; **11**: 157 [PMID: 21729262 DOI: 10.1186/1472-6963-11-157]
- 50 **Brereton N**, Bodger K, Kamm MA, Hodgkins P, Yan S, Akehurst R. A cost-effectiveness analysis of MMX mesalazine compared with mesalazine in the treatment of mild-to-moderate ulcerative colitis from a UK perspective. *J Med Econ* 2010; **13**: 148-161 [PMID: 20141380 DOI: 10.3111/13696990903562861]
- 51 **Wong JM**, Wei SC. Efficacy of Pentasa tablets for the treatment of inflammatory bowel disease. *J Formos Med Assoc* 2003; **102**: 613-619 [PMID: 14625605]
- 52 **Sandborn WJ**, Kamm MA, Lichtenstein GR. SPD476, a novel, high-strength 5-ASA formulation induces remission of active, mild-to-moderate ulcerative colitis in subjects that are switched from low-dose oral 5-ASA therapy or are 5-ASA naïve: an analysis of pooled data from two phase III studies. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **130**: A-482
- 53 **Prasher H**, Savania P, Jazrawi R. Changing patients with ulcerative colitis to once daily mesalazine improves outcome and reduces cost in primary and secondary care. *J Crohns Colitis* 2013; **7**: S239-S240 [DOI: 10.1016/S1873-9946(13)60592-9]
- 54 **Motoya S**, Tanaka H, Miyakawa M, Sakemi R, Nasuno M, Imamura A. Efficacy of switching to pH-dependent release formulation of mesalazine at 3.6 g/day from time-dependent release formulation of mesalazine at 4.0 g/day in patients with Ulcerative Colitis. *J Crohns Colitis* 2015; **9** (suppl 1): S319-S320
- 55 **Robinson A**, Hankins M, Wiseman G, Jones M. Maintaining stable symptom control in inflammatory bowel disease: a retrospective analysis of adherence, medication switches and the risk of relapse. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2013; **38**: 531-538 [PMID: 23834298 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12396]

P- Reviewer: Liu F S- Editor: Tian YL

L- Editor: A E- Editor: Li D



Pharmacotherapy for the management of achalasia: Current status, challenges and future directions

Ammar Nassri, Zeeshan Ramzan

Ammar Nassri, Department of Internal Medicine, University of Texas at Austin Dell Medical School, Austin, TX 78701, United States

Zeeshan Ramzan, Gastrointestinal Section, Department of Internal Medicine, VA North Texas Healthcare System, Dallas, TX 75216, United States

Zeeshan Ramzan, Department of Medicine, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center at Dallas, Dallas, TX 75390, United States

Author contributions: Nassri A and Ramzan Z contributed equally to this work.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no conflicts of interest.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Zeeshan Ramzan, MD, Assistant Professor, Gastrointestinal Section, Department of Internal Medicine, VA North Texas Healthcare System, 4500 S. Lancaster Road, Dallas, TX 75216, United States. zeeshanramzan@hotmail.com
Telephone: +1-214-8571591

Received: June 24, 2015

Peer-review started: June 26, 2015

First decision: August 26, 2015

Revised: September 6, 2015

Accepted: October 16, 2015

Article in press: October 19, 2015

Published online: November 6, 2015

Abstract

This article reviews currently available pharmacological options available for the treatment of achalasia, with a special focus on the role of botulinum toxin (BT) injection due to its superior therapeutic effect and side effect profile. The discussion on BT includes the role of different BT serotypes, better pharmacological formulations, improved BT injection techniques, the use of sprouting inhibitors, designer recombinant BT formulations and alternative substances used in endoscopic injections. The large body of ongoing research into achalasia and BT may provide a stronger role for BT injection as a form of minimally invasive, cost effective and efficacious form of therapy for patients with achalasia. The article also explores current issues and future research avenues that may prove beneficial in improving the efficacy of pharmacological treatment approaches in patients with achalasia.

Key words: Botulinum toxin; Pharmacotherapy; Botox; Achalasia; Sprouting inhibitors

© **The Author(s) 2015.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Botulinum toxin (BT) injection is the most common and effective pharmacological therapy used in the treatment of achalasia, and is commonly used in the elderly, those with multiple comorbidities, patients at high risk for surgery and as a salvage therapy. This article discusses new advances related to the pharmacological management of achalasia that may help to optimize minimally invasive treatment approaches in patients with achalasia, and discusses improvements in endoscopic injection techniques, the use of sclerosants, new BT formulations, alternate serotypes, sprouting inhibitors and designer recombinant BT formulations.

Nassri A, Ramzan Z. Pharmacotherapy for the management of achalasia: Current status, challenges and future directions. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(4): 145-155 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i4/145.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i4.145>

INTRODUCTION

Esophageal achalasia is an idiopathic motility disorder characterized by an incomplete relaxation of the lower esophageal sphincter (LES) in response to swallowing as well as aperistalsis in the esophagus resulting in impaired food bolus transport^[1]. First described by Sir Thomas Willis in 1674, it was not until 1928 with the work of Hurst^[2] and Rake^[3] that the pathophysiology was realized to be a failure in LES relaxation.

Clinically, dysphagia is the most common presenting symptom in patients with achalasia. Other symptoms may include regurgitation, chest pain, heartburn, weight loss, postprandial aspiration and nocturnal coughing^[4]. The incidence of achalasia in studies ranges between 0.5-1.2/100000 per year^[5] and the estimated prevalence is around 10/100000^[6]. There does not seem to be a distinct pattern of incidence as it occurs equally in both sexes, all races and at any age^[5].

Although the cause of idiopathic achalasia is largely unknown, the general pathophysiology has been studied extensively. There is a hallmark loss of esophageal nitric oxide-inhibitory postganglionic neurons in the myenteric plexus of the lower esophagus^[7]. The excitatory neurons remain unaffected, leading to an imbalance between excitatory and inhibitory neurons and resultant increase in LES pressure^[8]. However, it is as of yet still unclear as to why there is a loss of these enteric neurons in patients who develop idiopathic achalasia. There is evidence to support a combination of autoimmune, infectious and genetic factors. It is now accepted that a viral or unknown environmental trigger causes an inflammatory cell infiltrate of the myenteric plexus, which in genetically predisposed individuals triggers an autoimmune response causing destruction of the inhibitory myenteric ganglion^[8,9].

Diagnostic evaluation includes endoscopy, radiological imaging and esophageal manometry. Upper endoscopy may reveal resistance while traversing the LES with the endoscope, described as a "pop" sensation in the literature. Barium esophagogram shows a classic "bird's beak" appearance in the region of the LES which is highly suggestive of achalasia. However, esophageal manometry revealing incomplete LES relaxation and aperistalsis in the esophageal body is considered the gold standard investigation for diagnosis^[1].

There is no curative treatment for achalasia. The most effective form of treatment is a myotomy which can be performed endoscopically or surgically. Endoscopic myotomy can be performed by pneumatic balloon dilation or *via* a new procedure called peroral

endoscopic myotomy (POEM). Surgical options include the laparoscopic Heller myotomy which is routinely accompanied by fundoplication to decrease the risk of severe symptomatic gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD), as well as older open techniques which are now rarely used^[10]. Medical forms of treatment primarily include the injection of botulinum toxin (BT) into the LES, nitrates and calcium channel blockers. BT is the most effective and commonly used pharmacological agent and will be discussed in detail in the subsequent sections.

BT FOR ACHALASIA

History

Since its use was first described in 1977 in children with strabismus, BT has been increasingly used in various fields and diseases, from the treatment of focal dystonias, spasticity and urinary incontinence to becoming the most widely used injection in cosmetic procedures worldwide^[11,12].

The use of BT for the treatment of achalasia was first described by Pasricha *et al.*^[13] in 1994 in a pilot study, which was followed by a double blinded trial^[14] in which patients with achalasia were randomized to treatment either with BT injection or placebo (saline) injection into the LES. At one week, 90% of the BT injection group showed significant symptom reduction and a significant decrease in mean LES pressure. At 6 mo approximately two thirds of the patients were still in remission. Since the publication of this seminal study many studies have investigated the role of BT in the management of achalasia^[15].

Pharmacology and mechanism of action

Every BT serotype is initially synthesized as a 150 kDa neurotoxin polypeptide chain with low intrinsic activity along with a set of neuro-toxin associated proteins (NAP), which are believed to protect the neurotoxin from proteases in the gastrointestinal tract^[16]. The BT precursor is cleaved *in vivo* into a 100 kDa heavy chain (HC) and 50 kDa light chain (LC) linked by a disulfide bridge as well as a poorly structured protein segment called the belt. The HC can functionally be split into the heavy chain carboxy terminus (H-C) and heavy chain amino terminus (H-N) (Figure 1). The H-C, which can further be split into two subdomains, is responsible for neuronal receptor recognition and binding whilst the H-N is responsible for facilitating translocation of the LC into the cytosol^[17]. The HC binds to transiently expressed specific cell receptors as well as to a polysialoganglioside, the disulfide bond is reduced and the light chain is internalized by exploiting synaptic vesicle recycling and diffusing into the cytosol. BT has a high affinity and specificity for target cells and requires two different co-receptors found on the neuronal surface, although different serotypes have different receptors^[12].

Once inside the cell, the light chain proceeds to cleave one or more of the soluble NSF-attachment protein

Table 1 Properties of commercially available botulinum toxin drugs

	Botox®	Dysport®	Xeomin®	NeuroBloc® Myobloc®
Manufacturer	Allergan Inc. Irvine, CA, United States	Ipsen Pharma Boulogne- Billancourt, France	Merz Pharmaceuticals Frankfurt/M, Germany	United States WorldMeds Louisville, KY, United States
Pharmaceutical preparation	Powder	Powder	Powder	Ready-to-use solution 5000 MU-E/mL
Storage conditions	Below 8 °C	Below 8 °C	Below 25 °C	Below 8 °C
Shelf life	36 mo	24 mo	36 mo	24 mo
Botulinum toxin type	A	A	A	B
Clostridium botulinum strain	Hall A	Ipsen strain	Hall A	Bean B
SNARE target	SNAP25	SNAP25	SNAP25	VAMP
Purification process	Precipitation and chromatography	Precipitation and chromatography	Precipitation and chromatography	Precipitation and chromatography
pH-value of the reconstituted preparation	7.4	7.4	7.4	5.6
Stabilisation	Vacuum drying	Freeze-drying (lyophilisate)	Vacuum drying	pH-reduction
Excipients	Human serum albumin 500 µg/100 MU-vial; NaCl 900 µg/100 MU-vial buffer system	Human serum albumin 125 µg/500 MU-vial; Lactose 2500 µg/100 MU-vial buffer system	Human serum albumin 1000 µg/100 MU-vial; Sucrose 4.7 mg/100 MU-vial buffer system	Human serum albumin 500 µg/mL; Disodium succinate 0.01 mol/L; Sodium chloride 0.1 mol/L; H ₂ O; Hydrochloric acid
Biological activity	50/100 MU-A/vial	500 MU-I/vial	50/100 MU-M/vial	1.0/2.5/10.0 kMU-E/vial
Biological activity in relation to Botox®	1	1:2-1:3	1	1:40
Specific biological activity	60 MU-EV/ngBNT	100 MU-EV/ngBNT	167 MU-EV/ngBNT	5 MU-EV/ngBNT

SNARE: Soluble NSF-attachment protein receptor; NSF: N-ethylmaleimide-sensitive fusion protein; SNAP-25: Synaptosomal-associated protein of 25 kDa; BNT: Botulinum neurotoxin; MU-A: Mouse unit in the Allergan mouse lethality assay; MU-E: Mouse unit in the Solstice mouse lethality assay; MU-I: Mouse unit in the Ipsen mouse lethality assay; MU-M: Mouse unit in the Merz mouse lethality assay; MU-EV: Equivalence mouse unit. 1 MU-EV = 1 MU-A = 1 MU-M = 3 MU-I = 40 MU-E. Adapted with permission from Dressler^[11].

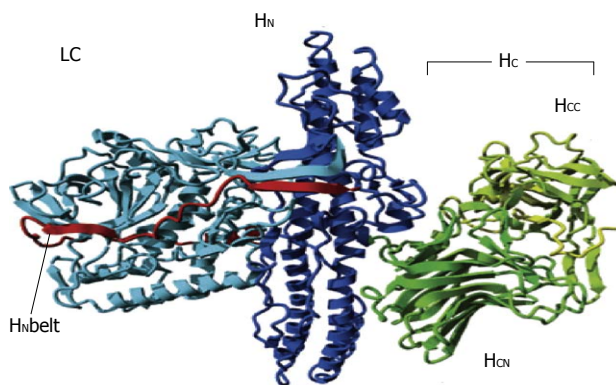


Figure 1 Structure of botulinum toxin A. The Cα backbone is represented as ribbons with the LC in cyan, the HN in dark blue and the HC in a green to yellow gradient highlighting the HCN and HCC subdomains. The HN belt is in red. HN + Hc: 100 kDa heavy chain; HN: 50 kDa amino terminus; Hc: 50 kDa carboxy terminal of the heavy chain; HCC: β-beta tree foil fold heavy chain subdomain; HCN: β-sheet jelly roll fold heavy chain subdomain; LC: Light chain. Adapted with permission from Montal^[17].

receptor (SNARE) complex proteins, which are required for synaptic vesicle fusion with the active zone of the neuronal synapse (Figure 2). Cleavage by BT causes impairment of vesicle fusion and inhibition of synaptic activity^[16].

Although the effects of BT on the nerve terminal are long lasting, they are however reversible and do not lead to neurodegeneration^[18]. After inhibition of synaptic vesicle fusion by BT, neuronal sprouts begin to develop from motor nerve terminals that establish synaptic activity. Ultimately, synaptic activity at the motor neuron

endplate is restored, and the neuronal sprouts retract completely^[18,19].

Formulations (Table 1)

BT is commercially produced by the anaerobic fermentation of *Clostridium botulinum* although in nature it is also produced by other related species such as *C. barati* and *C. butyricum*^[16]. There are eight immunologically distinct serotypes of Botulinum identified, with type H being only recently discovered^[20].

As of now, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has approved two serotypes, type A and type B for use in humans for various clinical indications. There are seven subtypes of BT (A) (A1-A7) that have been described, but all three formulations of BT (A) available for clinical use in patients with achalasia are of the A1 subtype. They include Abobotulinum (ABO; Dysport®/Azzalure®), Incobotulinum (INCO; Xeomin®/Bocouture®) and Onabotulinum (ONA; Botox®/Vistab®). BT (A) is the most widely used and best studied formulations of BT^[21]. Although Rimaotulinumtoxin B (Neurobloc®/Myobloc®) is available commercially, it has not been widely studied in patients with achalasia.

The biological activity of BT is measured in a mouse lethality assay (LD₅₀), *i.e.*, the dose of toxin capable of killing 50% of a group of mice, and units are given in mouse units (MU)^[11]. Concern for mouse welfare has prompted the investigation of more humane cell-based assays, with several being proposed such as the recently published compound muscle action potential assay^[22]. The different formulations of BT (A) have varying

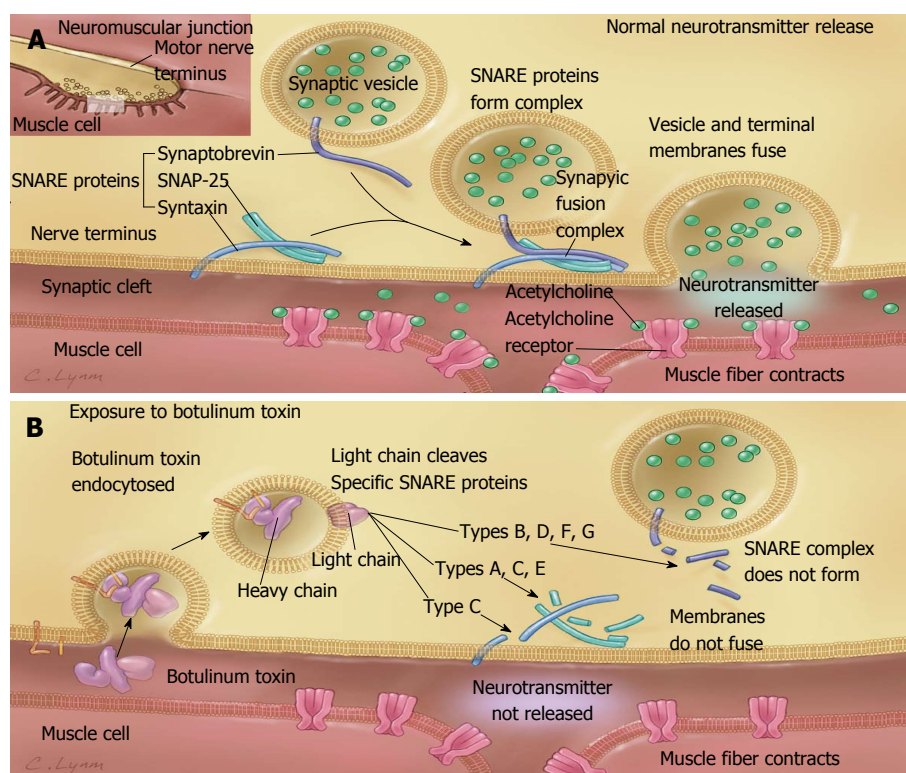


Figure 2 Mechanism of action of botulinum neurotoxin. A: Release of acetylcholine at the neuromuscular junction is mediated by the assembly of a synaptic fusion complex that allows the membrane of the synaptic vesicle containing acetylcholine to fuse with the neuronal cell membrane. The synaptic fusion complex is a set of SNARE proteins, which include synaptobrevin, SNAP-25, and syntaxin. After membrane fusion, acetylcholine is released into the synaptic cleft and then bound by receptors on the muscle cell; B: Botulinum toxin binds to the neuronal cell membrane at the nerve terminus and enters the neuron by endocytosis. The light chain of botulinum toxin cleaves specific sites on the SNARE proteins, preventing complete assembly of the synaptic fusion complex and thereby blocking acetylcholine release. Botulinum toxins types B, D, F, and G cleave synaptobrevin; types A, C, and E cleave SNAP-25; and type C cleaves syntaxin. Without acetylcholine release, the muscle is unable to contract. SNARE: Soluble NSF-attachment protein receptor; NSF: N-ethylmaleimide-sensitive fusion protein; SNAP-25: Synaptosomal-associated protein of 25 kD. Reproduced with permission from Amon *et al*^[9].

potencies which have been compared in several studies. One MU of ONA has been shown to be equivalent to 1 MU of INCO^[23-25], whilst a conversion rate of 1 MU: 2-3 MU between ONA and ABO has been proposed in various studies^[26,27], as well as 1:2.5 for aesthetic indications^[25].

The potency of BT (A) and BT (B) is difficult to compare directly. BT (B) has relatively weaker motor side effects and stronger autonomic effects than BT (A), even when used at standard dose. In one study for example, patients who received BT (B) reported higher incidences of constipation and lower saliva production^[28].

All of the currently available BT (A) drugs are sold in powdered form and have to be reconstituted, whereas BT (B) (Neurobloc®/Myobloc®) is available as a ready to use solution. In addition, only INCO can be stored at room temperatures while the other formulations need special storage temperatures^[11].

In the available commercial formulations, BT is stored with excipients such as NaCl/lactose/sucrose as well as albumin to decrease the risk of inactivation during preparation and storage. Out of the three formulations of BT (A), ABO has the least amount of albumin, which may partially explain the lower amount of available toxin per injected unit, as well as the shorter shelf life and decreased duration of stability after reconstitution

compared to ONA and INCO^[12].

Dosages and techniques

The technique used to inject BT into the LES is still largely followed as described in the pilot study by Pasricha *et al*^[13]. The LES is visually identified during upper endoscopy and aliquots containing 20-25 U of BT (A) are injected in quadrants for a total of 80-100 U.

Several studies have used slightly different techniques in their studies, although to date there are no randomized controlled trials comparing these different methodologies. In one study, patients received two injections spaced 1 cm apart in each of four quadrants for a total of eight injections equaling 100 U of BT (A). The response rate was 89.65% at 30 d and 55.17% at one year but fell to 13.79% at 2 years^[29]. In another study involving seven patients, 100 U of BT (A) was injected in eight aliquots, with four injections each at the LES and approximately 4 cm above the LES, respectively^[30]. At follow up, only 28.6% of patients were in remission.

Other investigators have attempted to find the optimal dose of BT. In one study^[31], 118 achalasia patients were randomized into three treatment arms to receive 50 U, 100 U or 200 U of BT (A). At 30 d, 82%

of patients were considered responders, and based on symptom scores the proportion of responders was slightly higher in the higher dose group, albeit not statistically significant. Similarly, the change in LES pressure was comparable in all three groups. To determine whether the timing of administration had any effect on duration of action, responders to 100 U of BT (A) were injected with a similar dose of 100 U 30 d later. At the end of follow up, patients that received 2 doses of 100 U 30 d apart were found to be more likely in remission (19%, $P < 0.04$) compared to 47% and 43% in the 50 U group and single dose 200 U group respectively. This study demonstrated a statistically insignificant therapeutic effect with dose escalation of BT, but clearly showed decrease in relapse rates with repeat BT injection.

Safety and side effects

BT (A) injection into the LES is extremely well tolerated, with the most common side effect usually being transient chest pain^[32]. On the other hand, BT-B, by virtue of its stronger anticholinergic effects, has been noted to cause autonomic side effects like dry mouth and jitteriness even in small doses^[11].

Efficacy in achalasia

BT injection is considered effective in the short term, but has a high rate of relapse requiring a need for reinjection. For example, one meta-analysis^[33] evaluated nine studies with a total of 315 patients, and found that the rate of symptomatic improvement at one month to be 78.7%, but gradually decreased to 70% at 3 mo, 53.3% at 6 mo and 40.6% at 1 year. Furthermore, at least a second treatment was required in 46.6% of patients. Generally speaking, there is almost universal symptom relapse by two years^[34], although some studies have shown continued efficacy in up to 34% of patients at two years^[35]. The efficacy of BT with repeat injections decreases and is thought to be secondary to antibody formation.

Current role in treatment

Overall, pneumatic dilation and myotomy have superior long term efficacy than BT injection in treating patients with achalasia^[10].

In a Cochrane review comparing BT with pneumatic dilation, there was no significant difference in rates of remission at 4 wk after intervention. However, BT was significantly less effective in maintaining symptom remission at six months and one year^[33].

Similarly, one meta-analysis analyzed studies comparing pneumatic dilation with BT injection and found a remission rate of 65.8% at one year for pneumatic dilation compared to 36% for BT injection (RR = 2.20, 95%CI: 1.51-3.20, $P < 0.0001$)^[36].

In a prospective randomized study evaluating BT injection with Heller myotomy, the authors found that results at 6 mo were comparable; however, the efficacy of BT injection decreased thereafter and the probability

of being symptom free at 2 years was 87.5% after Heller myotomy and only 34% after BT injection ($P < 0.05$)^[35].

POEM is a novel endoscopic treatment for achalasia which is a minimally invasive alternative to conventional Heller myotomy. Although to our knowledge no prospective trials have compared BT injection to POEM, various studies have compared Heller myotomy with POEM and found favorable results. One meta-analysis evaluating a total of four studies found that POEM had comparable complications [odds ratio (OR) = 1.17, 95%CI: 0.53-2.56, $P = 0.70$] and symptom recurrence (OR = 0.24, 95%CI: 0.04-1.55, $P = 0.13$) as Heller Myotomy on short term follow up^[37].

The response to BT seems to be unaffected by prior therapy such as prior pneumatic dilation or myotomy, which highlights an important role for BT injection in patients who have failed prior surgical or endoscopic therapy. In one study^[38], the response to BT injection in achalasia was compared in patients without prior therapy, with prior dilation and with prior myotomy. Neither LES pressures nor symptom scores differed between groups. At 6 mo the remission rate was 71.4% in those who received prior dilation, 71.4% in prior myotomy and 73.9% in prior BT injection.

Pneumatic dilation comes with recognized risks, including esophageal perforation (approximately 1.6%) as well as symptomatic heartburn in up to 45% of patients^[33]. Likewise, myotomy may be associated with risks, most noticeably esophageal perforation and postoperative GERD^[39], and due to the nature of the procedure may not be suitable for patients with multiple comorbidities or at high risk.

For this reason, several expert guidelines have suggested that BT injection may play a role in the elderly, in patients with extensive co-morbidities or who are poor surgical candidates and as a salvage therapy in patients who have failed other therapeutic modalities^[1,39-43].

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

Inhibition of sprouting

As mentioned previously, the major cause of BT's limited long term efficacy is the sprouting phenomenon, in which the presynaptic nerve terminals begin to produce sprouting nerve collaterals with a corresponding increase in acetylcholine receptors and ultimately restoration of conduction at the neuromuscular junction (Figure 3).

Several animal model studies investigating nerve sprouting demonstrated a complex array of neural factors and neuroreceptors upregulated and involved in the process of neuronal regeneration and sprout formation, including nerve growth factor (NGF), brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF), glial cell line derived neurotrophic factor (GDNF) and insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF-1)^[44-48].

A limited number of studies have investigated the effect of neutralizing substances against these factors

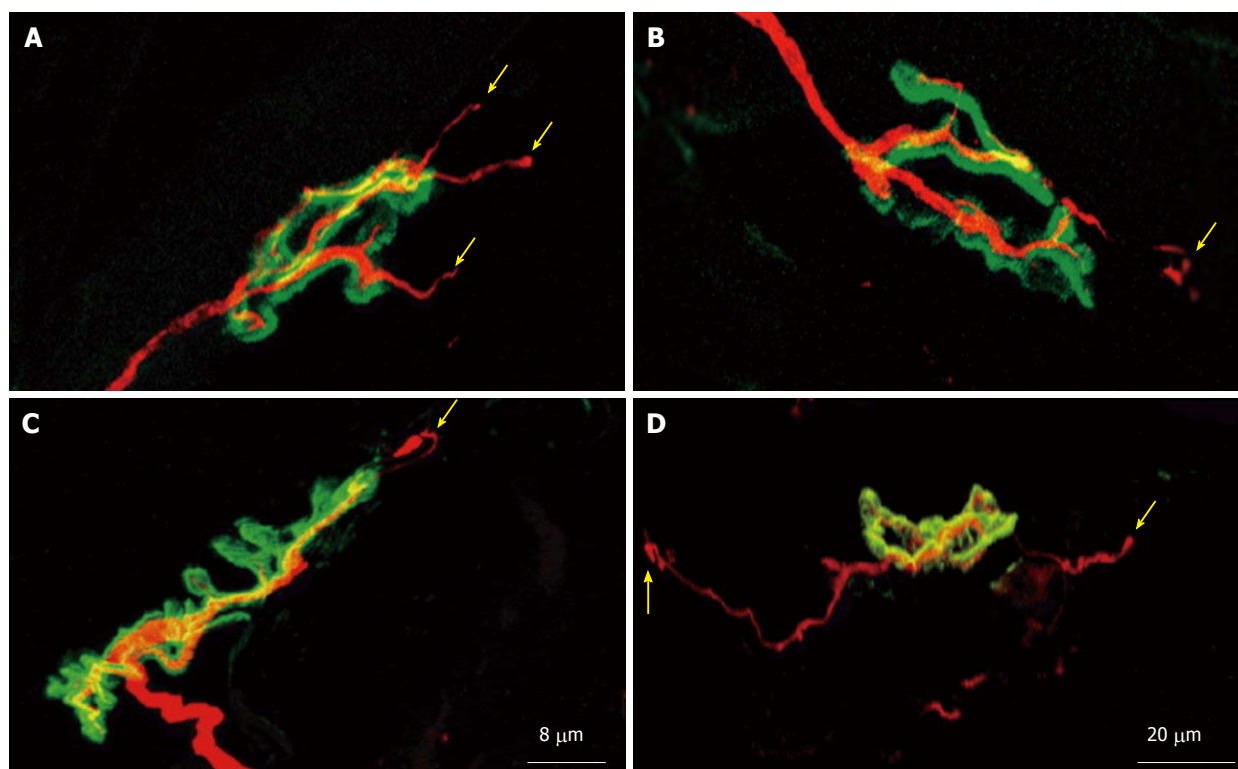


Figure 3 Neuronal sprouting and remodeling of the neuromuscular junction. Remodeling of the neuromuscular junction in extensor digitorum longus muscle at 10 (A-C) and 21 d (D) after a single injection of botulinum neurotoxin type C. Axons and nerve terminals were immunolabelled (red). To localize the junctions, nicotinic acetylcholine receptors were stained (green). Note the sprouts that emerge from the original motor endplate and project along muscle fibers (yellow arrows). Reproduced with permission from Morbiato *et al*^[50].

on the process of sprout formation, as well as the effects of co-injection of alternate substances with BT in hopes of decreasing the rate of neuronal sprouting and thereby increasing the duration of action and efficacy of BT injection. In a murine model Streppel *et al*^[49] demonstrated that neutralizing antibodies to NGF, BDNF, and IGF1 significantly reduced nerve sprouting. In an animal model, Harrison *et al*^[50] demonstrated that injection of anti-IGF1 or corticotropin-releasing factor after BT injection reduced axonal sprouting, prevented the up regulation of neuromuscular junctions and increased duration of BT efficacy.

Ricin-mAb35 is an immunotoxin composed of ricin, a toxin that inhibits protein synthesis, conjugated to a monoclonal antibody to the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. Christiansen *et al*^[51] found that injection of BT followed by Ricin-mAb35 into animal optic muscles resulted in decreased twitch and tetanic force at 6 mo compared to BT alone. Most recently, Jiang *et al*^[52] investigated the adjunct use of acrylamide injection to botulinum toxin injection. Acrylamide is a cumulative dose related neurotoxin that causes retrograde necrotizing neuropathy. Acrylamide injection after BT injection in the gastrocnemius muscles of rats was found to inhibit nerve sprouting as measured by electromyography and pathological observation of nerve fibers per unit. In this study, after the injection of BT (A) plus acrylamide, the increase in the number of nerve fibers was significantly reduced, the peak time of sprouting was delayed to 8-10 wk, and the peak nerve

fiber counts were significantly lower than that in the BT-A group ($10.65 \pm 0.32 \times 10^8/\text{m}^2$ vs $14.33 \pm 0.45 \times 10^8/\text{m}^2$, $P < 0.05$).

No study has yet investigated use of BT injection with sprouting inhibitors in achalasia models. Hence, it remains to be seen if this can prolong the therapeutic efficacy of BT injection in patients with achalasia.

Use of specific subtypes of BT (A)

As mentioned above, as of now studies have primarily utilized BT (A) for achalasia. Of the three formulations of BT (A) that are available on the market (ABO, ONA INCO), INCO (Xeomin®, Boucouture®) differs from ABO and ONA in that only the 150 kDa neurotoxin itself is included and is devoid of the NAPs that are included in the ABO and ONA formulations. NAPs are naturally produced with the neurotoxin and are thought to protect the toxin from proteolytic and acidic degradation whilst in the gastrointestinal tract^[12]. However, they are not known to play a role in the neurotoxin induced blockade of cholinergic transmission. Building on previous animal studies that demonstrated increased immune response and presence of neutralizing antibodies in BT (A) complex compared to pure BT (A), Wang *et al*^[53] recently studied the inflammatory cytokine release between human neuroblastoma cells treated with pure BT (A), BT (A) + NAPs complex or NAPs alone. They found that exposure to BT (A) + NPA complex significantly increased release of IL-6, MCP-1, IL-8, TNF- α and RANTES compared to controls.

In addition, it appears that while pure BT binds solely to neuronal cells, NAPs bind to neuronal as well as to non-neuronal cells, demonstrating that they may not simply be as passive as previously thought. It is likely that the hemagglutinins in the BT (A) complex bind to dendritic cells which act as antigen presenting cells in the early stages of the immune response. This is likely to result in increased immunogenicity and the formation of an immune response against the BT agent, although the level of antibody titers necessary to effect BT's clinical efficacy is unknown due to heterogeneity of available studies, and their presence may or may not affect patient's responsiveness to BT^[12].

Factors that decrease the efficacy of BT over time are poorly understood. Suboptimal reconstitution of BT by physicians may decrease the efficacy of the BT preparation as shown in a recent study^[54]. Similarly, it has been proposed that establishing practices to reduce the risk of neutralizing antibodies such as lower dosing frequency, longer treatment intervals, and lower number of injections may decrease the likelihood of their development^[12,55].

Testing and availability of serotypes other than (A)/(B)

As of yet, only serotypes A and B have been FDA approved for use in human subjects^[11]. However, almost all studies investigating the use of BT in achalasia patients were done using serotype A^[15]. Hence, it is unknown if the other serotypes may prove more effective by decreasing the response of neutralizing antibodies or whether their use of different neuronal surface type receptors or cleavage of different SNARE proteins may prove less likely to elicit neuronal sprouting which is what primarily contributes towards the high relapse rate seen in achalasia patients treated with BT.

Recombinant BT

Part of BT's unique attraction is its particularly long persistence in the neuron and prolonged mode of action. Interestingly, different BT serotypes have been found to have varying duration of action. For example, in one study BT (E) was found to exert its activity for only about 2-3 wk in murine models compared to around 10 mo with BT (A)^[56]. However, BT (E) cleaves more C-terminal residues from synaptosomal-associated protein of 25 kD (SNAP-25) than BT (A) causing a greater disruption of exocytosis resulting in quicker and greater neurotransmission blockade^[57]. Studies have shown that the differential persistence of BT (A) vs BT (E) may be secondary to different susceptibility of the LC to various ubiquitin-dependent proteolysis pathways in the neuron through its interaction with RING finger protein TRAF2^[58].

A few studies have investigated the translational applications of genetically modified BT. One study genetically fused BT (E) LC to an enzymatically inactive BT (A) mutant, resulting in an end product that had BT (A)'s stability and persistence, as well as BT (E)'s potent cleavage of SNAP-25 and resultant neuromuscular

paralysis^[57]. Given BT ubiquitous use in many different fields, ongoing research to produce BT mutant strains that have stronger potency and persistence may prove beneficial in diseases such as achalasia.

Improvisations in BT injection techniques

As of yet, the endoscopic injection procedure for achalasia has largely remained unchanged since first introduced by Pasricha *et al*^[14]. BT injection into the LES is routinely performed during endoscopy, which may mean that precise injection into the LES may not be possible due to lack of visualization. This may contribute to the lower rates of efficacy of BT injection or early relapse in some patients.

The utility of endoscopic ultra sound (EUS) in achalasia patients was first reported by Devière *et al*^[59] in 1989 using an early 7.5 MHz ultrasound endoscope to measure the thickness of the LES in achalasia patients. A subsequent case series demonstrated technical feasibility, safety and decrease in dysphagia scores in a series of four patients. However, the study included a very small sample size and there was no comparison between standard endoscopic injection and EUS-guided BT injection^[60]. Recently, a study compared EUS-guided BT injection in achalasia patients compared to conventional endoscopic BT injection^[61]. Patients that received EUS-guided injections benefited from higher rate of relief and significantly lower rate of symptomatic relapse.

In summary, there is no gold standard for injection technique or dosage of BT injected, with different authors utilizing different dosages and techniques. Randomized trials are needed to determine optimum dosage, formulation and technique of injection.

Injection of sclerosing agents

Alternative agents for the treatment of achalasia have been investigated. Ethanolamine Oleate (EO) is a sclerosant which is FDA approved for the treatment of bleeding esophageal varices, and is also used for lower extremity varicosities and vascular lesions. EO is a synthetic salt comprising of ethanolamine and oleic acid. When injected, EO produces an inflammatory response resulting in necrosis and fibrosis in the epithelium and submucosal tissue. First investigated for the use in the treatment of achalasia by Moretó *et al*^[62] over 20 years ago, a long term study has since been published evaluating the long term efficacy of EO injection^[63]. The authors included 103 patients in the study, with a mean follow up of 84.5 mo for patients who received EO. The cumulative expectancy of being free from recurrence was 90% at 50 mo.

Niknam *et al*^[64] investigated the long term efficacy of EO in patients with achalasia who were resistant or poor candidate for pneumatic dilation or surgery. Of 220 patients who were evaluated for inclusion, thirty one patients met the inclusion criteria. EO was injected into the LES three times at two week intervals, and followed for a duration of 30.16 ± 11.3 mo with primary endpoints

being symptomatic improvement on the achalasia symptom scale (ASS) and results of timed barium esophagram. At 1.5 mo post injection, the mean ASS, volume of barium and LES were significantly decreased compared to pretreatment ($P = 0.0001$). Symptom score and volume of barium remained significantly improved at 6 mo and one year intervals. Recently, Mikaeli *et al.*^[65] prospectively compared BT to EO in a cohort of patients who were poor candidates for pneumatic dilation or surgery. Out of the 189 patients evaluated, 10 were included in EO group vs 11 in the BT group, with a mean duration of 27.38 ± 16.49 mo of follow up. No statistically significant differences were found between either treatment groups.

NITRATES

The effects of short acting nitrates such as amyl or acetyl nitrate and sublingual nitroglycerin on achalasia patients was first evaluated by investigators in the 1940's and 1950's^[66-69], but their use was abandoned due to the short duration of action (less than 30 min) and significant side effects such as hypotension and headaches.

With the subsequent introduction and widespread use of isosorbide dinitrate, Gelfond *et al.*^[70] evaluated its use in patients with achalasia and found significant clinical improvement in dysphagia and decrease in LES pressures on manometry. However, the use of nitrates in achalasia has been severely limited by its transient or poor efficacy in a significant subset of patients, high rate of tachyphylaxis, and high incidence of side effects such as headache and hypotension. Hence, nitrates have been poorly evaluated in high quality randomized controlled trials as was shown in a 2004 Cochrane review^[71].

The use of nitrates has largely been relegated for use in those patients unable or unwilling to undergo any other treatment modality, although even in this respect it has largely been replaced by calcium channel blockers, which have been shown to be better tolerated and have a larger body of data investigating their use.

CALCIUM CHANNEL BLOCKERS

The efficacy of calcium channel blockers on achalasia was first investigated in the late 1970's and 1980's^[72-76]. Calcium channel blockers inhibit cellular uptake of calcium, thereby impeding contraction and promoting relaxation. Nifedipine has been shown to decrease LES pressures and provide symptomatic relief, although with variable efficacy demonstrating benefit in between 50% and 90% of cases^[77]. In one small prospective study where nifedipine was titrated to a dose of 10-30 mg before meals, the overall symptom scores decreased compared with placebo, but symptoms such as dysphagia, chest pain or regurgitation were still present on most days^[78].

Up to 30% of patients may experience significant side effects from calcium channel blockers such as

peripheral edema and headaches which may limit their clinical utility. In addition, tachyphylaxis is also an issue with calcium channel blockers and the use of these drugs often induces tolerance^[79]. Only a handful of studies have looked at calcium channel blockers prospectively, and the studies are limited by short follow up and very small sample sizes^[77]. Studies comparing nitrates and calcium channel blockers have suggested that nitrates work faster and may be more effective compared with nifedipine^[76,80], but have limited clinical use due to more significant side effects. In another study, nifedipine was prospectively compared with verapamil, and while verapamil also decreased mean LES pressures, it did not provide effective symptomatic relief compared with nifedipine^[81].

OTHERS PHARMACOLOGICAL AGENTS

Other early studies have investigated the effect of different pharmacological agents on the LES in patients with achalasia. Administration of phosphodiesterase inhibitors such as sildenafil^[82,83] was found to have a reduction in LES pressure in achalasia patients, as was carbutole, a beta 2 adrenergic agent^[84], morphine^[85], loperamide^[86], anticholinergics like cimetropium bromide^[87] and butylscopolamine^[88], vasoactive intestinal peptide^[89], terbutaline^[90] and aminophylline^[90]. However, the clinical utility of these agents is not clear as they have only been studied in very small sample sizes demonstrating proof of concept results and short duration of action.

CONCLUSION

BT injection into the LES is the most commonly used initial therapy in patients with achalasia. Although lauded for its remarkably safety profile and short time efficacy, issues with need for repeat injection and decreased efficacy over time have relegated it to use in patients unable to undergo more long lasting procedures such as myotomy and as a form of salvage therapy. However the large body of ongoing research into BT may provide a stronger role for BT injection as a form of minimally invasive, cost effective and efficacious form of therapy for patients with achalasia. Further research in achalasia models are needed to investigate the role of different BT serotypes, better pharmacological formulations, better BT injection techniques, the use of sprouting inhibitors, designer recombinant BT formulations and alternative substances used in endoscopic injections. In addition, as more research demonstrates an autoimmune component in the pathophysiology of achalasia, the need for studies investigating the use of immune therapy in achalasia models becomes ever important. Various medications like calcium channel blocker and nitrates have been shown to have a role in treatment, but their widespread use is limited largely by the high incidence of side effects. Newer oral pharmacological agents with high potency and fewer side effects may prove beneficial

as an alternative treatment modality in patients with achalasia.

REFERENCES

- 1 **Triadafilopoulos G**, Boeckxstaens GE, Gullo R, Patti MG, Pandolfino JE, Kahrilas PJ, Duranceau A, Jamieson G, Zaninotto G. The Kagoshima consensus on esophageal achalasia. *Dis Esophagus* 2012; **25**: 337-348 [PMID: 21595779 DOI: 10.1111/j.1442-2050.2011.01207.x]
- 2 **Hurst A**. The treatment of achalasia of the cardia: so-called 'cardiospasm'. *Lancet* 1927; **209**: 618-619 [DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(00)73391-5]
- 3 **Rake A**. Achalasia and Degeneration of Auerbach's Plexus. *Proc R Soc Med* 1928; **21**: 1775-1777
- 4 **Fisichella PM**, Carter SR, Robles LY. Presentation, diagnosis, and treatment of oesophageal motility disorders. *Dig Liver Dis* 2012; **44**: 1-7 [PMID: 21697019 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2011.05.003]
- 5 **O'Neill OM**, Johnston BT, Coleman HG. Achalasia: a review of clinical diagnosis, epidemiology, treatment and outcomes. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 5806-5812 [PMID: 24124325 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i35.5806]
- 6 **Sadowski DC**, Ackah F, Jiang B, Svenson LW. Achalasia: incidence, prevalence and survival. A population-based study. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2010; **22**: e256-e261 [PMID: 20465592 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2982.2010.01511.x]
- 7 **Goldblum JR**, Whyte RI, Orringer MB, Appelman HD. Achalasia. A morphologic study of 42 resected specimens. *Am J Surg Pathol* 1994; **18**: 327-337 [PMID: 8141427 DOI: 10.1097/00000478-199404000-00001]
- 8 **Petersen RP**, Martin AV, Pellegrini CA, Oelschlager BK. Synopsis of investigations into proposed theories on the etiology of achalasia. *Dis Esophagus* 2012; **25**: 305-310 [PMID: 20002702 DOI: 10.1111/j.1442-2050.2009.01030.x]
- 9 **Latiano A**, Palmieri O, Bossa F, Latiano T, Corritore G, De Santo E, Martino G, Merla A, Valvano MR, Cuttitta A, Mazza T, Annese V, Andriulli A. Impact of genetic polymorphisms on the pathogenesis of idiopathic achalasia: Association with IL33 gene variant. *Hum Immunol* 2014; **75**: 364-369 [PMID: 24468584 DOI: 10.1016/j.humimm.2014.01.004]
- 10 **Rohof WO**, Boeckxstaens GE. Treatment of the patient with achalasia. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2012; **28**: 389-394 [PMID: 22508324 DOI: 10.1097/MOG.0b013e328353af8f]
- 11 **Dressler D**. Clinical applications of botulinum toxin. *Curr Opin Microbiol* 2012; **15**: 325-336 [PMID: 22770659 DOI: 10.1016/j.mib.2012.05.012]
- 12 **Frevert J**. Pharmaceutical, biological, and clinical properties of botulinum neurotoxin type A products. *Drugs R D* 2015; **15**: 1-9 [PMID: 25559581 DOI: 10.1007/s40268-014-0077-1]
- 13 **Pasricha PJ**, Ravich WJ, Hendrix TR, Sostre S, Jones B, Kalloo AN. Treatment of achalasia with intrasphincteric injection of botulinum toxin. A pilot trial. *Ann Intern Med* 1994; **121**: 590-591 [PMID: 8085691 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-121-8-199410150-00006]
- 14 **Pasricha PJ**, Ravich WJ, Hendrix TR, Sostre S, Jones B, Kalloo AN. Intrasphincteric botulinum toxin for the treatment of achalasia. *N Engl J Med* 1995; **332**: 774-778 [PMID: 7862180 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199503233321203]
- 15 **Ramzan Z**, Nassri AB. The role of Botulinum toxin injection in the management of achalasia. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2013; **29**: 468-473 [PMID: 23695428 DOI: 10.1097/MOG.0b013e328362292a]
- 16 **Tighe AP**, Schiavo G. Botulinum neurotoxins: mechanism of action. *Toxicon* 2013; **67**: 87-93 [PMID: 23201505 DOI: 10.1016/j.toxicon.2012.11.011]
- 17 **Montal M**. Botulinum neurotoxin: a marvel of protein design. *Annu Rev Biochem* 2010; **79**: 591-617 [PMID: 20233039 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.biochem.051908.125345]
- 18 **de Paiva A**, Meunier FA, Molgó J, Aoki KR, Dolly JO. Functional repair of motor endplates after botulinum neurotoxin type A poisoning: biphasic switch of synaptic activity between nerve sprouts and their parent terminals. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1999; **96**: 3200-3205 [PMID: 10077661 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.96.6.3200]
- 19 **Meunier FA**, Lisk G, Sesardic D, Dolly JO. Dynamics of motor nerve terminal remodeling unveiled using SNARE-cleaving botulinum toxins: the extent and duration are dictated by the sites of SNAP-25 truncation. *Mol Cell Neurosci* 2003; **22**: 454-466 [PMID: 12727443 DOI: 10.1016/S1044-7431(02)00016-7]
- 20 **Dover N**, Barash JR, Hill KK, Xie G, Arnon SS. Molecular characterization of a novel botulinum neurotoxin type H gene. *J Infect Dis* 2014; **209**: 192-202 [PMID: 24106295 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jit450]
- 21 **Truong DD**, Stenner A, Reichel G. Current clinical applications of botulinum toxin. *Curr Pharm Des* 2009; **15**: 3671-3680 [PMID: 19925419 DOI: 10.2174/138161209789271843]
- 22 **Torii Y**, Goto Y, Nakahira S, Ginnaga A. Establishment of alternative potency test for botulinum toxin type A using compound muscle action potential (CMAP) in rats. *Toxicon* 2014; **90**: 97-105 [PMID: 25110177 DOI: 10.1016/j.toxicon.2014.07.013]
- 23 **Poulain B**, Trevidic P, Clave M, Aharoni C, Baspeyras M, Bui P, Cartier H, Charavel MH, Coulon P, Dahan S, Dallara JM, Delonca D, Dumas L, Essayagh E, Galatoire O, Georgieu N, Grangier Y, Humbert P, Le Pillouer-Prost A, Mojjallal A. Clinical equivalence of conventional OnabotulinumtoxinA (900 KDa) and IncobotulinumtoxinA (neurotoxin free from complexing proteins - 150 KDa): 2012 multidisciplinary French consensus in aesthetics. *J Drugs Dermatol* 2013; **12**: 1434-1446 [PMID: 24301246]
- 24 **Lorenc ZP**, Kenkel JM, Fagien S, Hirmand H, Nestor MS, Sclafani AP, Sykes JM, Waldorf HA. Consensus panel's assessment and recommendations on the use of 3 botulinum toxin type A products in facial aesthetics. *Aesthet Surg J* 2013; **33**: 35S-40S [PMID: 23515197 DOI: 10.1177/1090820X13480479]
- 25 **Carruthers J**, Fournier N, Kerscher M, Ruiz-Avila J, Trindade de Almeida AR, Kaeuper G. The convergence of medicine and neurotoxins: a focus on botulinum toxin type A and its application in aesthetic medicine--a global, evidence-based botulinum toxin consensus education initiative: part II: incorporating botulinum toxin into aesthetic clinical practice. *Dermatol Surg* 2013; **39**: 510-525 [PMID: 23458295 DOI: 10.1111/dsu.12148]
- 26 **Ranoux D**, Gury C, Fondarai J, Mas JL, Zuber M. Respective potencies of Botox and Dysport: a double blind, randomised, crossover study in cervical dystonia. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 2002; **72**: 459-462 [PMID: 11909903 DOI: 10.1136/jnnp.72.4.459]
- 27 **Ravenni R**, De Grandis D, Mazza A. Conversion ratio between Dysport and Botox in clinical practice: an overview of available evidence. *Neurol Sci* 2013; **34**: 1043-1048 [PMID: 23576131 DOI: 10.1007/s10072-013-1357-1]
- 28 **Tintner R**, Gross R, Winzer UF, Smalky KA, Jankovic J. Autonomic function after botulinum toxin type A or B: a double-blind, randomized trial. *Neurology* 2005; **65**: 765-767 [PMID: 16157918 DOI: 10.1212/01.wnl.0000174433.76707.8c]
- 29 **Zhu Q**, Liu J, Yang C. Clinical study on combined therapy of botulinum toxin injection and small balloon dilation in patients with esophageal achalasia. *Dig Surg* 2009; **26**: 493-498 [PMID: 20090338 DOI: 10.1159/000229784]
- 30 **Gutschow CA**, Töx U, Leers J, Schäfer H, Prenzel KL, Hölscher AH. Botox, dilation, or myotomy? Clinical outcome of interventional and surgical therapies for achalasia. *Langenbecks Arch Surg* 2010; **395**: 1093-1099 [PMID: 20845045 DOI: 10.1007/s00423-010-0711-5]
- 31 **Annese V**, Bassotti G, Coccia G, Dinelli M, D'Onofrio V, Gatto G, Leandro G, Repici A, Testoni PA, Andriulli A. A multicentre randomised study of intrasphincteric botulinum toxin in patients with oesophageal achalasia. GISMAD Achalasia Study Group. *Gut* 2000; **46**: 597-600 [PMID: 10764700 DOI: 10.1136/gut.46.5.597]
- 32 **D'Onofrio V**, Annese V, Miletto P, Leandro G, Marasco A, Sodano P, Iaquinio G. Long-term follow-up of achalasic patients treated with botulinum toxin. *Dis Esophagus* 2000; **13**: 96-101; discussion 102-103 [PMID: 14601898 DOI: 10.1046/j.1442-2050.2000.00094.x]
- 33 **Campos GM**, Vittinghoff E, Rabl C, Takata M, Gadenstätter M, Lin F, Ciovia R. Endoscopic and surgical treatments for achalasia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ann Surg* 2009; **249**: 45-57 [PMID: 19106675 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e31818e43ab]

- 34 **Allescher HD**, Storr M, Seige M, Gonzales-Donoso R, Ott R, Born P, Frimberger E, Weigert N, Stier A, Kurjak M, Rösch T, Classen M. Treatment of achalasia: botulinum toxin injection vs. pneumatic balloon dilation. A prospective study with long-term follow-Up. *Endoscopy* 2001; **33**: 1007-1017 [PMID: 11740642 DOI: 10.1055/s-2001-18935]
- 35 **Zaninotto G**, Annese V, Costantini M, Del Genio A, Costantino M, Epifani M, Gatto G, D'onofrio V, Benini L, Contini S, Molena D, Battaglia G, Tardio B, Andriulli A, Ancona E. Randomized controlled trial of botulinum toxin versus laparoscopic heller myotomy for esophageal achalasia. *Ann Surg* 2004; **239**: 364-370 [PMID: 15075653 DOI: 10.1097/01.sla.0000114217.52941.c5]
- 36 **Wang L**, Li YM, Li L. Meta-analysis of randomized and controlled treatment trials for achalasia. *Dig Dis Sci* 2009; **54**: 2303-2311 [PMID: 19107596 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-008-0637-8]
- 37 **Wei M**, Yang T, Yang X, Wang Z, Zhou Z. Peroral esophageal myotomy versus laparoscopic Heller's myotomy for achalasia: a meta-analysis. *J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A* 2015; **25**: 123-129 [PMID: 25683071 DOI: 10.1089/lap.2014.0454]
- 38 **Storr M**, Born P, Frimberger E, Weigert N, Rösch T, Meining A, Classen M, Allescher HD. Treatment of achalasia: the short-term response to botulinum toxin injection seems to be independent of any kind of pretreatment. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2002; **2**: 19 [PMID: 12175425]
- 39 **Stefanidis D**, Richardson W, Farrell TM, Kohn GP, Augenstein V, Fanelli RD. SAGES guidelines for the surgical treatment of esophageal achalasia. *Surg Endosc* 2012; **26**: 296-311 [PMID: 22044977 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-011-2017-2]
- 40 **Eckardt AJ**, Eckardt VF. Treatment and surveillance strategies in achalasia: an update. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **8**: 311-319 [PMID: 21522116 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2011.68]
- 41 **Pandolfino JE**, Gawron AJ. Achalasia: a systematic review. *JAMA* 2015; **313**: 1841-1852 [PMID: 25965233 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2015.2996]
- 42 **Katada N**, Sakuramoto S, Yamashita K, Shibata T, Moriya H, Kikuchi S, Watanabe M. Recent trends in the management of achalasia. *Ann Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2012; **18**: 420-428 [PMID: 23099422 DOI: 10.5761/atcs.ra.12.01949]
- 43 **Boeckstaens GE**, Zaninotto G, Richter JE. Achalasia. *Lancet* 2014; **383**: 83-93 [PMID: 23871090 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(13)60651-0]
- 44 **Meyer M**, Matsuoka I, Wetmore C, Olson L, Thoenen H. Enhanced synthesis of brain-derived neurotrophic factor in the lesioned peripheral nerve: different mechanisms are responsible for the regulation of BDNF and NGF mRNA. *J Cell Biol* 1992; **119**: 45-54 [PMID: 1527172 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.119.1.45]
- 45 **Boyd JG**, Gordon T. Neurotrophic factors and their receptors in axonal regeneration and functional recovery after peripheral nerve injury. *Mol Neurobiol* 2003; **27**: 277-324 [PMID: 12845152]
- 46 **Raivich G**, Kreutzberg GW. Peripheral nerve regeneration: role of growth factors and their receptors. *Int J Dev Neurosci* 1993; **11**: 311-324 [PMID: 8356900 DOI: 10.1016/0736-5748(93)90003-V]
- 47 **McMahon SB**, Priestley JV. Peripheral neuropathies and neurotrophic factors: animal models and clinical perspectives. *Curr Opin Neurobiol* 1995; **5**: 616-624 [PMID: 8580713 DOI: 10.1016/0959-4388(95)80067-0]
- 48 **MacLennan AJ**, Devlin BK, Neitzel KL, McLaurin DL, Anderson KJ, Lee N. Regulation of ciliary neurotrophic factor receptor alpha in sciatic motor neurons following axotomy. *Neuroscience* 1999; **91**: 1401-1413 [PMID: 10391446 DOI: 10.1016/S0306-4522(98)00717-9]
- 49 **Streppel M**, Azzolin N, Dohm S, Guntinas-Lichius O, Haas C, Grothe C, Wevers A, Neiss WF, Angelov DN. Focal application of neutralizing antibodies to soluble neurotrophic factors reduces collateral axonal branching after peripheral nerve lesion. *Eur J Neurosci* 2002; **15**: 1327-1342 [PMID: 11994127 DOI: 10.1046/j.1460-9568.2002.01971.x]
- 50 **Harrison AR**, Berbos Z, Zaldivar RA, Anderson BC, Semmer M, Lee MS, McLoon LK. Modulating neuromuscular junction density changes in botulinum toxin-treated orbicularis oculi muscle. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* 2011; **52**: 982-986 [PMID: 21087967 DOI: 10.1167/iops.10-6427]
- 51 **Christiansen SP**, Anderson BC, McLoon LK. Botulinum toxin pretreatment augments the weakening effect of injection with ricin-mAb35 in rabbit extraocular muscle. *J AAPOS* 2008; **12**: 122-127 [PMID: 18258470 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaapos.2007.11.001]
- 52 **Jiang H**, Xiang Y, Hu X, Cai H. Acrylamide inhibits nerve sprouting induced by botulinum toxin type A. *Neural Regen Res* 2014; **9**: 1525-1531 [PMID: 25317170 DOI: 10.4103/1673-5374.139479]
- 53 **Wang L**, Sun Y, Yang W, Lindo P, Singh BR. Type A botulinum neurotoxin complex proteins differentially modulate host response of neuronal cells. *Toxicon* 2014; **82**: 52-60 [PMID: 24560879 DOI: 10.1016/j.toxicon.2014.02.004]
- 54 **Carey WD**. Incorrect reconstitution of incobotulinumtoxinA leads to loss of neurotoxin. *J Drugs Dermatol* 2014; **13**: 735-738 [PMID: 24918566]
- 55 **Lacy BE**, Weiser K, Kennedy A. Botulinum toxin and gastrointestinal tract disorders: panacea, placebo, or pathway to the future? *Gastroenterol Hepatol* (NY) 2008; **4**: 283-295 [PMID: 21960915]
- 56 **Whitemarsh RC**, Tepp WH, Johnson EA, Pellett S. Persistence of botulinum neurotoxin A subtypes 1-5 in primary rat spinal cord cells. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e90252 [PMID: 24587301 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0090252]
- 57 **Wang J**, Zurawski TH, Meng J, Lawrence G, Olango WM, Finn DP, Wheeler L, Dolly JO. A dileucine in the protease of botulinum toxin A underlies its long-lived neuroparalysis: transfer of longevity to a novel potential therapeutic. *J Biol Chem* 2011; **286**: 6375-6385 [PMID: 21138836 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M110.181784]
- 58 **Tsai YC**, Maditz R, Kuo CL, Fishman PS, Shoemaker CB, Oyler GA, Weissman AM. Targeting botulinum neurotoxin persistence by the ubiquitin-proteasome system. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2010; **107**: 16554-16559 [PMID: 20823219 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1008302107]
- 59 **Devrière J**, Dunham F, Rickaert F, Bourgeois N, Cremer M. Endoscopic ultrasonography in achalasia. *Gastroenterology* 1989; **96**: 1210-1213 [PMID: 2647577]
- 60 **Hoffman BJ**, Knapple WL, Bhutani MS, Verne GN, Hawes RH. Treatment of achalasia by injection of botulinum toxin under endoscopic ultrasound guidance. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1997; **45**: 77-79 [PMID: 9013174]
- 61 **Ciulla A**, Cremona F, Genova G, Maiorana AM. Echo-guided injection of botulinum toxin versus blind endoscopic injection in patients with achalasia: final report. *Minerva Gastroenterol Dietol* 2013; **59**: 237-240 [PMID: 23831914]
- 62 **Moretó M**, Ojembarrena E, Rodríguez ML. Endoscopic injection of ethanolamine as a treatment for achalasia: a first report. *Endoscopy* 1996; **28**: 539-545 [PMID: 8911800 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-1005551]
- 63 **Moretó M**, Ojembarrena E, Barturen A, Casado I. Treatment of achalasia by injection of sclerosant substances: a long-term report. *Dig Dis Sci* 2013; **58**: 788-796 [PMID: 23179151 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-012-2476-x]
- 64 **Niknam R**, Mikaeli J, Fazlollahi N, Mahmoudi L, Mehrabi N, Shirani S, Malekzadeh R. Ethanolamine oleate as a novel therapy is effective in resistant idiopathic achalasia. *Dis Esophagus* 2014; **27**: 611-616 [PMID: 23927485 DOI: 10.1111/dote.12122]
- 65 **Mikaeli J**, Veisari AK, Fazlollahi N, Mehrabi N, Soleimani HA, Shirani S, Malekzadeh R. Ethanolamine oleate versus botulinum toxin in the treatment of idiopathic achalasia. *Ann Gastroenterol* 2015; **28**: 229-235 [PMID: 25830939]
- 66 **Ritvo M**, McDonald EJ. Value of nitrates in cardiospasm (achalasia of esophagus): preliminary report. *Am J Roentgenol* 1940; **43**: 500-508
- 67 **Douthwaite A**. Achalasia of cardia. Treatment with nitrites. *Lancet* 1943; **2**: 353-354 [DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(00)72548-7]
- 68 **Field C**. Octyl nitrite in achalasia of the cardia. *Lancet* 1944; **2**: 848-851 [DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(00)58788-1]
- 69 **Lorber SH**, Shay H. Roentgen studies of esophageal transport in patients with dysphagia due to abnormal motor function. *Gastroenterology* 1955; **28**: 697-714; discussion, 715-716 [PMID: 14380583]
- 70 **Gelfond M**, Rozen P, Keren S, Gilat T. Effect of nitrates on LOS pressure in achalasia: a potential therapeutic aid. *Gut* 1981; **22**:

- 312-318 [PMID: 7239323 DOI: 10.1136/gut.22.4.312]
- 71 **Wen ZH**, Gardener E, Wang YP. Nitrates for achalasia. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2004; **15**: CD002299 [PMID: 14973987 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD002299.pub2]
 - 72 **Weiser HF**, Lepsien G, Golenhofen K, Schattenmann G, Siewert R. [Clinical and experimental studies on the efficiency of nifedipine on smooth muscle strips of the esophagus (author's transl)]. *Z Gastroenterol* 1977; **15**: 691-698 [PMID: 595746]
 - 73 **Becker BS**, Burakoff R. The effect of verapamil on the lower esophageal sphincter pressure in normal subjects and in achalasia. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1983; **78**: 773-775 [PMID: 6650465]
 - 74 **Traube M**, Hongo M, Magyar L, McCallum RW. Effects of nifedipine in achalasia and in patients with high-amplitude peristaltic esophageal contractions. *JAMA* 1984; **252**: 1733-1736 [PMID: 6471300 DOI: 10.1001/jama.1984.03350130047033]
 - 75 **Román FJ**, Montes J, Bortolotti M. Effects of nifedipine in achalasia and patients with high-amplitude peristaltic esophageal contractions. *JAMA* 1985; **253**: 2046-2047 [PMID: 3974095 DOI: 10.1001/jama.1985.03350380062018]
 - 76 **Gelfond M**, Rozen P, Gilat T. Isosorbide dinitrate and nifedipine treatment of achalasia: a clinical, manometric and radionuclide evaluation. *Gastroenterology* 1982; **83**: 963-969 [PMID: 6288509]
 - 77 **Bassotti G**, Annese V. Review article: pharmacological options in achalasia. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 1999; **13**: 1391-1396 [PMID: 10571593 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2036.1999.00645.x]
 - 78 **Traube M**, Dubovik S, Lange RC, McCallum RW. The role of nifedipine therapy in achalasia: results of a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1989; **84**: 1259-1262 [PMID: 2679048]
 - 79 **Dughera L**, Chiaverina M, Cacciottella L, Cisarò F. Management of achalasia. *Clin Exp Gastroenterol* 2011; **4**: 33-41 [PMID: 21694870 DOI: 10.2147/CEG.S11593]
 - 80 **Bortolotti M**, Coccia G, Brunelli F, Sarti P, Mazza M, Bagnato F, Barbara L. Isosorbide dinitrate or nifedipine: which is preferable in the medical therapy of achalasia? *Ital J Gastroenterol* 1994; **26**: 379-382 [PMID: 7703511]
 - 81 **Triadafilopoulos G**, Aaronson M, Sackel S, Burakoff R. Medical treatment of esophageal achalasia. Double-blind crossover study with oral nifedipine, verapamil, and placebo. *Dig Dis Sci* 1991; **36**: 260-267 [PMID: 1995258 DOI: 10.1007/BF01318193]
 - 82 **Bortolotti M**, Mari C, Lopilato C, Porrazzo G, Miglioli M. Effects of sildenafil on esophageal motility of patients with idiopathic achalasia. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **118**: 253-257 [PMID: 10648452 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(00)85560-2]
 - 83 **Eherer AJ**, Schwetz I, Hammer HF, Petnehazy T, Scheidl SJ, Weber K, Krejs GJ. Effect of sildenafil on oesophageal motor function in healthy subjects and patients with oesophageal motor disorders. *Gut* 2002; **50**: 758-764 [PMID: 12010875 DOI: 10.1136/gut.50.6.758]
 - 84 **DiMarino AJ**, Cohen S. Effect of an oral beta2-adrenergic agonist on lower esophageal sphincter pressure in normals and in patients with achalasia. *Dig Dis Sci* 1982; **27**: 1063-1066 [PMID: 6129117 DOI: 10.1007/BF01391441]
 - 85 **Penagini R**, Bartesaghi B, Zannini P, Negri G, Bianchi PA. Lower oesophageal sphincter hypersensitivity to opioid receptor stimulation in patients with idiopathic achalasia. *Gut* 1993; **34**: 16-20 [PMID: 8381758 DOI: 10.1136/gut.34.1.16]
 - 86 **Penagini B**, Negri G, Bianchi PA. Effect of loperamide on lower oesophageal sphincter pressure in idiopathic achalasia. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1994; **29**: 1057-1060 [PMID: 7886391 DOI: 10.3109/00365529409094887]
 - 87 **Marzio L**, Grossi L, DeLaurentiis MF, Cennamo L, Lapenna D, Cuccurullo F. Effect of cimetropium bromide on esophageal motility and transit in patients affected by primary achalasia. *Dig Dis Sci* 1994; **39**: 1389-1394 [PMID: 8026247 DOI: 10.1007/BF02088038]
 - 88 **Wright JT**. Buscopan and oesophageal achalasia. *Br J Radiol* 1961; **34**: 113-119 [PMID: 13786799 DOI: 10.1259/0007-1285-34-398-113]
 - 89 **Guelrud M**, Rossiter A, Souney PF, Rossiter G, Fanikos J, Mujica V. The effect of vasoactive intestinal polypeptide on the lower esophageal sphincter in achalasia. *Gastroenterology* 1992; **103**: 377-382 [PMID: 1634056]
 - 90 **Wong RK**, Maydonovitch C, Garcia JE, Johnson LF, Castell DO. The effect of terbutaline sulfate, nitroglycerin, and aminophylline on lower esophageal sphincter pressure and radionuclide esophageal emptying in patients with achalasia. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 1987; **9**: 386-389 [PMID: 3116071 DOI: 10.1097/00004836-198708000-00006]
 - 91 **Arnon SS**, Schechter R, Inglesby TV, Henderson DA, Bartlett JG, Ascher MS, Eitzen E, Fine AD, Hauer J, Layton M, Lillibridge S, Osterholm MT, O'Toole T, Parker G, Perl TM, Russell PK, Swerdlow DL, Toner K. Botulinum toxin as a biological weapon: medical and public health management. *JAMA* 2001; **285**: 1059-1070 [PMID: 11209178]
 - 92 **Morbiato L**, Carli L, Johnson EA, Montecucco C, Molgó J, Rossetto O. Neuromuscular paralysis and recovery in mice injected with botulinum neurotoxins A and C. *Eur J Neurosci* 2007; **25**: 2697-2704 [PMID: 17561839 DOI: 10.1111/j.1460-9568.2007.05529.x]

P- Reviewer: Herbella FAM, Tan YY **S- Editor:** Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor:** Li D



Pregnancy and inflammatory bowel diseases: Current perspectives, risks and patient management

Pegah Hosseini-Carroll, Monica Mutyala, Abhishek Seth, Shaheen Nageeb, Demiana Soliman, Moheb Boktor, Ankur Sheth, Jonathon Chapman, James Morris, Paul Jordan, Kenneth Manas, Felix Becker, Jonathan Steven Alexander

Pegah Hosseini-Carroll, Abhishek Seth, Moheb Boktor, Ankur Sheth, James Morris, Paul Jordan, Kenneth Manas, Department of Medicine, Section of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Louisiana State University Health Sciences Center, Shreveport, LA 71130, United States

Monica Mutyala, Shaheen Nageeb, Demiana Soliman, Felix Becker, Jonathan Steven Alexander, Department of Molecular and Cellular Physiology, Louisiana State University Health Sciences Center, Shreveport, LA 71130, United States

Jonathon Chapman, Digestive Health Center of Louisiana, Baton Rouge, LA 70809, United States

Felix Becker, Department of General and Visceral Surgery, Muenster, 48149 Muenster, Germany

Author contributions: Hosseini-Carroll P and Alexander JS planned and supervised the study; Hosseini-Carroll P, Mutyala M, Nageeb S, Soliman D, Becker F and Alexander JS wrote the manuscript; Seth A, Boktor M, Sheth A, Chapman J, Morris J, Jordan P and Manas K made critical revisions of the manuscript; Becker F and Alexander JS contributed equally as senior authors.

Conflict-of-interest statement: There are no known conflicts of interest. The authors (Pegah Hosseini-Carroll, Monica Mutyala, Abhishek Seth, Shaheen Nageeb, Demiana Soliman, Moheb Boktor, Ankur Sheth, Jonathon Chapman, James Morris, Paul Jordan, Kenneth Manas, Felix Becker, and J Steven Alexander) have no relevant financial considerations related to this proposal, and the study was not supported by any corporate entity. There is no known intellectual property associated with this report.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Jonathan Steven Alexander, PhD, Department of Molecular and Cellular Physiology, Louisiana State University Health Sciences Center, 1501 Kings Highway, Shreveport, LA 71130, United States. jalex@lsuhsc.edu
Telephone: +1-318-6754151
Fax: +1-318-6754156

Received: April 27, 2015
Peer-review started: April 29, 2015
First decision: June 19, 2015
Revised: June 30, 2015
Accepted: August 29, 2015
Article in press: September 7, 2015
Published online: November 6, 2015

Abstract

Inflammatory bowel diseases (IBD) are chronic idiopathic inflammatory conditions characterized by relapsing and remitting episodes of inflammation which can affect several different regions of the gastrointestinal tract, but also shows extra-intestinal manifestations. IBD is most frequently diagnosed during peak female reproductive years, with 25% of women with IBD conceiving after their diagnosis. While IBD therapy has improved dramatically with enhanced surveillance and more abundant and powerful treatment options, IBD disease can have important effects on pregnancy and presents several challenges for maintaining optimal outcomes for mothers with IBD and the developing fetus/neonate. Women with IBD, the medical team treating them (both gastroenterologists and obstetricians/gynecologists) must often make highly complicated choices regarding conception, pregnancy, and post-natal care (particularly breastfeeding) related to their choice of treatment options at different phases of pregnancy as well as post-partum. This current review discusses current concerns and recommendations for pregnancy during

IBD and is intended for gastroenterologists, general practitioners and IBD patients intending to become, (or already) pregnant, and their families. We have addressed patterns of IBD inheritance, effects of IBD on fertility and conception (in both men and women), the effects of IBD disease activity on maintenance of pregnancy and outcomes, risks of diagnostic procedures during pregnancy and potential risks and complications associated with different classes of IBD therapeutics. We also have evaluated the clinical experience using “top-down” care with biologics, which is currently the standard care at our institution. Post-partum care and breastfeeding recommendations are also addressed.

Key words: Inflammatory bowel diseases; Pregnancy; Biologics; Breast-feeding; Immunomodulators

© **The Author(s) 2015.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Inflammatory bowel diseases (IBD) are chronic inflammatory conditions characterized by relapsing and remitting episodes of intestinal inflammation. IBD is most frequently diagnosed during peak female reproductive years, with 25% of women with IBD conceiving after their diagnosis. While therapies have improved dramatically, IBDs have important effects on pregnancy and present challenges for maintaining optimal outcomes for mothers and their developing fetus/neonate. Women with IBD and physicians must often make challenging decisions on conception, pregnancy, and breastfeeding. This review discusses concerns and recommendations for pregnancy during IBD and is intended for gastroenterologists, general practitioners and IBD patients and their families.

Hosseini-Carroll P, Mutyala M, Seth A, Nageeb S, Soliman D, Boktor M, Sheth A, Chapman J, Morris J, Jordan P, Manas K, Becker F, Alexander JS. Pregnancy and inflammatory bowel diseases: Current perspectives, risks and patient management. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(4): 156-171 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i4/156.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i4.156>

INTRODUCTION

Inflammatory bowel diseases (IBD) are chronic idiopathic inflammatory conditions characterized by relapsing and remitting episodes of inflammation affecting several regions of the gastrointestinal (GI) tract^[1,2]. In the United States, upwards of 1.4 million people have IBD^[2], and there is a trend for increasing IBD incidence over the last decades^[3]. The global incidence of Crohn's disease (CD) varies between 0.1-16/100000 and that of ulcerative colitis (UC) varies between 0.5-24.5/100000, with an overall prevalence IBD of 396/100000^[4]. IBD is more common in women than in men^[5], occurs more frequently in adolescents and young adults^[6], and is most

frequently diagnosed during peak reproductive years in women.

IBD includes at least 3 different subtypes: CD, UC and indeterminate colitis^[1]. UC and CD are distinguished by their affected locations and the histopathology of the disease at each affected site^[6]. While UC primarily affects the colon and the rectum, with involvement of the submucosa and mucosa, CD can affect any region in the GI tract (often sparing the rectum) and is characterized by transmural inflammation^[6]. When there is difficulty in discriminating between CD and UC, either based on colonoscopic evidence or excised colectomy specimens, the term “indeterminate” colitis is used^[7].

Clinically, IBD symptoms reflect inflammatory changes within the GI tract. Hallmark GI symptoms of IBD include diarrhea, constipation, bloody stools, increased bowel movements, abdominal cramping, nausea, and vomiting^[8]. In addition to GI symptomatology, fever, weight loss, arthralgias, and malaise are other frequent systemic symptoms seen in IBD. Fistulizing disease, fat and vitamin malabsorption are long-standing complications that are associated with CD^[6] but are less common in UC. These complications have serious consequences even in normal patients and can be devastating for pregnant women with IBD and their developing fetuses.

IBD therefore creates a unique and challenging set of conditions to effectively manage and control. Gastroenterologists can now provide specific and targeted treatment plans which can often be managed according to each patient's individual needs. Women with IBD, the physicians that care for them and their families must often face complex decisions on issues of conception, pregnancy and breastfeeding. As previously stated, at least 50% of patients are diagnosed by age 35^[9], more frequently^[10], affecting women during their peak reproductive years. Importantly, 25% of women with IBD will conceive after their diagnosis of IBD has been established^[9]. This review will examine some of the important considerations for women with IBD and their families including heritability, fertility, risks unique to IBD and IBD therapy in the setting of pregnancy and lactation.

FERTILITY

Women with active IBD experience reduced fertility for several reasons compared to the general population, with an overall “fertility rate” (lifetime births per woman) of 2.45 for healthy women, but only 2.06 for IBD patients (in the United States)^[10]. Population studies show infertility rates in CD to be somewhere between 5% to 14%^[11]. By comparison, UC has less of an effect on fertility, unless patients had undergone any IBD related surgery^[12,13]. Several other factors associated with active IBD can also contribute to the overall lower rate of conception in IBD including dyspareunia, low libido, and depression^[14-16]. Dyspareunia (painful sexual congress) often occurs secondary to pelvic surgery, from IBD-associated inflammation, or psychological stress

associated with IBD. Interestingly, the main cause of decreased rates of fertility in CD patients with history of previous surgeries was found to be a conscious and concerted decision against conception^[17].

For women with inactive IBD and without history of pelvic surgery, fertility is however comparable to their respective age-matched peers^[18]. Pelvic surgery in IBD thus remains a major factor negatively impacting fertility, which varies with the extent and type of surgery^[19]. Post-surgical adhesions also appear to play a key role in tubal infertility^[20].

Proctocolectomy (PCL) and ileal-pouch anal anastomosis (IPAA) surgeries are associated with reduced fertility. Two studies showed approximately 50% of the women experienced fallopian tube obstruction (either unilaterally or bilaterally) following these procedures^[21,22]. A meta-analysis evaluating IPAA in UC patients suggested that the risk of infertility increased 3-fold post-IPAA^[23]. PCL^[24] with IPAA has a more pronounced effect on fertility compared to the laparoscopic approach, which produces fewer adhesions^[18,19,23-26]. Studies involving laparoscopic IPAA indicate that women undergoing these procedures have significantly higher pregnancy rates as compared to open field IPAA^[27]. Therefore, laparoscopic procedures are always preferable particularly when conception is a goal.

INHERITANCE

Questions on inheritance patterns in IBD remain concerns for patients and their families. If one parent has any form of IBD, their child will have between a 2 to 13 fold increased lifetime risk of developing IBD^[28] and is empirically estimated as an approximately 5% heritable risk in CD and 1.6% in UC^[29]. However when both parents have a form of IBD, this risk increases to approximately 33%-36% for their offspring to inherit a form of IBD^[30,31]. Genomic studies have shown that at least 100 heritable loci may influence IBD onset and penetrance^[32]. Genomic studies have identified a vast heterogeneous distribution of genes linked with IBD, possibly suggesting different populations clusters that exhibit these conditions. Consequently, while in a population, the risk of IBD may be elevated by the presence of any particular gene variant, this does not necessarily hold true for any individual IBD patient bearing such alleles. The large number of genes creates several diverse patterns of IBD activity and inheritance involving different levels of disease activity and thereby necessitate individualized therapy. Both UC and CD have been associated with excessive interleukin-23 (IL-23) pathway activation with the dysregulation of several transcription factors, including SMAD3, STAT3, c-REL, zinc-finger-MIZ-type containing 1 and NK2^[32]. Several genes specifically associated with UC include cytokines *e.g.*, IL-26, IL-22, structural proteins LAMB1 (encodes laminin β 1), and hepatocyte nuclear factor 4 α . With respect to CD, its pathogenesis has been linked with disturbances in nucleotide binding oligomerization

domain protein 2 and genes that control autophagy (*e.g.*, ATG)^[32], as well as disturbances in IL-10, tumor necrosis factor superfamily (TNFSF) 8, TNFSF-15, ZMIZ-1, NK2 transcription factor (NKX2-3), SMAD-3, caspase recruitment domain family, member 9 (CARD-9), and CARD-15^[32].

DISEASE ACTIVITY DURING PREGNANCY

The severity of IBD disease activity during pregnancy also significantly influences pregnancy outcomes. While pregnancy has not been shown to specifically increase the risks of IBD "flares"^[19], approximately 30%-40% of women with IBD active at the time of conception will develop more intense disease or endure disease flares during pregnancy^[33,34]. Some studies show that disease outcomes and flares in IBD outside of pregnancy are linked to environmental factors and lifestyle including hormone use, diet, mental health status, cigarette smoking, and vitamin D levels^[35]. IBD activity at the time of conception apparently determines the clinical course IBD patients will experience during pregnancy. That is to say, 2/3 of women with IBD in remission at the time of conception are likely continue to remain in remission throughout their pregnancy^[36-39]. Remarkably^[37-40], because only 1/3 of those patients with active disease at time of conception will relapse during their pregnancy, Editor, the gravid state may suppress some disease processes in IBD^[40]. Effective IBD control in prenatal planning is therefore essential for favorable pregnancy outcomes, (birth weight > 5.5 lbs, no spontaneous abortion, congenital malformations or antepartum hemorrhage)^[41]. Women with inactive IBD at the time of conception have only similar risks of adverse pregnancy outcomes as the general female population^[12]. Women with active IBD however have increased risks of preterm deliveries, intrauterine growth restriction, and low birth weight (LBW) babies (defined as live born infants < 2500 g regardless of total gestational age)^[37,42-44]. This suggests that the IBD process itself produces greater fetal risks during pregnancy. These complications are also more often seen in CD patients as compared to patients with UC.

The Crohn's Disease Activity Index (CDAI) is used in CD patients to evaluate baseline disease severity quantify cumulative symptoms and assess the changes of the disease in response to therapies in afflicted individuals^[45]. There are eight factors involved in determining CDAI, which are assessed daily for 7 d, including: (1) frequency of watery stools; (2) well-being; (3) abdominal pain; (4) presence of any complications; (5) presence of abdominal mass; (6) usage of opioids; (7) low hematocrit < 0.47 and < 0.42 in men and women respectively, and lastly; and (8) standard weight percentage deviation^[45]. A CDAI below 150 is defined as "in remission", while a CDAI > 450 is termed severe disease^[46]. Pregnant women with IBD should seek early prenatal care similar to other pregnant women but need additional education

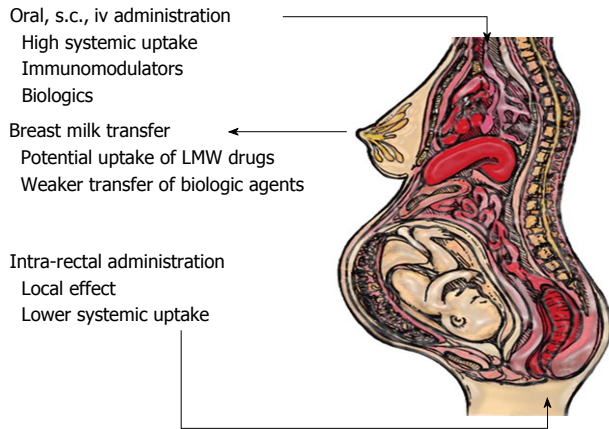


Figure 1 Inflammatory bowel disease drug metabolism considerations in pregnancy. LMW: Low molecular weight.

regarding effects of drug usage, vaccinations and vitamin regimens. Ideally, gastroenterologists should confer with obstetricians in the care of females with IBD.

COMPLICATIONS OF IBD DURING PREGNANCY

Expectant mothers with IBD are at a greater risk for several complications including malnutrition, venous thromboembolism (VTE), antepartum hemorrhage, and cesarean delivery^[19,47,48]. VTE is increased in women with UC, while antepartum hemorrhage risk is more prevalent in women with CD^[47]. There is nearly a 4-fold increase in the risk of VTE in women with UC; while CD affects women have a risk of VTE that was comparable with the general population^[47]. The antepartum hemorrhage risk is shown to be doubled in women with CD^[47]. Approximately 2% of women with CD and UC were seen to develop placental abruption in a study on obstetric hospitalizations^[49]. The risk of cesarean delivery is also increased in the setting of either UC or CD^[48]. According to Ng *et al.*^[19], women with perianal disease should opt for cesarean section, while those without perianal involvement can safely opt for a normal vaginal delivery.

As stated earlier, pregnant women with active IBD at conception suffer more frequent complications compared to those with quiescent disease (at conception), with those with low levels of disease activity for IBD having outcomes similar to the healthy pregnant population^[40,50,51]. Complications associated with IBD activity at the time of conception include: Abortion, low birth weight (LBW), and premature births^[50,52-55]. These complications again, are usually seen more often in CD patients than UC patients. A 2007 study, which evaluated birth outcomes in CD, showed an increased risk of preterm births but did not report any other adverse birth outcomes^[56]. Khosla *et al.*^[36] showed that individuals with active CD at the time of conception had a 35% higher rate of miscarriage than women with CD in remission. Moser *et al.*^[57] demonstrated ileal disease

was a particularly reliable index predicting LBW. Relapse of UC in pregnant women was also associated with LBW and preterm births^[58]. Fortunately, increased risks for congenital abnormalities have not been demonstrated in neonates whose mothers had IBD compared to the general population^[57].

Women also suffer from diverse forms of inadequate nutrition during active IBD due to decreased appetite and/or history of multiple small bowel surgeries, both of which can negatively affect absorption of specific nutrients^[59,60]; protein losing enteropathies can also exacerbate these nutritional deficits.

Overall, IBD disease activity at the time of conception will play some role in the outcome of the pregnancy. It is therefore advisable to optimally control disease prior to conceiving to diminish the likelihood of adverse outcomes from disease flares, the need to suppress symptoms and the need to medicate all of which can be harmful to both the mother and fetus. Monitoring maternal nutrition and providing proper prenatal care giving heparin prophylactically to the gravid IBD patient, may help in prevention of VTE and malnutrition respectively.

IBD DIAGNOSIS DURING PREGNANCY

Imaging modalities used during evaluation of IBD during pregnancy can present risks to both mother and fetus and should be limited to ultrasound and MRI. Ultrasound avoids radiation exposure to the fetus and is always the preferred imaging compared to CT scan^[19]. When more detailed imaging study is required, MRI without gadolinium contrast can be used to avoid teratogenicity, especially in the first trimester^[19]. X-rays should be avoided throughout the pregnancy. Colonoscopy should be considered during pregnancy when life-threatening lower GI bleeds are observed or when surgical interventions are the only available option^[61]. However, flexible sigmoidoscopy is considered safe during pregnancy and is the endoscopic procedure of choice^[61,62]. Recommendations by the American Society for Gastrointestinal Endoscopy, state that procedure associated sedation is also safe during the 2nd trimester but is not recommended during the 1st and 3rd trimesters, except in emergent situations^[63].

MANAGEMENT

Serious discussions and consideration need to be made regarding treatment modalities at different phases of pregnancy (Figure 1). IBD therapy is still evolving and the focus of IBD management has now moved away from short-term control of symptoms to more long-term suppression of disease mechanisms which alter the course and complications of IBD. Older drug classes such as 5-aminosalicylic acid (5-ASA) compounds (sulfasalazine, mesalamine, balsalazide), steroids, antibiotics and other immunomodulators [*i.e.*, 6-mercaptopurine (6-MP), azathioprine (AZA),

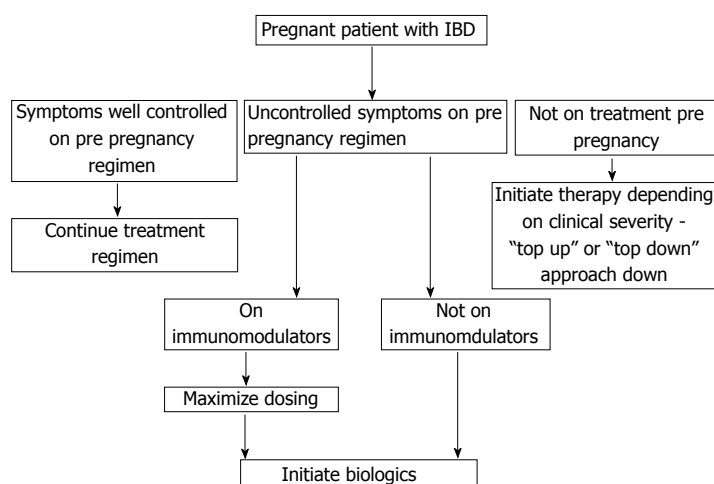


Figure 2 Treatment approach strategy. IBD: Inflammatory bowel disease.

cyclosporine and methotrexate] have given way to newer “biologic” agents. The biologics currently used for treatment of IBD are most often humanized monoclonal antibodies directed toward inflammatory cytokines such as tumor necrosis factor- α (TNF- α) or adhesive determinants on leukocytes (*e.g.*, integrin $\alpha 4\beta 7$), which bind counter-ligands expressed on inflammation-activated intestinal endothelial cells [like mucosal addressin cell adhesion molecule-1 (MAdCAM-1)].

Traditional IBD therapy has been to “step up” or incrementally increase treatment in a stepwise fashion finally introducing more powerful medications for IBD. It involves gradual addition of relatively benign drugs early in the course of IBD like aminosalicylates and steroids. When these drugs eventually fail, they are substituted by more aggressive therapies like immunomodulators and lastly biologics. The final step for escalation in the “step up therapy” approach was the introduction of biologic agents.

Over the last few years, clinical studies have suggested that aggressive medical therapies initiated earlier in the disease course helps to arrest the progressive nature of IBD (especially CD) leading to a “disease modifying effect”^[64]. “Disease modifying” describes the slowing or stabilization of IBD progression, which leads to a more benign clinical picture, often eliminating the need for multiple or complex surgeries and importantly, reducing the overall lifetime risk for colorectal malignancies. The most convincing IBD therapy data now seems to favor the use of biologics; either alone or in combination with immunomodulator therapy. The more intensive combination therapy has gained widespread clinical acceptance of switching from the “step-up therapy” to the “top-down” approach (Figure 2). The same principle of this treatment approach also appears applicable during pregnancy, albeit with several safety considerations.

Currently, “top-down” therapy is our standard approach to IBD at Louisiana State University Health Sciences Center-Shreveport (LSUHSC-S), which provides state-sponsored free care to all patients despite the high annual cost of biologic drugs. LSUHSC-S has

approximately 500 patient population with IBD, and we have used the “top-down” approach for over 15 years since biologics were first introduced (1998), starting with infliximab (INF)^[65]. We commonly initiate therapy with biologics and immunomodulators in new IBD patients to obtain control of the disease early on and achieve remission, rather than allowing the disease opportunities to develop an aggressive course before taking action. Other institutions in the surrounding region have followed suit and now also use “top-down” approach. “Top-down” therapy, while highly effective may be altered during pregnancy based on safety considerations and disease severity.

The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has established five distinguishing categories to designate the potential for a drug to cause birth defects if used during pregnancy^[66] and reflect both documentation reliability and relative risk to benefit ratio considerations (Table 1).

AMINOSALICYLATES

There are several different formulations of aminosalicylates with differing levels of risk in the setting of pregnancy. Sulfasalazine (SSZ), the first aminosalicylate used in treating IBD, is an FDA category “B” drug. Since SSZ crosses the placenta, there are several concerns in pregnancy^[67]. SSZ is known to inhibit folate synthesis^[68] and impairs folate absorption potentially leading to fetal neural tube defects. This has raised some concerns about its safe use during pregnancy, but these appear to have been alleviated by several studies^[36,56,68]. For example, Mogadam *et al.*^[69] performed a study on 181 pregnant women with IBD who were treated with SSZ. When matched with the overall population, these patients showed a net lower incidence of having adverse outcomes. Nørgård *et al.*^[56] also conducted a regional retrospective cohort study, which also showed no adverse outcomes in 17 CD patients who were treated with SSZ. Therefore, SSZ may be used in pregnancy with the requirement of patients taking folate supplements^[68]. In fact, pregnant women taking SSZ are advised to increase

Table 1 Food and Drug Administration pregnancy category definitions^[66]

Category	Definition
A	AWC studies in humans have failed to demonstrate a risk to the fetus in the all trimesters of pregnancy
B	Studies in animals have failed to demonstrate a risk to the fetus and there are no AWC studies in humans and the drug usage benefits outweigh its potential risks, or, there were no studies performed either in animals nor in humans
C	There are no AWC studies in humans but studies in animals have shown a side effect on the fetus, and the drug usage benefits outweigh its potential risks, or, there were no studies performed either in animals nor in humans
D	Investigational or marketing experience or studies in humans reported positive evidence of human fetus risk, but it can still be used in spite of its potential risks if there are extreme measures as in a life-threatening situation or serious disease in which safer drugs are ineffective or contraindicated
X	Studies in animals or humans have demonstrated fetal abnormalities, or, there investigational or marketing experience, or both reported positive evidence of fetal risk, and, the potential risks of drug usage clearly outweigh any possible benefit (for example, other forms of therapy are available)

AWC: Adequate and well-controlled.

their daily dose of folate to 5 mg^[70], compared to women not taking SSZ who only require between 0.4 mg and 1 mg of folate daily^[70].

Men on SSZ therapy for IBD should switch to an alternate drug treatment 3-4 mo prior to conceiving given SSZ's known suppressive effect on sperm^[19]. One study compared the fertility of 10 men with IBD being treated with SSZ over 5 years to those of 19 control subjects. It showed that while SSZ treatment did reduce semen quality, this effect was reversed upon drug discontinuation^[71].

Over the last two decades, preparations based on 5-ASA have remained a standard of IBD therapy, avoiding the use of SSZ, which has been associated with several serious adverse effects^[72,73]. Both topical 5-ASAs and non-enteric coated formulations of 5-ASA are accepted to be safe in pregnancy. Bell *et al*^[74] in a study of 19 pregnant patients with distal colitis on maintenance with topical 5-ASA therapies at the time of conception found that 5-ASA was safe and effective for managing distal colitis during pregnancy. Marteau *et al*^[75] also conducted a study in which 123 pregnant IBD patients were monitored while taking between 1-4 g/d of mesalamine microgranules and found no serious complications during the course of pregnancy, nor did they find any adverse fetal outcomes.

Asacol (mesalamine) (Procter and Gamble Pharmaceuticals, OH, United States of America) and Asacol HD (mesalamine delayed-release tablet) (Procter and Gamble) have been moved from pregnancy category "B" to "C" due to the use of dibutyl phthalate (DBP), which is used in the coating of these medications. DBP has adverse effects on the male reproductive system^[76] and has been linked to precocious puberty^[77]. However, it is important to note that the doses used in these animal models which have linked to skeletal deformities and reproductive system disturbances were approximately 190 times greater than the maximum doses used in humans. Precocious puberty was also caused by DBP doses that were 10 × the maximum recommended levels^[77]. There have been no studies to date showing increased birth defects in patients taking mesalamine. All other formulations of mesalamine, as well as other aminosalicylates are classified as category "B" drugs.

No statistically significant increases in congenital abnormalities, stillbirths, spontaneous abortions, preterm deliveries, or LBW have been reported in association with Asacol use^[78].

Mesalamine is available as an enema or suppository in the United States. Since enemas can reach the left colon, rectal therapies are typically considered for patients with disease activity found in locations from the rectum to the left colon. UC often starts in the rectum with 1/3 of patients with UC having disease restricted to the rectum, with another 1/3 having disease extending into the left colon, both of which can be reached by administration of drugs by enema^[79]. CD affecting the rectum and sigmoid colon is also very commonly treated by enema^[80]. Enemas are the treatment of choice for pregnant women suffering from distal UC because its therapeutic effect on the lining of the bowel is maximized while the systemic side effects are compartmentalized.

Mesalamine can penetrate the placenta and also enters into breast milk. SSZ itself may be present in breast milk at 30% of the maternal plasma concentration, and sulfapyridine (an SSZ metabolite) is found at 50% of the concentration in the maternal circulation^[81]. Therefore, SSZ should be avoided, if possible, for mothers of premature infants or those less than 1 mo of age. There is also a concern for kernicterus, a bilirubin-induced brain dysfunction, as sulfonamides can displace bilirubin from albumin, though there are no reported cases in the literature^[82,83]. There is however one case report of an infant with severe but reversible diarrhea after being breastfed by a mother using rectal 5-ASA^[84]. Infant stool patterns should therefore be monitored if the mother is using mesalamine for IBD therapy and is breastfeeding^[19]. There is a general preference for clinicians in limiting the maximum dose to 2 g mesalamine daily during pregnancy based on an association with neonatal renal insufficiency in a 1994 report^[85]. This dose is low compared to the normal non-pregnant patient maximum dose of 2.4 to 4.8 g daily depending on the preparation being used.

Using 5-ASA for treating CD is controversial. Ford *et al*^[86] performed a meta-analysis to determine the effectiveness of 5-ASA in inducing and maintaining CD

remission. That study suggested that 5-ASA based drugs were superior to placebo at inducing remission in patients with active CD, with a reported "number needed to treat" of 11. Approximately 68% of CD patients treated with 5-ASA failed to achieve remission vs 75% of patients who were receiving placebo. 5-ASA had no benefit in maintaining remission. A relapse rate of 56% was found in patients treated with 5-ASA compared with 57% for patients on placebo treatments. In a 2011 study, mesalamine and budesonide were found to be equally efficacious in inducing remission in patients who had mild to moderate activity CD^[87]. Remission rates were similar between those who were receiving budesonide and mesalamine (70% vs 62%). Therefore, 5-ASA, based on studies, is not as effective in the treatment of CD and its use in treating pregnant women is unclear.

5-ASA is however, an optimal drug for inducing and maintaining remission in mild to moderate UC^[88]. Trallori *et al.*^[72] conducted a safety study on 5-ASA use for treating UC during pregnancy. All patients in the study were in clinical remission from UC at the beginning of pregnancy and were receiving regular maintenance therapy with 1.2 g/d of 5-ASA. It was noted that 5-ASA usages during pregnancy did not affect the course or outcome of pregnancy, but it could prevent disease relapse of UC. Therefore, in general, aminosalicylates like 5-ASA can be used in pregnant women with IBD, but caution should be still advised regarding dosing.

ANTIBIOTIC USE FOR IBD DURING PREGNANCY

Metronidazole is an antimicrobial drug and a pregnancy category "B" drug that works to limit proliferation of anaerobic bacteria and is used for treating active colonic and perianal CD^[89]. There have also been some benefits seen with the combined use of metronidazole and ciprofloxacin in treatment of pouchitis (inflammation of the ileal pouch), which is a long-term complication of IPAA surgery for UC^[90,91]. Metronidazole should however be avoided in the 1st trimester as it has been linked to an increased rate of cleft lip/palate in a 1998 study^[92]. Metronidazole teratogenicity has also been demonstrated in animal models (when used in the same developmental stage equivalent of the 1st trimester) but there is apparently less risk of teratogenicity in the 2nd and 3rd trimesters. A study of metronidazole in rats also demonstrated a depression of plasma gonadotropins (luteinizing hormone and follicle stimulating hormone), testosterone, testes weight, and spermatogenesis^[93].

Metronidazole is also incompatible with breastfeeding as breastfed infants of mothers taking metronidazole have exhibited diarrhea, secondary lactose intolerance, and Candidiasis^[94,95]. Women receiving a single dose of metronidazole may resume breastfeeding after 12-24 h^[96].

Ciprofloxacin, another antibiotic used to control flares in IBD, carries a pregnancy category "C" rating. There is increased uptake of ciprofloxacin in bone tissue which

can cause arthropathy in children and therefore, its use is discouraged during pregnancy^[97]. Limited data exists on the safety of ciprofloxacin use during breastfeeding. It is recommended that women receiving a single dose of ciprofloxacin can resume breastfeeding after 48 h^[98]. Conversely, there have been studies that considered whether short-term ciprofloxacin use is acceptable during breastfeeding as it decreases in breast milk over time. One study involving 10 lactating women who were given ciprofloxacin in 3 doses every 12 h estimated that an infant fed only by breast would receive a maximum of 0.57 mg/kg daily dose of the drug. The dosage that an infant would receive is low compared to the levels used to treating newborn infants (10 to 40 mg/kg)^[99-102]. Another study showed that an infant nursing from a woman being treated with ciprofloxacin for 10 d had no measurable ciprofloxacin in the infant's serum (< 30 µg/L) 2.7 h after breastfeeding^[103]. Therefore, modest or acute use of ciprofloxacin appears relatively safe for use in most pregnant women and even nursing mothers. In men, ciprofloxacin does not seem to affect sperm quality, however, the function of the accessory glands (including the seminal vesicles, prostate gland, and bulbourethral glands) can in some cases be modified^[104].

Rifaximin, a broad-spectrum antimicrobial, has shown to be useful in treating pouchitis and small bowel bacterial overgrowth in IBD. Rifaximin is used in IPAA, stricturing small bowel disease, and in patients with a history of multiple bowel surgeries, which can contribute to intestinal stasis. Rifaximin is relatively new to both the clinic and market place and is listed as a category class "C" drug during pregnancy since its fetal effects and transfer in breastfeeding is still unclear. Studies have shown rifaximin-induced birth defects in animals, including abnormalities in bone maturation and cleft palate^[105], however another study failed to demonstrate as strong evidence for birth defects in rats^[106]. The fertility of male rats was not affected the consumption of rifaximin^[107]. Based on the limited data for rifaximin in pregnancy, this drug cannot yet be safely recommended to pregnant women with IBD. Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid, are pregnancy class "B" drugs, which are a safe alternative option for use in treating pouchitis. Unlike rifaximin, amoxicillin/clavulanic acid failed to show birth defects in both a prospective controlled study^[93] and a population-based case-control study^[108].

IMMUNOMODULATORS

6-MP/AZA

AZA is a prodrug that is metabolized to 6-MP, which is then later metabolized into several metabolites including the active metabolite 6-thioguanine (6-TG) and the inactive metabolite 6-methylmercaptopurine (6-MMP). Therapeutic efficacy in IBD is related to 6-TG levels, while high 6-MMP levels are correlated with liver and bone marrow toxicity. Several strategies have been utilized to try to optimize 6-TG levels while minimizing 6-MMP levels when administering thiopurines to patients that

would not otherwise tolerate these drugs. 6-TG levels between 230 and 400 pmol/ 8×10^8 red cells correlate with response and remission of IBD but levels which exceed 400 pmol/ 8×10^8 red cells correlate with bone marrow suppression. 6-MMP levels over 5700 pmol/ 8×10^8 red blood cells have been linked with hepatotoxicity (measured by release of liver enzymes)^[109,110].

AZA and 6-MP, both purine analogs, are pregnancy category "D" drugs, since gestational animal studies show a defined association with birth defects. Because of their cytotoxicity, and potential risk of birth defects, they should be used with great care during pregnancy^[111]. Immunomodulators alter the activity of the immune system in order to decrease the body's inflammatory response and cause an overall immunosuppressive effect. AZA and 6-MP both target the expansion of T lymphocytes, and suppress lymphocyte survival to depress inflammatory responses in IBD. These drugs effectively establish and maintain remission of IBD and are especially helpful in patients who have do not respond strongly to milder therapies (such as aminosalicylates), or are steroid-dependent^[112]. There are variable and conflicting data on side effects of immunomodulators in humans. In a 2006 study, Cleary *et al.*^[113] studied 476 women, the majority of which had IBD. This study found a 3 × increase in the frequency of cardiac defects in children of women who took these immunomodulators early in their pregnancy. It was also found that there was a risk for increased preterm deliveries, LBW, and "small for gestational age" babies in AZA treatment associated pregnancies. A meta-analysis performed in 2012 showed that men fathering children who were exposed to thiopurine around the time of conception did not increase rates of congenital birth defects and so did not recommend discontinuation of treatment in men^[112]. However, if there is a medical history of unexplained infertility or miscarriages, men should discontinue taking thiopurines at least four months before conception to improve fertility^[114].

Conversely, Goldstein *et al.*^[111] studied 189 women who took AZA for different indications and later contacted a birth defects registry following delivery. That study failed to find a statistically significant increase in the rate of malformations (compared to 230 women who contacted the same service that were not on any potentially teratogenic treatment). However, the Goldstein study did confirm a statistically significant difference in premature birth and LBW associated with AZA. Akbari *et al.*^[112] 2012 performed a meta-analysis and found that exposure to thiopurines during conception was not clearly associated with birth abnormalities and concluded that maternal use of thiopurine was not associated with low LBW, but confirmed an increase in the risk of preterm births associated with thiopurine exposure. In fact, preterm birth had an increased odds of 70% and was the only outcome found to be significantly affected by thiopurine use. Again, whether this is directly related to thiopurine use, or simply the result of the more severe disease state in which thiopurines are more

often required is unclear^[112]. For example, other studies have demonstrated a more severe disease course in IBD was also significantly associated with preterm births not related to drug loading^[50,112]. Furthermore, data from the Pregnancy in Inflammatory Bowel Disease and Neonatal Outcomes (PIANO) registry in 2012 found no evidence for an increased frequency of gestational or fetal complications in Group A (6-MP/AZA) as compared to other groups. Data presented at Digestive Disease Week 2014 revealed improved milestone achievement in babies of mothers in Group A^[115]. These milestones were statistically significant for social interaction at 24 mo (50.75 vs 47.34, $P = 0.04$), problem solving 36 mo (mean 52.04 vs 48.66, $P = 0.05$), and problem solving 48 mo (mean 59.92 vs 57.66, $P = 0.02$).

Cancers Et Surrisque Associé aux Maladies inflammatoires intestinales En France (CESAME), a prospective cohort population-based study included 11006 women that followed patients between 2004-2007 in France, had a primary goal to determine the risk of malignancies in patients on thiopurines^[116]. Coelho *et al.*^[117] ran a sub study that was added to the CESAME in 2005, which included 86 thiopurine-treated pregnancies compared to 129 IBD controlled pregnant patients. One of the main findings of the study was that there were no increases in congenital abnormalities in thiopurine-treated pregnancies^[117].

Therefore we believe that benefits from maintenance on these immunomodulators during pregnancy may in some cases outweigh potential fetal risks. AZA and 6-MP are also believed to be generally compatible with breastfeeding. So far studies have demonstrated only very low levels of the drugs transferred in breast milk and thus clinically insignificant concentrations accumulated in healthy breastfeeding infants. However, Mahadevan *et al.*^[118] suggests caution in infants with weaker than normal immune systems. We agree with this comment since these drugs may intensify an already immunodeficient state due to their mechanism of action, which could become more serious in the setting of perinatal pathogen exposures.

In conclusion, several different outcomes are possible with the use of thiopurines with the worst being a potential increase in congenital malformations. Consequently some, caution is warranted with the use of these drugs. Despite limitations of these studies *e.g.*, relatively small sample sizes, or failure to consider the disease activity of IBD, these data are consistent with very moderate thiopurine use as potentially safe during pregnancy^[56,57,117].

Methotrexate

The action of Methotrexate (MTX) in IBD involves several mechanisms. MTX interferes with DNA synthesis producing a suppression of T-cell expansion and also diminished immune cell persistence. MTX also inhibits both lymphocyte and endothelial cell expression of intercellular adhesion molecule-1 (ICAM-1) to

lower leukocyte extravasation and its accompanying inflammation. MTX is a pregnancy category X drug, and acts as a folic acid antagonist that has been previously linked with several forms of birth defects affecting fetal organ development. Although MTX has beneficial anti-inflammatory actions in IBD, this particular drug is considered to be so dangerous in the setting of pregnancy that women should be advised to wait at least 6 mo after discontinuing MTX before resuming any attempts to conceive. MTX is also not to be used during breastfeeding as it is passed into breast milk. For men on methotrexate, one study which considered 42 pregnancy outcomes involving paternal exposure to MTX around the time of or up to 3 mo prior to conception concluded that this treatment did not enhance the risk of birth defects^[119]. However, given the limited data available to date, some health providers still recommend that men also wait at least 3 mo after discontinuing MTX before attempting to conceive based on the depressive effect of MTX on spermatogenesis leading to oligospermia^[120].

IMMUNOSUPPRESSANTS

Cyclosporine A/tacrolimus

Cyclosporine A (CsA) and tacrolimus are immune suppressing drugs, which are listed as pregnancy category "C" drugs. The majority of CsA recommendations have been derived from transplant experiences. CsA blocks IL-2 formation by helper T-cells. Binding of CsA to cyclophilin, inhibits calcineurin, a cytoplasmic phosphatase which participates in the control of T-cell activation. CsA also indirectly inhibits the function of B-cells by suppression of T-helper cells. CsA has a more rapid onset of clinical action than either 6-MP or AZA, which can require 3-6 mo before showing detectable disease suppressing activity^[121]. Patients with CD who respond to CsA show rapid improvements within 2-3 wk^[121]. Clinical improvements have also been seen within 1-2 wk following the initiation of therapy with CsA in severe UC^[121].

Tacrolimus, a macrolide antibiotic, has immunomodulator properties like CsA but two orders of magnitude more potent than CsA. One advantage of tacrolimus is that it doesn't require bile or mucosal integrity for its absorption. As a result, tacrolimus can be used in patients with small bowel involvement, including both CD and UC^[122]. So far these drugs have not yet been linked to increased rates of congenital abnormalities. However, increased rates of maternal and perinatal complications have been reported in kidney transplant recipients on different regimens of immunosuppressant medications, including those using either cyclosporine and tacrolimus^[123]. These drugs are further restricted during breastfeeding as they develop high concentrations in breast milk, with the potential for perinatal immune suppression. However, according to Nielsen *et al.*^[97], tacrolimus is excreted into breast milk at only 0.05% of the maternal dose suggesting that it does not need to be discontinued while breastfeeding.

Cyclosporine is also weakly transferred/passed into in breast milk and is possibly safe while breastfeeding, although caution should be recommended and exercised based on its potential for immunosuppression^[97]. At LSUHSC-S we routinely discuss the such risks with our patients before initiating therapy with either CsA or tacrolimus.

Steroids

As mentioned earlier, biologic agents and immunomodulators remain key therapies in achieving remission of IBD. However, during acute flares many practitioners often fall back upon the use of corticosteroids to provide patients with temporary relief from their symptoms. Due to side effects associated with their long term use, corticosteroids (prednisone and methylprednisolone) are used only sporadically and are not used for maintaining remission. Corticosteroids, specifically prednisone, are considered a pregnancy category "C" drug. Prednisone use in pregnancy has been associated with development of when used within the first month after conception or during the first trimester^[98]. However, no evidence currently links glucocorticoid use with major malformations^[63,124,125]. Corticosteroids have also further been linked to premature rupture of placental membranes and adrenal suppression (so far seen only in mothers observed in transplant studies)^[19]. Corticosteroids are however usually thought to be compatible with breastfeeding since only very low levels of steroids are transferred into the breast milk and the risks to the neonate appear to be considered to be very low clinically^[126,127]. Consequently, no absolute guidelines/recommendations have yet been developed regarding timing of breastfeeding around administration of the corticosteroids^[19].

Biologics

Biologics are now widely used for the treatment of IBD. However, since they function by targeting inflammatory cytokines or adhesive determinants, they may not be highly effective for treating acute flare-ups because they frequently can often weeks to months to become effective. Biologics are broadly divided into TNF- α inhibitors and non TNF- α inhibitors. TNF- α inhibitors are often humanized recombinant IgG1 monoclonal antibodies that neutralize TNF- α with high affinity. INF (Remicade, Janssen), adalimumab (ADA) (Humira, Abbvie) and certolizumab-pegol (CZP) (Cimzia, UCB) are currently the most commonly used drugs of this type in our practice, and are considered pregnancy category "B" drugs.

The second class includes biologics like Tysabri (natalizumab, Biogen), which is a class IgG4 monoclonal antibody IgG4 which has been "humanized" to more closely resemble human IgG that inhibits leukocyte binding mediated by the integrin α 4 adhesion molecule. IgG4 antibodies are not as efficiently transported across the placenta as IgG1, however fetal levels of IgG4 still exceed those in the maternal circulation. The risk

of congenital malformations has not been seen to be increased in a study of pregnant patients with CD or multiple sclerosis who were treated with Tysabri during their first trimester^[128]. Vedolizumab (Entyvio, Takeda) is the latest biologic (approved by FDA on May 2014) used for treating IBD. Vedolizumab is a humanized monoclonal antibody (IgG1) that binds to the human $\alpha 4\beta 7$ integrin (expressed on the surface of T cells), thereby inhibiting T cell adhesion presumably to MAdCAM-1^[129]. However vedolizumab and natalizumab are not equivalent. Although vedolizumab is listed as a category B agent, natalizumab is listed as a class C agent and therefore carries an unknown level of and is not recommended for use during pregnancy. Newer biologic therapies under development are currently in different phases of clinical trials and target other cytokines. For example, ABT-874 (Briakinumab, Abbott) and CNTO 1275 (Ustekinumab, Centocor) are both anti-IL-12/-23 antibodies and tocilizumab is anti-IL-6 antibody^[130]. Briakinumab has no pregnancy category assignment yet, while Ustekinumab is listed a category B agent. Tocilizumab is listed as a category C drug based on abortifacient potential of this agent; its use should be terminated prior to and during pregnancy.

Biologics like INF and ADA cross the placenta and do so at the greatest extent during the third trimester. Mahadevan *et al.*^[131] evaluated 31 pregnant women with IBD being treated with INF, ADA or CZP and compared concentrations of these biologics in infant and cord blood with concentrations in the mothers circulation. The levels of INF and ADA were elevated in infant and cord blood compared to their respective maternal levels with the median level of INF in cord blood being 60% higher than that of the mother. Similarly the median concentration of ADA found in cord blood was found to be 53% higher than that in the maternal circulation. The level of CZP was lower in neonatal circulation and in cord blood than in the mothers blood (median level of CZP in cord was by comparison only 3.9% of that within the mother). This may reflect the fact that CZP is, not actively transported across the placenta, because it lacks an Fc domain to bind to the FcR and is confined to the maternal compartment^[131]. In an independent clinical study on 10 pregnant women with IBD, CZP levels were measured in maternal, fetal, and cord blood *via* ELISA on the day of birth. CZP concentrations in fetal and cord blood were seen to be low, reduced in concentration by 75% as compared to levels in maternal blood thereby indicating low placental transfer^[132].

While highly effective, there have been reported cases of infections following live vaccines in newborns following INF. For instance, there has been one case report of a fatal BCG infection in an infant who received the Rotavirus vaccine at 3 mo whose mother had been on INF as therapy for CD^[133]. As such, great caution is recommended with the use of any live vaccines (particularly rotavirus vaccine) given during the first 6 neonatal months for any infants potentially exposed in utero to maternal biologics, since some biologics

can cross the placenta. According to Nielsen *et al.*^[97], the vaccine schedule should be initiated 2-3 mo post-natally, as this should provide enough time for biologics to become sufficiently cleared to accommodate immunization. In our practice, we typically wait until the 6th month post-natally to give any live vaccines to infants potentially exposed to biologics in utero.

The PIANO study registry, a prospective analysis of 1315 currently enrolled pregnant women as of (March 2014) at 31 IBD centers around the country, is intended to determine whether complication rates are significantly higher among women with IBD and their offspring who may be exposed to AZA, 6-MP or anti-TNF agents biologics during pregnancy, compared to women with IBD who do not take these medications. Pregnant women with IBD were registered for the study prospectively and evaluated at each trimester, at delivery and during for the first 4 years of the child's life. Patients have been divided into groups based on their patterns of exposure from conception through delivery. The groups were either "unexposed" receiving neither thiopurines nor anti-TNF agents, those receiving 6MP/AZA, those receiving INF, ADA or CZP and the last group receiving combination therapy with thiopurines plus anti-TNF. Newborn complications during the first year of life, alterations in developmental milestones, maternal medications, disease activity and complications encountered during pregnancy are all being recorded. Of the patients studied so far, those on biologics alone had a slightly increased rate of spontaneous abortions and C-section deliveries. These observations may however be confounded by the fact that patients with more severe disease were given biologic therapies and may already have clinical stress from advanced IBD. Of the patients studied, those on combination therapy (biologics and immunomodulators) had slightly elevated rates of preterm birth and infections at 12 mo. However, updated data from the registry later showed (as of April 2013) that relative risk at 1 year, adjusted for premature birth was 0.9 for biologics alone, and 1.0 for women using combination therapy^[134]. The final results of the PIANO registry are pending. Thus far the data are reassuring for the application of immunomodulators and biologics in pregnant IBD patients.

The PIANO registry as of 2012 studied 291 patients exposed to biologic therapy alone and 75 patients exposed to biologics and immunomodulators^[117], and found no increase in congenital abnormalities, infections, or developmental delays which could be clearly attributed to these drugs. Interestingly in the combination group, when CZP was left out of the analysis and only INF and ADA were analyzed individually, there was an increase in infections in the combination therapy group^[117]. This suggested that the presence of placentally transferred IgG1 antibodies in INF and ADA treatment groups might have contributed to an increased infection risk. These antibodies can persist in the neonate for up to 6 mo. However, most of the infections occurred between months 9 and 12, a time when drug levels should have

been undetectable in the infants, and further research will be needed to determine if these infections chronic immune system development in these children^[19]. CZP does not, however, actively cross the placenta and infection risk was not noted in CZP patients^[132]. Data presented at the 2013 American Gastroenterological Association (AGA) Spring Postgraduate Course (Orlando, FL, United States of America) has suggested that among the women studied, there has been no report of increased risk of serious infections seen in the newborns of mothers with IBD who had been treated with TNF inhibitors.

Based on the information discussed, many clinical experts in this field would agree that continuing biologic therapy during pregnancy is likely to be safe with a favorable benefit/risk ratio. Despite a slightly higher infection risk in children of mothers treated with INF and ADA, if possible biologics should not be switched during pregnancy as the switch could precipitate disease flares with worse overall disease outcomes. Based on our knowledge of placental transfer, timing of biologic drug dosage can be manipulated to avoid transfer to the child while controlling disease in the mother. Ng *et al.*^[19] therefore suggest administering the final dose of INF at 32 wk and to continue CZP per usual dosing schedule. Since ADA requires biweekly dosing, the last dose would therefore be given at 36 wk. According to Yiu *et al.*^[135] paternal exposure to anti-TNF- α therapy has not been shown to be teratogenic. Interestingly, anti-TNF- α therapy has actually however been shown to improve male fertility by increasing sperm count and motility.

More studies are also needed regarding breastfeeding while using biologic agents. The available data suggests that transfer of biologic agents into breast milk may be low. Few data are available regarding the fetal absorption of biologics transferred into breast milk and more studies are needed to draw meaningful clinical conclusions. At present, it is thought that biologics, being very large proteins, would weakly transfer into breast milk. The small amount that does pass into breast milk is unlikely to substantively penetrate the baby's circulatory system as orally consumed biologics may ultimately be poorly absorbed by the gut. However, premature infants may absorb more drugs through breast milk due to potentially having digestive tracts that are more permeant to large molecules like biologics^[136]. Thus, the decision to breastfeed during biologic use in IBD is still unclear and should be made with some consideration for the health of the infant and the preferences of the mother.

OUR EXPERIENCE WITH IBD THERAPY AND THE EVOLUTION OF BIOLOGICS AT LSU HEALTH

In 1998, "step up therapy" for IBD was more a norm than a choice made by physicians treating IBD patients. At that time, Remicade had just been approved for use in IBD patients, but was not yet popular for this

indication^[65]. Physicians at LSUHSC-S were among the first in our state to use Remicade for the treatment of CD patients. The rationale behind the decision to use biologics in our patient class involved several stages. The prime objective was to rapidly decrease the inflammatory process and prevent ongoing accumulating damage to the bowel. This led to the concept of classifying our patients as "early" or "late" CD based on severity of disease, rather than simple and complex disease. We started by using biologics in our "late" CD patients and the results were extremely encouraging. However, there were instances where patients who appeared to be in remission clinically had a contrasting picture of disease activity based on endoscopic visualization. This led us to include endoscopic evidence of remission in addition to symptomatic clinical improvement, to objectively describe success of biologic therapy in IBD patients.

The positive results noted with use of biologics in "late-phase" CD patients encouraged us to incorporate biologic use in the early or recently diagnosed CD patients as well. The rationale for this approach was to halt the inflammatory process early enough in disease course so as to decrease or arrest disease progression into the severe morbidity and complications seen in late-phase disease.

Similarly, our goal for choosing appropriate treatment regimens for our pregnant IBD patients was disease control, as long as we were assured that medication regimens used to achieve therapeutic control would cause no harm to the fetus. With no evidence to suggest any adverse fetal outcomes and with biologics available and promising outcomes with their use in non-pregnant IBD patients, we decided to use biologics for uncontrolled disease in pregnant patients. We explained the potential risks and benefits to our patients who chose to be treated with these medications. Fortunately, we have not experienced any adverse outcomes to date in pregnant patients nor their fetuses as a result of treatment. Disease control with use of biologics has been excellent, and most patients have remained in remission throughout pregnancy. Therefore, we have continued to use the "top down" approach for initiation of therapy in our pregnant patients.

At LSUHSC-S, we encounter IBD patients in different phases of disease severity who may wish to conceive or already be pregnant. Our approach for management of pregnant IBD patients varies with respect to them being treatment naïve or already on some form of treatment for their disease.

As stated earlier, patients who have not been on IBD treatment are classified as per their disease activity. For patients well controlled on their regimens, we continue them on the same drug treatments. For patients with uncontrolled pathology we use "step up" approach, *i.e.*, maximizing their immunomodulator regimen if already on one. If this fails we prefer initiation of biologics. In an event of no response or suboptimal response to one biologic agent, we switch the patient to a different biologic, preferably within same class (anti-TNF or anti-

integrin). For instance, patients can be switched between INF, ADA and CZP. Similarly, for patients on a biologic prior to their pregnancy found to be with uncontrolled disease are switched from one biologic to another.

As of October 1, 2012 all CD patients at our institution were administratively directed to receive CZP for their biologic therapy needs. Another study in progress at our institution done by Motlis *et al.*^[137], is currently evaluating both short and long-term outcomes of CD patients diagnosed with moderate to severe CD treated with INF or ADA as they undergo transition to CZP treatment. So far most patients exhibited a good clinical response to CZP and had stable disease at 1 year. This in addition to the relative safety of CZP with no placental barrier transmission has made the use of CZP popular for our pregnant patients as well. Full results of this study will be submitted later this year.

The decision to initiate immunomodulator and/or biologic therapy should always be preceded by a thorough clinical workup in addition to extensive family and patient counseling regarding the risks and benefits of these medications these conversations should address each patient's disease severity and underlying co-morbidities. IBD patients definitely need to be pre-screened for Hepatitis B and latent tuberculosis according to standard guidelines for all IBD immunomodulators. No guidelines exist for HCV screening in these patient populations. However, we also routinely screen for hepatitis B, C and latent tuberculosis as a part of workup before initiation of therapy with these agents. A tuberculin skin test or interferon gamma release assay (Quantiferon® gold assay) is used to detect latent TB as there is a much higher incidence of reactivation of latent infection upon or following initiation of biologic therapy and subsequent immune suppression. Consideration of use of immunomodulators like thiopurines also requires evaluation for thiopurine methyl transferase (TPMT) activity. Phenotypic TPMT enzyme activity is measured in red blood cells and classified as - low, intermediate and normal reflecting 0.3% (homozygous for mutations of TPMT), 11% (heterozygous for mutations of TPMT), and 88.7% (wild type TPMT) in the population respectively. Patients found to have either low to intermediate activity are at risk of decreased clearance of the drug and therefore are more prone to its adverse effects. TPMT testing helps gastroenterologists to make more judicious decisions regarding the use of these medications in specific TPMT phenotype patient groups.

CONCLUSION

IBD remains characterized as a group of chronic and idiopathic inflammatory conditions of the gut exhibiting relapsing and remitting episodes. At present it is been estimated that as many as 1.4 million people in the United States have been diagnosed with a form of IBD^[2]. IBD in pregnancy presents several important challenges for gastroenterologists, women with IBD, the unborn fetus, and family members. Physicians

particularly gastroenterologists, must often assist in making complicated and personal decisions on conception, pregnancy, and breastfeeding-postnatal considerations, which need to be weighed to optimize the course of pregnancy and long-term postnatal risk. At the same time, controlling disease and minimizing flares in IBD reduces disease severity and helps to maintain pregnancy but still carries risks to both mother and fetus. Future therapies that are more mechanism-specific (*e.g.*, biologics) may improve clinical outcomes with overall lower to both the mother and fetus and may replace several currently used agents which have significant off-target effects.

Here at LSUHSC-S our approach for management of pregnant IBD patients depends on their treatment status (naïve vs being treated) and their response to the treatment (uncontrolled disease activity vs remission). Patients who have not been on treatment are classified based on their disease activity. For patients well controlled on their regimens, we generally try to maintain them on the same course of therapy. For patients with uncontrolled pathology we use a "top down" approach. By working closely with the patients, assessing benefits and risks of various treatment options, patient and physicians can together make prudent decisions in the management of IBD in pregnancy.

REFERENCES

- 1 **Baumgart DC**, Carding SR. Inflammatory bowel disease: cause and immunobiology. *Lancet* 2007; **369**: 1627-1640 [PMID: 17499605 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(07)60750-8]
- 2 **Guidi L**, Pugliese D, Armuzzi A. Update on the management of inflammatory bowel disease: specific role of adalimumab. *Clin Exp Gastroenterol* 2011; **4**: 163-172 [PMID: 21904462 DOI: 10.2147/CEG.S14558]
- 3 **Langholz E**. Current trends in inflammatory bowel disease: the natural history. *Therap Adv Gastroenterol* 2010; **3**: 77-86 [PMID: 21180592 DOI: 10.1177/1756283X10361304]
- 4 **Lakatos PL**. Recent trends in the epidemiology of inflammatory bowel diseases: up or down? *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 6102-6108 [PMID: 17036379 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v12.i38.6102]
- 5 **Betteridge JD**, Armbruster SP, Maydonovitch C, Veerappan GR. Inflammatory bowel disease prevalence by age, gender, race, and geographic location in the U.S. military health care population. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2013; **19**: 1421-1427 [PMID: 23518811 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0b013e318281334d]
- 6 **Assadsangabi A**, Lobo AJ. Diagnosing and managing inflammatory bowel disease. *Practitioner* 2013; **257**:13-18
- 7 **Price AB**. Overlap in the spectrum of non-specific inflammatory bowel disease--'colitis indeterminate'. *J Clin Pathol* 1978; **31**: 567-577 [PMID: 670413 DOI: 10.1136/jcp.31.6.567]
- 8 **World Gastroenterology Organisation (WGO)**. World Gastroenterology Organisation Global Guideline. Inflammatory bowel disease: a global perspective. Munich, Germany: World Gastroenterology Organisation (WGO), 2009
- 9 **Elbaz G**, Fich A, Levy A, Holcberg G, Sheiner E. Inflammatory bowel disease and preterm delivery. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet* 2005; **90**: 193-197 [PMID: 16043179 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijgo.2005.06.003]
- 10 Total Fertility Rate (Children Born Per Woman). Accessed July 23, 2014. Available from: URL: <http://kff.org/global-indicator/total-fertility-rate/>
- 11 **Hudson M**, Flett G, Sinclair TS, Brunt PW, Templeton A, Mowat NA. Fertility and pregnancy in inflammatory bowel disease. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet* 1997; **58**: 229-237 [PMID: 9252260]
- 12 **Dubinsky M**, Abraham B, Mahadevan U. Management of the

- pregnant IBD patient. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2008; **14**: 1736-1750 [PMID: 18626967 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.20532]
- 13 **Olsen KO**, Joelsson M, Laurberg S, Oresland T. Fertility after ileal pouch-anal anastomosis in women with ulcerative colitis. *Br J Surg* 1999; **86**: 493-495 [PMID: 10215821 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2168.1999.01076.x]
- 14 **Baiocco PJ**, Korelitz BI. The influence of inflammatory bowel disease and its treatment on pregnancy and fetal outcome. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 1984; **6**: 211-216 [PMID: 6144706]
- 15 **Fielding JF**, Cooke WT. Pregnancy and Crohn's disease. *Br Med J* 1970; **2**: 76-77 [PMID: 5420236]
- 16 **Timmer A**, Bauer A, Dignass A, Rogler G. Sexual function in persons with inflammatory bowel disease: a survey with matched controls. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2007; **5**: 87-94 [PMID: 17234557 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2006.10.018]
- 17 **Mountifield R**, Bampton P, Prosser R, Muller K, Andrews JM. Fear and fertility in inflammatory bowel disease: a mismatch of perception and reality affects family planning decisions. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2009; **15**: 720-725 [PMID: 19067431 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.20839]
- 18 **Ørding Olsen K**, Juul S, Berndtsson I, Oresland T, Laurberg S. Ulcerative colitis: female fecundity before diagnosis, during disease, and after surgery compared with a population sample. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: 15-19 [PMID: 11781275 DOI: 10.1053/gast.2002.30345]
- 19 **Ng SW**, Mahadevan U. Management of inflammatory bowel disease in pregnancy. *Expert Rev Clin Immunol* 2013; **9**: 161-174 [DOI: 10.1586/eci.12.103]
- 20 **Arkuran C**, McComb P. Crohn's disease and tubal infertility: the effect of adhesion formation. *Clin Exp Obstet Gynecol* 2000; **27**: 12-13 [PMID: 10758789]
- 21 **Oresland T**, Palmblad S, Ellström M, Berndtsson I, Crona N, Hultén L. Gynaecological and sexual function related to anatomical changes in the female pelvis after restorative proctocolectomy. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 1994; **9**: 77-81 [PMID: 8064194]
- 22 **Asztély M**, Palmblad S, Wikland M, Hultén L. Radiological study of changes in the pelvis in women following proctocolectomy. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 1991; **6**: 103-107 [DOI: 10.1007/BF00300204]
- 23 **Waljee A**, Waljee J, Morris AM, Higgins PD. Threefold increased risk of infertility: a meta-analysis of infertility after ileal pouch anal anastomosis in ulcerative colitis. *Gut* 2006; **55**: 1575-1580 [PMID: 16772310 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2005.090316]
- 24 **Johnson P**, Richard C, Ravid A, Spencer L, Pinto E, Hanna M, Cohen Z, McLeod R. Female infertility after ileal pouch-anal anastomosis for ulcerative colitis. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2004; **47**: 1119-1126 [PMID: 15164254 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-004-0570-7]
- 25 **Rajaratnam SG**, Eglinton TW, Hider P, Fearnhead NS. Impact of ileal pouch-anal anastomosis on female fertility: meta-analysis and systematic review. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2011; **26**: 1365-1374 [PMID: 21766164 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-011-1274-9]
- 26 **Mortier PE**, Gambiez L, Karoui M, Cortot A, Paris JC, Quandalle P, Colombel JF. Colectomy with ileorectal anastomosis preserves female fertility in ulcerative colitis. *Gastroenterol Clin Biol* 2006; **30**: 594-597 [PMID: 16733384]
- 27 **Bartels SA**, Vlug MS, Henneman D, Ponsioen CY, Tanis PJ, Bemelman WA. Less adhesiolysis and hernia repair during completion proctocolectomy after laparoscopic emergency colectomy for ulcerative colitis. *Surg Endosc* 2012; **26**: 368-373 [PMID: 21993930 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-011-1880-1]
- 28 **Orholm M**, Fonager K, Sørensen HT. Risk of ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease among offspring of patients with chronic inflammatory bowel disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1999; **94**: 3236-3238 [PMID: 10566721 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.1999.01526.x]
- 29 **Yang H**, McElree C, Roth MP, Shanahan F, Targan SR, Rotter JI. Familial empirical risks for inflammatory bowel disease: differences between Jews and non-Jews. *Gut* 1993; **34**: 517-524 [PMID: 8491401 DOI: 10.1136/gut.34.4.517]
- 30 **Bennett RA**, Rubin PH, Present DH. Frequency of inflammatory bowel disease in offspring of couples both presenting with inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterology* 1991; **100**: 1638-1643 [PMID: 2019369]
- 31 **Laharie D**, Debeugny S, Peeters M, Van Gossum A, Gower-Rousseau C, Bélaïche J, Fiasse R, Dupas JL, Lerebours E, Pottie S, Cortot A, Vermeire S, Grandbastien B, Colombel JF. Inflammatory bowel disease in spouses and their offspring. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **120**: 816-819 [PMID: 11231934 DOI: 10.1053/gast.2001.22574]
- 32 **Cho JH**, Brant SR. Recent insights into the genetics of inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **140**: 1704-1712 [PMID: 21530736 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.02.046]
- 33 **Andres PG**, Friedman LS. Epidemiology and the natural course of inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 1999; **28**: 255-281, vii [PMID: 10372268]
- 34 **Ferguson CB**, Mahsud-Dornan S, Patterson RN. Inflammatory bowel disease in pregnancy. *BMJ* 2008; **337**: a27 [PMID: 18599468 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.39566.681458.BE]
- 35 **Ananthakrishnan AN**. Environmental risk factors for inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterol Hepatol (N Y)* 2013; **9**: 367-374 [PMID: 23935543]
- 36 **Khosla R**, Willoughby CP, Jewell DP. Crohn's disease and pregnancy. *Gut* 1984; **25**: 52-56 [PMID: 6140209 DOI: 10.1136/gut.25.1.52]
- 37 **Willoughby CP**, Truelove SC. Ulcerative colitis and pregnancy. *Gut* 1980; **21**: 469-474 [PMID: 6107262 DOI: 10.1136/gut.21.6.469]
- 38 **Friedman S**. Medical therapy and birth outcomes in women with Crohn's disease: what should we tell our patients? *Am J Gastroenterol* 2007; **102**: 1414-1416 [PMID: 17593158 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2007.01214.x]
- 39 **Katz JA**, Pore G. Inflammatory bowel disease and pregnancy. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2001; **7**: 146-157 [PMID: 11383588 DOI: 10.1097/00054725-200105000-00011]
- 40 **Miller JP**. Inflammatory bowel disease in pregnancy: a review. *J R Soc Med* 1986; **79**: 221-225 [PMID: 2871190]
- 41 **Casanova MJ**, Chaparro M, Domènech E, Barreiro-de Acosta M, Bermejo F, Iglesias E, Gomollón F, Rodrigo L, Calvet X, Esteve M, García-Planella E, García-López S, Taxonera C, Calvo M, López M, Ginard D, Gómez-García M, Garrido E, Pérez-Calle JL, Beltrán B, Piqueras M, Saro C, Botella B, Dueñas C, Ponferrada A, Mañosa M, García-Sánchez V, Maté J, Gisbert JP. Safety of thiopurines and anti-TNF- α drugs during pregnancy in patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2013; **108**: 433-440 [PMID: 23318480 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2012.430]
- 42 **Kwan LY**, Mahadevan U. Inflammatory bowel disease and pregnancy: an update. *Expert Rev Clin Immunol* 2010; **6**: 643-657 [PMID: 20594137 DOI: 10.1586/eci.10.35]
- 43 **Kornfeld D**, Cnattingius S, Ekbo A. Pregnancy outcomes in women with inflammatory bowel disease—a population-based cohort study. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1997; **177**: 942-946 [PMID: 9369849]
- 44 **Fonager K**, Sørensen HT, Olsen J, Dahlerup JF, Rasmussen SN. Pregnancy outcome for women with Crohn's disease: a follow-up study based on linkage between national registries. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1998; **93**: 2426-2430 [PMID: 9860403 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9270(98)00579-6]
- 45 **Freeman HJ**. Use of the Crohn's disease activity index in clinical trials of biological agents. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 4127-4130 [PMID: 18636655 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.14.4127]
- 46 **Best WR**, Beckett JM, Singleton JW, Kern F. Development of a Crohn's disease activity index. National Cooperative Crohn's Disease Study. *Gastroenterology* 1976; **70**: 439-444 [PMID: 1248701]
- 47 **Bröms G**, Granath F, Linder M, Stephansson O, Elmgren M, Kieler H. Complications from inflammatory bowel disease during pregnancy and delivery. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **10**: 1246-1252 [PMID: 22922307 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2012.08.018]
- 48 **Cornish J**, Tan E, Teare J, Teoh TG, Rai R, Clark SK, Tekkis PP. A meta-analysis on the influence of inflammatory bowel disease on pregnancy. *Gut* 2007; **56**: 830-837 [PMID: 17185356 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2006.108324]
- 49 **Nguyen GC**, Boudreau H, Harris ML, Maxwell CV. Outcomes of obstetric hospitalizations among women with inflammatory bowel disease in the United States. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **7**: 329-334 [PMID: 19027089 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2008.10.022]
- 50 **Bush MC**, Patel S, Lapinski RH, Stone JL. Perinatal outcomes in

- inflammatory bowel disease. *J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med* 2004; **15**: 237-241 [PMID: 15280131 DOI: 10.1080/14767050410001668662]
- 51 **Calderwood AH**, Kane SV. IBD and Pregnancy. *MedGenMed* 2004; **6**: 14 [PMID: 15775841]
 - 52 **Morales M**, Berney T, Jenny A, Morel P, Extermann P. Crohn's disease as a risk factor for the outcome of pregnancy. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2000; **47**: 1595-1598 [PMID: 11149010]
 - 53 **Nielsen OH**, Andreasson B, Bondesen S, Jarnum S. Pregnancy in ulcerative colitis. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1983; **18**: 735-742 [PMID: 6669937]
 - 54 **Fedorkow DM**, Persaud D, Nimrod CA. Inflammatory bowel disease: a controlled study of late pregnancy outcome. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1989; **160**: 998-1001 [PMID: 2712128]
 - 55 **Nielsen OH**, Andreasson B, Bondesen S, Jacobsen O, Jarnum S. Pregnancy in Crohn's disease. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1984; **19**: 724-732 [PMID: 6515312]
 - 56 **Nørgård B**, Hundborg HH, Jacobsen BA, Nielsen GL, Fonager K. Disease activity in pregnant women with Crohn's disease and birth outcomes: a regional Danish cohort study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2007; **102**: 1947-1954 [PMID: 17573787 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2007.01355.x]
 - 57 **Moser MA**, Okun NB, Mayes DC, Bailey RJ. Crohn's disease, pregnancy, and birth weight. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2000; **95**: 1021-1026 [PMID: 10763954 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2000.01852.x]
 - 58 **Reddy D**, Murphy SJ, Kane SV, Present DH, Kombluth AA. Relapses of inflammatory bowel disease during pregnancy: in-hospital management and birth outcomes. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2008; **103**: 1203-1209 [PMID: 18422816 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2007.01756.x]
 - 59 **Husain A**, Korzenik JR. Nutritional issues and therapy in inflammatory bowel disease. *Semin Gastrointest Dis* 1998; **9**: 21-30 [PMID: 9547853]
 - 60 **Mijac DD**, Janković GL, Jorga J, Krstić MN. Nutritional status in patients with active inflammatory bowel disease: prevalence of malnutrition and methods for routine nutritional assessment. *Eur J Intern Med* 2010; **21**: 315-319 [PMID: 20603043 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejim.2010.04.012]
 - 61 **Cappell MS**, Colon VJ, Sidhom OA. A study at 10 medical centers of the safety and efficacy of 48 flexible sigmoidoscopies and 8 colonoscopies during pregnancy with follow-up of fetal outcome and with comparison to control groups. *Dig Dis Sci* 1996; **41**: 2353-2361 [PMID: 9011442]
 - 62 **Cappell MS**, Sidhom O. Multicenter, multiyear study of safety and efficacy of flexible sigmoidoscopy during pregnancy in 24 females with follow-up of fetal outcome. *Dig Dis Sci* 1995; **40**: 472-479 [PMID: 7851214]
 - 63 **Shergill AK**, Ben-Menachem T, Chandrasekhara V, Chathadi K, Decker GA, Evans JA, Early DS, Fanelli RD, Fisher DA, Foley KQ, Fukami N, Hwang JH, Jain R, Jue TL, Khan KM, Lightdale J, Pasha SF, Sharaf RN, Dominitz JA, Cash BD. Guidelines for endoscopy in pregnant and lactating women. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **76**: 18-24 [PMID: 22579258 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.02.029]
 - 64 **Oldenburg B**, Hommes D. Biological therapies in inflammatory bowel disease: top-down or bottom-up? *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2007; **23**: 395-399 [PMID: 17545775 DOI: 10.1097/MOG.0b013e32815b601b]
 - 65 **Bayless TM**, Hanauer SB. Advanced Therapy of Inflammatory Bowel Disease, Volume 2: IBD and Crohn's Disease. PMPH-USA, 2014
 - 66 **Sachdeva P**, Patel BG, Patel BK. Drug use in pregnancy; a point to ponder! *Indian J Pharm Sci* 2009; **71**: 1-7 [PMID: 20177448 DOI: 10.4103/0250-474X.51941]
 - 67 **Baggott JE**, Morgan SL, Ha T, Vaughn WH, Hine RJ. Inhibition of folate-dependent enzymes by non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. *Biochem J* 1992; **282** (Pt 1): 197-202 [PMID: 1540135]
 - 68 **Van Assche G**, Dignass A, Reinisch W, van der Woude CJ, Sturm A, De Vos M, Guslandi M, Oldenburg B, Dotan I, Marteau P, Ardiczone A, Baumgart DC, D'Haens G, Gionchetti P, Portela F, Vucelic B, Söderholm J, Escher J, Koletzko S, Kolho KL, Lukas M, Mottet C, Tilg H, Vermeire S, Carbonnel F, Cole A, Novacek G, Reinshagen M, Tsianos E, Herrlinger K, Oldenburg B, Bouhnik Y, Kiesslich R, Stange E, Travis S, Lindsay J. The second European evidence-based Consensus on the diagnosis and management of Crohn's disease: Special situations. *J Crohns Colitis* 2010; **4**: 63-101 [PMID: 21122490 DOI: 10.1016/j.crohns.2009.09.009]
 - 69 **Mogadam M**, Dobbins WO, Korelitz BI, Ahmed SW. Pregnancy in inflammatory bowel disease: effect of sulfasalazine and corticosteroids on fetal outcome. *Gastroenterology* 1981; **80**: 72-76 [PMID: 6108894]
 - 70 **Wilson RD**, Johnson JA, Wyatt P, Allen V, Gagnon A, Langlois S, Blight C, Audibert F, Désilets V, Brock JA, Koren G, Goh YI, Nguyen P, Kapur B. Pre-conceptional vitamin/folic acid supplementation 2007: the use of folic acid in combination with a multivitamin supplement for the prevention of neural tube defects and other congenital anomalies. *J Obstet Gynaecol Can* 2007; **29**: 1003-1026 [PMID: 18053387]
 - 71 **Cosentino MJ**, Chey WY, Takihara H, Cockett AT. The effects of sulfasalazine on human male fertility potential and seminal prostaglandins. *J Urol* 1984; **132**: 682-686 [PMID: 6147421]
 - 72 **Trallori G**, d'Albasio G, Bardazzi G, Bonanomi AG, Amorosi A, Del Carlo P, Palli D, Galli M, Pacini F. 5-Aminosalicylic acid in pregnancy: clinical report. *Ital J Gastroenterol* 1994; **26**: 75-78 [PMID: 8032081]
 - 73 **De Broe ME**, Stolear JC, Nouwen EJ, Elseviers MM. 5-Aminosalicylic acid (5-ASA) and chronic tubulointerstitial nephritis in patients with chronic inflammatory bowel disease: is there a link? *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 1997; **12**: 1839-1841 [PMID: 9306332]
 - 74 **Bell CM**, Habal FM. Safety of topical 5-aminosalicylic acid in pregnancy. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1997; **92**: 2201-2202 [PMID: 9399752]
 - 75 **Marteau P**, Tennenbaum R, Elefant E, Lémann M, Cosnes J. Foetal outcome in women with inflammatory bowel disease treated during pregnancy with oral mesalazine microgranules. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 1998; **12**: 1101-1108 [PMID: 9845399]
 - 76 **Asacol (mesalamine)**, package insert. Warner Chilcott Pharmaceuticals Inc., OH, USA, 2010
 - 77 **Hernández-Díaz S**, Mitchell AA, Kelley KE, Calafat AM, Hauser R. Medications as a potential source of exposure to phthalates in the U.S. population. *Environ Health Perspect* 2009; **117**: 185-189 [PMID: 19270786 DOI: 10.1289/ehp.11766]
 - 78 **Rahimi R**, Nikfar S, Rezaie A, Abdollahi M. Pregnancy outcome in women with inflammatory bowel disease following exposure to 5-aminosalicylic acid drugs: a meta-analysis. *Reprod Toxicol* 2008; **25**: 271-275 [PMID: 18242053 DOI: 10.1016/j.reprotox.2007.11.010]
 - 79 **Advantages in IBD: Current Developments in the Treatment of Inflammatory Bowel Diseases.** *Gastroenterol Hepatol* (N Y) 2010; **6**: 309-316 [PMID: 20567586]
 - 80 **Williams C**, Panaccione R, Ghosh S, Rioux K. Optimizing clinical use of mesalazine (5-aminosalicylic acid) in inflammatory bowel disease. *Therap Adv Gastroenterol* 2011; **4**: 237-248 [PMID: 21765868 DOI: 10.1177/1756283X11405250]
 - 81 **Khan AK**, Truelove SC. Placental and mammary transfer of sulphasalazine. *Br Med J* 1979; **2**: 1553 [PMID: 43760]
 - 82 **Nielsen OH**, Munck LK. Drug insight: aminosalicylates for the treatment of IBD. *Nat Clin Pract Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2007; **4**: 160-170 [PMID: 17339853 DOI: 10.1038/necpgasthep0696]
 - 83 **Järnerot G**, Into-Malmberg MB, Esbjörner E. Placental transfer of sulphasalazine and sulphapyridine and some of its metabolites. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1981; **16**: 693-697 [PMID: 6119765]
 - 84 **Nelis GF**. Diarrhoea due to 5-aminosalicylic acid in breast milk. *Lancet* 1989; **1**: 383 [PMID: 2563532]
 - 85 **Colombel JF**, Brabant G, Gubler MC, Locquet A, Comes MC, Dehennault M, Delcroix M. Renal insufficiency in infant: side-effect of prenatal exposure to mesalazine? *Lancet* 1994; **344**: 620-621 [PMID: 7914992]
 - 86 **Ford AC**, Kane SV, Khan KJ, Achkar JP, Talley NJ, Marshall JK, Moayyedi P. Efficacy of 5-aminosalicylates in Crohn's disease: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2011; **106**: 617-629 [PMID: 21407190 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2011.71]
 - 87 **Tromm A**, Bunganić I, Tomsova E, Tulassay Z, Lukáš M, Kykal J, Bátorovský M, Fixa B, Gabalec L, Safadi R, Kramm HJ, Altörjay I, Löhr H, Koutroubakis I, Bar-Meir S, Stimac D, Schäffeler E,

- Glasmacher C, Dilger K, Mohrbacher R, Greinwald R. Budesonide 9 mg is at least as effective as mesalamine 4.5 g in patients with mildly to moderately active Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **140**: 425-434.e1; quiz e13-14 [PMID: 21070781 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.11.004]
- 88 **Cottone M**, Renna S, Modesto I, Orlando A. Is 5-ASA still the treatment of choice for ulcerative colitis? *Curr Drug Targets* 2011; **12**: 1396-1405 [PMID: 21466493]
- 89 **Sack DM**, Peppercorn MA. Drug Therapy of Inflammatory Bowel Disease. *Pharmacotherapy* 1983; **3**: 158-176 [DOI: 10.1002/j.1875-9114.1983.tb03245.x]
- 90 **Wolf JM**, Lashner BA. Inflammatory bowel disease: sorting out the treatment options. *Cleve Clin J Med* 2002; **69**: 621-626, 629-631 [PMID: 12184470 DOI: 10.3949/ccjm.69.8.621]
- 91 **Mahadevan U**, Sandborn WJ. Diagnosis and management of pouchitis. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **124**: 1636-1650 [PMID: 12761722 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(03)00325-1]
- 92 **Czeizel AE**, Rockenbauer M. A population based case-control teratologic study of oral metronidazole treatment during pregnancy. *Br J Obstet Gynaecol* 1998; **105**: 322-327 [PMID: 9532994]
- 93 **Sohrabi D**, Alipour M, AwsatMellati A. Effect of Metronidazole on Spermatogenesis, Plasma Gonadotrophins and Testosterone in Male Rats. *IJPR* 2010; **10**: 279-283
- 94 **Passmore CM**, McElroy JC, Rainey EA, D'Arcy PF. Metronidazole excretion in human milk and its effect on the suckling neonate. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 1988; **26**: 45-51 [PMID: 3203060]
- 95 **Clements CJ**. Metronidazole and breast feeding. *N Z Med J* 1980; **92**: 329 [PMID: 6934434]
- 96 **Niebyl JR**. Antibiotics and other anti-infective agents in pregnancy and lactation. *Am J Perinatol* 2003; **20**: 405-414 [PMID: 14703588 DOI: 10.1055/s-2003-45391]
- 97 **Nielsen OH**, Maxwell C, Hendel J. IBD medications during pregnancy and lactation. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **11**: 116-127 [PMID: 23897285 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2013.135]
- 98 **Carmichael SL**, Shaw GM. Maternal corticosteroid use and risk of selected congenital anomalies. *Am J Med Genet* 1999; **86**: 242-244 [PMID: 10482873 DOI: 10.1002/(SICI)1096-8628(19990917)86:3<242::AID-AJMG9>3.0.CO;2-U]
- 99 **Gürpınar AN**, Balkan E, Kiliç N, Kiriştioglu I, Doğruyol H. The effects of a fluoroquinolone on the growth and development of infants. *J Int Med Res* 1997; **25**: 302-306 [PMID: 9364293]
- 100 **van den Oever HL**, Versteegh FG, Thewissen EA, van den Anker JN, Mouton JW, Neijens HJ. Ciprofloxacin in preterm neonates: case report and review of the literature. *Eur J Pediatr* 1998; **157**: 843-845 [PMID: 9809826]
- 101 **Belet N**, Hacıomeroglu P, Küçüködük S. Ciprofloxacin treatment in newborns with multi-drug-resistant nosocomial *Pseudomonas* infections. *Biol Neonate* 2004; **85**: 263-268 [PMID: 14739554 DOI: 10.1159/000076364]
- 102 **Drossou-Agakidou V**, Roilides E, Papakyriakidou-Koliouska P, Agakidis C, Nikolaides N, Sarafidis K, Kremenopoulos G. Use of ciprofloxacin in neonatal sepsis: lack of adverse effects up to one year. *Pediatr Infect Dis J* 2004; **23**: 346-349 [PMID: 15071291]
- 103 **Gardner DK**, Gabbe SG, Harter C. Simultaneous concentrations of ciprofloxacin in breast milk and in serum in mother and breast-fed infant. *Clin Pharm* 1992; **11**: 352-354 [PMID: 1563233]
- 104 **Merino G**, Carranza-Lira S. Infection and male infertility: effect of different antibiotic regimens on semen quality. *Arch Androl* 1995; **35**: 209-212 [PMID: 8585775]
- 105 **Bertoli D**, Borelli G. [Teratogenic action of Rifaximin in the rat and rabbit and its effect on perinatal development in the rat]. *Boll Soc Ital Biol Sper* 1984; **60**: 1079-1085 [PMID: 6466468]
- 106 **Adams CA**, Anderson LS, Juanengo JC. Effect of medications on semen analysis and sperm chromatin structure assay (SCSA) parameters. Presented at the American Association of Bioanalysts, Las Vegas, 2004
- 107 **Bertoli D**, Borelli G. Fertility study of rifaximin (L/105) in rats. *Chemioterapia* 1986; **5**: 204-207 [PMID: 3719854]
- 108 **Berkovitch M**, Diav-Citrin O, Greenberg R, Cohen M, Bulkowstein M, Shechtman S, Bortnik O, Arnon J, Ornoy A. First-trimester exposure to amoxycillin/clavulanic acid: a prospective, controlled study. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 2004; **58**: 298-302 [PMID: 15327589 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2125.2004.02138.x]
- 109 **6-Mercaptopurine (6-MP) Metabolite Monitoring and TPMT Testing in the Treatment of Inflammatory Bowel Disease with 6-MP or Azathioprine**. Accessed August 13, 2014. Available from: URL: <http://www.uptodate.com/contents/6-mercaptopurine-6-mp-metabolite-monitoring-and-tpmt-testing-in-the-treatment-of-inflammatory-bowel-disease-with-6-mp-or-azathioprine>
- 110 **Bradford K**, Shih DQ. Optimizing 6-mercaptopurine and azathioprine therapy in the management of inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2011; **17**: 4166-4173 [PMID: 22072847 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v17.i37.4166]
- 111 **Goldstein LH**, Dolinsky G, Greenberg R, Schaefer C, Cohen-Kerem R, Diav-Citrin O, Malm H, Reuvers-Lodewijks ME, Rost van Tonningen-van Driel MM, Arnon J, Ornoy A, Clementi M, Di Gianantonio E, Koren G, Braunstein R, Berkovitch M. Pregnancy outcome of women exposed to azathioprine during pregnancy. *Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol* 2007; **79**: 696-701 [PMID: 17847119 DOI: 10.1002/bdra.20399]
- 112 **Akbari M**, Shah S, Velayos FS, Mahadevan U, Cheifetz AS. Systematic review and meta-analysis on the effects of thiopurines on birth outcomes from female and male patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2013; **19**: 15-22 [PMID: 22434610 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.22948]
- 113 **Cleary BJ**, Källén B. Early pregnancy azathioprine use and pregnancy outcomes. *Birth Defects Res. Part A Clin. Mol. Teratol* 2009; **85**: 647-654
- 114 **Fertility, Pregnancy, and Nursing in Inflammatory Bowel Disease**. Accessed September 10, 2014. Available from: URL: <http://www.uptodate.com/contents/fertility-pregnancy-and-nursing-in-inflammatory-bowel-disease>
- 115 **A SPECIAL MEETING REVIEW EDITION: Highlights in Crohn's Disease and Ulcerative Colitis: Digestive Disease Week 2012 May 19-22, 2012 • San Diego, California** Special Reporting on: • Safety and Efficacy of Subcutaneous Golimumab Induction Therapy in Patients with Moderately to Severely Active UC: PURSUIT-SC• The Future of IBD Therapy: Individualized and Optimized Therapy and Novel Mechanisms• Infliximab Concentration and Clinical Outcome in Patients with UC• Vedolizumab Induction Therapy for UC: Results of GEMINI I, A Randomized, Placebo-Controlled, Double-Blind, Multicenter, Phase III Trial• Novel Infliximab and Antibody-to-Infliximab Assays Are Predictive of Disease Activity in Patients with CD• Accelerated Step-Care Therapy with Early Azathioprine Versus Conventional Step-Care Therapy in CD• PIANO: A 1,000-Patient Prospective Registry of Pregnancy Outcomes in Women with IBD Exposed to Immunomodulators and Biologic TherapyPLUS Meeting Abstract Summaries With Expert Commentary by: William J. Sandborn, MDChief of the Division of Gastroenterology Director of the UCSD IBD Center UC San Diego Health System La Jolla, California. *Gastroenterol Hepatol* (N Y) 2012; **8**: 1-24 [PMID: 24847182]
- 116 **Beaugerie L**, Brousse N, Bouvier AM, Colombel JF, Lémann M, Cosnes J, Hébuterne X, Cortot A, Bouhnik Y, Gendre JP, Simon T, Maynadié M, Hermine O, Faivre J, Carrat F. Lymphoproliferative disorders in patients receiving thiopurines for inflammatory bowel disease: a prospective observational cohort study. *Lancet* 2009; **374**: 1617-1625 [PMID: 19837455 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(09)61302-7]
- 117 **Coelho J**, Beaugerie L, Colombel JF, Hébuterne X, Lerebours E, Lémann M, Baumer P, Cosnes J, Bourreille A, Gendre JP, Seksik P, Blain A, Metman EH, Nisard A, Cadiot G, Veyrac M, Coffin B, Dray X, Carrat F, Marteau P. Pregnancy outcome in patients with inflammatory bowel disease treated with thiopurines: cohort from the CESAME Study. *Gut* 2011; **60**: 198-203 [PMID: 21115547 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2010.222893]
- 118 **Mahadevan U**, Sandborn WJ, Li DK, Hakimian S, Kane S, Corley DA. Pregnancy outcomes in women with inflammatory bowel disease: a large community-based study from Northern California. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **133**: 1106-1112 [PMID: 17764676 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.07.019]

- 119 **Beghin D**, Cournot MP, Vauzelle C, Elefant E. Paternal exposure to methotrexate and pregnancy outcomes. *J Rheumatol* 2011; **38**: 628-632 [PMID: 21239747 DOI: 10.3899/jrheum.100600]
- 120 **French AE**, Koren G. Effect of methotrexate on male fertility. *Can Fam Physician* 2003; **49**: 577-578 [PMID: 12790266]
- 121 **Sandborn WJ**. A critical review of cyclosporine therapy in inflammatory bowel disease. *Inflammatory Bowel Diseases* 1995; **1**: 48-63 [DOI: 10.1002/ibd.3780010107]
- 122 **Longo D**, Fauci A, Kasper D, Hauser S, Jameson J, Loscalzo J. Harrison's principles of internal medicine. 18th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical Publishing Division, 2011: 2490-2491
- 123 **Deshpande NA**, Coscia LA, Gomez-Lobo V, Moritz MJ, Armenti VT. Pregnancy after solid organ transplantation: a guide for obstetric management. *Rev Obstet Gynecol* 2013; **6**: 116-125 [PMID: 24826201]
- 124 **Nørgård B**, Pedersen L, Christensen LA, Sørensen HT. Therapeutic drug use in women with Crohn's disease and birth outcomes: a Danish nationwide cohort study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2007; **102**: 1406-1413 [PMID: 17437503 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2007.01216.x]
- 125 **Park-Wyllie L**, Mazzotta P, Pastuszak A, Moretti ME, Beique L, Hunnisett L, Friesen MH, Jacobson S, Kasapinovic S, Chang D, Diav-Citrin O, Chitayat D, Nulman I, Einarson TR, Koren G. Birth defects after maternal exposure to corticosteroids: prospective cohort study and meta-analysis of epidemiological studies. *Teratology* 2000; **62**: 385-392 [PMID: 11091360 DOI: 10.1002/1096-9926(200012)62:6<385::AID-TERA5>3.0.CO;2-Z]
- 126 **McKenzie SA**, Selley JA, Agnew JE. Secretion of prednisolone into breast milk. *Arch Dis Child* 1975; **50**: 894-896 [PMID: 1211963 DOI: 10.1136/adc.50.11.894]
- 127 **Greenberger PA**, Odeh YK, Frederiksen MC, Atkinson AJ. Pharmacokinetics of prednisolone transfer to breast milk. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 1993; **53**: 324-328 [PMID: 8453851 DOI: 10.1038/clpt.1993.28]
- 128 **Nazareth M**, Cristiano L, Kooijmans M. Natalizumab use during pregnancy. *Am J Gastroenterol*, 2008; **104**: S114
- 129 **McLean LP**, Shea-Donohue T, Cross RK. Vedolizumab for the treatment of ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease. *Immunotherapy* 2012; **4**: 883-898 [PMID: 23046232 DOI: 10.2217/imt.12.85]
- 130 **Reenaers C**, Louis E, Belaiche J. Current directions of biologic therapies in inflammatory bowel disease. *Therap Adv Gastroenterol* 2010; **3**: 99-106 [PMID: 21180594 DOI: 10.1177/1756283X09356872]
- 131 **Mahadevan U**, Wolf DC, Dubinsky M, Cortot A, Lee SD, Siegel CA, Ullman T, Glover S, Valentine JF, Rubin DT, Miller J, Abreu MT. Placental transfer of anti-tumor necrosis factor agents in pregnant patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **11**: 286-292; quiz e24 [PMID: 23200982 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2012.11.011]
- 132 **Wolf D**, Mahadevan U. Certolizumab Pegol Use in Pregnancy: Low Levels Detected in Cord Blood. *Arthritis Rheum* 2010; **62** Suppl 10: 718 [DOI: 10.1002/art.28486]
- 133 **Cheent K**, Nolan J, Shariq S, Kiho L, Pal A, Arnold J. Case Report: Fatal case of disseminated BCG infection in an infant born to a mother taking infliximab for Crohn's disease. *J Crohns Colitis* 2010; **4**: 603-605 [PMID: 21122568 DOI: 10.1016/j.crohns.2010.05.001]
- 134 **CRA_Newsletter_MAY-2014-1.pdf**. Accessed July 17, 2014. Available from: URL: http://ccfacra.org/wp-content/uploads/2014/06/CRA_Newsletter_MAY-2014-1.pdf
- 135 **Yiu ZZ**, Griffiths CE, Warren RB. Safety of biological therapies for psoriasis: effects on reproductive potential and outcomes in male and female patients. *Br J Dermatol* 2014; **171**: 485-491 [PMID: 24749725 DOI: 10.1111/bjd.13060]
- 136 **Specific Treatments - Autoimmune Studies - Adalimumab (Humira®) and Pregnancy**. Accessed September 9, 2014. Available from: URL: <http://www.pregnancystudies.org/ongoing-pregnancy-studies/autoimmune-studies/specific-treatments-autoimmune/specific-treatments-autoimmune-studies-adalimumab-humira-and-pregnancy/>
- 137 **Motlis A**, Aravantagi A, Boktor M, Sheth A, Manas K, Morris J, Jordan P, Becker F, Alexander JS. Substitution With Alternative Anti-TNF-alpha Therapy (SaVANT): Outcomes of a Crohn's Disease Cohort Undergoing Substitution Therapy With Certolizumab. *Am. J. Gastro.* 109, S522

P-Reviewer: Wegrzyn G S- Editor: Yu J

L- Editor: A E- Editor: Li D



Diagnosis and therapy of non-variceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding

Erwin Biecker

Erwin Biecker, Department of Gastroenterology, Zollernalb Klinikum, 72336 Balingen, Germany

Author contributions: Biecker E solely performed all the work of this manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The author has no conflict-of-interest to report.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Erwin Biecker, MD, PhD, Department of Gastroenterology, Zollernalb Klinikum, Tübinger Str. 30, 72336 Balingen, Germany. erwin.biecker@zollernalb-klinikum.de
Telephone: +49-7433-90922601
Fax: +49-7433-90922605

Received: March 3, 2015

Peer-review started: March 5, 2015

First decision: April 29, 2015

Revised: May 10, 2015

Accepted: September 28, 2015

Article in press: October 9, 2015

Published online: November 6, 2015

Abstract

Non-variceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding (UGIB) is defined as bleeding proximal to the ligament of Treitz in the absence of oesophageal, gastric or duodenal varices. The clinical presentation varies according to the intensity of bleeding from occult bleeding to melena or haematemesis and haemorrhagic shock. Causes of UGIB are peptic ulcers, Mallory-Weiss lesions,

erosive gastritis, reflux oesophagitis, Dieulafoy lesions or angiodysplasia. After admission to the hospital a structured approach to the patient with acute UGIB that includes haemodynamic resuscitation and stabilization as well as pre-endoscopic risk stratification has to be done. Endoscopy offers not only the localisation of the bleeding site but also a variety of therapeutic measures like injection therapy, thermocoagulation or endoclips. Endoscopic therapy is facilitated by acid suppression with proton pump inhibitor (PPI) therapy. These drugs are highly effective but the best route of application (oral vs intravenous) and the adequate dosage are still subjects of discussion. Patients with ulcer disease are tested for *Helicobacter pylori* and eradication therapy should be given if it is present. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs have to be discontinued if possible. If discontinuation is not possible, cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors in combination with PPI have the lowest bleeding risk but the incidence of cardiovascular events is increased.

Key words: Gastrointestinal bleeding; Gastric ulcer; Duodenal ulcer; Endoscopy; Endoscopic therapy

© **The Author(s) 2015.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Non-variceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding (UGIB) is still accompanied by a significant mortality rate in older patients. Causes of UGIB are ulcers, Mallory-Weiss lesions, erosions, esophagitis or angiodysplasia. Endoscopy offers the localisation of the bleeding site as well as a variety of therapeutic measures. Patients with peptic lesions are effectively treated with proton pump inhibitors. *Helicobacter pylori* is a risk factor for the genesis of peptic ulcers and eradication therapy should be given if it is present.

Biecker E. Diagnosis and therapy of non-variceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol*

INTRODUCTION

Upper gastrointestinal bleeding (UGIB) is defined as bleeding proximal to the band of Treitz. Approximately 10% to 20% of bleeding episodes are from esophageal, gastric or duodenal varices or from portal hypertensive gastropathy related to portal hypertension. This article will deal only with non-variceal UGIB. Table 1 gives an overview of possible causes of UGIB.

The reported annual incidence of UGIB ranges from 48 to 160 cases per 100000 adults^[1-6], with a mortality from 10% to 14%^[4,7]. Besides the advances in endoscopy and intensive care medicine, these mortality rates have not changed very much during the last decades^[3,4,7]. Most likely, this is caused by the fact that patients with UGIB are nowadays older and more likely to have relevant co-morbidity than in the past. Accordingly, the mortality rate in patients under the age of 60 years and no relevant co-morbidity is almost zero^[8].

Clinical signs of UGIB are vomiting of blood (haematemesis) and/or passage of black, tarry stools (melena). In some cases, melena might be caused by bleeding from the small intestine downwards the duodenum. Tarry stools are usually seen if more than 50 mL to 100 mL of blood is lost per day. The passage of bright red blood per rectum (haematochezia) could be caused by severe, brisk bleeding. Non-specific signs like fatigue, prostration or shortness of breath could be caused by occult bleeding. Typical laboratory findings are anaemia, low MCV, low ferritin and an increase in the reticulocyte count. Patients are haemodynamically affected (hypotension, tachycardia) if more than 10% to 20% of the total intravascular blood volume is lost. Several clinical signs provide clues to the localisation of the bleeding: Melena and/or haematemesis indicate UGIB. Haematochezia indicates lower gastrointestinal bleeding or massive bleeding in the upper GI-tract, typically distal of the pylorus. Ascites and/or jaundice make the diagnosis of liver cirrhosis very likely and point at variceal bleeding. Special attention should be paid to the medical history of the patient: Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAID) or acetyl-salicylic acid (ASA) make bleeding from ulcers or severe erosive gastritis likely. The presence of an aortic prosthesis increases the risk of an aorto-intestinal fistula.

Patients who present with signs and symptoms of UGIB should first be stratified into low or high risk^[8,9] to guide further treatment. The stratification is done on the basis of clinical, endoscopic and laboratory criteria using prognostic scales. The most used scores in clinical practice are the Blatchford *et al*^[10] and Rockall *et al*^[11] scores. Tables 2 and 3 give a concise overview of the

two scores. Both scores allow the identification of patients with low risk, meaning that these patients do not require emergency endoscopy and could safely be managed as outpatients. Clinical criteria include pulse, blood pressure, melena, cardiac failure, syncope and evidence of liver disease. Placement of a naso-gastric tube and aspiration of blood make the diagnosis of an acute bleeding very likely. Haemoglobin and blood urea levels are laboratory criteria.

Every patient who is haemodynamically instable should first be stabilized in an intensive care-unit before endoscopic diagnostic or therapy is initiated.

The risk of re-bleeding is based on the Forrest classification^[12] (Table 4) and endoscopic findings like the localisation of the bleeding and type of bleeding (ulcer, cancer or variceal bleeding).

BLOOD TRANSFUSION

In contrast to immediate and sufficient volume resuscitation, the timing and amount of blood transfusions in patients with UGIB is a subject of intense discussion. It is widely accepted that patients with a haemoglobin level of 7 g/dL or less should receive a transfusion, whereas it is rarely indicated in patients with a haemoglobin level of 10 g/dL or more. The threshold for each patient has to be individually defined and depends on factors like age, haemodynamic status, markers of tissue hypoxia and presence of coronary artery disease. A meta-analysis of studies in a heterogeneous group of critically ill patients (trauma, surgery, intensive care)^[13] showed that transfusion was associated with an increase in mortality, multi-organ failure as well as an increase in nosocomial infection and acute respiratory distress syndrome. Yet, confounding factors of this meta-analysis by the need for transfusion itself could not be excluded.

Most national^[8] and international guidelines^[14,15] on UGIB recommend a target level for blood transfusions in patients without signs of tissue hypoxia and/or coronary artery disease in the range of 7 g/dL to 9 g/dL. This was confirmed by a trial in critical care patients that demonstrated a lower mortality in patients with a haemoglobin level of 7 g/dL to 9 g/dL compared to patients with a haemoglobin level of 10 g/dL to 12 g/dL^[16]. However, in the context of UGIB the study has to be interpreted with caution since patients with UGIB were excluded in this study. A lower mortality in patients with UGIB and a restrictive transfusion regimen (haemoglobin below 7 g/dL vs haemoglobin below 9 g/dL) was shown in a recent trial including 921 patients^[17]. In patients with massive bleeding the haemoglobin level is of limited use only, since there is no time for haemodilution and a drop in haemoglobin concentration to develop. Therefore, patients with massive bleeding should be managed with transfusion of blood, platelets, clotting factors and volume resuscitation according to local protocols for managing massive bleeding.

Table 1 Causes of upper gastrointestinal bleeding

Peptic ulcer	Ulcer
Oesophagitis	Erosion
Drug-induced mucosal damage (NSAID)	Mallory-Weiss lesion
Traumatic or postoperative lesions	Arterio-intestinal fistula
Malignant tumor	Oesophageal varices
Sequelae of portal hypertension	Varices of the gastric fundus
	Portal hypertensive gastropathy
Vascular anomalies	Dieulafoy lesion
	Gastric antral vascular ectasia (GAVE syndrome)
	Angiodysplasia
	Rendu-Osler-Weber syndrome (hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia)
Bleeding from the hepato-pancreaticobiliary system	
Bleeding from a duodenal diverticulum	

NSAID: Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs.

ANTICOAGULATION

A reasonable amount of patients with UGIB is on a medication with anticoagulants, but data from clinical trials that investigated correction of an underlying coagulopathy is sparse. A retrospective study was not able to show that patients with a baseline international normalized ratio (INR) greater than 1.3 had a higher risk of re-bleeding, surgery or mortality^[18]. These findings were substantiated by another study^[19], in which neither platelet count nor INR predicted re-bleeding. In contrast to these findings, one study, published in abstract form only, showed that an INR of 1.5 or greater at presentation is a predictor of mortality^[20]. Correction of coagulopathy to an INR of less than 1.8 led to a lower mortality compared to a historical control group^[21] without differences in time to endoscopy and units of transfused blood. Another study that compared cohorts of patients that underwent endoscopic treatment was not able to show differences in mortality, re-bleeding or need for surgery between patients on warfarin whose INR was corrected using fresh frozen plasma compared to patients without correction of coagulopathy^[22]. The recommendation for clinical practice is that coagulopathy should not delay early endoscopic treatment and that coagulopathy should be corrected to an INR of 1.5 or less to facilitate endoscopic treatment. Correction of coagulopathy is best done by the application of prothrombin complex^[23]. In patients on warfarin therapy, iv Vitamin K should be administered. The situation is even more complicated by the fact that an increasing amount of patients is on a therapy with target-specific oral anticoagulants like rivaroxaban or apixaban. Antidotes or specific reversal agents for these drugs are lacking. The INR is of no value in target-specific oral anticoagulants and correction of coagulopathy using

Table 2 Glasgow-Blatchford Score^[10]

Admission risk marker	Score component value
Blood urea (mmol/L)	
6.5-8.0	2
8.0-10.0	3
10.0-25	4
> 25	6
Haemoglobin (g/dL) for men	
12.0-12.9	1
10.0-11.9	3
< 10.0	6
Haemoglobin (g/dL) for women	
10.0-11.9	1
< 10.0	6
Systolic blood pressure (mmHg)	
100-109	1
90-99	2
< 90	3
Other markers	
Pulse $\geq$ 100 (per minute)	1
Presentation with melaena	1
Presentation with syncope	2
Liver disease	2
Cardiac failure	2

The Blatchford score has to be used before endoscopy. The score component values are added up for each component. A score of 0 is the cut-off with any patient scoring > 0 at risk of requiring an intervention.

prothrombin complex on the basis of the clinical needs and judgement is necessary^[24].

Platelet transfusion is not necessary in patients who are haemodynamically stable and have no signs of active bleeding. In contrast, patients with active bleeding and a platelet count of less than 50 G/L should receive platelets^[8]. A substantial gap in evidence still remains in the case of massive bleeding. At the moment, there are no high-quality trials on the effect of component therapies and the ratio of red blood transfusion to component therapies or therapy with recombinant factor VIIa^[25].

TIMING OF ENDOSCOPY

Endoscopy is able to identify the bleeding site in more than 80% of patients. It is the principle diagnostic tool in UGIB and haemostatic therapy could be applied. While diagnostic endoscopy in clinically stable patients without relevant co-morbidity is safe, complications may arise in actively bleeding patients with co-morbidities. Therefore, patients should be sufficiently stabilized before endoscopy is performed^[8,15].

Several studies investigated the best time point for endoscopy in patients with suspected UGIB. Endoscopy within the first 24 h (early endoscopy) improves outcomes of high-risk patients and allows for early discharge of low-risk patients^[9,26]. Only in a minority of high-risk patients endoscopy should be delayed due to reasons that make endoscopy an additional risk factor (e.g., perforation, acute coronary syndrome). Endoscopy within 24 h after presentation was performed in the majority (> 75%) of patients in a US-study^[27], whereas

Table 3 Clinical (pre endoscopy) and full (post endoscopy) Rockall score^[11]

Variable	Score 0	Score 1	Score 2	Score 3
Age	< 60	60-79	≥ 80	
Shock	No shock	Pulse ≥ 100	Systolic blood pressure < 100	
		Systolic blood pressure ≥ 100		
Co-morbidity	Non major		Chronic heart failure, ischemic heart disease, major comorbidity	Renal failure, liver failure, metastatic cancer
Diagnosis	Mallory-Weiss lesion	All other diagnoses	GI malignancy	
Evidence of bleeding	None		Blood, adherent clot, visible or spurting vessel	

The first three rows make up the clinical score. After endoscopy the scores from the last two rows are added to create the full score. Scores are additive. A score of 0 for the clinical and scores from 0-2 for the full score are the clinical cut-offs to indicate patients at low risk of re-bleeding or death. GI: Gastrointestinal.

Table 4 Forrest classification^[12] and the risk of re-bleeding within 24 h after exclusively medical therapy

	Re-bleeding risk (%)
Acute bleeding	
Forrest I a (spurting bleeding)	90
Forrest I b (oozing bleeding)	50
Signs of recent bleeding	
Forrest II a (visible vessel)	25-30
Forrest II b (adherent clot)	10-20
Forrest II c (flat pigmented haematin on ulcer base)	7-10
Lesions without active bleeding	
Forrest III (lesions without signs of recent bleeding or fibrin-covered clean ulcer base)	3-5

in a study from the United Kingdom^[28] only half of the patients received endoscopy within the first 24 h. Early endoscopy is considered safe and effective in the vast majority of patients and is associated with a reduction in the length of hospital stay in patients of all risk groups^[29-35]. A cohort analysis^[28] showed a relevant trend (however not statistically significant) that the availability of after-hour endoscopy decreased mortality. These results are substantiated by findings that patients with UGIB who were admitted on weekends had higher in-hospital mortality^[29]. However, a more recent study from the United Kingdom was not able to show a higher mortality in patients who were admitted on weekends^[36]. Whereas these findings are in favour of early endoscopy within 24 h after presentation, a meta-analysis found no difference in mortality, reduction in re-bleeding or surgery comparing very early endoscopy (< 12 h) over early endoscopy (> 24 h)^[15]. One study analysed the need for transfusions and length of hospital stay in patients with blood in the gastric tube aspirate and time to endoscopy < 12 h or > 12 h^[33]. They found less need for blood transfusions and shorter hospital stay in the patients who underwent endoscopy in the first 12 h after presentation. Most likely the conflicting results in the available studies are due to the heterogeneity of the included patients. A study identified independent predictors for the need of endoscopy within 12 h after presentation^[37]: Fresh blood in the gastric tube aspirate, hemodynamic instability, haemoglobin

below 8 g/dL and a leukocyte count of more than 12 G/L. The recommendation from the available data is that patients with suspected UGIB should undergo endoscopy within 24 h after presentation. Patients who are hemodynamically instable and/or blood in the naso-gastric tube aspirate should undergo endoscopy immediately after resuscitation, at least within 12 h after presentation.

MEDICAL TREATMENT

The rationale for an acid suppressing therapy is to increase intra-gastric pH and to achieve stabilization of the blood clot that plugs the vessel defect and to promote ulcer healing. Whereas proton pump inhibitors (PPI) therapy is well tolerated and side effects in the acute, short-term use are rare, it is questionable if all patients that present with haematemesis or melena actually need PPI-therapy, since approximately 80% of ulcers stop bleeding without any form of intervention and re-bleeding is rare.

While the debate whether pre-endoscopic PPI-treatment is cost-effective or not^[38-40] is ongoing, it is advisable in situations where endoscopic treatment is delayed or endoscopic expertise is not sufficient.

The effect of pre-endoscopic treatment with PPI was investigated in several trials and summarized in a Cochrane analysis^[41] that was later updated by additional studies^[42]. Of the included studies, one used an oral PPI regimen whereas the remaining five studies investigated iv PPI treatment. The meta-analysis was not able to show differences in re-bleeding, surgical intervention or mortality between the patients on PPI-treatment and patients in the control group. Nevertheless, the patients in the treatment group had less high-risk stigmata and need for endoscopic treatment.

The use of PPI therapy in patients with UGIB was investigated in numerous studies. A Cochrane analysis from 2006^[43] as well as an update of this meta-analysis^[44] comprising 24 and 31 randomized controlled trials (RCTs), respectively, studied PPI-treatment. Therapy with PPI - alone or in combination with endoscopic treatment - compared to placebo or histamine receptor antagonists reduced re-bleeding and need for surgery

but did not reduce mortality^[40]. Subgroup analysis of the data revealed a lower mortality for patients with active bleeding and endoscopic haemostasis who were treated with an 80 mg PPI bolus followed by continuous infusion of 8 mg/h. In contrast, lower doses of PPI reduced re-bleeding but had no effect on mortality. These findings were substantiated by another meta-analysis from the year 2009^[45] that found lower re-bleeding rates, need for surgery and mortality in patients with high-dose intravenous PPI therapy. One meta-analysis compared continuous intravenous PPI therapy with bolus intravenous therapy and found bolus therapy as effective as continuous therapy^[46]. Lower PPI doses were also associated with less re-bleeding but had no effect on surgery and mortality. Even though there is strong evidence that high-dose PPI therapy combined with endoscopic therapy is highly effective, it is still a subject of intense discussion whether oral PPI therapy is as effective as intravenous therapy. A recent Cochrane analysis was not able to draw a final conclusion since the available studies are not sufficient^[47]. A more recent meta-analysis came to the conclusion that oral and intravenous PPI therapies are comparable^[48] but also criticized the low quality of the available studies. One recent single-center Asian study that compared high-dose oral PPI therapy with intravenous high-dose PPI therapy in patients with Forrest I a/ I b or II a/ II b peptic ulcer found no difference in the risk of re-bleeding between the two groups^[49].

Cost effective analyses revealed a clear advantage for high-dose intravenous PPI therapy for three days following successful endoscopic haemostasis^[50-52] compared to placebo-as mentioned above, adequate RCTs comparing high-dose intravenous PPI with standard dose intravenous PPI or high dose oral PPI therapy are not yet available.

Two trials showed that PPI therapy in hospitalized patients might be associated with *Clostridium difficile* infection^[53,54]. These findings were substantiated by a recent retrospective cohort study^[55]. However, the benefits of PPI treatment in UGIB clearly outweigh this risk.

Post-endoscopic PPI therapy depends on the underlying aetiology of UGIB. In most RCTs, oral PPI therapy was initiated three days after the acute bleeding episode and a dose once daily is thought to be appropriate^[56-60]. One trial that investigated the role of PPI therapy in the non-acute setting demonstrated effective ulcer healing with a once daily dose^[61]. The duration of therapy is not clearly defined. Patients with *Helicobacter* negative ulcers who require long-term NSAID therapy might need concomitant continuing PPI therapy.

ENDOSCOPIC MANAGEMENT

Several endoscopic techniques to achieve haemostasis are available. Epinephrine injection is easy to perform and effective in the acute setting but re-bleeding occurs in almost all patients. Therefore, it should be used in

combination with another method. The application of clips, thermocoagulation, injection with a sclerosing agent or fibrin or thrombin glue could be performed alone or in combination with epinephrine injection. A new method for the treatment of refractory bleeding is the over the scope clip, that allows the treatment of large defects^[62].

First of all, the ulcer bed should be cleaned from blood and blood clots by vigorous irrigation to visualize the underlying lesion. By irrigation alone, the underlying stigmata are exposed in 26% to 43% of cases^[63,64]. It is a subject of discussion^[45,65] whether adherent clots should be removed by using more vigorous methods like cold guillotining with a snare. There is good evidence that the risk for re-bleeding with clots that remain adherent after washing without endoscopic therapy (only therapy with a proton-pump inhibitor) is as low as 0% to 8%^[63,66]. One Asian study that compared endoscopic therapy plus high-dose iv PPI therapy with high-dose iv PPI therapy alone^[66] found no re-bleeding in the patients in whom the adherent clots could not be removed by irrigation. Since it is known that the PPI metabolism in Asian people differs from the metabolism in patients with Caucasian background, it is not clear whether these results could be extrapolated to an European or North American population. Furthermore, other studies revealed a re-bleeding risk of 25% to 35%^[64,67-69] in high-risk patients. This subject was further evaluated in two meta-analyses: One meta-analysis from 2009^[45] comprising 5 RCTs of patients with adherent clots found no advantage of endoscopic vs medical therapy alone. These data was substantiated by another meta-analysis comprising 6 RCTs^[70] that was also not able to show a reduction in the re-bleeding risk in patients with endoscopic therapy compared to patients with medical therapy alone. On the other hand, a systematic review^[71] did not show that endoscopic therapy increased the risk for complications. As a recommendation for clinical practice, patients who are at high risk for re-bleeding and an adherent clot to the ulcer base that is resistant to irrigation, endoscopic therapy after cold guillotining may be beneficial. In patients with a low risk of re-bleeding and those who are *Helicobacter* positive, high-dose PPI therapy alone might be sufficient.

Numerous studies and meta-analyses studied the efficacy of the available endoscopic techniques in patients with high-risk lesions^[45,71-77]. Injection with epinephrine as a monotherapy has been shown to be superior to medical therapy alone but it is clearly inferior to other monotherapies like clip application, thermocoagulation or injection with alcohol, fibrin or thrombin glue^[45,71-76,78]. The combination of epinephrine injection with one of the above mentioned therapies for the treatment of high-risk stigmata significantly reduces re-bleeding, need for surgery and mortality^[75,78]. The combination of clip application with epinephrine injection is superior to epinephrine injection alone but not to clips alone^[72,74]. This is also true for the combination therapy of injection with epinephrine and a second injectate or

thermocoagulation^[71]. Complication rates with mono- or combination therapy do not vary significantly^[71,79,80].

There is an ongoing discussion whether a routine endoscopic control after the initial endoscopy is necessary or not. The advantages of a programmed second look endoscopy like the identification of residual stigmata that need re-treatment has to be outweighed against potential risks like an increase in ulcer perforation. Five studies^[81-85] as well as two meta-analyses of these trials^[86,87] investigated the benefit of a second-look endoscopy. The results from these trials were inconclusive due to methodological flaws. A more recent meta-analysis^[88] found that routine second-look endoscopy and endoscopic treatment with thermocoagulation as appropriate reduced the risk of re-bleeding. In contrast to the use of a heater probe, second-look endoscopy with injection therapy did not reveal any advantages. Another meta-analysis^[89] demonstrated that second look endoscopy decreased re-bleeding and need for surgery but not mortality. The impact of this meta-analysis is decreased by the fact that only one study with concomitant high-dose PPI therapy was included. All of the above mentioned studies had several methodological shortcomings: the included patients were heterogeneous; intervention and control treatments were not standardized. When looking at high risk patients who presented with haemorrhagic shock and/or active bleeding^[81] or patients with a very high risk for re-bleeding based on the Forrest criteria^[84] second look endoscopy led to a decrease in the re-bleeding rate. A trial, which included a control group that received high-dose iv PPI therapy-as it is standard now-found no benefit for second look therapy^[81]. These findings suggest that second look endoscopy is not necessary in patients with high dose PPI therapy. Similar results were obtained from a cost-effectiveness study^[90] that compared second-look endoscopy in selected high-risk patients only to second-look endoscopy in all patients and found endoscopy in selected patients to be more effective and less expensive. From the available data, routine second-look endoscopy is not recommended. However, patients at high-risk of re-bleeding might benefit from a programmed second-look endoscopy.

The highest risk for re-bleeding in patients treated with a combination of endoscopic and PPI therapy is within the first 72 h after the initial bleeding episode. Sixty to 76% of re-bleeding occurred in the first three days^[56,57,59]. Thus, patients with bleeding from high-risk lesions should be treated as in-patients for at least three days. Patients at high-risk for re-bleeding should be monitored more intensely on an intensive or intermediate care unit for at least 24 h. Nevertheless, selected patients with ulcers not more than 15 mm in size, no relevant co-morbidity, appropriate family support and absence of haemorrhagic shock at presentation could be safely managed as outpatients^[91].

If haemostasis could not be achieved or repeated re-bleeding occurs, it is associated with a high mortality.

Patients rarely die because of exsanguination but because of problems that arouse from associated co-morbidity like cardiac events, acute kidney failure, infection or stroke. Accordingly, patients in whom endoscopic therapy failed should be admitted to surgery without delay. In patients who are high-risk candidates for surgery, percutaneous or transcatheter arterial embolization might be an alternative^[92-99]. Data from uncontrolled trials revealed technically success rates from 52% to 98% with a reported re-bleeding rate of 10% to 20%^[92-99]. The reported periprocedural mortality is as high as 25% to 30%. This is most likely due to the negative selection of patients with advanced age and co-morbidity to unstable to undergo surgery^[92,93,95,97]. Possible complications of the procedure are mainly bowel ischemia or infarction of the stomach, liver or spleen^[94,95,98-101].

Helicobacter pylori

Patients with UGIB from ulcers or haemorrhagic gastritis should be tested for *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) infection and should undergo eradication therapy if *H. pylori* is present. The effectiveness in prevention of re-bleeding in peptic ulcer disease was demonstrated in a meta-analysis^[102]. It is well known that *H. pylori* testing might reveal false negative results in the setting of an acute bleeding episode^[103]. The reason is not fully understood but is most likely due to the alkaline setting that results in pH buffering from blood in the stomach^[103] as well as from PPI therapy, which is dose-dependent. Therefore, an initially negative testing for *H. pylori* should be repeated during follow-up.

NSAID AND ASA USE

The use of NSAID and ASA is associated with a markedly increased risk of ulcer disease. Several studies addressed this issue and investigated whether the combination of NSAID and PPI decreased the risk for recurrent bleeding and also compared traditional NSAID with cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) inhibitors. Two small trials with a relatively low patient number showed that the combination of NSAID with PPI therapy as well as COX-2 inhibitor therapy alone lowered the risk for recurrent bleeding compared to historical controls on a therapy with NSAID alone^[104-106]. These findings are substantiated by population-based studies that also found a reduction in UGIB by adding PPI to traditional NSAID or by therapy with a COX-2 inhibitor alone^[3,107]. The combination of a COX-2 inhibitor with PPI further decreased the bleeding risk compared to a COX-2 inhibitor alone^[108]. These finding were in-line with the results of a meta-analysis of three RCTs^[109] and two studies^[108,110] that also revealed a lower bleeding risk in patients who were on a combination of COX-2 inhibitors and PPI compared to patients on a COX-2 inhibitor alone.

Although COX-2 inhibitors, especially in combination with PPI therapy, lower the risk for UGIB, it was

demonstrated that the use of a COX-2 inhibitor is associated with an increased risk of cardiovascular events^[111,112].

In clinical practice, NSAID therapy should be discontinued if possible. In patients without an increased risk for cardiovascular events and the need for NSAID therapy, patients should receive the combination of a COX-2 inhibitor and PPI. However, possible long-term side effects of PPI therapy should be kept in mind.

Things are more complicated in patients who receive cardioprotective ASA therapy. Prolonged discontinuation of ASA therapy (e.g., to complete ulcer healing) is associated with an increase in adverse cardiovascular events^[113,114]. In most cases, thrombotic events occur between 7 and 10 d after discontinuation of ASA therapy^[113,115,116]. This is well explained by the fact that ASA therapy inhibits irreversibly platelet function and the half-life of platelets of around 7 d. In patients at high risk of cardiovascular events, the early reintroduction of ASA therapy outweighs the risk of re-bleeding^[117]. Discontinuation of ASA therapy in patients with acute ulcer bleeding was shown to increase the eight-week mortality rate, whereas the early reintroduction of ASA therapy in combination with PPI revealed an insignificant trend to a higher re-bleeding rate only. The findings of another RCT^[117] were even more convincing with no reported re-bleeding in patients on ASA therapy and ulcer bleeding in whom therapy with ASA or clopidogrel in combination with PPI was initiated one day after endoscopy. In summary, therapy with ASA or clopidogrel in patients with cardiovascular risk factors should be restarted as soon as the risk for cardiovascular events outweighs the risk for re-bleeding.

Compared to ASA, the risk of ulcer bleeding associated with clopidogrel mono therapy is lower, but is still as high as 14%^[118,119]. Clopidogrel therapy alone has a higher re-bleeding risk than ASA therapy combined with PPI therapy^[118,119]. Clopidogrel requires cytochrome P450 isoenzyme CYP2C19 to be converted to its active metabolite^[120]. Since PPI and clopidogrel compete for the same cytochrome P450 isoenzyme, PPI may decrease the effect of clopidogrel. An increase in cardiovascular events in patients who received clopidogrel and PPI therapy in combination has been shown by some observational studies^[121-125], but other studies did not reveal an increase in cardiovascular events^[125,126]. Since reliable RCT addressing this issue are lacking, the interval between the intake of PPI and clopidogrel should be as long as possible (e.g., PPI in the morning and clopidogrel in the evening).

CONCLUSION

Non-variceal UGIB could be a life-threatening event, especially in older patients with co-morbidities. With a combination of endoscopic and PPI therapy haemostasis could be achieved in the majority of patients. When endoscopic measures fail, patients should undergo surgery or interventional radiology without delay. In

peptic ulcer disease, testing for *H. pylori* is mandatory and eradication reduces the re-bleeding risk. Caution is necessary in patients that need a long-term therapy with NSAID. In patients at risk, NSAID have to be combined with PPI therapy.

REFERENCES

- 1 **Lassen A**, Hallas J, Schaffalitzky de Muckadell OB. Complicated and uncomplicated peptic ulcers in a Danish county 1993-2002: a population-based cohort study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 945-953 [PMID: 16573778 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2006.00518.x]
- 2 **Lewis JD**, Bilker WB, Brensinger C, Farrar JT, Strom BL. Hospitalization and mortality rates from peptic ulcer disease and GI bleeding in the 1990s: relationship to sales of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and acid suppression medications. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97**: 2540-2549 [PMID: 12385436 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2002.06037.x]
- 3 **Targownik LE**, Nabalamba A. Trends in management and outcomes of acute nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding: 1993-2003. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2006; **4**: 1459-1466 [PMID: 17101296 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2006.08.018]
- 4 **van Leerdam ME**, Vreeburg EM, Rauws EA, Geraedts AA, Tijssen JG, Reitsma JB, Tytgat GN. Acute upper GI bleeding: did anything change? Time trend analysis of incidence and outcome of acute upper GI bleeding between 1993/1994 and 2000. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: 1494-1499 [PMID: 12873568 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2003.07517.x]
- 5 **Zhao Y**, Encinosa W. Hospitalizations for gastrointestinal bleeding in 1998 and 2006: Statistical Brief 65. 2009 [PMID: 21595135]
- 6 **Quan S**, Frolkis A, Milne K, Molodecky N, Yang H, Dixon E, Ball CG, Myers RP, Ghosh S, Hilsden R, van Zanten SV, Kaplan GG. Upper-gastrointestinal bleeding secondary to peptic ulcer disease: incidence and outcomes. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 17568-17577 [PMID: 25516672 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i46.17568]
- 7 **Lu Y**, Barkun AN, Martel M. Adherence to guidelines: a national audit of the management of acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding. The REASON registry. *Can J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **28**: 495-501 [PMID: 25314356]
- 8 **Acute Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding: Management**. London, 2012
- 9 **Barkun A**, Bardou M, Marshall JK. Consensus recommendations for managing patients with nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding. *Ann Intern Med* 2003; **139**: 843-857 [PMID: 14623622 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-139-10-200311180-00012]
- 10 **Blatchford O**, Murray WR, Blatchford M. A risk score to predict need for treatment for upper-gastrointestinal haemorrhage. *Lancet* 2000; **356**: 1318-1321 [PMID: 11073021 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(00)02816-6]
- 11 **Rockall TA**, Logan RF, Devlin HB, Northfield TC. Risk assessment after acute upper gastrointestinal haemorrhage. *Gut* 1996; **38**: 316-321 [PMID: 8675081 DOI: 10.1136/gut.38.3.316]
- 12 **Forrest JA**, Finlayson ND, Shearman DJ. Endoscopy in gastrointestinal bleeding. *Lancet* 1974; **2**: 394-397 [PMID: 4136718]
- 13 **Marik PE**, Corwin HL. Efficacy of red blood cell transfusion in the critically ill: a systematic review of the literature. *Crit Care Med* 2008; **36**: 2667-2674 [PMID: 18679112 DOI: 10.1097/CCM.0b013e3181844677]
- 14 **Dellinger RP**, Levy MM, Carlet JM, Bion J, Parker MM, Jaeschke R, Reinhart K, Angus DC, Brun-Buisson C, Beale R, Calandra T, Dhainaut JF, Gerlach H, Harvey M, Marini JJ, Marshall J, Ranieri M, Ramsay G, Sevransky J, Thompson BT, Townsend S, Vender JS, Zimmerman JL, Vincent JL. Surviving Sepsis Campaign: international guidelines for management of severe sepsis and septic shock: 2008. *Crit Care Med* 2008; **36**: 296-327 [PMID: 18158437 DOI: 10.1097/01.CCM.0000298158.12101.41]
- 15 **Barkun AN**, Bardou M, Kuipers EJ, Sung J, Hunt RH, Martel M, Sinclair P. International consensus recommendations on the management of patients with nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding. *Ann Intern Med* 2010; **152**: 101-113 [PMID: 20083829]

- DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-152-2-201001190-00009]
- 16 **Hébert PC**, Wells G, Blajchman MA, Marshall J, Martin C, Pagliarello G, Tweeddale M, Schweitzer I, Yetisir E. A multicenter, randomized, controlled clinical trial of transfusion requirements in critical care. Transfusion Requirements in Critical Care Investigators, Canadian Critical Care Trials Group. *N Engl J Med* 1999; **340**: 409-417 [PMID: 9971864 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199902113400601]
 - 17 **Villanueva C**, Colomo A, Bosch A, Concepción M, Hernandez-Gea V, Aracil C, Graupera I, Poca M, Alvarez-Urturi C, Gordillo J, Guarner-Argente C, Santaló M, Muñoz E, Guarner C. Transfusion strategies for acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding. *N Engl J Med* 2013; **368**: 11-21 [PMID: 23281973 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1211801]
 - 18 **Wolf AT**, Wasan SK, Saltzman JR. Impact of anticoagulation on rebleeding following endoscopic therapy for nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal hemorrhage. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2007; **102**: 290-296 [PMID: 17100959 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2006.00969.x]
 - 19 **Barkun A**, Sabbah S, Enns R, Armstrong D, Gregor J, Fedorak RN, Rahme E, Toubouti Y, Martel M, Chiba N, Fallone CA. The Canadian Registry on Nonvariceal Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding and Endoscopy (RUGBE): Endoscopic hemostasis and proton pump inhibition are associated with improved outcomes in a real-life setting. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2004; **99**: 1238-1246 [PMID: 15233660 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2004.30272.x]
 - 20 **Barkun AN**, Bardou M, Gralnek IM, Shingina A, Razzaghi A. Impact of elevated INR and of low platelet count on outcomes in acute upper GI bleeding (UGIB) [Abstract]. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **136** (5 Suppl 1): A-605
 - 21 **Baradarian R**, Ramdhaney S, Chapalamadugu R, Skoczylas L, Wang K, Rivilis S, Remus K, Mayer I, Iswara K, Tenner S. Early intensive resuscitation of patients with upper gastrointestinal bleeding decreases mortality. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2004; **99**: 619-622 [PMID: 15089891 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2004.04073.x]
 - 22 **Choudari CP**, Rajgopal C, Palmer KR. Acute gastrointestinal haemorrhage in anticoagulated patients: diagnoses and response to endoscopic treatment. *Gut* 1994; **35**: 464-466 [PMID: 8174982 DOI: 10.1136/gut.35.4.464]
 - 23 **Goldstein JN**, Refaai MA, Milling TJ, Lewis B, Goldberg-Alberts R, Hug BA, Sarode R. Four-factor prothrombin complex concentrate versus plasma for rapid vitamin K antagonist reversal in patients needing urgent surgical or invasive interventions: a phase 3b, open-label, non-inferiority, randomised trial. *Lancet* 2015; **385**: 2077-2087 [PMID: 25728933 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(14)61685-8]
 - 24 **Holster IL**, Hunfeld NG, Kuipers EJ, Kruip MJ, Tjwa ET. On the treatment of new oral anticoagulant-associated gastrointestinal hemorrhage. *J Gastrointest Liver Dis* 2013; **22**: 229-231 [PMID: 23799225]
 - 25 **McQuilten ZK**, Crichton G, Engelbrecht S, Gotmaker R, Brunskill SJ, Murphy MF, Wood EM. Transfusion interventions in critical bleeding requiring massive transfusion: a systematic review. *Transfus Med Rev* 2015; **29**: 127-137 [PMID: 25716645 DOI: 10.1016/j.tmr.2015.01.001]
 - 26 **Jairath V**, Kahan BC, Logan RF, Hearnshaw SA, Doré CJ, Travis SP, Murphy MF, Palmer KR. Outcomes following acute nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding in relation to time to endoscopy: results from a nationwide study. *Endoscopy* 2012; **44**: 723-730 [PMID: 22752889 DOI: 10.1055/s-0032-1309736]
 - 27 **Romagnuolo J**, Barkun AN, Enns R, Armstrong D, Gregor J. Simple clinical predictors may obviate urgent endoscopy in selected patients with nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal tract bleeding. *Arch Intern Med* 2007; **167**: 265-270 [PMID: 17296882 DOI: 10.1001/archinte.167.3.265]
 - 28 **Hearnshaw SA**, Logan RF, Lowe D, Travis SP, Murphy MF, Palmer KR. Acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding in the UK: patient characteristics, diagnoses and outcomes in the 2007 UK audit. *Gut* 2011; **60**: 1327-1335 [PMID: 21490373 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2010.228437]
 - 29 **Ananthakrishnan AN**, McGinley EL, Saeian K. Outcomes of weekend admissions for upper gastrointestinal hemorrhage: a nationwide analysis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **7**: 296-302e1 [PMID: 19084483 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2008.08.013]
 - 30 **Cipolletta L**, Bianco MA, Rotondano G, Marmo R, Piscopo R. Outpatient management for low-risk nonvariceal upper GI bleeding: a randomized controlled trial. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2002; **55**: 1-5 [PMID: 11756905 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2002.119219]
 - 31 **Hay JA**, Maldonado L, Weingarten SR, Ellrodt AG. Prospective evaluation of a clinical guideline recommending hospital length of stay in upper gastrointestinal tract hemorrhage. *JAMA* 1997; **278**: 2151-2156 [PMID: 9417008 DOI: 10.1001/jama.1997.03550240041031]
 - 32 **Lee JG**, Turnipseed S, Romano PS, Vigil H, Azari R, Melnikoff N, Hsu R, Kirk D, Sokolove P, Leung JW. Endoscopy-based triage significantly reduces hospitalization rates and costs of treating upper GI bleeding: a randomized controlled trial. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1999; **50**: 755-761 [PMID: 10570332 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5107(99)70154-9]
 - 33 **Lin HJ**, Wang K, Perng CL, Chua RT, Lee FY, Lee CH, Lee SD. Early or delayed endoscopy for patients with peptic ulcer bleeding. A prospective randomized study. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 1996; **22**: 267-271 [PMID: 8771420 DOI: 10.1097/00004836-199606000-00005]
 - 34 **Rockall TA**, Logan RF, Devlin HB, Northfield TC. Selection of patients for early discharge or outpatient care after acute upper gastrointestinal haemorrhage. National Audit of Acute Upper Gastrointestinal Haemorrhage. *Lancet* 1996; **347**: 1138-1140 [PMID: 8609747 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(96)90607-8]
 - 35 **Spiegel BM**, Vakil NB, Ofman JJ. Endoscopy for acute nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal tract hemorrhage: is sooner better? A systematic review. *Arch Intern Med* 2001; **161**: 1393-1404 [PMID: 11386888 DOI: 10.1001/archinte.161.11.1393]
 - 36 **Jairath V**, Kahan BC, Logan RF, Hearnshaw SA, Travis SP, Murphy MF, Palmer KR. Mortality from acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding in the United Kingdom: does it display a "weekend effect"? *Am J Gastroenterol* 2011; **106**: 1621-1628 [PMID: 21606977 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2011.172]
 - 37 **Adamopoulos AB**, Baibas NM, Efstathiou SP, Tsioulos DI, Mitromaras AG, Tsami AA, Mountokalakis TD. Differentiation between patients with acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding who need early urgent upper gastrointestinal endoscopy and those who do not. A prospective study. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2003; **15**: 381-387 [PMID: 12655258 DOI: 10.1097/01.meg.0000050005.68425.22]
 - 38 **Al-Sabah S**, Barkun AN, Herba K, Adam V, Fallone C, Mayrand S, Pomier-Layrargues G, Kennedy W, Bardou M. Cost-effectiveness of proton-pump inhibition before endoscopy in upper gastrointestinal bleeding. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **6**: 418-425 [PMID: 18304891 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2007.12.037]
 - 39 **Barkun AN**. Should every patient with suspected upper GI bleeding receive a proton pump inhibitor while awaiting endoscopy? *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **67**: 1064-1066 [PMID: 18513549 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.02.040]
 - 40 **Leontiadis GI**, Howden CW. The role of proton pump inhibitors in the management of upper gastrointestinal bleeding. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 2009; **38**: 199-213 [PMID: 19446254 DOI: 10.1016/j.gtc.2009.03.008]
 - 41 **Dorward S**, Sreedharan A, Leontiadis GI, Howden CW, Moayyedi P, Forman D. Proton pump inhibitor treatment initiated prior to endoscopic diagnosis in upper gastrointestinal bleeding. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2006; **(4)**: CD005415 [PMID: 17054257 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD005415.pub2]
 - 42 **Lau JY**, Leung WK, Wu JC, Chan FK, Wong VW, Chiu PW, Lee VW, Lee KK, Cheung FK, Siu P, Ng EK, Sung JJ. Omeprazole before endoscopy in patients with gastrointestinal bleeding. *N Engl J Med* 2007; **356**: 1631-1640 [PMID: 17442905 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa065703]
 - 43 **Leontiadis GI**, Sharma VK, Howden CW. Proton pump inhibitor treatment for acute peptic ulcer bleeding. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2006; **(1)**: CD002094 [PMID: 16437441 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD002094.pub3]
 - 44 **Laine L**, McQuaid KR. Endoscopic therapy for bleeding ulcers: an

- evidence-based approach based on meta-analyses of randomized controlled trials. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **7**: 33-47; quiz 1-2 [PMID: 18986845 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2008.08.016]
- 45 **Sachar H**, Vaidya K, Laine L. Intermittent vs continuous proton pump inhibitor therapy for high-risk bleeding ulcers: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA Intern Med* 2014; **174**: 1755-1762 [PMID: 25201154 DOI: 10.1001/jamainternmed.2014.4056]
 - 46 **Neumann I**, Letelier LM, Rada G, Claro JC, Martin J, Howden CW, Yuan Y, Leontiadis GI. Comparison of different regimens of proton pump inhibitors for acute peptic ulcer bleeding. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2013; **6**: CD007999 [PMID: 23760821 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD007999.pub2]
 - 47 **Tsoi KK**, Hirai HW, Sung JJ. Meta-analysis: comparison of oral vs. intravenous proton pump inhibitors in patients with peptic ulcer bleeding. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2013; **38**: 721-728 [PMID: 23915096 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12441]
 - 48 **Sung JJ**, Suen BY, Wu JC, Lau JY, Ching JY, Lee VW, Chiu PW, Tsoi KK, Chan FK. Effects of intravenous and oral esomeprazole in the prevention of recurrent bleeding from peptic ulcers after endoscopic therapy. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2014; **109**: 1005-1010 [PMID: 24777150 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2014.105]
 - 49 **Barkun AN**, Herba K, Adam V, Kennedy W, Fallone CA, Bardou M. High-dose intravenous proton pump inhibition following endoscopic therapy in the acute management of patients with bleeding peptic ulcers in the USA and Canada: a cost-effectiveness analysis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2004; **19**: 591-600 [PMID: 14987328 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2036.2004.01808.x]
 - 50 **Erstad BL**. Cost-effectiveness of proton pump inhibitor therapy for acute peptic ulcer-related bleeding. *Crit Care Med* 2004; **32**: 1277-1283 [PMID: 15187506 DOI: 10.1097/01.CCM.0000127261.09066.6E]
 - 51 **Lee KK**, You JH, Wong IC, Kwong SK, Lau JY, Chan TY, Lau JT, Leung WY, Sung JJ, Chung SS. Cost-effectiveness analysis of high-dose omeprazole infusion as adjuvant therapy to endoscopic treatment of bleeding peptic ulcer. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2003; **57**: 160-164 [PMID: 12556776 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2003.74]
 - 52 **Aseeri M**, Schroeder T, Kramer J, Zackula R. Gastric acid suppression by proton pump inhibitors as a risk factor for clostridium difficile-associated diarrhea in hospitalized patients. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2008; **103**: 2308-2313 [PMID: 18702653 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2008.01975.x]
 - 53 **Dial S**, Alrasadi K, Manoukian C, Huang A, Menzies D. Risk of Clostridium difficile diarrhea among hospital inpatients prescribed proton pump inhibitors: cohort and case-control studies. *CMAJ* 2004; **171**: 33-38 [PMID: 15238493 DOI: 10.1503/cmaj.1040876]
 - 54 **McDonald EG**, Milligan J, Frenette C, Lee TC. Continuous Proton Pump Inhibitor Therapy and the Associated Risk of Recurrent Clostridium difficile Infection. *JAMA Intern Med* 2015; **175**: 784-791 [PMID: 25730198 DOI: 10.1001/jamainternmed.2015.42]
 - 55 **Jensen DM**, Pace SC, Soffer E, Comer GM. Continuous infusion of pantoprazole versus ranitidine for prevention of ulcer rebleeding: a U.S. multicenter randomized, double-blind study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 1991-1999; quiz 2170 [PMID: 16968504 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2006.00773.x]
 - 56 **Lau JY**, Sung JJ, Lee KK, Yung MY, Wong SK, Wu JC, Chan FK, Ng EK, You JH, Lee CW, Chan AC, Chung SC. Effect of intravenous omeprazole on recurrent bleeding after endoscopic treatment of bleeding peptic ulcers. *N Engl J Med* 2000; **343**: 310-316 [PMID: 10922420 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM200008033430501]
 - 57 **Lin HJ**, Lo WC, Lee FY, Perng CL, Tseng GY. A prospective randomized comparative trial showing that omeprazole prevents rebleeding in patients with bleeding peptic ulcer after successful endoscopic therapy. *Arch Intern Med* 1998; **158**: 54-58 [PMID: 9437379 DOI: 10.1001/archinte.158.1.54]
 - 58 **Sung JJ**, Barkun A, Kuipers EJ, Mössner J, Jensen DM, Stuart R, Lau JY, Ahlbom H, Kilhamn J, Lind T. Intravenous esomeprazole for prevention of recurrent peptic ulcer bleeding: a randomized trial. *Ann Intern Med* 2009; **150**: 455-464 [PMID: 19221370 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-150-7-200904070-00105]
 - 59 **Zargar SA**, Javid G, Khan BA, Yattoo GN, Shah AH, Gulzar GM, Sodhi JS, Mujeeb SA, Khan MA, Shah NA, Shafi HM. Pantoprazole infusion as adjuvant therapy to endoscopic treatment in patients with peptic ulcer bleeding: prospective randomized controlled trial. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2006; **21**: 716-721 [PMID: 16677158 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2006.04292.x]
 - 60 **Klok RM**, Postma MJ, van Hout BA, Brouwers JR. Meta-analysis: comparing the efficacy of proton pump inhibitors in short-term use. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2003; **17**: 1237-1245 [PMID: 12755837 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2036.2003.01562.x]
 - 61 **Chan SM**, Chiu PW, Teoh AY, Lau JY. Use of the Over-The-Scope Clip for treatment of refractory upper gastrointestinal bleeding: a case series. *Endoscopy* 2014; **46**: 428-431 [PMID: 24505017 DOI: 10.1055/s-0034-1364932]
 - 62 **Laine L**, Stein C, Sharma V. A prospective outcome study of patients with clot in an ulcer and the effect of irrigation. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1996; **43**: 107-110 [PMID: 8635701 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5107(06)80109-4]
 - 63 **Lin HJ**, Wang K, Perng CL, Lee FY, Lee CH, Lee SD. Natural history of bleeding peptic ulcers with a tightly adherent blood clot: a prospective observation. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1996; **43**: 470-473 [PMID: 8726760 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5107(96)70288-2]
 - 64 **Laine L**, Jensen DM. Management of patients with ulcer bleeding. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2012; **107**: 345-360; quiz 361 [PMID: 22310222 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2011.480]
 - 65 **Sung JJ**, Chan FK, Lau JY, Yung MY, Leung WK, Wu JC, Ng EK, Chung SC. The effect of endoscopic therapy in patients receiving omeprazole for bleeding ulcers with nonbleeding visible vessels or adherent clots: a randomized comparison. *Ann Intern Med* 2003; **139**: 237-243 [PMID: 12965978 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-139-4-200308190-00005]
 - 66 **Bleau BL**, Gostout CJ, Sherman KE, Shaw MJ, Harford WV, Keate RF, Bracy WP, Fleischer DE. Recurrent bleeding from peptic ulcer associated with adherent clot: a randomized study comparing endoscopic treatment with medical therapy. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2002; **56**: 1-6 [PMID: 12085028 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2002.125365]
 - 67 **Jensen DM**, Kovacs TO, Jutabha R, Machicado GA, Gralnek IM, Savides TJ, Smith J, Jensen ME, Alofaituli G, Gornbein J. Randomized trial of medical or endoscopic therapy to prevent recurrent ulcer hemorrhage in patients with adherent clots. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **123**: 407-413 [PMID: 12145792 DOI: 10.1053/gast.2002.34782]
 - 68 **Lau JY**, Chung SC, Leung JW, Lo KK, Yung MY, Li AK. The evolution of stigmata of hemorrhage in bleeding peptic ulcers: a sequential endoscopic study. *Endoscopy* 1998; **30**: 513-518 [PMID: 9746158 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-1001336]
 - 69 **Kahi CJ**, Jensen DM, Sung JJ, Bleau BL, Jung HK, Eckert G, Imperiale TF. Endoscopic therapy versus medical therapy for bleeding peptic ulcer with adherent clot: a meta-analysis. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **129**: 855-862 [PMID: 16143125 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2005.06.070]
 - 70 **Marmo R**, Rotondano G, Piscopo R, Bianco MA, D'Angella R, Cipolletta L. Dual therapy versus monotherapy in the endoscopic treatment of high-risk bleeding ulcers: a meta-analysis of controlled trials. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2007; **102**: 279-289; quiz 469 [PMID: 17311650 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2006.01023.x]
 - 71 **Barkun AN**, Martel M, Toubouti Y, Rahme E, Bardou M. Endoscopic hemostasis in peptic ulcer bleeding for patients with high-risk lesions: a series of meta-analyses. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2009; **69**: 786-799 [PMID: 19152905 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.05.031]
 - 72 **Calvet X**, Vergara M, Brullet E, Gisbert JP, Campo R. Addition of a second endoscopic treatment following epinephrine injection improves outcome in high-risk bleeding ulcers. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126**: 441-450 [PMID: 14762781]
 - 73 **Sung JJ**, Tsoi KK, Lai LH, Wu JC, Lau JY. Endoscopic clipping versus injection and thermo-coagulation in the treatment of non-variceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding: a meta-analysis. *Gut* 2007; **56**: 1364-1373 [PMID: 17566018 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2007.123976]
 - 74 **Vergara M**, Calvet X, Gisbert JP. Epinephrine injection versus epinephrine injection and a second endoscopic method in high risk bleeding ulcers. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2007; **(2)**: CD005584 [PMID: 17443601 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD005584.pub2]
 - 75 **Yuan Y**, Wang C, Hunt RH. Endoscopic clipping for acute

- nonvariceal upper-GI bleeding: a meta-analysis and critical appraisal of randomized controlled trials. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **68**: 339-351 [PMID: 18656600 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.03.1122]
- 76 **Kim JW**, Jang JY, Lee CK, Shim JJ, Chang YW. Comparison of hemostatic forceps with soft coagulation versus argon plasma coagulation for bleeding peptic ulcer--a randomized trial. *Endoscopy* 2015; **47**: 680-687 [PMID: 25730283 DOI: 10.1055/s-0034-1391565]
 - 77 **Vergara M**, Bennett C, Calvet X, Gisbert JP. Epinephrine injection versus epinephrine injection and a second endoscopic method in high-risk bleeding ulcers. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2014; **10**: CD005584 [PMID: 25308912 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD005584.pub3]
 - 78 **Chung SC**, Leung JW, Sung JY, Lo KK, Li AK. Injection or heat probe for bleeding ulcer. *Gastroenterology* 1991; **100**: 33-37 [PMID: 1983848]
 - 79 **Gevers AM**, De Goede E, Simoons M, Hiele M, Rutgeerts P. A randomized trial comparing injection therapy with hemoclip and with injection combined with hemoclip for bleeding ulcers. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2002; **55**: 466-469 [PMID: 11923755 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2002.112613]
 - 80 **Chiu PW**, Lam CY, Lee SW, Kwong KH, Lam SH, Lee DT, Kwok SP. Effect of scheduled second therapeutic endoscopy on peptic ulcer rebleeding: a prospective randomised trial. *Gut* 2003; **52**: 1403-1407 [PMID: 12970130]
 - 81 **Messmann H**, Schaller P, Andus T, Lock G, Vogt W, Gross V, Zirngibl H, Wiedmann KH, Lingenfelser T, Bauch K, Leser HG, Schölmerich J, Holstege A. Effect of programmed endoscopic follow-up examinations on the rebleeding rate of gastric or duodenal peptic ulcers treated by injection therapy: a prospective, randomized controlled trial. *Endoscopy* 1998; **30**: 583-589 [PMID: 9826134 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-1001360]
 - 82 **Rutgeerts P**, Rauws E, Wara P, Swain P, Hoos A, Solleder E, Halttunen J, Dobrilla G, Richter G, Prassler R. Randomised trial of single and repeated fibrin glue compared with injection of polidocanol in treatment of bleeding peptic ulcer. *Lancet* 1997; **350**: 692-696 [PMID: 9291903 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(97)03233-9]
 - 83 **Saeed ZA**, Cole RA, Ramirez FC, Schneider FE, Hepps KS, Graham DY. Endoscopic retreatment after successful initial hemostasis prevents ulcer rebleeding: a prospective randomized trial. *Endoscopy* 1996; **28**: 288-294 [PMID: 8781792 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-1005455]
 - 84 **Villanueva C**, Balanzó J, Torras X, Soriano G, Sáinz S, Vilardell F. Value of second-look endoscopy after injection therapy for bleeding peptic ulcer: a prospective and randomized trial. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1994; **40**: 34-39 [PMID: 8163132 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5107(94)70006-0]
 - 85 **Marmo R**, Rotondano G, Bianco MA, Piscopo R, Prisco A, Cipolletta L. Outcome of endoscopic treatment for peptic ulcer bleeding: Is a second look necessary? A meta-analysis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2003; **57**: 62-67 [PMID: 12518133 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2003.48]
 - 86 **Chiu PY**, Lau TS, Kwong KH, Suen DK, Kwok SY. Impact of programmed second endoscopy with appropriate re-treatment on peptic ulcer bleeding: A systematic review. *Ann Coll Surg H-K* 2003; **7**: 106-115 [DOI: 10.1046/j.1442-2034.2003.00183.x]
 - 87 **Tsoi KK**, Chiu PW, Sung JJ. Endoscopy for upper gastrointestinal bleeding: is routine second-look necessary? *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **6**: 717-722 [PMID: 19946305 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2009.186]
 - 88 **El Ouali S**, Barkun AN, Wyse J, Romagnuolo J, Sung JJ, Gralnek IM, Bardou M, Martel M. Is routine second-look endoscopy effective after endoscopic hemostasis in acute peptic ulcer bleeding? A meta-analysis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **76**: 283-292 [PMID: 22695209 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.04.441]
 - 89 **Spiegel BM**, Ofman JJ, Woods K, Vakil NB. Minimizing recurrent peptic ulcer hemorrhage after endoscopic hemostasis: the cost-effectiveness of competing strategies. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: 86-97 [PMID: 12526942 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2003.07163.x]
 - 90 **Brullet E**, Campo R, Calvet X, Guell M, Garcia-Monforte N, Cabrol J. A randomized study of the safety of outpatient care for patients with bleeding peptic ulcer treated by endoscopic injection. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2004; **60**: 15-21 [PMID: 15229419 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5107(04)01314-8]
 - 91 **Defreyne L**, Vanlangenhove P, De Vos M, Pattyn P, Van Maele G, Decruyenaere J, Troisi R, Kunnen M. Embolization as a first approach with endoscopically unmanageable acute nonvariceal gastrointestinal hemorrhage. *Radiology* 2001; **218**: 739-748 [PMID: 11230648 DOI: 10.1148/radiology.218.3.r01mr05739]
 - 92 **Holme JB**, Nielsen DT, Funch-Jensen P, Mortensen FV. Transcatheter arterial embolization in patients with bleeding duodenal ulcer: an alternative to surgery. *Acta Radiol* 2006; **47**: 244-247 [PMID: 16613304 DOI: 10.1080/02841850600550690]
 - 93 **Ljungdahl M**, Eriksson LG, Nyman R, Gustavsson S. Arterial embolisation in management of massive bleeding from gastric and duodenal ulcers. *Eur J Surg* 2002; **168**: 384-390 [PMID: 12463427 DOI: 10.1080/110241502320789050]
 - 94 **Loffroy R**, Guiu B, Cercueil JP, Lepage C, Latournerie M, Hillon P, Rat P, Ricolfi F, Krausé D. Refractory bleeding from gastroduodenal ulcers: arterial embolization in high-operative-risk patients. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2008; **42**: 361-367 [PMID: 18277904 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e3180319177]
 - 95 **Toyoda H**, Nakano S, Takeda I, Kumada T, Sugiyama K, Osada T, Kiriya S, Suga T. Transcatheter arterial embolization for massive bleeding from duodenal ulcers not controlled by endoscopic hemostasis. *Endoscopy* 1995; **27**: 304-307 [PMID: 7555935 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-1005697]
 - 96 **Jairath V**, Kahan BC, Logan RF, Hearnshaw SA, Dore CJ, Travis SP, Murphy MF, Palmer KR. National audit of the use of surgery and radiological embolization after failed endoscopic haemostasis for non-variceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding. *Br J Surg* 2012; **99**: 1672-1680 [PMID: 23023268 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.8932]
 - 97 **Huang YS**, Chang CC, Liou JM, Jaw FS, Liu KL. Transcatheter arterial embolization with N-butyl cyanoacrylate for nonvariceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding in hemodynamically unstable patients: results and predictors of clinical outcomes. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 2014; **25**: 1850-1857 [PMID: 25282677 DOI: 10.1016/j.jvir.2014.08.005]
 - 98 **Lee HH**, Park JM, Chun HJ, Oh JS, Ahn HJ, Choi MG. Transcatheter arterial embolization for endoscopically unmanageable non-variceal upper gastrointestinal bleeding. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2015; **50**: 809-815 [PMID: 25732964 DOI: 10.3109/00365521.2014.990503]
 - 99 **Ripoll C**, Bañares R, Beceiro I, Menchén P, Catalina MV, Echenagusia A, Turegano F. Comparison of transcatheter arterial embolization and surgery for treatment of bleeding peptic ulcer after endoscopic treatment failure. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 2004; **15**: 447-450 [PMID: 15126653 DOI: 10.1097/01.RVI.0000126813.89981.B6]
 - 100 **Poultides GA**, Kim CJ, Orlando R, Peros G, Hallisey MJ, Vignati PV. Angiographic embolization for gastroduodenal hemorrhage: safety, efficacy, and predictors of outcome. *Arch Surg* 2008; **143**: 457-461 [PMID: 18490553 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.143.5.457]
 - 101 **Gisbert JP**, Khorrami S, Carballo F, Calvet X, Gene E, Dominguez-Muñoz E. Meta-analysis: Helicobacter pylori eradication therapy vs. antisecretory non-eradication therapy for the prevention of recurrent bleeding from peptic ulcer. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2004; **19**: 617-629 [PMID: 15023164 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2004.01898.x]
 - 102 **Gisbert JP**, Abaira V. Accuracy of Helicobacter pylori diagnostic tests in patients with bleeding peptic ulcer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 848-863 [PMID: 16494583 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2006.00528.x]
 - 103 **Udd M**, Miettinen P, Palmu A, Julkunen R. Effect of short-term treatment with regular or high doses of omeprazole on the detection of Helicobacter pylori in bleeding peptic ulcer patients. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2003; **38**: 588-593 [PMID: 12825865]
 - 104 **Chan FK**, Hung LC, Suen BY, Wong VW, Hui AJ, Wu JC, Leung WK, Lee YT, To KF, Chung SC, Sung JJ. Celecoxib versus diclofenac plus omeprazole in high-risk arthritis patients: results of a randomized double-blind trial. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: 1038-1043 [PMID: 15480981 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2004.07.010]
 - 105 **Chan FK**, Hung LC, Suen BY, Wu JC, Lee KC, Leung VK, Hui

- AJ, To KF, Leung WK, Wong VW, Chung SC, Sung JJ. Celecoxib versus diclofenac and omeprazole in reducing the risk of recurrent ulcer bleeding in patients with arthritis. *N Engl J Med* 2002; **347**: 2104-2110 [PMID: 12501222 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa021907]
- 106 **Lai KC**, Chu KM, Hui WM, Wong BC, Hu WH, Wong WM, Chan AO, Wong J, Lam SK. Celecoxib compared with lansoprazole and naproxen to prevent gastrointestinal ulcer complications. *Am J Med* 2005; **118**: 1271-1278 [PMID: 16271912 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjmed.2005.04.031]
- 107 **Rahme E**, Barkun AN, Toubouti Y, Scalera A, Rochon S, Leloir J. Do proton-pump inhibitors confer additional gastrointestinal protection in patients given celecoxib? *Arthritis Rheum* 2007; **57**: 748-755 [PMID: 17530673 DOI: 10.1002/art.22764]
- 108 **Chan FK**, Wong VW, Suen BY, Wu JC, Ching JY, Hung LC, Hui AJ, Leung VK, Lee VW, Lai LH, Wong GL, Chow DK, To KF, Leung WK, Chiu PW, Lee YT, Lau JY, Chan HL, Ng EK, Sung JJ. Combination of a cyclo-oxygenase-2 inhibitor and a proton-pump inhibitor for prevention of recurrent ulcer bleeding in patients at very high risk: a double-blind, randomised trial. *Lancet* 2007; **369**: 1621-1626 [PMID: 17499604 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(07)60749-1]
- 109 **Laine L**, Curtis SP, Cryer B, Kaur A, Cannon CP. Assessment of upper gastrointestinal safety of etoricoxib and diclofenac in patients with osteoarthritis and rheumatoid arthritis in the Multinational Etoricoxib and Diclofenac Arthritis Long-term (MEDAL) programme: a randomised comparison. *Lancet* 2007; **369**: 465-473 [PMID: 17292766 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(07)60234-7]
- 110 **Scheiman JM**, Yeomans ND, Talley NJ, Vakil N, Chan FK, Tulassay Z, Rainoldi JL, Szczepanski L, Ung KA, Kleczkowski D, Ahlbom H, Naesdal J, Hawkey C. Prevention of ulcers by esomeprazole in at-risk patients using non-selective NSAIDs and COX-2 inhibitors. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 701-710 [PMID: 16494585 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2006.00499.x]
- 111 **Kearney PM**, Baigent C, Godwin J, Halls H, Emberson JR, Patrono C. Do selective cyclo-oxygenase-2 inhibitors and traditional non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs increase the risk of atherothrombosis? Meta-analysis of randomised trials. *BMJ* 2006; **332**: 1302-1308 [PMID: 16740558 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.332.7553.1302]
- 112 **Rostom A**, Dubé C, Lewin G, Tsertsvadze A, Barrowman N, Code C, Sampson M, Moher D. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors for primary prevention of colorectal cancer: a systematic review prepared for the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. *Ann Intern Med* 2007; **146**: 376-389 [PMID: 17339623 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-146-5-200703060-00010]
- 113 **Aguejof O**, Eizayaga F, Desplat V, Belon P, Doutremepuich C. Prothrombotic and hemorrhagic effects of aspirin. *Clin Appl Thromb Hemost* 2009; **15**: 523-528 [PMID: 18603541 DOI: 10.1177/1076029608319945]
- 114 **Biondi-Zoccai GG**, Lotrionte M, Agostoni P, Abbate A, Fusaro M, Burzotta F, Testa L, Sheiban I, Sangiorgi G. A systematic review and meta-analysis on the hazards of discontinuing or not adhering to aspirin among 50,279 patients at risk for coronary artery disease. *Eur Heart J* 2006; **27**: 2667-2674 [PMID: 17053008 DOI: 10.1093/eurheartj/ehl334]
- 115 **Burger W**, Chemnitz JM, Kneissl GD, Rücker G. Low-dose aspirin for secondary cardiovascular prevention - cardiovascular risks after its perioperative withdrawal versus bleeding risks with its continuation - review and meta-analysis. *J Intern Med* 2005; **257**: 399-414 [PMID: 15836656 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2796.2005.01477.x]
- 116 **Sibon I**, Orgogozo JM. Antiplatelet drug discontinuation is a risk factor for ischemic stroke. *Neurology* 2004; **62**: 1187-1189 [PMID: 15079022 DOI: 10.1212/01.WNL.0000118288.04483.02]
- 117 **Ng FH**, Wong BC, Wong SY, Chen WH, Chang CM. Clopidogrel plus omeprazole compared with aspirin plus omeprazole for aspirin-induced symptomatic peptic ulcers/erosions with low to moderate bleeding/re-bleeding risk -- a single-blind, randomized controlled study. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2004; **19**: 359-365 [PMID: 14984383 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2004.01857.x]
- 118 **Chan FK**, Ching JY, Hung LC, Wong VW, Leung VK, Kung NN, Hui AJ, Wu JC, Leung WK, Lee VW, Lee KK, Lee YT, Lau JY, To KF, Chan HL, Chung SC, Sung JJ. Clopidogrel versus aspirin and esomeprazole to prevent recurrent ulcer bleeding. *N Engl J Med* 2005; **352**: 238-244 [PMID: 15659723 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa042087]
- 119 **Lai KC**, Chu KM, Hui WM, Wong BC, Hung WK, Loo CK, Hu WH, Chan AO, Kwok KF, Fung TT, Wong J, Lam SK. Esomeprazole with aspirin versus clopidogrel for prevention of recurrent gastrointestinal ulcer complications. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2006; **4**: 860-865 [PMID: 16797240 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2006.04.019]
- 120 **Muñoz-Esparza C**, Jover E, Hernández-Romero D, Saura D, Valdés M, Lip GY, Marín F. Interactions between clopidogrel and proton pump inhibitors: a review of evidence. *Curr Med Chem* 2011; **18**: 2386-2400 [PMID: 21568918 DOI: 10.2174/092986711795843245]
- 121 **Ho PM**, Maddox TM, Wang L, Fihn SD, Jesse RL, Peterson ED, Rumsfeld JS. Risk of adverse outcomes associated with concomitant use of clopidogrel and proton pump inhibitors following acute coronary syndrome. *JAMA* 2009; **301**: 937-944 [PMID: 19258584 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2009.261]
- 122 **Juurink DN**, Gomes T, Ko DT, Szmítok PE, Austin PC, Tu JV, Henry DA, Kopp A, Mamdani MM. A population-based study of the drug interaction between proton pump inhibitors and clopidogrel. *CMAJ* 2009; **180**: 713-718 [PMID: 19176635 DOI: 10.1503/cmaj.082001]
- 123 **Moayyedi P**, Sadowski DC. Proton pump inhibitors and clopidogrel - hazardous drug interaction or hazardous interpretation of data? *Can J Gastroenterol* 2009; **23**: 251-252 [PMID: 19373416]
- 124 **Melloni C**, Washam JB, Jones WS, Halim SA, Hasselblad V, Mayer SB, Heidenfelder BL, Dolor RJ. Conflicting results between randomized trials and observational studies on the impact of proton pump inhibitors on cardiovascular events when coadministered with dual antiplatelet therapy: systematic review. *Circ Cardiovasc Qual Outcomes* 2015; **8**: 47-55 [PMID: 25587094 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCOUTCOMES.114.001177]
- 125 **Dunn SP**, Steinhubl SR, Bauer D, Charnigo RJ, Berger PB, Topol EJ. Impact of proton pump inhibitor therapy on the efficacy of clopidogrel in the CAPRIE and CREDO trials. *J Am Heart Assoc* 2013; **2**: e004564 [PMID: 23525436 DOI: 10.1161/JAHA.112.004564]
- 126 **Simon T**, Verstuyft C, Mary-Krause M, Quteineh L, Drouet E, Méneveau N, Steg PG, Ferrières J, Danchin N, Becquemont L. Genetic determinants of response to clopidogrel and cardiovascular events. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **360**: 363-375 [PMID: 19106083 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0808227]

P- Reviewer: Rantanen T S- Editor: Kong JX

L- Editor: A E- Editor: Li D



Antibiotic treatment for *Helicobacter pylori*: Is the end coming?

Su Young Kim, Duck Joo Choi, Jun-Won Chung

Su Young Kim, Duck Joo Choi, Jun-Won Chung, Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Internal Medicine, Gachon University, Gil Medical Center, Incheon 405-760, South Korea

Author contributions: Kim SY and Chung JW contributed equally to this work that designed and wrote the manuscript; Choi DJ collected the data.

Conflict-of-interest statement: No author has any personal or financial conflict of interest.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Jun-Won Chung, MD, PhD, Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Internal Medicine, Gachon University, Gil Medical Center, 21, Namdong-daero 774 beon-gil, Namdong-gu, Incheon 405-760, South Korea. junwonchung@daum.net
Telephone: +82-32-4603778
Fax: +82-32-4603408

Received: April 26, 2015
Peer-review started: April 27, 2015
First decision: July 25, 2015
Revised: September 7, 2015
Accepted: September 25, 2015
Article in press: September 28, 2015
Published online: November 6, 2015

Abstract

Infection with the Gram-negative pathogen *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) has been associated with gastro-duodenal disease and the importance of *H. pylori* eradication is underscored by its designation as a group

I carcinogen. The standard triple therapy consists of a proton pump inhibitor, amoxicillin and clarithromycin, although many other regimens are used, including quadruple, sequential and concomitant therapy regimens supplemented with metronidazole, clarithromycin and levofloxacin. Despite these efforts, current therapeutic regimens lack efficacy in eradication due to antibiotic resistance, drug compliance and antibiotic degradation by the acidic stomach environment. Antibiotic resistance to clarithromycin and metronidazole is particularly problematic and several approaches have been proposed to overcome this issue, such as complementary probiotic therapy with *Lactobacillus*. Other studies have identified novel molecules with an anti-*H. pylori* effect, as well as tailored therapy and nanotechnology as viable alternative eradication strategies. This review discusses current antibiotic therapy for *H. pylori* infections, limitations of this type of therapy and predicts the availability of newly developed therapies for *H. pylori* eradication.

Key words: *Helicobacter pylori*; Treatment; Antibiotic resistance; Therapeutic regimens; Novel agents

© **The Author(s) 2015.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: This article reviews the recent literature describing antibiotic resistance and trends in *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) treatment. As there is no effective conventional therapy, new treatments are being developed and bismuth quadruple, sequential, concomitant therapies are recommended as a first-line regimen in regions with high levels of clarithromycin resistance. Quinolones have also been used for *H. pylori* treatment, although the cure rate has gradually reduced with this approach. New therapeutic directions include probiotic supplementation, tailored therapy, novel agents, and nanotechnology.

Kim SY, Choi DJ, Chung JW. Antibiotic treatment for *Helicobacter pylori*: Is the end coming? *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(4): 183-198 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com>

INTRODUCTION

Helicobacter pylori (*H. pylori*) is a Gram-negative, flagellated, spiral shaped microaerophilic bacterium first identified by Marshall and Warren^[1-3]. These bacteria have morphological characteristics penetrate the mucosa and colonize the stomach and duodenum^[4]. *H. pylori* are responsible for the pathogenesis that leads to gastritis, peptic ulcer disease (PUD), gastric adenocarcinoma and gastric mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) lymphoma^[3,5,6]. The World Health Organization has classified *H. pylori* as a group I carcinogen with a risk of stomach cancer^[7,8]. *H. pylori*-related stomach cancer represents 5.5% of all cancers worldwide and 25% of all infection-associated malignancies. Socioeconomically, *H. pylori* infection increases the risk of malignancy and the expense of *H. pylori*-associated morbidity^[9]. *H. pylori* infection has also been related to non-digestive conditions such as ischemic heart disease, stroke, Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, and iron deficient anemia^[4,10]. In other report, some patients with gastritis resolved *H. pylori* infection without using antibiotic treatment^[11]. Although the prevalence of *H. pylori* infection has been reduced in developed countries, it has remained prevalent in developing countries^[12,13] with rates of infection varying according to nation, patient age, and socioeconomic states^[14]. Eradication of *H. pylori* is an effective treatment for PUD, gastric MALT lymphoma, and preventing the recurrence of stomach cancer after endoscopic treatment^[15-17].

A standard triple therapy (STT), consisting of a proton pump inhibitor (PPI), clarithromycin and amoxicillin, was established in clinical practice for the eradication of *H. pylori* infection^[18,19]. However, in recent years, the efficacy of STT has been critically altered in many regions of the world as eradication rates have diminished to inadequately low levels^[18,20]. The causes for this decline may involve patient compliance, bacterial factors, obesity, smoking, reinfection, and genetic polymorphisms in CYP2C19. However, antibiotic resistance may be the primary reason for reduced eradication of *H. pylori* infection worldwide^[20-22]. In addition, the eradication rates differ by region, even in the same country. In South Korea, one study reported that the eradication rates of first-line therapy decreased from 81.3% to 77.5% from 2001-2007^[23], while another showed that no definite evidence of a significant change in the eradication rate during 2000-2010^[24]. This may be due to geographical differences in antibiotic resistance and the methods used to confirm eradication. In a region with high rates of clarithromycin resistance, sequential or concomitant therapy is recommended as the first-line *H. pylori* eradication treatment^[25]. The primary reason for the growth in antibiotic resistance is the emergence of point mutations in the *H. pylori* genome^[26]. Thus, the development of novel treatment methods to increase

eradication rates and reduce antibiotic resistance is needed. The focus of this review will be on current *H. pylori* therapies and limitations, as well as alternative anti-*H. pylori* regimens.

CURRENT ANTIBIOTIC RESISTANCE IN WORLDWIDE

The most important antibiotics in *H. pylori* treatment are clarithromycin, metronidazole, and amoxicillin. Figure 1 illustrates recently reported clarithromycin and metronidazole resistance rates worldwide. Resistance to these antibiotics is thought to be the main cause of eradication failure^[27-29]. Antibiotic resistance is discovered by bacterial culture-based techniques (*E*-test, modified disk diffusion, agar dilution method, and breakpoint susceptibility test) and molecular methods [polymerase chain reaction (PCR), real-time PCR, allele-specific PCR, sequencing, and fluorescent *in situ* hybridization]^[30]. Although these methods are useful for examining antibiotic resistance, their implementation at the early stages of *H. pylori* remains impractical due to the time required to obtain results and the high cost of the tests.

Clarithromycin is a macrolide antibiotic that inhibits protein synthesis by binding to and slowing the actions of the bacterial ribosome^[30]. Clarithromycin resistance is due to three point mutations at A2142C, A2142G, and A2143G in the 23s *rRNA* gene^[31]. In particular, the A2143G mutation has been related to a very low eradication rate^[32]. In contrast, the A2143G mutation occurs in only 23% of resistant strains in Eastern countries^[31]. This suggests that clarithromycin point mutations may be geographically distinct between Eastern and Western countries and new point mutations have appeared in South America^[33]. Clarithromycin resistance is also different depending on the area. In Brazil, stomach biopsy specimens positive for *H. pylori* were analyzed by PCR to detect the point mutation associated with clarithromycin resistance^[34]. The results uncovered primary clarithromycin resistance in 16.5% patients. Recently, the clarithromycin resistance rate in South Korea was reported to range from 17.2% to 23.7%^[35]. In a study published in Japan, the clarithromycin resistance rate in 2002 was 18.9%; however, the clarithromycin resistance rate in 2006 increased to 27.2%^[36]. Even with third-line eradication therapy, clarithromycin resistance rates in Japan were reported as 86.4%^[37]. Several studies in China have reported increased resistance rates Shanghai^[38], 21.5% resistance in the southeast coastal region^[39], and a relatively high rate of 33% in Vietnam, which is near Southeast China^[40]. In Western Asia, resistance to clarithromycin has been reported to be > 10% in Iran and > 20% in Turkey^[13]. In one study, clarithromycin resistance was reported in 47.5% of patients with dyspepsia in Turkey^[41]. In sharp contrast to other Asian countries, no resistance to clarithromycin has been reported in Malaysia^[42] and the prevalence of resistance to clarithromycin in Gambia and Senegal also remains

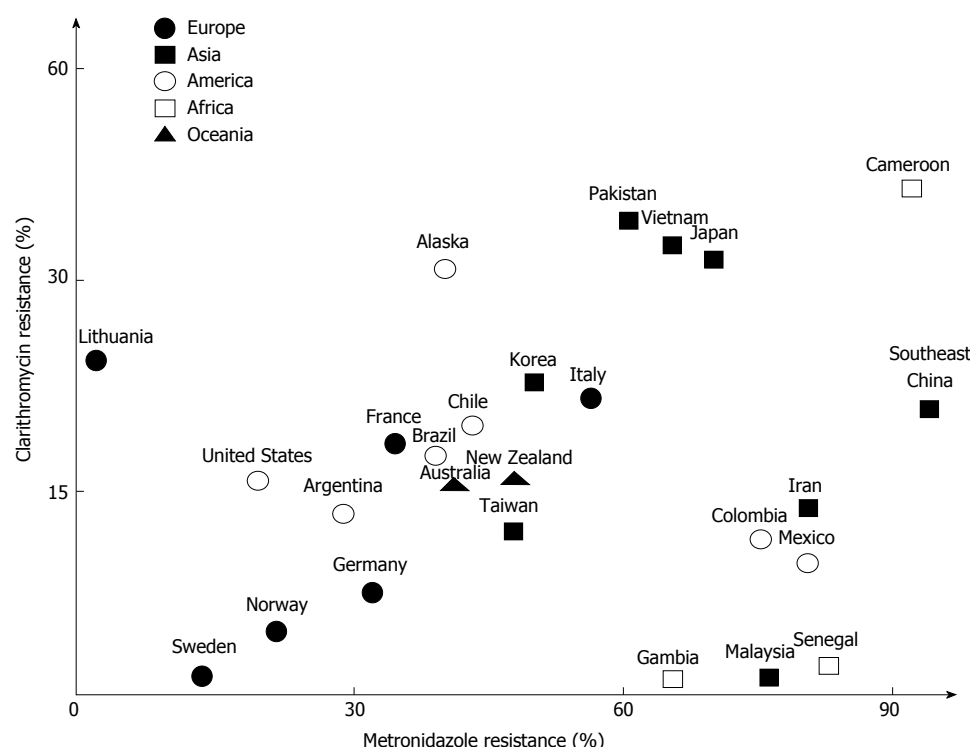


Figure 1 Worldwide rates of resistance to clarithromycin and metronidazole.

very low^[43,44]. Resistance to clarithromycin has also risen by > 20% in Southern Europe, although in Northern Europe the resistance rate is less than 10%^[45] compared to 1.5% in a random adult Swedish population^[46] and 7.5% in central Germany^[47]. During the last 15 years, a twofold increase in clarithromycin resistance was reported in Italy^[48] and in Spain, where the mean clarithromycin resistance rate was 18.3% in 1709 patients^[49], and 34.7% in Portuguese children^[50]. In contrast to the general trend, the rate of *H. pylori* strains resistant to clarithromycin decreased from 34% to 22% during 6 years in Southern Poland^[51]. Despite these variations, the overall frequency of clarithromycin resistance has risen from 10.2% to 21.3% worldwide, and A2143G is the most frequently reported point mutation. Present European guidelines recommend 7 d of STT in regions in which the rate of clarithromycin resistance is < 20%, and 14 d in regions with clarithromycin resistance rates of > 20%^[25,45].

The mechanism mediating resistance to metronidazole is complex. Modifications in the *rdxA* gene, assumed to be point mutations, are considered a primary cause^[30]. Metronidazole resistance may also influence the treatment outcome, although it is generally considered less clinically important than clarithromycin resistance^[52,53]. Overall, the Eastern Asian region has higher metronidazole resistance rates with 95.4% in the southeast coastal region of China^[39] and 71.3% in Japan^[37]. In Vietnam, the resistance rate was 69.9% among 103 strains^[40]. Unlike the clarithromycin resistance rate, there was a high prevalence of resistance to metronidazole (75.5%) in Malaysia^[42], a 76.8% rate in Iran^[54] and a high resistance rate in Africa^[43,44]. Another

study showed that 80% of strains in Mexico were resistant to metronidazole^[55]. Overall, metronidazole resistance is > 50% in much of the world but there are reports that metronidazole resistance has declined in Northern Europe^[9,30], while in the United States and Europe, the metronidazole resistance rate was reported to be < 40%^[30,56], and 22.5% in 102 isolates from Norway^[57]. However, in Central and Southern Europe, resistance rates remain markedly higher—34.9% in France and 32.7% in Germany^[47,58].

Amoxicillin is a beta-lactam antibiotic that was first used for *H. pylori* therapy^[25]. Unlike clarithromycin and metronidazole, amoxicillin resistance rates are low worldwide^[30]: 0% or < 1% in Europe^[30]. However, other studies revealed high amoxicillin resistance rates in Iran, Japan, and Cameroon^[37,45,54].

Fluoroquinolones are the sole class of antibiotics for treatment of *H. pylori* that directly inhibit bacterial DNA synthesis. Resistance to fluoroquinolones occurs primarily by mutation in the genes for topoisomerase IV and gyrase^[59]. Levofloxacin is currently recommended as a second-line *H. pylori* treatment when first-line therapy containing clarithromycin has failed, although levofloxacin resistance has been predicted to increase in the near future^[25]. Levofloxacin resistance rates in Asia differ from region to region with rates of 20.6% in the southeast coastal region of China and 18.4% in Vietnam^[39,40]. Fluoroquinolone resistance was noted as 62.3% in Pakistan^[60], while Japan and Malaysia had low resistance rates of 8.2% and 0%, respectively^[37,42]. Primary *H. pylori* resistance to ciprofloxacin occurred at a high frequency (15.7%) in South Korea^[61]. A study by Mégraud^[62] of more than 2000 patients with *H.*

Table 1 Decline in rates of *Helicobacter pylori* eradication following first-line standard triple therapy

Country	Ref.	Publication	Treatment duration	Patients	Therapy regimen	Eradication rate (ITT)	Eradication rate (PP)
South Korea	Na <i>et al</i> ^[177]	2007	7 d	3267	Standard PPI Cla 500 mg bid Amo 1 g bid	NA	84.3%
	Chung <i>et al</i> ^[178]	2012	10 d	80	Lan 30 mg bid Cla 500 mg bid Amo 1 g bid	58.7%	67.6%
Japan	Asaka <i>et al</i> ^[179]	2001	7 d	96	Lan 30 mg bid Cla 200 mg bid Amo 750 mg bid	NA	90.7%
	Fujioka <i>et al</i> ^[180]	2012	7 d	3162	Rab 10 mg bid Amo 750 mg bid Cla 200 mg bid	80.7%	NA
	Nishizawa <i>et al</i> ^[227]	2012	7 d	55	Lan 30 mg bid Cla 400 mg bid Amo 750 mg bid	74.5%	80.4%
	Nishida <i>et al</i> ^[181]	2014	7 d	134/134	Eso 20 mg bid Cla 400 mg bid Amo 750 mg bid Lan 30 mg bid Cla 400 mg bid Amo 750 mg bid	69.4%/73.9%	76.9%/79.8%
Taiwan	Sheu <i>et al</i> ^[182]	2000	7 d or 2 wk	286	Ome 20 mg bid Amo 1 g bid Cla or Met bid	NA	87.8%
	Chen <i>et al</i> ^[117]	2014	7 d	73	Rab 20 mg bid Cla 500 mg bid Amo 1 g bid	57.5%	61.8%
Turkey	Ozçay <i>et al</i> ^[183]	2004	4 wk: PPI 2 wk: Cla, Amo	102	Ome or Lan Cla 7.5 mg/kg bid Amo 20 mg/kg bid	NA	75.7%
	Kutluk <i>et al</i> ^[184]	2014	10 d	74	Lan 1 mg/kg per day Cla 20 mg/kg per day Amo 50 mg/kg per day	52.7%	55.7%
Italy	Catalano <i>et al</i> ^[185]	1999	10 d	84	Ome 20 mg bid Cla 500 mg bid Amo 1 g bid	NA	94.0%
	Paoluzi <i>et al</i> ^[186]	2010	7 d	90	Eso 20 mg bid Cla 500 mg bid Amo 1 g bid	66.0%	75.0%
Latin America	Greenberg <i>et al</i> ^[106]	2011	14 d	488	Lan 30 mg bid Cla 500 mg bid Amo 1 g bid	82.2%	87.1%

ITT: Intention to treat; PP: Per protocol; PPI: Proton pump inhibitor; NA: Not available; Cla: Clarithromycin; Amo: Amoxicillin; Lan: Lansoprazole; Rab: Rabeprazole; Eso: Esomeprazole; Ome: Omeprazole; Met: Metronidazole.

pylori infection showed resistance rates of 14.1% for levofloxacin, with significantly higher fluoroquinolone resistance in Western/Southern Europe than in Northern Europe^[62]. O'Connor *et al*^[63] reported that 11.7% of patients had strains resistant to levofloxacin in Ireland and there was a 29.1% resistance rate in 2011 in Germany^[64], 15% in Senegal^[44] and 23% in Brazil^[65].

THE EFFICACY OF STT AND BISMUTH QUADRUPLE THERAPY ARE DECREASING

The first-line regimen for the eradication of *H. pylori* infection consists of STT using a PPI, amoxicillin and clarithromycin and was first introduced by Dr. Bazzoli. In studies conducted during the 1990s, STT yielded > 80%

treatment success with reports of > 90% possible^[66,67]. However, the increased prevalence of clarithromycin resistance has accounted for the diminished efficacy of STT. Table 1 shows eradication rates from recent studies using STT. Generally, STT is not recommended as a first-line regimen when the clarithromycin resistance rate is > 15%-20%, and other therapies such as quadruple therapy or sequential therapy are suggested^[25]. Thus, a steady increase in *H. pylori* resistance to amoxicillin and metronidazole has also resulted in reduced treatment success of STT^[27,68,69]. The ideal outcome of *H. pylori* eradication is > 80% by intention to treat (ITT) analysis and > 90% by per protocol (PP) analysis. According to a recent study, the eradication rate was unacceptably low for treatment success, with only 18% exceeding 85% and approximately 60% failing to attain 80% eradication by ITT analysis^[20]. Over the past 20 years, the efficacy

of STT has decreased, with eradication rates < 80% by ITT analysis^[41]. According to the present formula by Dr. Graham^[70], if clarithromycin resistance rate of 20%, the outcome of clarithromycin containing triple therapy is reduced to 77.2% by PP analysis. Already in some countries the eradication rates have been reported to be < 50% and if this trend continues for another 20 years, the efficacy of STT will be negligible.

Various methods have been considered to circumvent the STT eradication rate decrease. The first method suggested that increasing the STT duration would improve treatment efficacy. In an early meta-analysis, a 14-d STT regimen raised the eradication rate compared to a 7-d regimen^[71]. Another meta-analysis supported this result by showing that extending STT over 7 d improved the eradication rate^[72]. However, other reports determined that extending STT was not cost-effective and increased adverse events and decreased compliance, resulting in no significant difference between the eradication rate and extended treatment duration^[73]. Another means of addressing the decrease in STT eradication rate is to increase the dose of PPI, which has a positive effect on treatment success. PPIs delay gastric emptying and increase gastric pH, which improves the effect of antibiotics by preventing acid-related degradation^[74]. A meta-analysis reported increased eradication rates from STT involving PPI administration twice per day compared with once per day^[75]. Another systematic review reported that utilizing a high dose of PPI increased the *H. pylori* treatment rate^[76] and the use of high-dose PPI increased the effectiveness of STT compared with a single dose PPI^[77]. In spite of these positive outcomes, STT is now regarded as an outdated therapy.

Bismuth quadruple therapy (bismuth subcitrate potassium, metronidazole, tetracycline, PPI) has been suggested as a first-line treatment option for regions with a high (> 20%) incidence of clarithromycin resistance^[53]. In a meta-analysis of nine randomized controlled trials (RCTs), bismuth quadruple therapy and STT resulted in similar compliance rates, side effects, and eradication rates as a primary therapy for *H. pylori* infection^[78]. For example, the ITT eradication rate with modified bismuth quadruple therapy was 92.7% in a recent randomized study in Chinese patients^[79]. A pilot study in United States Hispanics showed that 14-d bismuth quadruple anti-*H. pylori* therapy achieved a > 95% eradication rate^[80]. However, in some studies the eradication rate of bismuth quadruple therapy was < 80%^[81-83]. A decrease in the bismuth quadruple therapy eradication rate was highly associated with metronidazole resistance^[20].

ARE THERE SUITABLE SEQUENTIAL AND CONCOMITANT THERAPY ALTERNATIVES?

Sequential therapy was introduced by Zullo *et al.*^[84] in Italy in 2000. This regimen includes a PPI and amoxicillin

for 5 d, followed by a PPI, clarithromycin, and tinidazole triple therapy for another 5 d. Several studies have indicated that the eradication rate of sequential therapy was significantly higher than that of STT^[85-87]. The reason that sequential therapy has a higher eradication rate than STT is that amoxicillin and PPI administered during the first 5 d decreases *H. pylori* density in the stomach, which increases clarithromycin and metronidazole efficacy^[32,88-90]. In addition, amoxicillin damages the bacterial cell wall and limits production of an efflux channel underlying drug resistance. However, it is uncertain whether improvement in the eradication rate is due to sequential therapy or additional use of antibiotics such as tinidazole. Recent data from South Korea, showed a lower *H. pylori* eradication rate with sequential therapy with eradication rates by ITT analysis of 79.0% and by PP analysis of 84.9%^[91]. Another study showed that the eradication rates by ITT were 72.1% and 80.2% in 10-d and 15-d sequential groups, respectively^[92]. Although the 15-d sequential therapy group cure rate was higher than that of the 10-d sequential therapy group, the eradication rate remains low. In the study by Zhou *et al.*^[93], there was no significant difference between the eradication rates achieved with STT (66.4%) and sequential therapy (72.1%) by ITT analysis. Moreover, the sequential therapy group with dual clarithromycin resistance and metronidazole resistance had a lower eradication rate (43.9%) compared to the rate seen with only clarithromycin resistance (88.9%)^[93]. In a 2015 study from India that compared sequential therapy to ciprofloxacin-containing sequential therapy, the ITT cure rate in the sequential therapy group was 66% and only 73.5% in the ciprofloxacin group^[94]. Thus, the sequential therapy efficacy in Asia was lower than reported by earlier European studies. Another meta-analysis showed that the overall eradication rate of sequential therapy was 84.3% (95%CI: 82.1%-86.4%), although this was not superior to 14-d STT^[86]. However, sequential therapy was able to eradicate 72.8% of the *H. pylori* resistant to clarithromycin^[86]. In addition to the problem of sequential therapy eradication rate reduction, treatment compliance can be reduced due to medication changes during treatment. Furthermore, if eradication fails, no second-line treatment regimen has been established^[95].

Concomitant therapy, also known as non-bismuth quadruple therapy, consists of PPI and all three antibiotics (clarithromycin, amoxicillin, metronidazole) administered concomitantly to provide a simpler treatment regimen compared to sequential therapy^[96]. Recently, several studies have compared concomitant therapy to STT and sequential therapy. In one study, 10-d concomitant therapy resulted in a better eradication rate in settings with antibiotic-resistant *H. pylori* strains^[97]. Eradication rates for concomitant and sequential therapies were 100% vs 75% for clarithromycin-resistant strains and 75% vs 60% for clarithromycin-resistant/metronidazole-resistant strains^[97]. A meta-analysis of 15 studies showed a mean *H. pylori* eradication rate of 90% by ITT analysis

for concomitant therapy and reported that longer treatment improved the outcomes compared to STT^[98]. Another meta-analysis showed that concomitant therapy was superior to STT^[99]. In studies published in South Korea, the eradication rate for concomitant therapy was considerably higher than that for sequential therapy^[100,101]. However, several other studies have reported no difference in eradication rates between sequential and the concomitant therapy^[102-104]. In a randomized open-label study, ITT eradication rates were 75.6% (95%CI: 66.3%-84.9%) in the sequential therapy group and 80.8% (95%CI: 71.8%-88.5%) in the concomitant therapy group^[104]. In both groups, there was no difference in eradication rates and the treatment rate was lower than expected^[104]. Furthermore, in some studies, concomitant therapy had a lower eradication rate than other regimens^[83,105,106]. A total of 200 patients were randomized and the ITT eradication rates were 79% (95%CI: 71.0%-87.0%) in the bismuth group and 74% (95%CI: 68%-81%) in the concomitant group, although this was not statistically significant^[83]. Another study compared the eradication rate between 10-d sequential therapy, 5-d concomitant therapy, 14-d concomitant therapy and 14-d hybrid therapy^[105]. In ITT analysis, sequential therapy showed the highest eradication rate, which was higher than even 5-d concomitant therapy^[105]. This is supported by an RCT of 1463 patients in seven Latin American sites (Chile, Colombia, Costa Rica, Honduras, Nicaragua, Mexico) that reported the eradication rate with 14-d standard therapy was 82.2%, compared to 73.6% with 5-d concomitant therapy and 76.5% with 10-d sequential therapy^[106]. Currently, concomitant therapy has several limitations. First, side effects were reported to occur more frequently than with sequential therapy^[107]. Second, there are few data describing the effect of metronidazole resistance in concomitant therapy. Moreover if dual-resistance to clarithromycin and metronidazole was > 15%, the eradication rate decreased^[108,109]. Finally, as with sequential therapy, when first-line treatment fails no second-line treatment for concomitant therapy has been established. Tables 2 and 3 indicate that current trends of *H. pylori* eradication for sequential and concomitant therapy.

ADDING LEVOFLOXACIN AND OTHER QUINOLONES TO EXISTING TREATMENT

Levofloxacin has a large spectrum of activity against diverse Gram-positive and -negative bacteria^[110] though inhibition of bacterial topoisomerase II^[111]. There have been several studies of levofloxacin use as a first-line treatment^[112]. To overcome increasing clarithromycin resistance, levofloxacin has been used as a alternative to clarithromycin in either STT or sequential therapy^[53]. Table 4 shows *H. pylori* eradication rates following levofloxacin-containing therapy. According to a meta-analysis, 10-d of levofloxacin triple therapy is more

efficacious than 7-d bismuth-based quadruple therapy (RR = 1.41, 95%CI: 1.25-1.59) in the eradication of *H. pylori* infection^[113]. In another study, levofloxacin-based triple therapy (ITT, 80.8%; 95%CI: 73%-88%) was more effective than STT (ITT: 64%, 95%CI: 55%-73%) and there were no differences in compliance or side effects^[114]. However, other studies reported that levofloxacin-containing regimens did not have superior eradication rates compared to other treatments. Meta-analyses and a recent study in 2014 have shown that the outcome of levofloxacin-based first-line therapy was similar to STT^[115,116] with an overall crude eradication rate of 79.1% in the levofloxacin group compared to 81.4% in the STT group^[116]. A recent RCT in Taiwan with over 153 patients determined there was an advantage to levofloxacin-amoxicillin/clavulanate-PPI therapy over STT, although there was a low eradication rate (ITT analysis: 78.1% vs 57.5%)^[117]. Unsatisfactory results were reported in an Asian meta-analysis, which showed that 7-d STT was more effective than 7-d levofloxacin-based therapy^[118]. However, in European countries, levofloxacin-based therapy was more effective than STT^[118]. Regional differences in *H. pylori* resistance to antibiotics might account for these results. Although levofloxacin has been suggested as a replacement for clarithromycin in *H. pylori* treatment, increasing quinolone resistance is a larger problem. According to Graham *et al.*^[119], in the presence of fluoroquinolone resistance treatment success with quinolone-containing therapy decreases and these results can be predicted using a formula. A report published in United States in 2015 determined that the prevalence of levofloxacin resistance was 31.3% (95%CI: 23.1%-39.4%)^[120] and another study showed a high rate of quinolone resistance (50%) in Congo^[121]. We calculated the effect of quinolone resistance on treatment success using the proposed formula, which indicated success rates of 87.6% and 73.5%, respectively^[119,122]. The levofloxacin resistance rate is also relatively high in East Asia, where there is also a higher prevalence of stomach cancer compared to other regions^[122,123]. Sifafloxacin, which has lower minimum inhibitory concentration for *H. pylori*, and levofloxacin triple therapy combined with bismuth quadruple therapy have been suggested as solutions to this problem, although further evidence is required to establish this approach^[122,124].

PROBIOTICS AS ANOTHER APPROACH TO IMPROVE ERADICATION RATES

Many studies have demonstrated that probiotics have an inhibitory effect on *H. pylori*. Although some studies have reported that probiotics alone have limited efficacy^[125,126], they can be useful when used as a supplemental drug. In a study by Lv *et al.*^[127], the cure rates in the probiotic supplementation group were superior to those in the group that did not receive probiotics (RR, 1.12; 95%CI: 1.06-1.19), and probiotics reduced the risk of *H. pylori* therapy related side effects (RR, 0.60; 95%CI:

Table 2 *Helicobacter pylori* eradication rates following first-line sequential therapy

Country	Ref.	Publication	Treatment duration	Patients	Therapy regimen	Eradication rate (ITT)	Eradication rate (PP)
South Korea	Lee <i>et al</i> ^[92]	2014	10 d	111	1 st 5 d: Eso + Amo 2 nd 5 d: Eso + Cla + Met	72.1%	78.4%
	Lee <i>et al</i> ^[91]	2015	10 d	100	1 st 5 d: Rab + Amo 2 nd 5 d: Rab + Cla + Met	79.0%	84.9%
China	Zhou <i>et al</i> ^[93]	2014	10 d	140	1 st 5 d: Eso + Amo 2 nd 5 d: Eso + Cla + Tin	72.1%	76.5%
Qatar	Ben Chaabane <i>et al</i> ^[94]	2015	14 d	106	1 st 7 d: Rab + Amo 2 nd 7 d: Rab + Cla + Met	66.0%	76.0%
Italy	Pontone <i>et al</i> ^[187]	2010	10 d	84	1 st 5 d: Lan + Amo 2 nd 5 d: Lan + Cla + Met	83.3%	90.9%
Spain	Molina-Infante <i>et al</i> ^[114]	2010	10 d	115	1 st 5 d: Ome + Amo 2 nd 5 d: Ome + Cla + Met	76.5%	80.8%

ITT: Intention to treat; PP: Per protocol; Lan: Lansoprazole; Amo: Amoxicillin; Cla: Clarithromycin; Met: Metronidazole; Ome: Omeprazole; Eso: Esomeprazole; Tin: Tinidazole; Rab: Rabeprazole.

Table 3 *Helicobacter pylori* eradication rates following first-line concomitant therapy

Country	Ref.	Publication	Treatment duration	Patients	Therapy regimen	Eradication rate (ITT)	Eradication rate (PP)
South Korea	Lim <i>et al</i> ^[104]	2013	14 d	78	Rab 20 mg bid Amo 1 g bid Cla 500 mg bid Met 500 mg bid	80.8%	81.3%
	Lee <i>et al</i> ^[100]	2015	7 d	170	Rab 20 mg bid Amo 1 g bid Cla 500 mg bid Met 500 mg tid	79.4%	94.4%
Thailand	Kongchayanun <i>et al</i> ^[188]	2012	5 d/10 d	55/55	Rab 20 mg bid Amo 1 g bid Met 400 mg tid Cla 1 g qd	89.1%/96.4%	NA
Singapore	Ang <i>et al</i> ^[102]	2015	10 d	153	PPI standard does Amo 1 g bid Cla 500 mg bid Met 400 mg bid	81.7%	95.4%
Spain	Molina-Infante <i>et al</i> ^[97]	2012	10 d	209	PPI standard does Amo 1 g bid Cla 500 mg bid Met 500 mg bid	87.0%	89.0%
	McNicholl <i>et al</i> ^[103]	2014	10 d	168	Ome 20 mg bid Amo 1 g bid Cla 500 mg bid Met 500 mg bid	87.0%	91.0%
Latin America	Greenberg <i>et al</i> ^[106]	2011	5 d	489	Lan 30 mg bid Amo 1 g bid Cla 500 mg bid Met 500 mg bid	73.6%	NA

ITT: Intention to treat; PP: Per protocol; NA: Not available; Lan: Lansoprazole; Amo: Amoxicillin; Cla: Clarithromycin; Met: Metronidazole; PPI: Proton pump inhibitor; Rab: Rabeprazole; Ome: Omeprazole.

0.40-0.91). In another meta-analysis, the pooled odd ratios (ORs) for the eradication rate were higher in the probiotic group than the control group (OR = 1.67; 95%CI: 1.38-2.02) by ITT, and adverse effects were lower in the probiotic group (OR = 0.49, 95%CI: 0.26-0.94)^[128]. This study also showed racial differences

in the sensitivity to probiotics, with greater differences in Asian populations compared to Caucasians. Adults, as well as children, have reported that probiotics positively affect eradication rates^[129]. *Saccharomyces boulardii* is a type of probiotic gaining attention as a supplement for *H. pylori*. Recent reports have suggested that STT combined

Table 4 *Helicobacter pylori* eradication rates following first-line levofloxacin-containing therapy

Country	Ref.	Publication	Treatment duration	Patients	Therapy regimen	Eradication rate (ITT)	Eradication rate (PP)
South Korea	Choi <i>et al</i> ^[189]	2011	7 d	98	Ome 20 mg bid Lev 200 mg bid Amo 1 g bid	65.3%	73.6%
China	Liao <i>et al</i> ^[122]	2013	14 d	81	Lan 30 mg bid Lev 500 mg qd Amo 1 g bid	82.7%	85.9%
Taiwan	Liou <i>et al</i> ^[190]	2010	7 d	217	Lan 30 mg bid Lev 750 mg qd Amo 1 g bid	74.2%	80.1%
	Chen <i>et al</i> ^[117]	2014	7 d	73	Rab 20 mg bid Lev 500 mg bid Amo 1 g bid	78.1%	80.9%
Spain	Molina-Infante <i>et al</i> ^[114]	2010	10 d	115	Ome 20 mg bid Lev 500 mg bid Amo 1 g bid	80.8%	82.6%

ITT: Intention to treat; PP: Per protocol; Lan: Lansoprazole; Lev: Levofloxacin; Amo: Amoxicillin; Rab: Rabeprazole; Eso: Esomeprazole; Cla: Clarithromycin; Ome: Omeprazole.

with *S. boulardii* could be effective for enhancing *H. pylori* eradication rates^[130]. Compared with no intervention, *S. boulardii*-including regimens significantly increased treatment success (RR, 1.13; 95%CI: 1.05-1.21) and reduced *H. pylori* therapy-related adverse effects (RR, 0.46; 95%CI: 0.3-0.7)^[131]. Furthermore, *Lactobacillus* and *Bifidobacterium* species also have an anti-*H. pylori* effect. A meta-analysis of 10 studies on *Lactobacillus*-containing and *Bifidobacterium*-containing probiotics use as a supplementation to *H. pylori* eradication therapy found that the pooled ORs by ITT analysis and PP analysis were 2.066 (95%CI: 1.398-3.055) and 2.321 (95%CI: 1.715-3.142), respectively^[132]. In addition to the above references, *Lactobacillus acidophilus* and *Bifidobacterium bifidum* supplementation to STT is effective for *H. pylori* eradication and dynamic changes in intestinal flora^[133]. In recent RCT study, *Lactobacillus reuteri* was identified as a new probiotic proposed for the treatment of *H. pylori* infection. A combination that includes *L. reuteri* was able to reduce antibiotic-associated adverse events and to increase the *H. pylori* eradication rate^[134]. Although more research into these probiotics is needed, it is important to note that there are reduced drug complications and treatment is comparatively free from resistance. Therefore, probiotics will be considered important future therapeutics for *H. pylori* eradication.

IS TAILORED THERAPY ON THE HORIZON FOR *H. PYLORI* TREATMENT?

It is well known that clarithromycin sensitivity of the *H. pylori* infection contributes to the success of the STT eradication rate^[52,135]. Generally in infectious disease treatment, bacterial culture is carried out prior to determine the antibiotic selection of the organism. However, *H. pylori* bacterial culture is difficult and time-consuming, with various protocols for evaluating resistance. Thus, *H. pylori* treatment has depended on empirical antibiotic treatment^[109]. In their study, Gerrits

et al^[136] determined that the A2142G, A2143G mutations were highly related to resistance using PCR, which was partially used to identify resistance to clarithromycin in *H. pylori*^[137]. There are several advantages to this method because it is relatively simple and efficient with a cost similar to a rapid urease test^[135]. In a recent study of 1232 patients, the eradication rate by selective treatment in the tailored group was 91.2%, which was significantly higher than control groups (amoxicillin, rabeprazole, clarithromycin; 75.9% and amoxicillin, rabeprazole, metronidazole; 79.1%)^[138].

Appropriate stomach acid suppression, as well as resistant strains of *H. pylori*, remains a problem for successful eradication. PPI plays an important role in *H. pylori* eradication and the main enzyme involved in PPI metabolism is CYP2C19^[139] and CYP2C19 genotypes can influence PPI efficacy^[140]. Homozygous extensive metabolizer (HomEM) results in the highest rates of PPI metabolism, heterozygous extensive metabolizer (HetEM) results in moderate rates of PPI metabolism, while poor metabolizers (PM) exhibit the lowest rates of PPI metabolism^[139]. The frequency of CYP2C19 polymorphism differs depending on ethnicity. Asians have a higher proportion of PM compared with Western populations, particularly Caucasians and African-Americans^[139,141]. In contrast, Caucasians have a higher prevalence rate of HomEM compared with Asians^[142]. Accordingly, geographic differences should be considered in selecting doses or types of PPIs for *H. pylori* treatment since there is a significant difference between HetEM and HomEM (OR = 1.90; 95%CI: 1.38-2.60) in *H. pylori* eradication rate^[143]. In additional subanalysis of individual PPIs revealed that omeprazole was influenced by the CYP2C19 genotype^[143]. In another meta-analysis, successful eradication rates differed considerably between PM and HetEM (OR = 1.73, *P* = 0.002) and between PM and HomEM (OR = 2.79, *P* < 0.0001) and even between HetEM and HomEM (OR = 2.00, *P* < 0.0001)^[144]. This study showed that

a regimen including rabeprazole was not affected by CYP2C19 genotype status^[144]. According to a meta-analysis of a RCT in 2013, regardless of the PPI being taken, the eradication rates of PM were higher than HetEM and HomEM^[145]. In addition, results of the sub-analysis of the PPI type, omeprazole and lansoprazole were affected by CYP2C19 genotype. Unlike above, esomeprazole and rabeprazole were not affected by CYP2C19 genotype^[145]. In studies published in Japan, esomeprazole and rabeprazole are less influenced by CYP2C19 genotype compared with another PPIs^[146,147]. The efficacy of tailored *H. pylori* eradication treatment was demonstrated by Sugimoto *et al.*^[148]. In a tailored regimen, *H. pylori* patients with clarithromycin-sensitivity were treated with clarithromycin, amoxicillin, rabeprazole, while clarithromycin-resistant patients were treated with metronidazole, amoxicillin, rabeprazole for 1 wk. As a result, the overall eradication rate was 96.7% (95%CI: 92.5%-98.9%) by ITT analysis and 97.4% (95%CI: 93.4%-99.3%) by PP analysis^[148]. The method achieved high eradication rates of 94.3% in CYP2C19 rapid metabolizers^[148]. Although CYP2C19 genotyping remains difficult clinically, tailored therapy may be useful in overcoming decreased eradication rates.

NEWER AGENTS AND NONTRADITIONAL THERAPIES FOR *H. PYLORI* ERADICATION: HOPE IS COMING?

In the last decade, many researchers have argued that new classes of antimicrobials with novel mechanisms of action are necessary to overcome increasing drug resistance. Some agents have shown an antibacterial effect against *H. pylori in vitro* regardless of drug resistance and are effective even at low pH. Among them, pyloricidin A, B, and C have a strong and selective anti-*H. pylori* effect which an MIC₉₀ value of 0.013 mg/L^[149]. Benzimidazole derivatives (MIC₉₀ = 0.025), polycyclic compound (MIC₉₀ = 0.2-0.39), arylthiazole derivative 44 (MIC₉₀ = 0.0065) also were highly effective against *H. pylori*^[149].

Cathelicidins and defensins are examples of human antimicrobial peptides (AMPs) native to the innate immune system of many eukaryotes that have activity against *H. pylori*^[150]. LL-37 is a cathelicidin with an anti-*H. pylori* effect^[151], and a recent study demonstrated that cathelicidin limited *H. pylori* colonization and related gastritis in mouse models^[152]. Defensin peptides have also been indicated to impede *H. pylori*^[153]. Human beta defensin 2 and 3 are differentially expressed in gastric mucosa during *H. pylori* infection^[154]. Oligo-acyl-lysyl (OAK) peptides, which have a structure and function similar to those of natural AMPs, have broad-spectrum antibacterial activity and anti-*H. pylori* effect *in vivo*^[155]. Unlike the natural AMPs, OAK peptides are without known proteolytic cleavage sites and thus, resistant to enzymatic cleavage.

SQ109 was developed as a tuberculosis treatment

and known to be safe and tolerated in human trials^[150]. In an *in vitro* study, SQ109 had anti-*H. pylori* activity and a low *H. pylori* resistance rate^[156]. Pyridodiazepines are potent and selective molecules that target the *H. pylori* MurI inhibitor not effective against other bacteria^[157]. Sulfonamides and sulfamates were potent anti-beta-carbonic anhydrase molecules^[150]. *H. pylori* beta-carbonic anhydrase catalyzes the hydration of carbon dioxide to proton and bicarbonate to facilitate *H. pylori* metabolism of urea and bicarbonate and survive in low pH. Sulfonamides and sulfamates, inhibit the enzyme and are effective against *H. pylori*^[158].

Phytotherapy is expected to be another promising therapy for *H. pylori* eradication. Ginger rhizome extract has been demonstrated to have defensive activity in the stomach, increase stomach mucin regeneration, reinforce antioxidant enzymes, and suppress *H. pylori* growth^[159]. Capsaicin has an anti-inflammatory effect and inhibited *H. pylori*-induced interleukin (IL)-8 production by gastric epithelial cells^[160]. Sulphoraphane has also been indicated to suppress colonization and inhibit gastritis in *H. pylori*-infected mice and humans^[161]. Red ginseng extract has inhibitory 5-LOX enzyme activity and LOX-inhibiting action that suppresses inflammation of *H. pylori*-infected gastric epithelial cells^[162]. Epigallocatechin gallate, one of the green tea catechins, showed significant cytoprotective effects against *H. pylori* associated gastric cytotoxicity^[163]. Red wine and resveratrol have also been shown to inhibit the growth of *H. pylori cagA+* strains *in vitro*^[164]. In an open-label RCT, adding vitamin C and E to antibiotic regimens showed excellent *H. pylori* eradication rates. Compared to the group that did not contain vitamin, the group that combined vitamin C and E to lansoprazole, amoxicillin, clarithromycin, and bismuth citrate treatment had significantly higher eradication rates of 91.3% by ITT analysis and 93.5% by PP analysis^[165]. Thus, vitamin supplementation may be a future treatment option for *H. pylori*-related disease.

MICRO- AND NANO-TECHNOLOGY: IS THE ROAD TO *H. PYLORI* ERADICATION IN THE FUTURE?

Recently, several studies have determined the antibacterial activity of micro- and nano-technology against *H. pylori*. Liposomes are spherical vesicles that contain amphiphilic lipids in a bi- or multi-layer with an aqueous core used to encapsulate several compounds^[4]. This material contains biocompatible and biodegradable constituents without significant toxicity^[4]. According to Obonyo *et al.*^[166], a liposomal nanoformulation of linolenic acid is a favorable nanotherapeutic with bactericidal activity against resistant strains of *H. pylori*. Another study suggested that an epitope-based therapeutic *H. pylori* vaccine may be beneficial in eradicating *H. pylori*^[167] and a double liposome-based dual drug system may be helpful for treatment of *H. pylori* infection^[168].

Polymeric particles have a number of advantages for use as an antibiotic delivery factor with an anti-*H. pylori* effect. It is possible to manipulate their shape to affect biodistribution to increase interactions with the target cell. They also have mucoadhesive properties and protects drugs from proteolytic enzyme. Importantly polymeric particles possess several mechanisms to overpower microbes^[4]. Encapsulation of clarithromycin and omeprazole using gliadin nanoparticles as a mucoadhesive component has been reported for the treatment of *H. pylori*^[169]. Another study also showed that positively charged gelatin microspheres could be a feasible applicant delivery system for eradication of *H. pylori*^[170]. The amoxicillin-loaded chitosan mucoadhesive microspheres could increase gastrointestinal residence time and enhance amoxicillin stability to contribute to *H. pylori* treatment^[171]. In addition, chitosan nanoparticles improved the anti-*H. pylori* effect of chitosan^[172]. Genipin-cross-linked fucose-chitosan/heparin nanoparticles diminished drug release in stomach acid and then released amoxicillin in an *H. pylori* survival situation to inhibit *H. pylori* proliferation. In addition, amoxicillin-loaded nanoparticles increased *H. pylori* eradication and decreased *H. pylori*-associated gastric inflammation in an animal model^[173]. The metronidazole-loaded porous microparticles that exhibit sustained release of metronidazole could assist *H. pylori* eradication and healing from mucosal damage^[174]. Silver nanoparticles may also be safer bactericidal agents for the treatment of *H. pylori*-induced gastritis^[175]. Berberine-loaded targeted nanoparticles stimulated *H. pylori* clearance and suppressed stomach inflammation in *H. pylori* infection^[176].

CONCLUSION

Many studies have determined that novel agents and treatment regimens can improve eradication of *H. pylori*. With STT, high doses of PPI and prolonged therapy duration can increase eradication rates; indeed, in Europe and some regions of Asia these results are improved further with concomitant therapy. Concomitant therapy is less affected by antibiotic resistance, which adds value as an alternative treatment. Nevertheless, the eradication rates following concomitant therapy will gradually decrease due to the rapidly emerging antibiotic resistance of *H. pylori* worldwide.

In this review, we highlighted new and promising directions in *H. pylori* eradication. Although there are some practical limitations in applying probiotics and tailored therapy, they could of assistance in fighting *H. pylori*. Newer agents, nontraditional therapy, and microtechnology are also expected to play a major role in *H. pylori* eradication. However, several issues need to be solved to apply these treatments to the clinic. First, novel agents must be devoid of known proteolytic cleavage sites and thus, resistant to human digestive enzymatic cleavage. Second, these agents must be effective in an acidic environment. Third, these novel

agents should be free from antibiotic resistance such as OAK. OAK have multiple nonspecific actions, so it would be hard to occur antibiotic resistance of *H. pylori*. Fourth, further studies are necessary to assess micro- and nano-toxicity, *in vitro* as well as *in vivo*. The safety and pharmacokinetic properties of novel treatments for *H. pylori* in humans also need to be evaluated. Finally, although novel treatments have many advantages, clinical studies are required to determine whether these findings can be applied to humans. In order to improve the eradication rate for *H. pylori* infection, further studies must be required.

REFERENCES

- 1 Marshall BJ, Warren JR. Unidentified curved bacilli in the stomach of patients with gastritis and peptic ulceration. *Lancet* 1984; **1**: 1311-1315 [PMID: 6145023]
- 2 Kandulski A, Selgrad M, Malfertheiner P. Helicobacter pylori infection: a clinical overview. *Dig Liver Dis* 2008; **40**: 619-626 [PMID: 18396114 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2008.02.026]
- 3 McColl KE. Clinical practice. Helicobacter pylori infection. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **362**: 1597-1604 [PMID: 20427808 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMcpl001110]
- 4 Lopes D, Nunes C, Martins MC, Sarmiento B, Reis S. Eradication of Helicobacter pylori: Past, present and future. *J Control Release* 2014; **189**: 169-186 [PMID: 24969353 DOI: 10.1016/j.jconrel.2014.06.020]
- 5 Wang Y, Wang B, Lv ZF, Yang Y, Wang F, Wang H, Chen S, Xie Y, Zhou X. Efficacy and safety of ecabet sodium as an adjuvant therapy for Helicobacter pylori eradication: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Helicobacter* 2014; **19**: 372-381 [PMID: 24826809 DOI: 10.1111/hel.12136]
- 6 NIH Consensus Conference. Helicobacter pylori in peptic ulcer disease. NIH Consensus Development Panel on Helicobacter pylori in Peptic Ulcer Disease. *JAMA* 1994; **272**: 65-69 [PMID: 8007082]
- 7 Bytzer P, Dahlerup JF, Eriksen JR, Jarbøl DE, Rosenstock S, Wildt S. Diagnosis and treatment of Helicobacter pylori infection. *Dan Med Bull* 2011; **58**: C4271 [PMID: 21466771]
- 8 Tytgat GN. Etiopathogenetic principles and peptic ulcer disease classification. *Dig Dis* 2011; **29**: 454-458 [PMID: 22095009 DOI: 10.1159/000331520]
- 9 Testerman TL, Morris J. Beyond the stomach: an updated view of Helicobacter pylori pathogenesis, diagnosis, and treatment. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 12781-12808 [PMID: 25278678 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i36.12781]
- 10 Georgopoulos SD, Papastergiou V, Karatapanis S. Current options for the treatment of Helicobacter pylori. *Expert Opin Pharmacother* 2013; **14**: 211-223 [PMID: 23331077 DOI: 10.1517/14656566.2013.763926]
- 11 Freeman HJ. Disappearance of Helicobacter without antibiotics in 12 patients with gastritis. *Can J Gastroenterol* 1997; **11**: 167-172 [PMID: 9113817]
- 12 Go MF. Review article: natural history and epidemiology of Helicobacter pylori infection. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2002; **16** Suppl 1: 3-15 [PMID: 11849122]
- 13 Fakheri H, Bari Z, Aarabi M, Malekzadeh R. Helicobacter pylori eradication in West Asia: a review. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 10355-10367 [PMID: 25132752 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i30.10355]
- 14 Bouvard V, Baan R, Straif K, Grosse Y, Secretan B, El Ghissassi F, Benbrahim-Tallaa L, Guha N, Freeman C, Galichet L, Coglian V. A review of human carcinogens--Part B: biological agents. *Lancet Oncol* 2009; **10**: 321-322 [PMID: 19350698]
- 15 Fukase K, Kato M, Kikuchi S, Inoue K, Uemura N, Okamoto S, Terao S, Amagai K, Hayashi S, Asaka M. Effect of eradication of Helicobacter pylori on incidence of metachronous gastric carcinoma after endoscopic resection of early gastric cancer: an open-label, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2008; **372**: 392-397

- [PMID: 18675689 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(08)61159-9]
- 16 **Suzuki H**, Nishizawa T, Hibi T. Helicobacter pylori eradication therapy. *Future Microbiol* 2010; **5**: 639-648 [PMID: 20353303 DOI: 10.2217/fmb.10.25]
 - 17 **Nishizawa T**, Nishizawa Y, Yahagi N, Kanai T, Takahashi M, Suzuki H. Effect of supplementation with rebamipide for Helicobacter pylori eradication therapy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **29** Suppl 4: 20-24 [PMID: 25521728 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.12769]
 - 18 **Molina-Infante J**, Gisbert JP. Optimizing clarithromycin-containing therapy for Helicobacter pylori in the era of antibiotic resistance. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 10338-10347 [PMID: 25132750 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i30.10338]
 - 19 **Gisbert JP**, González L, Calvet X, García N, López T, Roqué M, Gabriel R, Pajares JM. Proton pump inhibitor, clarithromycin and either amoxicillin or nitroimidazole: a meta-analysis of eradication of Helicobacter pylori. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2000; **14**: 1319-1328 [PMID: 11012477]
 - 20 **Graham DY**, Fischbach L. Helicobacter pylori treatment in the era of increasing antibiotic resistance. *Gut* 2010; **59**: 1143-1153 [PMID: 20525969 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2009.192757]
 - 21 **Gasparetto M**, Pescarin M, Guariso G. Helicobacter pylori Eradication Therapy: Current Availabilities. *ISRN Gastroenterol* 2012; **2012**: 186734 [PMID: 22900197 DOI: 10.5402/2012/186734]
 - 22 **Xie C**, Lu NH. Review: clinical management of Helicobacter pylori infection in China. *Helicobacter* 2015; **20**: 1-10 [PMID: 25382801 DOI: 10.1111/hel.12178]
 - 23 **Chung JW**, Lee GH, Han JH, Jeong JY, Choi KS, Kim do H, Jung KW, Choi KD, Song HJ, Jung HY, Kim JH. The trends of one-week first-line and second-line eradication therapy for Helicobacter pylori infection in Korea. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2011; **58**: 246-250 [PMID: 21510323]
 - 24 **Yoon JH**, Baik GH, Sohn KM, Kim DY, Kim YS, Suk KT, Kim JB, Kim DJ, Kim JB, Shin WG, Kim HY, Baik IH, Jang HJ. Trends in the eradication rates of Helicobacter pylori infection for eleven years. *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 6628-6634 [PMID: 23236238 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i45.6628]
 - 25 **Malfertheiner P**, Megraud F, O'Morain CA, Atherton J, Axon AT, Bazzoli F, Gensini GF, Gisbert JP, Graham DY, Rokkas T, El-Omar EM, Kuipers EJ. Management of Helicobacter pylori infection--the Maastricht IV/ Florence Consensus Report. *Gut* 2012; **61**: 646-664 [PMID: 22491499 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-302084]
 - 26 **Boyanova L**. Prevalence of multidrug-resistant Helicobacter pylori in Bulgaria. *J Med Microbiol* 2009; **58**: 930-935 [PMID: 19502370 DOI: 10.1099/jmm.0.009993-0]
 - 27 **Nishizawa T**, Suzuki H, Suzuki M, Takahashi M, Hibi T. Proton pump inhibitor-amoxicillin-clarithromycin versus proton pump inhibitor-amoxicillin-metronidazole as first-line Helicobacter pylori eradication therapy. *J Clin Biochem Nutr* 2012; **51**: 114-116 [PMID: 22962528 DOI: 10.3164/jcbn.D-11-00029R1]
 - 28 **Oh HS**, Lee DH, Seo JY, Cho YR, Kim N, Jeoung SH, Kim JW, Hwang JH, Park YS, Lee SH, Shin CM, Cho HJ, Jung HC, Song IS. Ten-day sequential therapy is more effective than proton pump inhibitor-based therapy in Korea: a prospective, randomized study. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **27**: 504-509 [PMID: 21916989 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2011.06922.x]
 - 29 **Perri F**, Villani MR, Festa V, Quitadamo M, Andriulli A. Predictors of failure of Helicobacter pylori eradication with the standard 'Maastricht triple therapy'. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2001; **15**: 1023-1029 [PMID: 11421878]
 - 30 **Ierardi E**, Giorgio F, Losurdo G, Di Leo A, Principi M. How antibiotic resistances could change Helicobacter pylori treatment: A matter of geography? *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 8168-8180 [PMID: 24363506 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i45.8168]
 - 31 **Oleastro M**, Ménard A, Santos A, Lamouliatte H, Monteiro L, Barthélémy P, Mégraud F. Real-time PCR assay for rapid and accurate detection of point mutations conferring resistance to clarithromycin in Helicobacter pylori. *J Clin Microbiol* 2003; **41**: 397-402 [PMID: 12517879]
 - 32 **De Francesco V**, Margiotta M, Zullo A, Hassan C, Troiani L, Burattini O, Stella F, Di Leo A, Russo F, Marangi S, Monno R, Stoppino V, Morini S, Panella C, Ierardi E. Clarithromycin-resistant genotypes and eradication of Helicobacter pylori. *Ann Intern Med* 2006; **144**: 94-100 [PMID: 16418408]
 - 33 **Barile KA**, Silva AL, Xavier JN, Assumpção MB, Corvelo TC. Characterization of 23S rRNA domain V mutations in gastric biopsy patients from the eastern Amazon. *Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz* 2010; **105**: 314-317 [PMID: 20512246]
 - 34 **Lins AK**, Lima RA, Magalhães M. Clarithromycin-resistant Helicobacter pylori in Recife, Brazil, directly identified from gastric biopsies by polymerase chain reaction. *Arq Gastroenterol* 2010; **47**: 379-382 [PMID: 21225149]
 - 35 **Lee JW**, Kim N, Kim JM, Nam RH, Chang H, Kim JY, Shin CM, Park YS, Lee DH, Jung HC. Prevalence of primary and secondary antimicrobial resistance of Helicobacter pylori in Korea from 2003 through 2012. *Helicobacter* 2013; **18**: 206-214 [PMID: 23241101 DOI: 10.1111/hel.12031]
 - 36 **Kobayashi I**, Murakami K, Kato M, Kato S, Azuma T, Takahashi S, Uemura N, Katsuyama T, Fukuda Y, Haruma K, Nasu M, Fujioka T. Changing antimicrobial susceptibility epidemiology of Helicobacter pylori strains in Japan between 2002 and 2005. *J Clin Microbiol* 2007; **45**: 4006-4010 [PMID: 17942652 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.00740-07]
 - 37 **Murakami K**, Furuta T, Ando T, Nakajima T, Inui Y, Oshima T, Tomita T, Mabe K, Sasaki M, Suganuma T, Nomura H, Satoh K, Hori S, Inoue S, Tomokane T, Kudo M, Inaba T, Take S, Ohkusa T, Yamamoto S, Mizuno S, Kamoshida T, Amagai K, Iwamoto J, Miwa J, Kodama M, Okimoto T, Kato M, Asaka M. Multi-center randomized controlled study to establish the standard third-line regimen for Helicobacter pylori eradication in Japan. *J Gastroenterol* 2013; **48**: 1128-1135 [PMID: 23307042 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-012-0731-8]
 - 38 **Sun QJ**, Liang X, Zheng Q, Gu WQ, Liu WZ, Xiao SD, Lu H. Resistance of Helicobacter pylori to antibiotics from 2000 to 2009 in Shanghai. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 5118-5121 [PMID: 20976850]
 - 39 **Su P**, Li Y, Li H, Zhang J, Lin L, Wang Q, Guo F, Ji Z, Mao J, Tang W, Shi Z, Shao W, Mao J, Zhu X, Zhang X, Tong Y, Tu H, Jiang M, Wang Z, Jin F, Yang N, Zhang J. Antibiotic resistance of Helicobacter pylori isolated in the Southeast Coastal Region of China. *Helicobacter* 2013; **18**: 274-279 [PMID: 23418857 DOI: 10.1111/hel.12046]
 - 40 **Binh TT**, Shiota S, Nguyen LT, Ho DD, Hoang HH, Ta L, Trinh DT, Fujioka T, Yamaoka Y. The incidence of primary antibiotic resistance of Helicobacter pylori in Vietnam. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2013; **47**: 233-238 [PMID: 23090037 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e3182676e2b]
 - 41 **Dos Santos AA**, Carvalho AA. Pharmacological therapy used in the elimination of Helicobacter pylori infection: a review. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 139-154 [PMID: 25574087 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i1.139]
 - 42 **Goh KL**, Navaratnam P. High Helicobacter pylori resistance to metronidazole but zero or low resistance to clarithromycin, levofloxacin, and other antibiotics in Malaysia. *Helicobacter* 2011; **16**: 241-245 [PMID: 21585611 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2011.00841.x]
 - 43 **Secka O**, Berg DE, Antonio M, Corrah T, Taggun M, Walton R, Thomas V, Galano JJ, Sancho J, Adegbola RA, Thomas JE. Antimicrobial susceptibility and resistance patterns among Helicobacter pylori strains from The Gambia, West Africa. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2013; **57**: 1231-1237 [PMID: 23263004 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00517-12]
 - 44 **Seck A**, Buruoa C, Dia D, Mbengue M, Onambele M, Raymond J, Breurec S. Primary antibiotic resistance and associated mechanisms in Helicobacter pylori isolates from Senegalese patients. *Ann Clin Microbiol Antimicrob* 2013; **12**: 3 [PMID: 23298145 DOI: 10.1186/1476-0711-12-3]
 - 45 **De Francesco V**, Giorgio F, Hassan C, Manes G, Vannella L, Panella C, Ierardi E, Zullo A. Worldwide H. pylori antibiotic resistance: a systematic review. *J Gastrointest Liver Dis* 2010; **19**: 409-414 [PMID: 21188333]
 - 46 **Storskrubb T**, Aro P, Ronkainen J, Wreiber K, Nyhlin H, Bolling-Sternevald E, Talley NJ, Engstrand L, Agréus L. Antimicrobial susceptibility of Helicobacter pylori strains in a random adult Swedish population. *Helicobacter* 2006; **11**: 224-230 [PMID: 16418408]

- 16882324 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2006.00414.x]
- 47 **Selgrad M**, Meissle J, Bornschein J, Kandulski A, Langner C, Varbanova M, Wex T, Tammer I, Schlüter D, Malfertheiner P. Antibiotic susceptibility of *Helicobacter pylori* in central Germany and its relationship with the number of eradication therapies. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **25**: 1257-1260 [PMID: 23863261 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0b013e3283643491]
 - 48 **De Francesco V**, Margiotta M, Zullo A, Hassan C, Giorgio F, Burattini O, Stoppino G, Cea U, Pace A, Zotti M, Morini S, Panella C, Ierardi E. Prevalence of primary clarithromycin resistance in *Helicobacter pylori* strains over a 15 year period in Italy. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2007; **59**: 783-785 [PMID: 17329269 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkm005]
 - 49 **Molina-Infante J**, Gisbert JP. [Update on the efficacy of triple therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* infection and clarithromycin resistance rates in Spain (2007-2012)]. *Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **36**: 375-381 [PMID: 23623461 DOI: 10.1016/j.gastrohep.2013.02.006]
 - 50 **Oleastro M**, Cabral J, Ramalho PM, Lemos PS, Paixão E, Benoliel J, Santos A, Lopes AI. Primary antibiotic resistance of *Helicobacter pylori* strains isolated from Portuguese children: a prospective multicentre study over a 10 year period. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2011; **66**: 2308-2311 [PMID: 21764826 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkr293]
 - 51 **Karczewska E**, Klesiewicz K, Skiba I, Wojtas-Bonior I, Sito E, Czajeki K, Zwolińska-Wcisło M, Budak A. Variability in Prevalence of *Helicobacter pylori* Strains Resistant to Clarithromycin and Levofloxacin in Southern Poland. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2012; **2012**: 418010 [PMID: 22693490 DOI: 10.1155/2012/418010]
 - 52 **Houben MH**, van de Beek D, Hensen EF, de Craen AJ, Rauws EA, Tytgat GN. A systematic review of *Helicobacter pylori* eradication therapy--the impact of antimicrobial resistance on eradication rates. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 1999; **13**: 1047-1055 [PMID: 10468680]
 - 53 **Papastergiou V**, Georgopoulos SD, Karatapanis S. Treatment of *Helicobacter pylori* infection: Past, present and future. *World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol* 2014; **5**: 392-399 [PMID: 25400982 DOI: 10.4291/wjgp.v5.i4.392]
 - 54 **Milani M**, Ghotaslou R, Akhi MT, Nahaei MR, Hasani A, Somi MH, Rafeey M, Sharifi Y. The status of antimicrobial resistance of *Helicobacter pylori* in Eastern Azerbaijan, Iran: comparative study according to demographics. *J Infect Chemother* 2012; **18**: 848-852 [PMID: 22581031 DOI: 10.1007/s10156-012-0425-4]
 - 55 **Torres J**, Camorlinga-Ponce M, Pérez-Pérez G, Madrazo-De la Garza A, Dehesa M, González-Valencia G, Muñoz O. Increasing multidrug resistance in *Helicobacter pylori* strains isolated from children and adults in Mexico. *J Clin Microbiol* 2001; **39**: 2677-2680 [PMID: 11427594 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.39.7.2677-2680.2001]
 - 56 **Duck WM**, Sobel J, Pruckler JM, Song Q, Swerdlow D, Friedman C, Sulka A, Swaminathan B, Taylor T, Hoekstra M, Griffin P, Smoot D, Peek R, Metz DC, Bloom PB, Goldschmidt S, Parsonnet J, Triadafilopoulos G, Perez-Perez GI, Vakil N, Ernst P, Czinn S, Dunne D, Gold BD. Antimicrobial resistance incidence and risk factors among *Helicobacter pylori*-infected persons, United States. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2004; **10**: 1088-1094 [PMID: 15207062 DOI: 10.3201/eid1006.030744]
 - 57 **Larsen AL**, Ragnhildstveit E, Moayeri B, Eliassen L, Melby KK. Resistance rates of metronidazole and other antibacterials in *Helicobacter pylori* from previously untreated patients in Norway. *APMIS* 2013; **121**: 353-358 [PMID: 23083455 DOI: 10.1111/apm.12009]
 - 58 **Mégraud F**. Current recommendations for *Helicobacter pylori* therapies in a world of evolving resistance. *Gut Microbes* 2013; **4**: 541-548 [PMID: 23929066 DOI: 10.4161/gmic.25930]
 - 59 **Rispo A**, Capone P, Castiglione F, Pasquale L, Rea M, Caporaso N. Fluoroquinolone-based protocols for eradication of *Helicobacter pylori*. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 8947-8956 [PMID: 25083067 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i27.8947]
 - 60 **Rajper S**, Khan E, Ahmad Z, Alam SM, Akbar A, Hasan R. Macrolide and fluoroquinolone resistance in *Helicobacter pylori* isolates: an experience at a tertiary care centre in Pakistan. *J Pak Med Assoc* 2012; **62**: 1140-1144 [PMID: 23866399]
 - 61 **Chung JW**, Lee GH, Jeong JY, Lee SM, Jung JH, Choi KD, Song HJ, Jung HY, Kim JH. Resistance of *Helicobacter pylori* strains to antibiotics in Korea with a focus on fluoroquinolone resistance. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **27**: 493-497 [PMID: 21793912 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2011.06874.x]
 - 62 **Mégraud F**. *H. pylori* antibiotic resistance: prevalence, importance, and advances in testing. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 1374-1384 [PMID: 15306603 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2003.022111]
 - 63 **O'Connor A**, Taneike I, Nami A, Fitzgerald N, Ryan B, Breslin N, O'Connor H, McNamara D, Murphy P, O'Morain C. *Helicobacter pylori* resistance rates for levofloxacin, tetracycline and rifabutin among Irish isolates at a reference centre. *Ir J Med Sci* 2013; **182**: 693-695 [PMID: 23625165 DOI: 10.1007/s11845-013-0957-3]
 - 64 **Wueppenhorst N**, Stueger HP, Kist M, Glocker EO. High secondary resistance to quinolones in German *Helicobacter pylori* clinical isolates. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2013; **68**: 1562-1566 [PMID: 23463210 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkt061]
 - 65 **Eisig JN**, Silva FM, Barbuti RC, Navarro-Rodríguez T, Moraes-Filho JP, Pedrazzoli Jr J. *Helicobacter pylori* antibiotic resistance in Brazil: clarithromycin is still a good option. *Arq Gastroenterol* 2011; **48**: 261-264 [PMID: 22147131]
 - 66 Current European concepts in the management of *Helicobacter pylori* infection. The Maastricht Consensus Report. European *Helicobacter Pylori* Study Group. *Gut* 1997; **41**: 8-13 [PMID: 9274464]
 - 67 **Lind T**, Veldhuyzen van Zanten S, Unge P, Spiller R, Bayerdörffer E, O'Morain C, Bardhan KD, Bradette M, Chiba N, Wrangstadh M, Cederberg C, Idström JP. Eradication of *Helicobacter pylori* using one-week triple therapies combining omeprazole with two antimicrobials: the MACH I Study. *Helicobacter* 1996; **1**: 138-144 [PMID: 9398894]
 - 68 **Romano M**, Cuomo A. Eradication of *Helicobacter pylori*: a clinical update. *MedGenMed* 2004; **6**: 19 [PMID: 15208531]
 - 69 **Nishizawa T**, Suzuki H, Takahashi M, Suzuki M, Hibi T. Delay of second-line eradication therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* can increase eradication failure. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **28**: 1608-1610 [PMID: 23701705 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.12281]
 - 70 **Graham DY**. *Helicobacter pylori* update: gastric cancer, reliable therapy, and possible benefits. *Gastroenterology* 2015; **148**: 719-731.e3 [PMID: 25655557 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2015.01.040]
 - 71 **Calvet X**, García N, López T, Gisbert JP, Gené E, Roque M. A meta-analysis of short versus long therapy with a proton pump inhibitor, clarithromycin and either metronidazole or amoxicillin for treating *Helicobacter pylori* infection. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2000; **14**: 603-609 [PMID: 10792124]
 - 72 **Yuan Y**, Ford AC, Khan KJ, Gisbert JP, Forman D, Leontiadis GI, Tse F, Calvet X, Fallone C, Fischbach L, Oderda G, Bazzoli F, Moayyedi P. Optimum duration of regimens for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2013; **12**: CD008337 [PMID: 24338763 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD008337.pub2]
 - 73 **Fuccio L**, Minardi ME, Zagari RM, Grilli D, Magrini N, Bazzoli F. Meta-analysis: duration of first-line proton-pump inhibitor based triple therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication. *Ann Intern Med* 2007; **147**: 553-562 [PMID: 17938394]
 - 74 **Smith SM**, Haider RB, O'Connor H, McNamara D, O'Morain C. Practical treatment of *Helicobacter pylori*: a balanced view in changing times. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **26**: 819-825 [PMID: 24892516 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000000130]
 - 75 **Vallve M**, Vergara M, Gisbert JP, Calvet X. Single vs. double dose of a proton pump inhibitor in triple therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication: a meta-analysis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2002; **16**: 1149-1156 [PMID: 12030958]
 - 76 **Villoria A**, Garcia P, Calvet X, Gisbert JP, Vergara M. Meta-analysis: high-dose proton pump inhibitors vs. standard dose in triple therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2008; **28**: 868-877 [PMID: 18644011 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2008.03807.x]
 - 77 **Nagaraja V**, Eslick GD. Evidence-based assessment of proton-pump inhibitors in *Helicobacter pylori* eradication: a systematic review. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 14527-14536 [PMID: 25356018 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i40.14527]
 - 78 **Luther J**, Higgins PD, Schoenfeld PS, Moayyedi P, Vakil N, Chey WD. Empiric quadruple vs. triple therapy for primary treatment of *Helicobacter pylori* infection: Systematic review and meta-analysis

- of efficacy and tolerability. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 65-73 [PMID: 19755966 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2009.508]
- 79 **Liu KS**, Hung IF, Seto WK, Tong T, Hsu AS, Lam FY, But DY, Wong SY, Leung WK. Ten day sequential versus 10 day modified bismuth quadruple therapy as empirical firstline and secondline treatment for *Helicobacter pylori* in Chinese patients: an open label, randomised, crossover trial. *Gut* 2014; **63**: 1410-1415 [PMID: 24295850 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2013-306120]
 - 80 **Salazar CO**, Cardenas VM, Reddy RK, Dominguez DC, Snyder LK, Graham DY. Greater than 95% success with 14-day bismuth quadruple anti- *Helicobacter pylori* therapy: a pilot study in US Hispanics. *Helicobacter* 2012; **17**: 382-390 [PMID: 22967122 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2012.00962.x]
 - 81 **Sapmaz F**, Kalkan IH, Güllüer S, Atasoy P. Comparison of *Helicobacter pylori* eradication rates of standard 14-day quadruple treatment and novel modified 10-day, 12-day and 14-day sequential treatments. *Eur J Intern Med* 2014; **25**: 224-229 [PMID: 24268371 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejim.2013.11.006]
 - 82 **Uygun A**, Kadayifci A, Safali M, Ilgan S, Bageci S. The efficacy of bismuth containing quadruple therapy as a first-line treatment option for *Helicobacter pylori*. *J Dig Dis* 2007; **8**: 211-215 [PMID: 17970879 DOI: 10.1111/j.1751-2980.2007.00308.x]
 - 83 **Kadayifci A**, Uygun A, Polat Z, Kantarcioğlu M, Kılçılar G, Başer O, Özcan A, Emer O. Comparison of bismuth-containing quadruple and concomitant therapies as a first-line treatment option for *Helicobacter pylori*. *Turk J Gastroenterol* 2012; **23**: 8-13 [PMID: 22505373]
 - 84 **Zullo A**, Rinaldi V, Winn S, Meddi P, Lionetti R, Hassan C, Ripani C, Tomaselli G, Attili AF. A new highly effective short-term therapy schedule for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2000; **14**: 715-718 [PMID: 10848654]
 - 85 **Nasa M**, Choksey A, Phadke A, Sawant P. Sequential therapy versus standard triple-drug therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication: a randomized study. *Indian J Gastroenterol* 2013; **32**: 392-396 [PMID: 24158898 DOI: 10.1007/s12664-013-0357-7]
 - 86 **Gatta L**, Vakil N, Vaira D, Scarpignato C. Global eradication rates for *Helicobacter pylori* infection: systematic review and meta-analysis of sequential therapy. *BMJ* 2013; **347**: f4587 [PMID: 23926315 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.f4587]
 - 87 **Chung JW**, Ha M, Yun SC, Kim JH, Lee JJ, Kim YJ, Kim KO, Kwon KA, Park DK, Lee DH. Meta-analysis: Sequential therapy is superior to conventional therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* infection in Korea. *Korean J Gastroenterol* 2013; **62**: 267-271 [PMID: 24262591]
 - 88 **Murakami K**, Fujioka T, Okimoto T, Sato R, Kodama M, Nasu M. Drug combinations with amoxicillin reduce selection of clarithromycin resistance during *Helicobacter pylori* eradication therapy. *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 2002; **19**: 67-70 [PMID: 11814770]
 - 89 **Webber MA**, Piddock LJ. The importance of efflux pumps in bacterial antibiotic resistance. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2003; **51**: 9-11 [PMID: 12493781]
 - 90 **Maconi G**, Parente F, Russo A, Vago L, Imbesi V, Bianchi Porro G. Do some patients with *Helicobacter pylori* infection benefit from an extension to 2 weeks of a proton pump inhibitor-based triple eradication therapy? *Am J Gastroenterol* 2001; **96**: 359-366 [PMID: 11232676 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2001.03519.x]
 - 91 **Lee H**, Hong SN, Min BH, Lee JH, Rhee PL, Lee YC, Kim JJ. Comparison of efficacy and safety of levofloxacin-containing versus standard sequential therapy in eradication of *Helicobacter pylori* infection in Korea. *Dig Liver Dis* 2015; **47**: 114-118 [PMID: 25467826 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2014.10.014]
 - 92 **Lee JW**, Kim N, Kim JM, Nam RH, Kim JY, Lee JY, Lee DH, Jung HC. A comparison between 15-day sequential, 10-day sequential and proton pump inhibitor-based triple therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* infection in Korea. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2014; **49**: 917-924 [PMID: 24988873 DOI: 10.3109/00365521.2014.896409]
 - 93 **Zhou L**, Zhang J, Chen M, Hou X, Li Z, Song Z, He L, Lin S. A comparative study of sequential therapy and standard triple therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* infection: a randomized multicenter trial. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2014; **109**: 535-541 [PMID: 24642580 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2014.26]
 - 94 **Ben Chaabane N**, Al-Adhba HS. Ciprofloxacin-containing versus clarithromycin-containing sequential therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication: A randomized trial. *Indian J Gastroenterol* 2015; **34**: 68-72 [PMID: 25721770 DOI: 10.1007/s12664-015-0535-x]
 - 95 **Kang BK**, Park SM, Kim BW. [New therapeutic strategies against *Helicobacter pylori*]. *Korean J Gastroenterol* 2014; **63**: 146-150 [PMID: 24651587]
 - 96 **Gisbert JP**, Calvet X. Update on non-bismuth quadruple (concomitant) therapy for eradication of *Helicobacter pylori*. *Clin Exp Gastroenterol* 2012; **5**: 23-34 [PMID: 22457599 DOI: 10.2147/CEG.S25419]
 - 97 **Molina-Infante J**, Pazos-Pacheco C, Vinagre-Rodríguez G, Perez-Gallardo B, Dueñas-Sadornil C, Hernandez-Alonso M, Gonzalez-Garcia G, Mateos-Rodríguez JM, Fernandez-Bermejo M, Gisbert JP. Nonbismuth quadruple (concomitant) therapy: empirical and tailored efficacy versus standard triple therapy for clarithromycin-susceptible *Helicobacter pylori* and versus sequential therapy for clarithromycin-resistant strains. *Helicobacter* 2012; **17**: 269-276 [PMID: 22759326 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2012.00947.x]
 - 98 **Gisbert JP**, Calvet X. Review article: non-bismuth quadruple (concomitant) therapy for eradication of *Helicobacter pylori*. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **34**: 604-617 [PMID: 21745241 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2011.04770.x]
 - 99 **Essa AS**, Kramer JR, Graham DY, Treiber G. Meta-analysis: four-drug, three-antibiotic, non-bismuth-containing "concomitant therapy" versus triple therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication. *Helicobacter* 2009; **14**: 109-118 [PMID: 19298338 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2009.00671.x]
 - 100 **Lee HJ**, Kim JI, Lee JS, Jun EJ, Oh JH, Cheung DY, Chung WC, Kim BW, Kim SS. Concomitant therapy achieved the best eradication rate for *Helicobacter pylori* among various treatment strategies. *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 351-359 [PMID: 25574111 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i1.351]
 - 101 **Kim SY**, Park DK, Kwon KA, Kim KO, Kim YJ, Chung JW. [Ten day concomitant therapy is superior to ten day sequential therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication]. *Korean J Gastroenterol* 2014; **64**: 260-267 [PMID: 25420735]
 - 102 **Ang TL**, Fock KM, Song M, Ang D, Kwek AB, Ong J, Tan J, Teo EK, Dhamodaran S. Ten-day triple therapy versus sequential therapy versus concomitant therapy as first-line treatment for *Helicobacter pylori* infection. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **30**: 1134-1139 [PMID: 25639278 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.12892]
 - 103 **McNicholl AG**, Marin AC, Molina-Infante J, Castro M, Barrio J, Ducons J, Calvet X, de la Caba C, Montoro M, Bory F, Perez-Aisa A, Forné M, Gisbert JP. Randomised clinical trial comparing sequential and concomitant therapies for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication in routine clinical practice. *Gut* 2014; **63**: 244-249 [PMID: 23665990 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2013-304820]
 - 104 **Lim JH**, Lee DH, Choi C, Lee ST, Kim N, Jeong SH, Kim JW, Hwang JH, Park YS, Lee SH, Shin CM, Jo HJ, Jang ES, Song IS, Jung HC. Clinical outcomes of two-week sequential and concomitant therapies for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication: a randomized pilot study. *Helicobacter* 2013; **18**: 180-186 [PMID: 23305083 DOI: 10.1111/hel.12034]
 - 105 **De Francesco V**, Hassan C, Ridola L, Giorgio F, Ierardi E, Zullo A. Sequential, concomitant and hybrid first-line therapies for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication: a prospective randomized study. *J Med Microbiol* 2014; **63**: 748-752 [PMID: 24586031 DOI: 10.1099/jmm.0.072322-0]
 - 106 **Greenberg ER**, Anderson GL, Morgan DR, Torres J, Chey WD, Bravo LE, Dominguez RL, Ferreccio C, Herrero R, Lazcano-Ponce EC, Meza-Montenegro MM, Peña R, Peña EM, Salazar-Martínez E, Correa P, Martínez ME, Valdivieso M, Goodman GE, Crowley JJ, Baker LH. 14-day triple, 5-day concomitant, and 10-day sequential therapies for *Helicobacter pylori* infection in seven Latin American sites: a randomised trial. *Lancet* 2011; **378**: 507-514 [PMID: 21777974 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(11)60825-8]
 - 107 **Zullo A**, Scaccianoce G, De Francesco V, Ruggiero V, D'Ambrosio P, Castorani L, Bonfrate L, Vannella L, Hassan C, Portincasa

- P. Concomitant, sequential, and hybrid therapy for *H. pylori* eradication: a pilot study. *Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol* 2013; **37**: 647-650 [PMID: 23747131 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinre.2013.04.003]
- 108 **Graham DY**, Lee YC, Wu MS. Rational *Helicobacter pylori* therapy: evidence-based medicine rather than medicine-based evidence. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **12**: 177-186.e3; Discussion e12-13 [PMID: 23751282 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2013.05.028]
 - 109 **Lee JY**, Kim N. [Future trends of *Helicobacter pylori* eradication therapy in Korea]. *Korean J Gastroenterol* 2014; **63**: 158-170 [PMID: 24651589]
 - 110 **Schito AM**, Schito GC. Levofloxacin, a broad spectrum anti-infective: from *Streptococcus pneumoniae* to *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. *J Chemother* 2004; **16** Suppl 2: 3-7 [PMID: 15255554]
 - 111 **Just PM**. Overview of the fluoroquinolone antibiotics. *Pharmacotherapy* 1993; **13**: 4S-17S [PMID: 8386356]
 - 112 **O'Connor A**, Gisbert JP, McNamara D, O'Morain C. Treatment of *Helicobacter pylori* infection 2011. *Helicobacter* 2011; **16** Suppl 1: 53-58 [PMID: 21896086 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2011.00881.x]
 - 113 **Saad RJ**, Schoenfeld P, Kim HM, Chey WD. Levofloxacin-based triple therapy versus bismuth-based quadruple therapy for persistent *Helicobacter pylori* infection: a meta-analysis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 488-496 [PMID: 16542284 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.1998.455.tx]
 - 114 **Molina-Infante J**, Perez-Gallardo B, Fernandez-Bermejo M, Hernandez-Alonso M, Vinagre G, Dueñas C, Mateos-Rodriguez JM, Gonzalez-Garcia G, Abadia EG, Gisbert JP. Clinical trial: clarithromycin vs. levofloxacin in first-line triple and sequential regimens for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2010; **31**: 1077-1084 [PMID: 20180787 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2010.04274.x]
 - 115 **Ye CL**, Liao GP, He S, Pan YN, Kang YB, Zhang ZY. Levofloxacin and proton pump inhibitor-based triple therapy versus standard triple first-line therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication. *Pharmacoepidemiol Drug Saf* 2014; **23**: 443-455 [PMID: 24677603 DOI: 10.1002/pds.3581]
 - 116 **Peedikayil MC**, Alsohaibani FI, Alkhenizan AH. Levofloxacin-based first-line therapy versus standard first-line therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication: meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e85620 [PMID: 24465624 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0085620]
 - 117 **Chen MC**, Lei WY, Lin JS, Yi CH, Wu DC, Hu CT. Levofloxacin-amoxicillin/clavulanate-rabeprazole versus a standard seven-day triple therapy for eradication of *Helicobacter pylori* infection. *Biomed Res Int* 2014; **2014**: 158520 [PMID: 24995271 DOI: 10.1155/2014/158520]
 - 118 **Xiao SP**, Gu M, Zhang GX. Is levofloxacin-based triple therapy an alternative for first-line eradication of *Helicobacter pylori*? A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2014; **49**: 528-538 [PMID: 24611790 DOI: 10.3109/00365521.2014.887765]
 - 119 **Graham DY**, Shiotani A. Which Therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* Infection? *Gastroenterology* 2012; **143**: 10-12 [PMID: 22613622 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2012.05.012]
 - 120 **Shiota S**, Reddy R, Alsarraj A, El-Serag HB, Graham DY. Antibiotic Resistance of *Helicobacter pylori* Among Male United States Veterans. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **13**: 1616-1624 [PMID: 25681693 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2015.02.005]
 - 121 **Ontsira Ngoyi EN**, Atipo Ibara BI, Moyen R, Ahoui Apendi PC, Ibara JR, Obengui O, Ossibi Ibara RB, Nguimbi E, Niama RF, Ouamba JM, Yala F, Abena AA, Vadelu J, Goh KL, Menard A, Benejat L, Sifre E, Lehours P, Megraud F. Molecular Detection of *Helicobacter pylori* and its Antimicrobial Resistance in Brazzaville, Congo. *Helicobacter* 2015; **20**: 316-320 [PMID: 25585658 DOI: 10.1111/hel.12204]
 - 122 **Liao J**, Zheng Q, Liang X, Zhang W, Sun Q, Liu W, Xiao S, Graham DY, Lu H. Effect of fluoroquinolone resistance on 14-day levofloxacin triple and triple plus bismuth quadruple therapy. *Helicobacter* 2013; **18**: 373-377 [PMID: 23581720 DOI: 10.1111/hel.12052]
 - 123 **Kim JY**, Kim NY, Kim SJ, Baik GH, Kim GH, Kim JM, Nam RH, Kim HB, Lee DH, Jung HC, Song IS. [Regional difference of antibiotic resistance of *Helicobacter pylori* strains in Korea]. *Korean J Gastroenterol* 2011; **57**: 221-229 [PMID: 21519175 DOI: 10.4166/2011.57.4.221]
 - 124 **Furuta T**, Sugimoto M, Kodaira C, Nishino M, Yamade M, Uotani T, Sahara S, Ichikawa H, Yamada T, Osawa S, Sugimoto K, Watanabe H, Umemura K. Sitafloxacin-based third-line rescue regimens for *Helicobacter pylori* infection in Japan. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **29**: 487-493 [PMID: 24224808 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.12442]
 - 125 **Akcam M**, Koca T, Salman H, Karahan N. The effects of probiotics on treatment of *Helicobacter pylori* eradication in children. *Saudi Med J* 2015; **36**: 286-290 [PMID: 25737169 DOI: 10.15537/smj.2015.3.10124]
 - 126 **Navarro-Rodriguez T**, Silva FM, Barbuti RC, Mattar R, Moraes-Filho JP, de Oliveira MN, Bogsan CS, Chinzon D, Eisig JN. Association of a probiotic to a *Helicobacter pylori* eradication regimen does not increase efficacy or decreases the adverse effects of the treatment: a prospective, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2013; **13**: 56 [PMID: 23530767 DOI: 10.1186/1471-230X-13-56]
 - 127 **Lv Z**, Wang B, Zhou X, Wang F, Xie Y, Zheng H, Lv N. Efficacy and safety of probiotics as adjuvant agents for *Helicobacter pylori* infection: A meta-analysis. *Exp Ther Med* 2015; **9**: 707-716 [PMID: 25667617 DOI: 10.3892/etm.2015.2174]
 - 128 **Zhu R**, Chen K, Zheng YY, Zhang HW, Wang JS, Xia YJ, Dai WQ, Wang F, Shen M, Cheng P, Zhang Y, Wang CF, Yang J, Li JJ, Lu J, Zhou YQ, Guo CY. Meta-analysis of the efficacy of probiotics in *Helicobacter pylori* eradication therapy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 18013-18021 [PMID: 25548501 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i47.18013]
 - 129 **Li S**, Huang XL, Sui JZ, Chen SY, Xie YT, Deng Y, Wang J, Xie L, Li TJ, He Y, Peng QL, Qin X, Zeng ZY. Meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials on the efficacy of probiotics in *Helicobacter pylori* eradication therapy in children. *Eur J Pediatr* 2014; **173**: 153-161 [PMID: 24323343 DOI: 10.1007/s00431-013-2220-3]
 - 130 **Song MJ**, Park DI, Park JH, Kim HJ, Cho YK, Sohn CI, Jeon WK, Kim BI. The effect of probiotics and mucoprotective agents on PPI-based triple therapy for eradication of *Helicobacter pylori*. *Helicobacter* 2010; **15**: 206-213 [PMID: 20557362 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2010.00751.x]
 - 131 **Szajewska H**, Horvath A, Piwowarczyk A. Meta-analysis: the effects of *Saccharomyces boulardii* supplementation on *Helicobacter pylori* eradication rates and side effects during treatment. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2010; **32**: 1069-1079 [PMID: 21039671 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2010.04457.x]
 - 132 **Wang ZH**, Gao QY, Fang JY. Meta-analysis of the efficacy and safety of *Lactobacillus*-containing and *Bifidobacterium*-containing probiotic compound preparation in *Helicobacter pylori* eradication therapy. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2013; **47**: 25-32 [PMID: 23090045 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e318266f6cf]
 - 133 **Wang YH**, Huang Y. Effect of *Lactobacillus acidophilus* and *Bifidobacterium bifidum* supplementation to standard triple therapy on *Helicobacter pylori* eradication and dynamic changes in intestinal flora. *World J Microbiol Biotechnol* 2014; **30**: 847-853 [PMID: 24233772 DOI: 10.1007/s11274-013-1490-2]
 - 134 **Francavilla R**, Polimeno L, Demichina A, Maurogiovanni G, Principi B, Scaccianoce G, Ierardi E, Russo F, Riezzo G, Di Leo A, Cavallo L, Francavilla A, Versalovic J. *Lactobacillus reuteri* strain combination in *Helicobacter pylori* infection: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2014; **48**: 407-413 [PMID: 24296423 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0000000000000007]
 - 135 **Hwang TJ**, Kim N, Kim HB, Lee BH, Nam RH, Park JH, Lee MK, Park YS, Lee DH, Jung HC, Song IS. Change in antibiotic resistance of *Helicobacter pylori* strains and the effect of A2143G point mutation of 23S rRNA on the eradication of *H. pylori* in a single center of Korea. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2010; **44**: 536-543 [PMID: 20179610 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e3181d04592]
 - 136 **Gerrits MM**, van Vliet AH, Kuipers EJ, Kusters JG. *Helicobacter pylori* and antimicrobial resistance: molecular mechanisms and clinical implications. *Lancet Infect Dis* 2006; **6**: 699-709 [PMID: 17067919 DOI: 10.1016/S1473-3099(06)70627-2]

- 137 **Woo HY**, Park DI, Park H, Kim MK, Kim DH, Kim IS, Kim YJ. Dual-priming oligonucleotide-based multiplex PCR for the detection of *Helicobacter pylori* and determination of clarithromycin resistance with gastric biopsy specimens. *Helicobacter* 2009; **14**: 22-28 [PMID: 19191892 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2009.00654.x]
- 138 **Lee HJ**, Kim JI, Cheung DY, Kim TH, Jun EJ, Oh JH, Chung WC, Kim BW, Kim SS, Park SH, Kim JK. Eradication of *Helicobacter pylori* according to 23S ribosomal RNA point mutations associated with clarithromycin resistance. *J Infect Dis* 2013; **208**: 1123-1130 [PMID: 23801607 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jit287]
- 139 **Kuo CH**, Lu CY, Shih HY, Liu CJ, Wu MC, Hu HM, Hsu WH, Yu FJ, Wu DC, Kuo FC. CYP2C19 polymorphism influences *Helicobacter pylori* eradication. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 16029-16036 [PMID: 25473155 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i43.16029]
- 140 **Ishizaki T**, Horai Y. Review article: cytochrome P450 and the metabolism of proton pump inhibitors--emphasis on rabeprazole. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 1999; **13** Suppl 3: 27-36 [PMID: 10491726]
- 141 **Chong E**, Ensom MH. Pharmacogenetics of the proton pump inhibitors: a systematic review. *Pharmacotherapy* 2003; **23**: 460-471 [PMID: 12680476]
- 142 **Ishizaki T**, Sohn DR, Kobayashi K, Chiba K, Lee KH, Shin SG, Andersson T, Regårdh CG, Lou YC, Zhang Y. Interethnic differences in omeprazole metabolism in the two S-mephenytoin hydroxylation phenotypes studied in Caucasians and Orientals. *Ther Drug Monit* 1994; **16**: 214-215 [PMID: 8009572]
- 143 **Padol S**, Yuan Y, Thabane M, Padol IT, Hunt RH. The effect of CYP2C19 polymorphisms on *H. pylori* eradication rate in dual and triple first-line PPI therapies: a meta-analysis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 1467-1475 [PMID: 16863547 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2006.00717.x]
- 144 **Zhao F**, Wang J, Yang Y, Wang X, Shi R, Xu Z, Huang Z, Zhang G. Effect of CYP2C19 genetic polymorphisms on the efficacy of proton pump inhibitor-based triple therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication: a meta-analysis. *Helicobacter* 2008; **13**: 532-541 [PMID: 19166419 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2008.00643.x]
- 145 **Tang HL**, Li Y, Hu YF, Xie HG, Zhai SD. Effects of CYP2C19 loss-of-function variants on the eradication of *H. pylori* infection in patients treated with proton pump inhibitor-based triple therapy regimens: a meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e62162 [PMID: 23646118 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0062162]
- 146 **Sugimoto M**, Shirai N, Nishino M, Kodaira C, Uotani T, Sahara S, Ichikawa H, Kagami T, Sugimoto K, Furuta T. Comparison of acid inhibition with standard dosages of proton pump inhibitors in relation to CYP2C19 genotype in Japanese. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol* 2014; **70**: 1073-1078 [PMID: 24996380 DOI: 10.1007/s00228-014-1713-y]
- 147 **Sahara S**, Sugimoto M, Uotani T, Ichikawa H, Yamade M, Iwaizumi M, Yamada T, Osawa S, Sugimoto K, Umemura K, Miyajima H, Furuta T. Twice-daily dosing of esomeprazole effectively inhibits acid secretion in CYP2C19 rapid metabolisers compared with twice-daily omeprazole, rabeprazole or lansoprazole. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2013; **38**: 1129-1137 [PMID: 24099474 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12492]
- 148 **Sugimoto M**, Uotani T, Sahara S, Ichikawa H, Yamade M, Sugimoto K, Furuta T. Efficacy of tailored *Helicobacter pylori* eradication treatment based on clarithromycin susceptibility and maintenance of acid secretion. *Helicobacter* 2014; **19**: 312-318 [PMID: 24690010 DOI: 10.1111/hel.12128]
- 149 **Fiorini G**, Zullo A, Gatta L, Castelli V, Ricci C, Cassol F, Vaira D. Newer agents for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication. *Clin Exp Gastroenterol* 2012; **5**: 109-112 [PMID: 22767998 DOI: 10.2147/CEG.S25422]
- 150 **Makobongo MO**, Gilbreath JJ, Merrell DS. Nontraditional therapies to treat *Helicobacter pylori* infection. *J Microbiol* 2014; **52**: 259-272 [PMID: 24682990 DOI: 10.1007/s12275-014-3603-5]
- 151 **Leszczyńska K**, Namiot A, Fein DE, Wen Q, Namiot Z, Savage PB, Diamond S, Janney PA, Bucki R. Bactericidal activities of the cationic steroid CSA-13 and the cathelicidin peptide LL-37 against *Helicobacter pylori* in simulated gastric juice. *BMC Microbiol* 2009; **9**: 187 [PMID: 19728885 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2180-9-187]
- 152 **Zhang L**, Yu J, Wong CC, Ling TK, Li ZJ, Chan KM, Ren SX, Shen J, Chan RL, Lee CC, Li MS, Cheng AS, To KF, Gallo RL, Sung JJ, Wu WK, Cho CH. Cathelicidin protects against *Helicobacter pylori* colonization and the associated gastritis in mice. *Gene Ther* 2013; **20**: 751-760 [PMID: 23254369 DOI: 10.1038/gt.2012.92]
- 153 **Uehara N**, Yagihashi A, Kondoh K, Tsuji N, Fujita T, Hamada H, Watanabe N. Human beta-defensin-2 induction in *Helicobacter pylori*-infected gastric mucosal tissues: antimicrobial effect of overexpression. *J Med Microbiol* 2003; **52**: 41-45 [PMID: 12488564]
- 154 **Bauer B**, Wex T, Kuester D, Meyer T, Malfetherthner P. Differential expression of human beta defensin 2 and 3 in gastric mucosa of *Helicobacter pylori*-infected individuals. *Helicobacter* 2013; **18**: 6-12 [PMID: 23067102 DOI: 10.1111/hel.12000]
- 155 **Makobongo MO**, Gancz H, Carpenter BM, McDaniel DP, Merrell DS. The oligo-acyl lysyl antimicrobial peptide C₁₂K-2β₁₂ exhibits a dual mechanism of action and demonstrates strong in vivo efficacy against *Helicobacter pylori*. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2012; **56**: 378-390 [PMID: 22064541 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00689-11]
- 156 **Makobongo MO**, Einck L, Peek RM, Merrell DS. In vitro characterization of the anti-bacterial activity of SQ109 against *Helicobacter pylori*. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e68917 [PMID: 23935905 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0068917]
- 157 **Geng B**, Basarab G, Comita-Prevoir J, Gowravaram M, Hill P, Kiely A, Loch J, MacPherson L, Morningstar M, Mullen G, Osimbboni E, Satz A, Eyerhmann C, Lundqvist T. Potent and selective inhibitors of *Helicobacter pylori* glutamate racemase (MurI): pyridodiazepine amines. *Bioorg Med Chem Lett* 2009; **19**: 930-936 [PMID: 19097892 DOI: 10.1016/j.bmcl.2008.11.113]
- 158 **Nishimori I**, Minakuchi T, Kohsaki T, Onishi S, Takeuchi H, Vullo D, Scozzafava A, Supuran CT. Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors: the beta-carbonic anhydrase from *Helicobacter pylori* is a new target for sulfonamide and sulfamate inhibitors. *Bioorg Med Chem Lett* 2007; **17**: 3585-3594 [PMID: 17482815 DOI: 10.1016/j.bmcl.2007.04.063]
- 159 **Haniadka R**, Saldanha E, Sunita V, Palatty PL, Fayad R, Baliga MS. A review of the gastroprotective effects of ginger (*Zingiber officinale* Roscoe). *Food Funct* 2013; **4**: 845-855 [PMID: 23612703 DOI: 10.1039/c3fo30337c]
- 160 **Lee IO**, Lee KH, Pyo JH, Kim JH, Choi YJ, Lee YC. Anti-inflammatory effect of capsaicin in *Helicobacter pylori*-infected gastric epithelial cells. *Helicobacter* 2007; **12**: 510-517 [PMID: 17760719 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2007.00521.x]
- 161 **Yanaka A**, Fahey JW, Fukumoto A, Nakayama M, Inoue S, Zhang S, Tauchi M, Suzuki H, Hyodo I, Yamamoto M. Dietary sulforaphane-rich broccoli sprouts reduce colonization and attenuate gastritis in *Helicobacter pylori*-infected mice and humans. *Cancer Prev Res (Phila)* 2009; **2**: 353-360 [PMID: 19349290 DOI: 10.1158/1940-6207.CAPR-08-0192]
- 162 **Park S**, Yeo M, Jin JH, Lee KM, Kim SS, Choi SY, Hahm KB. Inhibitory activities and attenuated expressions of 5-LOX with red ginseng in *Helicobacter pylori*-infected gastric epithelial cells. *Dig Dis Sci* 2007; **52**: 973-982 [PMID: 17333352 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-006-9440-6]
- 163 **Lee KM**, Yeo M, Choue JS, Jin JH, Park SJ, Cheong JY, Lee KJ, Kim JH, Hahm KB. Protective mechanism of epigallocatechin-3-gallate against *Helicobacter pylori*-induced gastric epithelial cytotoxicity via the blockage of TLR-4 signaling. *Helicobacter* 2004; **9**: 632-642 [PMID: 15610077 DOI: 10.1111/j.1083-4389.2004.00281.x]
- 164 **Mahady GB**, Pendland SL, Chadwick LR. Resveratrol and red wine extracts inhibit the growth of CagA+ strains of *Helicobacter pylori* in vitro. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: 1440-1441 [PMID: 12818294 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2003.07513.x]
- 165 **Sezikli M**, Cetinkaya ZA, Sezikli H, Güzelbulut F, Tiftikçi A, Ince AT, Gökden Y, Yaşar B, Atalay S, Kurdaş OO. Oxidative stress in *Helicobacter pylori* infection: does supplementation with vitamins C and E increase the eradication rate? *Helicobacter* 2009; **14**: 280-285 [PMID: 19674132 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2009.00686.x]
- 166 **Obonyo M**, Zhang L, Thamphiwatana S, Pornpattananangkul D, Fu V, Zhang L. Antibacterial activities of liposomal linolenic acids against antibiotic-resistant *Helicobacter pylori*. *Mol Pharm* 2012; **9**:

- 2677-2685 [PMID: 22827534 DOI: 10.1021/mp300243w]
- 167 **Moss SF**, Moise L, Lee DS, Kim W, Zhang S, Lee J, Rogers AB, Martin W, De Groot AS. HelicoVax: epitope-based therapeutic *Helicobacter pylori* vaccination in a mouse model. *Vaccine* 2011; **29**: 2085-2091 [PMID: 21236233 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2010.12.130]
- 168 **Singh DY**, Prasad NK. Double liposomes mediated dual drug targeting for treatment of *Helicobacter pylori* infections. *Pharmazie* 2011; **66**: 368-373 [PMID: 21699071]
- 169 **Ramteke S**, Jain NK. Clarithromycin- and omeprazole-containing gliadin nanoparticles for the treatment of *Helicobacter pylori*. *J Drug Target* 2008; **16**: 65-72 [PMID: 18172822 DOI: 10.1080/10611860701733278]
- 170 **Wang J**, Tauchi Y, Deguchi Y, Morimoto K, Tabata Y, Ikada Y. Positively charged gelatin microspheres as gastric mucoadhesive drug delivery system for eradication of *H. pylori*. *Drug Deliv* 2000; **7**: 237-243 [PMID: 11195431 DOI: 10.1080/107175400455173]
- 171 **Patel JK**, Patel MM. Stomach specific anti-helicobacter pylori therapy: preparation and evaluation of amoxicillin-loaded chitosan mucoadhesive microspheres. *Curr Drug Deliv* 2007; **4**: 41-50 [PMID: 17269916]
- 172 **Luo D**, Guo J, Wang F, Sun J, Li G, Cheng X, Chang M, Yan X. Preparation and evaluation of anti-*Helicobacter pylori* efficacy of chitosan nanoparticles in vitro and in vivo. *J Biomater Sci Polym Ed* 2009; **20**: 1587-1596 [PMID: 19619399 DOI: 10.1163/092050609X12464345137685]
- 173 **Lin YH**, Tsai SC, Lai CH, Lee CH, He ZS, Tseng GC. Genipin-cross-linked fucose-chitosan/heparin nanoparticles for the eradication of *Helicobacter pylori*. *Biomaterials* 2013; **34**: 4466-4479 [PMID: 23499480 DOI: 10.1016/j.biomaterials.2013.02.028]
- 174 **Hao S**, Wang Y, Wang B, Zou Q, Zeng H, Chen X, Liu X, Liu J, Yu S. A novel gastroretentive porous microparticle for anti-*Helicobacter pylori* therapy: preparation, in vitro and in vivo evaluation. *Int J Pharm* 2014; **463**: 10-21 [PMID: 24406672 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijpharm.2013.12.052]
- 175 **Amin M**, Hameed S, Ali A, Anwar F, Shahid SA, Shakir I, Yaqoob A, Hasan S, Khan SA. Green Synthesis of Silver Nanoparticles: Structural Features and In Vivo and In Vitro Therapeutic Effects against *Helicobacter pylori* Induced Gastritis. *Bioinorg Chem Appl* 2014; **2014**: 135824 [PMID: 25214825 DOI: 10.1155/2014/135824]
- 176 **Lin YH**, Lin JH, Chou SC, Chang SJ, Chung CC, Chen YS, Chang CH. Berberine-loaded targeted nanoparticles as specific *Helicobacter pylori* eradication therapy: in vitro and in vivo study. *Nanomedicine (Lond)* 2015; **10**: 57-71 [PMID: 25177920 DOI: 10.2217/nnm.14.76]
- 177 **Na HS**, Hong SJ, Yoon HJ, Maeng JH, Ko BM, Jung IS, Ryu CB, Kim JO, Cho JY, Lee JS, Lee MS, Shim CS, Kim BS. [Eradication rate of first-line and second-line therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* infection, and reinfection rate after successful eradication]. *Korean J Gastroenterol* 2007; **50**: 170-175 [PMID: 17885282]
- 178 **Chung JW**, Jung YK, Kim YJ, Kwon KA, Kim JH, Lee JJ, Lee SM, Hahm KB, Lee SM, Jeong JY, Yun SC. Ten-day sequential versus triple therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication: a prospective, open-label, randomized trial. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **27**: 1675-1680 [PMID: 22849546 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2012.07249.x]
- 179 **Asaka M**, Sugiyama T, Kato M, Satoh K, Kuwayama H, Fukuda Y, Fujioka T, Takemoto T, Kimura K, Shimoyama T, Shimizu K, Kobayashi S. A multicenter, double-blind study on triple therapy with lansoprazole, amoxicillin and clarithromycin for eradication of *Helicobacter pylori* in Japanese peptic ulcer patients. *Helicobacter* 2001; **6**: 254-261 [PMID: 11683930]
- 180 **Fujioka T**, Aoyama N, Sakai K, Miwa Y, Kudo M, Kawashima J, Matsubara Y, Miwa J, Yakabi K. A large-scale nationwide multicenter prospective observational study of triple therapy using rabeprazole, amoxicillin, and clarithromycin for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication in Japan. *J Gastroenterol* 2012; **47**: 276-283 [PMID: 22065160 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-011-0487-6]
- 181 **Nishida T**, Tsujii M, Tanimura H, Tsutsui S, Tsuji S, Takeda A, Inoue A, Fukui H, Yoshio T, Kishida O, Ogawa H, Oshita M, Kobayashi I, Zushi S, Ichiba M, Uenoyama N, Yasunaga Y, Ishihara R, Yura M, Komori M, Egawa S, Iijima H, Takehara T. Comparative study of esomeprazole and lansoprazole in triple therapy for eradication of *Helicobacter pylori* in Japan. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 4362-4369 [PMID: 24764674 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i15.4362]
- 182 **Sheu BS**, Lee SC, Yang HB, Kuo AW, Wang YL, Shiesh SC, Wu JJ, Lin XZ. Selection of lower cutoff point of [13C]urea breath test is helpful to monitor *H. pylori* eradication after proton pump inhibitor-based triple therapy. *Dig Dis Sci* 2000; **45**: 1330-1336 [PMID: 10961711]
- 183 **Ozçay F**, Koçak N, Temizel IN, Demir H, Ozen H, Yüce A, Gürakan F. *Helicobacter pylori* infection in Turkish children: comparison of diagnostic tests, evaluation of eradication rate, and changes in symptoms after eradication. *Helicobacter* 2004; **9**: 242-248 [PMID: 15165260 DOI: 10.1111/j.1083-4389.2004.00230.x]
- 184 **Kutluk G**, Tutar E, Bayrak A, Volkan B, Akyon Y, Celikel C, Ertem D. Sequential therapy versus standard triple therapy for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication in children: any advantage in clarithromycin-resistant strains? *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **26**: 1202-1208 [PMID: 25171023 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000000190]
- 185 **Catalano F**, Branciforte G, Catanzaro R, Bentivegna C, Cipolla R, Nuciforo G, Brogna A. Comparative treatment of *Helicobacter pylori*-positive duodenal ulcer using pantoprazole at low and high doses versus omeprazole in triple therapy. *Helicobacter* 1999; **4**: 178-184 [PMID: 10469192]
- 186 **Paoluzzi OA**, Visconti E, Andrei F, Tosti C, Lionetti R, Grasso E, Ranaldi R, Stroppa I, Pallone F. Ten and eight-day sequential therapy in comparison to standard triple therapy for eradicating *Helicobacter pylori* infection: a randomized controlled study on efficacy and tolerability. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2010; **44**: 261-266 [PMID: 20195162 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e3181acebef]
- 187 **Pontone S**, Standoli M, Angelini R, Pontone P. Efficacy of *H. pylori* eradication with a sequential regimen followed by rescue therapy in clinical practice. *Dig Liver Dis* 2010; **42**: 541-543 [PMID: 20061196 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2009.12.007]
- 188 **Kongchayanun C**, Vilaichone RK, Pornthisam B, Amornsawadwattana S, Mahachai V. Pilot studies to identify the optimum duration of concomitant *Helicobacter pylori* eradication therapy in Thailand. *Helicobacter* 2012; **17**: 282-285 [PMID: 22759328 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2012.00953.x]
- 189 **Choi KH**, Chung WC, Lee KM, Paik CN, Kim EJ, Kang BK, Oak JH, Jung SH. Efficacy of levofloxacin and rifaximin based quadruple therapy in *Helicobacter pylori* associated gastroduodenal disease: a double-blind, randomized controlled trial. *J Korean Med Sci* 2011; **26**: 785-790 [PMID: 21655065 DOI: 10.3346/jkms.2011.26.6.785]
- 190 **Liou JM**, Lin JT, Chang CY, Chen MJ, Cheng TY, Lee YC, Chen CC, Sheng WH, Wang HP, Wu MS. Levofloxacin-based and clarithromycin-based triple therapies as first-line and second-line treatments for *Helicobacter pylori* infection: a randomised comparative trial with crossover design. *Gut* 2010; **59**: 572-578 [PMID: 20427390 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2009.198309]

P- Reviewer: Castillo A, Sharara A S- Editor: Ji FF
L- Editor: A E- Editor: Li D



Autoimmune pancreatitis and cholangitis

Niraj Jani, James Buxbaum

Niraj Jani, James Buxbaum, Division of Gastrointestinal and Liver Diseases, Keck School of Medicine, University of Southern California, Los Angeles, CA 90033-1370, United States

Author contributions: Jani N and Buxbaum J contributed equally to this work; they performed a comprehensive chronological review of this topic, prepared the figures, and wrote the paper.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: James Buxbaum, MD, Division of Gastrointestinal and Liver Diseases, Keck School of Medicine, University of Southern California, D and T Building Room B4H100, 1983 Marengo Street, Los Angeles, CA 90033-1370, United States. jbuxbaum@usc.edu
Telephone: +1-323-4095371
Fax: +1-323-4418352

Received: April 28, 2015

Peer-review started: May 6, 2015

First decision: June 2, 2015

Revised: June 22, 2015

Accepted: August 25, 2015

Article in press: August 31, 2015

Published online: November 6, 2015

Abstract

Autoimmune pancreatitis (AIP) is part of a systemic fibrosclerotic process characterized by lymphoplasmacytic infiltrate with immunoglobulin G subtype-4 (IgG4) positive cells. It characteristically presents with biliary obstruction due to mass-like swelling of the pancreas. Frequently AIP is accompanied by extra-pancreatic

manifestations including retroperitoneal fibrosis, thyroid disease, and salivary gland involvement. Auto-antibodies, hypergammaglobulemia, and prompt resolution of pancreatic and extrapancreatic findings with steroids signify its autoimmune nature. Refractory cases are responsive to immunomodulators and rituximab. Involvement of the biliary tree, termed IgG4 associated cholangiopathy, mimics primary sclerosing cholangitis and is challenging to manage. High IgG4 levels and swelling of the pancreas with a diminutive pancreatic duct are suggestive of autoimmune pancreatitis. Given similarities in presentation but radical differences in management and outcome, differentiation from pancreatic malignancy is of paramount importance. There is controversy regarding the optimal diagnostic criterion and steroid trials to make the diagnosis. Additionally, the retroperitoneal location of the pancreas and requirement for histologic sampling, makes tissue acquisition challenging. Recently, a second type of autoimmune pancreatitis has been recognized with similar clinical presentation and steroid response though different histology, serologic, and extrapancreatic findings.

Key words: Immunoglobulin G; Pancreatitis, chronic; Pancreatitis; Pancreatitis, sclerosing cholangitis, and sicca complex; Sclerosing cholangitis; Retroperitoneal fibrosis

© The Author(s) 2015. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Autoimmune pancreatitis is a component of a systemic immunoglobulin G subtype-4 mediated disease which also impacts the bile duct, salivary glands, kidney, and numerous other sites. It presents with jaundice and pancreas mass but it responds promptly to steroids and immunomodulators. A careful diagnostic approach is mandatory as autoimmune pancreatitis and its biliary manifestations closely resemble pancreas cancer and primary sclerosing cholangitis, diseases which have a more ominous course.

Jani N, Buxbaum J. Autoimmune pancreatitis and cholangitis.

World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther 2015; 6(4): 199-206
Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i4/199.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i4.199>

BACKGROUND AND CLINICAL PRESENTATION

While autoimmune pancreatitis (AIP) has been the subject of intense recent interest, its description has actually been unfolding over the past half century. In 1961, Sarles *et al*^[1] reported a series of patients with chronic inflammatory pancreas sclerosis. In the 1970's and 1980's astute clinicians correlated its association with salivary gland and bile duct dysfunction and it was theorized to represent a systemic immunologic dry gland syndrome^[2-5]. It came to be known by a number of different monikers including sclerosing pancreatitis, primary sclerosing cholangitis with pancreatitis, and duct narrowing chronic pancreatitis. Kawaguchi *et al*^[6] used gross resection specimens to report the characteristic histology of autoimmune pancreatitis. They described a dense lymphocytic infiltrate rich in antibody producing plasma cells (lymphoplasmacytic infiltrate) which surrounded and compressed the pancreatic ducts. Additionally, they observed storiform fibrosis and obliterative phlebitis (but sparing of arterioles) due to the lymphocytic infiltrate^[6,7].

Yoshida *et al*^[8] coined the term autoimmune pancreatitis in 1995 when he noticed its clinicopathologic similarities to autoimmune hepatitis. He treated a patient who had undergone exploratory laparotomy and diagnosed (though not confirmed with tissue) with unresectable pancreatic cancer. The patient had waxing and waning jaundice and pancreatic swelling on computed tomography imaging. Yoshida observed markedly elevated immunoglobulin G, antinuclear, anti-thyroglobulin, and anti-microsomal antibodies. He treated the patient with corticosteroids and the swelling, biochemical, and serologic abnormalities all remitted.

Multiple series have further characterized the clinical presentation. Typically, it mimics chronic pancreatitis or pancreatic cancer though acute pancreatitis occurs in 7%-25% of cases^[9-11]. Hypergammaglobulinemia and positive serum autoantibodies are seen in three quarter of patients with antinuclear antibody being most frequently elevated. Extra-pancreatic manifestations occur in 50% of cases. Radiographic, serologic, and extrapancreatic manifestations help to further confirm the diagnosis.

IMAGING FINDINGS

In AIP the pancreas exhibits diffuse gland enlargement with loss of clefts and a peripheral rim of altered enhancement (the halo sign) on cross sectional imaging^[12,13]. In 20%-30% of patients, there is mass-like enlargement of the head with tail atrophy. Peripancreatic

lymphadenopathy is seen in 25%. Endoscopic and magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography reveals an irregular, diminutive pancreatic duct^[14,15]. Endoscopic ultrasound demonstrates a diffuse altered (hypoechoic echotexture) gland enlargement (Figure 1). It typically lacks the hyperechoic foci and strands seen in chronic pancreatitis. Cross sectional imaging is also useful in detecting extrapancreatic manifestations (see below) and assess response to therapy^[14].

IMMUNOGLOBULIN G SUBTYPE-4

Immunoglobulin G subtype-4 (IgG4) is elevated in number of autoimmune diseases including pemphigus vulgaris and membranous nephropathy. In a breakthrough paper in 2001 Hamano *et al*^[16] demonstrated that it was markedly elevated in 20 patients with classic findings of autoimmune pancreatitis but not in normal patients. While it was modestly elevated in a number of pancreato-biliary processes such as chronic pancreatitis and primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC), IgG4 was much more specific for AIP.

However, subsequent series have revealed that when > 140 mg/dL is defined as abnormal, the specificity of IgG4 is only 93%^[9]. As AIP has a low prevalence, even in referral centers, most abnormal levels in patients with nonspecific gastrointestinal symptoms are false positives. Additionally, approximately 10% of pancreas cancer patients and 9% of patients with PSC have elevated levels of IgG4^[9,17]. Increasing the cutoff to 280 mg/dL decreases sensitivity but improves specificity to 99%. Similarly, IgG4+ plasma cells may be seen in the periductal and stromal tissue. A small number of IgG4+ cells may be seen in chronic pancreatitis and pancreas cancer whereas dense infiltration with IgG4+ cells is specific for AIP^[18]. Additionally, IgG4 staining in cancer does not exhibit the periductal pattern seen in autoimmune pancreatitis.

EXTRAPANCREATIC MANIFESTATIONS

Concomitant salivary gland and biliary involvement were reported even in the initial reports of autoimmune pancreatitis. Shortly after the acceptance of AIP as a true autoimmune entity a number of authors demonstrated that it was associated with a form of retroperitoneal fibrosis which promptly resolved with steroid therapy^[19,20]. AIP patients also may present with concomitant thyroiditis, fibrotic pseudotumor of the orbit, and nodules of the renal cortex and collecting system, all of which demonstrate an IgG4 positive lymphoplasmacytic infiltrate on histology and respond to steroids^[21-24]. Lung fibrosis, cervical and mediastinal lymphadenopathy are also associated with AIP^[25].

Asymptomatic lymphoplasmacytic infiltration of the gallbladder, duodenum, and stomach with IgG4 positive cells has been demonstrated on surgical specimen (cases misinterpreted as pancreas cancer) further suggesting the systemic nature of this disease^[21]. Hypothyroidism

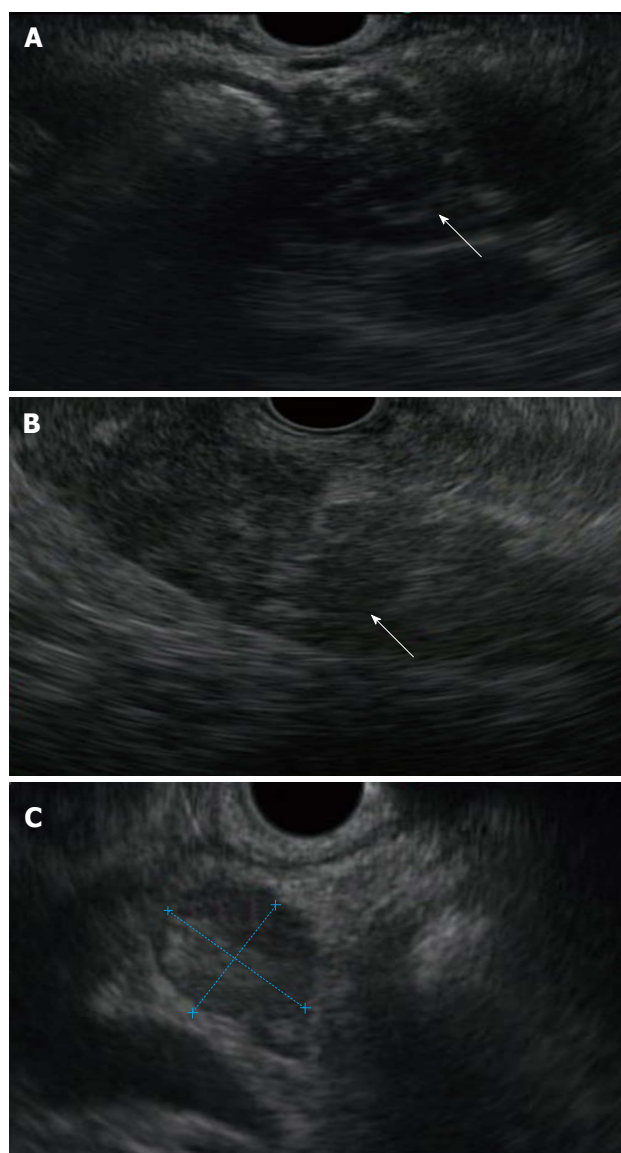


Figure 1 Endoscopic ultrasound features of autoimmune pancreatitis include diffuse hypoechoic changes in the head (A) and body (B) of the pancreas (note the metallic stent placed when the mass was assumed to represent carcinoma), and hypoechoic peripancreatic lymph nodes (C) of a similar echogenicity are frequently seen.

is seen in 26.8% of patient with autoimmune pancreatitis and antithyroglobulin Ab in 7.3%. compared to 0% and 7.3% of those with chronic pancreatitis^[26]. In Western populations, there is a correlation of AIP with inflammatory bowel disease^[25]. Thus, it is increasingly recognized that IgG4 mediated disease is a systemic, multifocal fibrosclerotic process^[22,27].

IGG4 ASSOCIATED CHOLANGIOPATHY

Biliary involvement may be present at the time of AIP diagnosis but more frequently follows diagnosis^[28]. Histologically, it is characterized by a peri-bile duct lymphoplasmacytic infiltrate similar to AIP and imaging reveals bile duct thickening and enhancement (Figure 2)^[28]. Intraductal ultrasound may demonstrate

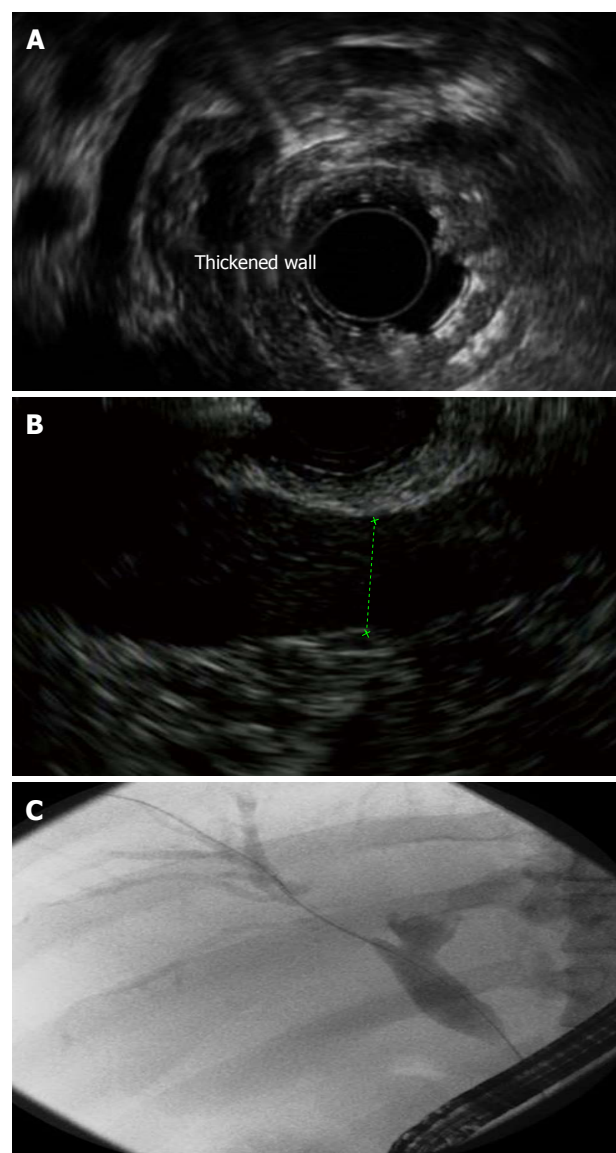


Figure 2 Endoscopic ultrasound reveals marked bile duct thickening (A) in a patient with longstanding autoimmune pancreatitis as evidenced by diffuse hypoechoic changes in the pancreas (B), and endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography demonstrated segmental narrowing with prestenotic dilation (C).

inflammation before it is clinically significant. IgG4 Associated Cholangiopathy (IAC) often simultaneously involve both the intrahepatic and extrahepatic biliary tree.

It is challenging to differentiate IAC from PSC. Cholangiographic features of segmental narrowing with prestenotic bile duct dilation suggests IgG4 IAC compared to beading, pruning, and diverticuli which are more consistent with PSC^[29]. Additionally IAC is more likely to involve the distal bile duct than PSC^[17,30]. Clinically, IAC manifests with the sudden onset of jaundice while a slow rise in cholestatic enzymes is seen in PSC. At comparable bilirubin levels, IAC tends to demonstrate much less advanced histology than PSC and there is a predominance of lymphocytes^[30].

Cholangiocarcinoma complicates PSC but typically

not IAC though an inflammatory pseudotumor due to a dense IgG4-lymphoplasmacytic infiltrate may mimic an intrahepatic bile duct tumor^[31]. High levels of IgG4 (4 times upper limit of normal) positive cells in brushings helps to distinguish IAC from cholangiocarcinoma^[32]. Retrospective assessment of IgG4 in patients who underwent transplant for PSC revealed that those who were positive had much higher bilirubin levels, Mayo risk scores, and progression to transplant. It is plausible that they might have actually had IAC. These findings emphasize the importance of making this diagnosis as IAC is responsive to steroids^[17].

TREATMENT OF AIP

Steroid response was one of the initial features which suggested that AIP was an autoimmune process and corticosteroids remain the primary treatment modality. A large multicenter trial demonstrated that corticosteroid treatment induces remission in 98%^[33]. The recommended starting dose of prednisone is 0.6 mg/kg per day (30-40 mg) followed by a slow taper over 3-6 mo^[33-35]. Maintenance treatment with prednisone 2.5-10 mg for an additional 3-6 mo decreased relapse rates to 24%, which is significantly lower than those who stop taking steroids early, 34%, or are not treated 42%^[33].

IgG4 levels may help determine disease activity especially following treatment with steroids and absence of improvement in the first 2-4 wk may suggest underlying malignancy^[36,37]. As long term steroid therapy in this patient population has been associated with major complications including avascular necrosis, steroid cessation or transition to an immunomodulator is recommended within 1 year^[33].

There are several predictors of relapse including extrapancreatic manifestations, diffuse pancreas swelling, and concomitant IAC^[38,39]. While steroids are effective in 95% of cases of relapse, immunomodulators including azathioprine, 6-mercaptopurine, and mycophenolate mofetil should be considered for patients with multiple relapses or steroid refractory disease. Failure or inability to tolerate immunomodulators occurs in a significant percentage of those with AIP^[40]. In these refractory cases the monoclonal antibody rituximab (anti-CD20), which depletes B cells, is successful in most (> 80%) of cases^[40,41]. Rituximab's efficacy may lie in its ability to modulate the Th2 process implicated in AIP^[42].

SPECIAL TREATMENT CONSIDERATIONS FOR IAC

The clinical and pathologic manifestations of AIP with IAC are also responsive to corticosteroid therapy^[28]. However, these patients have a 30% higher rate of relapse than those without biliary involvement^[40]. Relapse is particularly common in proximal (65%) vs distal (23%) biliary disease^[33,39]. Immunomodulators are required in relapsing and refractory IAC^[39]. Rituximab

is an important option for refractory IAC and its use in biliary IgG4 mediated disease preceded its use in AIP without IAC^[41]. In addition, a biliary stent is temporarily required in > 70% of cases to alleviate jaundice but typically may be removed following medical therapy^[40].

DIAGNOSTIC CRITERION

The diagnosis of autoimmune pancreatitis must be made with caution as pancreatic cancer has a similar presentation but is much more prevalent. In an early series, Kamisawa *et al*^[21] reported that > 50% of patients with AIP may have findings which are highly suggestive of pancreas cancer including elevated CEA, CA 19-9, portal vein narrowing, and bile duct stenosis. Additionally 10% of pancreas cancer patients will have significantly elevated levels of IgG4^[9]. The Japanese Pancreas Society proposed the first diagnostic criterion for AIP which required diffuse enlargement of the pancreas with irregular pancreatic duct narrowing and histologic anomalies or elevated IgG4 levels^[43,44].

Chari *et al*^[45] found that the Japanese criterion would diagnose < 30% of patients in a Western population with histologic confirmed autoimmune pancreatitis. Additionally, routine diagnostic endoscopic pancreatography is not feasible in the litigious culture of the United States. Chari *et al*^[45] proposed 3 potential methods to diagnose AIP: (1) classic histology; (2) typical imaging and elevated serum IgG4; and (3) pancreatic disease or extrapancreatic disease which responds to steroids^[46]. These histology imaging serology, other organ involvement, response to treatment were adopted in most Western centers to diagnose autoimmune pancreatitis^[45].

However, following application of these criteria, core biopsy, surgery, or steroid trials are required in 30% to differentiate AIP from cancer^[46]. Experts from Asia and Western Countries recently proposed the International Consensus Diagnostic Criteria, which include 3 out of 4 characteristic histologic criterion: (1) lymphoplasmacytic infiltrate; (2) obliterative phlebitis; (3) storiform fibrosis; and (4) > 10 IgG4 positive cells/high power field or a combination of characteristic imaging and either 2/4 pathologic criterion, elevated IgG4, or extrapancreatic manifestations^[47]. The consensus guidelines discourage the use of diagnostic steroid trials to diagnose AIP as pancreatitis and IgG4 elevations related to pancreas cancer may improve and give a false diagnosis of autoimmune pancreatitis.

In difficult cases, surgical evaluation is a reasonable approach given the difficulty of differentiating AIP from malignancy. A combined series from Johns Hopkins Medical Center and the Mayo Clinic included 37 patients with autoimmune pancreatitis among 1648 who had undergone pancreaticoduodenectomy^[48]. While blood loss in AIP was higher than for other indications for Whipple resection, the quality of life in 68% was improved and none had recurrent jaundice at a median follow up of 33 mo.

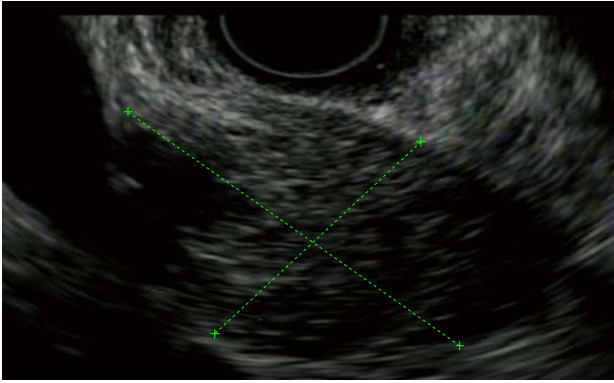


Figure 3 Endoscopic ultrasound reveals a hypoechoic pancreas mass in a jaundiced sixteen-year-old patient with crohn's disease confirmed by histologic sampling to have type II autoimmune pancreatitis.

TISSUE ACQUISITION

Histology, which enables architectural assessment is needed to confirm the diagnosis in challenging cases. While endoscopic ultrasound guided aspiration methods offer the most direct access to the pancreas, this technique is more amenable to providing cytology specimens, which are less useful in AIP. A core endoscopic ultrasound (EUS) needle equipped with a spring loaded cutting sheath was used in a small series of patients with autoimmune pancreatitis^[49]. However, the torque on the device required to access the pancreas head and uncinate from the duodenum prevented it from firing^[50]. A new reverse bevel core needle has shown promise in the acquisition of tissue for histology and is the topic of an ongoing randomized trial for AIP tissue acquisition. Larger 19 gauge standard EUS needles have been used with meticulous specimen preparation techniques to yield histologic samples in lymphoma^[51]. However, the results of this approach were disappointing in autoimmune pancreatitis as histologic confirmation was only achieved in 43% of patients^[52]. Even with acquisition of histology, the patchy involvement of autoimmune pancreatitis limits EUS sampling and tissue acquisition remains a challenge. Surgery may be required for definite diagnosis.

Surgical specimens from AIP resection (cases thought to be cancer) reveal IgG4 infiltration of the stomach, duodenum, and other surrounding structures which provides another avenue for diagnosis. Endoscopically, AIP demonstrate papillary swelling in 41% of those with AIP and biopsies in cases of papillary swelling may reveal dense IgG4 cell (> 10/high power field) infiltration^[53,54]. Pale thickened regions of mucosa of the stomach, duodenum and colon on biopsy also reveals focal infiltrates of IgG4 (> 10/high powerfield) positive plasma cells^[53,55]. Mucosal biopsies represent a minimally invasive adjunct to other sampling methods^[53,56].

LONG TERM OUTCOMES

In some cases, AIP disease is progressive. Relapse

is associated with chronic pancreatic injury. Between 33%-55% of those with recurrence develop pancreatic duct stones, though 4% without recurrence also develop evidence of chronic disease^[35,40,57]. While steroids improve both the exocrine and endocrine abnormalities seen in autoimmune pancreatitis, abnormalities are only partially reversible with some patients developing chronic diabetes mellitus and steatorrhea^[58]. In addition to the pancreatic dysfunction, chronic salivary gland dysfunction has also been shown to occur^[58]. In some cases IAC results in progression to cirrhosis and portal hypertension^[39]. AIP is also associated with increased risk of malignancy; the most common cancers were gastric, lung and prostate^[59].

TYPE II AIP

Recently a distinct variant of autoimmune pancreatitis, type II, has been described.

Similar to Type I AIP it presents with jaundice and mass-like changes in the gland (Figure 3). However, Type II AIP presents with a completely different histological pattern, an idiopathic duct-centric chronic pancreatitis with increased intraluminal and epithelial neutrophils^[60,61]. It has primarily been described in western nations and is not associated with extrapancreatic manifestations with the exception of inflammatory bowel disease^[60]. In addition serologies and IgG4 are typically negative^[40,61]. Given the absence of potential corroborative markers, definitive diagnosis requires histology^[62]. Type II is found predominantly in much younger patients than those with type I AIP^[61]. The pediatric entity of idiopathic fibrosing pancreatitis in which children (often with concomitant IBD) present with jaundice and pancreas mass is likely the same disease as type II AIP^[63]. Type II AIP responds to steroids in 92% and is much less likely to relapse than Type I AIP^[40,61]. However, given that it is a recently described entity, studies of long-term sequelae and clinical course are lacking.

CONCLUSION

In summary, autoimmune pancreatitis presents with jaundice and pancreas mass mimicking pancreatic cancer. However, prompt resolution with steroids, autoantibodies, and hypergammaglobulinemia led to its recognition as an autoimmune process. It is frequently accompanied by diverse steroid responsive, IgG4 mediated abnormalities including cholangiopathy, retroperitoneal fibrosis, and sialadenitis. Challenges include the appropriate use of IgG4 and various criterion for its diagnosis, better methods to obtain tissue, and treatment of steroid refractory cases. Type II AIP has a similar clinical presentation and treatment, but distinct histology, serology, and extrapancreatic manifestations.

REFERENCES

- 1 Sarles H, Sarles JC, Muratore R, Guen C. Chronic inflammatory sclerosis of the pancreas--an autonomous pancreatic disease? *Am J*

- Dig Dis* 1961; **6**: 688-698 [PMID: 13746542]
- 2 **Waldram R**, Kopelman H, Tsantoulas D, Williams R. Chronic pancreatitis, sclerosing cholangitis, and sicca complex in two siblings. *Lancet* 1975; **1**: 550-552 [PMID: 47019]
- 3 **Sjögren I**, Wengle B, Korsgren M. Primary sclerosing cholangitis associated with fibrosis of the submandibular glands and the pancreas. *Acta Med Scand* 1979; **205**: 139-141 [PMID: 760402]
- 4 **Epstein O**, Chapman RW, Lake-Bakaar G, Foo AY, Rosalki SB, Sherlock S. The pancreas in primary biliary cirrhosis and primary sclerosing cholangitis. *Gastroenterology* 1982; **83**: 1177-1182 [PMID: 7129026]
- 5 **Montefusco PP**, Geiss AC, Bronzo RL, Randall S, Kahn E, McKinley MJ. Sclerosing cholangitis, chronic pancreatitis, and Sjogren's syndrome: a syndrome complex. *Am J Surg* 1984; **147**: 822-826 [PMID: 6731702]
- 6 **Kawaguchi K**, Koike M, Tsuruta K, Okamoto A, Tabata I, Fujita N. Lymphoplasmacytic sclerosing pancreatitis with cholangitis: a variant of primary sclerosing cholangitis extensively involving pancreas. *Hum Pathol* 1991; **22**: 387-395 [PMID: 2050373]
- 7 **Deshpande V**, Zen Y, Chan JK, Yi EE, Sato Y, Yoshino T, Klöppel G, Heathcote JG, Khosroshahi A, Ferry JA, Aalberse RC, Bloch DB, Brugge WR, Bateman AC, Carruthers MN, Chari ST, Cheuk W, Cornell LD, Fernandez-Del Castillo C, Forcione DG, Hamilos DL, Kamisawa T, Kasashima S, Kawa S, Kawano M, Lauwers GY, Masaki Y, Nakanuma Y, Notohara K, Okazaki K, Ryu JK, Saeki T, Sahani DV, Smyrk TC, Stone JR, Takahira M, Webster GJ, Yamamoto M, Zamboni G, Umehara H, Stone JH. Consensus statement on the pathology of IgG4-related disease. *Mod Pathol* 2012; **25**: 1181-1192 [PMID: 22596100 DOI: 10.1038/modpathol.2012.72]
- 8 **Yoshida K**, Toki F, Takeuchi T, Watanabe S, Shiratori K, Hayashi N. Chronic pancreatitis caused by an autoimmune abnormality. Proposal of the concept of autoimmune pancreatitis. *Dig Dis Sci* 1995; **40**: 1561-1568 [PMID: 7628283]
- 9 **Ghazale A**, Chari ST, Smyrk TC, Levy MJ, Topazian MD, Takahashi N, Clain JE, Pearson RK, Pelayez-Luna M, Petersen BT, Vege SS, Farnell MB. Value of serum IgG4 in the diagnosis of autoimmune pancreatitis and in distinguishing it from pancreatic cancer. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2007; **102**: 1646-1653 [PMID: 17555461 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2007.01264.x]
- 10 **Sah RP**, Pannala R, Chari ST, Sugumar A, Clain JE, Levy MJ, Pearson RK, Smyrk TC, Petersen BT, Topazian MD, Takahashi N, Vege SS. Prevalence, diagnosis, and profile of autoimmune pancreatitis presenting with features of acute or chronic pancreatitis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **8**: 91-96 [PMID: 19800984 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2009.09.024]
- 11 **Uchida K**, Okazaki K, Konishi Y, Ohana M, Takakuwa H, Hajiro K, Chiba T. Clinical analysis of autoimmune-related pancreatitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2000; **95**: 2788-2794 [PMID: 11051349 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2000.03187.x]
- 12 **Farrell JJ**, Garber J, Sahani D, Brugge WR. EUS findings in patients with autoimmune pancreatitis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2004; **60**: 927-936 [PMID: 15605008]
- 13 **Sahani DV**, Kalva SP, Farrell J, Maher MM, Saini S, Mueller PR, Lauwers GY, Fernandez CD, Warsaw AL, Simeone JF. Autoimmune pancreatitis: imaging features. *Radiology* 2004; **233**: 345-352 [PMID: 15459324 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.2332031436]
- 14 **Manfredi R**, Frulloni L, Mantovani W, Bonatti M, Graziani R, Pozzi Mucelli R. Autoimmune pancreatitis: pancreatic and extrapancreatic MR imaging-MR cholangiopancreatography findings at diagnosis, after steroid therapy, and at recurrence. *Radiology* 2011; **260**: 428-436 [PMID: 21613442 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.11101729]
- 15 **Moon SH**, Kim MH. The role of endoscopy in the diagnosis of autoimmune pancreatitis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **76**: 645-656 [PMID: 22898422 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.04.458]
- 16 **Hamano H**, Kawa S, Horiuchi A, Unno H, Furuya N, Akamatsu T, Fukushima M, Nikaïdo T, Nakayama K, Usuda N, Kiyosawa K. High serum IgG4 concentrations in patients with sclerosing pancreatitis. *N Engl J Med* 2001; **344**: 732-738 [PMID: 11236777 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM200103083441005]
- 17 **Mendes FD**, Jorgensen R, Keach J, Katzmann JA, Smyrk T, Donlinger J, Chari S, Lindor KD. Elevated serum IgG4 concentration in patients with primary sclerosing cholangitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 2070-2075 [PMID: 16879434 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2006.00772.x]
- 18 **Zhang L**, Notohara K, Levy MJ, Chari ST, Smyrk TC. IgG4-positive plasma cell infiltration in the diagnosis of autoimmune pancreatitis. *Mod Pathol* 2007; **20**: 23-28 [PMID: 16980948 DOI: 10.1038/modpathol.3800689]
- 19 **Chutaputti A**, Burrell MI, Boyer JL. Pseudotumor of the pancreas associated with retroperitoneal fibrosis: a dramatic response to corticosteroid therapy. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1995; **90**: 1155-1158 [PMID: 7611217]
- 20 **Hamano H**, Kawa S, Ochi Y, Unno H, Shiba N, Wajiki M, Nakazawa K, Shimojo H, Kiyosawa K. Hydronephrosis associated with retroperitoneal fibrosis and sclerosing pancreatitis. *Lancet* 2002; **359**: 1403-1404 [PMID: 11978339]
- 21 **Kamisawa T**, Egawa N, Nakajima H. Autoimmune pancreatitis is a systemic autoimmune disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: 2811-2812 [PMID: 14687846 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2003.08758.x]
- 22 **Kamisawa T**, Funata N, Hayashi Y, Tsuruta K, Okamoto A, Amemiya K, Egawa N, Nakajima H. Close relationship between autoimmune pancreatitis and multifocal fibrosclerosis. *Gut* 2003; **52**: 683-687 [PMID: 12692053]
- 23 **Takahashi N**, Kawashima A, Fletcher JG, Chari ST. Renal involvement in patients with autoimmune pancreatitis: CT and MR imaging findings. *Radiology* 2007; **242**: 791-801 [PMID: 17229877 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.2423060003]
- 24 **Umehara H**, Okazaki K, Masaki Y, Kawano M, Yamamoto M, Saeki T, Matsui S, Sumida T, Mimori T, Tanaka Y, Tsubota K, Yoshino T, Kawa S, Suzuki R, Takegami T, Tomosugi N, Kurose N, Ishigaki Y, Azumi A, Kojima M, Nakamura S, Inoue D. A novel clinical entity, IgG4-related disease (IgG4RD): general concept and details. *Mod Rheumatol* 2012; **22**: 1-14 [PMID: 21881964 DOI: 10.1007/s10165-011-0508-6]
- 25 **Ohara H**, Nakazawa T, Sano H, Ando T, Okamoto T, Takada H, Hayashi K, Kitajima Y, Nakao H, Joh T. Systemic extrapancreatic lesions associated with autoimmune pancreatitis. *Pancreas* 2005; **31**: 232-237 [PMID: 16163054]
- 26 **Komatsu K**, Hamano H, Ochi Y, Takayama M, Muraki T, Yoshizawa K, Sakurai A, Ota M, Kawa S. High prevalence of hypothyroidism in patients with autoimmune pancreatitis. *Dig Dis Sci* 2005; **50**: 1052-1057 [PMID: 15986853]
- 27 **Stone JH**, Zen Y, Deshpande V. IgG4-related disease. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **366**: 539-551 [PMID: 22316447 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra1104650]
- 28 **Hirano K**, Shiratori Y, Komatsu Y, Yamamoto N, Sasahira N, Toda N, Isayama H, Tada M, Tsujino T, Nakata R, Kawase T, Katamoto T, Kawabe T, Omata M. Involvement of the biliary system in autoimmune pancreatitis: a follow-up study. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2003; **1**: 453-464 [PMID: 15017645]
- 29 **Nakazawa T**, Ohara H, Sano H, Aoki S, Kobayashi S, Okamoto T, Imai H, Nomura T, Joh T, Itoh M. Cholangiography can discriminate sclerosing cholangitis with autoimmune pancreatitis from primary sclerosing cholangitis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2004; **60**: 937-944 [PMID: 15605009]
- 30 **Nakazawa T**, Ohara H, Sano H, Ando T, Aoki S, Kobayashi S, Okamoto T, Nomura T, Joh T, Itoh M. Clinical differences between primary sclerosing cholangitis and sclerosing cholangitis with autoimmune pancreatitis. *Pancreas* 2005; **30**: 20-25 [PMID: 15632695]
- 31 **Zen Y**, Harada K, Sasaki M, Sato Y, Tsuneyama K, Haratake J, Kurumaya H, Katayanagi K, Masuda S, Niwa H, Morimoto H, Miwa A, Uchiyama A, Portmann BC, Nakanuma Y. IgG4-related sclerosing cholangitis with and without hepatic inflammatory pseudotumor, and sclerosing pancreatitis-associated sclerosing cholangitis: do they belong to a spectrum of sclerosing pancreatitis? *Am J Surg Pathol* 2004; **28**: 1193-1203 [PMID: 15316319]
- 32 **Oseini AM**, Chaiteerakij R, Shire AM, Ghazale A, Kaiya J, Moser CD, Aderca I, Mettler TA, Therneau TM, Zhang L, Takahashi N, Chari ST, Roberts LR. Utility of serum immunoglobulin G4 in distinguishing

- immunoglobulin G4-associated cholangitis from cholangiocarcinoma. *Hepatology* 2011; **54**: 940-948 [PMID: 21674559 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24487]
- 33 **Kamisawa T**, Shimosegawa T, Okazaki K, Nishino T, Watanabe H, Kanno A, Okumura F, Nishikawa T, Kobayashi K, Ichiya T, Takatori H, Yamakita K, Kubota K, Hamano H, Okamura K, Hirano K, Ito T, Ko SB, Omata M. Standard steroid treatment for autoimmune pancreatitis. *Gut* 2009; **58**: 1504-1507 [PMID: 19398440 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2008.172908]
 - 34 **Joshi D**, Webster GJ. Immunoglobulin G4-related sclerosing cholangitis. *Hepatology* 2015; **61**: 1432-1434 [PMID: 25179687]
 - 35 **Takayama M**, Hamano H, Ochi Y, Saegusa H, Komatsu K, Muraki T, Arakura N, Imai Y, Hasebe O, Kawa S. Recurrent attacks of autoimmune pancreatitis result in pancreatic stone formation. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2004; **99**: 932-937 [PMID: 15128363 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2004.04162.x]
 - 36 **Tabata T**, Kamisawa T, Takuma K, Egawa N, Setoguchi K, Tsuruta K, Obayashi T, Sasaki T. Serial changes of elevated serum IgG4 levels in IgG4-related systemic disease. *Intern Med* 2011; **50**: 69-75 [PMID: 21245628]
 - 37 **Moon SH**, Kim MH, Park DH, Hwang CY, Park SJ, Lee SS, Seo DW, Lee SK. Is a 2-week steroid trial after initial negative investigation for malignancy useful in differentiating autoimmune pancreatitis from pancreatic cancer? A prospective outcome study. *Gut* 2008; **57**: 1704-1712 [PMID: 18583399 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2008.150979]
 - 38 **Kubota K**, Iida H, Fujisawa T, Yoneda M, Inamori M, Abe Y, Kirikoshi H, Saito S, Ohshiro H, Kakuta Y, Nakajima A. Clinical factors predictive of spontaneous remission or relapse in cases of autoimmune pancreatitis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2007; **66**: 1142-1151 [PMID: 18061714 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2007.06.059]
 - 39 **Ghazale A**, Chari ST, Zhang L, Smyrk TC, Takahashi N, Levy MJ, Topazian MD, Clain JE, Pearson RK, Petersen BT, Vege SS, Lindor K, Farnell MB. Immunoglobulin G4-associated cholangitis: clinical profile and response to therapy. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **134**: 706-715 [PMID: 18222442 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.12.009]
 - 40 **Hart PA**, Topazian MD, Witzig TE, Clain JE, Gleeson FC, Klebig RR, Levy MJ, Pearson RK, Petersen BT, Smyrk TC, Sugumar A, Takahashi N, Vege SS, Chari ST. Treatment of relapsing autoimmune pancreatitis with immunomodulators and rituximab: the Mayo Clinic experience. *Gut* 2013; **62**: 1607-1615 [PMID: 22936672 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-302886]
 - 41 **Topazian M**, Witzig TE, Smyrk TC, Pulido JS, Levy MJ, Kamath PS, Chari ST. Rituximab therapy for refractory biliary strictures in immunoglobulin G4-associated cholangitis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **6**: 364-366 [PMID: 18328441 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2007.12.020]
 - 42 **Zen Y**, Fujii T, Harada K, Kawano M, Yamada K, Takahira M, Nakanuma Y. Th2 and regulatory immune reactions are increased in immunoglobulin G4-related sclerosing pancreatitis and cholangitis. *Hepatology* 2007; **45**: 1538-1546 [PMID: 17518371 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21697]
 - 43 **Okazaki K**, Kawa S, Kamisawa T, Naruse S, Tanaka S, Nishimori I, Ohara H, Ito T, Kiriya S, Inui K, Shimosegawa T, Koizumi M, Suda K, Shiratori K, Yamaguchi K, Yamaguchi T, Sugiyama M, Otsuki M. Clinical diagnostic criteria of autoimmune pancreatitis: revised proposal. *J Gastroenterol* 2006; **41**: 626-631 [PMID: 16932998 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-006-1868-0]
 - 44 Members of the Criteria Committee for Autoimmune Pancreatitis of the Japan Pancreas Society. Diagnostic criteria for autoimmune pancreatitis by the Japan Pancreas Society. *J Jpn Pancreas* (Suizou) 2002; **17**: 587
 - 45 **Chari ST**, Smyrk TC, Levy MJ, Topazian MD, Takahashi N, Zhang L, Clain JE, Pearson RK, Petersen BT, Vege SS, Farnell MB. Diagnosis of autoimmune pancreatitis: the Mayo Clinic experience. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2006; **4**: 1010-1016; quiz 934 [PMID: 16843735 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2006.05.017]
 - 46 **Chari ST**, Takahashi N, Levy MJ, Smyrk TC, Clain JE, Pearson RK, Petersen BT, Topazian MA, Vege SS. A diagnostic strategy to distinguish autoimmune pancreatitis from pancreatic cancer. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **7**: 1097-1103 [PMID: 19410017 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2009.04.020]
 - 47 **Shimosegawa T**, Chari ST, Frulloni L, Kamisawa T, Kawa S, Mino-Kenudson M, Kim MH, Klöppel G, Lerch MM, Löhner M, Notohara K, Okazaki K, Schneider A, Zhang L. International consensus diagnostic criteria for autoimmune pancreatitis: guidelines of the International Association of Pancreatology. *Pancreas* 2011; **40**: 352-358 [PMID: 21412117 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0b013e3182142fd2]
 - 48 **Hardacre JM**, Iacobuzio-Donahue CA, Sohn TA, Abraham SC, Yeo CJ, Lillemoe KD, Choti MA, Campbell KA, Schulick RD, Hruban RH, Cameron JL, Leach SD. Results of pancreaticoduodenectomy for lymphoplasmacytic sclerosing pancreatitis. *Ann Surg* 2003; **237**: 853-858; discussion 858-859 [PMID: 12796582 DOI: 10.1097/01.SLA.0000071516.54864.C1]
 - 49 **Levy MJ**, Reddy RP, Wiersma MJ, Smyrk TC, Clain JE, Harewood GC, Pearson RK, Rajan E, Topazian MD, Yusuf TE, Chari ST, Petersen BT. EUS-guided trucut biopsy in establishing autoimmune pancreatitis as the cause of obstructive jaundice. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2005; **61**: 467-472 [PMID: 15758927]
 - 50 **Sakamoto H**, Kitano M, Komaki T, Noda K, Chikugo T, Dote K, Takeyama Y, Das K, Yamao K, Kudo M. Prospective comparative study of the EUS guided 25-gauge FNA needle with the 19-gauge Trucut needle and 22-gauge FNA needle in patients with solid pancreatic masses. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **24**: 384-390 [PMID: 19032453 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2008.05636.x]
 - 51 **Yasuda I**, Goto N, Tsurumi H, Nakashima M, Doi S, Iwashita T, Kanemura N, Kasahara S, Adachi S, Hara T, Shimizu M, Takami T, Moriwaki H. Endoscopic ultrasound-guided fine needle aspiration biopsy for diagnosis of lymphoproliferative disorders: feasibility of immunohistological, flow cytometric, and cytogenetic assessments. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2012; **107**: 397-404 [PMID: 21989147 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2011.350]
 - 52 **Iwashita T**, Yasuda I, Doi S, Ando N, Nakashima M, Adachi S, Hirose Y, Mukai T, Iwata K, Tomita E, Itoi T, Moriwaki H. Use of samples from endoscopic ultrasound-guided 19-gauge fine-needle aspiration in diagnosis of autoimmune pancreatitis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **10**: 316-322 [PMID: 22019795 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2011.09.032]
 - 53 **Kamisawa T**, Egawa N, Nakajima H, Tsuruta K, Okamoto A, Hayashi Y, Funata N. Gastrointestinal findings in patients with autoimmune pancreatitis. *Endoscopy* 2005; **37**: 1127-1130 [PMID: 16281144 DOI: 10.1055/s-2005-870369]
 - 54 **Unno H**, Saegusa H, Fukushima M, Hamano H. Usefulness of endoscopic observation of the main duodenal papilla in the diagnosis of sclerosing pancreatitis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2002; **56**: 880-884 [PMID: 12447302 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2002.129605]
 - 55 **Kamisawa T**, Nakajima H, Egawa N, Hayashi Y, Funata N. Autoimmune pancreatitis can be confirmed with gastroscopy. *Dig Dis Sci* 2004; **49**: 155-156 [PMID: 14992451]
 - 56 **Hirano K**, Fukushima N, Tada M, Isayama H, Mizuno S, Yamamoto K, Yashima Y, Yagioka H, Sasaki T, Kogure H, Nakai Y, Sasahira N, Tsujino T, Kawabe T, Fukayama M, Omata M. Diagnostic utility of biopsy specimens for autoimmune pancreatitis. *J Gastroenterol* 2009; **44**: 765-773 [PMID: 19430718 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-009-0052-8]
 - 57 **Kawa S**, Hamano H, Ozaki Y, Ito T, Kodama R, Chou Y, Takayama M, Arakura N. Long-term follow-up of autoimmune pancreatitis: characteristics of chronic disease and recurrence. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **7**: S18-S22 [PMID: 19896092 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2009.07.041]
 - 58 **Kamisawa T**, Egawa N, Inokuma S, Tsuruta K, Okamoto A, Kamata N, Nakamura T, Matsukawa M. Pancreatic endocrine and exocrine function and salivary gland function in autoimmune pancreatitis before and after steroid therapy. *Pancreas* 2003; **27**: 235-238 [PMID: 14508128]
 - 59 **Hart PA**, Kamisawa T, Brugge WR, Chung JB, Culver EL, Czakó L, Frulloni L, Go VL, Gress TM, Kim MH, Kawa S, Lee KT, Lerch MM, Liao WC, Löhner M, Okazaki K, Ryu JK, Schleinitz N, Shimizu K, Shimosegawa T, Soetikno R, Webster G, Yadav D, Zen Y, Chari ST. Long-term outcomes of autoimmune pancreatitis: a multicentre, international analysis. *Gut* 2013; **62**: 1771-1776

- [PMID: 23232048 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-303617]
- 60 **Kamisawa T**, Chari ST, Giday SA, Kim MH, Chung JB, Lee KT, Werner J, Bergmann F, Lerch MM, Mayerle J, Pickartz T, Lohr M, Schneider A, Frulloni L, Webster GJ, Reddy DN, Liao WC, Wang HP, Okazaki K, Shimosegawa T, Kloeppel G, Go VL. Clinical profile of autoimmune pancreatitis and its histological subtypes: an international multicenter survey. *Pancreas* 2011; **40**: 809-814 [PMID: 21747310 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0b013e3182258a15]
 - 61 **Sah RP**, Chari ST, Pannala R, Sugumar A, Clain JE, Levy MJ, Pearson RK, Smyrk TC, Petersen BT, Topazian MD, Takahashi N, Farnell MB, Vege SS. Differences in clinical profile and relapse rate of type 1 versus type 2 autoimmune pancreatitis. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **139**: 140-148; quiz e12-e13 [PMID: 20353791 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.03.054]
 - 62 **Kamisawa T**, Chari ST, Lerch MM, Kim MH, Gress TM, Shimosegawa T. Republished: recent advances in autoimmune pancreatitis: type 1 and type 2. *Postgrad Med J* 2014; **90**: 18-25 [PMID: 24336310 DOI: 10.1136/postgradmedj-2012-304224rep]
 - 63 **Buxbaum JL**, Eloubeidi MA, Varadarajulu S. Utility of EUS-guided FNA in the management of children with idiopathic fibrosing pancreatitis. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2011; **52**: 482-484 [PMID: 21407109 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0b013e3181fdef4f]

P- Reviewer: Hauser G **S- Editor:** Ma YJ

L- Editor: A **E- Editor:** Li D



Age-related differences in celiac disease: Specific characteristics of adult presentation

Santiago Vivas, Luis Vaquero, Laura Rodríguez-Martín, Alberto Caminero

Santiago Vivas, Institute of Biomedicine (IBIOMED), University of León, 24008 León, Spain

Santiago Vivas, Luis Vaquero, Laura Rodríguez-Martín, Department of Gastroenterology, University Hospital of León, 24008 León, Spain

Alberto Caminero, Farncombe Family Digestive Health Research Institute, McMaster University, Hamilton, Ontario L8S 4K1, Canada

Author contributions: Vaquero L and Rodríguez-Martín L wrote the paper, and prepared the figures and tables; Vivas S and Caminero A designed the outline and coordinated the writing of the paper.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare that there are no conflicts of interest regarding the publication of this paper.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Santiago Vivas, MD, Department of Gastroenterology, University Hospital of León, Altos de Nava s/n, 24008 León, Spain. svivasa@gmail.com
Telephone: +34-987-234900-43243
Fax: +34-987-233322

Received: June 2, 2015

Peer-review started: June 3, 2015

First decision: August 4, 2015

Revised: August 24, 2015

Accepted: October 12, 2015

Article in press: October 13, 2015

Published online: November 6, 2015

Abstract

Celiac disease may appear both in early childhood and

in elderly subjects. Current knowledge of the disease has revealed some differences associated to the age of presentation. Furthermore, monitoring and prognosis of celiac subjects can vary depending on the pediatric or adult stage. The main objective of this review is to provide guidance for the adult diagnostic and follow-up processes, which must be tailored specifically for adults and be different from pediatric patients.

Key words: Celiac disease; Diagnosis; Complications; Gluten intolerance; Duodenal biopsy

© The Author(s) 2015. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Current knowledge of celiac disease (CD) has revealed differences linked to the age of onset. These differences are related to the epidemiology, pathogenicity, clinical signs and prognosis of the disease. Here we present a comprehensive review of CD focusing on the age-specific management of patients. The knowledge of particular aspects linked to either adults or children would improve both the diagnosis and follow-up of this disease. This review can be helpful to the clinician involved in the management of adult and pediatric patients.

Vivas S, Vaquero L, Rodríguez-Martín L, Caminero A. Age-related differences in celiac disease: Specific characteristics of adult presentation. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(4): 207-212 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i4/207.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i4.207>

INTRODUCTION

Celiac disease (CD) is an autoimmune inflammatory enteropathy triggered by gluten intake in genetically susceptible persons. It was initially described in children and, for many years, has been considered an

almost exclusively pediatric entity. The main clinical presentations in the pediatric population include, malnutrition and growth delay along with persistent diarrhea and high mortality^[1]. Although the long standing assumption is that CD develops in childhood, the disease can occur at any age. The epidemiology and symptomatology of CD have both considerably changed in recent years, with a significant increase in adult prevalence that was not previously suspected^[2]. The clinical presentation of CD has also changed, from typical malnutrition to oligosymptomatic cases such as anemia, osteoporosis and even asymptomatic cases diagnosed by screening high-risk groups^[3,4].

The aim of this review is to describe the main differences in CD according to age and highlight the most characteristic aspects of its adult forms.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

CD is a disorder more frequent than previously described. The current prevalence of CD ranges between 1/100-1/500 subjects depending to the different populations surveyed and the method employed, with a higher positive diagnosis in females^[2]. The accuracy of CD prevalence has been substantially improved by the high sensitivity and specificity of serological tests detecting anti-endomysial, anti-tissue transglutaminase or anti-deamidated gliadin antibodies. These tests have allowed screening of large cohorts, which resulted in estimating CD prevalence as high as 1% of the general population, both in Europe and North America^[5]. However, most of these studies are focused on children. A recent epidemiological study in Catalonia that used serology to analyze prevalence, showed that CD prevalence in children (1/71) was five times higher than in adults (1/357). The authors proposed a tendency towards latency in adults, which would explain the lower prevalence of CD during adulthood^[6]. Similar studies in Brazil and India also found twice the CD frequency in children^[7,8].

However, these data are in contrast with the observed prevalence in adult populations from European countries such as the United Kingdom (1.2%)^[9] and, more surprisingly, Finland, where a 2.4% prevalence of CD was demonstrated by biopsy in a population of adults over fifty years of age^[10]. The pediatric population was not analyzed in these studies, but prevalence of over 1%, even in older populations, is similar to that observed in pediatric studies. A recent systematic review on world CD frequency in recent years, mainly based on European studies, found variable ratios of prevalence and incidence, which was similar, in many cases, between children and adults^[2].

Although a hypothesis based on the evolution of pediatric CD towards latency would explain a lower frequency in adults; more studies on the natural evolution of this disease are needed in order to confirm it. It is clear that adult forms are becoming more frequent, sometimes reaching similar or even higher

numbers than those of the pediatric population. The screening methods and the type of population selected may have an influence, since in high-risk groups of adults as well as in first-degree relatives, affected individuals may exceed 15%^[3]. It must also be taken into account that, as we discuss below, studies based on serological screening may not really demonstrate adult prevalence, where antibody titers are low or even negative, while histological damage and symptoms are compatible with CD^[11].

SYMPTOMATOLOGY

The clearest difference between children and adults is the clinical expressiveness of the disease at the time of diagnosis. Different studies have shown that classic clinical malabsorption pattern is frequently observed in children during diagnosis, while classical symptoms occur in less than 25% of adult cases^[12]. Table 1 contains an overview of different clinical manifestations in CD according to the presentation age.

A tendency towards lower clinical manifestations can be observed as age increases^[4]. In older children and adults only limited symptoms are prevalent, which often consist of an increase in stool volume, or intestinal gas generated by lactose malabsorption or bacterial overgrowth. In fact, constipation may be the only manifestation in a celiac adult.

Extraintestinal symptoms or manifestations are quite frequent in adult CD, and may appear associated with other digestive symptoms such as asthenia, oral sores, osteoporosis or skin lesions. In fact, some patients only present these extraintestinal symptoms at diagnosis. Although celiac children may exhibit non-digestive manifestations, these are less frequent and show a predominant digestive symptomatology^[13].

There are numerous diseases associated with CD in children and adults. However, the presence of associated pathologies in adults seems to be more frequent and may have an autoimmune origin like CD. Autoimmune disorders such as autoimmune thyroiditis, type I diabetes, Sjögren's syndrome or dermatitis herpetiformis have been linked to CD^[14,15].

Even though malnutrition is a frequent manifestation in CD, mainly in adults, excessive weight or obesity may also be present at diagnosis. Recent studies have shown that more than half the adults diagnosed with CD have obesity while only 15% of them are below their normal weight^[16,17]. These figures are from European and North American studies, where the prevalence of obesity among the adult population is high. Excess weight can also be observed in children at a lower frequency. Therefore, excess weight in an adult must not be a reason to lower the suspicion threshold for CD.

Functional dyspepsia and irritable bowel syndrome are two functional digestive pathologies, which are quite prevalent in the adult population, but are also seen during infancy. CD prevalence in adults with functional dyspepsia or irritable bowel syndrome can rise to over

Table 1 Age-related major clinical findings at celiac disease diagnosis

Children < 2 yr	Children > 2 yr	Adults
Diarrhea	Loose stools	Dyspepsia/irritable bowel syndrome
Malnutrition	Iron deficiency	Iron deficiency
Bloating	Abdominal pain	Constipation
Vomiting	Dyspepsia	Osteoporosis
Irritability	Growth delay	Arthritis
Muscular atrophy	Headache	Hypertransaminasemia
Anemia	Pubertal delay	Extraintestinal symptoms

Table 2 Diagnostic criteria for celiac disease proposed by Catassi and Fasano^[22]

The presence of signs and symptoms compatible with celiac disease
 Positivity of serum celiac disease IgA class autoantibodies at high titer
 Presence of the predisposing genes *HLA-DQ2* and/or *-DQ8*
 Celiac enteropathy at the small intestinal biopsy¹
 Resolution of the symptoms and normalization of serology test following the implementation of a gluten-free diet²

¹Including Marsh-Oberhuber 3 lesions, Marsh-Oberhuber 1-2 lesions associated with positive celiac antibodies positive at low/high titer, or Marsh-Oberhuber 1-3 lesion associated with IgA subepithelial deposits;

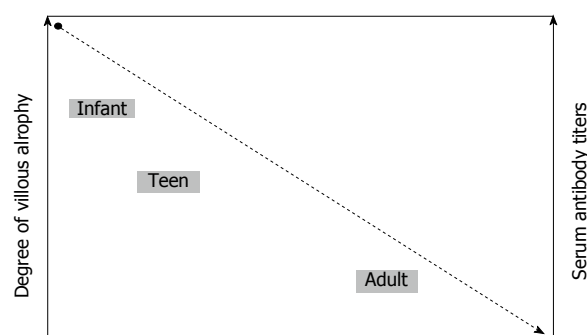
²Histological normalization in patients with sero-negative celiac disease or associated IgA deficiency. At least 4 of 5 (or 3 of 4 if the HLA genotype is not performed). HLA: Human leukocyte antigen.

10% of cases, as reported in some studies. Currently, before diagnosing both functional pathologies in adults, an underlying CD must always be ruled out, either by serology or endoscopy^[18,19].

DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of CD is based on the presence of serum antibodies against deamidated antigliadin, antiendomysium or anti-tissue transglutaminase antibodies. In addition, the presence of intraepithelial lymphocytosis and/or villous atrophy and crypt hyperplasia of small-bowel mucosa, and clinical remission after withdrawal of gluten from the diet, are also used for diagnosis antitransglutaminase antibody (tTGA) titers and the degree of histological lesions inversely correlate with age^[12]. Thus, as the age of diagnosis increases antibody titers decrease and histological damage is less marked. It is common to find adults without villous atrophy showing only an inflammatory pattern in duodenal mucosa biopsies: Lymphocytic enteritis (Marsh I) or added crypt hyperplasia (Marsh II), as seen in Figure 1.

This lower clinical, analytical and histological expressiveness in adult forms makes their diagnosis more complex than in pediatric forms. The European Pediatric Gastroenterology and Nutrition Society (ESPGHAN) criteria were edited in 2012 for CD diagnosis in children. These current pediatric criteria allow CD diagnosis upon finding high tTGA titers, without the need for a duodenal biopsy^[20]. This is, again, based on the evidence of high antibody titers having a high predictive value for villous

**Figure 1** Relationship among age, antibodies and villous atrophy.

atrophy, and thus avoiding the need for biopsy. Thus, in pediatric patients, up to 75% of duodenal biopsies can be avoided. However, the presence of high antibody titers (> 10 times normal levels) that allow bypassing biopsies, appear in less than half of adult cases^[21]. Besides, currently, when adult subjects present symptoms such as dyspepsia, an upper endoscopy with duodenal biopsy is routinely performed independently of CD serology^[18].

Therefore, correct diagnosis can only be achieved on a few occasions, where high tTGA titers are present in adult patients. For low titers, duodenal biopsies have to be performed to verify histological damage and begin a gluten-free diet. However, adult patients with symptoms and serology could have two types of enteropathies based on duodenal biopsy: (1) Duodenal mucosa with slight villous atrophy and increased intraepithelial lymphocytes (Marsh 3A). When a DQ2 or DQ8 human leukocyte antigen (HLA) genotype is found, the patient should be put on a gluten-free diet, and the clinical and histological response must be subsequently evaluated. Thus, 4 out of the 5 criteria for gluten-sensitive enteropathy diagnosis, proposed by Catassi and Fasano^[22], would be fulfilled (Table 2); and (2) Mucosa with no villous atrophy, but with a marked increase in intraepithelial lymphocytes (> 25 LIE/100 enterocytes). Such cases present lymphocytic enteritis (Marsh I) with diverse etiologies that are independent of CD: *Helicobacter pylori* infection, Non Steroid Anti-inflammatory Drugs intake, infections or Crohn's disease, among others. If none of these conditions are suspected, and the patient has a CD-compatible HLA genotype, the biopsy study can be extended by: Analyzing IgA antitransglutaminase subepithelial deposits^[23] and flow cytometry or immunohistochemistry of the duodenal lymphocytic population, in order to evaluate the prevalence of gamma-delta receptor expression in T lymphocytes, which could point to CD^[24].

Although, these tools could implicate CD, in order to fulfill the criteria proposed by Catassi, the lymphocytic enteritis response to the gluten-free diet has to be evaluated, along with a biopsy, once clinical improvement is seen. The evolution of lymphocytic enteritis associated with adult CD, and its relation to complications are not clearly understood. Therefore, once lymphocytic enteritis

is found in an adult subject with negative serology, CD diagnosis must be carefully made with a subsequent follow-up check.

POSSIBLE PATHOGENIC DIFFERENCES

A number of studies have evaluated intestinal microbiota in relation to CD^[25]. The colonization process during the early stages of life, and the interaction between the microbiota and the immune system, could have an important role in the pathogenesis of CD.

The composition of the intestinal microbiota, both in duodenal biopsies and stool samples of celiac children and adults, exhibits alterations in relation to non-celiac controls^[26]. Age-related differences in duodenal microbiota composition have also been found between celiac and non-celiac subjects^[27,28]. In general terms, the richness in intestinal microbiota increases with age, as expected. Moreover, differences were also observed in the kind of bacterial community in children and adults. Although these are speculative data, it could be hypothesized that the interaction between microbiota and the immune system differs based on the age-varying microbial composition. This would originate a different response, which could be related to the clinical, analytical and histological responses, we see in adults.

Intraepithelial lymphocytes (IEL) have an important role in the immune response, which is part of the pathogenesis of CD. Within these lymphocytes, the most characteristic feature of CD, independent of the presentation age, is the increase in CD3+ lymphocytes, which express the $\gamma\delta$ receptor. The function of $\gamma\delta$ IELs is not known, but they could have a regulatory role in the immune response^[29]. This would explain their relationship with the degree of villous atrophy both in children and in adults^[30]. Another characteristic population is CD3-, which is inversely related to age. It appears at twice the frequency in children under three years of age than adults^[31]. Changes in IEL population may be related to the presentation form according to age. Advances in the knowledge of these lymphocytes and CD pathogenesis will offer answers in the near future.

EVOLUTION AND PROGNOSIS

CD treatment consists of a strict life-long gluten-free diet (GFD). Once the diet has begun, a clinical response can be observed in most patients. However, in contrast to children, up to 30% adults may still have symptoms despite having withdrawn gluten from their diet. This fact demands investigation, in adult forms, of other possible causes associated to symptoms in celiac patients: Lactose intolerance, bacterial overgrowth, pancreatic insufficiency, microscopic colitis or refractory CD.

Not only do a high percentage of adults not respond to the GFD, there is also an observable lack of histological recovery during follow-up. Recent studies have shown that more than 50% of adults do not recover from villous

atrophy, even after two years on a proper diet^[32]. In the case of children, even though information is limited, there is duodenal mucosa recovery in the vast majority (95%) during the first two years after the diagnosis^[33]. The main cause of this lack of mucosal recovery in adults could be the continuous and inadvertent ingestion of small amounts of gluten. This cause is likely to be more frequent in adults, since the daily diets of children are more closely monitored.

A strict adherence to the diet along with duodenal mucosa normalization should be the main objectives of adult follow-up. The lack of dietary compliance and persistence of histological damage, are two factors associated with the development of lymphoproliferative disease in adults, which is the most severe complication associated to CD^[34]. A recent Swedish population study noted that celiac patients with persistent villous atrophy, during follow-up, had twice the risk of developing a malignant lymphoproliferative disease, mostly T lymphoma^[35]. These findings make it necessary to recommend a control biopsy during the second year after diagnosis, in order to evaluate villous atrophy recovery. Thus, those individuals at higher risk of developing CD-associated complications could be identified and a closer follow-up performed in conjunction with monitoring dietary compliance.

CD patients have other complications that should be monitored. Decrease in bone mineral density is probably due to vitamin D deficiency. However, the risk of fracture in CD patients is unclear, and the predictive value of bone densitometry is not sufficient to identify individuals at high-risk of fracture. It seems reasonable to perform bone densitometry on adult CD patients in high-risk situations who include post-menopausal women, men > 55 years and those with known osteopenia before the diagnosis of CD^[36]. Further studies are required to identify the efficacy and cost-effectiveness to perform bone densitometry on all adult CD patients at diagnosis, and to identify the follow-up frequency of performing such analysis^[37]. Children may have reduced bone mass at diagnosis. However, they are more likely to have fully restored bone mass after 6-12 mo of a GFD than adults. Bone densitometry is not generally required in newly diagnosed pediatric patients with uncomplicated CD. Special attention to ensure normal growth and development is recommended in children^[38].

Hyposplenism may affect more than one-third of adult CD patients, while it is not a complication in pediatric patients. The incidence of hyposplenism correlates with the duration of pre-exposure to gluten, and it is higher in those with concomitant autoimmune disorders or pre-malignant conditions^[39]. Based on these associated factors, splenic function may be determined in a selected group of adult CD patients: Older patients at diagnosis, those with concomitant autoimmune or premalignant disorders, and patients with a previous history of major infections or thromboembolism. As a diagnostic tool, pitted red cell counting remains an accurate, quantitative and inexpensive method^[40].

Table 3 Summary of key features associated with the presentation of celiac disease in adults

High prevalence, even in advanced age
Oligosymptomatic presentation
Serology may have a low diagnostic yield
Duodenal biopsy usually shows mild atrophy or lymphocytic enteritis
Lymphocytic enteritis is a common presentation in adult celiac
The study of duodenal biopsy by an expert pathologist and the use of advanced techniques like flow cytometry may be useful for the diagnosis
Monitoring of the strict dietary compliance and the recovery of villous atrophy
The presence of associated complications should be identified at an early stage

Protein-conjugate vaccines should be recommended in patients with major hyposplenism, defined by a pitted red cell value higher than 10% and/or an IgM memory B cell frequency lower than 10%.

Pediatric CD may be followed using the same scheme as adults. However, bone densitometry and follow-up biopsy should only be performed in select cases. Children with good adherence to GFD and normal antibody levels, should be followed annually instead of every two years. The main reason for this shorter interval is the need for an early recognition of conditions associated to pediatric CD, and especially to ensure normal growth and development. The appearance of malignant complications associated to CD, as well as the development of refractory CD, is both exclusively associated to adult forms. Even when both situations are infrequent, they dictate a different follow-up from that performed for pediatric patients.

CONCLUSION

CD has many differences between children and adults. In adults, the presentation of the disease is less marked than during childhood. Clinicians must be aware of the less marked clinical profile in adults than children, such as atypical or minor symptoms, lower antibody titers and mild mucosal lesions (Table 3). Pediatric diagnostic criteria (ESPGHAN), cannot always be applied to adulthood. In fact, duodenal biopsy is necessary in most adult CD diagnosis, and during follow-up, to assess mucosal recovery and to detect complications.

REFERENCES

- Ludvigsson JF, Bai JC, Biagi F, Card TR, Ciacci C, Ciclitira PJ, Green PH, Hadjivassiliou M, Holdaway A, van Heel DA, Kaukinen K, Leffler DA, Leonard JN, Lundin KE, McGough N, Davidson M, Murray JA, Swift GL, Walker MM, Zingone F, Sanders DS. Diagnosis and management of adult coeliac disease: guidelines from the British Society of Gastroenterology. *Gut* 2014; **63**: 1210-1228 [PMID: 24917550 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2013-306578]
- Kang JY, Kang AH, Green A, Gwee KA, Ho KY. Systematic review: worldwide variation in the frequency of coeliac disease and changes over time. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2013; **38**: 226-245 [PMID: 23782240 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12373]
- Vaquero L, Caminero A, Nuñez A, Hernando M, Iglesias C, Casqueiro J, Vivas S. Coeliac disease screening in first-degree relatives on the basis of biopsy and genetic risk. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **26**: 263-267 [PMID: 24300305 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.000000000000020]
- Volta U, Caio G, Stanghellini V, De Giorgio R. The changing clinical profile of celiac disease: a 15-year experience (1998-2012) in an Italian referral center. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2014; **14**: 194 [PMID: 25404189 DOI: 10.1186/s12876-014-0194-x]
- Rubio-Tapia A, Ludvigsson JF, Brantner TL, Murray JA, Everhart JE. The prevalence of celiac disease in the United States. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2012; **107**: 1538-1544; quiz 1537, 1545 [PMID: 22850429 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2012.219]
- Mariné M, Farre C, Alsina M, Vilar P, Cortijo M, Salas A, Fernández-Bañares F, Rosinach M, Santaolalla R, Loras C, Marqués T, Cusi V, Hernández MI, Carrasco A, Ribes J, Viver JM, Esteve M. The prevalence of coeliac disease is significantly higher in children compared with adults. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **33**: 477-486 [PMID: 21166832 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2010.04543.x]
- Pratesi R, Gandolfi L, Garcia SG, Modelli IC, Lopes de Almeida P, Bocca AL, Catassi C. Prevalence of coeliac disease: unexplained age-related variation in the same population. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2003; **38**: 747-750 [PMID: 12889561 DOI: 10.1080/00365520310003255]
- Makharia GK, Verma AK, Amarchand R, Bhatnagar S, Das P, Goswami A, Bhatia V, Ahuja V, Datta Gupta S, Anand K. Prevalence of celiac disease in the northern part of India: a community based study. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **26**: 894-900 [PMID: 21182543 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2010.06606.x]
- West J, Logan RF, Hill PG, Lloyd A, Lewis S, Hubbard R, Reader R, Holmes GK, Khaw KT. Seroprevalence, correlates, and characteristics of undetected coeliac disease in England. *Gut* 2003; **52**: 960-965 [PMID: 12801951 DOI: 10.1136/gut.52.7.960]
- Vilppula A, Kaukinen K, Luostarinen L, Kerkelä I, Patrikainen H, Valve R, Mäki M, Collin P. Increasing prevalence and high incidence of celiac disease in elderly people: a population-based study. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2009; **9**: 49 [PMID: 19558729 DOI: 10.1186/1471-230X-9-49]
- Armstrong D, Don-Wauchope AC, Verdu EF. Testing for gluten-related disorders in clinical practice: the role of serology in managing the spectrum of gluten sensitivity. *Can J Gastroenterol* 2011; **25**: 193-197 [PMID: 21523259]
- Vivas S, Ruiz de Morales JM, Fernandez M, Hernando M, Herrero B, Casqueiro J, Gutierrez S. Age-related clinical, serological, and histopathological features of celiac disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2008; **103**: 2360-2365; quiz 2366 [PMID: 18702652 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2008.01977.x]
- Lionetti E, Catassi C. New clues in celiac disease epidemiology, pathogenesis, clinical manifestations, and treatment. *Int Rev Immunol* 2011; **30**: 219-231 [PMID: 21787227 DOI: 10.3109/08830185.2011.602443]
- Bonaci-Nikolic B, Andrejevic S, Radlovic N, Davidovic I, Sofronic L, Spuran M, Micev M, Nikolic MM. Serological and clinical comparison of children and adults with anti-endomysial antibodies. *J Clin Immunol* 2007; **27**: 163-171 [PMID: 17243009 DOI: 10.1007/s10875-006-9062-y]
- Lauret E, Rodrigo L. Celiac disease and autoimmune-associated conditions. *Biomed Res Int* 2013; **2013**: 127589 [PMID: 23984314 DOI: 10.1155/2013/127589]
- Dickey W, Kearney N. Overweight in celiac disease: prevalence, clinical characteristics, and effect of a gluten-free diet. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 2356-2359 [PMID: 17032202 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2006.00750.x]
- Cheng J, Brar PS, Lee AR, Green PH. Body mass index in celiac disease: beneficial effect of a gluten-free diet. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2010; **44**: 267-271 [PMID: 19779362 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e3181b7ed58]
- Santolaria Piedrafita S, Fernández Bañares F. [Gluten-sensitive enteropathy and functional dyspepsia]. *Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2012; **35**: 78-88 [PMID: 22177265 DOI: 10.1016/j.gastrohep.2011.10.006]
- Sainsbury A, Sanders DS, Ford AC. Prevalence of irritable bowel syndrome-type symptoms in patients with celiac disease: a meta-analysis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **11**: 359-365.e1 [PMID: 23593651 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2012.12.006]

- 23246645 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2012.11.033]
- 20 **Husby S**, Koletzko S, Korponay-Szabó IR, Mearin ML, Phillips A, Shamir R, Troncone R, Giersiepen K, Branski D, Catassi C, Lelgeman M, Mäki M, Ribes-Koninckx C, Ventura A, Zimmer KP. European Society for Pediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology, and Nutrition guidelines for the diagnosis of coeliac disease. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2012; **54**: 136-160 [PMID: 22197856 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0b013e31821a23d0]
- 21 **Vivas S**, Ruiz de Morales JG, Riestra S, Arias L, Fuentes D, Alvarez N, Calleja S, Hernando M, Herrero B, Casqueiro J, Rodrigo L. Duodenal biopsy may be avoided when high transglutaminase antibody titers are present. *World J Gastroenterol* 2009; **15**: 4775-4780 [PMID: 19824110 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.15.4775]
- 22 **Catassi C**, Fasano A. Celiac disease diagnosis: simple rules are better than complicated algorithms. *Am J Med* 2010; **123**: 691-693 [PMID: 20670718 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjmed.2010.02.019]
- 23 **Esteve M**, Rosinach M, Fernández-Bañares F, Farré C, Salas A, Alsina M, Vilar P, Abad-Lacruz A, Forné M, Mariné M, Santaolalla R, Espinós JC, Viver JM. Spectrum of gluten-sensitive enteropathy in first-degree relatives of patients with coeliac disease: clinical relevance of lymphocytic enteritis. *Gut* 2006; **55**: 1739-1745 [PMID: 16709658 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2006.095299]
- 24 **Salmi TT**, Collin P, Reunala T, Mäki M, Kaukinen K. Diagnostic methods beyond conventional histology in coeliac disease diagnosis. *Dig Liver Dis* 2010; **42**: 28-32 [PMID: 19473894 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2009.04.004]
- 25 **Laparra MOM**, Sanz Y. Microbiota intestinal y enfermedad celiaca. In: Rodrigo L y Peña AS, editor. *Enfermedad celiaca y sensibilidad al gluten no celiaca*. 213. Barcelona, España: Omnia Science, 2013: 479-496 [DOI: 10.3926/oms.33]
- 26 **Collado MC**, Donat E, Ribes-Koninckx C, Calabuig M, Sanz Y. Specific duodenal and faecal bacterial groups associated with paediatric coeliac disease. *J Clin Pathol* 2009; **62**: 264-269 [PMID: 18996905 DOI: 10.1136/jcp.2008.061366]
- 27 **Nistal E**, Caminero A, Herrán AR, Arias L, Vivas S, de Morales JM, Calleja S, de Miera LE, Arroyo P, Casqueiro J. Differences of small intestinal bacteria populations in adults and children with/without celiac disease: effect of age, gluten diet, and disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2012; **18**: 649-656 [PMID: 21826768 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.21830]
- 28 **Nistal E**, Caminero A, Vivas S, Ruiz de Morales JM, Sáenz de Miera LE, Rodríguez-Aparicio LB, Casqueiro J. Differences in faecal bacteria populations and faecal bacteria metabolism in healthy adults and celiac disease patients. *Biochimie* 2012; **94**: 1724-1729 [PMID: 22542995 DOI: 10.1016/j.biochi.2012.03.025]
- 29 **Leon F**. Flow cytometry of intestinal intraepithelial lymphocytes in celiac disease. *J Immunol Methods* 2011; **363**: 177-186 [PMID: 20833175 DOI: 10.1016/j.jim.2010.09.002]
- 30 **Calleja S**, Vivas S, Santiuste M, Arias L, Hernando M, Nistal E, Casqueiro J, Ruiz de Morales JG. Dynamics of non-conventional intraepithelial lymphocytes-NK, NKT, and $\gamma\delta$ T-in celiac disease: relationship with age, diet, and histopathology. *Dig Dis Sci* 2011; **56**: 2042-2049 [PMID: 21221796 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-010-1534-5]
- 31 **Camarero C**, Leon F, Sanchez L, Asensio A, Roy G. Age-related variation of intraepithelial lymphocytes subsets in normal human duodenal mucosa. *Dig Dis Sci* 2007; **52**: 685-691 [PMID: 17235707 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-006-9176-3]
- 32 **Rubio-Tapia A**, Rahim MW, See JA, Lahr BD, Wu TT, Murray JA. Mucosal recovery and mortality in adults with celiac disease after treatment with a gluten-free diet. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 1412-1420 [PMID: 20145607 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2010.10]
- 33 **Wahab PJ**, Meijer JW, Mulder CJ. Histologic follow-up of people with celiac disease on a gluten-free diet: slow and incomplete recovery. *Am J Clin Pathol* 2002; **118**: 459-463 [PMID: 12219789 DOI: 10.1309/EVXT-851X-WHLC-RLX9]
- 34 **Elfström P**, Granath F, Ekström Smedby K, Montgomery SM, Askling J, Ekblom A, Ludvigsson JF. Risk of lymphoproliferative malignancy in relation to small intestinal histopathology among patients with celiac disease. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2011; **103**: 436-444 [PMID: 21289299 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djq564]
- 35 **Lebwohl B**, Granath F, Ekblom A, Smedby KE, Murray JA, Neugut AI, Green PH, Ludvigsson JF. Mucosal healing and risk for lymphoproliferative malignancy in celiac disease: a population-based cohort study. *Ann Intern Med* 2013; **159**: 169-175 [PMID: 23922062 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-159-3-201308060-00006]
- 36 **Lewis NR**, Scott BB. Should patients with coeliac disease have their bone mineral density measured? *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2005; **17**: 1065-1070 [PMID: 16148551 DOI: 10.1097/00042737-200510000-00009]
- 37 **West J**, Logan RF, Card TR, Smith C, Hubbard R. Fracture risk in people with celiac disease: a population-based cohort study. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 429-436 [PMID: 12891545 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(03)00891-6]
- 38 **Ribes-Koninckx C**, Mearin ML, Korponay-Szabó IR, Shamir R, Husby S, Ventura A, Branski D, Catassi C, Koletzko S, Mäki M, Troncone R, Zimmer KP. Coeliac disease diagnosis: ESPGHAN 1990 criteria or need for a change? Results of a questionnaire. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2012; **54**: 15-19 [PMID: 21716133 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0b013e31822a00bb]
- 39 **Thomas HJ**, Wotton CJ, Yeates D, Ahmad T, Jewell DP, Goldacre MJ. Pneumococcal infection in patients with coeliac disease. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **20**: 624-628 [PMID: 18679063 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0b013e3282f45764]
- 40 **Di Sabatino A**, Brunetti L, Carnevale Maffè G, Giuffrida P, Corazza GR. Is it worth investigating splenic function in patients with celiac disease? *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 2313-2318 [PMID: 23613624 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i15.2313]

P- Reviewer: Bener A S- Editor: Ji FF

L- Editor: A E- Editor: Li D



Basic Study

Plecanatide and dolcanatide, novel guanylate cyclase-C agonists, ameliorate gastrointestinal inflammation in experimental models of murine colitis

Kunwar Shailubhai, Vaseem Palejwala, Krishna Priya Arjunan, Sayali Saykhedkar, Bradley Nefsky, John A Foss, Stephen Comiskey, Gary S Jacob, Scott E Plevy

Kunwar Shailubhai, Vaseem Palejwala, John A Foss, Stephen Comiskey, R and D Center, Synergy Pharmaceuticals Inc., Doylestown, PA 18902, United States

Krishna Priya Arjunan, Sayali Saykhedkar, Bradley Nefsky, Baruch Blumberg Institute, PA Biotechnology Center, Doylestown, PA 18902, United States

Gary S Jacob, Synergy Pharmaceuticals Inc., New York, NY 10170, United States

Scott E Plevy, Departments of Medicine, Microbiology and Immunology, University of North Carolina School of Medicine, Chapel Hill, NC 27599, United States

Author contributions: Shailubhai K, Arjunan KP, Saykhedkar S, Nefsky B, Foss JA and Comiskey S contributed to study concept, design, data acquisition, analysis and interpretation; Shailubhai K, Palejwala V, Jacob GS and Plevy SE contributed to manuscript preparation, critical revision and provided important intellectual content.

Institutional review board statement: Experiments reported in this manuscript did not involve human samples and hence institutional review is not applicable.

Institutional animal care and use committee statement: Studies employing BALB/c and TCR $\alpha^{-/-}$ mice were performed under the direct supervision of Doctor Scott Plevy at the University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine (Pittsburg, PA). Animals obtained from Jackson Laboratories (Bar Harbor, ME) were housed in accordance with guidelines from the American Association for Laboratory Animal Care and Research. Institutional Animal Care and Use Committee of the University of Pittsburgh approved all protocols. Epistem Ltd (Manchester, United Kingdom) conducted DSS and TNBS-induced colitis studies employing BDF1 mice. Animals obtained from Harlan Laboratories, United Kingdom, were housed individually in ventilated cages in a specific pathogen-free barrier unit in compliance with animal welfare regulations. All procedures were certified according to the United Kingdom Home Office (Animal

Procedures) Act 1986.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Shailubhai K, Foss JA, Comiskey S, Palejwala V and Jacob GS are employees of Synergy Pharmaceuticals. Nefsky B, Arjunan KP, Saykhedkar S have no conflict of interest. Plevy SE received compensation as a consultant from Synergy Pharmaceuticals Inc.

Data sharing statement: Authors agree to share the raw data included in the manuscript with other researchers.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Kunwar Shailubhai, Doctor of Philosophy, Chief Scientific Officer, R and D Center, Synergy Pharmaceuticals Inc., 3805 Old Easton Road, Doylestown, PA 18902, United States. shailu@synergypharma.com
Telephone: +1-215-5896308
Fax: +1-215-5896309

Received: April 21, 2015
Peer-review started: April 21, 2015
First decision: July 1, 2015
Revised: July 16, 2015
Accepted: August 13, 2015
Article in press: August 14, 2015
Published online: November 6, 2015

Abstract

AIM: To evaluate the effect of orally administered

plecanatide or dolcanatide, analogs of uroguanylin, on amelioration of colitis in murine models.

METHODS: The cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP) stimulatory potency of plecanatide and dolcanatide was measured using a human colon carcinoma T84 cell-based assay. For animal studies all test agents were formulated in phosphate buffered saline. Sulfasalazine or 5-amino salicylic acid (5-ASA) served as positive controls. Effect of oral treatment with test agents on amelioration of acute colitis induced either by dextran sulfate sodium (DSS) in drinking water or by rectal instillation of trinitrobenzene sulfonic (TNBS) acid, was examined in BALB/c and/or BDF1 mice. Additionally, the effect of orally administered plecanatide on the spontaneous colitis in T-cell receptor alpha knockout ($\text{TCR}\alpha^{-/-}$) mice was also examined. Amelioration of colitis was assessed by monitoring severity of colitis, disease activity index and by histopathology. Frozen colon tissues were used to measure myeloperoxidase activity.

RESULTS: Plecanatide and dolcanatide are structurally related analogs of uroguanylin, which is an endogenous ligand of guanylate cyclase-C (GC-C). As expected from the agonists of GC-C, both plecanatide and dolcanatide exhibited potent cGMP-stimulatory activity in T84 cells. Once-daily treatment by oral gavage with either of these analogs (0.05-0.5 mg/kg) ameliorated colitis in both DSS and TNBS-induced models of acute colitis, as assessed by body weight, reduction in colitis severity ($P < 0.05$) and disease activity index ($P < 0.05$). Amelioration of colitis by either of the drug candidates was comparable to that achieved by orally administered sulfasalazine or 5-ASA. Plecanatide also effectively ameliorated colitis in $\text{TCR}\alpha^{-/-}$ mice, a model of spontaneous colitis. As dolcanatide exhibited higher resistance to proteolysis in simulated gastric and intestinal juices, it was selected for further studies.

CONCLUSION: This is the first-ever study reporting the therapeutic utility of GC-C agonists as a new class of orally delivered and mucosally active drug candidates for the treatment of inflammatory bowel diseases.

Key words: Guanylate cyclase-C; Inflammatory bowel disease; Uroguanylin; Plecanatide; Dolcanatide

© The Author(s) 2015. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Plecanatide (SP-304) and dolcanatide (SP-333) are structurally close analogs of the human endogenous natriuretic peptide uroguanylin, a ligand of guanylate cyclase-C (GC-C). Here we report that oral treatment with plecanatide or dolcanatide effectively ameliorates colitis in acute and chronic models of murine experimental colitis. The anti-inflammatory activity of plecanatide and dolcanatide was comparable to that achieved after treatment with sulfasalazine or 5-amino salicylic acid. This is the first-ever study reporting the therapeutic utility of GC-C agonists as a new class of

orally delivered and mucosally active drug candidates for the treatment and management of inflammatory bowel diseases in humans.

Shailubhai K, Palejwala V, Arjunan KP, Saykhedkar S, Nefsky B, Foss JA, Comiskey S, Jacob GS, Plevy SE. Plecanatide and dolcanatide, novel guanylate cyclase-C agonists, ameliorate gastrointestinal inflammation in experimental models of murine colitis. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(4): 213-222 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i4/213.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i4.213>

INTRODUCTION

Chronic inflammatory bowel diseases (IBD) such as Crohn's disease (CD) and ulcerative colitis (UC) are multifactorial gastrointestinal (GI) diseases with high incidences worldwide^[1]. While the etiology of these diseases remains largely unknown, one of the contributing factors may be poorly regulated immune response against the enteric microbiota in genetically predisposed individuals^[2]. Existing therapies for symptomatic relief of IBD include anti-inflammatory drugs, immunosuppressants, biologic agents, antibiotics, and aminosalicic acid (5-ASA) based drugs. However, these treatments are not entirely satisfactory due to limited effectiveness and associated side effects^[3-6]. Thus there is a need to identify drugs that provide safer, convenient and efficient means of therapeutic intervention for IBD. An ideal conceptual advance would be to develop oral drugs that act locally at the site of inflammation to maximize efficacy and to minimize systemic side effects.

Uroguanylin (UG) and guanylin (GN) activate guanylate cyclase-C (GC-C) receptors expressed on the epithelial cells lining the GI mucosa to stimulate production of cyclic GMP (cGMP), which in turn sequentially activates protein kinase G- II and cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator to regulate ion and fluid transport, epithelial cell homeostasis and to maintain barrier function in the GI mucosa^[7-10]. The expression of mRNAs encoding UG and GN are markedly suppressed in human colonic polyps, tumors and in inflamed tissues from UC and CD patients^[10-13]. These findings raise the possibility that the deficiency of UG and GN might be associated with the pathogenesis of these diseases. Consistent with this notion, we have demonstrated that oral administration with UG not only inhibits polyp formation but also delays their progression to adenocarcinomas^[10]. Similar findings have been reported by other researchers underscoring the evolving role of GC-C signaling in suppression of GI inflammation and prevention of colorectal tumorigenesis^[13-16].

Maintenance of the intestinal epithelial cell barrier function is considered to be crucial for host immune defense. Thus, dysfunctional barrier function and

increased gut permeability might be crucial pathophysiological factors underlying the etiology of IBD. Recent studies with the GC-C^{-/-} and UG^{-/-} knockout mice further illustrate the involvement of GC-C signaling in the maintenance of homeostatic intestinal barrier function, permeability and intestinal epithelial cell proliferation^[17,18]. Moreover, disruption in GC-C signaling is associated with a reduced number of colonic goblet cells, resulting in decreased production of mucin and intestinal trefoil factor^[13], which are the principal components of the gut-coating mucus layer for maintenance of epithelial barrier protection and for post-injury restitution. Importantly, a recent study indicated that colitis in GC-C^{-/-} and IL-10^{-/-} double knockout mice was significantly more severe as compared to that in GC-C^{+/+} and IL-10^{-/-} mice, suggesting a role of GC-C as a suppressor of spontaneous T-cell-driven intestinal inflammation^[19]. In this regard, it has been reported that cell-permeable analogs of cGMP exhibit anti-inflammatory activity, possibly *via* inhibition of NF- κ B activation^[20]. In addition, atrial natriuretic peptide, an agonist of natriuretic peptide receptor A (NPR-A), also exhibits anti-inflammatory activity in both *in vitro* and *in vivo* models through stimulation of cGMP production^[21]. Consistent with these observations, disruption of the *NPR-A* gene leads to augmented production of pro-inflammatory cytokines and growth factors^[22]. Collectively, these studies suggest that activation of GC-C/cGMP signaling may have therapeutic potential in the management of GI inflammatory diseases.

Based on results from thermal bond energy calculations, 3-D structure modeling, molecular simulation and structure-activity relationship studies, we discovered plecanatide and dolcanatide as novel analogs of UG that bind and activate GC-C receptors to stimulate production of cGMP in a pH-dependent manner. Thus, these agonists are expected to mimic UG function in the GI tract^[23-25]. This is the first study demonstrating that oral treatment with plecanatide or dolcanatide ameliorates GI inflammation in acute as well as in chronic models of experimental colitis in mice.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Materials

Human colonic carcinoma T84 cells obtained from Leonard Forte, University of Missouri, MO, were cultured as described earlier^[10]. Plecanatide and dolcanatide were chemically synthesized by the procedures as described previously^[24,26]. All other chemicals and other reagents were obtained from commercially available vendors.

Methods

Animal studies: Studies employing BALB/c and T-cell receptor alpha knockout (TCR α ^{-/-}) mice were performed at the University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine (Pittsburg, PA). Animals obtained from Jackson Laboratories (Bar Harbor, ME) were housed in accordance with guidelines from the American

Association for Laboratory Animal Care and Research Protocols as approved by the Institutional Animal Care and Use Committee. Epistem Ltd (Manchester, United Kingdom) conducted dextran sulfate sodium (DSS) and TNBS-induced colitis studies in BDF1 mice. Animals obtained from Harlan Laboratories, United Kingdom, were held in individually ventilated cages in a specific pathogen-free barrier unit in compliance with animal welfare regulations. The day-night cycle was constant, with light and dark phases of 12 h each. At the end of experimental protocols, mice were euthanized by CO₂ followed by cervical dislocation.

Cyclic GMP stimulation assay in T84 cells: Potencies of plecanatide and dolcanatide to stimulate cGMP synthesis in T84 cells was assayed as described previously^[10]. Briefly, confluent monolayers of T84 cells were pre-incubated with 1 mmol/L isobutylmethylxanthine, a phosphodiesterase inhibitor, in DMEM for 10 min at 37 °C followed by incubation with test peptide for 30 min. The reaction was terminated by adding 3% perchloric acid. Following centrifugation and neutralization with 0.5 N NaOH, supernatants were used for measurements of intracellular cGMP using an ELISA kit (Cayman Chemical Co., Ann Arbor, MI). Results are expressed as pmol of cGMP/mg of protein in the cell extracts.

TNBS-induced colitis in BALB/c mice: BALB/c mice ($n = 5-8$ /group) were used to evaluate the anti-inflammatory effects of plecanatide on TNBS-induced colitis by previously described procedures^[27,28]. Briefly, colitis was induced in 2-4 mo old female BALB/c mice by administering 2.5 mg TNBS in 50% ethanol into the lumen of the colon (injection volume 100 μ L). Plecanatide (0, 0.5 and 2.5 mg/kg) formulated in PBS was administered by oral gavage for 7 d, with the first dose given the same day as TNBS challenge. After 7 d of treatment animals were euthanized, GI tissues were collected for histopathological examination, and inflammation scoring was performed^[29].

TNBS-induced colitis in BDF-1 mice: A TNBS-induced colitis study in 10-12 wk old BDF-1 mice ($n = 10$ /group) was conducted at the Epistem Ltd., United Kingdom, using a procedure essentially similar to that described above except that mice were dosed with plecanatide (0.005-5 mg/kg) a day before TNBS treatment. Daily administration of plecanatide was continued until 7th day when the mice were euthanized. Colon tissues were removed and weighed. Distal sections were fixed, stained with H and E, and evaluated for histopathology and visual severity scores^[27,28]. Scoring of the H and E-stained tissue sections employed the following criteria: Normal-appearing crypts (score 0); abnormal crypt pathology without ulceration (score 1); depleted crypts with some ulceration/ inflammation (score 2); 20%-70% depleted crypts and increased ulceration/inflammation (score 3); > 70% depleted crypts with substantial ulceration/

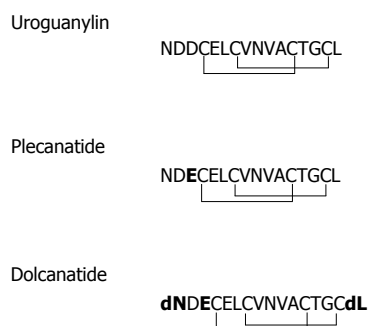


Figure 1 Primary structures of uroguanylin, plecanatide, and dolcanatide. Single-letter abbreviations for amino acids are depicted. Plecanatide is similar to UG except for the substitution of aspartic acid (D) at position 3 from the N-terminus of UG with glutamic acid (E). The structure of dolcanatide is similar to plecanatide except that the amino acids at both termini are replaced with their respective D-stereoisomers. Uroguanylin as well as its analogs have four cysteines (C) enabling the formation of two intramolecular disulfide bonds. Substituted amino acids in plecanatide and dolcanatide are shown in bold type. UG: Uroguanylin.

inflammation (score 4); and totally ulcerated/inflamed colon with no crypts remaining (score 5). All slides were scored in a blinded manner. Scoring criteria were similar to that described below for DSS induced colitis studies.

DSS induced colitis in BDF-1 mice: This study was conducted by the Epistem Ltd., United Kingdom. BDF1 mice ($n = 8-10$; age 10-12 wk) were given 5% DSS in the drinking water on day 0 to induce colitis. Plecanatide or dolcanatide (0.005-5 mg/kg) in 0.1 M phosphate buffer (pH7) was administered daily by oral gavage starting a day prior to DSS administration (day-1) through 7th day. Oral gavage with sulfasalazine (80 mg/kg) or 5-ASA (100 mg/kg) served as a positive control. Mice were euthanized at the end of the treatment and tissues from large intestines were removed and weighed. The distal sections were fixed for histopathology evaluations. Colitis severity was assessed by histopathological evaluation of the H and E-stained tissue sections as described above. Disease activity index (DAI) was calculated by determining body weight, stool consistency, and the presence of overt blood in stools or around the anus, substantially similar to that reported earlier^[30].

Spontaneous colitis in TCR $\alpha^{-/-}$ knockout mice: This study was conducted at the University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine, PA. The TCR $\alpha^{-/-}$ mice were matched for age and sex in all groups. Sixteen-week-old mice were administered plecanatide (0.5 or 2.5 mg/kg) or vehicle by oral gavage for 14 d (6 mice/group). Mice were euthanized 12 h after the final dose and GI tissues collected for histopathological evaluation of colitis severity. Scoring of colitis severity was as previously described^[31].

Myeloperoxidase activity: Myeloperoxidase (MPO) activity in colonic tissue samples was measured according to methods described previously^[32]. Briefly, the

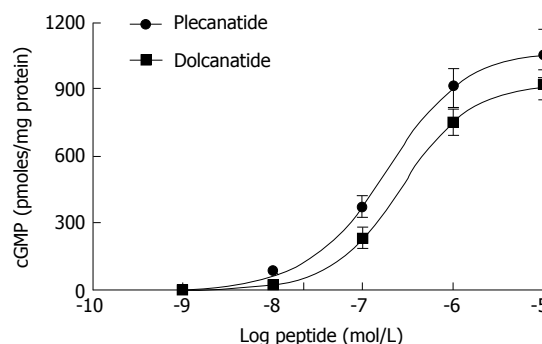


Figure 2 Plecanatide and dolcanatide mediated stimulation of cyclic guanosine monophosphate production in T84 cells. The potency of plecanatide and dolcanatide to stimulate cGMP production was evaluated using the T84 cell bioassay (see Materials and Methods). The data presented are an average of three determinations and are expressed as pmoles cGMP/mg protein $\pm$ SD. cGMP: Cyclic guanosine monophosphate.

rate of change in absorbance at 450 nm was recorded when 20 μ L of tissue extract was incubated with 150 μ L of reaction buffer containing 0.26 mg/mL o-dianisidine and 0.6 μ L/mL H₂O₂. Each reaction was performed in triplicate. The rate of reaction was determined (initial slope) and normalized to the protein concentration of the sample.

Statistical analysis

Statistical significance was performed by comparing mean values of the control with that of the treated samples, using 2-way unpaired Student *t*-tests, assuming unequal variance, in Microsoft Excel and PRISM. A *P* value < 0.05 was considered to be statistically significant.

RESULTS

Plecanatide and dolcanatide are analogs of human UG

Plecanatide is structurally similar to UG, differing only in the substitution of Asp³ with Glu³. Dolcanatide is similar to plecanatide in structure except that L-Asn¹ and L-Leu¹⁶ are replaced by D-Asn¹ and D-Leu¹⁶ at the N and C-termini, respectively (Figures 1 and 2). In T84 cells assay, both plecanatide and dolcanatide activate GC-C receptors to stimulate cGMP synthesis in a dose-dependent manner with EC₅₀ values of 1.9×10^{-7} mol/L and 2.8×10^{-7} mol/L, respectively (Figure 2).

Plecanatide ameliorates spontaneous and chemically induced colitis

In a preliminary study, the ability of orally-administered plecanatide to ameliorate colitis was evaluated in TNBS-induced colitis in BALB/c mice (Figure 3A). Treatment with plecanatide at 0.5 and 2.5 mg/kg for 7 d effectively reduced colitis severity scores as compared to vehicle treatment. Oral treatment with plecanatide was also evaluated in TCR $\alpha^{-/-}$ mice that develop chronic colitis spontaneously. In this model, oral treatment with 0.5 and 2.5 mg/kg continuously for two weeks reduced colitis scores as compared to those in the vehicle-treated group (Figure 3B). Taken together, these preliminary

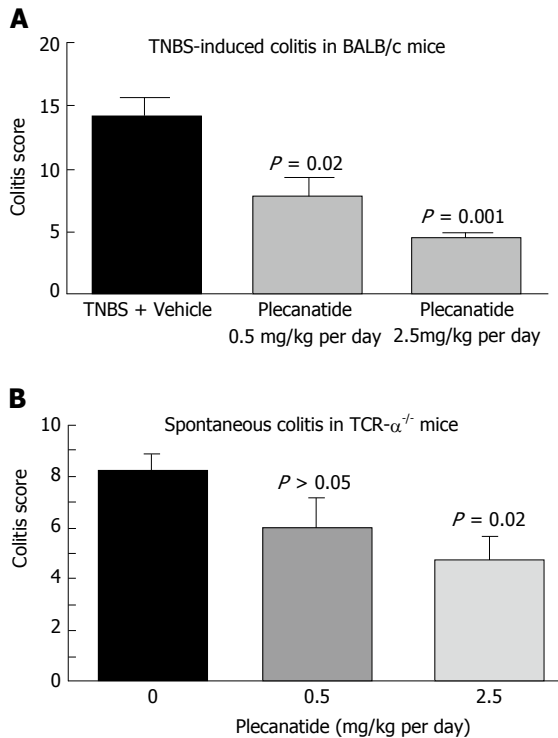


Figure 3 Oral treatment with plecanatide ameliorates colitis in acute and chronic mouse models. A: Acute colitis examined in BALB/c mice ($n = 5-8/\text{group}$) was induced by rectal instillation of TNBS. Mice were administered an oral gavage of vehicle or plecanatide (0.5 and 2.5 mg/kg per day) starting on 0 d; animals were euthanized on 7th day and colitis scores were determined; B: TCR $\alpha^{-/-}$ mice, a model for chronic spontaneous colitis, were administered an oral gavage of plecanatide (0.5 and 2.5 mg/kg) or vehicle for 14 d. At the end of the study, colon tissues were harvested and used for histopathological analysis to assess colitis. Results are depicted as mean colitis score $\pm$ SD. TCR α : T-cell receptor alpha; TNBS: 2, 4, 6-trinitrobenzenesulfonic acid sol.

results prompted a further evaluation of plecanatide and dolcanatide in DSS and TNBS-induced colitis with larger cohorts.

Oral treatment with either vehicle, sulfasalazine (80 mg/kg) or plecanatide (0.005, 0.05, 0.5 and 5.0 mg/kg), was evaluated in both DSS and TNBS-induced colitis in mice. In BDF1 mice, colitis was induced by including 5% DSS in drinking water, and mice were randomly divided into 6 groups. Colitis severity was determined by the histopathological evaluation of H and E-stained colonic tissue sections employing the criteria described under Materials and Methods. Consistent with the results from the preliminary studies described above, orally administered plecanatide even at a dose as low as 0.005 mg/kg was as effective as sulfasalazine (80 mg/kg) to ameliorate DSS induced colitis in BDF-1 mice (Figure 4). However, doses higher than 0.005 mg/kg per day did not produce an incremental effect on the amelioration of colitis, possibly due to the saturation of available GC-C receptors in the gut lumen.

The anti-inflammatory activity of plecanatide was further examined in the TNBS-induced colitis in BDF1 mice. Once-daily administration of plecanatide at 0.005 mg/kg was not effective, but all of the higher doses (0.05-5 mg/kg) produced statistically significant

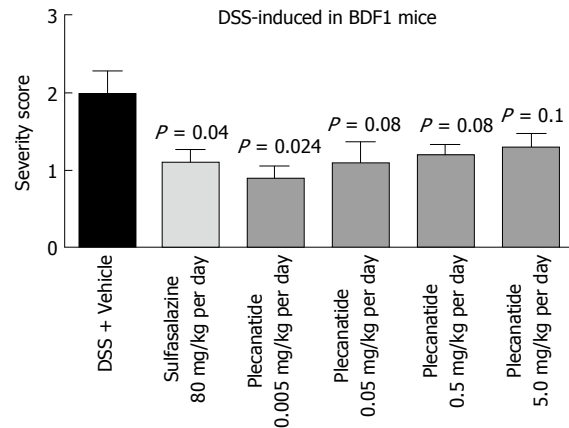


Figure 4 Oral treatment with plecanatide ameliorates gastrointestinal inflammation in the dextran sulfate sodium-induced colitis in BDF1 mice. BDF1 mice ($n = 8/\text{group}$) were administered 5% DSS in drinking water. An oral gavage was administered once daily containing 0.005 to 5.0 mg/kg of plecanatide beginning a day prior to initiating DSS regimen. Sulfasalazine (80 mg/kg) and vehicle (phosphate buffer) served as positive and negative controls, respectively. At the end of the study mice were euthanized; distal sections of the colon were fixed, embedded in paraffin, sectioned, stained with H and E and visualized to assign colitis severity scores. All slides were scored in a blinded manner. The mean histological severity of colitis score $\pm$ SEM was plotted for the indicated treatment groups. Statistical significance was calculated by comparing severity scores observed for the plecanatide or sulfasalazine treated group vs corresponding values in the vehicle treated group. DSS: Dextran sulfate sodium; SEM: Standard error of the mean.

reduction in severity of colitis as compared to TNBS plus vehicle treated animals (Figure 5). Again, there was no further reduction in colitis severity with incremental doses above 0.05 mg/kg, suggesting that this dose might be at the saturation level of the available GC-C binding sites in the GI lumen. Notably, the efficacy of plecanatide at 0.05 mg/kg per day dose was comparable to that of sulfasalazine at the dose 80 mg/kg per day.

Dolcanatide ameliorates DSS induced colitis in BDF-1 mice

To further confirm the anti-inflammatory activity of this class of GC-C agonists, the effect of oral treatment with dolcanatide was evaluated in DSS induced colitis in BDF-1 mice. Except for the 0.5 mg/kg dose of dolcanatide, treatment with all other doses produced statistically significant reduction in colitis severity scores as compared to those in DSS + vehicle control. The reduction in colitis severity was comparable to that observed in 100 mg/kg dose of 5-ASA (Figure 6A). Similarly, treatment with dolcanatide also produced considerable reduction in the DAI score (Figure 6B), although the statistical significance ($P = 0.04$) was achieved only with a dose of 0.05 mg/kg. The effect of dolcanatide treatment on levels of MPO activity in colon tissues was measured as an indirect way to assess the severity of GI inflammation. As expected, the colon tissues from DSS plus vehicle-treated mice exhibited the highest levels of MPO (0.048 ± 0.004 units/min). A considerable reduction in MPO activity was observed following treatment either with 5-ASA (100 mg/kg) or with dolcanatide at all doses (Figure 6C). Even at the dose as low as (0.05 mg/kg

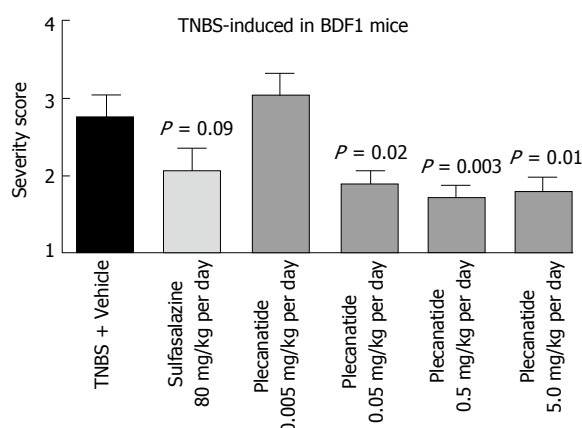


Figure 5 Oral treatment with plecanatide ameliorates gastrointestinal inflammation in 2, 4, 6-trinitrobenzenesulfonic acid-induced colitis in BDF1 mice. BDF1 mice ($n = 10/\text{group}$) were administered TNBS via rectal instillation on 0 d as described under Materials and Methods. An oral gavage was administered once daily containing 0.005 to 5.0 mg/kg plecanatide beginning a day prior to TNBS treatment. Sulfasalazine (80 mg/kg) and vehicle (phosphate buffer) served as positive and negative controls, respectively. At the end of the study mice were euthanized; distal sections of the colon were fixed, embedded in paraffin, sectioned, stained with H and E and visualized to assign colitis severity scores. All slides were scored in a blinded manner. The mean histological severity of the colitis score $\pm$ SEM was plotted for the indicated treatment groups. Statistical significance was calculated by comparing the severity score observed for the plecanatide or sulfasalazine-treated group vs the corresponding values in the vehicle-treated group. TNBS: 2, 4, 6-trinitrobenzenesulfonic acid sol; SEM: Standard error of the mean.

per day) of dolcanatide, showing approximately 50% reduction in total MPO activity, was comparable to that achieved with 5-ASA at 100 mg/kg dose.

Colon tissues from mice treated with dolcanatide at all doses or with 5-ASA showed a considerable reduction in histopathological scoring. Representative slides of H and E-stained sections of colon tissues used for histopathological evaluation are shown in Figure 7. Substantial loss of crypts, changes in crypt architecture, ulceration, and localized infiltration of inflammatory cells was observed in tissue slides from DSS plus-vehicle-treated mice (panel B; score = 3) as compared to that in the slides from naïve mice exhibiting normal mucosal architecture and evenly-spaced crypts of uniform length (panel A; score 0). Treatment with dolcanatide at 0.05 mg/kg (panel C; score 2) or with 5-ASA (panel D; score 2) exhibited minimal loss of crypts, changes in crypt architecture, ulceration, and localized infiltration of inflammatory cells, which is indicative of improvement in colitis severity.

DISCUSSION

This is the first-ever study reporting that oral treatment with either plecanatide or dolcanatide, analogs of UG, ameliorate colonic inflammation in both acute and chronic models of murine colitis. Oral treatment with plecanatide or dolcanatide at a dose range between 0.05–2.5 mg/kg per day was as effective as once-daily treatment with 5-ASA (100 mg/kg) or sulfasalazine (80 mg/kg). However, the amelioration of colitis by the treatment with plecanatide or dolcanatide was

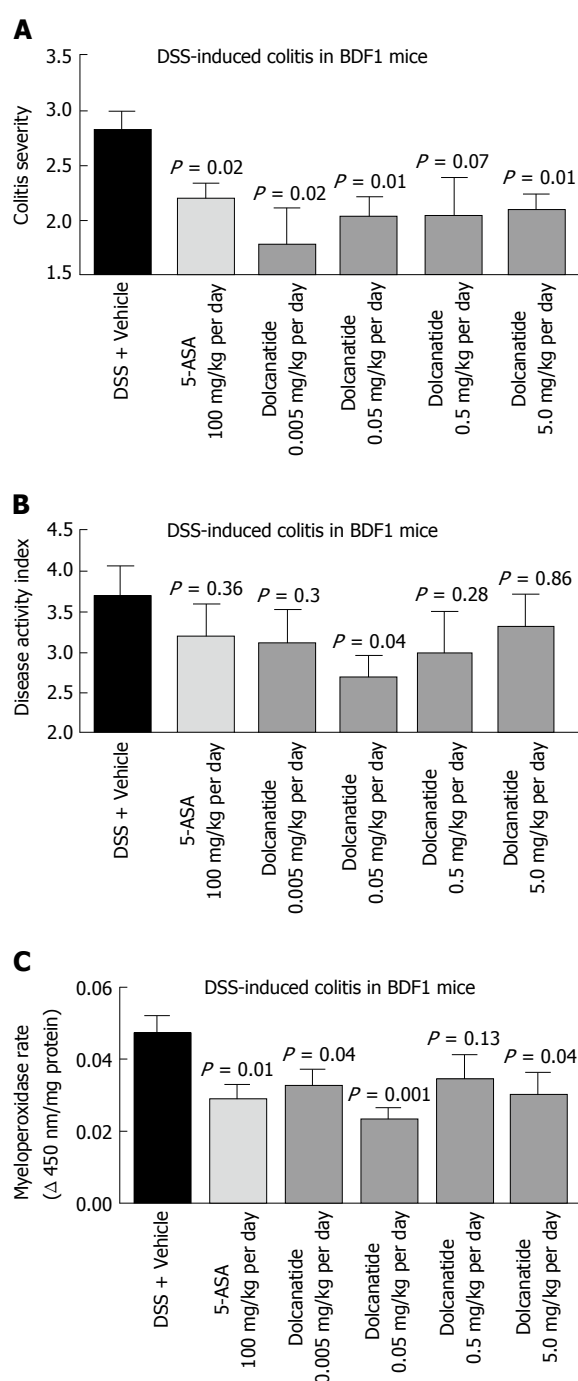


Figure 6 Oral treatment with dolcanatide ameliorates gastrointestinal inflammation in the dextran sulfate sodium induced colitis in BDF1 mice. BDF1 mice ($n = 8-10/\text{group}$) were administered 5% DSS in drinking water to induce colitis. Dolcanatide was administered via oral gavage beginning a day before initiating the DSS regimen. Oral gavage with 5-ASA (100 mg/kg) and vehicle (phosphate buffer) served as positive and negative controls, respectively. At the end of the study, mice were euthanized and colon tissues were removed for histopathological analyses (see Materials and Methods section). Additional groups of mice were treated under identical conditions for measurement of MPO activity in colon tissues. The Figure depicts results for colitis severity (A), disease activity index (B), and MPO activity (C). Data represent mean $\pm$ SEM for each group. Statistical significance was calculated by comparing the values observed for the dolcanatide or 5-ASA-treated group vs the corresponding scores for the vehicle-treated group. DSS: Dextran sulfate sodium; GI: Gastrointestinal; MPO: Myeloperoxidase; SEM: Standard error of the mean; 5-ASA: 5-amino salicylic acid.

not dose-dependent. This lack of dose response may

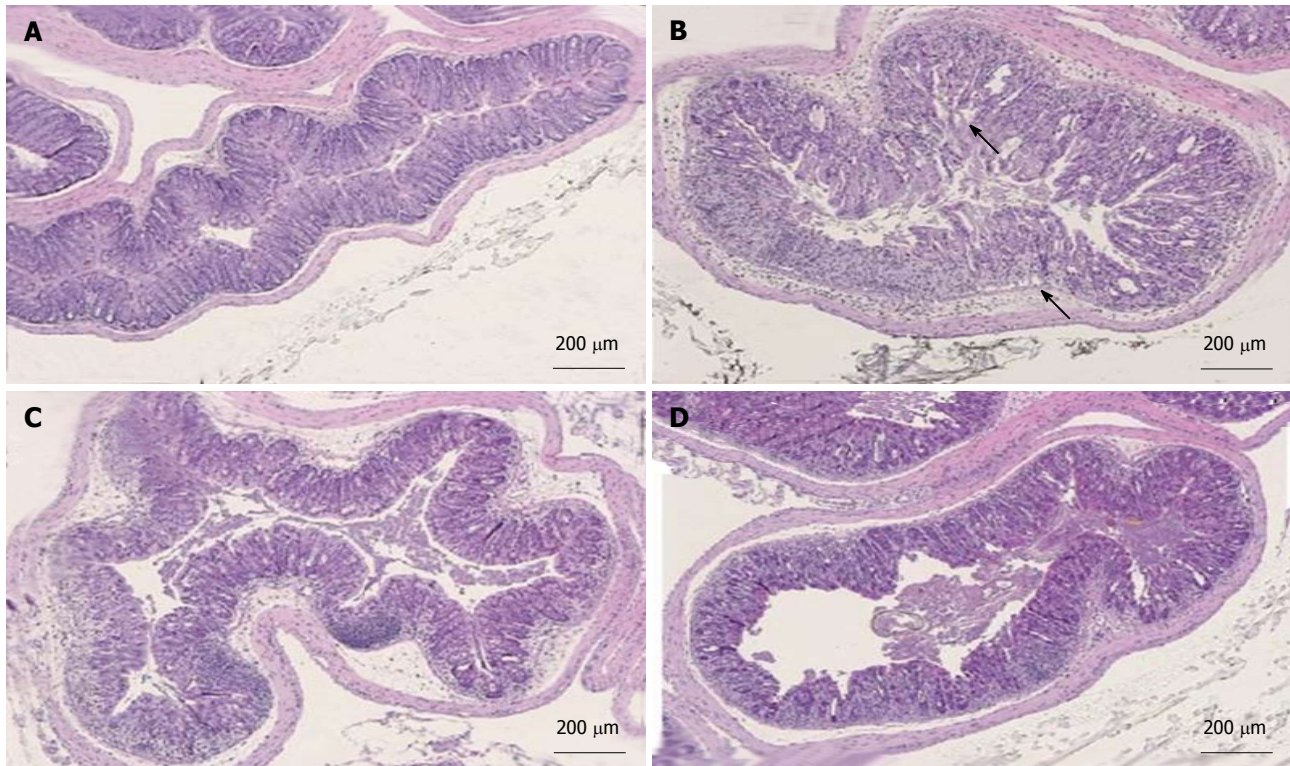


Figure 7 Histopathology analysis of colon tissues after treatment with dolcanatide. Representative histopathological images of the large bowel from the DSS-induced colitis study are depicted. Criteria for scoring colitis severity were as described under Materials and Methods. A: Untreated naive mice, histopathology score = 0; B: DSS + vehicle treated, histopathology score = 3; C: DSS + dolcanatide (0.05 mg/kg), histopathology score = 2; D: DSS + 5-ASA (100 mg/kg), histopathology score = 2. Arrows in panel B indicate morphological deterioration in crypts and villi of GI mucosa. DSS: Dextran sulfate sodium; 5-ASA: 5-amino salicylic acid; GI: Gastrointestinal.

be attributable to the saturation of the available GC-C receptors on the epithelial cells lining the GI mucosa. Interestingly, the lowest effective dose of plecanatide varied from 0.005 to 2.5 mg/d in different models examined at the three different research facilities used. These apparent differences in the effective dose of plecanatide may be due to the differences in external factors, such as diet and animal husbandry conditions of contract research organizations in the United States and the United Kingdom. These external factors are known to impact the composition of gut microflora influencing the severity of colitis in different species of mice^[33,34].

The mechanism of actions of the endogenous natriuretic peptides UG and GN are known to be through activation of GC-C expressed on the apical surface of epithelial cells lining the GI mucosa^[8]. Thus, orally administered GC-C agonists enhance cGMP, which mediates their pharmacological actions resulting in increased fluid secretion to promote GI transit and bowel movement. Previously, we reported that orally administered plecanatide acts primarily in the lumen of the proximal intestine to facilitate bowel movement in mice and monkeys^[35]. In addition, orally administered plecanatide not only ameliorated GI inflammation but also delayed its progression to colorectal carcinogenesis *via* enhancement of cGMP production through activation of GC-C signaling in *Apc*^{+/min-FCCC} mice^[36]. Importantly, recent clinical studies confirm that orally

administered GC-C agonists are minimally absorbed into systemic circulation and they act locally in the gut lumen^[25,37]. Taken together, these studies suggest that the pharmacological actions of orally administered plecanatide and dolcanatide are primarily through activation of GC-C receptors in the gut lumen.

During the renewal process, the intestinal epithelium goes through a cycle (initiated in the crypt) of proliferation, migration, differentiation, apoptosis and ultimately loss of epithelial cells into the lumen^[38]. This process is crucial for maintaining the integrity of the intestinal mucosa. UG and GN are secreted in a gradient along this vertical axis. Maximal secretion of UG is in the villus region and minimum in the crypt^[39]. GC-C receptor signaling is believed to be important in maintaining the balance between apoptosis and regeneration^[14]. Decreased expression of UG and GN in colon polyps, tumors and in inflamed tissues from UC and CD patients^[10-12], can potentially impair intestinal homeostasis, suggesting a pathophysiological significance of GC-C signaling in the etiology of these diseases. Consistent with this notion, studies with GC-C^{-/-} and UG^{-/-} knockout mice revealed a functional role of GC-C signaling in the maintenance of homeostatic intestinal barrier function, intestinal permeability, and epithelial cell proliferation^[18,40]. Of relevance, intestinal permeability is higher in the GC-C and UG knockout mice than in the wild mice. Expression of the major

tight junction proteins is also reduced in the intestines of GC-C deficient mice. Luminal antigens permeate the defective barrier, promote inflammation, and damage the intestinal mucosal architecture^[18,41]. These studies suggest a critical role of GC-C signaling in preserving the intestinal integrity. Histological analyses reported here lend support to this argument. Mucosal damage following DSS treatment results in loss of crypts, changes in crypt architecture, ulceration, and infiltration of inflammatory cells into colonic tissues. Treatment with dolcanatide resulted in minimal loss of crypts, low distortions in crypt morphology, and a significant reduction in myeloperoxidase activity. These results suggest less infiltration of inflammatory cells, possibly by strengthening the barrier function. Consistent with this notion, we recently reported that treatment with dolcanatide attenuated LPS-mediated enhancement in cellular permeability in T84 and Caco-2 cells^[42].

Following the loss of barrier function, this regulatory balance is disrupted by the massive recruitment of leucocytes and macrophages, resulting in augmented levels of destructive inflammatory cytokines in the intestinal tissues^[43]. In a preliminary study, we previously reported that treatment with plecanatide inhibited secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines such as IL-12p40, IL-23, and TNF in explant cultures of colon tissues from TNBS-treated BALB/c mice. Plecanatide treatment similarly reduced production of RANTES, IL-17 and MIP-1 α , with a concomitant increase in IL-10 in colon explants from TCR $\alpha^{-/-}$ mice^[36]. Our results using T84 cells further suggest that treatment with dolcanatide inhibited LPS-mediated activation of NF- κ B activation, presumably *via* a cGMP-mediated mechanism^[23]. Oral treatment with plecanatide also reduced the formation of colon dysplasia in DSS-treated Apc^{Min/+FCCC}, possibly through down-regulation of some pro-inflammatory cytokines and growth factors^[44]. Taken together, these results suggest that orally-administered plecanatide or dolcanatide ameliorates colitis, possibly through suppression of pro-inflammatory cytokines production. However, this is a simplistic view on the possible mechanism of action for the anti-inflammatory activity of GC-C agonists. Additional studies are necessary to define the precise mechanism by which GC-C agonists promote intestinal barrier function, suppress production of cytokines, and exert their anti-inflammatory activity.

Oral treatment with analogs of the endogenous natriuretic peptide UG is thus an attractive approach with a unique mechanism of action, enabling restoration of homeostatic signaling responsible for maintenance of colonic mucosa integrity. This study may have the following significant implications for treatment and maintenance of IBD in humans: First, oral treatment with locally acting GC-C agonist may eliminate toxicity concerns associated with the existing systemic therapies of IBD; second, the evolving paradigm implies that the reduced production of UG and/or GN might be involved in the pathologies of UC and CD in humans. If so, oral therapy with UG analogs can be considered

as a replacement therapy to overcome the deficiency underlying the etiology of IBD. Finally, it is now well established that patients suffering from chronic UC and CD are at higher risk of developing colon cancer^[45]. Chronic treatment with orally-safe drug candidates such as plecanatide or dolcanatide could be useful as maintenance therapy to delay the onset of IBD to colon carcinogenesis. In this regard, we recently reported that oral treatment with plecanatide considerably reduced colonic dysplasia in DSS treated Apc^{Min/+FCCC} mice^[44].

Although the potency of plecanatide to stimulate cGMP in T84 cells, and to ameliorate colitis in animal studies was comparable to that of dolcanatide, the latter drug candidate was advanced further for clinical development because of its enhanced stability against proteolysis in simulated intestinal fluid^[23]. The non-clinical safety and toxicology studies conducted in rodents and monkeys suggest that dolcanatide is an orally-safe and minimally absorbed drug candidate. Synergy Pharmaceuticals Inc. has successfully completed Phase I single-ascending-dose and multiple ascending dose safety studies with dolcanatide in healthy volunteers. The drug candidate is well-tolerated and is currently being further evaluated as an orally safe and mucosally-active drug candidate for treatment in patients with ulcerative colitis.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Authors thank Dr. Melvin Spigelman, Dr. Alan Joslyn, Dr. E Priya Eddy for their constructive suggestions and Sue Nagele for assisting in the preparation of the manuscript.

COMMENTS

Background

There is an unmet need to develop a safer and effective therapeutic intervention for inflammatory bowel diseases (IBD). Existing therapies are of limited effectiveness and often associated with side effects. Biologic injectables are costly and effective in less than 40% of patients, with a potential for systemic side effects. An important conceptual advance would be to develop drugs that act locally at the site of inflammation to maximize efficacy and minimize systemic side effects. Plecanatide and dolcanatide are analogs of the human endogenous peptide uroguanylin (UG), a guanylate cyclase-C (GC-C) agonist that regulates fluid/ion and epithelial cell homeostasis and maintains the barrier function within the gastrointestinal (GI) tract. Given its multitude of functions, GC-C agonists are potentially useful therapeutic candidates for treating IBD.

Research frontiers

Therapeutic intervention with locally acting, minimally absorbed analogs of UG, an endogenous natriuretic peptide, represents a novel and safe approach for treating IBD. This therapy could potentially be useful as a maintenance therapy to delay the onset of IBD into colon carcinogenesis.

Innovations and breakthroughs

This is the first report highlighting the therapeutic potential of orally administered and mucosally active GC-C agonists for treating inflammatory bowel diseases in humans.

Applications

UG is an endogenous peptide hormone that regulates fluid/ion homeostasis

and epithelial cell homeostasis and maintains the barrier function within the GI tract. Several studies have demonstrated that transcript levels of UG and related peptide guanylin are markedly reduced in inflamed colonic tissues from ulcerative colitis and Crohn's patients, as well as in human colonic polyps and tumors, implying that the pathogenesis of these diseases might be associated with the deficiency of UG and guanylin. Oral therapy with UG analogs, therefore, could be considered as a replacement therapy to overcome the deficiency underlying the etiology of IBD.

Peer-review

The manuscript presents some points of concern, and additional experiments should be performed, particularly regarding the evaluation of cyclic guanosine monophosphate production in intestinal mucosa. Nevertheless, the manuscript displays novel findings, which sustain the possible use of GC-C agonists for the treatment of IBDs.

REFERENCES

- Loftus EV, Sandborn WJ. Epidemiology of inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 2002; **31**: 1-20 [PMID: 12122726 DOI: 10.1016/S0889-8553(01)00002-4]
- Xavier RJ, Podolsky DK. Unravelling the pathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease. *Nature* 2007; **448**: 427-434 [PMID: 17653185 DOI: 10.1038/nature06005]
- Sandborn WJ, Targan SR. Biologic therapy of inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: 1592-1608 [PMID: 12016425 DOI: 10.1053/gast.2002.33426]
- Ordás I, Eckmann L, Talamini M, Baumgart DC, Sandborn WJ. Ulcerative colitis. *Lancet* 2012; **380**: 1606-1619 [PMID: 22914296 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(12)60150-0]
- Ross AS, Cohen RD. Medical therapy for ulcerative colitis: the state of the art and beyond. *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 2004; **6**: 488-495 [PMID: 15527679 DOI: 10.1007/s11894-004-0071-9]
- Engel MA, Neurath MF. New pathophysiological insights and modern treatment of IBD. *J Gastroenterol* 2010; **45**: 571-583 [PMID: 20213337 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-010-0219-3]
- London RM, Krause WJ, Fan X, Eber SL, Forte LR. Signal transduction pathways via guanylin and uroguanylin in stomach and intestine. *Am J Physiol* 1997; **273**: G93-105 [PMID: 9252514]
- Forte LR. Uroguanylin and guanylin peptides: pharmacology and experimental therapeutics. *Pharmacol Ther* 2004; **104**: 137-162 [PMID: 15518884 DOI: 10.1016/j.pharmthera.2004.08.007]
- Basu N, Arshad N, Visweswariah SS. Receptor guanylyl cyclase C (GC-C): regulation and signal transduction. *Mol Cell Biochem* 2010; **334**: 67-80 [PMID: 19960363 DOI: 10.1007/s11010-009-0324-x]
- Shailubhai K, Yu HH, Karunanandaa K, Wang JY, Eber SL, Wang Y, Joo NS, Kim HD, Miedema BW, Abbas SZ, Boddupalli SS, Currie MG, Forte LR. Uroguanylin treatment suppresses polyp formation in the Apc(Min/+) mouse and induces apoptosis in human colon adenocarcinoma cells via cyclic GMP. *Cancer Res* 2000; **60**: 5151-5157 [PMID: 11016642]
- Cohen MB, Hawkins JA, Witte DP. Guanylin mRNA expression in human intestine and colorectal adenocarcinoma. *Lab Invest* 1998; **78**: 101-108 [PMID: 9461126]
- Wu F, Dassopoulos T, Cope L, Maitra A, Brant SR, Harris ML, Bayless TM, Parmigiani G, Chakravarti S. Genome-wide gene expression differences in Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis from endoscopic pinch biopsies: insights into distinctive pathogenesis. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2007; **13**: 807-821 [PMID: 17262812 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.20110]
- Li P, Lin JE, Chervoneva I, Schulz S, Waldman SA, Pitari GM. Homeostatic control of the crypt-villus axis by the bacterial enterotoxin receptor guanylyl cyclase C restricts the proliferating compartment in intestine. *Am J Pathol* 2007; **171**: 1847-1858 [PMID: 17974601 DOI: 10.2353/ajpath.2007.070198]
- Shailubhai K. Therapeutic applications of guanylate cyclase-C receptor agonists. *Curr Opin Drug Discov Devel* 2002; **5**: 261-268 [PMID: 11926132]
- Steinbrecher KA. The multiple roles of guanylate cyclase C, a heat stable enterotoxin receptor. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2014; **30**: 1-6 [PMID: 24304979 DOI: 10.1097/MOG.000000000000020]
- Blomain ES, Lin JE, Kraft CL, Trela UT, Rock JM, Aing AS, Snook AE, Waldman SA. Translating colorectal cancer prevention through the guanylyl cyclase C signaling axis. *Expert Rev Clin Pharmacol* 2013; **6**: 557-564 [PMID: 23971873 DOI: 10.1586/17512433.2013.827406]
- Lin JE, Snook AE, Li P, Stoecker BA, Kim GW, Magee MS, Garcia AV, Valentino MA, Hyslop T, Schulz S, Waldman SA. GUCY2C opposes systemic genotoxic tumorigenesis by regulating AKT-dependent intestinal barrier integrity. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e31686 [PMID: 22384056 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0031686]
- Han X, Mann E, Gilbert S, Guan Y, Steinbrecher KA, Montrose MH, Cohen MB. Loss of guanylyl cyclase C (GCC) signaling leads to dysfunctional intestinal barrier. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e16139 [PMID: 21305056 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0016139]
- Harmel-Laws E, Mann EA, Cohen MB, Steinbrecher KA. Guanylate cyclase C deficiency causes severe inflammation in a murine model of spontaneous colitis. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e79180 [PMID: 24244444 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0079180]
- Vellaichamy E, Sommana NK, Pandey KN. Reduced cGMP signaling activates NF-kappaB in hypertrophied hearts of mice lacking natriuretic peptide receptor-A. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2005; **327**: 106-111 [PMID: 15629436 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2004.11.153]
- Ladetzki-Bachs K, Keller M, Kiemer AK, Koch E, Zahler S, Wendel A, Vollmar AM. Atrial natriuretic peptide, a regulator of nuclear factor-kappaB activation in vivo. *Endocrinology* 2007; **148**: 332-336 [PMID: 17008392 DOI: 10.1210/en.2006-0935]
- Das S, Periyasamy R, Pandey KN. Activation of IKK/NF-kB provokes renal inflammatory responses in guanylyl cyclase/natriuretic peptide receptor-A gene-knockout mice. *Physiol Genomics* 2012; **44**: 430-442 [PMID: 22318993 DOI: 10.1152/physiolgenomics.00147.2011]
- Zhang G, Arjunan KP, Foss J, Comiskey S, Shailubhai K. SP-333, a proteolysis-resistant agonist of guanylate cyclase-C, inhibits activation of NF-kB and suppresses production of inflammatory cytokines to ameliorate DSS induced colitis in mice (Abstract 1555). *Am J Gastroenterol* 2012; **107** (Supplement 1): S626
- Shailubhai K, Jacob G, inventors; Synergy Pharmaceuticals Inc., assignee. Agonists of guanylate cyclase useful for the treatment of gastrointestinal disorders. Patent US 2009/0048175 A1. 2009
- Shailubhai K, Comiskey S, Foss JA, Feng R, Barrow L, Comer GM, Jacob GS. Plecanatide, an oral guanylate cyclase C agonist acting locally in the gastrointestinal tract, is safe and well-tolerated in single doses. *Dig Dis Sci* 2013; **58**: 2580-2586 [PMID: 23625291 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-013-2684-z]
- Shailubhai K, Jacob GS, inventors; Synergy Pharmaceuticals Inc (New York, NY, US), assignee. Agonists of guanylate cyclase useful for the treatment of gastrointestinal disorders, inflammation, cancer and other disorders. United States patent US 7, 879, 802 B2. 2011
- Davé SH, Tilstra JS, Matsuoka K, Li F, DeMarco RA, Beer-Stolz D, Sepulveda AR, Fink MP, Lotze MT, Plevy SE. Ethyl pyruvate decreases HMGB1 release and ameliorates murine colitis. *J Leukoc Biol* 2009; **86**: 633-643 [PMID: 19454652 DOI: 10.1189/jlb.1008662]
- Hegazi RA, Rao KN, Mayle A, Sepulveda AR, Otterbein LE, Plevy SE. Carbon monoxide ameliorates chronic murine colitis through a heme oxygenase 1-dependent pathway. *J Exp Med* 2005; **202**: 1703-1713 [PMID: 16365149 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20051047]
- Sheikh SZ, Hegazi RA, Kobayashi T, Onyiah JC, Russo SM, Matsuoka K, Sepulveda AR, Li F, Otterbein LE, Plevy SE. An anti-inflammatory role for carbon monoxide and heme oxygenase-1 in chronic Th2-mediated murine colitis. *J Immunol* 2011; **186**: 5506-5513 [PMID: 21444764 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1002433]
- Hamamoto N, Maemura K, Hirata I, Murano M, Sasaki S, Katsu K. Inhibition of dextran sulphate sodium (DSS)-induced colitis in mice by intracolonic administered antibodies against adhesion

- molecules (endothelial leucocyte adhesion molecule-1 (ELAM-1) or intercellular adhesion molecule-1 (ICAM-1)). *Clin Exp Immunol* 1999; **117**: 462-468 [PMID: 10469048 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2249.1999.00985.x]
- 31 **Berg DJ**, Davidson N, Kühn R, Müller W, Menon S, Holland G, Thompson-Snipes L, Leach MW, Rennick D. Enterocolitis and colon cancer in interleukin-10-deficient mice are associated with aberrant cytokine production and CD4(+) TH1-like responses. *J Clin Invest* 1996; **98**: 1010-1020 [PMID: 8770874 DOI: 10.1172/JCI118861]
 - 32 **Krawisz JE**, Sharon P, Stenson WF. Quantitative assay for acute intestinal inflammation based on myeloperoxidase activity. Assessment of inflammation in rat and hamster models. *Gastroenterology* 1984; **87**: 1344-1350 [PMID: 6092199]
 - 33 **Friswell MK**, Gika H, Stratford IJ, Theodoridis G, Telfer B, Wilson ID, McBain AJ. Site and strain-specific variation in gut microbiota profiles and metabolism in experimental mice. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e8584 [PMID: 20052418 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0008584]
 - 34 **Gill N**, Finlay BB. The gut microbiota: challenging immunology. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2011; **11**: 636-637 [PMID: 21869815 DOI: 10.1038/nri3061]
 - 35 **Comiskey S**, Foss J, Jacob G, Shailubhai K. Orally administered plecanatide, a guanylate cyclase-C agonist, acts in the lumen of the proximal intestine to facilitate normal bowel movement in mice and monkeys (Abstract 1725). *Am J Gastroenterol* 2012; **107** (Supplement 1): S700
 - 36 **Shailubhai K**, Nefsky B, Masih S, Foss J, Comiskey SC, Jacob GS, Plevy SE. Guanylate cyclase C agonists, a new class of drug candidates for treatment of inflammatory bowel disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2011; **S455**: 1208
 - 37 **Miner PB**, Surowitz R, Fogel R, Koltun W, Drossman DA, Camilleri M, Mangel A, Barrow L, Jacob G, Shailubhai K. Plecanatide, a novel guanylate cyclase-C (GC-C) receptor agonist, is efficacious and safe in patients with chronic idiopathic constipation (CIC): results from a 951 patient, 12 week, multi-center trial (Abstract 925g). *Gastroenterology* 2013; **144** (5, Supplement 1): S-263 [DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(13)60585-5]
 - 38 **Eastwood GL**. Epithelial renewal in premalignant conditions of the gastrointestinal tract: a review. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 1992; **14** Suppl 1: S29-S33 [PMID: 1629575]
 - 39 **Pitari GM**, Li P, Lin JE, Zuzga D, Gibbons AV, Snook AE, Schulz S, Waldman SA. The paracrine hormone hypothesis of colorectal cancer. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **82**: 441-447 [PMID: 17687268 DOI: 10.1038/sj.clpt.6100325]
 - 40 **Steinbrecher KA**, Harmel-Laws E, Garin-Laflam MP, Mann EA, Bezerra LD, Hogan SP, Cohen MB. Murine guanylate cyclase C regulates colonic injury and inflammation. *J Immunol* 2011; **186**: 7205-7214 [PMID: 21555532 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1002469]
 - 41 **Heller F**, Florian P, Bojarski C, Richter J, Christ M, Hillenbrand B, Mankertz J, Gitter AH, Bürgel N, Fromm M, Zeitz M, Fuss I, Strober W, Schulzke JD. Interleukin-13 is the key effector Th2 cytokine in ulcerative colitis that affects epithelial tight junctions, apoptosis, and cell restitution. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **129**: 550-564 [PMID: 16083712 DOI: 10.1016/j.gastro.2005.05.002]
 - 42 **Shailubhai K**, Boulete IM, Foss J, Eddy EP, Joshi A, Patwa V, Theodorou V, Palejwala V, Bueno L. Plecanatide and SP-333, Novel Agonists of Guanylate Cyclase-C, Attenuate Visceral Hypersensitivity in Rat Models. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2014; **109**: S532-S532
 - 43 **Neuman MG**. Immune dysfunction in inflammatory bowel disease. *Transl Res* 2007; **149**: 173-186 [PMID: 17383591 DOI: 10.1016/j.trsl.2006.11.009]
 - 44 **Shailubhai K**, Chang WC, Masih S, Cooper HS, Clapper ML. Enhancement of cyclic GMP production by guanylate cyclase-C agonists delays progression of colitis into colon cancer though downregulation of pro-inflammatory cytokines. *Cancer Res* 2012; **72**: Abstract 1636 [DOI: 10.1158/1538-7445.AM2012-1636]
 - 45 **Ullman TA**, Itzkowitz SH. Intestinal inflammation and cancer. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **140**: 1807-1816 [PMID: 21530747 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.01.057]

P- Reviewer: Fornai M S- Editor: Ji FF
L- Editor: A E- Editor: Li D



Basic Study

Orally administered extract from *Prunella vulgaris* attenuates spontaneous colitis in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice

Kelley MK Haarberg, Meghan J Wymore Brand, Anne-Marie C Overstreet, Catherine C Hauck, Patricia A Murphy, Jesse M Hostetter, Amanda E Ramer-Tait, Michael J Wannemuehler

Kelley MK Haarberg, Meghan J Wymore Brand, Anne-Marie C Overstreet, Michael J Wannemuehler, Department of Veterinary Microbiology and Preventive Medicine, College of Veterinary Medicine, Iowa State University, Ames, IA 50011, United States

Catherine C Hauck, Patricia A Murphy, Department of Food Science and Human Nutrition, Iowa State University, Ames, IA 50011, United States

Jesse M Hostetter, Department of Veterinary Pathology, College of Veterinary Medicine, Iowa State University, Ames, IA 50011, United States

Amanda E Ramer-Tait, Department of Food Science and Technology, University of Nebraska-Lincoln, Lincoln, NE 68583, United States

Author contributions: Haarberg KMK, Wymore Brand MJ, Ramer-Tait AE, and Wannemuehler MJ designed the research; Haarberg KMK, Wymore Brand MJ, and Overstreet AMC performed the research; Hauck CC and Murphy PA prepared the extract; Hostetter JM provided histopathological analysis; Haarberg KMK and Wymore Brand MJ analyzed the data; Haarberg KMK, Wymore Brand MJ, Ramer-Tait AE, and Wannemuehler MJ prepared the manuscript, figures, and data analysis.

Supported by The award from NIH (9P50 AT004155-06).

Institutional review board statement: There were no human subjects involved in this work and, therefore, approval from the Iowa State University Institutional Review Board was not required.

Institutional animal care and use committee statement: All studies involving live vertebrate animals were approved by the Iowa State University IACUC prior to use.

Conflict-of-interest statement: There are no conflicts of interest to declare for any of the authors of this manuscript.

Data sharing statement: Based on the types of data collected

and included in this manuscript, there is no data sharing (e.g., gene sequences) required for this project.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Dr. Michael J Wannemuehler, Professor, Chair, Department of Veterinary Microbiology and Preventive Medicine, College of Veterinary Medicine, Iowa State University, 2178 Vet Med, Ames, IA 50011, United States. mjwannem@iastate.edu
Telephone: +1-515-2943534
Fax: +1-515-2943839

Received: June 30, 2015

Peer-review started: July 5, 2015

First decision: July 31, 2015

Revised: August 31, 2015

Accepted: September 29, 2015

Article in press: September 30, 2015

Published online: November 6, 2015

Abstract

AIM: To investigate the ability of a *Prunella vulgaris* (*P. vulgaris*) ethanolic extract to attenuate spontaneous typhlocolitis in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice.

METHODS: Vehicle (5% ethanol) or *P. vulgaris* ethanolic extract (2.4 mg/d) were administered daily by oral gavage to *mdr1a*^{-/-} or wild type FVB^{WT} mice from 6 wk of age up to 20 wk of age. Clinical signs of disease were noted by monitoring weight loss. Mice experiencing

weight loss in excess of 15% were removed from the study. At the time mice were removed from the study, blood and colon tissue were collected for analyses that included histological evaluation of lesions, inflammatory cytokine levels, and myeloperoxidase activity.

RESULTS: Administration of *P. vulgaris* extracts to *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice delayed onset of colitis and reduced severity of mucosal inflammation when compared to vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice. Oral administration of the *P. vulgaris* extract resulted in reduced ($P < 0.05$) serum levels of IL-10 (4.6 ± 2 vs 19.4 ± 4), CXCL9 (1319.0 ± 277 vs 3901.0 ± 858), and TNF α (9.9 ± 3 vs 14.8 ± 1) as well as reduced gene expression by more than two-fold for *Ccl2*, *Ccl20*, *Cxcl1*, *Cxcl9*, *IL-1 α* , *Mmp10*, *VCAM-1*, *ICAM*, *IL-2*, and *TNF α* in the colonic mucosa of *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice compared to vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice. Histologically, several microscopic parameters were reduced ($P < 0.05$) in *P. vulgaris*-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice, as was myeloperoxidase activity in the colon (2.49 ± 0.16 vs 3.36 ± 0.06 , $P < 0.05$). The numbers of CD4⁺ T cells (2031.9 ± 412.1 vs 5054.5 ± 809.5) and germinal center B cells (2749.6 ± 473.7 vs 4934.0 ± 645.9) observed in the cecal tonsils of *P. vulgaris*-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} were significantly reduced ($P < 0.05$) from vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice. Vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice were found to produce serum antibodies to antigens derived from members of the intestinal microbiota, indicative of severe colitis and a loss of adaptive tolerance to the members of the microbiota. These serum antibodies were greatly reduced or absent in *P. vulgaris*-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice.

CONCLUSION: The anti-inflammatory activity of *P. vulgaris* ethanolic extract effectively attenuated the severity of intestinal inflammation in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice.

Key words: *Prunella vulgaris*; Spontaneous colitis; Inflammatory bowel disease; Mdr1a; Botanical extract; Mucosal inflammation; Nutraceutical

© The Author(s) 2015. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Extracts of *Prunella vulgaris* (*P. vulgaris*) contain multiple anti-inflammatory phenolics and flavonoids and we report that oral administration of an ethanolic extract of *P. vulgaris* ameliorated the severity of spontaneous colitis in 20 wk old *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice. Because these mice are genetically prone to develop colitis by 10 wk of age, daily oral treatments were initiated at 6 wk of age. This treatment regimen resulted in the inhibition of multiple parameters of inflammation that collectively contributed to ameliorate the severity of mucosal inflammation suggesting that botanical extracts may be used as effective complementary intervention strategies for the treatment of colitis.

Haarberg KMK, Wymore Brand MJ, Overstreet AMC, Hauck CC, Murphy PA, Hostetter JM, Ramer-Tait AE, Wannemuehler

MJ. Orally administered extract from *Prunella vulgaris* attenuates spontaneous colitis in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(4): 223-237 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i4/223.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i4.223>

INTRODUCTION

The intestinal epithelium is the interface between the host and the lumen of the gastrointestinal tract and cooperates with other innate immune mechanisms to protect the host from microbial-induced inflammation as well as to hinder colonization and invasion by intestinal microorganisms. The ability to maintain low levels of mucosal inflammation in the gut is believed to be important for mucosal homeostasis. However, in the context of inflammatory bowel diseases (IBD), such as Crohn's disease (CD) and ulcerative colitis (UC), regulation of intestinal inflammation often fails resulting in mucosal damage and chronic disease^[1]. While idiopathic in nature, current hypotheses regarding the etiology of IBD point to complex multifactorial causalities, which include disruption of the intestinal epithelial barrier, dysbiosis of the microbiota, genetic predispositions, chronically activated inflammatory immune cells, and failed adaptive immune regulatory responses^[2,3].

Much IBD research has focused on aberrant adaptive immune responses to antigens derived from the microbiota. More emphasis is now being placed on elucidating the role innate immune cells (e.g., neutrophils), cytokines, chemokines, and their related transcription factors play in the initiation and/or maintenance of epithelial damage as the initial step in the onset of IBD^[4]. In the absence of effective epithelial barrier function, compartmentalization that is meant to separate immune cells in the lamina propria from the numerous bacterial and food antigens normally sequestered in the lumen is lost^[5]. A loss of epithelial barrier integrity is characteristic of UC and CD, and the consequential loss of immunologic tolerance to the microbiota initiates a cascade of signaling pathways that activate both innate and adaptive immune mechanisms^[6].

The most common therapies used for the treatment of IBD are immune suppressive and anti-inflammatory drugs and biologicals such as monoclonal antibodies (e.g., anti-TNF)^[7,8]. Metronidazole and ciprofloxacin have also been utilized in several clinical trials related to the treatment of UC, CD, and pouchitis with underwhelming results^[9]. Immunosuppressive therapies include monoclonal antibodies against TNF- α , 5-aminosalicylates (5-ASA), and steroids^[10-12]. For many of these treatments, there is the potential for adverse effects that may include increased susceptibility to bacterial and viral infections and increased risk of cancer. One study showed that IBD related hospitalizations at high volume IBD treatment centers around the United States increased 6-fold

from 1998 to 2004^[13]. This data illustrates that despite advances in IBD research, current therapies have not decreased the frequency of IBD related hospitalizations and surgical interventions are still common for severe forms of IBD. These facts and the financial burdens associated with expensive therapeutic regimens have lead patients to explore unconventional means of coping with IBD.

A 1998 study showed that up to 51% of surveyed IBD patients had used alternative or complementary therapies and, in particular, 16% of patients used the alternative therapies specifically for their IBD^[14]. For most complementary therapies (e.g., nutraceuticals), many anecdotal claims of health benefits exist with very little scientific data to support or negate those claims.

Prunella vulgaris (*P. vulgaris*) commonly used in traditional Chinese medicine for wound healing, indigestion, burns and anti-inflammatory therapy. *P. vulgaris* contains several bioactive phenolics, triterpenoids and flavonoids^[15]. Dietary phenolics such as rosmarinic acid, ursolic acid, and caffeic acid are all found in extracts of *P. vulgaris*, and have been shown to possess antioxidant, anti-inflammatory and anti-cancer activities^[16-21]. Caffeic acid has also been shown to effectively attenuate chemically induced experimental colitis through upregulation of cytochrome P450 (CYP4B1)^[22]. Flavonoids, like those found in *P. vulgaris*, have been implicated as potential therapeutics for IBD as well^[23]. In contrast to its ability to attenuate DSS-induced colitis, the flavonoid luteolin was found to attenuate spontaneous colitis by inhibiting the activation of NF- κ B. Despite this promising evidence, there are no published reports evaluating the use of *P. vulgaris* extracts as a treatment for IBD. In this context, we have designed this study to test the hypothesis that an ethanolic extract of *P. vulgaris* will decrease gastrointestinal mucosal inflammation and thereby ameliorate the severity of spontaneous colitis in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Prunella vulgaris extract preparation

Information about the specific provenance of *P. vulgaris* accession Ames 27664, obtained from Dr. Mark Wiederlichner at the USDA-ARS North Central Regional Plant Introduction Station (Ames, IA), is available on the Germplasm Resources Information Network database at http://www.ars-grin.gov/npgs/acc/acc_queries.html. Above ground portions of plants from *P. vulgaris* (Ames 27664), harvested in 2008 were prepared for storage by drying for 8 d at 38 °C in a forced-air dryer with constant humidity. The dried material was ground with a 40-mesh screen and stored at -20 °C under N₂ until extraction. Weighed plant material was extracted with 95 ethanol with Soxhlet extractors for 6 h. The extract was concentrated by rotary evaporation at < 30 °C and lyophilized. The residue weight was recorded and the residues stored at -20 °C until solubilized in a final working solution of 5% ethanol in sterile distilled water

at a final plant extract concentration of 12 mg/mL. The working *P. vulgaris* extract was divided into 2 mL aliquots and stored at -20 °C until use. *P. vulgaris* extracts from North Central Regional Plant Introduction Station were screened for endotoxin by using the Limulus Amebocyte Lysate Test (BioWhittaker, Inc., Walkersville, MD) according to manufacturers' specifications, and there was no detectable endotoxin present in the extract (data not shown). Extracts were tested for antimicrobial activity *in vitro* with no activity demonstrated.

Animals

Prior to the initiation of any work being performed, all animal related experiments were approved by the Institutional Animal Care and Use Committee (IACUC) at Iowa State University. Incumbent with IACUC approval, methods and procedures were used to minimize pain and/or distress of all animals used in this study. Four to five week old male *mdr1a*^{-/-} FVB.129P2-Abcb1a tm1BorN7 and wild type (WT) FVB.129P2 mice were obtained from Taconic Farms, Inc. (Germantown, NY). Animals were housed and maintained in the Laboratory Animal Resource facility at the College of Veterinary Medicine, Iowa State University. Established specific pathogen-free husbandry practices were followed, and twelve-hour light/dark cycles were applied. Upon arrival and throughout the study, mice were fed a defined Harlan Teklad AIN93 (M) rodent chow (Madison, WI) to control the amount of phytochemicals in their diet.

Experimental design

Three treatment groups of mice were utilized: *Mdr1a*^{-/-} mice that were orally gavaged with 2.4 mg/d *P. vulgaris* extract in a 200 μ L volume (prepared as described above) and *mdr1a*^{-/-} and FVB^{WT} mice were orally gavaged with 5% ethanol vehicle alone; there were 4 to 10 mice/group per experiment. Gavage was performed using a 20 gauge feeding needle once daily beginning at 6 wk of age until the mice reached 20 wk of age or were removed from the study because of severe clinical wasting and/or weight loss exceeding 15% of their peak body weight in order to minimize pain and discomfort. At necropsy, mice were euthanized by CO₂ asphyxiation. Following euthanasia, blood was collected by cardiac puncture and separate sections of each cecum and proximal colon were excised, washed, and stored for further histological, myeloperoxidase (MPO) enzymatic and real-time PCR analysis. Serum was analyzed by multiplex assay to measure cytokine and chemokine levels as well as western blot analysis for antibody reactivity to antigens derived from selected members of the microbiota. Cecal tonsils were also collected for flow cytometric analysis of T and B cell populations. All results are representative of two independent experiments.

Macroscopic typhlocolitis assessment

Following euthanasia, the colon and cecum were excised, photographed, measured and scored for

severity of macroscopic lesions. Gross typhocolitic lesions were scored using a 9-point additive scale: A score of zero being a healthy animal and a score of 9 being a maximally diseased animal. Score parameters evaluated included: (1) cecal atrophy; (2) enlarged cecal tonsil or other enlarged lymphoid aggregates; (3) emptying of cecal contents; (4) abnormally watery or mucoid intraluminal cecal and/or colonic contents; (5) bloody cecal contents; (6) bloody colonic contents; (7) visible thickening and rigidity of the cecum; (8) presence of visible thickening and rigidity of the colon; and (9) absence of formed fecal pellets in the colon. In accordance with approved IACUC protocol, mice that developed severe colitis prior to 20 wk of age were removed from study when they lost $\geq 15\%$ of their maximal body weight. Mice were also removed from the study within 5 d of the onset of persistent clinical signs of disease as characterized by bloody stools, diarrhea, ruffled fur, and hunched gate.

Histopathological assessment

Sections of excised cecum and proximal colon were placed in 10% buffered formalin overnight, paraffin embedded, sectioned, and routinely stained with hematoxylin and eosin. Stained colonic and cecal sections were scored by a board-certified veterinary pathologist, Dr. Jesse Hostetter of Iowa State University (Ames, IA), blinded to the treatments as previously described^[24,25]. Microscopic mucosal lesion scores were assessed by five parameters, with each parameter scored on a scale of 0-5 (5 = maximum severity). Score parameters include: (1) ulceration of the mucosa; extent of inflammatory cell infiltrate; (2) mucosal edema characterized by the extent of lymphatic and vascular distortion and expansion of the mucosa/submucosa by clear space; (3) stromal collapse and necrosis of the glands; and (4) glandular hyperplasia characterized by the crowding and immaturity of enterocytes along the gland and gland dilation. In addition to score, mucosal height was determined and recorded as a ratio of gland height to gland width, and the specific inflammatory cell populations, if present, were recorded. Score parameters were considered individually and as an additive histopathological score with mucosal height included in the additive score.

Myeloperoxidase assay

MPO activity was assessed as a measure of neutrophil/granulocyte accumulation in proximal colonic tissues. The MPO assay was performed as previously described with several modifications^[22]. Proximal colon sections collected at necropsy were gently flushed with PBS to remove luminal contents and stored in 1 mL of freshly prepared PBS supplemented with the protease inhibitor phenylmethanesulfonyl fluoride (PMSF) at 0.1 mmol/L and 15% dimethylsulphoxide (DMSO) at -20°C for no more than 7 d prior to assay. Samples used as positive controls for MPO activity were prepared fresh the day the assay from peripheral blood. One FVB^{WT} mouse, not on

study, was euthanized by CO₂ asphyxiation, and 500 μL to 1 mL of blood was immediately collected by cardiac puncture with a heparinized needle (heparin at 5000 USP heparin units/0.5 mL is drawn into the needle and syringe and then expelled to coat the inside of the needle with heparin). The heparinized blood was centrifuged at $250 \times g$ for 10 min, the supernatant discarded and the red blood cells (RBC) lysed. In brief, 1 mL of ACK lysis buffer (8042 mg/L ammonium chloride, 1001 mg/L potassium bicarbonate, 3.722 mg/L ethylene diamine tetraacetic acid disodium, pH 7.2) was added to the pellet, vortexed gently for 1 min, 1 mL of PBS was added, and the mixture was centrifuged for 10 min at $250 \times g$. The lysis was repeated until the pellet was white and the supernatant was clear. Following RBC lysis, the pellet was resuspended in 1 mL of PBS/PMSF (0.1 mmol/L), cell numbers were enumerated using a cell counter (average yield of 3×10^6 cells/mL) and the cells were sonicated at an amplitude of 5, pulse on for 4 s, pulse off for 1 s, for 20 s total. The sonicated tissue samples were then centrifuged at $250 \times g$ for 15 min and the supernatant stored at 4°C until the tissue samples were prepared. Frozen proximal colonic sections were thawed, blotted to remove as much excess fluid as possible, trimmed to roughly 35 mg and their weights recorded. Tissues were then homogenized for 1 min at maximum power in 1 mL PBS/PMSF (0.1 mmol/L) and the homogenizer probe was washed 5 times with PBS between tissue samples. Homogenate cell counts were recorded, and each sample was then sonicated as described above. The tissue sonicates were then centrifuged at $250 \times g$ for 15 min, the supernatant collected and the pellet discarded. Each lysate prepared from tissue or peripheral blood monocytes (PBMC) was analyzed for total protein using a NanoDrop ND-1000 UV-Vis Spectrophotometer (NanoDrop Technologies Inc., Wilmington, DE). Individual lysates were pipetted into 96-well, flat bottom microtiter plates. The PBMC lysates (150 μL /well) were serially diluted (10, two-fold dilutions) and analyzed in triplicate wells. For each tissue lysate, 150 μL was pipetted into separate wells and analyzed in triplicate. To each well, 50 μL of 0.78 mg/mL 3,3',5,5'-tetramethylbenzidine dihydrochloride hydrate was added, followed immediately by the addition of 50 μL hydrogen peroxide (H₂O₂) (5 mmol/L). The reaction was allowed to proceed for 2 min (wells turned bright blue), followed by the addition of 50 μL of sulfuric acid (1 mol/L) to stop the reaction. The optical density (OD) was measured at 405 nm spectrophotometrically (V-Max, Molecular Devices, United States) using SOFTmax PRO 4.0 software. The MPO content was determined by comparison to the standard curve and MPO activity was expressed as the relative units of enzyme activity per gram of wet weight of tissue.

Serum cytokine/chemokine quantification

Following euthanasia of *mdr1a*^{-/-} and FVB^{WT} mice, blood was collected *via* cardiac puncture. The blood was allowed to clot for 24 h at 4°C after which samples were

centrifuged at 10000 x g for 10 min. Serum was then removed and stored at -20 °C until use. The day of assay, serum samples were thawed to room temperature. Concentrations of cytokines and chemokines of interest were measured using the Millipore (Billerica, MA) mouse cytokine-chemokine multiplexed assay kit. Analytes screened include: Eotaxin, G-CSF, GM-CSF, IFN- γ , IL-10, IL-12 (p40), IL-12 (p70), IL-13, IL-15, IL-17, IL-1 α , IL-1 β , IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-9, IP-10, KC, LIF, LIX, M-CSF, MCP-1, MIG, MIP-1 α , MIP-1 β , MIP-2, RANTES, TNF- α , and VEGF. The assay was performed according to the manufacturer's instructions. In brief, supplied analyte standards (range: 10000 to 3.2 pg/mL), quality control standard, and buffer only control samples were analyzed in duplicate wells of the supplied 96 well plate. Mouse serum samples were diluted 1:1 in supplied assay buffer plated for each mouse. Supplied serum matrix and supplied assay buffer were added to all wells. Supplied pre-conjugated multiplex analyte beads were added to each well and the samples were incubated at 4 °C overnight on a plate shaker (Barnstead International Titer Plate Shaker, setting 5, Model No. 4625). Supplied detection antibody was added to all wells and allowed to incubate at room temperature while shaking for 2 h. Supplied streptavidin-phycoerythrin was incubated for 30 min at room temperature while shaking. The mean fluorescence intensity (MFI) was measured using Luminex platform technology (The FlowMetric System, Luminex, Austin, TX). MFIs were subsequently converted to concentrations using a 5-parameter logistic or line curve-fitting method in MasterPlex QT Software (MiraiBio Group, San Francisco, CA).

Flow cytometric analysis of cecal tonsil cell populations

Cecal tonsils from *mdr1a*^{-/-} and FVB^{WT} mice were excised, placed in complete cell culture medium (10 mL heat-inactivated FBS, 1 mL penicillin/streptomycin, 1 mL glutamine, 0.1 mL 50 mmol/L β -mercaptoethanol, 2.5 mL 1M Hepes buffer in 85.4 mL DMEM containing 4.5 g/L glucose and sodium pyruvate), and homogenized mechanically on ice. Stainless steel wire strainers (60 mesh) were used to prepare single cell suspensions and remove particulate matter. Cells (5×10^5 cells/tube) were washed in FACS buffer, centrifuged at 250 x g and incubated in FACS buffer containing 1:100 rat IgG and fluorochrome labeled reagents for 15 min on ice. Following labeling, cells were washed with FACS buffer, centrifuged and fixed in 200 μ L of BD stabilizing fixative. Cellular preparations from individual mice were labeled with the following fluorochrome-labeled reagents: Germinal center B cells (PNA⁺B220⁺)^[26] identified using FITC-conjugated PNA and Alexa 700-conjugated anti-B220 mAb, CD4⁺ T cells were identified using PE-Cy7-conjugated anti-CD4 mAb and CD8⁺ T cells were identified using APC-conjugated anti-CD8 β mAb. The following isotype controls were utilized: Alexa 700-conjugated anti-rat IgG2a κ , PE-Cy7-conjugated anti-rat IgG2a⁺, APC-conjugated anti-rat IgG2b⁺ and

PE-conjugated anti-rat IgG2a⁺ (eBioscience, San Diego, CA). PNA has no isotype control. Analysis was performed using a BD FACSCanto flow cytometer (BD, San Jose, CA) made available through the Flow Cytometry Core Facility at Iowa State University (Ames, IA). Data analysis was performed using FlowJo software (TreeStar Inc., Ashland, OR).

Western blot analysis

Sera from *mdr1a*^{-/-} and FVB^{WT} mice were used to evaluate the presence of serum antibody against select members of the intestinal microbiota. Whole cell sonicates (WCS) of three members of the clostridial cluster group XIVa (ASF356, ASF500, and ASF502) were cultivated anaerobically, cells were harvested by centrifugation, washed in PBS, lyophilized, and stored at -20 °C until use^[27,28]. Cells were then weighed and suspended in PBS to 2 mg/mL. The resulting suspension was sonicated on ice for 3 min at the following settings: Amplitude of 50 for 2, 30 s pulses with 5 s between each pulse; amplitude 75 for 2, 30 s pulses with 5 s between each pulse; amplitude 100 for 2, 30 s pulses with 5 s between each pulse. The sonicate was sterilized by UV light (six-minute exposure) and sterility was confirmed bacteriologically. For each preparation, protein content was determined by bicinchoninic acid (BCA) analysis (Pierce Laboratories, New Haven, Connecticut, United States), aliquoted and stored at -20 °C. Whole cell sonicates of ASF356, ASF500, and ASF502 (8 μ g of total protein content) were subjected to SDS-PAGE using 12% tris-glycine gels (BioRad, Hercules, CA) and transferred to PVDF membranes. Each individual antigen was analyzed using pooled anti-sera (1:250) from separate treatment groups as described above. The membranes were then reacted with alkaline phosphatase (AP) conjugated anti-mouse IgG (H+L) (1:1000, Southern Biotech, Birmingham, AL) in a solution containing tris buffered saline (pH 7.6), 1% Tween 20 (TBST) and 2.5% non-fat, skim milk. Immunoreactive proteins were visualized using Sigma fast red tablets (Sigma, St. Louis, MO) according to manufacturers' instructions.

Pathway finder R2 profiler PCR array analysis

To evaluate the activation of signal transduction pathways modulated by treatment with the *P. vulgaris* extract, cecal gene expression was analyzed using the RT² profiler signal transduction pathway finder PCR array from QIAGEN (Germantown, MD) as per the manufacturer's instructions. In brief, total RNA was isolated from cecal tissue collected that had been stored at -20 °C in RNeasy lysis buffer using the TRIzol method^[29]. RNA was further purified using the RT² qPCR-grade RNA isolation kit from QIAGEN (Germantown, MD) according to manufacturer's instructions. RNA quality (8.2 to 9.4) was assessed using an Agilent 2100 BioAnalyzer (Agilent Technologies, Palo Alto, CA). Prior to preparation of cDNA, RNA samples were tested by PCR using oligonucleotide primers for GAPDH to

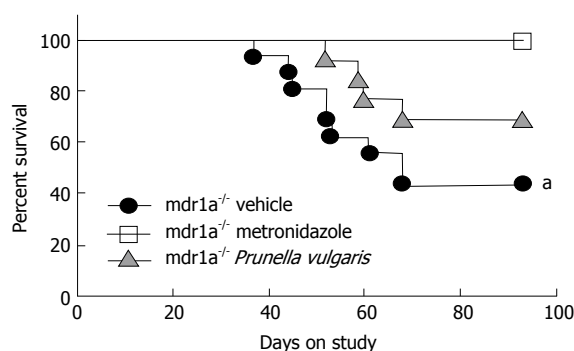


Figure 1 Effect of treatment with a *Prunella vulgaris* ethanolic extract on the onset of colitis in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice. *Mdr1a*^{-/-} mice were removed from the study as they developed severe clinical disease (e.g., > 15% weight loss) before the termination of the experiment as described in Materials and Methods. ^a*P* < 0.05, as compared to FVB^{WT} control mice. Vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice *n* = 16, metronidazole-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice *n* = 10, *Prunella vulgaris*-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice *n* = 13. This survival (i.e., mice remaining on study) curve is representative of two independent experiments.

confirm the absence of genomic DNA contamination. Invitrogen SYBR Green/ROX, primers and 1 µg of isolated RNA from each mouse were subjected to the following PCR conditions and were run on an ABI 5700 (Applied Biosystems Inc., Carlsbad, CA): 95 °C for 10 min, followed by 40 cycles of amplification (95 °C for 10 s, 60 °C for 15 s). All cycle threshold (CT) values were greater than 30, and were acceptable for further use (data not shown). GAPDH oligonucleotide primers used were: 5'-TGTGTCCGTCGTGGATCTGA-3' and 5'-CCTGCTTCACCACCTTCTTGA-3'. RNA (1 µg) from each mouse was then converted to cDNA using QIAGEN RT² First Strand kit according to manufacturers' instructions. Resulting cDNA from individual mice was pooled into diseased and healthy groups of mice for each treatment group and each experiment, mixed with the kit's array master mix experimental cocktail preparation, and subjected to the same PCR conditions and equipment noted above. PCR array data was analyzed using QIAGEN RT² PCR array analysis software and fold changes were calculated relative to house-keeping genes by the software. Only 2-fold changes or greater were considered.

Statistical analysis

Following review by a biostatistician for appropriateness of the statistical methods used, all data, except survival curves, were evaluated by the Kruskal-Wallis test with Dunn's multiple comparisons test. Because the Kruskal-Wallis test has no analog of the ANOVA linear contrast that focuses attention on a specific pre-specified comparison of groups, differences in the *mdr1a*^{-/-} groups were further evaluated by the Mann-Whitney test for ordinal data and unpaired *t*-test with Welch's correction for continuous data. Survival curves were evaluated by the Log-rank (Mantel-Cox) test. A *P*-value of < 0.05 was considered statistically significant. Prism 6 software was used for all statistical calculations.

RESULTS

The ethanolic extract of *P. vulgaris* decreases severity of macroscopic disease parameters and delays onset of severe colitis in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice

To determine the efficacy of *P. vulgaris* extract in the treatment of spontaneous colitis, *mdr1a*^{-/-} and FVB^{WT} mice were gavaged daily with vehicle (5% ethanol) or 2.4 mg *P. vulgaris* extract. Previously published data shows that *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice develop disease between 8 and 36 wk of age, with the average age of disease onset occurring at 20 wk^[30]. As expected, FVB^{WT} mice treated with *P. vulgaris* were not adversely affected by the administration of the extract despite the long course (14 wk) of treatment (data not shown). As anticipated, many vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice developed severe colitis and weight loss and were removed from study prior to 20 wk of age. Out of 16 *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice treated with vehicle, 7 required removal from study prior to 20 wk of age, compared to only 4 out of 13 *P. vulgaris*-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice. Treatment with the *P. vulgaris* extract was able to delay onset of severe colitis and reduce the number of *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice that had to be removed from study, the difference was not significant when compared to vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice (Figure 1). In addition, the phlogistic nature of the resident microbiota contributes to the mucosal inflammation in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice as evidenced by the ability of metronidazole treatment to prevent the onset of clinical disease (Figure 1).

Representative photographs (Figure 2) show the extent of macroscopic and microscopic tissue damage in vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice. In these mice, ceca were atrophied with visibly enlarged cecal tonsils suggesting immune activation. The ceca of the vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice were almost devoid of contents, and both cecal and colonic tissues are notably thickened and rigid. Occasional blood was noted in cecal and colonic contents while no formed fecal pellets were noted in the vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice. Conversely, the ceca and colons of *P. vulgaris*-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice were markedly improved and more closely resembled the tissue appearance of healthy FVB^{WT} as well as metronidazole-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice with regard to all parameters assessed.

Macroscopically, mild to severe typhlocolitis (a score of 2 to 9, respectively) was observed in 100% of vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice while all of the *P. vulgaris*-treated mice presented with macroscopic scores below the average score of the vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice (Figure 2C). *P. vulgaris* prophylaxis significantly (*P* < 0.05) improved macroscopic parameters of disease when compared to vehicle treatment in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice. In addition, the median colon length for *P. vulgaris*-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice was longer than that for the vehicle-treated in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice indicating less severe epithelial injury (Figure 2). Regardless of the treatment, FVB^{WT} mice did not exhibit any signs of clinical disease or tissue damage (Figure 2). These results indicate that treatment with the *P. vulgaris* ethanolic extract

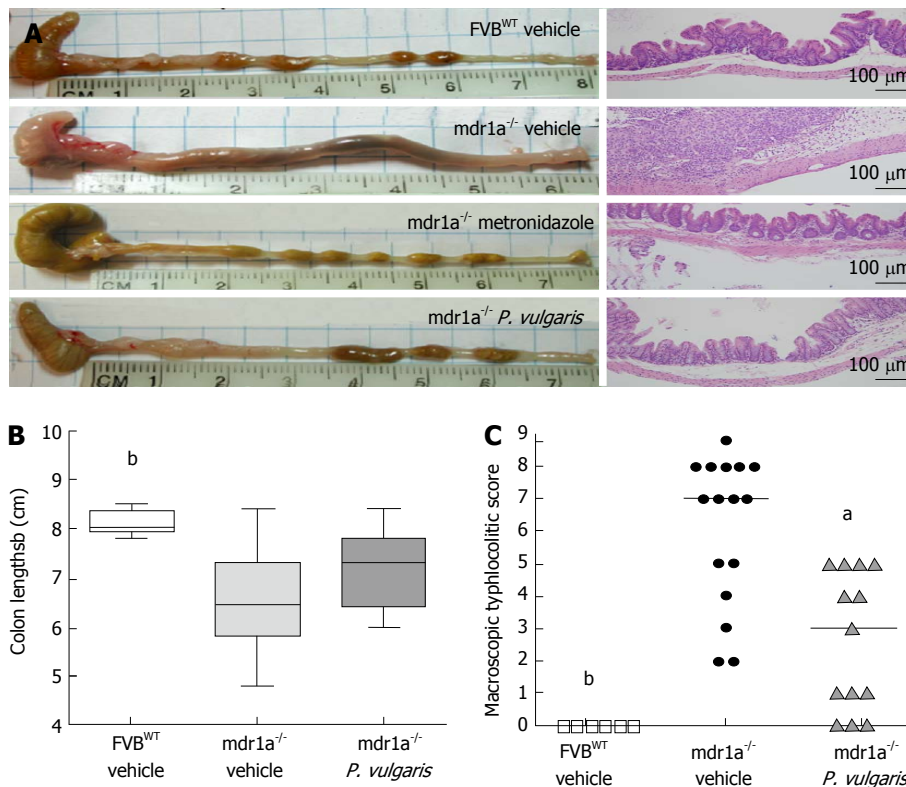


Figure 2 Oral administration of a *Prunella vulgaris* extract attenuated both microscopic and macroscopic cecal lesions in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice. A: Representative photographs of ceca and colons (left) and representative photomicrographs (200 ×) of histological sections of ceca (right) collected at necropsy from FVB^{WT} or *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice treated with either vehicle or *Prunella vulgaris* (*P. vulgaris*) extract; B: Colon lengths were measured at necropsy and the group range is represented. Whiskers indicate minimum and maximum values, while the horizontal line represents the group median; C: Macroscopic typhlocolitic scores were assigned at necropsy as described in the Materials and Methods (Max/Severe = 9, Min/Healthy = 0). ^a*P* < 0.05, ^b*P* < 0.01 compared to *mdr1a*^{-/-} vehicle as calculated by Kruskal-Wallis test. Vehicle-treated FVB^{WT} mice *n* = 6, vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice *n* = 16, *P. vulgaris*-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice *n* = 13.

Table 1 Histopathological scores of cecal tissue

Microscopic parameter	FVB ^{WT} vehicle (<i>n</i> = 6)	mdr1a ^{-/-} vehicle (<i>n</i> = 10)	mdr1a ^{-/-} <i>P. vulgaris</i> (<i>n</i> = 7)
Mucosal height (μm)	3.5 ± 0.2 ^a	4.6 ± 0.2	3.9 ± 0.2
Ulceration	0.2 ± 0.2	1.9 ± 0.3	1.2 ± 0.4
Inflammation	1.3 ± 0.2 ^b	3.6 ± 0.2	2.5 ± 0.4 ^c
Edema	0.7 ± 0.5 ^a	2.4 ± 0.3	0.9 ± 0.3 ^c
Stromal collapse (necrosis)	0.0 ± 0.0 ^a	1.7 ± 0.4	0.5 ± 0.4
Gland hyperplasia	1.2 ± 0.2 ^b	2.8 ± 0.2	2.1 ± 0.3 ^c
Additive cecal score	6.9 ± 0.9 ^b	17.0 ± 1.2	11.1 ± 1.5
Mice exhibiting cecal neutrophil infiltrate	17% ^b	100%	38% ^c

Average values are shown here ± standard error of the mean except where noted. ^a*P* < 0.05, ^b*P* < 0.01 compared to *mdr1a*^{-/-} vehicle with Kruskal-Wallis test with Dunn's multiple comparisons test. ^c*P* < 0.05 compared to *mdr1a*^{-/-} vehicle with Mann-Whitney test.

attenuated macroscopic disease and delayed the onset of spontaneous colitis in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice.

Impact of *P. vulgaris* treatment on the severity of histopathological lesions

Histological inflammation of the cecum (Table 1) and colon (data not shown) was evaluated in the context of mucosal height, ulceration, extent and character of inflammatory cell infiltrate, edema, stromal collapse and glandular necrosis, and glandular hyperplasia. The ceca of vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice were characterized by crypt hyperplasia, extensive transmural ulceration

and inflammatory cell infiltration, as well as submucosal edema and occasional stromal collapse (Figure 2 and Table 1). *P. vulgaris*-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice exhibited statistically significant (*P* < 0.05) improvement in inflammation, edema, gland hyperplasia, and neutrophil infiltration (Table 1). As expected, FVB^{WT} mice presented with no evidence of mucosal inflammation. While 100% of vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice exhibited extensive neutrophilic infiltration into the cecal lamina propria, neutrophils were only noted in cecal mucosa of 38% of *P. vulgaris*-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice (Figure 2 and Table 1). As a measure of the infiltration of granulocytes

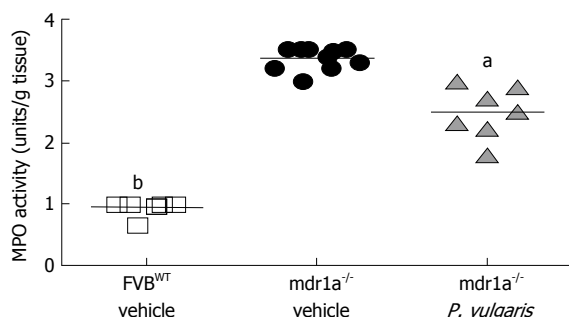


Figure 3 Administration of a *Prunella vulgaris* ethanolic extract reduced local myeloperoxidase activity in the colon of *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice. Homogenates of colonic tissue were subjected to an assay for MPO activity. ^a*P* < 0.05, ^b*P* < 0.01 compared to *mdr1a*^{-/-} vehicle as calculated by Kruskal-Wallis test. Vehicle-treated FVB^{WT} mice *n* = 6, vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice *n* = 10, *P. vulgaris*-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice *n* = 7. MPO: Myeloperoxidase; *P. vulgaris*: *Prunella vulgaris*.

into the mucosal tissue, MPO activity was assessed in tissue homogenates. In comparison to tissue samples from vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice, the associated MPO activity was significantly diminished in *P. vulgaris*-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice (*P* < 0.05) (Figure 3). In contrast to colon length, there was no histological evidence that the *P. vulgaris* treatment attenuated microscopic lesions when compared to vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice (data not shown), suggesting that the bioactive benefit of *P. vulgaris* localized in the cecum. Together, these data indicated that the benefits provided by the oral administration of *P. vulgaris* were to attenuate the severity of inflammation and injury in the cecal mucosa in association with a reduction of the presence or recruitment of inflammatory granulocytes.

Impact of the ethanolic extract of *P. vulgaris* on the induction of innate chemotactic and pro-inflammatory cytokines

To further investigate the mechanism(s) related to improved mucosal homeostasis and the associated reduction in neutrophils and MPO activity in the colons of *P. vulgaris*-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice, serum samples collected at necropsy were examined for the presence of chemokines and cytokines. Of those present in the kit, multiple cytokines/chemokines (Eotaxin, IL-13, IL-15, IL-1 α , IL-1 β , IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, LIF, LIX, M-CSF, MCP-1, MIP-1 α , MIP-2, and RANTES) were not detectable in the serum of any treatment group (data not shown). However, several analytes were significantly elevated in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice compared to FVB^{WT} mice including G-CSF, IL-10, CXCL10, KC, CXCL9, and TNF- α (*P* < 0.01), and IL-9 (*P* < 0.05) (Table 2). When comparing *P. vulgaris* extract-treated to vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice, the levels of IL-10 (*P* < 0.01) and CXCL9 (*P* < 0.05) and TNF- α (*P* < 0.05) were significantly lower in the *P. vulgaris*-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice (Table 2). For the remainder of the cytokines/chemokines listed in Table 2, there was a trend for lower amounts in the serum of *P. vulgaris*-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice when compared

to vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice. This data indicates that oral administration of the ethanolic extract of *P. vulgaris* is able to attenuate production of several innate chemokines and cytokines induced by the inflammatory response in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice.

Differential regulation of gene expression pathways by in vivo treatment with the ethanolic extract of *P. vulgaris*

To further characterize the attenuation of mucosal inflammation provided by *P. vulgaris* treatment, a microarray analysis for inflammatory gene expression was performed in order to identify differential gene regulation between disease phenotypes of botanical extract-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice (e.g., healthy = macroscopic score < 2; colitic = macroscopic score $\geq$ 2) and between FVB^{WT} mice and *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice treated with vehicle. At the extremes of microscopic and macroscopic lesion scores, it was observed that no vehicle treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice were characterized as "healthy" and no FVB^{WT} mice were characterized as "colitic" (data not shown). Genes encoding *CCL2*, *CXCL1*, *CXCL9*, *IL-1 α* , *MMP10*, *TNF- α* , *VCAM-1*, *CCL20*, and *IL-2* were all downregulated more than 2-fold by *P. vulgaris* treatment in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice that did not develop colitis (Table 3). *P. vulgaris* treatment appears to modulate the NF- κ B pathway in the preservation of mucosal homeostasis in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice.

Influence of *P. vulgaris* on local T cell and B cell populations

Because T and B cells are activated as a consequence of inflammation, T cell and B cell populations in the cecal tonsils of *mdr1a*^{-/-} and FVB^{WT} mice were analyzed to evaluate the effects of *P. vulgaris* treatment on local lymphocyte populations (Figure 4). Severe colitis in vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice resulted in 3-fold more CD4⁺ T cells (Figure 4A) and 6-fold more CD8⁺ T cells (Figure 4B) in the cecal tonsil as compared to vehicle gavaged FVB^{WT} mice. In *P. vulgaris*-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice, the numbers of CD4⁺ T cells in the cecal tonsils were significantly lower (*P* < 0.05) when compared to vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice (Figure 4A), and there was a trend indicating fewer CD8⁺ T cells in the *P. vulgaris*-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice (Figure 4B).

Vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice exhibited a 2.5-fold increase in the number of PNA⁺B220⁺ germinal center B cells (Figure 4C) in the cecal tonsil as compared to vehicle gavaged FVB^{WT} mice. Remarkably, *P. vulgaris* treatment significantly (*P* < 0.05) decreased PNA⁺B220⁺ germinal center B cells in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice (Figure 4C). Together, these data indicate that the expansion CD4⁺ T cell and PNA⁺B220⁺ germinal center B cell populations were significantly lower in the cecal tonsils of *P. vulgaris*-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice.

P. vulgaris prevents antigenic responses to some members of the intestinal microbiota

Antibody responses to antigens derived from the gut

Table 2 Assessment of selected cytokines in the serum of mice

Cytokine/chemokine	FVB ^{WT} vehicle (n = 6)	mdr1a ^{-/-} vehicle (n = 16)	mdr1a ^{-/-} <i>P. vulgaris</i> (n = 13)
G-CSF	140.1 ± 15 ^b	9694.0 ± 2563	4597.0 ± 1931
GM-CSF	ND	21.1 ± 11	1.5 ± 1
IL-9	77.9 ± 27 ^a	200.1 ± 38	117.8 ± 14
IL-10	ND ^b	19.4 ± 4	4.6 ± 2 ^{a,d}
IL-17	4 ± 2	16 ± 4	1 ± 1
CXCL10	8.4 ± 5 ^b	724.3 ± 136	397.2 ± 85
KC	69.5 ± 24 ^b	527.1 ± 119	253.4 ± 58
CXCL9	108.7 ± 37 ^b	3901.0 ± 858	1319.0 ± 277 ^c
TNFα	9.3 ± 0.1 ^b	14.8 ± 1	9.9 ± 3 ^c

Serum samples were collected at the time mice were euthanized and analyzed as described in Materials and Methods. Average values (pg/mL serum) are shown here ± standard error of the mean except where noted. ^a*P* < 0.05, ^b*P* < 0.01 compared to mdr1a^{-/-} vehicle with Kruskal-Wallis test with Dunn's multiple comparisons test. ^c*P* < 0.05, ^d*P* < 0.01 compared to mdr1a^{-/-} vehicle with unpaired *t*-test with Welch's correction. ND: Not detectable; *P. vulgaris*: *Prunella vulgaris*.

Table 3 Attenuation of inflammatory gene expression in mdr1a^{-/-} mice treated orally with an extract from *Prunella vulgaris*

Gene	Pathway affiliation	Fold change compared to vehicle-treated mdr1a ^{-/-} mice ^a		
		FVB ^{WT} vehicle healthy	mdr1a ^{-/-} <i>P. vulgaris</i> healthy	mdr1a ^{-/-} <i>P. vulgaris</i> colitic
<i>Ccl2</i>	NF-κB, LDL	-7.3	-3.4	-1.1
<i>Cxcl1</i>	NF-κB	-11.3	-7.2	-1.0
<i>Cxcl9</i>	NF-κB, Jak/Stat	-23.9	-4.2	-1.1
<i>Icam1</i>	NF-κB, Phospholipase C	-3.2	-1.2	1.8
<i>Il1a</i>	NF-κB	-13.4	-8.0	1.3
<i>Mmp10</i>	NF-κB, Jak/Stat	-6.6	-8.5	1.2
<i>Tnfα</i>	NF-κB	-10.2	-2.6	1.2
<i>Vcam1</i>	NF-κB, Phospholipase C, LDL	-3.8	-2.0	1.2
<i>Ccl20</i>	NF-κB	-3.6	-2.0	1.4
<i>Il2</i>	NF-κB, NFAT, Calcium, PKC	-3.7	-2.2	-1.5

^aA negative value indicates that there was a lower level of gene expression when compared to the level of gene expression in vehicle-treated mdr1a^{-/-} mice that developed severe colitis. *P. vulgaris*: *Prunella vulgaris*.

microbiota (e.g., clostridial cluster group XIVa) have been noted in IBD patients and in murine models of IBD^[31-33]. These antibody responses are indicative of a loss of epithelial integrity and immune tolerance to the microbiota and do not occur in healthy humans or mice. Pooled serum samples from mdr1a^{-/-} mice treated with *P. vulgaris* were evaluated by immunoblot analysis against antigens (i.e., whole cell sonicate) derived from select members of the clostridial cluster group XIVa within the microbiota (Figure 5). As anticipated, sera from FVB^{WT} mice did not display antibody reactivity against these bacterial antigens, suggesting that these mice maintained immunological tolerance to their gut microbiota. Conversely, sera from vehicle-treated mdr1a^{-/-} mice did contain antibodies reactive to these bacterial antigens, indicating a loss of immunologic tolerance to these members of the microbiota. Sera from *P. vulgaris*-treated mdr1a^{-/-} mice displayed little to no detectable antibody response to the three bacterial antigens (Figure 5).

DISCUSSION

As the long term safety and efficacy of current parenteral therapeutics for IBD are a concern and antibiotics are

deemed unreliable for long-term use in IBD patients, there is a need for new therapies that may include complementary treatments^[8,9,34]. Complementary and alternative therapy including nutraceuticals hold realistic potential in treating or supplementing treatment of inflammatory disorders, as the anti-inflammatory and antioxidant benefits of plant-derived components are becoming more extensively characterized^[35-39]. *P. vulgaris*, already popular in Asian medicine, is a viable candidate for study as a therapeutic agent in the treatment of IBD as it contains several anti-inflammatory, immunomodulatory, and antioxidant flavonoids, polyphenols, and triterpenoids and has no documented toxic side-effects^[37,40-44]. In this regard, rosmarinic acid, the most plentiful phenolic compound found in *P. vulgaris*, was found to protect mice against the deleterious effects associated with sepsis by downregulating inflammatory genes in the NF-κB pathway including the related pro-inflammatory cytokines TNF-α and IL-6^[45].

The mdr1a^{-/-} mouse model is ideal to use for studies of potential IBD therapeutics that are relevant to human medicine as mdr1a^{-/-} mice are immunocompetent, develop spontaneous colitis in the context of a leaky intestinal epithelium, and exhibit cytokine profiles and

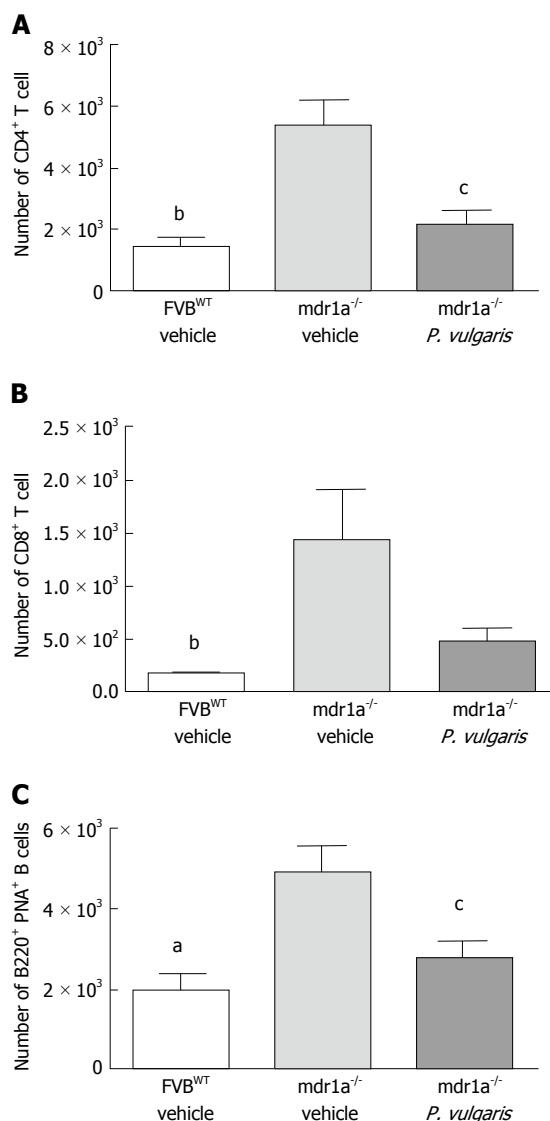


Figure 4 Evaluation of T cell and B cell subsets in the cecal tonsil of *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice treated with *Prunella vulgaris* ethanolic extract. Cecal tonsils were excised at necropsy, single cell suspensions prepared and labeled for flow cytometric analysis as described in Materials and Methods. Absolute numbers of (A) CD4⁺ T cells; (B) CD8⁺ T cells; and (C) B220⁺PNA⁺ germinal center B cells in the cecal tonsils of mice. ^a*P* < 0.05, ^b*P* < 0.01 compared to *mdr1a*^{-/-} vehicle as calculated by Kruskal-Wallis test. ^c*P* < 0.05 compared to *mdr1a*^{-/-} vehicle as calculated by unpaired *t*-test. The *n* for each group is equal to that noted in Figure 1 and data are representative of two independent experiments. Vehicle-treated FVB^{WT} mice *n* = 5-6, vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice *n* = 8-10, *P. vulgaris*-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice *n* = 5-7.

immune responses similar to those documented in clinical IBD cases^[30,46-51]. It was previously demonstrated that administration of curcumin attenuated mucosal inflammation in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice^[52]. In these studies, similar to previously published studies, onset of clinical disease (e.g., weight loss) in vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice was observed at roughly 10 wk of age (Figure 1)^[30]. In contrast, onset of clinical disease was delayed by treatment with the *P. vulgaris* extract; in addition, markedly fewer of the *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice treated developed severe clinical disease by 20 wk of age (Figure 1). *P. vulgaris* treatment of *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice was also found

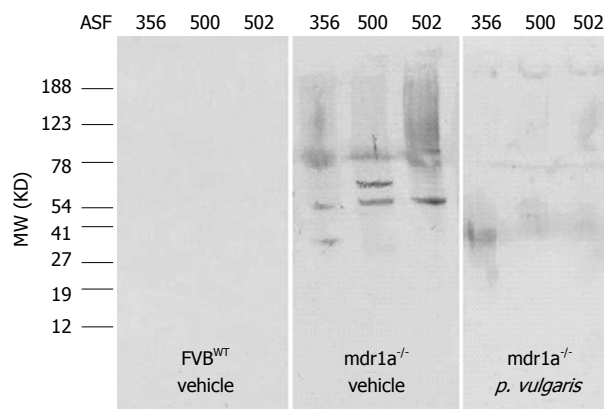


Figure 5 Vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice with severe colitic inflammation developed serum antibody to antigens derived from gut microbiota while those treated with *Prunella vulgaris* extract do not. Whole cell sonicates of three separate clostridial species present as part of the intestinal microbiota (altered Schaedler flora members 356, 500 and 502) were subjected to SDS-PAGE. Western blot analysis was performed using sera collected at necropsy. Antigens in lanes represented in each panel are as follows from left to right: ASF502, ASF500 and ASF356.

to attenuate macroscopic lesions associated with the characteristic severe typhlocolitis observed in this murine model (Figure 2). In contrast to the vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice, ceca of *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice treated with a *P. vulgaris* extract retained normal mucosal architecture, lacked enlarged lymphoid aggregates, and retained luminal contents devoid of blood or mucus. Macroscopically, the colons of botanical-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice were more similar in appearance to the colons of the FVB^{WT} control mice with regard to presence of formed feces, and lack of grossly visible tissue edema and rigidity (Figure 2). *Mdr1a*^{-/-} mice treated with *P. vulgaris* extract also presented with normal colon lengths (Figure 2); microscopically, colonic lesions were less attenuated in the botanical extract-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice than those present in the cecum (data not shown). The microscopic lesions observed in the ceca of *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice treated with *P. vulgaris* were markedly less severe when compared to those observed for vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice (Table 1). Together, these findings highlight the differences between colonic and cecal compartments in terms of the magnitude of the disease. Perhaps these differences arise from the more dense concentration of metabolically active microbes in the cecum as compared to the colon, which may lead to more efficient metabolism/degradation of the extract and greater health benefit at more proximal gastrointestinal sites.

Although the etiology of IBD is still ill defined, many recognize that the inductive phase of colitis involves a compromised intestinal epithelium and activation of innate immune responses, including neutrophil activation, transmigration across the mucosal epithelium, and enzymatic damage to host tissues^[3,53-56]. Flavonoids from licorice have been shown to inhibit neutrophil infiltration into lung tissue after lipopolysaccharide-induced inflammation and reduce the severity of associated inflammatory damage to host pulmonary

tissues^[57]. As a group, the *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice treated with the *P. vulgaris* ethanolic extract presented with markedly less neutrophilic infiltration into the cecal mucosa when compared to vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice (Table 1). Reduction of the neutrophilic infiltrate in these mice was correlated with less severe microscopic scores and a significant decrease in tissue levels of MPO activity (Figures 2 and 3, Table 1). MPO enzymatic activity is a known correlate to intestinal damage and is often used as a marker of IBD severity in many animal models of colitis^[58-62].

Since neutrophils are not resident in tissues, cytokine and chemokine signals produced by epithelial cells and local macrophages are responsible for the recruitment of neutrophils into the mucosal tissues^[63,64]. Homeostatic production of these innate chemokines is central to mucosal health, while over-production contributes to the development of severe inflammation in colitis^[55,56,65]. Debate regarding the role of NF- κ B activation and the exacerbated recruitment innate immune cells in acute intestinal inflammatory models continues, with some research pointing to a protective effect by these components and others revealing a deleterious effect^[23,66-68]. However, many agree that dysregulation of NF- κ B signaling and the consequent innate cellular responses are causative factors in the inductive phase and maintenance of chronic inflammation associated with human CD and UC^[69-71]. Pro-inflammatory mediators induced by activation of NF- κ B are abnormally upregulated in CD and UC patients^[72]. Moreover, it concludes nuclear translocation of NF- κ B in epithelial cells and local monocytes upregulates production of pro-inflammatory cytokines and chemokines such as TNF- α , IL-1 β , KC, and CXCL9. These cytokines increase expression of adhesion molecules (*i.e.*, VCAMs, ICAMs, and MadCAM) on endothelial cells, while chemokines create chemical gradients to attract neutrophils and other innate inflammatory cells to sites of injury^[55,64,65,73]. Others have reported that the ability to regulate or attenuate cytokine production (*e.g.*, TNF- α , IL-1 α , IL-1 β , IFN- γ) decreases the expression of chemokines (*e.g.*, IL-8/KC and VEGF) and adhesion molecules on endothelial cells resulting in amelioration of inflammatory tissue damage in several disease models, including colitis^[1,45,66,74]. The patterns of cytokine and chemokine production observed in aged-matched, vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice in the current study (Table 2) was consistent with that previously reported^[51]. Serum samples from *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice treated with the ethanolic extract of *P. vulgaris* had lower levels of cytokines that would contribute to the production of granulocytes and monocytes (G-CSF and GM-CSF) as well as the neutrophil chemotactic factor KC (Table 2). Importantly, treatment with the *P. vulgaris* extract reduced serum levels of TNF- α (Table 2), a cytokine known to be a key regulator of inflammatory responses in colitis^[75]. These data indicate that *P. vulgaris* extract reduced the production of cytokines and chemokines central to the induction and maintenance of chronic inflammation.

Activation of the transcription factor NF- κ B and the regulation of its target genes have well documented links to the chronicity of inflammation associated with IBD^[29,69-71]. Recent studies have shown that flavonoids similar to those identified in *P. vulgaris* are capable of downregulating NF- κ B and ultimately regulating the production of innate chemotactic factors and pro-inflammatory cytokines^[76,77]. One such study showed that the flavonoid luteolin decreased NF- κ B expression in the ceca and colons of IL-10^{-/-} mice, and effectively ameliorated spontaneous colitis^[23]. Similarly, the ethanolic extract of *P. vulgaris*, which is known to contain several flavonoids (data not shown)^[15], downregulated expression of chemokine genes (*Ccl2*, *Cxcl1/KC*, *Cxcl9/CXCL9*, and *Ccl20*) and genes involved in the increased expression of adhesion molecules (*VCAM-1*, *ICAM*, *TNF α* and *IL-1 α*) and tissue remodeling to allow for inflammatory cell transmigration (*MMP-10*) (Table. 3). All of these genes participate in the activation of or are regulated by NF- κ B^[78-83]. Based on our findings, the ethanolic extract of *P. vulgaris* likely attenuates neutrophil recruitment into the colonic tissues of *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice by downregulating genes regulated by NF- κ B signaling. The importance of regulating inflammation in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice prior to the onset of clinical disease is underscored by recent data showing that regulation of inflammatory gene expression is altered in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice and in mice treated with dextran sodium sulfate (DSS) prior to any histologic signs of inflammation^[84,85]. Since defects in gene expression precede inflammation, prophylactic approaches to control mucosal inflammation rather than providing therapy at or after the onset of an inflammatory flare may prove advantageous. In the current study, therapeutic initiation of *P. vulgaris* treatment (*i.e.*, after colitic onset) was ineffective at reducing the severity of inflammation (data not shown). This observation supports the current hypothesis that the ethanolic extract of *P. vulgaris* modulates innate inflammatory gene expression, and that effective treatment should begin prior to the onset of clinical disease.

In addition to NF- κ B signaling and innate immune activation, adaptive immune responses also play an integral role in mediating the chronicity and severity of colitic disease in experimental models and in humans with IBD. In particular, aberrant CD4⁺ T cell responses to antigens derived from the resident microbiota have been implicated in the pathogenesis of IBD^[31,86]. Pretreatment with the ethanolic extract of *P. vulgaris* decreased production of CXCL10 and CXCL9, two proteins that are induced by IFN- γ and are chemotactic for T cells (Table 2)^[79,87]. These chemokines and other cytokines participate in inflammatory feedback loops that may be interrupted by treatment with the ethanolic extract of *P. vulgaris*. The observation of reduced numbers of CD4⁺ and CD8⁺ T cells in the cecal tonsils of *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice (Figure 4) is consistent with the lower amounts of CXCL10 and CXCL9 in the serum. There were also lower levels of IL-9 in the serum of *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice treated with

the ethanolic extract of *P. vulgaris* (Table 2), a cytokine known to enhance CD4⁺ T cell proliferation and inhibit apoptosis^[88]. Moreover, the decreased expression of *CXCL9*, *Cd2*, *IL-1 α* , *TNF- α* , and *Ccl20* genes in extract treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice provides additional evidence that treatment with *P. vulgaris* extract impacted the robustness of the local T cell response (Table 3). CCL20 is strongly chemotactic for immature dendritic cells, which would mature upon collecting antigen in the tissues, present that antigen to T cells, and stimulate an adaptive immune response^[89].

With respect to the induction of antibody specific to antigens derived from the resident microbiota, germinal centers will develop in lymphoid tissue upon B cell activation by T dependent antigens^[90]. The results of this study demonstrated that the number of PNA⁺B220⁺ B cells present in *P. vulgaris*-treated mice was significantly less than that detected in the vehicle-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice (Figure 4). As a consequence of the attenuated germinal center B cell response, there was a lack of antibody production towards bacterial antigens derived from the resident microbiota in *P. vulgaris*-treated *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice (Figure 5). Collectively, these data present evidence that the ethanolic extract of *P. vulgaris* acts to maintain mucosal homeostasis in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice by regulating gene expression associated with innate inflammatory responses and attenuating the activation of the adaptive immune response.

It has been recently reported that 40% to 50% of adults suffering with inflammatory bowel disease or irritable bowel disease utilize complementary and alternative medicine to treat their symptoms^[34]. Because of the prevalence at which patients use complementary approaches to attenuate clinical symptoms, it is critical to evaluate the efficacy of nutraceuticals in pre-clinical controlled studies. The work highlighted in this study indicates that an ethanolic extract derived from *P. vulgaris* was safe when administered daily for 14 wk and markedly attenuated the severity of colitis in mice that are genetically prone to develop mucosal inflammation. The health benefits associated with consuming plant-derived nutraceuticals are likely associated with the richness and complexity of anti-inflammatory compounds present in botanical extracts. There is a need to further evaluate the underlying mechanism(s) that contributed to the anti-inflammatory activity of *P. vulgaris* extracts in order to provide a basis for their legitimate use as a prophylactic or supplementary option for the treatment of IBD and other chronic inflammatory disorders.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors thank Dr. Philip Dixon for helpful discussion and review of the statistics.

COMMENTS

Background

Extracts of *Prunella vulgaris* (*P. vulgaris*) have been shown to contain anti-

inflammatory components but there is limited information regarding the ability of these extracts to attenuate or prevent inflammation *in vivo*. Mice that are deficient in the expression of the multiple drug resistance gene (*i.e.*, *mdr1a*^{-/-}) develop spontaneous colitis by 12 to 15 wk of age. As opposed to chemically-induced models of colitis, these mice offer an excellent model to assess the anti-inflammatory capabilities of botanical extracts administered as an oral formulation.

Research frontiers

Treatment of inflammatory bowel disease is dominated by the use of drugs and biologicals that systemically target inflammatory processes. The development of effective treatment modalities that can be delivered orally and target the inflammatory response in the gastrointestinal mucosa would reduce the systemic side-effects observed with other treatment regimen. The studies presented herein demonstrate that botanical extracts can effectively attenuate the severity of colitis on a murine model of spontaneous colitis.

Innovations and breakthroughs

This is the first study to demonstrate the oral administration of an ethanolic extract derived from *P. vulgaris* can be used to delay the onset of and ameliorate the severity of spontaneously occurring colitis in *mdr1a*-deficient mice.

Applications

It is estimated that 30% to 70% of patients suffering from inflammatory bowel diseases use some form of complementary and alternative therapy to treat their symptoms. Many of the parenteral therapies (*e.g.*, steroids, 5-aminosalicylates, monoclonal antibodies) used to control gastrointestinal inflammation are associated side-effects. The development of extracts derived from medicinal plants, such as *P. vulgaris*, that can be delivered orally and ameliorate gastrointestinal inflammation may be useful adjunct treatments for IBD patients.

Terminology

Mice lacking the multiple drug resistance (*mdr1a*) gene fail to produce an epithelial cell transporter protein (a 107 kDa P-glycoprotein) responsible for pumping various compounds across the cell membrane. The pathological lesions and cytokine profiles observed in the colon of *mdr1a*-deficient mice resembles that noted in human ulcerative colitis patients.

Peer-review

This is a well written manuscript, investigating the ability of an orally-supplemented *P. vulgaris* extract to attenuate the clinical symptoms of colitis in an animal model of spontaneous colitis (*mdr1a*^{-/-} mice). The authors used valid methodological approaches to compare the histopathological, biochemical and immunological profile of the supplemented and control animals, the presentation of the results was clear and the discussion was thorough.

REFERENCES

- 1 Sartor RB. Innate immunity in the pathogenesis and therapy of IBD. *J Gastroenterol* 2003; **38** Suppl 15: 43-47 [PMID: 12698870]
- 2 McGovern DP, Gardet A, Törkvist L, Goyette P, Essers J, Taylor KD, Neale BM, Ong RT, Lagacé C, Li C, Green T, Stevens CR, Beauchamp C, Fleshner PR, Carlson M, D'Amato M, Halfvarson J, Hibberd ML, Lördal M, Padyukov L, Andriulli A, Colombo E, Latiano A, Palmieri O, Bernard EJ, Deslandres C, Hommes DW, de Jong DJ, Stokkers PC, Weersma RK, Sharma Y, Silverberg MS, Cho JH, Wu J, Roeder K, Brant SR, Schumm LP, Duerr RH, Dubinsky MC, Glazer NL, Haritunians T, Ippoliti A, Melmed GY, Siscovick DS, Vasilias EA, Targan SR, Annese V, Wijmenga C, Pettersson S, Rotter JJ, Xavier RJ, Daly MJ, Rioux JD, Seielstad M. Genome-wide association identifies multiple ulcerative colitis susceptibility loci. *Nat Genet* 2010; **42**: 332-337 [PMID: 20228799 DOI: 10.1038/ng.549]
- 3 Elson CO, Cong Y, McCracken VJ, Dimmitt RA, Lorenz RG, Weaver CT. Experimental models of inflammatory bowel disease reveal innate, adaptive, and regulatory mechanisms of host dialogue with the microbiota. *Immunol Rev* 2005; **206**: 260-276 [PMID: 16048554 DOI: 10.1016/j.immrev.2005.05.001]

- 10.1111/j.0105-2896.2005.00291.x]
- 4 **Arseneau KO**, Tamagawa H, Pizarro TT, Cominelli F. Innate and adaptive immune responses related to IBD pathogenesis. *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 2007; **9**: 508-512 [PMID: 18377804 DOI: 10.1007/s11894-007-0067-3]
- 5 **Su L**, Shen L, Clayburgh DR, Nalle SC, Sullivan EA, Meddings JB, Abraham C, Turner JR. Targeted epithelial tight junction dysfunction causes immune activation and contributes to development of experimental colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **136**: 551-563 [PMID: 19027740 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.10.081]
- 6 **Brown SJ**, Mayer L. The immune response in inflammatory bowel disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2007; **102**: 2058-2069 [PMID: 17561966 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2007.01343.x]
- 7 **Van Assche G**, Vermeire S, Rutgeerts P. Medical treatment of inflammatory bowel diseases. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2005; **21**: 443-447 [PMID: 15930985 DOI: 10.1097/01.mog.0000166752.94169.ca]
- 8 **Triantafyllidis JK**, Merikas E, Georgopoulos F. Current and emerging drugs for the treatment of inflammatory bowel disease. *Drug Des Devel Ther* 2011; **5**: 185-210 [PMID: 21552489 DOI: 10.2147/DDDT.S11290]
- 9 **Isaacs KL**, Sartor RB. Treatment of inflammatory bowel disease with antibiotics. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 2004; **33**: 335-345, x [PMID: 15177542 DOI: 10.1016/j.gtc.2004.02.006]
- 10 **Sandborn WJ**, Rutgeerts P, Enns R, Hanauer SB, Colombel JF, Panaccione R, D'Haens G, Li J, Rosenfeld MR, Kent JD, Pollack PF. Adalimumab induction therapy for Crohn disease previously treated with infliximab: a randomized trial. *Ann Intern Med* 2007; **146**: 829-838 [PMID: 17470824 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-146-12-200706190-00159]
- 11 **Rutgeerts P**, Sandborn WJ, Feagan BG, Reinisch W, Olson A, Johanns J, Travers S, Rachmilewitz D, Hanauer SB, Lichtenstein GR, de Villiers WJ, Present D, Sands BE, Colombel JF. Infliximab for induction and maintenance therapy for ulcerative colitis. *N Engl J Med* 2005; **353**: 2462-2476 [PMID: 16339095 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa050516]
- 12 **Shah SB**, Hanauer SB. Risks and benefits of the use of concomitant immunosuppressives and biologics in inflammatory bowel disease. *Rev Gastroenterol Disord* 2008; **8**: 159-168 [PMID: 18957923]
- 13 **Nguyen GC**, Steinhart AH. Nationwide patterns of hospitalizations to centers with high volume of admissions for inflammatory bowel disease and their impact on mortality. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2008; **14**: 1688-1694 [PMID: 18623172 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.20526]
- 14 **Hilsden RJ**, Scott CM, Verhoef MJ. Complementary medicine use by patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1998; **93**: 697-701 [PMID: 9625111 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.1998.208_a.x]
- 15 **Cheung HY**, Zhang QF. Enhanced analysis of triterpenes, flavonoids and phenolic compounds in *Prunella vulgaris* L. by capillary zone electrophoresis with the addition of running buffer modifiers. *J Chromatogr A* 2008; **1213**: 231-238 [PMID: 18980769 DOI: 10.1016/j.chroma.2008.10.033]
- 16 **Hsu CL**, Hong BH, Yu YS, Yen GC. Antioxidant and anti-inflammatory effects of *Orthosiphon aristatus* and its bioactive compounds. *J Agric Food Chem* 2010; **58**: 2150-2156 [PMID: 20095565 DOI: 10.1021/jf903557c]
- 17 **Lee Y**, Shin DH, Kim JH, Hong S, Choi D, Kim YJ, Kwak MK, Jung Y. Caffeic acid phenethyl ester-mediated Nrf2 activation and IkappaB kinase inhibition are involved in NFkappaB inhibitory effect: structural analysis for NFkappaB inhibition. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2010; **643**: 21-28 [PMID: 20599928 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejphar.2010.06.016]
- 18 **Takada K**, Nakane T, Masuda K, Ishii H. Ursolic acid and oleanolic acid, members of pentacyclic triterpenoid acids, suppress TNF- α -induced E-selectin expression by cultured umbilical vein endothelial cells. *Phytomedicine* 2010; **17**: 1114-1119 [PMID: 20579861 DOI: 10.1016/j.phymed.2010.04.006]
- 19 **Petersen M**, Simmonds MS. Rosmarinic acid. *Phytochemistry* 2003; **62**: 121-125 [PMID: 12482446 DOI: 10.1016/S0031-9422(02)00513-7]
- 20 **Moon MK**, Lee YJ, Kim JS, Kang DG, Lee HS. Effect of caffeic acid on tumor necrosis factor- α -induced vascular inflammation in human umbilical vein endothelial cells. *Biol Pharm Bull* 2009; **32**: 1371-1377 [PMID: 19652376 DOI: 10.1248/bpb.32.1371]
- 21 **Ye L**, Luo Y, Peng X, Zhou Y, Ou X. Synthesis and biological activity of 3-(2, 8, 9-trioxo-aza-1-germatricyclo [3. 3. 0] undecane-1-yl)-caffeic acid. *Med Chem* 2009; **5**: 382-384 [PMID: 19689396 DOI: 10.2174/157340609788681539]
- 22 **Ye Z**, Liu Z, Henderson A, Lee K, Hostetter J, Wannemuehler M, Hendrich S. Increased CYP4B1 mRNA is associated with the inhibition of dextran sulfate sodium-induced colitis by caffeic acid in mice. *Exp Biol Med* (Maywood) 2009; **234**: 605-616 [PMID: 19307459 DOI: 10.3181/0901-RM-1]
- 23 **Karrasch T**, Kim JS, Jang BI, Jobin C. The flavonoid luteolin worsens chemical-induced colitis in NF-kappaB(EGFP) transgenic mice through blockade of NF-kappaB-dependent protective molecules. *PLoS One* 2007; **2**: e596 [PMID: 17611628 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0000596]
- 24 **Jergens AE**, Dorn A, Wilson J, Dingbaum K, Henderson A, Liu Z, Hostetter J, Evans RB, Wannemuehler MJ. Induction of differential immune reactivity to members of the flora of gnotobiotic mice following colonization with *Helicobacter bilis* or *Brachyspira hyodysenteriae*. *Microbes Infect* 2006; **8**: 1602-1610 [PMID: 16698302 DOI: 10.1016/j.micinf.2006.01.019]
- 25 **Jergens AE**, Wilson-Welder JH, Dorn A, Henderson A, Liu Z, Evans RB, Hostetter J, Wannemuehler MJ. *Helicobacter bilis* triggers persistent immune reactivity to antigens derived from the commensal bacteria in gnotobiotic C3H/HeN mice. *Gut* 2007; **56**: 934-940 [PMID: 17145736 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2006.099242]
- 26 **Butcher EC**, Rouse RV, Coffman RL, Nottenburg CN, Hardy RR, Weissman IL. Surface phenotype of Peyer's patch germinal center cells: implications for the role of germinal centers in B cell differentiation. *J Immunol* 1982; **129**: 2698-2707 [PMID: 6982940]
- 27 **Wannemuehler MJ**, Overstreet AM, Ward DV, Phillips GJ. Draft genome sequences of the altered schaedler flora, a defined bacterial community from gnotobiotic mice. *Genome Announc* 2014; **2**: e00287-14 [PMID: 24723722 DOI: 10.1128/genomeA.00287-14]
- 28 **Wymore Brand M**, Wannemuehler MJ, Phillips GJ, Proctor A, Overstreet AM, Jergens AE, Orcutt RP, Fox JG. The Altered Schaedler Flora: Continued Applications of a Defined Murine Microbial Community. *ILAR* 2015; **56**: 169-178 [PMID: 26323627 DOI: 10.1093/ilar/ilv012]
- 29 **Jobin C**, Haskill S, Mayer L, Panja A, Sartor RB. Evidence for altered regulation of I kappa B alpha degradation in human colonic epithelial cells. *J Immunol* 1997; **158**: 226-234 [PMID: 8977194]
- 30 **Panwala CM**, Jones JC, Viney JL. A novel model of inflammatory bowel disease: mice deficient for the multiple drug resistance gene, *mrla*, spontaneously develop colitis. *J Immunol* 1998; **161**: 5733-5744 [PMID: 9820555]
- 31 **Packey CD**, Sartor RB. Interplay of commensal and pathogenic bacteria, genetic mutations, and immunoregulatory defects in the pathogenesis of inflammatory bowel diseases. *J Intern Med* 2008; **263**: 597-606 [PMID: 18479259 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2796.2008.01962.x]
- 32 **Vermeire S**, Vermeulen N, Van Assche G, Bossuyt X, Rutgeerts P. (Auto)antibodies in inflammatory bowel diseases. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 2008; **37**: 429-438, vii [PMID: 18499029 DOI: 10.1016/j.gtc.2008.03.001]
- 33 **Schoepfer AM**, Schaffer T, Mueller S, Flogerzi B, Vassella E, Seibold-Schmid B, Seibold F. Phenotypic associations of Crohn's disease with antibodies to flagellins A4-Fla2 and Fla-X, ASCA, p-ANCA, PAB, and NOD2 mutations in a Swiss Cohort. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2009; **15**: 1358-1367 [PMID: 19253375 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.20892]
- 34 **Hung A**, Kang N, Bollom A, Wolf JL, Lembo A. Complementary and Alternative Medicine Use Is Prevalent Among Patients with Gastrointestinal Diseases. *Dig Dis Sci* 2015; **60**: 1883-1888 [PMID: 25556585 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-014-3498-3]
- 35 **Kim JE**, Son JE, Jung SK, Kang NJ, Lee CY, Lee KW, Lee HJ. Cocoa polyphenols suppress TNF- α -induced vascular endothelial growth factor expression by inhibiting phosphoinositide 3-kinase (PI3K) and mitogen-activated protein kinase kinase-1 (MEK1) activities in mouse epidermal cells. *Br J Nutr* 2010; **104**: 957-964 [PMID: 20550744 DOI: 10.1017/S0007114510001704]

- 36 **Magrone T**, Jirillo E. Polyphenols from red wine are potent modulators of innate and adaptive immune responsiveness. *Proc Nutr Soc* 2010; **69**: 279-285 [PMID: 20522276 DOI: 10.1017/S0029665110000121]
- 37 **Shin TY**, Kim YK, Kim HM. Inhibition of immediate-type allergic reactions by *Prunella vulgaris* in a murine model. *Immunopharmacol Immunotoxicol* 2001; **23**: 423-435 [PMID: 11694032 DOI: 10.1081/IPH-100107341]
- 38 **Tran TA**, McCoy MK, Sporn MB, Tansey MG. The synthetic triterpenoid CDDO-methyl ester modulates microglial activities, inhibits TNF production, and provides dopaminergic neuroprotection. *J Neuroinflammation* 2008; **5**: 14 [PMID: 18474101 DOI: 10.1186/1742-2094-5-14]
- 39 **Ziyan L**, Yongmei Z, Nan Z, Ning T, Baolin L. Evaluation of the anti-inflammatory activity of luteolin in experimental animal models. *Planta Med* 2007; **73**: 221-226 [PMID: 17354164 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-967122]
- 40 **Brindley MA**, Widrechner MP, McCoy JA, Murphy P, Hauck C, Rizshsky L, Nikolau B, Maury W. Inhibition of lentivirus replication by aqueous extracts of *Prunella vulgaris*. *Viral J* 2009; **6**: 8 [PMID: 19154592 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-6-8]
- 41 **Reichling J**, Nolkemper S, Stintzing FC, Schnitzler P. Impact of ethanolic lamiaceae extracts on herpesvirus infectivity in cell culture. *Forsch Komplementmed* 2008; **15**: 313-320 [PMID: 19142040 DOI: 10.1159/000164690]
- 42 **Zdarilová A**, Svobodová A, Simánek V, Ulrichová J. *Prunella vulgaris* extract and rosmarinic acid suppress lipopolysaccharide-induced alteration in human gingival fibroblasts. *Toxicol In Vitro* 2009; **23**: 386-392 [PMID: 19159670 DOI: 10.1016/j.tiv.2008.12.021]
- 43 **Zhang Y**, But PP, Ooi VE, Xu HX, Delaney GD, Lee SH, Lee SF. Chemical properties, mode of action, and in vivo anti-herpes activities of a lignin-carbohydrate complex from *Prunella vulgaris*. *Antiviral Res* 2007; **75**: 242-249 [PMID: 17475343 DOI: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2007.03.010]
- 44 **Zheng J**, He J, Ji B, Li Y, Zhang X. Antihyperglycemic activity of *Prunella vulgaris* L. in streptozotocin-induced diabetic mice. *Asia Pac J Clin Nutr* 2007; **16** Suppl 1: 427-431 [PMID: 17392144]
- 45 **Jiang WL**, Chen XG, Qu GW, Yue XD, Zhu HB, Tian JW, Fu FH. Rosmarinic acid protects against experimental sepsis by inhibiting proinflammatory factor release and ameliorating hemodynamics. *Shock* 2009; **32**: 608-613 [PMID: 19295475 DOI: 10.1097/SHK.0b013e3181a48e86]
- 46 **Schwab M**, Schaeffeler E, Marx C, Fromm MF, Kaskas B, Metzler J, Stange E, Herfarth H, Schoelmerich J, Gregor M, Walker S, Cascorbi I, Roots I, Brinkmann U, Zanger UM, Eichelbaum M. Association between the C3435T MDR1 gene polymorphism and susceptibility for ulcerative colitis. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **124**: 26-33 [PMID: 12512026 DOI: 10.1053/gast.2003.50010]
- 47 **Banner KH**, Cattaneo C, Le Net JL, Popovic A, Collins D, Gale JD. Macroscopic, microscopic and biochemical characterisation of spontaneous colitis in a transgenic mouse, deficient in the multiple drug resistance 1a gene. *Br J Pharmacol* 2004; **143**: 590-598 [PMID: 15466445 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjp.0705982]
- 48 **Bilsborough J**, Viney JL. Out, out darn toxin: the role of MDR in intestinal homeostasis. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: 339-340 [PMID: 15236205 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2004.05.035]
- 49 **Resta-Lenert S**, Smitham J, Barrett KE. Epithelial dysfunction associated with the development of colitis in conventionally housed *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2005; **289**: G153-G162 [PMID: 15774938 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00395.2004]
- 50 **Wilk JN**, Bilsborough J, Viney JL. The *mdr1a*^{-/-} mouse model of spontaneous colitis: a relevant and appropriate animal model to study inflammatory bowel disease. *Immunol Res* 2005; **31**: 151-159 [PMID: 15778512 DOI: 10.1385/IR: 31: 2: 151]
- 51 **Masunaga Y**, Noto T, Suzuki K, Takahashi K, Shimizu Y, Morokata T. Expression profiles of cytokines and chemokines in murine MDR1a^{-/-} colitis. *Inflamm Res* 2007; **56**: 439-446 [PMID: 18224285 DOI: 10.1007/s00011-007-6078-6]
- 52 **Nones K**, Dommels YE, Martell S, Butts C, McNabb WC, Park ZA, Zhu S, Hedderley D, Barnett MP, Roy NC. The effects of dietary curcumin and rutin on colonic inflammation and gene expression in multidrug resistance gene-deficient (*mdr1a*^{-/-}) mice, a model of inflammatory bowel diseases. *Br J Nutr* 2009; **101**: 169-181 [PMID: 18761777 DOI: 10.1017/S0007114508009847]
- 53 **Lloyd AR**, Oppenheim JJ. Poly's lament: the neglected role of the polymorphonuclear neutrophil in the afferent limb of the immune response. *Immunol Today* 1992; **13**: 169-172 [PMID: 1642755 DOI: 10.1016/0167-5699(92)90121-M]
- 54 **Gouni-Berthold I**, Baumeister B, Wegel E, Berthold HK, Vetter H, Schmidt C. Neutrophil-elastase in chronic inflammatory bowel disease: a marker of disease activity? *Hepatogastroenterology* 1999; **46**: 2315-2320 [PMID: 10521989]
- 55 **Cole AT**, Pilkington BJ, McLaughlan J, Smith C, Balsitis M, Hawkey CJ. Mucosal factors inducing neutrophil movement in ulcerative colitis: the role of interleukin 8 and leukotriene B4. *Gut* 1996; **39**: 248-254 [PMID: 8977339 DOI: 10.1136/gut.39.2.248]
- 56 **Lampinen M**, Sangfelt P, Taha Y, Carlson M. Accumulation, activation, and survival of neutrophils in ulcerative colitis: regulation by locally produced factors in the colon and impact of steroid treatment. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2008; **23**: 939-946 [PMID: 18594843 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-008-0509-x]
- 57 **Xie YC**, Dong XW, Wu XM, Yan XF, Xie QM. Inhibitory effects of flavonoids extracted from licorice on lipopolysaccharide-induced acute pulmonary inflammation in mice. *Int Immunopharmacol* 2009; **9**: 194-200 [PMID: 19071231 DOI: 10.1016/j.intimp.2008.11.004]
- 58 **Anezaki K**, Asakura H, Honma T, Ishizuka K, Funakoshi K, Tsukada Y, Narisawa R. Correlations between interleukin-8, and myeloperoxidase or luminol-dependent chemiluminescence in inflamed mucosa of ulcerative colitis. *Intern Med* 1998; **37**: 253-258 [PMID: 9617859 DOI: 10.2169/internalmedicine.37.253]
- 59 **Boussetta T**, Raad H, Lettéron P, Gougerot-Pocidalo MA, Marie JC, Driss F, El-Benna J. Punicic acid a conjugated linolenic acid inhibits TNF α -induced neutrophil hyperactivation and protects from experimental colon inflammation in rats. *PLoS One* 2009; **4**: e6458 [PMID: 19649246 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0006458]
- 60 **Edwards SW**, Swan TF. Regulation of superoxide generation by myeloperoxidase during the respiratory burst of human neutrophils. *Biochem J* 1986; **237**: 601-604 [PMID: 3026327]
- 61 **Lu F**, Fernandes SM, Davis AE. The role of the complement and contact systems in the dextran sulfate sodium-induced colitis model: the effect of C1 inhibitor in inflammatory bowel disease. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2010; **298**: G878-G883 [PMID: 20338925 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00400.2009]
- 62 **Masoodi I**, Kochhar R, Dutta U, Vaishnavi C, Prasad KK, Vaiphei K, Kaur S, Singh K. Fecal lactoferrin, myeloperoxidase and serum C-reactive are effective biomarkers in the assessment of disease activity and severity in patients with idiopathic ulcerative colitis. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **24**: 1768-1774 [PMID: 20136960 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2009.06048.x]
- 63 **Kucharzik T**, Williams IR. Neutrophil migration across the intestinal epithelial barrier--summary of in vitro data and description of a new transgenic mouse model with doxycycline-inducible interleukin-8 expression in intestinal epithelial cells. *Pathobiology* 2002-2003; **70**: 143-149 [PMID: 12571418 DOI: 10.1159/000068146]
- 64 **Imhof BA**, Dunon D. Basic mechanism of leukocyte migration. *Horm Metab Res* 1997; **29**: 614-621 [PMID: 9497898 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-979112]
- 65 **Parkos CA**, Delp C, Arnaout MA, Madara JL. Neutrophil migration across a cultured intestinal epithelium. Dependence on a CD11b/CD18-mediated event and enhanced efficiency in physiological direction. *J Clin Invest* 1991; **88**: 1605-1612 [PMID: 1682344 DOI: 10.1172/JCI115473]
- 66 **Morohoshi Y**, Matsuo K, Chinen H, Kamada N, Sato T, Hisamatsu T, Okamoto S, Inoue N, Takaishi H, Ogata H, Iwao Y, Hibi T. Inhibition of neutrophil elastase prevents the development of murine dextran sulfate sodium-induced colitis. *J Gastroenterol* 2006; **41**: 318-324 [PMID: 16741610 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-005-1768-8]
- 67 **Qualls JE**, Kaplan AM, van Rooijen N, Cohen DA. Suppression of experimental colitis by intestinal mononuclear phagocytes. *J Leukoc Biol* 2006; **80**: 802-815 [PMID: 16888083 DOI: 10.1189/jlb.1205734]

- 68 **Kühl AA**, Kakirman H, Janotta M, Dreher S, Cremer P, Pawlowski NN, Loddenkemper C, Heimesaat MM, Grollich K, Zeitz M, Farkas S, Hoffmann JC. Aggravation of different types of experimental colitis by depletion or adhesion blockade of neutrophils. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **133**: 1882-1892 [PMID: 18054560 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.08.073]
- 69 **Neurath MF**, Fuss I, Schürmann G, Pettersson S, Arnold K, Müller-Lobeck H, Strober W, Herfarth C, Büschenfelde KH. Cytokine gene transcription by NF-kappa B family members in patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1998; **859**: 149-159 [PMID: 9928378 DOI: 10.1111/j.1749-6632.1998.tb11119.x]
- 70 **Schreiber S**, Nikolaus S, Hampe J. Activation of nuclear factor kappa B inflammatory bowel disease. *Gut* 1998; **42**: 477-484 [PMID: 9616307 DOI: 10.1136/gut.42.4.477]
- 71 **Karrasch T**, Kim JS, Muhlbauer M, Magness ST, Jobin C. Gnotobiotic IL-10^{-/-}; NF-kappa B(EGFP) mice reveal the critical role of TLR/NF-kappa B signaling in commensal bacteria-induced colitis. *J Immunol* 2007; **178**: 6522-6532 [PMID: 17475882]
- 72 **Latinne D**, Fiasse R. New insights into the cellular immunology of the intestine in relation to the pathophysiology of inflammatory bowel diseases. *Acta Gastroenterol Belg* 2006; **69**: 393-405 [PMID: 17343083]
- 73 **Malavé I**, Perdomo Y, Escalona E, Rodriguez E, Anchustegui M, Malavé H, Arends T. Levels of tumor necrosis factor alpha/cachectin (TNF alpha) in sera from patients with sickle cell disease. *Acta Haematol* 1993; **90**: 172-176 [PMID: 8140855 DOI: 10.1159/000204452]
- 74 **Tillinger W**, McCole DF, Keely SJ, Bertelsen LS, Wolf PL, Junger WG, Barrett KE. Hypertonic saline reduces neutrophil-epithelial interactions in vitro and gut tissue damage in a mouse model of colitis. *Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol* 2008; **295**: R1839-R1845 [PMID: 18832091 DOI: 10.1152/ajpregu.00412.2007]
- 75 **Van Deventer SJ**. Tumour necrosis factor and Crohn's disease. *Gut* 1997; **40**: 443-448 [PMID: 9176068 DOI: 10.1136/gut.40.4.443]
- 76 **Sun ZJ**, Chen G, Hu X, Zhang W, Liu Y, Zhu LX, Zhou Q, Zhao YF. Activation of PI3K/Akt/IKK-alpha/NF-kappaB signaling pathway is required for the apoptosis-evasion in human salivary adenoid cystic carcinoma: its inhibition by quercetin. *Apoptosis* 2010; **15**: 850-863 [PMID: 20386985 DOI: 10.1007/s10495-010-0497-5]
- 77 **Terra X**, Valls J, Vitrac X, Mérrillon JM, Arola L, Ardèvol A, Bladé C, Fernandez-Larrea J, Pujadas G, Salvadó J, Blay M. Grape-seed procyanidins act as antiinflammatory agents in endotoxin-stimulated RAW 264.7 macrophages by inhibiting NFkB signaling pathway. *J Agric Food Chem* 2007; **55**: 4357-4365 [PMID: 17461594 DOI: 10.1021/jf0633185]
- 78 **Amiri KI**, Richmond A. Fine tuning the transcriptional regulation of the CXCL1 chemokine. *Prog Nucleic Acid Res Mol Biol* 2003; **74**: 1-36 [PMID: 14510072 DOI: 10.1016/S0079-6603(03)01009-2]
- 79 **Kanda N**, Shimizu T, Tada Y, Watanabe S. IL-18 enhances IFN-gamma-induced production of CXCL9, CXCL10, and CXCL11 in human keratinocytes. *Eur J Immunol* 2007; **37**: 338-350 [PMID: 17274000 DOI: 10.1002/eji.200636420]
- 80 **Saunders WB**, Bayless KJ, Davis GE. MMP-1 activation by serine proteases and MMP-10 induces human capillary tubular network collapse and regression in 3D collagen matrices. *J Cell Sci* 2005; **118**: 2325-2340 [PMID: 15870107 DOI: 10.1242/jcs.02360]
- 81 **Streicher KL**, Willmarth NE, Garcia J, Boerner JL, Dewey TG, Ethier SP. Activation of a nuclear factor kappaB/interleukin-1 positive feedback loop by amphiregulin in human breast cancer cells. *Mol Cancer Res* 2007; **5**: 847-861 [PMID: 17670913 DOI: 10.1158/1541-7786.MCR-06-0427]
- 82 **Zhou Z**, Connell MC, MacEwan DJ. TNFR1-induced NF-kappaB, but not ERK, p38MAPK or JNK activation, mediates TNF-induced ICAM-1 and VCAM-1 expression on endothelial cells. *Cell Signal* 2007; **19**: 1238-1248 [PMID: 17292586 DOI: 10.1016/j.cellsig.2006.12.013]
- 83 **Zoja C**, Angioletti S, Donadelli R, Zanchi C, Tomasoni S, Binda E, Imberti B, te Loo M, Monnens L, Remuzzi G, Morigi M. Shiga toxin-2 triggers endothelial leukocyte adhesion and transmigration via NF-kappaB dependent up-regulation of IL-8 and MCP-1. *Kidney Int* 2002; **62**: 846-856 [PMID: 12164866 DOI: 10.1046/j.1523-1755.2002.00503.x]
- 84 **Collett A**, Higgs NB, Gironella M, Zeef LA, Hayes A, Salmo E, Haboubi N, Iovanna JL, Carlson GL, Warhurst G. Early molecular and functional changes in colonic epithelium that precede increased gut permeability during colitis development in *mdr1a*^{-/-} mice. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2008; **14**: 620-631 [PMID: 18275070 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.20375]
- 85 **Reed KL**, Fruin AB, Gower AC, Gonzales KD, Stucchi AF, Andry CD, O'Brien M, Becker JM. NF-kappaB activation precedes increases in mRNA encoding neurokinin-1 receptor, proinflammatory cytokines, and adhesion molecules in dextran sulfate sodium-induced colitis in rats. *Dig Dis Sci* 2005; **50**: 2366-2378 [PMID: 16416193 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-005-3066-y]
- 86 **Eastaff-Leung N**, Mabarrack N, Barbour A, Cummins A, Barry S. Foxp3⁺ regulatory T cells, Th17 effector cells, and cytokine environment in inflammatory bowel disease. *J Clin Immunol* 2010; **30**: 80-89 [PMID: 19936899 DOI: 10.1007/s10875-009-9345-1]
- 87 **Laine PS**, Schwartz EA, Wang Y, Zhang WY, Karnik SK, Musi N, Reaven PD. Palmitic acid induces IP-10 expression in human macrophages via NF-kappaB activation. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2007; **358**: 150-155 [PMID: 17467667 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2007.04.092]
- 88 **Masse GX**, Corcuff E, Decaluwe H, Bommhardt U, Lantz O, Buer J, Di Santo JP. gamma(c) cytokines provide multiple homeostatic signals to naive CD4⁺ T cells. *Eur J Immunol* 2007; **37**: 2606-2616 [PMID: 17683114 DOI: 10.1002/eji.200737234]
- 89 **Izadpanah A**, Dwinell MB, Eckmann L, Varki NM, Kagnoff MF. Regulated MIP-3alpha/CCL20 production by human intestinal epithelium: mechanism for modulating mucosal immunity. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2001; **280**: G710-G719 [PMID: 11254498]
- 90 **Bhattacharya D**, Cheah MT, Franco CB, Hosen N, Pin CL, Sha WC, Weissman IL. Transcriptional profiling of antigen-dependent murine B cell differentiation and memory formation. *J Immunol* 2007; **179**: 6808-6819 [PMID: 17982071 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.179.10.6808]

P- Reviewer: Analava M, Tzortzis N S- Editor: Qiu S

L- Editor: A E- Editor: Li D



Retrospective Study

Typical and atypical symptoms of gastro esophageal reflux disease: Does *Helicobacter pylori* infection matter?

Laurino Grossi, Antonio Francesco Ciccaglione, Leonardo Marzio

Laurino Grossi, Antonio Francesco Ciccaglione, Leonardo Marzio, c/o Digestive Sciences Unit, School of Gastroenterology, G. d'Annunzio University Chieti-Pescara, Ospedale Spirito Santo, 65124 Pescara, Italy

Author contributions: Grossi L was the author involved in the conception of the study and drafting the manuscript; Grossi L and Ciccaglione AF performed the exams and obtained the clinical history of patients and interpreted the results; Marzio L supervised the report and gave final approval of the version submitted.

Institutional review board statement: It was not necessary to get an Ethics Committee approval as no drugs or therapeutic techniques have been used in this study. However, the work has been done with the permit of the Ethics Committee of Ospedale Spirito Santo, Pescara, which was fully informed about the research.

Informed consent statement: Patients were not required to give a complete informed consent. All patients recruited into the study had been referred to our Unit to perform a pH-monitoring. They were only interviewed about *H. pylori* status, without assuming any drugs or testing medical techniques. After receiving full information about the study and giving informed, written consent, each patient underwent C13 Urea Breath test. All patients were reassured about the anonymous characteristics of data recruitments.

Conflict-of-interest statement: We have no financial relationships to disclose.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Laurino Grossi, MD, Associate Professor,

c/o Digestive Sciences Unit, School of Gastroenterology, G. d'Annunzio University Chieti-Pescara, Ospedale Spirito Santo, Via Fonte Romana, 8, 65124 Pescara, Italy. lgrossi@unich.it
Telephone: +39-085-4252460

Received: May 26, 2015
Peer-review started: May 28, 2015
First decision: June 18, 2015
Revised: July 15, 2015
Accepted: September 7, 2015
Article in press: September 8, 2015
Published online: November 6, 2015

Abstract

AIM: To analyze whether the presence of *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) infection could affect the quality of symptoms in gastro-esophageal reflux disease (GERD) patients.

METHODS: one hundred and forty-four consecutive patients referred to our Unit for suspected GERD were recruited for the study. All patients underwent esophageal pH-metric recording. For those with a positive test, C₁₃ urea breath test was then performed to assess the *H. pylori* status. GERD patients were stratified according to the quality of their symptoms and classified as typical, if affected by heartburn and regurgitation, and atypical if complaining of chest pain, respiratory and ears, nose, and throat features. *H. pylori*-negative patients were also asked whether they had a previous diagnosis of *H. pylori* infection. If a positive response was given, on the basis of the time period after successful eradication, patients were considered as "eradicated" (E) if *H. pylori* eradication occurred more than six months earlier or "recently eradicated" if the therapy had been administered within the last six months. Patients without history of infection were identified as "negative" (N). χ^2 test was performed by combining the clinical aspects with the *H. pylori* status.

RESULTS: one hundred and twenty-nine of the 144 patients, including 44 *H. pylori*-positive and 85 *H. pylori*-negative (41 negative, 21 recently eradicated, 23 eradicated more than 6 mo before), were eligible for the analysis. No difference has been found between *H. pylori* status and either the number of reflux episodes (138 ± 23 vs 146 ± 36 , respectively, $P = 0.2$, not significant) or the percentage of time with pH values < 4 (6.8 ± 1.2 vs 7.4 ± 2.1 , respectively, $P = 0.3$, not significant). The distribution of symptoms was as follows: 13 typical (30%) and 31 atypical (70%) among the 44 *H. pylori*-positive cases; 44 typical (52%) and 41 atypical (48%) among the 85 *H. pylori*-negative cases, ($P = 0.017$ vs *H. pylori*+; OR = 2.55, 95%CI: 1.17-5.55). Furthermore, clinical signs in patients with recent *H. pylori* eradication were similar to those of *H. pylori*-positive ($P = 0.49$; OR = 1.46, 95%CI: 0.49-4.37); on the other hand, patients with ancient *H. pylori* eradication showed a clinical behavior similar to that of *H. pylori*-negative subjects ($P = 0.13$; OR = 0.89, 95%CI: 0.77-6.51) but different as compared to the *H. pylori*-positive group ($P < 0.05$; OR = 3.71, 95%CI: 0.83-16.47).

CONCLUSION: Atypical symptoms of GERD occur more frequently in *H. pylori*-positive patients than in *H. pylori*-negative subjects. In addition, atypical symptoms tend to decrease after *H. pylori* eradication.

Key words: Eradication; *Helicobacter pylori*; C₁₃ urea breath test; Symptoms; Gastro-esophageal reflux disease; pH-metry

© The Author(s) 2015. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: This study aimed to investigate whether the presence of *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) infection could affect the symptom pattern of patients with gastro-esophageal reflux disease (GERD). GERD patients with *H. pylori* were predominantly affected by atypical symptoms (chest pain, respiratory and ears, nose, and throat features) whilst patients without infection mainly referred typical GERD symptoms (heartburn, regurgitation). Therefore, it seems reasonable to assume that *H. pylori* infection may have a role in GERD pathogenesis or at least in the modulation of symptoms appearance.

Grossi L, Ciccaglione AF, Marzio L. Typical and atypical symptoms of gastro esophageal reflux disease: Does *Helicobacter pylori* infection matter? *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(4): 238-243 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i4/238.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i4.238>

INTRODUCTION

Gastro-esophageal reflux disease (GERD) and *Helico-*

bacter pylori (*H. pylori*) infection represent two of the most common diseases affecting upper GI tract. GERD is clinically characterized by different patterns, generally identified as typical or atypical. Typical symptoms are heartburn and acid regurgitation^[1], while atypical extraesophageal manifestations can include symptoms primarily attributable to other organs, such as chronic cough, non cardiac chest pain, chronic pharyngitis and laryngitis^[2]. A small amount of patients refer symptoms (epigastric pain, nausea, belching, vomiting) that may overlap with other gastrointestinal conditions, such as dyspepsia, severe gastritis, peptic ulcer disease or hiatal hernia. Despite a huge amount of evidence on diagnosis and therapy of such different patients, limited information is available to explain why one can experience typical or atypical symptoms and whether the presence of *H. pylori* infection could affect the quality of symptoms in GERD patients. Whilst the role of *H. pylori* has been widely recognized in the pathogenesis of gastritis^[3,4], peptic ulcer^[5,6] and even gastric malignancies^[7,8], there is conflicting evidence in the literature about a possible link between infection and natural history of GERD. Many authors proposed a "protective" role of *H. pylori* against acid refluxes, probably due to the reduced acid production in infected patients, but the exact mechanism is not well known^[9]. On the contrary, other studies have demonstrated the lack of any influences between the two diseases^[10]. Therefore, the question has been mainly limited to demonstrate whether *H. pylori* could protect from or facilitate the onset of pathological gastro-esophageal refluxes. In the present study we investigated whether *H. pylori* infection has a role in the clinical appearance of GERD.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Selection of patients

We enrolled 144 consecutive patients undergoing esophageal 24-h pH-metric recording for suspected GERD on the basis of typical or atypical extraesophageal symptoms. To rule out overlapping with other upper GI diseases, we did not consider patients with epigastric pain, nausea, vomiting as predominant symptoms and scheduled for pH monitoring. The procedure was performed using a probe with a single glass electrode on the tip (Jubileum, Microbioprobe and Telemedicine srl, Marigliano-NA, Italy) connected to a portable data logger (pH-day, Menfis Biomedical, Bologna Italy). The main inclusion criteria was the confirmation of GERD by the pH monitoring, according to De Meester criteria^[11]. All patients had a previous upper GI endoscopy within the last six months in order to exclude the presence of malignancies, Los Angeles grade C or D esophagitis, peptic ulcer, erosive gastritis, and hiatal hernia. In addition, recent full examinations by cardiologist, pneumologist and otolaryngologist were required to rule out specific diseases of their competence. All patients were required to complete a minimum four-week wash-out period of antisecretory drugs (PPI, H₂-

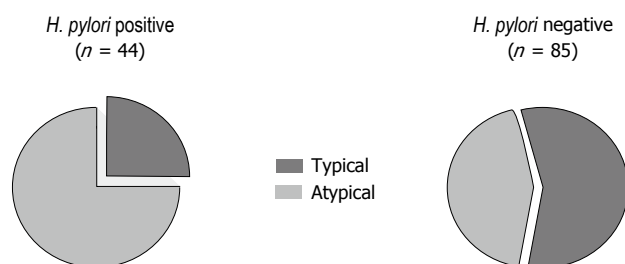


Figure 1 Distribution of symptoms in *Helicobacter pylori*-positive (on the left) and *Helicobacter pylori*-negative (on the right) patients. The data represent the percentage distribution of typical symptoms (in dark grey) and atypical extraesophageal symptoms (in light grey). *H. pylori*: *Helicobacter pylori*.

blockers) and medications potentially affecting upper GI motility (nitrates, calcium channel blockers, xanthines, benzodiazepines, and beta agonists), before entry into the study. Body mass index (BMI) was also calculated for all patients. Obese subjects (BMI > 30 kg/m²) were considered not eligible for the study and were excluded. Smoking habits were also recorded for all eligible patients.

GERD symptoms

Patients were divided in two groups according to their GERD symptoms: "Typical" including patients with symptoms such as heartburn and regurgitation, and "Atypical" including subjects with symptoms including chest pain, chronic cough and chronic pharyngitis/laryngitis. If both kinds of symptoms were present, patients were asked to indicate the predominant one in terms of its impact on their daily activities. The subjects were then assigned accordingly to group A or group B.

H. pylori infection

A C₁₃ Urea Breath Test was performed on all patients on the same day of pH-metric recording. Patients were classified as *H. pylori*-positive (*H. pylori*+) or *H. pylori*-negative (*H. pylori*-). *H. pylori*-negative patients were also asked whether they had a previous diagnosis of *H. pylori* infection. If a positive response was given, on the basis of the time period after successful eradication, patients were considered as "eradicated" (E) if *H. pylori* eradication occurred more than 6 mo earlier or "recently eradicated" (RE) if the therapy had been administered within the last six months. Patients without history of infection were identified as "negative" (N).

Statistical analysis

After collecting the data, χ^2 test was performed to identify significant correlations between clinical aspects (*i.e.*, typical or atypical) and *H. pylori* status (*i.e.*, positive or negative; if negative: eradicated or recently eradicated). A *P*-value less than 0.05 (*P* < 0.05) was inferred significant. Odd ratio (OR) and 95%CI were also calculated. The primary endpoint was to find a correlation between symptoms pattern and *H. pylori* presence; then, we wanted to evaluate whether this correlation could change in relation of period of time after bacterial eradication.

RESULTS

pH profile and *H. pylori* status

Of the 144 initially enrolled subjects, 129 patients (73 male, 56 female, age: 19-65) resulted affected by GERD at 24-h pH monitoring. In this case series, 44 were *H. pylori*-positive and 85 were *H. pylori*-negative. No difference has been found between *H. pylori* status and either the number of reflux episodes (138 ± 23 vs 146 ± 36, respectively, *P* = 0.2, not significant) or the percentage of time with pH values < 4 (6.8 ± 1.2 vs 7.4 ± 2.1, respectively, *P* = 0.3, not significant). Among the negative group, 41 patients had no history of previous *H. pylori* infection (N), 21 patients had been recently *H. pylori*-eradicated (RE) and 23 patients had been successfully treated for *H. pylori* eradication more than six months earlier (E).

GERD symptoms

Typical symptoms of GERD were present in 57 patients (34 male, 23 female), whereas 72 patients (38 male, 34 female) resulted affected by atypical manifestations.

BMI and smoking habits

Among 129 patients with GERD, 12 subjects (7/72 patients of atypical group and 5/57 patients of typical group) had a BMI indicative of slight overweight, *i.e.*, between 25 and 30 (9.7% vs 8.3%, respectively, *P* = 0.1, not significant). Furthermore, there were 41 active smokers with 22 patients among atypical group and 19 patients among typical group (30.5% vs 33.3%, respectively, *P* = 0.2, not significant).

H. pylori infection and quality of symptoms

Group *H. pylori*+: 31 of the 44 patients (70%) with *H. pylori* infection were affected by atypical symptoms, whereas 13 of them (30%) referred typical clinical signs. Group *H. pylori*-: 41 of the 85 patients (48%) without infection had atypical manifestations and 44 of them (52%) showed typical pattern (Figure 1). Group N: 16 of the 41 patients (35%) without *H. pylori* infection were affected by atypical symptoms, whereas 27 of them (65%) referred typical clinical signs. Group RE: 13 of 21 patients (62%) with recent *H. pylori* eradication had atypical symptoms and 8 of 21 (38%) presenting typical GERD manifestations (Figure 2). Group E: 12 of the 23 patients (52%) with *H. pylori* eradication performed more than 6 mo earlier had atypical GERD symptoms. Typical signs occurring in 9 patients (48%) (Figure 2).

Statistical significance

Atypical GERD symptoms were significantly more frequent in *H. pylori*-positive than in *H. pylori*-negative patients (*P* = 0.017; OR = 2.55, 95%CI: 1.17-5.55). Also, patients with recent eradication of *H. pylori* infection had a predominance of atypical signs that resulted not significantly different from *H. pylori*-positive (*P* = 0.49; OR = 1.46, 95%CI: 0.49-4.37), but

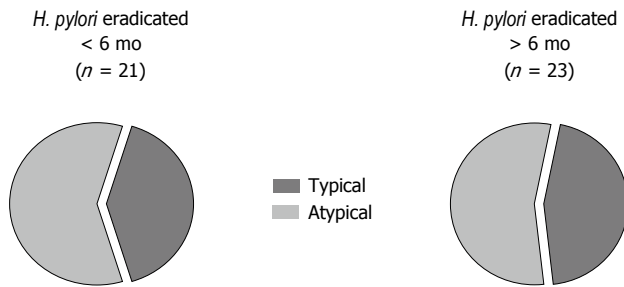


Figure 2 Distribution of symptoms in patients who eradicated *Helicobacter pylori* less than 6 mo before pH monitoring (on the left) and in patients who eradicated *Helicobacter pylori* more than 6 mo earlier (on the right). The data represent the percentage distribution of typical symptoms (in dark grey) and atypical extraesophageal symptoms (in light grey). *H. pylori*: *Helicobacter pylori*.

were different in comparison with *H. pylori*-negative patients ($P < 0.05$; OR = 2.36, 95%CI: 0.12-1.06). In patients with *H. pylori* eradication obtained more than 6 mo earlier, the clinical pattern was similar to the *H. pylori*-negative group ($P = 0.13$; OR = 0.89, 95%CI: 0.77-6.51) and their symptoms were mainly typical with a distribution significantly different as compared to the *H. pylori*-positive group ($P < 0.05$; OR = 3.71, 95%CI: 0.83-16.47) (Figure 3).

DISCUSSION

The results of our study indicate that the presence of *H. pylori* infection in patients affected by GERD is associated with a greater frequency of atypical extraesophageal manifestations. In addition, GERD patients without *H. pylori* infection are preferentially affected by typical heartburn and regurgitation.

The relationship between GERD and *H. pylori* infection has been widely analyzed over the years but the question is still controversial. There are data supporting a protective role of *H. pylori*^[12,13] as a consequence of gastric atrophy and hypochlorhydria from parietal cells destruction due to chronic *H. pylori* infection^[14]. In the meanwhile, mild antral gastritis could be associated with hyperchlorhydria and more severe GERD by reduction in the number of somatostatin-secreting D-cells with loss of negative feedback on gastric acid secretion^[15]. Discordant results are also referred to the need of *H. pylori* eradication in GERD patients. In fact, some evidence suggests that eradication of the infection may be a risk factor for *de-novo* endoscopic esophagitis^[16], whereas other studies report a low risk of gastric atrophy in patients with successful *H. pylori* eradication and undergoing long-term acid suppression with PPI^[17].

Our study tried to look at this relationship from another perspective. We analyzed data of patients with GERD to determine whether the status of *H. pylori* infection affects the clinical pattern of reflux disease, without considering whether *H. pylori* could determine or prevent GERD. We found that the presence of gastric infection seems to facilitate the insurgency of atypical

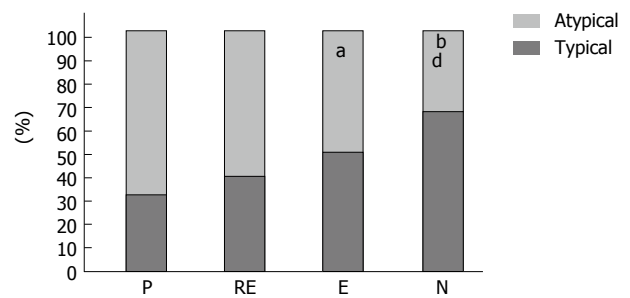


Figure 3 Percentage distribution of typical (dark grey) and atypical (light grey) symptoms in our four different groups of patients. From left to right, the bars indicate the group of patients *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*)-positive (P), eradicated less than 6 mo before pH monitoring (RE), eradicated more than 6 mo earlier (E), and *H. pylori*-negative (N). As shown, there is a progressive change in the percentage of symptoms related to the pattern of *H. pylori* infection. ^a $P < 0.001$ between N and P; ^b $P < 0.01$ between N and RE; ^c $P < 0.05$ between E and P.

extraesophageal manifestations of reflux. It is unlikely that this association arose by chance as clinical pattern in GERD patients shows a clear trend towards atypical manifestations, directly correlated to *H. pylori* status. In fact, the symptoms of *H. pylori*-positive patients were predominantly atypical, a condition confirmed in the cases with very recent eradication. On the other hand, clinical aspects of patients successfully treated for *H. pylori* infection long time earlier resulted similar to those of *H. pylori*-negative patients. This suggests that the presence of bacterial infection has an action on GERD clinical pattern which is progressively reduced by the time the infection is eradicated. The major criticism of our results is that other factors, *e.g.*, smoking, obesity and alimentary habits, could potentially affect the course of reflux disease and its clinical patterns^[18]. However, these factors were unlikely to play a role in our population since we ruled out severe obese patients and recruited only slightly overweight patients, whose distribution was similar between subjects with typical and atypical symptoms. Furthermore, no correlation was found between smoking and clinical characteristics. Therefore, albeit considering the potential limit of a retrospective analysis, our data seem to indicate that life styles probably affect the characteristics of GERD less than *H. pylori* status.

In the present study, we did not identify the mechanisms through which *H. pylori* acts on the quality of reflux disease. Therefore, we can only make some speculations on the underlying conditions affecting different symptom patterns. First, the more severe degrees of esophagitis seem to be less correlated to *H. pylori* presence^[19]; this could be one explanation for a major heartburn in our patients without infection. However, we can only partially confirm this assumption because in order to properly reduce the chance of confounding bias in our analysis, we excluded patients with Los Angeles grade C-D, known to have fewer reflux symptoms^[20]. Second, the onset of symptoms (chronic cough, laryngitis or chest pain) seems strictly related to reflux episodes that extend proximally^[21]. It could be that *H. pylori*-associated antral

gastritis increases the release of gastrin concomitantly with higher acidity and increased volume of refluxate that more easily reaches the proximal site of the esophagus. Our study did not directly analyze the extension of refluxate as a single-channel pH-metric probe was used; however, there is some evidence on a greater frequency of proximal reflux episodes in pediatric patients with *H. pylori* infection^[22] in good accordance with our results. Another possible explanation of the relationship between *H. pylori* and clinical appearance of GERD may be found in the modulation of afferent neural signals by *H. pylori*^[23] an effect that seems related to ghrelin, a peptide with intense prokinetic activity on LES region^[24]. It is well known that *H. pylori*-positive patients show low levels of circulating ghrelin, which tend to increase after bacterial eradication^[25]. It is also demonstrated that patients with *H. pylori* infection have a lower LES tone and a reduced esophageal body motility^[26]; therefore, it seems likely that a low plasma ghrelin concentration limits the clearance of acid inside the esophagus, thus facilitating proximal extension of reflux episodes.

A final consideration is that our present findings were made on the Caucasian population so it is reasonably difficult to extrapolate data from our study to predict what might happen to patients from other countries. In fact, the literature shows that the relationship between GERD and *H. pylori* seems completely different in East Asia compared to Western countries^[27,28]. It is also well known that genetic predisposition can alter acid secretion^[29] as well as visceral sensitivity of esophageal wall to acid^[30]. Therefore, the interaction between host genetic factors and other agents, such *H. pylori* itself, could lead to different expression of GERD, but this aspect needs to be further clarified.

In conclusion, our findings suggest a role for *H. pylori* infection in the clinical pattern of GERD. Further analyses are required to evaluate if our results represent a potentially new strategy to modulate symptoms occurrence or indicate a simple association with no roles in the pathogenesis of GERD. Since it is already known that *H. pylori* does not affect the pH profile of patients with GERD^[31], it seems appropriate to say that the relationship between *H. pylori* and pH appears more complex than previously thought. In fact, *H. pylori* is likely to interact with GERD, but when these two entities coexist, *H. pylori* seems to change the way of GERD symptoms appear rather than promoting or facilitating it.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The Authors thank Dr. Sonia Toracchio for reviewing the English style of the manuscript.

COMMENTS

Background

Although gastro-esophageal reflux disease (GERD) and *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) infection represent two of the most common diseases of upper gastrointestinal tract, the relationship between these two entities is still not completely elucidated. The majority of studies tended to investigate whether

H. pylori could facilitate the onset of GERD or protect against the disease. Similarly, the eradication of *H. pylori* in GERD patients is questionable.

Research frontiers

The management of *H. pylori* infection is generally targeted to cure and prevent gastric and duodenal diseases. Diseases of the esophagus, reflux disease in particular, have been for decades considered to be of secondary importance in relation to *H. pylori* infection. In this study the presence of *H. pylori* is associated with a greater amount of atypical symptoms, whereas typical pattern is common in patients without the infection. Interestingly, the symptom pattern shows a trend from atypical to typical over time associated to *H. pylori* eradication, thus suggesting that the bacteria may have a role in the natural history of GERD.

Innovations and breakthroughs

To the authors' knowledge, this is the first study investigating the possible relationship between GERD and *H. pylori* from a different perspective, without considering the frequency of reflux disease after *H. pylori* eradication. In fact, the authors performed the study on a population of GERD patients for identifying two different symptom patterns that resulted related to *H. pylori* status.

Applications

This study could shed some light on why GERD patients refer different symptoms pattern. Hence there is a need for further investigation of *H. pylori* status not only in patients affected by gastroduodenal diseases, but also in patients with GERD.

Terminology

pH-metry or pH-monitoring is the gold standard in the diagnosis of gastroesophageal reflux disease. C₁₃ urea breath test is the most accurate non-invasive test to diagnose *H. pylori* infection. Both tests could be affected by false negative results in case of concomitant use of antisecretory drugs.

Peer-review

This study is an important contribution to the literature regarding *H. pylori* and GERD, giving new information and possible explanations on the relationship between these two diseases.

REFERENCES

- 1 Petroff OA, Burlina AP, Black J, Prichard JW. Metabolism of [1-13C]glucose in a synaptosomally enriched fraction of rat cerebrum studied by 1H/13C magnetic resonance spectroscopy. *Neurochem Res* 1991; **16**: 1245-1251 [PMID: 1667675 DOI: 10.1016/0140-6736(90)902]
- 2 Hom C, Vaezi MF. Extra-esophageal manifestations of gastroesophageal reflux disease: diagnosis and treatment. *Drugs* 2013; **73**: 1281-1295 [PMID: 23881666 DOI: 10.1007/s40265-013-0101-8]
- 3 Beji A, Vincent P, Darchis I, Husson MO, Cortot A, Leclerc H. Evidence of gastritis with several *Helicobacter pylori* strains. *Lancet* 1989; **2**: 1402-1403 [PMID: 2574351 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(89)92020-5]
- 4 Dooley CP, Cohen H, Fitzgibbons PL, Bauer M, Appleman MD, Perez-Perez GI, Blaser MJ. Prevalence of *Helicobacter pylori* infection and histologic gastritis in asymptomatic persons. *N Engl J Med* 1989; **321**: 1562-1566 [PMID: 2586553 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM198912073212302]
- 5 Glise H. Epidemiology in peptic ulcer disease. Current status and future aspects. *Scand J Gastroenterol Suppl* 1990; **175**: 13-18 [PMID: 2237275 DOI: 10.3109/00365529009093122]
- 6 Sidebotham RL, Baron JH. Hypothesis: *Helicobacter pylori*, urease, mucus, and gastric ulcer. *Lancet* 1990; **335**: 193-195 [PMID: 1967668 DOI: 10.1016/0140-6736(90)90279-E]
- 7 Loffeld RJ, Willems I, Flendrig JA, Arends JW. *Helicobacter pylori* and gastric carcinoma. *Histopathology* 1990; **17**: 537-541 [PMID: 2076886 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2559.1990.tb00793.x]
- 8 *Helicobacter* and cancer Collaborative Group. Gastric cancer and *Helicobacter pylori*: a combined analysis of 12 case control studies nested within prospective cohorts. *Gut* 2001; **49**: 347-353 [PMID: 11557454 DOI: 10.1136/gut.49.3.347]

- 11511555 DOI: 10.1136/gut.49.3.347]
- 9 **Graham DY.** The changing epidemiology of GERD: geography and *Helicobacter pylori*. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: 1462-1470 [PMID: 12873564 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2003.07533.x]
- 10 **Moschos J,** Kouklakis G, Lyrazopoulos N, Efremidou E, Maltezos E, Minopoulos G. Gastroesophageal reflux disease and *Helicobacter pylori*: lack of influence of infection on oesophageal manometric, 3-hour postprandial pHmetric and endoscopic findings. *Rom J Gastroenterol* 2005; **14**: 351-355 [PMID: 16400350]
- 11 **Demeester TR,** Johnson LF, Joseph GJ, Toscano MS, Hall AW, Skinner DB. Patterns of gastroesophageal reflux in health and disease. *Ann Surg* 1976; **184**: 459-470 [PMID: 13747 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-197610000-00009]
- 12 **Lisiewicz J.** Letter: Nowa nomenklatura antygeny Australia. *Przegl Lek* 1975; **32**: 363 [PMID: 1121585]
- 13 **Haruma K.** Review article: influence of *Helicobacter pylori* on gastro-oesophageal reflux disease in Japan. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2004; **20** Suppl 8: 40-44 [PMID: 15575872 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2004.02228.x]
- 14 **Sharma P,** Vakil N. Review article: *Helicobacter pylori* and reflux disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2003; **17**: 297-305 [PMID: 12562442 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2036.2003.01428.x]
- 15 **Kamada T,** Haruma K, Kawaguchi H, Yoshihara M, Sumii K, Kajiyama G. The association between antral G and D cells and mucosal inflammation, atrophy, and *Helicobacter pylori* infection in subjects with normal mucosa, chronic gastritis, and duodenal ulcer. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1998; **93**: 748-752 [PMID: 9625121 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.1998.218_a.x]
- 16 **Xie T,** Cui X, Zheng H, Chen D, He L, Jiang B. Meta-analysis: eradication of *Helicobacter pylori* infection is associated with the development of endoscopic gastroesophageal reflux disease. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **25**: 1195-1205 [PMID: 23839160 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0b013e328328363e2c7]
- 17 **Matysiak-Budnik T,** Laszewicz W, Lamarque D, Chaussade S. *Helicobacter pylori* and non-malignant diseases. *Helicobacter* 2006; **11** Suppl 1: 27-31 [PMID: 16925608 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-405X.2006.00426.x]
- 18 **Nocon M,** Labenz J, Willich SN. Lifestyle factors and symptoms of gastro-oesophageal reflux -- a population-based study. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2006; **23**: 169-174 [PMID: 16393294 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2006.02727.x]
- 19 **Chourasia D,** Misra A, Tripathi S, Krishnani N, Ghoshal UC. Patients with *Helicobacter pylori* infection have less severe gastroesophageal reflux disease: a study using endoscopy, 24-hour gastric and esophageal pH metry. *Indian J Gastroenterol* 2011; **30**: 12-21 [PMID: 21267690 DOI: 10.1007/s12664-010-0078-0]
- 20 **Bredenoord AJ.** Mechanisms of reflux perception in gastroesophageal reflux disease: a review. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2012; **107**: 8-15 [PMID: 22218024 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2011.286]
- 21 **Forootan M,** Ardeshiri M, Etemadi N, Maghsoodi N, Poorsaadati S. Findings of impedance pH-monitoring in patients with atypical gastroesophageal reflux symptoms. *Gastroenterol Hepatol Bed Bench* 2013; **6**: S117-S121 [PMID: 24834281]
- 22 **Katra R,** Kabelka Z, Jurovcik M, Hradsky O, Kraus J, Pavlik E, Nartova E, Lukes P, Astl J. Pilot study: Association between *Helicobacter pylori* in adenoid hyperplasia and reflux episodes detected by multiple intraluminal impedance in children. *Int J Pediatr Otorhinolaryngol* 2014; **78**: 1243-1249 [PMID: 24865809 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijporl.2014.04.040]
- 23 **Budzyński J,** Kłopotcka M, Bujak R, Swiatkowski M, Pulkowski G, Sinkiewicz W. Autonomic nervous function in *Helicobacter pylori*-infected patients with atypical chest pain studied by analysis of heart rate variability. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2004; **16**: 451-457 [PMID: 15097036 DOI: 10.1097/00042737-200405000-00003]
- 24 **Thor PJ,** Blaut U. *Helicobacter pylori* infection in pathogenesis of gastroesophageal reflux disease. *J Physiol Pharmacol* 2006; **57** Suppl 3: 81-90 [PMID: 17033107]
- 25 **Nwokolo CU,** Freshwater DA, O'Hare P, Randeva HS. Plasma ghrelin following cure of *Helicobacter pylori*. *Gut* 2003; **52**: 637-640 [PMID: 12692045 DOI: 10.1136/gut.52.5.637]
- 26 **Wu JC,** Lai AC, Wong SK, Chan FK, Leung WK, Sung JJ. Dysfunction of oesophageal motility in *Helicobacter pylori*-infected patients with reflux oesophagitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2001; **15**: 1913-1919 [PMID: 11736722 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2036.2001.01132.x]
- 27 **Nam SY.** *Helicobacter pylori* Has an Inverse Relationship With Severity of Reflux Esophagitis. *J Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2011; **17**: 209-210 [PMID: 21860812 DOI: 10.5056/jnm.2011.17.3.209]
- 28 **Rajendra S,** Ackroyd R, Robertson IK, Ho JJ, Karim N, Kutty KM. *Helicobacter pylori*, ethnicity, and the gastroesophageal reflux disease spectrum: a study from the East. *Helicobacter* 2007; **12**: 177-183 [PMID: 17309756 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2007.00489.x]
- 29 **Chourasia D,** Achyut BR, Tripathi S, Mittal B, Mittal RD, Ghoshal UC. Genotypic and functional roles of IL-1B and IL-1RN on the risk of gastroesophageal reflux disease: the presence of IL-1B-511*T/IL-1RN*1 (T1) haplotype may protect against the disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2009; **104**: 2704-2713 [PMID: 19603010 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2009.382]
- 30 **de Vries DR,** ter Linde JJ, van Herwaarden MA, Smout AJ, Samsom M. Gastroesophageal reflux disease is associated with the C825T polymorphism in the G-protein beta3 subunit gene (GNB3). *Am J Gastroenterol* 2009; **104**: 281-285 [PMID: 19174793 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2008.139]
- 31 **Gisbert JP,** de Pedro A, Losa C, Barreiro A, Pajares JM. *Helicobacter pylori* and gastroesophageal reflux disease: lack of influence of infection on twenty-four-hour esophageal pH monitoring and endoscopic findings. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2001; **32**: 210-214 [PMID: 11246345 DOI: 10.1097/00004836-200103000-00005]

P- Reviewer: Parker W, Shimatani T, Tandon R

S- Editor: Tian YL **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Li D



Observational Study

Prevalence of eosinophilic oesophagitis in adults presenting with oesophageal food bolus obstruction

Neel Heerasing, Shok Yin Lee, Sina Alexander, Damian Dowling

Neel Heerasing, Department of Gastroenterology, Alfred Hospital, Melbourne, VIC 3004, Australia

Neel Heerasing, Shok Yin Lee, Sina Alexander, Damian Dowling, Department of Gastroenterology, University Hospital Geelong, Geelong, VIC 3220, Australia

Author contributions: Heerasing N and Lee SY contributed equally to the writing of the manuscript as well as analyzing the data; Alexander S and Dowling D provided valuable comments when reviewing the manuscript.

Institutional review board statement: The study was approved by the Barwon Health Ethics Research Committee.

Informed consent statement: All study participants provided informed consent prior to study enrollment.

Conflict-of-interest statement: There are no conflicts of interest to report.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Dr. Neel Heerasing, Department of Gastroenterology, Alfred Hospital, 55 Commercial Road, Prahran, Melbourne, VIC 3004, Australia. neel.heerasing@gmail.com
Telephone: +61-3-90762000
Fax: +61-3-90762757

Received: April 24, 2015
Peer-review started: April 24, 2015
First decision: July 17, 2015
Revised: August 31, 2015
Accepted: October 1, 2015

Article in press: October 8, 2015
Published online: November 6, 2015

Abstract

AIM: To look at the relationship between eosinophilic oesophagitis (EO) and food bolus impaction in adults.

METHODS: We retrospectively analysed medical records of 100 consecutive patients who presented to our hospital with oesophageal food bolus obstruction (FBO) between 2012 and 2014. In this cohort, 96 were adults (64% male), and 4 paediatric patients were excluded from the analysis as our centre did not have paediatric gastroenterologists. Eighty-five adult patients underwent emergency gastroscopy. The food bolus was either advanced into the stomach using the push technique or retrieved using a standard retrieval net. Biopsies were obtained in 51 patients from the proximal and distal parts of the oesophagus at initial gastroscopy. All biopsy specimens were assessed and reviewed by dedicated gastrointestinal pathologists at the Department of Pathology, University Hospital Geelong. The diagnosis of EO was defined and established by the presence of the following histological features: (1) peak eosinophil counts > 20/hpf; (2) eosinophil microabscess; (3) superficial layering of eosinophils; (4) extracellular eosinophil granules; (5) basal cell hyperplasia; (6) dilated intercellular spaces; and (7) subepithelial or lamina propria fibrosis. The histology results of the biopsy specimens were accessed from the pathology database of the hospital and recorded for analysis.

RESULTS: Our cohort had a median age of 60. Seventeen/51 (33%) patients had evidence of EO on biopsy findings. The majority of patients with EO were male (71%). Classical endoscopic features of oesophageal rings, furrows or white plaques and exudates were

found in 59% of patients with EO. Previous episodes of FBO were present in 12/17 patients and 41% had a history of eczema, hay fever or asthma. Reflux oesophagitis and benign strictures were found in 20/34 patients who did not have biopsies.

CONCLUSION: EO is present in approximately one third of patients who are admitted with FBO. Biopsies should be performed routinely at index endoscopy in order to pursue this treatable cause of long term morbidity.

Key words: Oesophagitis; Eosinophilia; Food bolus obstruction; Endoscopy; Dysphagia

© **The Author(s) 2015.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Eosinophilic oesophagitis (EO) is a clinical entity that is becoming more frequent in patients seeking medical attention for food bolus obstruction (FBO). The main symptom in adult patients is dysphagia. Various studies have shown the presence of EO in 20% to 54% of the patients presenting with food bolus impaction. Approximately one in three patients who presents with FBO has EO. Biopsies should be performed routinely at index endoscopy in order to pursue this treatable cause of long term morbidity.

Heerasing N, Lee SY, Alexander S, Dowling D. Prevalence of eosinophilic oesophagitis in adults presenting with oesophageal food bolus obstruction. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(4): 244-247 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i4/244.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i4.244>

INTRODUCTION

Eosinophilic oesophagitis (EO) is an emerging cause of food bolus impaction and dysphagia in adults and children^[1]. According to Kerlin *et al*^[2], acute food bolus obstruction (FBO) is frequently encountered as a gastrointestinal emergency. FBO is the third most common gastrointestinal emergency after gastrointestinal bleed in the upper and lower gastrointestinal tracts^[2]. Approximately two thirds of FBO in adults of the Western world are caused by food bolus impaction with meat in comparison to fish bones in Asia^[1]. The condition of the oesophagus and the type of food bolus play a role in food impaction. Risk factors for FBO include edentulous individuals and known oesophageal pathology amongst others^[3]. With regards to the management of FBO, Ikenberry *et al*^[4] recommended a time frame of 6 h to remove the food bolus due to the potential risk of ischaemia, necrosis and perforation.

There is a paucity of data on the epidemiological changes in FBO and its link to EO. According to a study, EO was found in 54% of patients presenting with

oesophageal food bolus impaction^[5]. The incidence of EO is rising as clinicians become more familiar with this condition. Currently, EO is a clinicopathologic entity defined by symptoms related to oesophageal dysfunction and eosinophil-predominant inflammation on oesophageal biopsies characterised by a peak value of ≥ 15 eosinophils per high power field^[6,7].

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Our aim of this study was to evaluate the association of EO with FBO in adults. We retrospectively analysed medical records relating to 100 consecutive patients who presented to a tertiary hospital with oesophageal FBO between 2012 and 2014. There were a total of 96 adult patients and 4 paediatric patients (age < 16), whom were excluded from this study. Sixty-four percent of the adult patients were males. Out of this 96 patients, 11 of them required ear, nose and throat intervention or declined gastroscopy. These patients have also been excluded from this analysis. A total of 85 adult patients with FBO underwent gastroscopy and during this procedure, the food bolus was either advanced into the stomach using push technique or removed using retrieval net. Biopsies were obtained in 51 patients from proximal and distal parts of the esophagus.

Biopsies were analysed in the laboratory by experienced gastrointestinal pathologists and the cut off point of more than 20 eosinophils per high power field (hpf) was considered in cases of EO.

RESULTS

The median age of the cohort was 60. Out of the 51 patients who had biopsies, 19 (37%) patients had reflux oesophagitis confirmed histologically, which made up the majority of patients with FBO. This was followed by EO (33%), barrett's oesophagus (10%) and achalasia (2%). eighteen percent of these biopsies were attributed to other causes, which included benign changes and non-specific inflammation. The results are shown in Figure 1.

The majority of patients with EO were male (71%). Classical endoscopic features of oesophageal rings, furrows or white plaques and exudates were found in 59% of patients with EO. The median age for EO patients was 30. Twelve out of the 17 patients (59%) had prior episodes of FBO and 41% had a history of atopy (hay fever, asthma and eczema).

Among the 34 patients who did not have biopsies, 20 of them had endoscopic changes consistent with gastro-oesophageal reflux disease or pre-existing benign strictures.

DISCUSSION

There is an increasing awareness towards EO. This condition refers to symptoms related to oesophageal dysfunction with evidence of eosinophil-predominant inflammation on oesophageal biopsies which is charac-

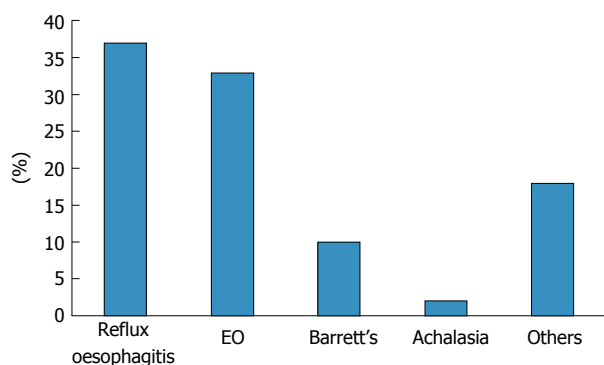


Figure 1 Aetiology of food bolus obstruction in the cohort. EO: Eosinophilic oesophagitis.

terised by a peak value of $EO \geq 15$ eosinophils per high power field. The exclusion of secondary causes of oesophageal eosinophilia and the presence of mucosal eosinophilia being isolated to the oesophagus and persisting after a proton pump inhibitor trial are also included in the diagnostic criteria for EO^[6]. Eosinophils are not normally present in the normal esophageal epithelia. The presence of eosinophilia indicates abnormality but unfortunately, this does not point towards EO but also other causes such as reflux esophagitis. EO usually affects young adults and in our study, the mean age of patients with EO was 30. Our results have shown that one in three patients who presents with FBO has EO. Endoscopic evidence of EO was not present in all the patients which confirms findings from previous studies^[8]. They demonstrated 10%–20% of EO patients can have an endoscopically normal appearing oesophagus. According to Kerlin *et al.*^[2], there is increased awareness of EO as a contributing factor to dysphagia and chest discomfort especially in young men. Our results are consistent with the Kerlin study which showed that up to one third of patients who presented with food bolus impaction have EO.

Besides being a retrospective study with its own intrinsic limitations, this is a small study with 100 patients' medical records analysed. Therefore, our analysis will have Type 1 error. Our laboratory uses the cut-off point of 20 eosinophils/hpf. According to the current guidelines, EO is defined histologically with eosinophils count of 15 or more eosinophils/hpf. The current recommendation is to take at least two to four biopsies from the distal and proximal oesophagus. We did not have a uniform protocol for the number of biopsies to be taken for each patient.

This study demonstrates that EO plays an essential role in food bolus impaction of the oesophagus. Patients who present with FBO have approximately a 1 in 3 chance of having EO. This condition is not always associated with clear macroscopic changes or a history of atopy. In patients with no obvious cause for FBO, biopsies should be performed routinely at index endoscopy in order to pursue this treatable cause of long term morbidity.

COMMENTS

Background

Since the first description of eosinophilic oesophagitis (EO) in 1962 by Schreiber, there has been a growing recognition and understanding of this condition. Food bolus obstruction (FBO) in the esophagus is most commonly related to reflux-related oesophageal diseases and oesophageal dysmotility. EO has been reported as an uncommon cause of FBO. Epidemiological data on FBO and its relationship to EO remain limited.

Research frontiers

FBO in the oesophagus is becoming a common mode of presentation for EO. The authors recommend that biopsies should be performed at index endoscopy in order not to miss the diagnosis.

Innovations and breakthroughs

The authors' findings suggest that EO should be thought of in all cases of FBO and biopsies should be performed in all instances where there is no macroscopic abnormality on upper endoscopy. The results confirm the findings of a previous retrospective study done in Australia and highlight the need for large prospective studies to assess the demographics and aetiology of FBO.

Applications

The changes in the aetiology of FBO can be attributed to an increasing recognition and prevalence of EO especially in the younger population. Proximal and distal oesophageal biopsies should be attempted at index endoscopy in order to pursue this treatable cause of long term morbidity.

Terminology

The conceptual definition of EO is considered as a chronic, immune antigen-mediated oesophageal disease characterised clinically by symptoms related to oesophageal dysfunction and histologically by eosinophil-predominant inflammation.

Peer-review

This retrospective report focuses on patients presenting with food bolus impaction.

REFERENCES

- 1 Attwood SE, Furuta GT. Eosinophilic esophagitis: historical perspective on an evolving disease. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 2014; **43**: 185-199 [PMID: 24813509 DOI: 10.1016/j.gtc.2014.02.010]
- 2 Kerlin P, Jones D, Remedios M, Campbell C. Prevalence of eosinophilic esophagitis in adults with food bolus obstruction of the esophagus. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2007; **41**: 356-361 [PMID: 17413601]
- 3 Chauvin A, Viala J, Marteau P, Hermann P, Dray X. Management and endoscopic techniques for digestive foreign body and food bolus impaction. *Dig Liver Dis* 2013; **45**: 529-542 [PMID: 23266207 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2012.11.002]
- 4 Ikenberry SO, Jue TL, Anderson MA, Appalaneni V, Banerjee S, Ben-Menachem T, Decker GA, Fanelli RD, Fisher LR, Fukami N, Harrison ME, Jain R, Khan KM, Krinsky ML, Maple JT, Sharaf R, Strohmeier L, Dominitz JA. Management of ingested foreign bodies and food impactions. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; **73**: 1085-1091 [PMID: 21628009 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2010.11.010]
- 5 Desai TK, Stecevic V, Chang CH, Goldstein NS, Badizadegan K, Furuta GT. Association of eosinophilic inflammation with esophageal food impaction in adults. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2005; **61**: 795-801 [PMID: 15933677]
- 6 Furuta GT, Liacouras CA, Collins MH, Gupta SK, Justinich C, Putnam PE, Bonis P, Hassall E, Straumann A, Rothenberg ME. Eosinophilic esophagitis in children and adults: a systematic review and consensus recommendations for diagnosis and treatment. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **133**: 1342-1363 [PMID: 17919504 DOI: 10.1053/j.gie.2007.04.010]

10.1053/j.gastro.2007.08.017]

- 7 **Liacouras CA**, Furuta GT, Hirano I, Atkins D, Attwood SE, Bonis PA, Burks AW, Chehade M, Collins MH, Dellon ES, Dohil R, Falk GW, Gonsalves N, Gupta SK, Katzka DA, Lucendo AJ, Markowitz JE, Noel RJ, Odze RD, Putnam PE, Richter JE, Romero Y, Ruchelli E, Sampson HA, Schoepfer A, Shaheen NJ, Sicherer SH, Spechler S, Spergel JM, Straumann A, Wershil BK, Rothenberg ME, Aceves

SS. Eosinophilic esophagitis: updated consensus recommendations for children and adults. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2011; **128**: 3-20.e6; quiz 21-22 [PMID: 21477849 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaci.2011.02.040]

- 8 **Dellon ES**, Aderoju A, Woosley JT, Sandler RS, Shaheen NJ. Variability in diagnostic criteria for eosinophilic esophagitis: a systematic review. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2007; **102**: 2300-2313 [PMID: 17617209 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2007.01396]

P- Reviewer: Day AS, Franzen T **S- Editor:** Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor:** Li D



Massive duodenal variceal bleed; complication of extra hepatic portal hypertension: Endoscopic management and literature review

Christopher Steevens, Maisa Abdalla, Truptesh H Kothari, Vivek Kaul, Shivangi Kothari

Christopher Steevens, Maisa Abdalla, Vivek Kaul, Shivangi Kothari, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Center for Advanced Therapeutic Endoscopy, University of Rochester Medical Center, Rochester, NY 14642, United States

Truptesh H Kothari, Developmental Endoscopy Lab at UR, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Center for Advanced Therapeutic Endoscopy, University of Rochester Medical Center, Rochester, NY 14642, United States

Author contributions: All the authors equally contributed to this work.

Conflict-of-interest statement: None.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Truptesh H Kothari, MD, MS, Assistant Professor, Director, Developmental Endoscopy Lab at UR Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Center for Advanced Therapeutic Endoscopy, University of Rochester Medical Center, 601 Elmwood Ave, Rochester, NY 14642, United States. truptesh_kothari@urmc.rochester.edu
Telephone: +1-585-2754711
Fax: +1-585-2761911

Received: March 28, 2015
Peer-review started: March 28, 2015
First decision: May 13, 2015
Revised: June 29, 2015
Accepted: August 30, 2015
Article in press: August 31, 2015
Published online: November 6, 2015

Abstract

Bleeding from duodenal varices is reported to be a catastrophic and often fatal event. Most of the cases in the literature involve patients with underlying cirrhosis. However, approximately one quarter of duodenal variceal bleeds is caused by extrahepatic portal hypertension and they represent a unique population given their lack of liver dysfunction. The authors present a case where a 61-year-old male with history of remote crush injury presented with bright red blood per rectum and was found to have bleeding from massive duodenal varices. Injection sclerotherapy with ethanolamine was performed and the patient experienced a favorable outcome with near resolution of his varices on endoscopic follow-up. The authors conclude that sclerotherapy is a reasonable first line therapy and review the literature surrounding the treatment of duodenal varices secondary to extrahepatic portal hypertension.

Key words: Extrahepatic portal hypertension; Duodenal varices; Sclerotherapy

© **The Author(s) 2015.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Bleeding from duodenal varices is a gastrointestinal emergency and focused patient history may help the clinician to suspect this life threatening diagnosis. Clinician's need to have a high degree of suspicion for bleeding varices even in the absence of known cirrhosis if certain clinical characteristics are present, such as history of crush injury. If duodenal varices are diagnosed on endoscopy, endoscopic injection sclerotherapy can be a highly successful definitive intervention. The authors suggest ethanolamine injection sclerotherapy, though multiple alternative sclerosants are also established in the literature as are other therapeutic alternatives including

endoscopic band ligation. With prompt endoscopic management, life threatening bleeding can be effectively mitigated and with the expectation of excellent long term outcomes.

Steevens C, Abdalla M, Kothari TH, Kaul V, Kothari S. Massive duodenal variceal bleed; complication of extra hepatic portal hypertension: Endoscopic management and literature review. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(4): 248-252 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i4/248.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i4.248>

INTRODUCTION

Bleeding from duodenal varices is a rare but potentially fatal condition. A gastroenterologist will encounter these only rarely as they represent only about 0.4% of all variceal bleeding^[1], yet the traditionally reported mortality approaches 40%^[2], underscoring the importance of prompt and effective management. While there have been hundreds of cases reported, most describe bleeding varices secondary to cirrhosis or intrahepatic portal hypertension. This gap in the literature largely excludes the 25% of duodenal variceal bleeds which are caused by extrahepatic portal hypertension^[3]. The varices that result from localized vascular hypertension may respond differently to endoscopic interventions and ultimately experience different outcomes given their normal central portal pressures and lack of underlying liver dysfunction. Proven endoscopic interventions include endoscopic band ligation (EVL) or endoscopic injection sclerotherapy (EIS). We present a case of profound gastrointestinal (GI) bleeding from duodenal varices in a patient with mesenteric vein obstruction, which was successfully managed with a single episode of EIS with ethanolamine, and review the present literature in an attempt to clarify the effectiveness of available endoscopic interventions for extrahepatic portal hypertension.

CASE REPORT

A 61-year-old male was referred for recurrent GI bleeding. The presentation to an outside hospital one day prior had been notable for sudden onset of melena and bright red blood per rectum (BRBPR). His medical history included coronary artery disease; gastroesophageal reflux disease and a remote crush injury with partial small bowel resection. There was no previous GI bleeding, liver disease, alcohol intake, or non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug use and his medications were significant only for aspirin 81 mg daily. Initially, he had tachycardia to 123 beats per minute with a benign abdominal examination and gross blood on rectal exam. Hematocrit was 35% with platelet count of 99000/uL, and international normalized ratio 1.1. He underwent esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD),

which revealed extensive duodenal varices. Follow-up angiography of the portal system had unremarkable arterial vasculature, but abnormal venous anatomy significant for occlusion of the superior mesenteric vein with extensive collateral formation.

Due to the complexity and risk of definitive intervention, the patient was transferred to a tertiary care center. At the time of transfer, he had received 7 units of packed red blood cells and was being medically treated with pantoprazole and octreotide drips. Intensive care unit (ICU) admission was required; at that time he remained tachycardic with continued BRBPR and his hematocrit had fallen to 22%. Repeat EGD visualized a deformed duodenum with large varices present in the second and third portion with stigmata of recent bleeding (Figure 1). The decision to intervene with injection sclerotherapy was made and 4 mL of 5% ethanolamine was injected with satisfactory hemostasis. There were no episodes of re-bleeding and he was discharged 5 d later. Follow-up EGD at one month showed near complete resolution of the duodenal varices, which was persistent at his follow up EGD 20 mo after the initial presentation (Figure 2).

DISCUSSION

Duodenal varices in extrahepatic portal hypertension are likely much more common than currently recognized considering that only about 65% of patients with the condition will present with GI bleeding^[3]. In the absence of cirrhosis or active hemorrhage, patients with asymptomatic duodenal varices may never receive portal system imaging or upper endoscopy. Recognized etiologies of extrahepatic portal hypertension leading to duodenal varices include pancreatitis, omphalophlebitis, intra-abdominal tumors, previous surgery, retroperitoneal fibrosis and portal/splenic vein thrombosis among others^[3]. Our case is the second noting the association of remote crush injury with a late presenting duodenal variceal bleed^[4]. The vessels injured by this type of trauma may be especially prone to stenosis or obstruction during the healing process. Regardless of the inciting injury, the varices result from collateral venous vessel formation around the obstruction in an attempt to maintain hepatopedal blood flow^[5]. Bleeding from this anomalous vasculature represents a GI emergency.

The acute bleeding episode from duodenal varices is massive; an average of 10.4 units of packed red cells is transfused during these bleeds^[6]. Prompt endoscopic diagnosis and management is crucial to achieving a successful outcome. Deformity of the duodenum with radiography or endoscopy can provide clues to the presence of duodenal varices, thus prompting the endoscopist to carefully scrutinize this location. The duodenal bulb is the most common location for them to occur although varices can be present in any portion^[7]. The location of the varices within the duodenum could depend on the inciting injury. Both our case and a



Figure 1 Isolated varices in the second portion of the duodenum with red wale sign.

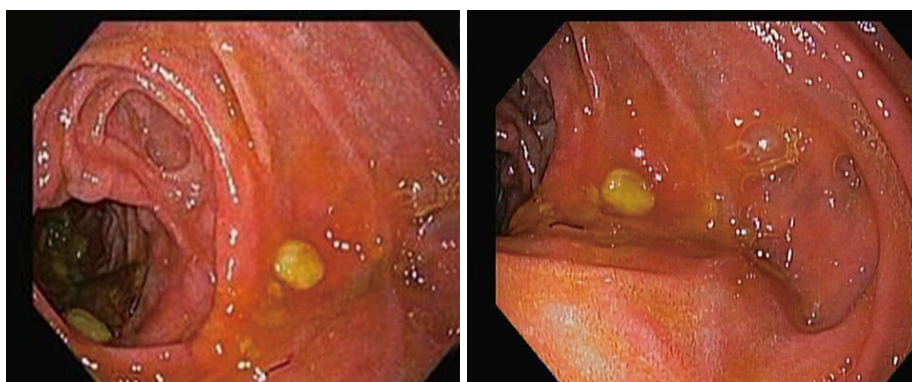


Figure 2 Follow up endoscopy at 20 mo post initial endotherapy showing near complete resolution of the duodenal varices.

previous case in the literature note bleeding from the second portion of the duodenum in a patient with history of crush injury^[4]. Once the diagnosis is made and the patient is sufficiently stabilized, a number of interventional options exist.

Endoscopic therapy for bleeding duodenal varices emerged with sclerotherapy in the early 1980's^[8] and EVL in the mid 1990's^[9]. Since then, there have been only a handful of endoscopically managed duodenal variceal bleeds caused by extrahepatic portal hypertension (Table 1). These cases demonstrate a wide variety of etiologies, but vascular abnormalities underlie most of them. Duodenal varices in general have unique anatomy, which must be taken into account when choosing endoscopic therapy. The varix consists of a single afferent vessel, arising from either the superior or inferior pancreaticoduodenal vein, and a single efferent vessel, which drains into the inferior vena cava. Though visible, the varix is typically buried deep into the submucosa^[1]. This anatomy may render the varices difficult to fully eradicate and explain some of the late re-bleeding noted in Table 1.

Our case was successfully managed with ethanolamine injection sclerotherapy and the patient did not experience re-bleeding. To our knowledge, this is only the third reported case of ethanolamine sclerotherapy for bleeding duodenal varices caused by extrahepatic portal hypertension.

There are potential concerns and complications to

consider when choosing ethanolamine sclerotherapy in the duodenum. The thin duodenal wall and its risk of perforation are cited as potential complications. Indeed, there are case reports of duodenal perforation after multiple episodes sclerotherapy for a duodenal ulcer^[17], but no similar reports exist for the use of sclerotherapy for duodenal varices. Another sclerotherapy option, cyanoacrylate, was carefully considered for treatment of these bleeding duodenal varices. Cyanoacrylate has been very effective for the treatment of gastric varices and a case series of bleeding duodenal varices caused by intrahepatic portal hypertension noted success in 4 out of 4 patients^[18]. This agent has its own set of risks associated with its use, most notably being distant embolization during treatment of the duodenal varix^[19]; for this reason, we typically invoke an informed consent discussion prior to cyanoacrylate injection which was not possible in this particular case. Outside of sclerotherapy, endoscopic band ligation is the other major endoscopic intervention used for the treatment of bleeding duodenal varices. Significant theoretical risks are also associated with EVL. In porcine models, duodenal banding demonstrated a 100% perforation rate^[20]. Additionally, it is suggested that if the entire varix cannot be banded at the time of intervention, there is the risk of creating a wide defect with re-bleeding after sloughing occurs^[21]. To mitigate these risks, some authors have previously recommended additional procedures such as balloon

Table 1 Summary of the reported cases of endoscopically managed duodenal variceal bleeds caused by extrahepatic portal hypertension

Ref.	Etiology/clinical history	Intervention	Outcome	Additional
Bosch <i>et al</i> ^[10]	Mesenteric vein thrombosis	EVL	Stable (11 mo)	
Goetz <i>et al</i> ^[11]	Post-trauma splenectomy	EVL	Stable (4 mo)	
Gunnerson <i>et al</i> ^[4]	Crush injury	EVL	Stable (2 yr)	
Gunnerson <i>et al</i> ^[4]	Anomalous venous vasculature	EVL	Re-bleed (8 mo)	EIS; (Sod mon)
Cottam <i>et al</i> ^[12]	Multiple surgical procedures	EIS; (Epi)	Re-bleed (wk)	Surgery
Osaka <i>et al</i> ^[13]	Vascular malformation	EIS; (Eth)	Re-bleed (unknown)	Surgery
Tsuji <i>et al</i> ^[14]	Motor vehicle accident	EIS; (Polid, Throm)	Stable (unknown)	Surgery
Sans <i>et al</i> ^[15]	Caroli's Dz, SMV thrombosis	EIS; (Thromb, Eth)	Stable (5 mo)	
Kao <i>et al</i> ^[16]	Pancreatitis; portal vein stenosis	EIS; (Cyano, Lip)	Stable (2 mo)	

Epi: Epinephrine; Eth: Ethanolamine; Throm: Thrombin; Cyano: Cyanoacrylate; Lip: Lipiodiol; Polid: Polidocanol; Sod mon: Sodium morrhuate; EVL: Endoscopic interventions include endoscopic band ligation; EIS: Endoscopic injection sclerotherapy.

occluded retrograde transvenous obliteration following EVL^[9]. The cases reported in the current literature do not support these fears; from the few case reports available, EVL appears to be safe and effective with only one episode of late re-bleeding at 8 mo^[4]. The ultimate choice of endoscopic intervention will depend on the clinical scenario, endoscopist expertise and local practice patterns.

Our patient's presentation was typical for duodenal variceal bleeding. He had a remote history of intra-abdominal injury and presented with a hemodynamically unstable GI bleed requiring ICU care. In the acute presentation, we contend that proceeding with a sclerosant such as ethanolamine is a reasonable and safe first line approach given its limited risk profile and proven success. With prompt stabilization and intervention, he experienced a good outcome, which appears typical for duodenal variceal bleeds secondary to extrahepatic portal hypertension. Given the resolution of his varices on repeat endoscopy, his prognosis is likely excellent. This case demonstrates that duodenal variceal bleeds caused by extrahepatic portal hypertension have unique clinical history and physiology. They respond well to intervention and good outcomes should be expected with prompt and effective management.

COMMENTS

Case characteristics

A 61-year-old man presented with melena and bright red blood per rectum.

Clinical diagnosis

On examination, he was noted to be tachycardic but with benign abdominal examination and gross blood on digital rectal examination.

Differential diagnosis

With the reported melena and hemodynamic instability, massive upper gastrointestinal bleeding was suspected and the differential diagnosis included peptic ulcer disease, esophageal/gastric varices or dieulafoy lesion.

Laboratory diagnosis

He was noted to have low Hematocrit of 35% which fell to a low of 22% with mild thrombocytopenia (platelet count 99000/ μ L), and normal international normalized ratio is 1.1.

Imaging diagnosis

Esophagogastroduodenoscopy revealed extensive duodenal varices and follow-up angiography of the portal system visualized abnormal venous anatomy significant for occlusion of the superior mesenteric vein with extensive collateral formation.

Treatment

The patient was stabilized with seven packed red blood cell transfusions, with initial medical therapy of pantoprazole and octreotide infusions; definite therapy was endoscopic sclerotherapy with injection of 4 mL of 5% ethanolamine into the varices with resolution of active bleeding.

Related reports

The patient had a history of remote crush abdominal injury and small bowel resection which may have resulted in his anomalous vasculature, thus predisposing him to extrahepatic portal hypertension and the resultant isolated duodenal varices.

Term explanation

Omphalophlebitis is inflammation of the umbilical vein.

Experiences and lessons

A patient medical history indicative of prior intraabdominal pathology such as crush injury should raise suspicion that duodenal varices could be present which allows the endoscopist to adequately prepare for appropriate therapeutic intervention; in this case sclerotherapy was an effective and long lasting definitive treatment.

Peer-review

This paper addresses an important and poor-investigated area dealing with the endoscopic treatment of bleeding from duodenal varices and provides a good review of the literature of the different endoscopic approaches in intrahepatic and extrahepatic portal hypertension causing massive duodenal variceal bleeding. The authors provide a very detailed report of their experience in treating patients affected by this clinical condition and discuss the endoscopic approach and the clinical outcome.

REFERENCES

- 1 Hashizume M, Tanoue K, Ohta M, Ueno K, Sugimachi K, Kashiwagi M, Sueishi K. Vascular anatomy of duodenal varices: angiographic and histopathological assessments. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1993; **88**: 1942-1945 [PMID: 8237946]
- 2 Kakutani H, Sasaki S, Ueda K, Takakura K, Sumiyama K, Imazu H, Hino S, Kawamura M, Tajiri H. Is it safe to perform endoscopic band ligation for the duodenum? A pilot study in ex vivo porcine models. *Minim Invasive Ther Allied Technol* 2013; **22**: 80-83 [PMID: 22793777 DOI: 10.3109/13645706.2012.703955]

- 3 **Linder S**, Wiechel KL. Duodenal varicose veins. *Surg Endosc* 1991; **5**: 31-35 [PMID: 1871672 DOI: 10.1007/bf00591384]
- 4 **Gunnerson AC**, Diehl DL, Nguyen VN, Shellenberger MJ, Blansfield J. Endoscopic duodenal variceal ligation: a series of 4 cases and review of the literature (with video). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **76**: 900-904 [PMID: 22840294 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.05.020]
- 5 **Itzhak Y**, Glickman MG. Duodenal varices in extrahepatic portal obstruction. *Radiology* 1977; **124**: 619-624 [PMID: 887749 DOI: 10.1148/124.3.619]
- 6 **Bommana V**, Shah P, Kometa M, Narwal R, Sharma P. A Case of Isolated Duodenal Varices Secondary to Chronic Pancreatitis with Review of Literature. *Gastroenterology Research* 2010; **3**: 281-286 [DOI: 10.4021/gr249w]
- 7 **Tanaka T**, Kato K, Taniguchi T, Takagi D, Takeyama N, Kitazawa Y. A case of ruptured duodenal varices and review of the literature. *Jpn J Surg* 1988; **18**: 595-600 [PMID: 3068396 DOI: 10.1007/BF02471496]
- 8 **Sauerbruch T**, Weinzierl M, Dietrich HP, Antes G, Eisenburg J, Paumgartner G. Sclerotherapy of a bleeding duodenal varix. *Endoscopy* 1982; **14**: 187-189 [PMID: 6981504 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-1021618]
- 9 **Haruta I**, Isobe Y, Ueno E, Toda J, Mitsunaga A, Noguchi S, Kimura T, Shimizu K, Yamauchi K, Hayashi N. Balloon-occluded retrograde transvenous obliteration (BRTO), a promising nonsurgical therapy for ectopic varices: a case report of successful treatment of duodenal varices by BRTO. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1996; **91**: 2594-2597 [PMID: 8946993]
- 10 **Bosch A**, Marsano L, Varilek GW. Successful obliteration of duodenal varices after endoscopic ligation. *Dig Dis Sci* 2003; **48**: 1809-1812 [PMID: 14561006 DOI: 10.1023/A:1025402411557]
- 11 **Goetz M**, Rahman FK, Galle PR, Kiesslich R. Duodenal and rectal varices as a source of severe upper and lower gastrointestinal bleeding. *Endoscopy* 2009; **41** Suppl 2: E169 [PMID: 19629940 DOI: 10.1055/s-0029-1214767]
- 12 **Cottam DR**, Clark R, Hayn E, Shaftan G. Duodenal varices: a novel treatment and literature review. *Am Surg* 2002; **68**: 407-409 [PMID: 12013280]
- 13 **Osaka N**, Amatsu T, Masaki H, Ando M, Tanaka M, Imaki M, Morita K, Oshiba S. A Case of ruptured duodenal varix due to vascular malformation. *Gastroenterological Endoscopy* 1987; **29**: 134 [DOI: 10.11280/gee1973b.29.134]
- 14 **Tsuji H**, Okano H, Fujino H, Satoh T, Kodama T, Takino T, Yoshimura N, Aikawa I, Oka T, Tsuchihashi Y. A case of endoscopic injection sclerotherapy for a bleeding duodenal varix. *Gastroenterol Jpn* 1989; **24**: 60-64 [PMID: 2785068]
- 15 **Sans M**, Llach J, Bordas JM, Andreu V, Reverter JC, Bosch J, Mondelo F, Salmerón JM, Mas A, Terés J, Rodés J. Thrombin and ethanolamine injection therapy in arresting uncontrolled bleeding from duodenal varices. *Endoscopy* 1996; **28**: 403 [PMID: 8813517 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-1005495]
- 16 **Kao WY**, Wu WC, Chen PH, Chiou YY. Duodenal variceal bleeding caused by chronic pancreatitis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **75**: 922-923 [PMID: 21802679 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2011.05.015]
- 17 **Luman W**, Hudson N, Choudari CP, Eastwood MA, Palmer KR. Distal biliary stricture as a complication of sclerosant injection for bleeding duodenal ulcer. *Gut* 1994; **35**: 1665-1667 [PMID: 7828994 DOI: 10.1136/gut.35.11.1665]
- 18 **Liu Y**, Yang J, Wang J, Chai G, Sun G, Wang Z, Yang Y. Clinical characteristics and endoscopic treatment with cyanoacrylate injection in patients with duodenal varices. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2009; **44**: 1012-1016 [PMID: 19513934 DOI: 10.1080/003655209.03030787]
- 19 **Benedetti G**, Sablich R, Lacchin T, Masiero A. Endoscopic treatment of bleeding duodenal varices by bucrylate injection. *Endoscopy* 1993; **25**: 432-433 [PMID: 8404715 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-1010356]
- 20 **Kakutani H**, Sasaki S, Ueda K, Takakura K, Sumiyama K, Imazu H, Hino S, Kawamura M, Tajiri H. Is it safe to perform endoscopic band ligation for the duodenum? A pilot study in ex vivo porcine models. *Minim Invasive Ther Allied Technol* 2013; **22**: 80-83 [PMID: 22793777 DOI: 10.3109/13645706.2012.703955]
- 21 **Helmy A**, Al Kahtani K, Al Fadda M. Updates in the pathogenesis, diagnosis and management of ectopic varices. *Hepatol Int* 2008; **2**: 322-334 [PMID: 19669261 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-008-9074-1]

P- Reviewer: Abdel-Salam OME, Caviglia R, Dumitrascu DL

S- Editor: Tian YL **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Li D



Preoperative detection of intrahepatic venovenous shunt treated by microwave precoagulation during right hepatectomy

Jean-Baptiste Delhorme, Riccardo Méméo, Jacques Marescaux, Patrick Pessaux

Jean-Baptiste Delhorme, Riccardo Méméo, Jacques Marescaux, Patrick Pessaux, Institut Hospitalo-Universitaire de Strasbourg, Nouvel Hôpital Civil, Hôpitaux Universitaires de Strasbourg, 67091 Strasbourg, France

Author contributions: All authors contributed to the acquisition of the data, writing and revision of the manuscript.

Supported by Institut Hospitalo-Universitaire de Strasbourg (IHU MixSurg), Strasbourg, France.

Institutional review board statement: This case report was exempt from institutional review board standards of University of Strasbourg.

Informed consent statement: The patient involved in this study gave her written informed consent authorizing use and disclosure of her protected health information.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no conflicts of interest or financial ties to disclose.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Patrick Pessaux, MD, PhD, Professor, Head of the Hepato-Biliary and Pancreatic Surgical Unit, Institut Hospitalo-Universitaire de Strasbourg, Nouvel Hôpital Civil, Hôpitaux Universitaires de Strasbourg, 1 place de l'Hôpital, 67091 Strasbourg, France. patrick.pessaux@chru-strasbourg.fr
Telephone: +33-3-69550552
Fax: +33-3-69551745

Received: May 12, 2015
Peer-review started: May 12, 2015
First decision: August 19, 2015

Revised: September 11, 2015
Accepted: October 12, 2015
Article in press: October 13, 2015
Published online: November 6, 2015

Abstract

A 53-year-old woman underwent a 2-stage right hepatectomy for bilobar metastasis of an ileal neuroendocrine carcinoma. Preoperative three-dimensional computed tomography reconstruction helped to diagnose an intrahepatic venovenous shunts from the right and middle hepatic veins to the left hepatic vein, which could cause a intraoperative bleeding. Hemostasis was performed by means of precoagulation with microwave-assisted coagulation.

Key words: Three dimensional modeling; Microwave; Hepatectomy; Precoagulation; Bleeding; Venovenous shunt

© The Author(s) 2015. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core tip: Detection of anomalies in hepatic vascularization before liver surgery is crucial in order to prevent intraoperative difficulties such as massive bleeding, which needs to be controlled. Surgical planning is now well-known as a major step in liver surgery. From a general standpoint, three-dimensional computed tomography (3D-CT) is not used to this purpose but can be very useful to identify vascular structures. We report a case where intrahepatic venovenous shunts were preoperatively diagnosed by means of 3D-CT reconstruction and were managed with precoagulation microwave-assisted coagulation.

Delhorme JB, Méméo R, Marescaux J, Pessaux P. Preoperative

detection of intrahepatic venovenous shunt treated by microwave precoagulation during right hepatectomy. *World J Gastrointest Pharmacol Ther* 2015; 6(4): 253-256 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5349/full/v6/i4/253.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4292/wjgpt.v6.i4.253>

INTRODUCTION

Detection of anomalies in hepatic vascularization before liver surgery is crucial in order to prevent intraoperative difficulties such as massive bleeding, which needs to be controlled. Surgical planning is now well-known as a major step in liver surgery^[1], and the absence of agreement between a preoperative planning and the realized operating techniques has been shown as risk factor of morbidity. From a general standpoint, three-dimensional computed tomography (3D-CT) is not used to this purpose but can be very useful to identify vascular structures. As blood loss represents a major complication prognostic factor in liver surgery, several bloodless techniques are available. In case of persistent bleeding, tissue precoagulation with microwave energy can be a very attractive tool to achieve tissue hemostasis.

We report a case where intrahepatic venovenous shunts were preoperatively diagnosed by means of 3D-CT reconstruction and were managed with precoagulation microwave-assisted coagulation.

CASE REPORT

Lower limb edema made it possible to detect a voluminous intrahepatic lesion compressing the retrohepatic vena cava in a 53-year-old woman. This lesion located in segments IV and VII of the liver measured 16 by 13 by 15 cm. The patient's past medical history included thyroidectomy, appendectomy, arterial hypertension and hypercholesterolemia. Percutaneous liver biopsy confirmed the diagnosis of liver metastasis of a grade 2 neuroendocrine tumor (Ki-67 index = 5%). Preoperative examination including CT-scan, MRI, and a somatostatin receptor scintigraphy showed a primitive tumor at the last ileal loop with bilobar synchronous liver metastasis (voluminous lesion in the right liver and another one in liver segment II). After discussion in our oncological multidisciplinary committee, a 2-stage surgical strategy was put forward.

The first step consisted in a right colectomy with radiofrequency ablation of the liver metastasis in liver segment II. The postoperative outcome was uneventful. Histopathological examination confirmed an ileal grade 2 well-differentiated neuroendocrine carcinoma, classified pT3N1 (11 lymph nodes involved out of 21 retrieved) M1 according to the 7th edition of the AJCC/UICC system TNM classification (Ki-67 index = 5% and the mitotic index was less than 1 mitosis/10HPF).

One month later, a percutaneous right portal embolization was performed in order to induce left liver hypertrophy. Six weeks later, the future remnant liver

(segments I, II, III and IVb) represented 29.5% of the total liver (vs 22.5% prior to embolization). The 3D virtual anatomical model was obtained from thoraco-abdominal CT-scanning using a customary software [VR-RENDER®, IRCAD (Institut de Recherche contre les Cancers de l'Appareil Digestifs)]. The 3D modeling confirmed the compression of the right and middle suprahepatic veins as well as the presence of intrahepatic venovenous shunts from the right and middle hepatic veins to the left hepatic vein crossing through segments IV and V of the liver (Figure 1). The model was then processed using a VR-RENDER® plug-in application, the Virtual Surgical Planning (VSP®, IRCAD), in order to delineate surgical resection planes, including elective ligation of vascular structures and precoagulation of venovenous shunts. We discussed the possibility of a preoperative endovascular embolization of the shunt, but it was retained due to the risks of the procedure.

A right hepatectomy was initiated with an intraoperative ultrasound examination, which corroborated the presence of venovenous shunts. The right branch of the portal vein and the hepatic artery were dissected, clamped, and then ligatured. As anticipated, parenchymal transection using ultrasonic tissue ablation system (CUSA®) induced bleeding, caused by the difficulty to control the venovenous shunts. We decided to completely isolate the liver from blood flow by clamping hepatoduodenal ligament, infrahepatic vena cava, and suprahepatic cava. Despite this total liver vascular exclusion, bleeding was still difficult to control. Consequently, as preoperatively planned, it was decided to perform a precoagulation of the multiple shunts by means of a microwave-assisted coagulation. We used a 2 cm microwave needle applied onto the shunts crossing through liver segment IV transection line (Figure 2). This maneuver allowed to control bleeding and right hepatectomy was then completed in adequate conditions (Figure 3). The postoperative outcome was uneventful and the patient was discharged on postoperative day 12.

Histopathological examination confirmed the completeness of resection of two right liver metastases from a G2 well-differentiated neuroendocrine carcinoma with Ki-67 index comprised between 5% and 10% and less than 1 mitosis/10HPF. The multidisciplinary committee opted for an oncological follow-up. At one year, the patient was disease-free.

DISCUSSION

Preoperative evaluation of hepatic vascularization can be very useful in order to anticipate potential intraoperative difficulties, in particular when hepatic vein resection is required. Several detection techniques have been described in the literature in order to analyze intrahepatic venovenous shunts. Sakaguchi *et al*^[2] showed that hepatic occlusion venography allowed for the detection of venovenous shunt in half of patients while it was unpredictable from CT-scan or laboratory data. The main drawback of this technique lies in its invasiveness.

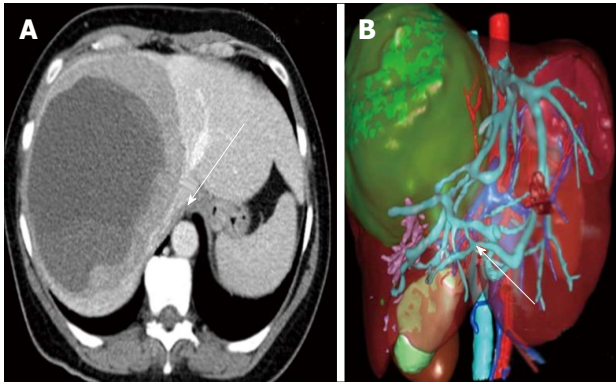


Figure 1 Preoperative three-dimensional computed tomography reconstructed from conventional two-dimensional computed tomography; the tumor is represented in green. A: Compression of the right and middle hepatic veins (arrow); B: Venous intrahepatic shunt (arrow).

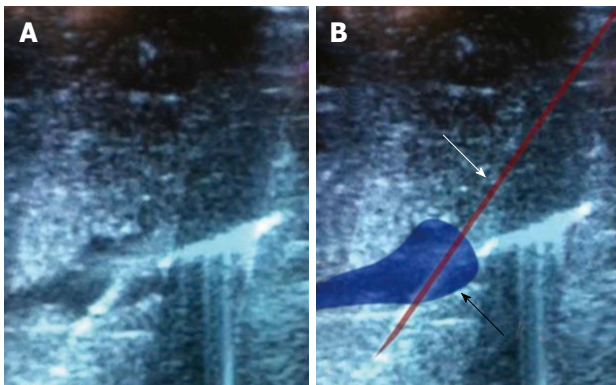


Figure 2 Intrahepatic venovenous shunt and insertion of the microwave needle. A: Ultrasound view of the intrahepatic venovenous shunt with insertion of the microwave needle; B: Diagram showing in blue the intrahepatic venovenous shunt (black arrow) and in red the microwave needle (white arrow).

Intrahepatic venous anastomosis has also been evaluated in living donor liver transplantation with Doppler ultrasonography and pulse-inversion ultrasonography by Kaneko *et al.*^[3]. This procedure seems to be efficient for detection of venovenous shunts between the middle and the right hepatic vein but it is operator-dependent and not often available. Detection of venovenous shunts is also efficient with 3D-venography reconstructed from multidetector-row computed tomography during angiography^[4]. Three-dimensional computed tomography, as shown in our case report, appears to be an appropriate tool to evaluate hepatic vascularization prior to surgery. As demonstrated by Kamiyama *et al.*^[5] in a cohort, 3D-CT provided key information that could not be obtained with two-dimensional computed tomography (2D-CT).

From CT or MRI images, it's often difficult for the surgeon to plan precisely the technical procedure. These imaging exams provide images in 2D, but surgeons work in 3D. It seems fundamental to offer surgeons patient-specific 3D model of the liver for easy interpretation of the anatomy. Volume rendering available on all radiology consoles does not make independent each organ, and

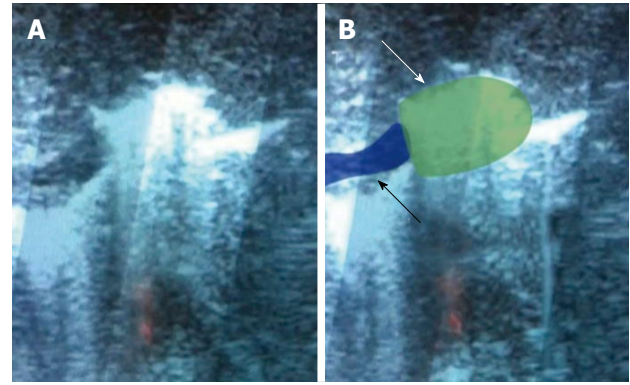


Figure 3 Thrombus at the end of the procedure. A: Ultrasound view of the thrombus at the end of the procedure; B: Diagram showing in blue the intrahepatic venovenous shunt (black arrow) and in green the thrombus (white arrow).

therefore does not allow performing a virtual surgery. To overcome this limitation, we created a software allowing the identification and delimitation of each anatomical and pathological structure with different colours (Figure 1). This 3D model is optimal to obtain preoperative surgical planning and intraoperative guidance. In our case report, the venovenous shunt was known before surgery and difficulties to perform hemostasis were anticipated.

In our case, microwave was successfully used not to obtain tissue coagulation but to achieve elective precoagulation of the shunt. The needle was electively and precisely inserted with ultrasound control into the shunt to obtain a thrombus. Microwave coagulation is also less time-consuming as compared to radiofrequency coagulation. In case of difficulty to control bleeding during hepatectomy and to limit blood loss, especially in cirrhotic liver, it might be better to perform tissue precoagulation using microwave coagulation.

In conclusion, the presentation of this case report underscores two major key topics concerning liver surgery. First and foremost, a thorough knowledge of liver anatomy preoperatively is essential as it gives the surgeon the opportunity to anticipate hemostatic difficulties in liver surgery where blood loss is a major complication and prognostic factor. This can be easily evaluated by means of preoperative 3D-CT. Secondly, tissue precoagulation using radiofrequency or microwave coagulation should remain available for the surgeon as they can be important tools to control persistent bleeding in spite of conventional bloodless hepatectomy techniques.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This manuscript has been extensively revised linguistically by a native English speaker (Christopher Burel), with 4 years of professional experience in medical translation; and by two non-native speakers (Mathilde Raux-Defossez and Guy Temporal) with a postgraduate degree in medical translation.

Authors are grateful to Christopher Burel, Mathilde Raux-Defosse, and Guy Temporal for their linguistic proofreading.

COMMENTS

Case characteristics

A 53-year-old woman underwent a 2-stage right hepatectomy for bilobar metastasis of an ileal neuroendocrine carcinoma.

Clinical diagnosis

Lower limb edema made it possible to detect a voluminous intrahepatic lesion compressing the retrohepatic vena cava.

Differential diagnosis

Malignant tumors (hepatocarcinoma or other liver metastases) and benign lesions (focal nodular hyperplasia, hemangioma and adenoma).

Imaging diagnosis

Preoperative examination including computed tomography (CT)-scan, magnetic resonance imaging, and a somatostatin receptor scintigraphy showed a primitive tumor at the last ileal loop with bilobar synchronous liver metastasis. The 3D virtual anatomical model was obtained from thoraco-abdominal CT-scanning using a customary software (VR-RENDER®, IRCAD).

Pathological diagnosis

Percutaneous liver biopsy confirmed the diagnosis of liver metastasis of a grade 2 neuroendocrine tumor (Ki-67 index = 5%).

Treatment

Right hepatectomy with precoagulation and microwave.

Related reports

Few papers report the preoperative detection and intraoperative management of intrahepatic veno-venous shunt.

Term explanation

The precoagulation of the shunt avoided major bleeding during the parenchymal transection.

Experiences and lessons

First and foremost, a thorough knowledge of liver anatomy preoperatively is essential as it gives the surgeon the opportunity to anticipate hemostatic difficulties in liver surgery where blood loss is a major complication and prognostic factor. This can be easily evaluated by means of preoperative 3D-CT. Secondly, tissue precoagulation using radiofrequency or microwave coagulation should remain available for the surgeon as they can be important tools to control persistent bleeding in spite of conventional bloodless hepatectomy techniques.

Peer-review

This video clip and the case report are well presented.

REFERENCES

- 1 **Gauss T**, Merckx P, Brasher C, Kavafyan J, Le Bihan E, Aussilhou B, Belghiti J, Mantz J. Deviation from a preoperative surgical and anaesthetic care plan is associated with increased risk of adverse intraoperative events in major abdominal surgery. *Langenbecks Arch Surg* 2013; **398**: 277-285 [PMID: 23149461 DOI: 10.1007/s00423-012-1028-3]
- 2 **Sakaguchi T**, Suzuki S, Inaba K, Fukumoto K, Takehara Y, Nasu H, Kamiya M, Yamashita S, Ushio T, Nakamura S, Konno H. Analysis of intrahepatic venovenous shunt by hepatic venography. *Surgery* 2010; **147**: 805-810 [PMID: 20494211 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2009.11.009]
- 3 **Kaneko T**, Sugimoto H, Hirota M, Kure S, Kiuchi T, Nakao A. Intrahepatic venous anastomosis formation of the right liver in living donor liver transplantation: evaluations by Doppler ultrasonography and pulse-inversion ultrasonography with Levovist. *Surgery* 2005; **138**: 21-27 [PMID: 16003312]
- 4 **Sakaguchi T**, Suzuki S, Hiraide T, Shibasaki Y, Morita Y, Suzuki A, Fukumoto K, Inaba K, Takehara Y, Nasu H, Kamiya M, Yamashita S, Ushio T, Konno H. Detection of intrahepatic veno-venous shunts by three-dimensional venography using multidetector-row computed tomography during angiography. *Surg Today* 2014; **44**: 662-667 [PMID: 23975592 DOI: 10.1007/s00595-013-0710-6]
- 5 **Kamiyama T**, Nakagawa T, Nakanishi K, Kamachi H, Onodera Y, Matsushita M, Todo S. Preoperative evaluation of hepatic vasculature by three-dimensional computed tomography in patients undergoing hepatectomy. *World J Surg* 2006; **30**: 400-409 [PMID: 16485065]

P- Reviewer: Chok KSH, Uchiyama H S- Editor: Qiu S
L- Editor: A E- Editor: Li D





Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**

8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA

Telephone: +1-925-223-8242

Fax: +1-925-223-8243

E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com

Help Desk: <http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>

<http://www.wjgnet.com>

